



This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

### Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

- + *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.
- + *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.
- + *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.
- + *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

### About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at <http://books.google.com/>



Harvard College Library



LIBRARY OF THE  
DEPARTMENT OF EDUCATION

COLLECTION OF TEXT-BOOKS

CONTRIBUTED BY THE PUBLISHERS

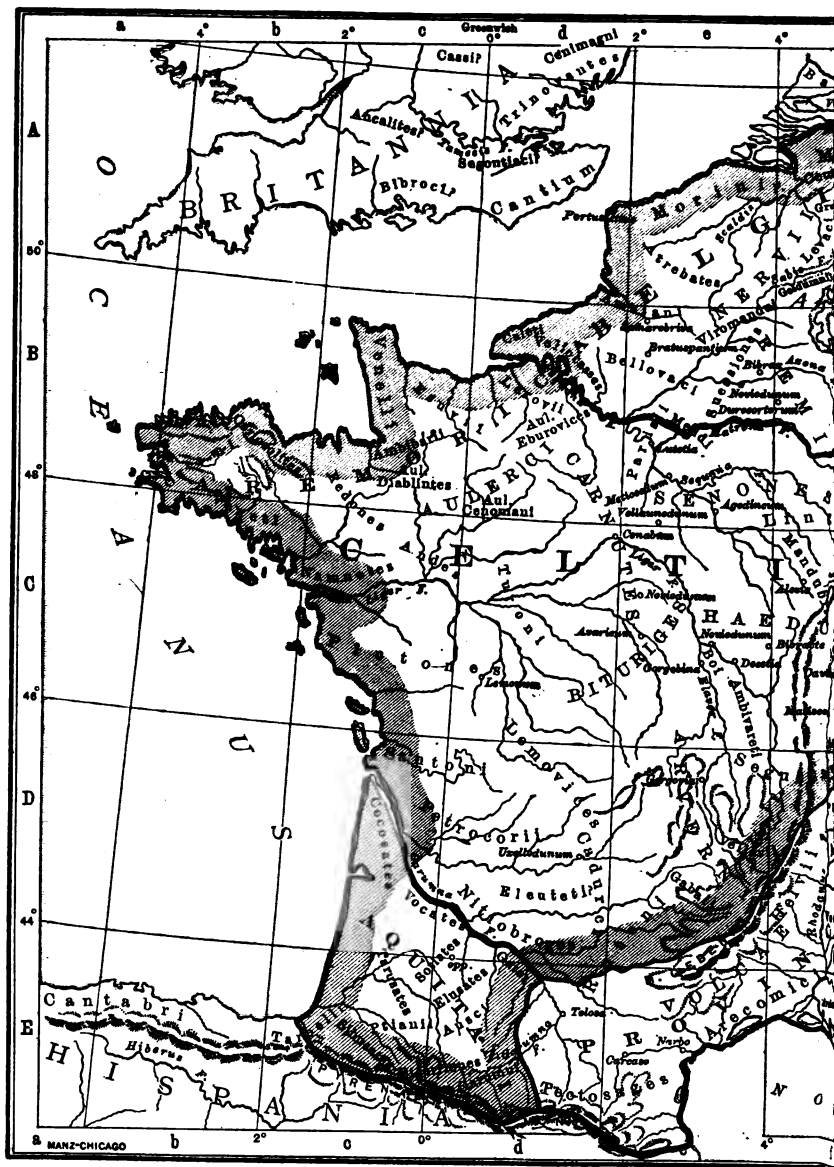
TRANSFERRED

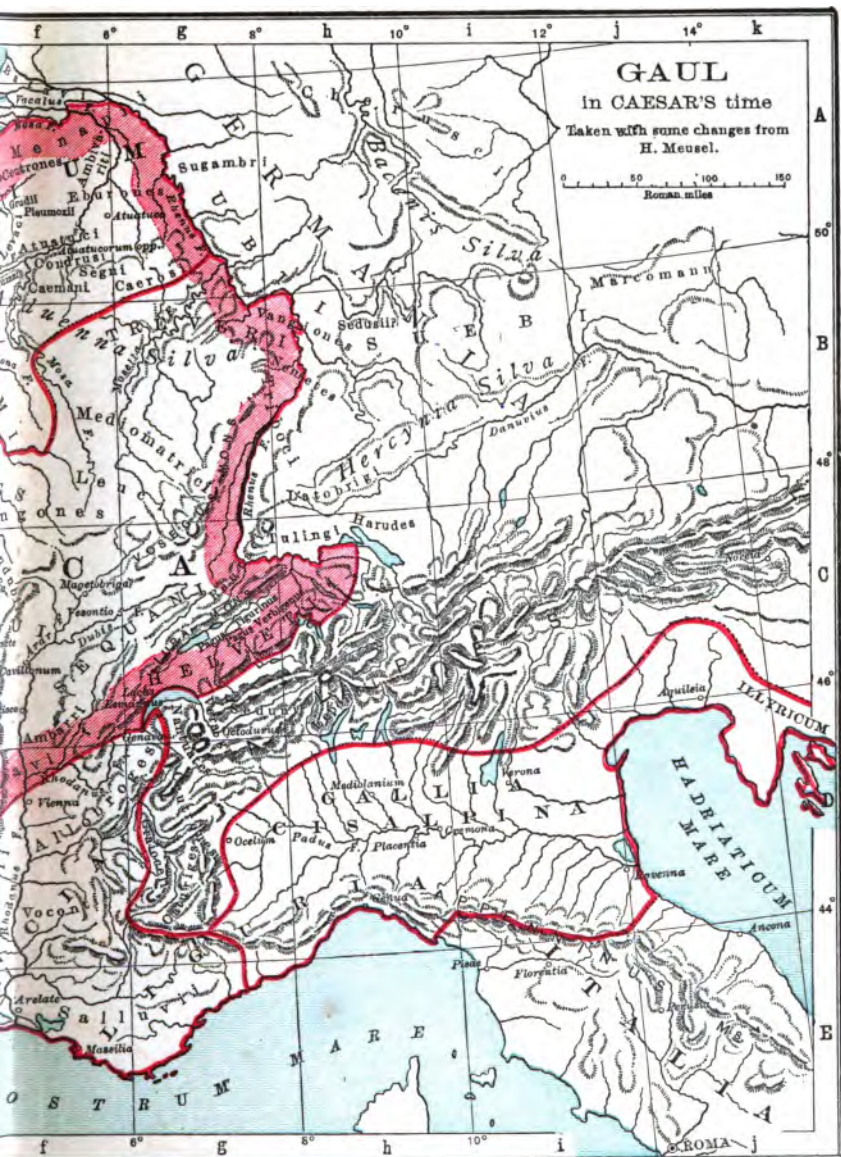
TO

COLLEGE

LIBRARY











3 2044 097 076 855







**GAIUS JULIUS CAESAR**  
**From a bust in the British Museum**

# CAESAR'S GALLIC WAR

WITH INTRODUCTION, NOTES, VOCABULARY.  
AND GRAMMATICAL APPENDIX

BY

ARTHUR TAPPAN WALKER, Ph.D.

PROFESSOR OF LATIN IN THE UNIVERSITY OF KANSAS

A REVISION OF THE EDITION BY

C. M. LOWE, Ph.D., AND J. T. EWING, M.A.

SCOTT, FORESMAN AND COMPANY  
CHICAGO—NEW YORK

117.2383, q W

✓  
Educ T 1000.865.907.1

HARVARD UNIVERSITY  
DEPT. OF EDUCATION LIBRARY  
GIFT OF THE PUBLISHER

JUN -5 1918

TRANSFERRED TO  
HARVARD COLLEGE LIBRARY

June 12, 1929

COPYRIGHT, 1907  
BY  
SCOTT, FORESMAN AND COMPANY

P. F. PETTIBONE & Co.  
Printers and Binders  
Chicago

## PREFACE

In its general plan the present edition of Caesar is based on that of Lowe and Ewing, first published in 1891. It retains the features which gave distinction to that book, the most important of which are thus described in its preface:

"The vocabularies, notes, illustrations, and explanatory matter have been placed on the same page with the text, thus saving the student's time, which is uselessly spent in turning leaves and searching for explanations which are here placed immediately before him. At the same time, self-reliance is secured by the use of a separate text in the class room, without either notes or vocabulary. The special vocabularies have been arranged so that the first four books and the rest of the annotated text may be read consecutively, or the war with Ariovistus (Bk. I, chaps. 30-54) may be omitted and the valuable and less familiar matter substituted from the annotated chapters of Bks. V-VII. An opportunity for sight reading is afforded in the unannotated parts of these latter books."

While the general plan of the earlier edition has been followed, in all details the book has been rewritten from beginning to end. In its preparation three definite purposes have been kept steadily in mind:

1. To help the pupil to follow the narrative understandingly.
2. To give the pupil, especially at the beginning of his reading, a systematic drill on all the common syntactical principles.
3. To exclude all bits of antiquarian and grammatical lore which, however valuable in themselves, have no direct bearing on an appreciation of Caesar's language or story.

THE STUDY OF CAESAR'S NARRATIVE. It is surely a pedagogical mistake to let a pupil carry away from the study of Caesar nothing but a memory of ablatives absolute and indirect discourse. These things he must learn as a preparation for further reading, it is true, and the language must be his chief study; but there is danger that

a year of grammar only will not tempt him to the further reading for which he has been preparing. Caesar tells an interesting story and tells it well. The universal testimony of the ages to the greatness of his writing is not founded on a universal love for grammar. The interest in finding out what Caesar did should serve as an incentive to solve his sentences. Moreover, a neglect of Caesar's thought is wrong on principle. The habit of careful attention to the subject-matter is the one thing best worth cultivating, whether one reads English or a foreign language; and this should not be forgotten in teaching Caesar.

Therefore as much as possible has been done in the notes and maps to assist in an understanding of the narrative, without introducing any discussion of disputed points. Every effort has been made to adopt the most reasonable theory for each campaign, and to make every note, plan, and map consistent with that theory.

The pupil's progress through the story must be slow, and, however well he understands each move in Caesar's game, he will have difficulty in grasping the whole. It is hoped that the campaign maps may lessen this difficulty by putting before the eyes the total results of the campaigns. In each map the route is laid out on a map of all Gaul, because only in this way can the relation of any one campaign to the whole of Caesar's task be kept constantly before the mind. The system of coloring shows the condition of Gaul at the end of each campaign,—how much had been reduced by fighting, how much had yielded without fighting, and how much was yet untouched. A comparison of any two maps will show the results of the intervening operations.

SYSTEM IN GRAMMAR REFERENCES. An attempt has been made to facilitate and even insure, early in the study of Caesar, a systematic drill on the more important case and mode constructions. In the notes on Book I, 1-29, it is believed that references are given for all the most common constructions. In general, the cases are emphasized during the earlier chapters, and the modes during the later. To each construction reference is made three times, two

sets of references being given close together, that they may reinforce each other, and the third after a few chapters, that the point may be clinched by review. And these references are made not only to the grammatical Appendix given in this book, but also to five leading grammars.

In Book II the same references are given, as nearly as possible in the same order; but the references for each chapter are grouped together after the notes of that chapter. In this way opportunities for the same grammatical drill are afforded, whether the class begins with Book I or Book II; but, if the class begins with Book I, these references in Book II may be omitted as unnecessary.

With such a system it is natural and right to postpone to later chapters or books the consideration of certain constructions. Thus, conditions and the details of indirect discourse are postponed to Book I, 30-54, tenses to Book III. If the teacher does not like the order of presentation he can easily supply needed references; but if he will insist on the study of the references as they come in the notes, it is believed that he will find the necessary ground covered thoroughly and systematically.

**EXCLUSION OF NON-ESSENTIALS.** Many things are known or are guessed about ancient military science which in no way help the pupil to understand Caesar. Many facts and theories of grammar are suggested by Caesar's language which the pupil might find useful at some later day, but which help him neither in translating Caesar nor in writing the Latin composition which should accompany the reading. An honest attempt has been made to give what is helpful and to exclude the useless lumber, though it is not hoped, much less expected, that all teachers would draw the line where the editor has drawn it.

*Beginning with Book II.* The most dreaded portions of Caesar are his indirect discourse, and unfortunately the majority of the speeches are found in the first book. Though the fear of indirect discourse is largely traditional, and though the construction is not really difficult for one who is properly grounded in the essentials of Latin, yet it is clearly a misfortune that the pupil should en-

counter its full difficulties at a time when the ordinary narrative gives him trouble enough. Moreover, it is questionable whether it is worth while to drill the pupil on all details of the construction, since he will see very little indirect discourse elsewhere in his preparatory course. For these reasons many teachers seek to make the pupil's path easier by reading the second book before the first, or by omitting chapters 30-54 of the first book, in which chapters the construction chiefly abounds. In preparing this edition everything possible has been done to make feasible either of these plans, without throwing any obstacles in the way of a consecutive reading from the first. But the editor feels strongly that Book I, 1-29 should be read first. The latter part of the book may well be omitted entirely, and one or more of the very interesting annotated portions of the last three books may be substituted for it.

No editor of Caesar can escape a debt of gratitude to Mr. T. Rice Holmes for having discussed with such impartiality and thoroughness the geographical and military questions of the Gallic War. *Caesar's Conquest of Gaul*, by Mr. Holmes, should be in the hands of every teacher of Caesar. Though the present editor has found it impossible to agree with all its conclusions, the book is so fair in its discussions that he is under equal obligations whether he agrees or disagrees with the author.

The text of the Lowe and Ewing edition was Kraner's. In the present edition Meusel's readings have been substituted for the most part, but not completely. The quantities are marked in accordance with the revised edition of Lane's Grammar. A few doubtful words were submitted to the decision of Professor Hanns Oertel, of Yale University, who prepared the chapter on Sound in that Grammar. For his ready assistance, thanks are due.

It would be impossible to mention by name all who have assisted the editor by suggestion and in various ways. The labor of preparing the Vocabulary was largely performed by Mr. Earl W. Murray, a former graduate student, now Assistant Professor in the University of Kansas. Mr. Murray also prepared the first draft of the systematized references for Book I, 1-29, and Book II. For the

preparation of the Index the editor is indebted to Miss Martha Whitney. Professor Charles Knapp, of Columbia University, gave the early part of the book the benefit of a most searching and helpful criticism. From beginning to end the editor has been under deep obligations to the editors-in-chief of the series.

ARTHUR TAPPAN WALKER.



## TABLE OF CONTENTS

	PAGE
Preface . . . . .	1
List of Maps and Illustrations . . . . .	8
Introduction . . . . .	9
I. The Importance of the Gallic Campaigns . . . . .	9
II. Life of Caesar . . . . .	11
III. Chronological Table . . . . .	17
IV. Caesar as General . . . . .	18
V. Caesar as Author . . . . .	19
VI. The Gauls . . . . .	20
VII. Caesar's Army . . . . .	23
A Brief Bibliography . . . . .	38
List of Abbreviations . . . . .	40
Book I, 1-29 . . . . .	41
Book I, 30-54 . . . . .	115
Book II . . . . .	160
Book III . . . . .	215
Book IV . . . . .	252
Book V . . . . .	292
Book VI . . . . .	329
Book VII . . . . .	356
The Direct Form of the Indirect Discourse in Books I and II . . . .	412
Grammatical Appendix . . . . .	423
Vocabulary	
Index	

## MAPS AND ILLUSTRATIONS

	PAGE
General Map of Gaul . . . . .	<i>Front Cover</i>
Caesar (Bust in British Museum) . . . . .	<i>Frontispiece</i>
Pila . . . . .	24
Gladius and Vagina . . . . .	24
Roman Soldiers . . . . .	<i>Facing</i> 27
Plan of a Roman Camp . . . . .	29
Camp on the Axona . . . . .	29
Vallum and Fossa . . . . .	30
Roman Officers and Gauls . . . . .	<i>Facing</i> 31
Gallic Wall . . . . .	33
Storming a City . . . . .	<i>Facing</i> 34
Agger . . . . .	34
Plutei . . . . .	34
Musculus . . . . .	34
Vinea . . . . .	35
Catapulta . . . . .	35
Prow of Galley . . . . .	36
Campaign Map for Book I, 1-29 . . . . .	<i>Facing</i> 42
Fortifications on the Rhone . . . . .	70
Battle with the Helvetii, first stage . . . . .	104
Battle with the Helvetii, second stage . . . . .	108
Campaign Map for Book I, 30-54 . . . . .	<i>Facing</i> 117
Battle with Ariovistus . . . . .	153
Campaign Map for Book II . . . . .	<i>Facing</i> 162
Battle on the Axona . . . . .	177
Battle on the Sabis . . . . .	191
The Town of the Atuatuaci . . . . .	207
Campaign Map for Book III . . . . .	<i>Facing</i> 217
Galba's Camp . . . . .	219
Operations against the Veneti . . . . .	232
Campaign Map for Book IV . . . . .	<i>Facing</i> 254
Caesar's Bridge . . . . .	272
Pile-driver . . . . .	273
Second Invasion of Britain . . . . .	294
Caesar's Geography . . . . .	305
Caesar's Lines around Alesia . . . . .	392
Details of Fortifications around Alesia . . . . .	396
Stimulus . . . . .	398

# INTRODUCTION

---

## I. THE IMPORTANCE OF THE GALLIC CAMPAIGNS

The Commentaries on the Gallic War are Caesar's own story **1** of how he conquered the peoples living in what is now France and some of the lands bordering on France. He has told his story simply and directly. It was his genius that made the conquest possible, and the story could not be true without making this evident; but he has spoken of himself as if the writer and the general were different men, and there is no boasting. He has not explained to us the great importance of the war to the Roman state; there is no suggestion of its importance to his personal career; much less has he hinted at his own importance in the history of Rome and the world. These things must be learned from a study of history, not from Caesar's story.

**Effect on Rome.** Rome was the governing nation of ancient **2** times. In Caesar's time she had conquered the other nations which touched the Mediterranean, and was governing most of them as provinces; that is, she sent Roman governors to them and collected taxes from them. In this way she governed a comparatively narrow strip of land in southern Gaul; and as this was the particular province which Caesar was sent to govern, he calls it simply "the Province," *Prōvincia* (see map). This province was only partially protected by mountains and rivers from the semicivilized and warlike Gauls on the north; and for this reason it could never be sure of peace and safety until the rest of Gaul was conquered. Moreover, the land on the north was productive and well worth having.

Therefore Caesar's conquest of Gaul was justified, from a Roman point of view, both by the value of the land and by the necessity of protecting the Province.

- 3 **Effect on Gaul.** But there was a better reason for that conquest. Though the Gauls were brave they were no match for the less civilized Germans, who lived across the Rhine. Just at the time when Caesar took command of his province the Germans had begun crossing the Rhine in great numbers and were driving the Gauls out of their homes. If this movement had not been checked, the homeless Gauls would have been driven to attack Roman territory; and if the Gauls had been exterminated between the Germans and the Romans, then the Romans would have found the Germans still more dangerous neighbors than the Gauls. For the Gauls themselves, too, it was far better to be conquered by the civilized Romans than by the uncivilized Germans. The one means of safety for both Gauls and Romans was that the Romans should govern all the country west of the Rhine and should hold the Germans at bay on the other side of that great river. This was the result of Caesar's conquest of Gaul; and this result is the great justification of his bloody warfare there.
- 4 **Effect on Caesar.** In their effect on Caesar's own career the Gallic campaigns were all-important, and his career changed the course of history. In Gaul he gained military experience and the devotion of his army. By the aid of that army he overthrew a constitution under which the Roman state was going to ruin, and laid the foundations of an empire which lived for centuries. No doubt he did this from selfish and ambitious motives; but his ambition was so great that it could never have been satisfied until he had brought the empire he ruled to the highest possible degree of excellence, and his genius was so great that he saw the needful measures and the means to carry them out. The daggers of his assassins gave him too short a time to complete his work; but he did enough to prove himself the greatest man in Roman history.

## II. LIFE OF CAESAR

**Early Years, and Choice of Party.** Gaius Julius Caesar was 5 born in the year<sup>1</sup> 102, B.C., on the 12th day of the month which was then called Quintilis, but which we now, in his honor, call July. Tradition traced the descent of the Julian family back beyond the foundation of Rome, and even to the goddess Venus as its remote ancestor. Caesar, therefore, belonged to the Roman nobility, and in the continuous strife between the Senatorial, or Aristocratic, and the Democratic parties, might have been expected to side with the aristocrats. But none of his own family had been very conspicuous in the state, and his aunt had married Marius, the greatest leader of the Democratic party, the great general who had saved Rome by his victories over the Cimbri and Teutoni. It was natural that his ambition should be fired by his uncle's career, and that his sympathies should incline toward the Democratic party. When he was only fifteen Marius made him priest of Jupiter, an office of some honor and few duties; and in 83, after the death of Marius, he deliberately identified himself with the Democratic party by marrying Cornelia, the daughter of the new leader of that party, Cinna.

**Overthrow of Caesar's Party.** But the power of the Demo- 6 cratic party was almost at an end. In 83 Sulla, the leader of the Aristocratic party, returned to Italy with his victorious army, after fighting for several years against Mithradates, in the East. A bloody contest drove the Democrats from power; and in 82 the victor, determined to make a revival of that party impossible, slaughtered its eminent men and so changed the constitution of the state that the Senate was in full control. The young Caesar, as nephew of Marius and son-in-law of Cinna, was too conspicuous to be overlooked. Sulla ordered him to divorce Cornelia. Caesar refused, and had to flee for his life until influential friends persuaded Sulla to

---

<sup>1</sup> Or perhaps in the year 100 B.C.

pardon him. Sulla's grudging consent is said to have been coupled with the warning that Caesar would prove as dangerous as many Mariuses.

- 7 **Weakness of Opposite Party.** But the form of government set up by Sulla did not stand long, and the years which followed his death made more and more clear the need of some strong man who should give order and stability to the state. During those same years Caesar was testing and developing the powers which were to make him the man to do this work.
- 8 **Revival of Caesar's Party.** When Sulla died, in 78, the Senate was in complete control: the Democratic party had neither a leader nor any chance to use its strength. Gradually the Senate lost this control, until, in 70, under the consuls Pompey and Crassus, the changes made by Sulla were completely done away with and the Democratic party again had an opportunity, if it could but find a leader. For a time Pompey seemed likely to be this leader. In 66 the people, contrary to the wishes of the Senatorial party, elected him general to serve against Mithradates. This gave him supreme control in Asia Minor, but kept him out of Rome for the next four years.
- 9 **Development of Caesar's Powers.** During all this time Caesar was developing his powers of leadership. He got a taste of military service in Asia Minor, and at twenty-two he won the civic crown of oak leaves for saving the life of a fellow citizen in battle; but as yet he seems to have had no thought of gaining distinction as general. A born politician, he loved the game of politics for its own sake as well as for its rewards. An excellent orator, both by nature and by training, he used his oratorical powers in furthering the plans of his party. He made friends easily, and his influence over them was strong. Therefore, before he was old enough to take office he was a great favorite with the people and a much sought for ally in political scheming; and at the earliest age permitted by law he was elected without difficulty to the offices of Quaestor (for 68), Aedile (for 65), and Praetor (for 62). The greatest test

of his popularity came in 63, when the office of Pontifex Maximus fell vacant and Caesar was elected to this most honorable position over the strongest candidate the Senatorial party could put forward.

**Caesar's First Military Command.** But in spite of his ability **10** and popularity, in the year 63 Caesar was thought of as only a shrewd politician. Rome looked upon Pompey as her greatest man, because he was her greatest general; and Caesar knew that if he should come into conflict with Pompey his shrewdness could never prove a match for Pompey's army and generalship. Caesar felt that he too must be a general, but he did not know whether he could be; for he had never had an opportunity to try his powers. The opportunity offered itself in 61, when he was sent to govern a part of Spain. There he fought with great success against some of the native tribes. His victories were not very important in themselves, and they attracted no great attention in Rome; but they showed Caesar what he could do and made him anxious for a larger field of operations.

**Caesar's Consulship.** Caesar now wanted the consulship, the **11** highest office in the state: if he got it he intended to carry through some measures which would be opposed by the Senatorial party. He therefore needed strong friends. Pompey had returned in triumph from the war with Mithradates, but the Senate had refused to grant some reasonable requests which he had made of it. Crassus too had a grievance against the Senate. With these two men Caesar made a secret agreement that each should further the interests of the others; and thus Caesar, Pompey, and Crassus formed what is known in history as the First Triumvirate, a mere personal agreement, with no public sanction. The influence of Pompey and Crassus helped in securing Caesar's election to the consulship for the year 59, and also assisted him, when consul, in passing measures which were for the advantage of each of the three allies. For himself Caesar took a five-year term of office as governor of Cisal-

pine Gaul (the northern part of Italy), Illyricum (north and east of the Adriatic Sea), and Transalpine Gaul (then including only the southern part of France). To protect these provinces he was given an army of four legions.

- 12 Caesar's Command in Gaul.** In 58, therefore, Caesar entered upon his command. Partly because it was best for the province and the state (cf. 2 and 3), and partly because he needed the training and the reputation of a general (cf. 10), he determined to conquer all the rest of Gaul. How he did this he tells us himself in the Commentaries; and a brief summary prefixed to each book in this edition makes it unnecessary to tell the story here. Since he found the five years originally given him too short for the full accomplishment of his purpose, he secured an additional five years. By the year 50 the last trace of resistance to Roman authority had been crushed, and Caesar's great task was completed. Moreover, he now had a perfectly disciplined, veteran army, enthusiastically devoted to its leader.
- 13 Outbreak of Civil War.** It was high time that Caesar should have his hands free, for a greater task lay before him. For several years Pompey and Crassus had looked out for his interests in Rome. But in 53 Crassus was killed in battle; and at about the same time Pompey began to feel jealous of Caesar's success and fearful of his power. He gradually turned away from Caesar and attached himself to the Senatorial party, which had always hated Caesar. On the first day of the year 49 the Senate voted that Caesar should lay down his command and return to Rome as a private citizen, though the time for which the command had been given him had not yet expired. Caesar was then in Cisalpine Gaul, and his reply was an immediate march toward Rome.
- 14 Weakness of the Constitutional Government.** But during Caesar's absence from Rome the complete failure of the constitutional form of government had shown that the so-called republic could not exist much longer. Trials and elections were decided by bribery and bloodshed. The governing party

had been so weak that for one entire year a succession of riots had prevented the holding of elections. Now when it was attacked by Caesar it again showed its weakness. Although it had taken steps which were sure to bring on civil war it had done nothing to prepare for that war, except to appoint Pompey its commander-in-chief. In about two months from the time when Caesar marched into northern Italy, Pompey set sail from southern Italy with his army and most of the Senate, leaving Rome and Italy in Caesar's hands.

**Civil War Makes Caesar Master of Rome.** But the hardest 15 fighting of his life lay before Caesar. Pompey had crossed the Adriatic only to gain time for preparation. Besides, while Pompey's strong army lay on the east of Italy, there was another large army of Caesar's enemies in Spain, on the west. But Caesar's magnificent army and wonderful generalship carried him through all difficulties. In 49 he marched to Spain and defeated his enemies there. In 48 he followed Pompey across the Adriatic and utterly routed his army in the great battle of Pharsalus. Pompey himself fled to Egypt and was assassinated by order of the counselors of the Egyptian king. Caesar followed him to Egypt with an insufficient force and was blockaded for several months in the city of Alexandria by the Egyptian army. Meanwhile the remnants of Pompey's army made their way to the northern coast of Africa, and a new army was there organized to oppose Caesar. In 46 Caesar defeated this army too, at Thapsus, so decisively that he is said to have lost but fifty men while fifty thousand of the enemy fell. Then the sons of Pompey rallied the last opponents of Caesar, in Spain, for a final struggle, and Caesar's victory at Munda in 45 made him the undisputed master of the Roman world.

**Caesar as Statesman.** Caesar was no mere soldier, and it was 16 from no choice of his own that he spent all these years in fighting. He became a general because that was the only way to achieve his purpose of becoming sole ruler of Rome. But that purpose was not prompted wholly by personal ambition.

He had begun as a politician and had matured into a great statesman. There had been many abuses in the state, and the civil war had brought in confusion as well. With characteristic energy and clear-sightedness he set himself to bring order out of chaos, to organize the whole empire, and to improve its details. To carry out this work he needed the best men in the state, regardless of party: hence he pardoned those who had fought against him and gave some of them positions of high honor and great responsibility. He reformed the calendar. He took measures to remedy the financial disorders of the country. He planned a codification of the laws. He intended to carry out some great engineering feats, among others the cutting of a canal through the isthmus of Corinth. In order to protect the frontiers of the empire he planned military expeditions against the Parthians and the nations along the Danube.

- 17 Assassination of Caesar.** Such enormous plans needed time for their execution, and time was denied to Caesar. A form of government which had stood for centuries could not be overthrown without grieving some true lovers of their country. One man could not make himself the master of all others, who had previously been his equals, without arousing jealousy. One man could not select the men to fill all offices without disappointing many. Men of all these classes, patriots, would-be rivals, and disappointed office seekers, joined in a conspiracy, and on the fifteenth of March, 44 B.C., Caesar fell beneath their daggers while presiding over a meeting of the Senate. The history of the following years shows the folly of this murder. For themselves the assassins reaped only death, since in a very few years every one whose fate is known had died by violence. For the state the deed was equally disastrous, since the assassination of Caesar merely caused a bloody civil war to intervene between his rule and that of Augustus.

III. CHRONOLOGICAL TABLE

B.C.	Caesar's Age.		
102		Birth of Caesar, July 12. Marius defeats the Teutoni.	18
101	1	Marius defeats the Cimbri.	
87	15	Marius appoints Caesar Priest of Jupiter.	
86	16	Death of Marius. Cinna is Dictator.	
83	19	Caesar marries Cornelia, daughter of Cinna, the Dictator.	
82	20	Sulla becomes perpetual Dictator. He proscribes and pardons Caesar. Caesar leaves Rome for the East.	
80	22	Caesar wins the civic crown at Mytilene.	
78	24	Sulla dies. Caesar returns to Rome.	
76	26	Caesar sails to Rhodes to study under Molo.	
74	28	Caesar is elected Military Tribune and Pontifex.	
70	32	Consulship of Pompey and Crassus. The Sullan constitution is overthrown.	
68	34	Caesar is Quaestor.	
65	37	Caesar is Curule Aedile.	
63	39	Caesar is elected Praetor and Pontifex Maximus. Cicero is Consul. Conspiracy of Catiline exposed.	
62	40	Caesar is Praetor. Pompey returns from the East.	
61	41	Caesar is Propraetor in Farther Spain.	
60	42	Caesar is elected Consul. "First Triumvirate" is formed.	
59	43	Caesar is Consul. He marries Calpurnia.	
58	44	Caesar becomes Proconsul of Gaul. Campaigns against the Helvetii and Ariovistus. Cicero is exiled.	
57	45	Caesar conquers the Belgae. Recall of Cicero.	
56	46	Caesar's campaign in Brittany.	
55	47	Caesar invades Britain and Germany. Pompey and Crassus are joint Consuls for the second time.	
54	48	Caesar invades Britain a second time. Death of Julia.	
53	49	The northeastern Gauls rebel. Crassus is slain.	
52	50	General revolt of the Gauls. Alienation of Pompey.	
51	51	Caesar completes the conquest of Gaul.	
50	52	The quarrel between Caesar and the Senate.	
49	53	Civil War. Caesar is made Dictator.	
48	54	Caesar defeats Pompey at Pharsalus. Pompey is killed in Egypt. The "Alexandrian War."	
47	55	Caesar, again Dictator, reorganizes the government.	
46	56	The "African War." The Pompeians defeated at Thapsus.	
45	57	The "Spanish War." Battle of Munda.	
44	58	Caesar Dictator for life. Assassinated March 15th.	

## IV. CAESAR AS GENERAL

- 19** The Commentaries present Caesar to our view as a military leader of the first rank, and yet he had reached middle life before he held an independent command. During his youth, when the fascinations of "war's wild trade" may have attracted him, all the channels to military preferment were closed to him on account of his connection with the Marian party. When he finally turned his attention to war, he brought the calm calculation of the man of affairs seeking to accomplish certain desirable ends through its agency. Neither the charm nor the traditions of camp and field life held sway over his mind. Love of military glory alone never lured him on, nor was the sweep of his genius hampered by the shackles of an exclusively military training.
- 20** **Characteristics as General.** The Commentaries reveal his method. He clearly conceived the object desired and took the most direct way possible to reach it. When it best suited his purpose he was deliberate and cautious, watching for the best opportunity to strike a crushing blow. Yet in an emergency he would coolly carry out the most daring plans, so that he sometimes appears even reckless; but this apparent recklessness was the result of swift and unerring decision, based on a keen insight into the character and probable action of his opponents. He always took the offensive and endeavored to concentrate his force and strike the enemy unexpectedly. He made up by quickness of movement for his lack of numbers. In battle he was cool and confident. He was devoid of fear, and when necessary fought in the foremost ranks. If the enemy fled he pursued him vigorously with his cavalry, slaughtering without mercy as long as a man was to be reached. He was sometimes cruel from policy, though naturally clement.
- 21** **Power over his Men.** Caesar won the entire devotion of his army, and this was one of the secrets of his success. He was careful of the comfort and lives of his men. He saw

to it that they had an abundance of supplies. He cautioned them against unnecessary risk in battle, and sometimes refused to allow them to fight in dangerous places even when they wished to do so. He ruled by tact rather than by fear. He generously rewarded their valor and fidelity, and knew how to rouse them on occasion to the highest pitch of enthusiasm. But such statements only partially account for his ascendancy over their minds. He possessed in the fullest measure that combination of natural qualities which makes a man a born leader. Therefore his army was the obedient instrument of his will and endured unexampled hardships without a murmur.

#### V. CAESAR AS AUTHOR

Caesar's genius was many-sided, and he might have been no 22 less eminent as an orator and an author than as a statesman and a general, if he had chosen those fields of activity for their own sake. Even as it was, though he spoke and wrote mainly for political effect, he was recognized by his contemporaries as an orator second only to Cicero, and the simplicity, clearness, and terseness of his Commentaries have made them a classic from his day to our own. In the purity of their Latinity they rank with Cicero's works as the best that have come down to us. The interest of the narrative and the quality of the generalship shown in it have made the book a favorite with some of the world's greatest generals. The great Napoleon, for example, recommended it to his officers and himself wrote an abstract of it.

**Purpose in Writing the Commentaries on the Gallic War. 23**  
Yet the book was written hastily, probably in the winter of 52-51, after the events narrated in Book VII; and it was written for a political purpose. Absent from Rome and deprived of his two chief supporters by the death of Crassus and the alienation of Pompey, Caesar wished to put himself in a good light before the Roman people. With such a purpose

he might have been expected to misstate some facts; and there have been many attempts to show that he did so. But a fair examination of these attempts shows that not one of them is well-founded. There may be occasional mistakes, where Caesar was forced to rely on information furnished him by the Gauls; but it can not be proved that there is a single intentional false statement in the whole work.

- 24 Caesar's Other Writings.** In addition to the Commentaries on the Gallic War, in seven books, we have Caesar's Commentaries on the Civil War, in three books. Besides these we know of other works, now lost. We hear of some poetry and a collection of jests. He wrote a treatise on grammar while traveling rapidly from Rome to Spain. He wrote a treatise on astronomy when he reformed the calendar. He wrote an attack on Cato to counteract the effect of certain books which in praising Cato attacked Caesar. All this shows his versatility; but probably no one of these works would have been very valuable if it had been preserved.

## VI. THE GAULS

- 25 First Appearance of the Gauls in History.** Some seven centuries before Christ, a tall, fair-haired race of men, the Gauls, began crossing the Rhine and conquering the original inhabitants of the country on its west. In time they overran everything as far as the Pyrenees, partly destroying the original inhabitants, partly uniting with them. About five centuries before Christ they began crossing the Alps and settling in northern Italy, and in 390 B.C. they took Rome and burned it. Rome was then but a small city, governing only the part of Italy which immediately surrounded it.
- 26 First Decline of Gallic Power.** But from that time on the power of Rome increased and that of the Gauls decreased. A little more than two centuries before Christ, after desperate fighting, the Romans conquered and held northern Italy, Cisalpine Gaul. Again in the years from 123 to 118 there was

hard fighting with Gauls, and at the end Rome controlled that part of Gaul which Caesar calls *Prōvincia* (see 2).

**Invasion of Cimbri and Teutoni.** In 113 began the invasion 27 of the Cimbri and Teutoni, the most terrible danger of Rome since the day when the Gauls burned the city. It is not known whether they were Germans or Gauls, and probably the Romans of the time did not discriminate between the two races. They crossed the Rhine with their women and children, and marched slowly through Gaul, leaving a waste wherever they had passed. Several Roman armies met them and were cut to pieces. At last they made ready to invade Italy, the Teutoni by the western Alps, the Cimbri by the eastern. But the great Marius was now in command of a Roman army. In 102 he met the Teutoni and destroyed them. In 101 he joined the other Roman army and destroyed the Cimbri.

**Geographical Divisions of Gaul in Caesar's Time.** In Caesar's 28 time Cisalpine Gaul was almost as Roman as any other part of Italy. From it Caesar recruited his legions and levied new ones; and later he gave its inhabitants the right of Roman citizenship. The Province was peaceable and loyal to Rome, although the Allobroges had rebelled only a few years before. Caesar's task was the subjugation of all the rest of the Gauls, the inhabitants of all the country lying north of the Province and west of the Rhine. This is the country which he calls *Gallia*. However, he divides it into three parts and often uses the name *Gallia* of only the great central part, *Gallia Celtica*, where the Gallic stock was purest. In the southwestern part, *Aquitania*, fewer of the Gallic invaders had settled, and the population consisted largely of descendants of the original inhabitants. In the northeastern part, *Belgium*, Germans had settled in large numbers.

**Factions in Gaul.** If Caesar had found Gaul a compact 29 nation his task would have been more difficult than it was. But faction and division seem to have been a part of the Gallic nature, and he took advantage of this characteristic. Gaul

was cut up into many small states, each feeling itself rightfully independent. These states fought frequently with one another, and the weaker of them were either forced into dependence on the stronger or voluntarily attached themselves to stronger states for protection. In this way loose leagues or confederations were formed, between which rivalry and warfare went on. In Gallia Celtica the chief confederations were the one headed by the Haedui and the one formerly headed by the Arverni, but in Caesar's time headed by the Sequani. But the evils of faction did not stop here. The individual states, for the most part, had no strong governments. Apparently most of them had been governed by kings one or two generations before Caesar's time; but a series of revolutions had generally abolished the kingly office and had substituted magistrates elected yearly. The real power lay in the hands of rich nobles, or equites as Caesar calls them. Each of these nobles lived surrounded by numerous slaves and retainers; and as there was no power strong enough to keep them in order, individual nobles or leagues of nobles sometimes pushed their continuous rivalries to the point of civil war.

**30 Caesar's Use of the Gallic Factions.** This factional spirit was of great assistance to Caesar, for he usually found means to attach one faction or the other to himself. For example, at the outset he found two factions in the state of the Haedui, headed by two brothers, Diviciacus, friendly to the Romans, and Dumnorix, hostile to them. By strengthening Diviciacus and checking Dumnorix he secured the help of the state. The state was the leader of one of the two leagues in Celtic Gaul, and Caesar thus secured the submission of all the states in that league without fighting for it. In fact, not only did he have their passive submission, but he obtained from them provisions and men to use in conquering other parts of Gaul.

**31 Gallic Civilization.** The details of the Gallic manners and customs can be learned best from Chapters 11-20 of Book VI. It will be enough to say here that in Caesar's time the Gauls

were not wild barbarians, but had attained a considerable degree of civilization. They had long passed the stage of roaming about from one part of the country to another; though we find, in the first book of the Commentaries, that for special reasons the Helvetii intended to leave their homes and find new ones. They had roads and bridges and towns of considerable size, fortified by well built walls.

## VII. CAESAR'S ARMY

### THE LEGIONS

The legions formed the strength of Caesar's army. When 32 the enemy met him in hand to hand battle the legions bore the brunt of the fighting and won him the victory. But since they consisted of heavily armed, and therefore comparatively slow, foot soldiers, and since their weapons were useless at any considerable distance, the legions needed the assistance of cavalry and light-armed infantry, to complete their success.

**Organization of the Legion.** In theory a legion consisted of 33 6000 men; but battles, accidents, and disease so reduced this number that Caesar's legions probably averaged about 4000 men, or even less. The following table gives the divisions of a legion and their theoretical strength:

century [centum, hundred]	= 100 men
2 centuries = 1 maniples	= 200 men
3 maniples = 1 cohort	= 600 men
10 cohorts = 1 legion	= 6000 men

In theory, again, the legions were made up of Roman citizens; but in fact a large part of Caesar's legionary soldiers came from Cisalpine Gaul, which had not yet received the right of citizenship. However, it was thoroughly Romanized, and, in spirit at least, Caesar's legionaries were Roman citizens.

## EQUIPMENT OF THE LEGIONARY SOLDIER

(Plate I)

- 34 Clothing.** *a.* A sleeveless woolen shirt, reaching nearly to the knees.  
*b.* Tight-fitting leather trousers, or perhaps merely bandages wrapped about the legs.  
*c.* Shoes or sandals.  
*d.* A heavy cloak for bad weather. This served also as a blanket at night.
- 35 Armor.** *a.* A helmet of leather (*galea*) or metal (*cassis*).  
*b.* A leather coat (*lōrica*), strengthened by bands of metal across the shoulders, breast, and back.  
*c.* A curved wooden shield (*scūtum*), covered with leather, and having a metal boss in the center. It was about four feet high and two and a half feet wide.

*d.* Perhaps a greave on the right leg, though Caesar does not mention it. This was very much like a foot-ball shin-guard, but made of metal.

**Arms.** *a.* A heavy wooden javelin (*pīlum*, Fig. 1), with a long iron point which was strong enough to pierce any armor but was likely to bend as it did so. Therefore it could not easily be withdrawn when it had pierced a shield, and could not be thrown back by the enemy. After the battle the javelins were gathered and straightened by the Romans. Each soldier carried but one javelin.

*b.* A straight, heavy, two-edged sword (*gladius*, Fig. 2), about two feet long, adapted for either cutting or thrusting. Its scabbard (*vāgina*) hung from a belt (*balteus*) which passed over the left

36



FIG. 1  
PILA

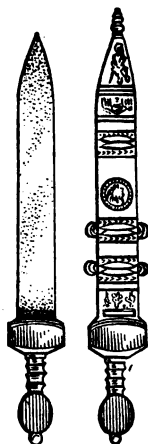


FIG. 2  
GLADIUS AND  
VAGINA

shoulder. The sword was thus on the right side, out of the way of the shield. But the higher officers, who carried no shield, wore the sword on the left side.

**Individual Baggage.** Besides his personal belongings each 37 soldier carried his share of the picks, spades, baskets, etc., used in entrenching the camp; cooking utensils; and several days' rations of grain, which seems to have been apportioned out only twice a month. All this, weighing from thirty to forty-five pounds, was made into a pack (*sarcina*) and strapped on a forked stick; this the soldier carried on his shoulder. While thus encumbered the soldiers were said to be *impediti*. If the army was attacked on the march the packs were stacked in one place under guard, and the soldiers were then *expediti*.

#### OFFICERS OF THE LEGIONS

**Lēgātus.** All governors of provinces were given several 38 *lēgātī*, deputies or assistants. These legates were not strictly military officers, but were to be employed by the governors in any way they saw fit. Caesar introduced the innovation of putting a legate in command of each legion just before a battle. When one or more legions were detached from the main army for special service, Caesar put a legate in command; and legates were left in command of the winter quarters during Caesar's absence. But no one legate was in permanent command of any one legion.

**Quaestor.** The quaestors were financial officers, elected 39 yearly by the people at Rome. One was chosen by lot to take charge of the finances of each province, so that Caesar always had one with him. He took charge of the pay and the supplies of the army. When he was competent Caesar employed him in battle as he did his legates, putting him in command of a legion.

**Praefectus Fabrum.** The chief of engineers had charge of 40 such matters as the building of bridges, construction of camps, erection of siege works, repair of artillery, and the refitting of

ships. He probably had special assistants, but the actual labor was performed by skilled men detailed from the ranks.

- 41 Tribūnus.** No single officer permanently commanded a legion, as our colonels command regiments. Each legion had six tribunes, who took the chief command in rotation, while the rest probably commanded groups of cohorts or were assigned to special service. In Caesar's army many of the tribunes were experienced and capable officers, who did good service; but others were young men without military experience, who had been appointed only because they were friends or relatives of influential men at Rome whom Caesar wished to please. It was for this reason that Caesar put his legates and quaestor in command of the legions in battle. On the march or in camp a tribune was in command.
- 42 Centuriō.** The centurions commanded centuries, and there were therefore sixty in each legion. On them fell the immediate management of the men in battle. They fought in the ranks like the men and were expected to set the men an example of conspicuous bravery. They were therefore promoted from the ranks on the basis of their strength and size as well as their skill and gallantry. They could hope for no promotion above the rank of centurion; but there were grades of centurions from one to the other of which they rose. The highest of all was the first centurion of the first cohort, the *primipilus*. He and a few others, just how many is not known, were called centurions of the first rank (*centuriōnēs primōrum ordinum*, or *primi ordinēs*), and were commonly summoned to councils of war along with the tribunes and legates.

#### STANDARDS AND SIGNALS OF THE LEGIONS

- 43 Aquila.** Each legion had as its standard a bronze or silver eagle (*aquila*), carried on the top of a wooden staff. It was regarded with almost religious respect, and its loss was the deepest disgrace that could befall the legion. It was in charge of the first centurion of the first cohort, and was carried by a



PLATE 1



1. funditor

3. legionarii

5. signiferi

7. tubicen

2. levis armaturae milites

4. vexillum

6. aquilifer

8. bucinator

ROMAN SOLDIERS

Digitized by Google

man of conspicuous strength and bravery, the *aquilifer* (Plate I, 6).

**Signum.** Each cohort had its own standard (*signum*), <sup>44</sup> carried by a *signifer* (Plate I, 5). These standards were of various forms—an open hand, the figure of an animal, etc. On the staff, below the figure, were fastened the decorations of honor which had been bestowed on the cohort—disks, half moons, wreaths, and tassels. The diversity of form was necessary in order that each soldier might recognize easily the standard of his own cohort. In hasty preparation for battle each man found his place by looking for his standard; and all through the battle he regulated his movements by those of his standard. For this reason the technical terms for such maneuvers as advancing and retreating are *signa inferre*, *signa referre*, etc.

**Musical Instruments.** There were no bands, and the only <sup>45</sup> use made of musical instruments was in the giving of signals. The only instrument mentioned by Caesar in the Gallic War is the *tuba*, a straight brazen trumpet, blown by a *tubicen*, but others were probably used as well (Plate I, 7, 8).

#### BAGGAGE OF THE LEGION

The heavy baggage (*impedimenta*) consisted of tents, provisions, hand-mills for grinding grain, engines of war, etc., and <sup>46</sup> was carried on pack horses or mules (*iūmenta*). These were driven or led by the drivers (*mūliōnēs*) and camp servants (*cālōnēs*), who were probably slaves.

#### AUXILIARY INFANTRY AND CAVALRY

**Infantry.** The light armed infantry (Plate I, 1 and 2), <sup>47</sup> which Caesar usually calls *auxilia*, contained no Roman citizens. Caesar had slingers (*funditōrēs*) from the Balearic Islands, and archers (*sagittārii*) from Crete and Numidia; but most of his light armed infantry was drawn from friendly Gallic tribes and was armed in the native fashion. He put little reliance on them for serious fighting. but made them

useful in various ways: as skirmishers, to delay the enemy's attack; as raiders; in making fortifications at a critical time; for mere show, to impress the enemy with his numbers; and in pursuit of a routed enemy. Their higher officers were prefects (*praefecti*). Their standard was a banner (*vexillum*, Plate I, 4) attached to a horizontal cross-piece at the end of a staff.

- 48 **Cavalry.** Caesar had no Roman cavalry. During his first six years in Gaul he had none but Gallic cavalry, but in the seventh year he secured some Germans and found them much more effective. They were useless against a line of infantry, but met the enemy's cavalry. Caesar employed them especially as scouts and raiders, or in pursuit of a routed enemy. Their higher officers were *praefecti*, and their standards were *vexilla* (cf. 47).

#### THE CAMP

- 49 A Roman army never halted even for one night without fortifying its camp (*castra*) with a wall and trench. This must have cost two or three hours of hard work; but it made the army safe from attack, and so allowed the general to choose his own time and place for battle; and in case of defeat the camp was a place of refuge.
- 50 **Location and Form of Camp.** Whenever it was possible the camp was built on a hill sloping gently toward the enemy, so that the Roman army could form its line of battle in front of the camp and make the enemy charge up hill. The normal shape of the camp was a square or oblong, but it had to be accommodated to the shape of the hill. Fig. 3 shows the normal shape, while Fig. 4 shows the actual shape of one of Caesar's camps. Within the camp, streets were laid out in accordance with a fixed plan, and every legion, every cohort, every manipule had always the same location. Fig. 3 shows the normal arrangement for a camp which would accommodate five legions.



edge of the top stood a row of palisades (*vāllī*), about four feet high, which served as a breastwork. In case of an attack the

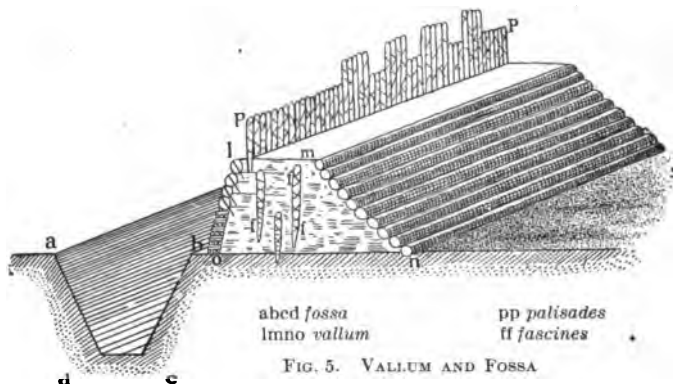


FIG. 5. VALLUM AND FOSSA

enemy would be halted by the ditch several feet from the wall, and be completely exposed to the Roman javelins, while the defenders stood on a higher position, protected by a breastwork, and could throw their missiles with great effect. In times of especial danger, towers (*turrēs*) were erected at intervals on top of the wall.

- 52 Gates of Camp.** Usually there was one gate (*porta*) on each of the four sides; but in the camp represented in Fig. 4 there were two gates in front, where the soldiers had most occasion to pass in and out. The gates were mere openings in the wall, about forty feet wide as a rule. Fig. 4 shows how they were protected. A short curved wall projected into the camp from the left side of the gate. A line of soldiers stood in the gate, and another manned this wall. If the enemy got into the opening they would be exposed on their shieldless side to a shower of missiles from the wall. Ordinarily this was a sufficient protection, and it left the gates open for a sudden charge from within. But in times of great emergency the gates could be walled up solidly.



PLATE II



- |                          |                                  |                        |                  |
|--------------------------|----------------------------------|------------------------|------------------|
| 1. <i>imperator</i>      | 2. <i>legatus</i>                | 3. <i>centurio</i>     | 4. <i>lictor</i> |
| 5. <i>Gallic warrior</i> | 6. <i>Gallic standard bearer</i> | 7. <i>Gallic chief</i> |                  |

## THE MARCH

**Line of March.** The vanguard usually consisted of cavalry 53 and light armed infantry. Under ordinary circumstances each legion was followed by a train of pack animals carrying its baggage; but in the near neighborhood of the enemy all the baggage was brought together, preceded by most of the legions and followed by the rest.

**Length of March.** The length of a day's march of course 54 varied greatly, according to the nature of the country and the need for haste. As the soldier had to carry from forty-five to sixty pounds of arms and baggage, and as the army had to halt early in the afternoon to give time for making camp, the rate of march of the army could be nothing like that of an unencumbered individual. Probably when there was no need of haste the average march was no more than twelve to fifteen miles, and a day of rest was given about every fifth day. But Caesar, like Napoleon, owed much of his success to his power of inspiring his army to great efforts on the march. When he speaks of forced marches (*magna itinera*, *maxima itinera*), we are to think of marches of from eighteen to twenty-five miles a day, or even more. On one occasion he marched four legions, without baggage, fifty Roman miles in less than thirty hours, including all stops.

## THE BATTLE

Since the legions had to do the serious work of fighting, the 55 line of battle was arranged solely with reference to their tactics. When the enemy were within the short range of the Roman javelins they were met by a volley of these deadly missiles and their ranks were thus broken. Immediately the Romans charged, and the rest of the battle was fought out at close quarters with the sword. When possible, therefore, the line of battle was drawn up facing down a gentle slope. This gave greater range to the javelins and greater impetus to the charge; while the enemy must begin the battle breathless from

a charge up the hill. The auxiliary infantry might be posted in front of the line, but it was expected to do no more than delay the attack of the enemy. More often it was posted on the flanks, sometimes merely as a show of strength. The cavalry might meet the cavalry of the enemy. Otherwise it usually merely awaited the rout of the enemy, when it pursued and cut to pieces the fugitives.

**56 Line of Battle.** The line of battle was commonly triple (*triplex aciēs*), though sometimes only double (*duplex aciēs*). In the triple line of battle the first line was composed of the first four cohorts of each legion, standing side by side, with no intervals between the cohorts. Three cohorts of each legion formed the second line, which stood a short distance behind the first, ready to relieve it when it became exhausted in the battle. The remaining three cohorts of each legion formed the third line, in the rear, and were held as a reserve for any emergency. Each of these lines was eight or ten men deep, and only the front rank of the first line could engage in the battle at any one moment. But that rank would fight vigorously for a few moments, then fall back and be relieved by the next rank, and so on until all the men of the first line had been engaged. Then it was relieved as a whole by the second line.

**57 Orbis.** When surrounded by the enemy and hard pressed, a body of men would form what is now called a hollow square, and what the Romans called a circle (*orbis*), with the baggage and camp servants inside the ring of armed men.

#### THE CAPTURE OF TOWNS

**58** A great part of Caesar's military operations consisted in the capture of walled towns. The fortification of these towns was rather primitive, but it was quite effective (Fig. 6). The face of the wall showed regular rows of log ends separated by huge stones. No one log could be grappled and pulled out, for they were all fastened together far within the wall. The logs

would not burn, for they were each imbedded in stone and earth. A battering-ram could demolish a solid stone wall, but the framework of timbers defied it. Therefore Caesar relied little on making breaches in the walls and entering in that way. But there were three other possible methods—a blockade, a sudden assault, and a formal siege.

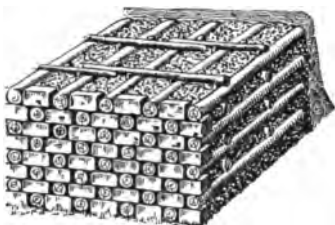


FIG. 6. SECTION OF GALLIC WALL

59

**Blockade (obsidiō).** A ring of fortifications could be built around the town, and the place starved into submission. But this was too slow a method to be employed unless all other methods were hopeless, and Caesar used it only once in the Gallic War.

**Sudden Assault (oppugnātiō repentina).** If a town had low walls and few defenders, it might be taken by a sudden assault. Archers and slingers kept the wall partly clear of defenders. Soldiers approached the wall in safety by holding their shields over their heads and letting them overlap, forming a *testūdō* (tortoise, Plate III, 3). If there was a trench around the wall, they filled it with bundles of brushwood (*crātēs*, fascines). Then they mounted the wall by means of scaling ladders (*scālae*, Plate III). But such towns would usually surrender without a struggle, so that the method was little used.

**Formal Siege (oppugnātiō).** The favorite method was by the use of the agger and tower (*turris*). The agger was a great causeway, built of logs and earth, which sloped gradually up toward the top of the wall. Generally it was not intended to be as high as the wall. In that case a tower, several stories high, was pushed up the causeway on rollers. From the upper stories, which rose higher than the wall, archers and slingers and artillery shot down the defenders. When the tower was near enough, a drawbridge was let down from one of the lower stories to the top of the wall, and the Romans charged across

it. Sometimes the causeway was as high as the wall, and thus itself gave access to its top (Fig. 7). Sometimes, if the wall was

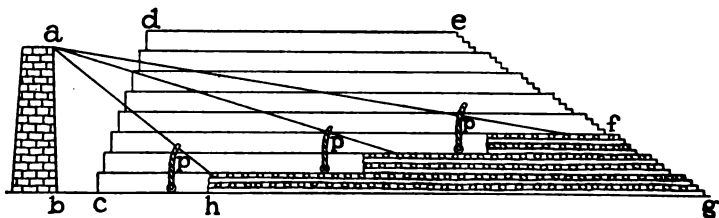


FIG. 7. SIDE VIEW OF AGGER IN PROCESS OF CONSTRUCTION

*a b*, the enemy's wall. *f g h*, part already constructed. *c d e f h*, part to be constructed. *a b c d*, part to be filled in with earth and rubbish at the last moment. *p p p*, lines of plutei protecting the workmen. The lines of direction show the spaces protected by the plutei.

low and the ground about it level, no causeway was built, and the tower was pushed over the ground to the wall. Then a battering-ram might be hung in the lowest story, and the drawbridge was let down from one of the upper stories. Plate III illustrates this method of using the tower, as well as several other devices; but the city is not a Gallic town.

- 62 Means of Protecting the Besiegers.** In building the agger and carrying on the other operations of a siege the assailants had to approach within easy range of missiles from the wall: hence they made use of several forms of protection.

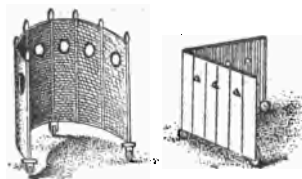


FIG. 8

immediately behind it; and it could be moved forward at pleasure.

*b*. The musculus (Fig. 9) was a hut with one end open and the other end partially closed. Its roof was strong enough to withstand the

*a*. The pluteus (Fig. 8) was a heavy shield, several feet high, mounted on wheels. A line of these, parallel to the wall, gave protection to men working immediately behind it; and it could be



FIG. 9

PLATE III



1. *turtis*    2. *testudo arriolaria*    3. *testudo*    4. *onager*    5. *ballista*



shock of great stones which might be dropped upon it from the wall. It could be pushed up to the wall, and under its shelter men could dig out the foundation of the wall.

c. The *testūdō arietāria* (Plate III, 2) was a similar hut in which hung a battering-ram (*ariēs*), a heavy timber capped with iron, intended to be swung against the wall.



FIG. 10

d. The *vinea* (Fig. 10) was a lighter hut, open at both ends. A number of these placed end to end made a safe covered gallery extending from a point out of range up to the *musculi*, *testūdinēs*, or *plutei*.

All these huts were pushed forward on rollers.

**The Artillery.**—Caesar had with him engines of war, the 63 purpose of which corresponded to that of modern artillery.

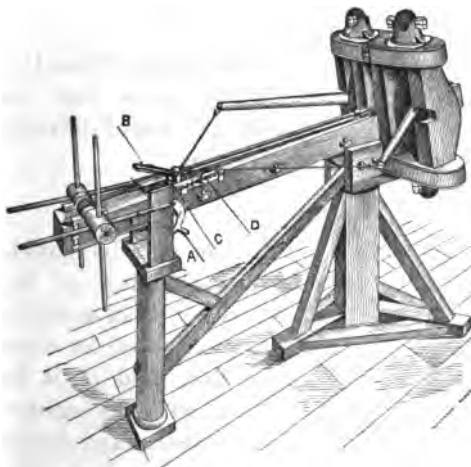


FIG. 11. CATAPULTA

They were too heavy and clumsy to be of much service in battle: hence their chief use was in siege operations. The general name *tormenta* is derived from *torqueō*, to twist, and was applied to them because the propelling force was obtained by twisting a stick between two tightly stretched horse-hair ropes.

a. The *ballista*

(Plate III, 5) threw heavy stones at a considerable angle from the horizontal.

*b.* The catapult (*catapulta*) threw great arrows nearly horizontally. Fig. 11 makes most of its mechanism clear without explanation. (A) is an arrangement for raising or lowering the rear of the nearly horizontal track, thus regulating the range. The track is grooved to hold a long sliding carriage, on the rear portion of which is the trigger (B). The operation of firing was as follows: The carriage was pushed forward till the claws of the trigger were over the bowstring; a block (c) was shoved under the heavy rear end of the trigger, and the claws were thus held down on the string; the carriage was drawn back by means of the windlass, and held in place by the hook (D); the arrow was laid on the grooved upper surface of the carriage, with its end resting on the string between the claws of the trigger; the block (c) was withdrawn and the rear end

of the trigger fell by its own weight, thus releasing the string.

*c.* The *scorpiō* was a small catapult.

*d.* The *onager* (Plate III, 4) threw stones, like the ballists, but was of different construction.

#### THE FLEET

The fleet is to be considered as belonging to the army, rather than as a separate organization; for when Caesar had need of it he manned it with his legionaries, put tribunes and centurions in command of indi-



FIG. 12

vidual ships, and made one of his legates its admiral. The ships of war were about eight times as long as they were broad, and were therefore called *nāvēs longae*, in distinction from the transports (*nāvēs onerariae*), which were shorter and wider. They had a mast and single sail, but in battle depended on oars for their propulsion. Their prows (Fig. 12) were armed with metal beaks (*rōstra*), with which to ram the ships of the enemy. If the Romans failed in this they sought to make the battle as much as possible like a battle on land, their special object being to grapple one of the enemy's ships and board it.

## A BRIEF BIBLIOGRAPHY

The following list of books will suggest those which are most helpful to pupils and teachers who read only English. Those who wish to make a more detailed study of special points will find that Holmes gives references to almost everything of importance in the enormous literature of Caesar, except on the linguistic side.

### Editions

A. Holder. (Freiburg and Tübingen, 1882.) This may be useful for its (inaccurate) index of words, which is intended to be complete.

H. Meusel. (Berlin, 1894.) The critical edition is the best text edition of the Gallic War. No explanatory notes.

H. Rheinhard. (Stuttgart, 1896.) Useful for its illustrations.

Of the following English editions the first two are useful:

C. E. Moberly. (The Clarendon Press, Oxford, 1878.)

A. G. Peskett. (Cambridge, 1878-1882.)

St. George Stock. (The Clarendon Press, Oxford, 1898.) Usually good when it follows good authorities.

### Caesar's Life and Campaigns

Col. T. A. Dodge. *Caesar*. (Houghton, Mifflin & Co., 1894.) Useful if Napoleon can not be obtained, but without much independent value.

W. Warde Fowler. *Julius Caesar*. (G. P. Putnam's Sons, 1892.) The best life of Caesar.

J. A. Froude. *Caesar: a Sketch*. Interesting, but grossly partisan and inaccurate.

T. Rice Holmes. *Caesar's Conquest of Gaul*. (Macmillan

& Co., London, 1899.) The best discussion, in any language, of the military and geographical problems.

Napoleon III. *History of Julius Caesar*. (Out of print, but can be obtained at second hand. If possible get the Atlas with the two volumes. The French edition is more easily obtained.) Volume II gives a more complete narrative and explanation of Caesar's campaigns in Gaul than can be found elsewhere, but without much discussion of disputed points.

C. W. C. Oman. *Seven Roman Statesmen*. (Edward Arnold, London, 1902.) The characterization of Caesar is too violent a reaction against the views of Mommsen and Froude.

Plutarch's Lives. Every pupil should read the life of Caesar.

Anthony Trollope. *The Commentaries of Caesar*. (In the series, Ancient Classics for English Readers.)

Much that is valuable will be found in the following histories:

Duruy. *History of Rome*.

Long. *The Decline of the Roman Republic*. This is especially good in its treatment of Caesar's campaigns.

Merivale. *History of the Romans under the Empire*.

Mommsen. *History of Rome*. The chief defect of this extraordinary work is its too great partiality for Caesar.

### Miscellaneous

H. P. Judson. *Caesar's Army*. (Ginn & Co., 1888.) This gives much fuller information about the organization and tactics of the Roman army than can be given in the introduction of an edition. It should be at hand for reference.

R. Oehler. *Bilderatlas zu Cäsars de Bello Gallico*. (Leipzig, 1890.)

W. Rüstow. *Atlas zu Cäsars Gallischem Krieg*. (Stuttgart.)

A. Van Kampen. *Quindecim ad Caesaris de Bello Gallico Commentarios Tabulae*. (Gotha.)

## REFERENCES AND ABBREVIATIONS

In the grammatical references, App. = Appendix (following Book VII); G. L. = Glidersleeve-Lodge; A. = Allen and Greenough; B. = Bennett; H.-B. = Hale and Buck; H. = Harkness. In each case the latest revision has been followed.

References are made to books of the text in Roman characters, to chapters in bold-faced Arabic numerals, to lines in plain-faced Arabic numerals. Thus, III, 2, 11 = Book III, chapter 2, line 11.

In the page vocabularies, the figures 1, 2, 3, and 4, following definitions, indicate the number of times the word is used in Books I-IV. \* indicates that the word is used 5 or more times in those books.

For the explanation of some other details, see p. 2 of the general vocabulary at the end of the book.

abbr. = abbreviation.  
abl. = ablative.  
acc. = accusative.  
act. = active.  
adj. = adjective.  
adv. = adverb, adverbial.  
card. = cardinal.  
cf. = *cōnfer*, compare.  
chap. = chapter.  
comp. = comparative.  
conj. = conjunction.  
dat. = dative.  
def. = defective.  
dem. = demonstrative.  
dim. = diminutive.  
distr. = distributive.  
e.g. = *exempli grātiā*, for example.  
encl. = enclitic.  
etc. = *et cētera*, and so forth.  
f. = feminine.  
fig. = figure, figuratively.  
freq. = frequentative.  
fut. = future.  
gen. = genitive.  
i.e. = *id est*, that is.  
imp. = imperative.  
impers. = impersonal.  
impf. = imperfect.  
incept = inceptive.  
ind. = indicative.  
indecl. = indeclinable.  
indef. = indefinite.

inf. = infinitive.  
int. = introduction.  
interrog = interrogative.  
intr. = intransitive.  
irr. = irregular.  
l., ll. = line, lines.  
lit. = literally.  
m. = masculine.  
neg. = negative.  
n., neut. = neuter.  
n. (in grammatical references) = note.  
nom. = nominative.  
num. = numeral.  
ord. = ordinal.  
p., pp. = page, pages.  
part. = participle.  
pass. = passive.  
pers. = personal.  
pf. = perfect.  
pl. = plural.  
plupf. = pluperfect.  
poss. = possessive.  
prep. = preposition.  
pres. = present.  
pron. = pronoun.  
reflex. = reflexive.  
rel. = relative.  
sc. = *scilicet*, supply.  
sing. = singular.  
subj. = subjunctive.  
sup. = superlative.  
tr. = transitive.

## BOOK I, CHAPTERS 1 TO 29. WAR WITH THE HELVETII

The Helvetii were a Gallic people living in northern Switzerland. Hemmed in by the mountains, they had retained without loss their strength and independence. During the invasion of Gaul by the Cimbri a part of the Helvetii had left their country independently and defeated a Roman army in 107 B.C. Many of the Helvetii had joined the Cimbri and Teutoni in their attempted invasion of Italy in 102 and 101 B.C. After the disastrous result of these attempts the Helvetii had remained comparatively quiet for a long time; but now, dissatisfied with the narrow limits of their country, they determined to seek wider fields.

The originator of this plan was Orgetorix, their most powerful nobleman. But the Helvetii soon learned that he was trying to further ambitious plans of his own and to use them as tools; that he intended to make himself their king, and then to unite with two neighboring states in the subjugation of all Gaul. The penalty for the crime of aiming at royal power was death, but Orgetorix anticipated the punishment by committing suicide. Yet the Helvetii persisted in the plans which they had adopted at his suggestion. They made all preparations, then burned their homes and gathered near the western end of Lake Geneva, ready to set out.

But Rome had been watching their preparations in some alarm. If the Helvetii marched through the province, they could not fail to give trouble to the Romans. And what was a more serious matter, if the Helvetii left their country vacant it would be occupied by the Germans; and the Germans were dangerous neighbors. Caesar's term of office as governor of Gaul began in the year of their departure. Learning that the Helvetii intended to set out sooner than he had expected, he hurried to Geneva, so that when they gathered he was there to meet them. He destroyed the bridge across the Rhone, which they had failed to secure, and with his one legion hastily made and manned a line of defenses on the south bank of the river. He then forbade their crossing, and easily checked their attempts to disobey his orders.

The baffled Helvetii now obtained permission of the Sequani to pass to the west through their territory. The great host, with its women and children and thousands of wagons, marched slowly through this to the Saone, and its van crossed the river and began plundering the land of

the Haedui. Meanwhile Caesar had hastened back to northern Italy and returned with five legions. The Haedui, who had been nominal allies of the Romans for many years, now appealed to Caesar. He was not sorry to appear as the champion of Gallic freedom, for he thus gained a footing in Gaul. Finding that one of the four divisions of the Helvetii had not yet crossed the Saone, he fell upon it and cut it to pieces. Immediately he crossed the river in pursuit of the main body. For fifteen days he followed it, but on account of the nature of the country he was unable to head off the slowly moving mass. Finally the lack of provisions compelled him to turn aside to Bibracte. Believing that this action was due to cowardice, the Helvetii in turn became the pursuers, thus allowing Caesar to meet them on ground of his own choosing. In a hard fought battle he defeated them with immense loss; and the remnant of the once proud and mighty people sadly returned to its mountain home.

### EXPLANATION OF CAMPAIGN MAP

Brown indicates the part of Transalpine Gaul which belonged to Rome when Caesar entered upon his command.

Red indicates the states whose submission Caesar secured by conquering them in battle. The Boii are shown in the homes given them after their defeat. The Latobrigi and the Tulingi lived across the Rhine and are not shown on this map. The Ceutrones, the Graioceli, and the Caturiges were forced to permit the passage of the army, but were probably not reduced to submission, and are therefore left uncolored.

Blue indicates the states which submitted without fighting. In chap. 30 we are told that envoys from "nearly all Gaul" came to Caesar as a result of his victory over the Helvetii. It is certain that Celtic Gaul is meant; therefore Aquitania and Belgium are left uncolored. In chap. 31 we are told that Ariovistus held a part of the territory of the Sequani; this is left uncolored. In II, 34 we are given a list of states which did not submit till 57; these also are left uncolored. All the rest of Celtic Gaul may be supposed to have submitted at the close of the war with the Helvetii; it is therefore colored blue.

The line of march shows Caesar's route in crossing the Alps the second time, with the five legions. It also shows the route of the Helvetii after they left their territory. After crossing the Arar Caesar's route coincides with that of the Helvetii.

Crossed sabers indicate battlefields. Colonel Stoffel's identification of the main battlefield (*Histoire de Jules César: Guerre Civile*, II 439-453) is almost certainly right and is indicated on this map.





# C. IULI CAESARIS

## BELLI GALLICI

### LIBER PRIMUS

#### 1. Gallia est omnis divisa in partēs trēs, quārum ūnam

**1. Gallia, -ae, f.,** Gallia (gāl'i-a), better, Gaul, including either (1) Belgium, Celtica, and Aquitania, or (2) only Celtica. See map. \*

**sum, esse, fui** (App 66), *intr.*, be, exist, live; stay, remain; serve for; with *gen.* in predicate, be the mark or sign of; belong to; be the duty of; with *dat.* of possessor, have. \*

**omnis, -e, adj.,** all, every, all the, every kind of; the whole, as a whole; *m. pl.* as noun, all, every one; all the rest; *n. pl.* as noun, all possessions or goods. \*

**dividō, dividere, divisi, divisum,** *tr.* divide, separate; **divisus, pf. part.** as *adj.*, divided. \*

**in, prep. with acc. and abl.** With acc. (1) of motion, from one place into or towards another place, into, to; in, among; towards, for, against; at; upon; (2) of time, till, into; for; on, at; (3) other uses, in, in respect to, for, under, over, on; in diēs, from day to day; in fugam conicere, put to flight; in Caesarem incidere, meet with Caesar;

**sumum in cruciatum venire,** be severely punished. With *abl.* (1) of rest or motion within a place, in among, over, within, throughout; on, upon; (2) of time, in, during, in the course of; on; (3) other uses, in, in the case of; in consequence of, in view of; on, upon; in Arari, over the Arar; in eō, in his case; in ancoris, at anchor; in opere esse, be engaged in the work. \*

**pars, partis, f.,** part, portion; party, faction; direction, side, place; district. \*

**trēs, tria, gen. trium (III), card. num. adj.,** three. \*

**qui, quae, quod, rel. pron. (and see quis),** who, which, what; often implying an antecedent, he who, those who; with force of *dem.*, this, that; **quam ob rem,** wherefore; **quem ad modum,** in what manner, how, as; **quō, with comparatives,** the; **quō... eō,** the... the. \*

**ūnus, ūna, ūnum, gen. ūnius** (App. 32), *card. num. adj.*, one, the same one; single, alone; the sole, the only; the sole or only one. \*

Chap. 1. A brief description of the great divisions of Gaul, and of their inhabitants.

**1. Gallia:** in translating, proper names should always be pronounced like English words. The pronunciation is always indicated in the vocabulary. The values of the vowel markings are shown in the table on p. 2 of the vocabulary at the end of the book.

**omnis, "as a whole,"** shows that Gallia here has meaning (1) of the vocabulary.

**divisa:** the adjective.

**partēs trēs:** on the divisions of Gaul, see Int. 23.

**quārum ūnam,** "one of which (parts)." **ūnam:** case? App. 124: G.-L. 330: A. 387: B. 172: H.-B. 390: H. 404. The grammar references should al-

\*The asterisk, in the vocabulary, shows that the word occurs five or more times in Books I-IV. A figure, 1, 2, 3, or 4, similarly placed, is used when the word occurs less than five times.

incolunt Belgae, aliam Aquitānī, tertiam quī ipsōrum linguā Celtae, nostrā Gallī appellantur. Hī omnēs linguā, institūtis, lēgibus inter sē differunt. Gallōs ab Aquitānis Garumna

2. incolō, -colere, -colui, —, *tr. and intr.* [colō, cultivate], inhabit, dwell in; live. \*

Belgae, -ārum, *m.* (ABdefg), the Belgae (bēl'jē), or Belgians. \*

alius, -a, -ud, *gen. alius* (App. 32), another, other; alius . . . alius, one . . . another; in *pl.*, some . . . others. \*

Aquitānus, -a, -um, *adj.*, of Aquitania, Aquitanian; *pl. as noun*, the Aquitani (āk'wi-tā'nī), possibly Aquitanians, inhabiting southwestern Gaul. \*

tertius, -a, -um, *ord. num. adj.* [ter, thrice], third. \*

ipse, ipsa, ipsum, *gen. ipsius* (App. 59), intensive pron., self (as opposed to some one else; not to be confused with the reflexive sē, self. App. 163); himself, herself, itself, themselves; he, she, it, they; as *adj.*, very; in *gen.*, his, her, its, or their own. \*

lingua, -ae, *f.*, tongue, language. 3.  
3. Celtae, -ārum, *m.*, the Celtae (sēl'tā), better, the Celts. 1.

noster, -tra, -trum, *poss. adj.* [nōs, we], our, ours, our own; in *pl. as noun*, our men, our troops. \*

Gallus, -a, -um, *adj.*, of Gaul, Gallic; *pl. as noun*, the Gauls, inhabiting Central Gaul, Northern Italy, etc. \*

appellō, 1, *tr.*, accost, address, call by name, name, call. \*

hic, haec, hoc, *dem. pron.* (App. 54), used for what is near in space, time, or thought, with more emphasis than is; this, this man, woman, or thing; he, she, it; *abl. sing.* hōc, on this account; in this respect; the (with comparatives); hic . . . ille, the latter . . . the former. See App. 170, a. \*

Institūtum, -i, *n.* [institūō, set up, establish], a fixed course or principle; habit, institution, custom. 3.

4. lēx, lēgis, *f.*, law, statute, enactment. 4.

inter, *prep. with acc.* (sometimes following its noun), (1) of place, among, between: (2) of time, during, within, for: (3) in other relations, among, between, in; in among or between; to; over; along with: (4) with reflex. pron., of reciprocal action (App. 166), with, to, or from each other or one another, as, inter sē differunt, differ from one another; each other, one another, as, co-

ways be looked up and studied. In the notes on I, 1-29, for each of the most common principles of syntax grammar references are given three times, in order that it may be studied and twice reviewed.

2. Belgae: it is impossible to understand and appreciate Caesar's story unless one follows it on the map. The letters in parentheses which follow geographical names, in the vocabulary, correspond to the letters on the margins of the map in the front of the book. By their aid places can easily be found.

aliam, tertiam: *sc. partem incolunt.*  
quī = ū quī: a nominative pronoun antecedent is often omitted.

ipsōrum linguā, "in their own language." linguā: case? App. 143: G.-L. 401: A. 409: B. 218: H.-B. 423: H. 476.

3. Celtae, Galli: case? App. 95, a: G.-L. 205: 206: A. 283: 234: B. 167: 168, 2, b: H.-B. 316: 317, 3: H. 393, 8.

linguā, institūtis, lēgibus, "in language, institutions, and laws." Notice the absence of a conjunction. Latin usually says either "a, b, c," or "a and b and c," while English usually says "a, b, and c." For case see App. 149: G.-L. 397: A. 418: B. 226: H.-B. 441: H. 480.

4. Garumna flūmen: *sc. dividit flūmen*: case? App. 95, b: G.-L. 320: 331: A. 281: 282: B. 169, 1, 2: H.-B. 316: 317, 2, a: H. 393.

*fūmen*, ā Belgis Matrona et Sēquana dīvidit. Hōrum omnium s fortissimī sunt Belgae, proptereā quod ā cultū atque hūmānitāte prōvinciae longissimē absunt, minimēque ad eōs mercā-

*hortāti* inter sē, encouraging one another. \*

*sui, sibi, sē, or sēsē, reflex. pron. of sē person* (App. 163, 164, 165), himself, herself, itself, themselves; he, she, they, etc.; inter sē, see inter and App. 166. \*

*differō, differre, distuli, dilātum, tr. and intr. [ferō, carry. App. 81], scatter, spread; put off, defer; be different, differ. 1.*

ā (before consonants), ab (before vowels and some consonants), abs (before tē, and in some compounds), prep. with abl., originally denoting separation; (1) of place, persons, time, etc., from, away from, from the vicinity of: (2) denoting position, in some phrases, at, in, on, on the side of; ā tergō, in the rear: (3) with expressions of measure, away, off; ab milibus passuum duobus, two miles away: (4) with the pass. voice often denoting the agent, as the person from whom the action comes, by: (5) variously translated in other relations, from, by, in respect to, after. \*

*Garumna, -ae, m. (DEcd), the Garumna (ga-rūm'na), or Garonne, a river forming the boundary between Aquitania and Celtic Gaul. 3.*

5. *fūmen, -inis, n. [fluō, flow], river, stream. \**

*Matrona, -ae, m. (Bef), the river Matrona (māt'rō-na), now the Marne. 1. et, conj., and; also, too, even; et . . . et, both . . . and. \**

*Sēquana, -ae, m. (BCdef), the river Sequana (sēk'wa-na), better, Seine. 1.*

6. *fortis, -e, adj., strong, valiant, brave. \**

*proptereā, adv. [propter, because of], on this account; proptereā quod, because. \**

*quod, conj. [adv. acc. of the neuter of qui, who, which], as to which, in that, that; as to the fact that, inasmuch as; because; quod si, but if; proptereā quod, because. \**

*cultus, -us, m. [colō, cultivate], cultivation; civilization; mode of life; dress. 2.*

*atque, ac (ac only before consonants, atque before vowels and consonants), conj., usually adds something especially important, while et usually associates objects of equal importance; and also, and even, and; after words denoting a comparison or difference, than, as, from. \**

*hūmānitās, -tātis, f. [hūmānus, human], humanity, refinement, culture. 2.*

7. *prōvincia, -ae, f., office of governor of a province; province, a territory subject to Rome and governed by a Roman governor; especially the Province, the southern part of France. \**

*longē, adv. [longus, long], far, far away, distant; longē lātēque, far and wide. \**

*absum, abesse, āfui, intr. [sum, be. App. 78], be away from, be absent or distant, be wanting or free from. \**

*minimē, adv. [minimus, least], least,*

5. *Matrona . . . dīvidit:* the two rivers formed one boundary, and the verb is therefore singular: App. 180, b: G.-L. 285, 2: A. 317, b: B. 255, 3: H.-B. 331, 3: H. 392, 4.

*hōrum:* case? App. 101: G.-L. 367;

372: A. 346, a, 2: B. 201, 1: H.-B. 346: H. 440, 5; 442.

7. *prōvinciae:* see Int. 2, 26.

*quod absunt:* mode? App. 244: G.-L. 540: A. 540: B. 288, 1: H.-B. 554; 555: H. 588, 1. *minimē saepe,* "very seldom."

tōrēs saepe commeant atque ea quae ad effēminandōs animōs  
pertinent important, proximique sunt Germānīs, quī trāns  
10 Rhēnum incolunt, quibuscum continenter bellum gerunt.

very little; by no means, not at all. 4.

-que, conj. (always affixed to the word or some part of the expression it connects), and; que . . . que, or que . . . et, both . . . and. \*

ad, prep. with acc., originally denoting motion toward; (1) denoting motion, to, toward, against, to the vicinity of; (2) denoting position, at, by, near; (3) denoting purpose, with gerund and gerundive, to, for; (4) with numerals, up to, about; (5) of time, up to, until; at, on; (6) variously translated in other relations, at, after, for, to, according to, in the eyes of, among. \*

is, ea, id gen. eius (App. 57, weak dem. pron. referring to some person or object named in the context, this, that, these, those; he, she, it, they; the, a; is locus quō, a, or the, place where; ea quae, (the) things which; eō, with comp., the; eō magis, all the more; eō . . . quō, with comparatives, the . . . the. \* mercātor, -ōris, m. [mercōr, trade], merchant, trader. \*

8. saepe, adv., often, frequently; many times, again and again; saepe numerō, often, time and again, frequently; comp. saepius, oftener, more frequently; time and again; too often. \*

commeō, 1, intr. [meō, go], go back and forth; with ad, resort to, visit. 1.

mercātōrēs: Roman traders had for some time penetrated the interior of Gaul, bringing, among other things, strong wines, of which the Gauls were very fond.

8. quae . . . pertinent: notice that in relative clauses the relative almost always stands first and the verb last: everything that stands between the relative and the first finite verb which follows usually belongs to the relative clause.

effēminō, 1, tr. [ex + fēmina, woman], make effeminate, enervate, enfeeble. 1.

animus, -ī, m., soul, spirit; mind, intellect; feelings; character; resolution, courage; animi causā, for amusement; in animō habēre, intend. \*

9. pertineō, -tinēre, -tinui, —, intr. [teneō, hold], hold or reach to, extend; pertain, have reference to, concern; tend, aim at; eōdem pertinēre, tend to the same purpose or result amount to the same thing. \*

importō, 1, tr. [in + portō, carry] carry or bring in, import. 3.

proximus, -a, -um, adj., sup. (App. 43), nearest, next; last, previous; with acc. (App. 122, b), next to. \*

Germānī, -ōrum, m., the German [jēr-mā'nī], better, Germans. \*

trāns, prep. with acc., across, beyond, over; in compounds, trāns or trā, across, over, through. \*

10. Rhēnus, -ī, m. (ABCfgh), the river Rhene (rē'nūs), better, the Rhine. \* cum, prep. with abl., with, along with, together with. \*

continenter, adv. [continēns, continuous], without interruption, continually, continuously. 3.

bellum, -ī, n., war. \*

gerō, gerere, gessi, gestum, tr., bear, carry, wield; (of war) carry on,

ad effēminandōs animōs, "to weaken the courage"; the gerundive construction will be treated later.

9. proximī Germānīs, "next to the Germans": case? App. 122: G.-L. 3:9: A. 384; B. 192, 1: H.-B. 362, III: H. 434, 2.

10. quibuscum: use and position of cum? App. 140; 60, b: G.-L. 392; 413, 1: A. 413, b; 150, d: B. 222; 142, 4: H.-B. 412, a; 419, 4: H. 473, 1; 182, 2.

Quā dē causā Helvētīi quoque reliquōs Gallōs virtūte praecēdunt, quod ferē cotidiānis proeliis cum Germānis contendunt, cum aut suis finibus eōs prohibent, aut ipsi in eōrum finibus

perform, wage, conduct; *pass.*, be done, go on, occur. \*

11. *dē*, *prep.* with *abl.*, originally denoting motion from; (1) of place, from, down from, away from, out of; (2) of time, just after, about; (3) variously translated in other relations, about, concerning, of, from, in accordance with, for. \*

*causa*, -ae, *f.*, cause, reason, grounds, motive; situation, condition; a (*legal*) case, cause; *causam dicere*, to plead a case; *causā*, following a *gen.*, for the sake of, for the purpose of, for. \*

*Helvētīus*, -a, -um, *adj.* (Cgh), of the Helvetii (*hēl-vē'shyi*), Helvetian; *as noun*, one of the Helvetii, an Helvetian; *pl.*, the Helvetii, possibly Helvetians. \* *quoque*, *conj.*, following the word emphasized, also, too, likewise. \*

*reliquus*, -a, -um, *adj.* [*relinquō*, leave], left, remaining, the rest, the rest of; future, subsequent; *n. as noun*, remainder, rest. \*

*virtus*, -ūtis, *f.* [*vir*, man], manliness, valor, merit, worth, virtue, courage; strength, energy; *pl.*, good qualities, virtues, merits. \*

*praecēdō*, -cēdere, -cessi, -cessum, *tr.* [*cēdō*, go], go before; surpass, excel. 1.

12. *ferē*, *adv.*, almost, nearly, about, for the most part. \*

*cotidiānus*, -a, -um, *adj.* [*cotidiē*,

daily], every day, daily; usual, customary. \*

*proelium*, -ii, *n.*, battle, contest, engagement; *proelium committere*, join or begin battle, risk a fight, engage in battle, fight. \*

*contendō*, -tendere, -tendi, -tentum, *tr. and intr.* [*tendō*, stretch], push forward, hasten; march; strive, contend, fight; be anxious for; maintain, insist. \*

13. *cum*, *conj.*, when, as, while; after, as soon as; whenever; since, because; although; *cum . . . tum*, not only . . . but also, both . . . and; *cum primum*, as soon as. See App. 233-242. \*

*aut*, *conj.*, used where the difference is important or exclusive, or; *aut . . . aut*, either . . . or. \*

*suus*, -a, -um, *reflex. pronominal adj.* referring to subject (App. 163, 164, 165, 167, a) [*sui*, himself, herself, etc.], of or belonging to himself, herself, etc., his own, their own; his, hers, its, theirs; *sua*, *n. pl. as noun*, one's property; *sui*, *m. pl. as noun*, their men (*friends or countrymen*). \*

*finis*, -is, *m.*, boundary, limit, border, end; *pl.*, boundaries; territory, country. \*

*prohibeō*, 2. *tr.* [*habeō*, have, hold], keep from, keep, restrain, prevent, prohibit; keep out or away from; protect, guard. \*

11. *quā dē causā*, "(and) for this reason." The relative is often used to connect independent sentences in Latin, but is not so used in English. We must in such cases translate by a personal or demonstrative pronoun, and we may render the connective force of the relative by using "and" or "but," if we like: App. 173, a: G.-L. 610, 1: A. 308, f: B. 261, 6: H.-B. 284, 8: H. 510.

*Helvētīi*: although the rest of the chapter is concerned with the larger divisions of Gaul, Caesar speaks of this tribe in particular, because it is to be prominent in the following chapters.

*virtūte*: ablative of specification.

12. *proeliis*, "in battle"; but it is an ablative of means.

13. *suis finibus*: the reflexives *sui* and *suus* regularly refer to the subject:

bellum gerunt. Eōrum ūna pars, quam Gallōs obtinēre dic-  
 15 tum est, initium capit ā flūmine Rhodanō; continētur Ga-  
 rumnā flūmine, Ōceanō, finibus Belgārum; attingit etiam ab  
 Sēquanīs et Helvētiīs flūmen Rhēnum; vergit ad septen-  
 triōnēs. Belgae ab extrēmīs Galliae finibus oriuntur; perti-

**14. obtineō, -tinēre, -tinui, -ten-  
 tum, tr. [teneō, hold], hold, retain, pos-  
 sess, maintain; acquire, obtain. \***

**dicō, dicere, dixi, dictum, tr., say,  
 tell, speak, express, mention; name,  
 appoint; causam dicere, plead a case;  
 iūs dicere, administer justice. \***

**15. initium, -ti, n. [ineō, go into],  
 beginning, commencement, origin; edge  
 of a country, borders. \***

**capio, capere, cepi, captum, tr.,  
 take, capture, seize, catch; take in,  
 beguile, induce; take up (arms); choose,  
 select (a place); form, adopt (a plan);  
 reach, arrive at (a place); make (a begin-  
 ning); collem capere, take position on  
 a hill; fugam capere, take to flight. \***

**Rhodanus, -i, m. (CDfg), the river  
 Rhodanus (rōd'a-nūs), better, Rhone. \***

**contineō, -tinēre, -tinui, -ten-  
 tum, tr. [teneō, hold], hold together;  
 hold, keep, restrain; bound, shut in; con-  
 tain; sē continēre, with abl., remain  
 in, on, or within. \***

**16. Ōceanus, -i, m., the ocean; as  
 adj., with mare, the ocean. \***

**atingō, -tingere, -tigi, -tāc-  
 tum, tr. [ad+tangō, touch], touch or  
 border on, reach, extend to, arrive at,  
 attain. \***

**etiam, conj., and also, also, even,  
 yet. \***

**17. Sēquanus, -a, -um, adj., of or be-  
 longing to the Sequani; pl. as noun,  
 Sēquani (Cf g), the Sequani (sēk wā-  
 ni). \***

**vergō, -ere, —, —, intr., look or  
 lie towards, be situated; slope. 3.**

**septentriōnēs, -um, m. [septem,  
 seven + triōnēs, plough oxen], the  
 seven plough oxen, the stars of the Great  
 Bear, hence the north. \***

**18. extrēmus, -a, -um, adj. [sup. of  
 exterus. App. 44], outermost, utmost,  
 farthest, extreme; the farthest part of;  
 extrēmi (as noun), the rear; ad extrē-  
 mum, at last, at the end; as a last  
 resort. \***

**orior, oriri, ortus sum, intr., arise,  
 begin, spring up, rise, start; be born,  
 descend; oriēns sōl, the rising sun,  
 sunrise; the east. \***

*euis* therefore refers to the Helvetii.  
 For case see App. 134: G.-L. 390, 2: A.  
 400; 401: B. 214, 2: H.-B. 408, 2: H. 464, 1;  
 and notice that the preposition *ab* is  
 often used in the same sense, as in *ab*  
*Aquitānis*, I. 4.

*eōrum* refers to the Germans. For  
 case see App. 99: G.-L. 362: A. 343: B.  
 198: H.-B. 339: H. 440, 1.

*14. eōrum* refers back to the Gauls  
 as a whole, not to the Helvetii, who have  
 just been mentioned.

*quam* is the object, *Gallōs* the sub-  
 ject of *obtinēre*: App. 123: G.-L. 343, 2:  
 A. 397, e: B. 184: H.-B. 398: H. 415. The  
 infinitive clause, *quam . . . ob-  
 tinēre*, is the subject of *dictum est*:

App. 266: G.-L. 343, 2; 650: A. 580: B.  
 314, 1: H.-B. 589: H. 642. The whole  
 may be freely translated, "which,  
 as has been said, the Gauls occu-  
 py."

**15. ā flūmine, "at the river."** There  
 are many phrases in which we feel "at"  
 or "on" to be the appropriate preposi-  
 tion, but in which the Romans seem to  
 have thought of a starting-point and  
 consequently used *ab* or *ex*, which lit-  
 erally mean "from."

**16. ab Sēquanīs, "in the direction  
 of" or "on the side of."** Cf. the preced-  
 ing note.

**18. extrēmīs finibus: i. e. those  
 farthest from the Roman province.**

nent ad inferiorem partem fluminis Rhēnī; spectant in septentrionēs et orientem sōlem. Aquitānia ā Garumnā flū- mine ad Pŷrēnaeōs montēs et eam partem Ōceanī quae est ad Hispāniam pertinet; spectat inter occāsum sōlis et septentrionēs.

2. Apud Helvētiōs longē nōbilissimus fuit et dītissimus Orgetorix. Is, M. Messālā, M. Pisōne cōsulibus, rēgnī cupi-

19. *inferus*, -a, -um, *adj.*, low, below; *comp.*, inferior, lower; inferior; ab *inferiōre parte*, below, down stream; *sup.*, *infimus* or *imus*, lowest, last; *with collis*, the base of; *ad infimum*, ab *infimō*, at the bottom. \*

*spectō*, 1, *tr.* [*freq. of speciō*, see], look at, regard; look, face, lie. 3.

20. *sōl*, *sōlis*, *m.*, the sun; *ad occidentem sōlem*, toward the setting sun or west; *ad orientem sōlem*, toward the rising sun or east. \*

*Aquitānia*, -ae, *f.* (DEcd), Aquitania (āk-wī-tā-nī-a), southwestern Gaul between the Garonne and the Pyrenees. \*

21. *Pŷrēnaeus*, -a, -um, *adj.*, Pyrenean; *Pŷrēnaei montēs* (Ecde), the Pyrenaei (pīr'ē-nē'i), better, Pyrenees Mountains. 1.

*mōns*, *montis*, *m.*, mountain; mountain range; hill, height. \*

22. *Hispānia*, -ae, *f.* (Eabcd), Hispania (hīs-pā-nī-a), better, Spain. 2.

*occāsus*, -ūs, *m.* [*occidō*, fall, set], falling down, setting; *with sōlis*, sunset; the west. 4.

19. *in septentrionēs* . . . *sōlem*: i.e., toward the northeast.

22. *ad Hispāniam*, "near Spain"; the reference is to the Bay of Biscay.

*inter occāsum* . . . *septentrionēs*: i.e., toward the northwest.

Chap. 2-4. The ambition and downfall of Orgetorix.

Chap. 2. Orgetorix persuades the Helvetii to invade Gaul.

1. *nōbilissimus*: case? App. 156; 157: G.-L. 205; 211: A. 283; 284; 286: B. 233, 1, 2; 234: H.-B. 316; 317, 3: H. 394.

1. *apud*, *prep.* *with acc.*, at, among, near, with; (*with persons*) at the house of, in the presence of. \*

*nōbilis*, -e, *adj.* [*nōscō*, know], well known, distinguished, noted; of noble birth, noble; *as noun*, a noble. \*

*dives*, *divitis*, *adj.*, wealthy, rich. *Sup.*, *dītissimus*. 1.

2. *Orgetorix*, -igis, *m.*, Orgetorix (ōr-jēt'ō-riks), a chief of the Helvetii. \*

*M.*, *abbr. for Mārcus* (mār'kūs), a Roman praenomen. \*

*Messālā*, -ae, *m.*, Marcus Valerius Messala (mār'kūs vā-lē'rī-ūs mē-sā'la), consul, 61 B.C. 2.

*Pisō*, -ōnis, *m.*, Marcus Pupius Piso Calpurnianus (mār'kūs pū'pī-ūs pī'sō kāl-pēr'nī-ā'nūs), consul with Messala, 61 B.C. 2.

*cōsul*, -ulis, *m.*, a consul, one of the two chief magistrates elected annually by the Roman people. \*

*rēgnum*, -i, *n.* [*rēx*, king], kingly or royal authority, royal power, sovereignty; kingdom. \*

*cupiditās*, -tātis, *f.* [*cupidus*, eager], eagerness, desire, greed, avarice. 3.

2. *M. Messālā* . . . *cōsulibus*, "in the consulship of Marcus Messala and Marcus Piso." Case? App. 150: G.-L. 409; 410: A. 419, a; 420, 1: B. 227, 1, 2, a: H.-B. 421, 1: H. 489, 1. These men were consuls in the year 61 B. C., three years before Caesar went to Gaul. In giving dates the Romans designated the year by naming the consuls of that year.

*rēgnī*: case? App. 98: G.-L. 363, 2: A. 347; 348, note: B. 200: H.-B. 354: H. 440, 2.

ditate inductus coniuratiōnem nobilitatis fecit et civitati persuasit ut de finibus suis cum omnibus copiis exirent:  
 5 Perfacile esse, cum virtute omnibus praestarent, totius Galliae

3. **inducō, -ducere, -dūxi, -ductum, tr.** [ducō, lead], lead or draw on; induce, influence, instigate; cover. 4.

**coniuratiō, -ōnis, f.** [coniurō, swear together], a swearing together; plot, conspiracy; secret league, confederacy. 2.

**nobilitas, -tatis, f.** [nobilis, well known], celebrity; noble birth, nobility, rank; the nobility, the nobles. 3.

**faciō, facere, feci, factum, tr. and intr.: tr.,** make, construct, form, do, execute (commands, etc.); give (opportunity, etc.); with *ut*, bring about, cause: *intr.*, do, act. *Pass.*, **fiō, fieri, factus sum** (App. 83), with *passive of above meanings, and, used impersonally*, result, happen, come to pass. \*

**civitas, -tatis, f.** [civis, citizen], citizenship; the citizens (as forming a community), state, city. \*

4. **persuadeō, -suādēre, -suāsi, -suāsum, tr. and intr.** [suādeō, advise], advise prevailingly; convince, persuade, prevail upon; inculcate; sibi *persuādēri*, be convinced. \*

*ut* and *utl.* *adv. and conj.*, (1) as *interrog. adv.*, how? (2) as *rel. adv. and conj.*, as, in proportion as, just as; inasmuch as; as if: (3) as *conj.* (a) with *ind.*, when, after; (b) with *subj.*, that, in order that to; that, so that, so as to; though, although; after words of fearing, that not. I, 2.

**cōpia, -ae, f.**, supply, plenty, abundance, number; *pl.*, resources; forces, troops. \*

**exēō, -ire, -ii, -itum, intr.** [eō, go. App. 84], go from or out, depart from, leave. 2.

5. **perfacilis, -e, adj.** [facilis, easy], very easy. 2.

3. **coniuratiōnem**: the real purpose of the conspiracy was to make Orgetorix king, although the Helvetii, like most Gallic peoples, had no king. See Int. 29. His real reasons for wishing the people to emigrate were (1) that by making himself leader of the emigration he could get power enough to make himself king; and (2) that as king he wished to conquer the other states of Gaul.

**civitatī**: case? App. 115: G.-L. 346: A. 367: B. 187, II, a: H.-B. 362, footnote 3, (b): H. 420, 2. The list of verbs given in this rule should be committed to memory.

4. **ut exirent**: mode? App. 228, a: G.-L. 546, 1: A. 563: B. 295, 1: H.-B. 502, 3, (a): H. 563, 1; 565.

**cōpiis** here includes the women and children.

5. **perfacile esse . . . potiri** is indirect discourse, depending on a verb of saying implied in *persuāsit*. Indirect discourse (App. 265) is very common in

Caesar, and for this reason its essential principles should be grasped as soon as possible. No reference to details of the construction will be given in I, 1-29. The most essential fact to grasp is that when a declarative sentence is turned into indirect discourse the verb of the principal clause becomes an infinitive: App. 266: G.-L. 648; 650: A. 580, a: B. 314, 1, 2: H.-B. 589: H. 642, 1. This infinitive, however, cannot properly be translated by an English infinitive. In the present instance, what Orgetorix said was, *perfacile est . . . potiri*, "it is very easy to get control." The *est* has become *esse*, but the English equivalent is "(saying) that it was very easy to get control."

**cum . . . praestarent**, "since they excelled all in valor." **virtute**: case? App. 149: G.-L. 397: A. 418: B. 226: H.-B. 441: H. 480. **omnibus**: case? App. 116, I: G.-L. 347: A. 370: B. 187, III, 1: H.-B. 376: H. 429. **praestarent**: mode? App. 239: G.-L. 586: A. 549: B. 286, 2: H.-B. 526: H. 508.

*imperio potiri.* Id *hoc* facilius iis persuasit, quod undique loci naturā Helveticū continentur: unā ex parte flumine Rhēnō latissimō atque altissimō, quī agrum Helveticū ā Germaniis dividit; alterā ex parte monte Iūrā altissimō, quī est inter

*praestō, -stāre, -stiti, -stātum, tr. and intr. [stō, stand], stand or place before; show, exhibit, supply, furnish; be superior, excel, surpass; inpers., praestat, it is better or more advisable. \**

*tōtus, -a, -um, gen. tōtius (App. 32), adj., the whole, the whole of; entire, all; with force of adv., wholly, entirely. \**

*6. imperium, -ri, n. [imperō, command], command, order; authority, sway, supreme power, dominion, sovereignty; supreme military command, highest official power. \**

*potior, 4, intr. [potis, powerful], become master of, get control or possession of, obtain, capture. \**

*facile, adv. [facilis, easy], easily, readily. Comp., facilius; sup., facillimē (App. 41). \**

*undique, adv. [unde, whence], from all parts; on all sides, everywhere. \**

*7. locus, -i, m. (pl. loca, -ōrum, n.), place, position, locality, situation; topic, subject; condition, state; rank, family; opportunity; obsidum locō, as hostages. \**

*tōtius . . . potiri: i. e., the Helvetii were to do what the Haedui and the Sequani were trying to do. See Int. 29. imperio: case? App. 145: G.-L. 407: A. 4.0: B. 218, 1: H.-B. 429: H. 477, I.*

*6. id . . . persuasit, lit. "he persuaded this (id) to them more easily on this account (hoc)" = "he persuaded them to this course the more easily." hoc: case? App. 138: G.-L. 408: A. 404: B. 219: H.-B. 444: H. 475.*

*iis: cf. civitū, I. 3.*

*quod continentur: mode? App. 244: G.-L. 540: B. 286, 1: H.-B. 554: 555: H. 588, I. See the map for the details that follow.*

*7. loci: case? App. 99: G.-L. 362: A. 423: B. 198: H.-B. 339: H. 440, 1.*

*natura, -ae, f. [nāscor, be born], nature; natural disposition, character; constitution. \**

*ō (only before consonants), ex (before vowels and some consonants), prep. with abl., originally denoting motion out of; (1) of place, out of, from, away from; denoting position, in some phrases, on; unā ex parte, on one side: (2) of time, from, after, since; ex itinere, immediately after the march: (3) variously translated in other relations, from, out of, of, because of, in accordance with; ō regione, opposite. \**

*8. lātus, -a, -um, adj., broad, wide, extensive. 4.*

*altus, -a, -um, adj., high, lofty; deep; neut. as noun, the deep, the sea. \**

*ager, agri, m., field, land; district, territory. \**

*9. alter, -era, -erum, gen. alterius (App. 32), the other (of two); second; the one; alter . . . alter, the one . . . the other; alteri . . . alteri, the one party . . . the other. \**

*Iūra, -ae, m. (Cg), the Jura (Jū'ra) mountains. 3.*

*nātūrā: case? App. 143: G.-L. 401: A. 409: B. 218: H.-B. 423: H. 476.*

*8. ā Germaniis: case? App. 134: G.-L. 390, 1, 2: A. 401: B. 214, 2: H.-B. 408, 1, a: H. 461. We have learned in 1, 12-14, that the Rhine did not prevent frequent battles with the Germans. Later in his work Caesar implies that the pressure of the Germans was one of the reasons for the emigration of the Helvetii. On the other hand, the certainty that Germans would occupy Helvetia was one of the reasons why Caesar would not let the Helvetii emigrate. See Int. 3.*

*9. alterā ex parte: "on a second side." Notice how often a monosyllabic preposition stands between an adjective and its noun.*

10 Sēquanōs et Helvētiōs; tertiā lacū Lemannō et flūmine Rhodanō, quī prōvinciam nostram ab Helvētiis dividit. His rēbus fiēbat ut et minus lātē vagārentur et minus facile finitimis bellum inferre possent; quā ex parte hominēs bellandi cupidī magnō dolōre afficiēbantur. Prō multitūdine autem

10. lacus, -ūs, *m.*, lake. 3.

Lemannus, -ī (*with or without lacus*), *m.* (Cg), Lake Lemannus (lē-mān'ūs), better, Lake Leman, or the Lake of Geneva. 3.

12. rēs, rei, *f.*, of indefinite meaning; variously translated according to the context; thing, object, matter, event, affair, occurrence; circumstance, case; act, action, deed; reason, ground; rēs familiāris, property; rēs frumentāria, supplies; rēs militāris, warfare; novae rēs, revolution; rēs publica, state; rēs actae, deeds, achievements; quam ob rem, see qui and quis. \*

minus, *adv. comp.* [parvus, little], less; not at all, too little; quō minus, see quōminus. \*

lātē, *adv.* [lātus, wide], widely, extensively; longē lātēque, far and wide. 4.

vagor, 1, *intr.* [vagus, roaming], roam about, rove, wander. 4.

finitimus, -a, -um, *adj.* [finis, limit, border], bordering on, adjoining, neighboring; *pl. as noun*, neighbors. \*

13. inferō, inferre, intuli, illātum, *tr.* [ferō, bear], bear into, import, inflict, cause, produce; cast into; in equum inferre, mount on a horse; causā illātā, making an excuse; signa inferre, advance the standards, attack. \* possum, posse, potui, —, (App. 80),

*intr.* [potis, able+sum, be], be able, can; to have power or influence, have strength, be strong; with quam and sup., as possible, e.g. quam plurimīs possunt, as many as possible; multum posse, plus posse, and plurimum posse, see multum. \*

homō, -inis, *m.*, human being, man, as distinguished from the lower animals; in *pl.*, mankind, humanity, men. \*

bellō, 1, *intr.* [bellum, war], make or carry on war, wage war. 3.

14. cupidus, -a, -um, *adj.* [cupiō, desire], eager, desirous, zealous, fond. 2.

magnus, -a, -um, *adj.*, great (*in size, quantity, or degree*), large, abundant, much; important, extensive; loud (*voice*); high (*tide*); magni (*gen. sing. neut.*), of great importance; magnis itineribus, by forced marches. *Comp.*, maior; *sup.*, maximus. \*

dolor, -ōris, *m.* [doleō, grieve], grief, distress, pain (*physical or mental*), vexation, annoyance. 3.

afficiō, -ficere, -feci, -fectum, *tr.* [ad+faciō, do], do to, treat, affect; magnō dolōre afficere, to annoy greatly. 3.

prō, *prep.* with *abl.* [cf. prae, before], before, in front of; for, in behalf of; on account of, in consideration of, in

10. tertiā: sc. ex parte. The fourth boundary, not mentioned here, was formed by the Alps.

11. his . . . fiēbat, lit. "by these things it was brought about" = "the result was."

12. ut vagārentur: mode? App. 229, b: G.-L. 553, 3: A. 569, 2: B. 297, 2: H.-B. 521, 3, a: H. 571, 1.

minus, "less" than they desired. finitimis: for case cf. omnibus, 1.5.

13. quā ex parte, "and on this ground": use of relative? App. 173, a: G.-L. 610, 1: A. 308, f: B. 251, 6: H.-B. 284, 8: H. 510.

hominēs . . . cupidī, "being men who were desirous of fighting." bellandi: construction? App. 287; 291: G.-L. 425; 428: A. 502; 504: B. 338, 1, b: H.-B. 611; 612, 1: H. 624; 626.

14. prō . . . hominum, "considering the great size of the population."

hominum et prō glōriā belli atque fortitudinis angustōs sē finēs habēre arbitrābantur, quī in longitudinem milia passuum CCXL, in lātitudinem CLXXX patēbant.

3. His rēbus adductī et auctoritāte Orgetorigis permōti

return for; as, in the disguise of; in place of, instead of; in proportion to, according to; in compounds (written prō, pro, and prōd), for, before, forward, forth. \*

multitūdō, -inis, *f.* [multus, much], a great number, multitude; the multitude, the common people, the populace. \*

autem, *conj.*, but (a weak adversative); however, on the other hand; now; moreover. \*

15. glōria, -ae, *f.*, glory, renown, honor, fame, reputation. 2.

fortitūdō, -inis, *f.* [fortis, brave], bravery, courage. 1.

angustus, -a, -um, *adj.* [angō, squeeze], compressed, confined, straitened, narrow; in angustō, in a critical condition. \*

16. habēō, 2, *tr.*, have, hold, possess; think, consider, regard; deliver (with orationem); in animō habēre, intend; rationem habēre, have regard for; take care or see that (followed by an *ut* clause); cōsiliū habēre, form a plan; in numerō hostium habēre, consider as enemies; aliter sē habēre, be otherwise or different; for habēre with *pf. pass. part.*, e.g. vectigalia redēpta habēre, see App. 286, b. \*

arbitror, 1, *tr. and intr.* [arbitr, umpire], decide; think, believe. \*

longitūdō, -inis, *f.* [longus, long], length, extent; long duration. 1.

mille, *indecl. num. adj.*, a thou-

sand; *pl. as noun, milia, -ium, n.*, thousands (usually followed by genitive); milia passuum, thousands of paces, miles. \*

passus, -us, *m.* [pandō, extend], a pace, the distance from where the foot leaves the ground to where the same foot strikes it again, a measure of 4 feet, 10 1-4 inches (five Roman feet); mille passus or passuum, a Roman mile, 4851 feet. \*

17. ducenti, -ae, -a (CC), *card. num. adj.* [duo, two + centum, hundred], two hundred. \*

quadragintā (XL), *card. num. adj., indecl.*, forty. 2.

lātitudō, -inis, *f.* [lātus, wide], width, extent, breadth. \*

centum (C), *indecl. card. num.*, a hundred. 4.

octogintā (LXXX), *card. num. adj., indecl.* [octō, eight], eighty. 3.

pateō, -ēre, -ui, —, *intr.*, lie or be open, be passable; stretch out, extend. 4.

1. adducō, -ducere, -dūxi, -ductum, *tr.* [ducō, lead], lead or draw to, bring to; induce, influence. \*

auctoritās, -tātis, *f.* [auctor, producer], influence, character, authority, reputation. \*

permoveō, -movēre, -mōvi, -mōtum, *tr.* [moveō, move], move thoroughly, arouse, incite, excite; affect, influence. \*

15. sē: case? App. 123: G.-L. 343, 2: A. 397, c: B. 184: H.-B. 398: H. 415.

angustōs finēs, "(too) narrow limits." finēs: case? App. 124: G.-L. 330: A. 387: B. 172: H.-B. 390: H. 404. Caesar has somewhat overstated the size of Helvetia, because he had to depend on the re-

ports of the Gauls. It comprised rather more than half of modern Switzerland. According to chap. 29 the population was 263,000, while Switzerland now has a population of about 3,000,000.

16. milia: case? App. 130: G.-L. 335: A. 425: B. 181: H.-B. 387, 1: H. 417.

cōstituērunt ea quae ad proficiendum pertinērent comparāre, iumentōrum et carrōrum quam maximum numerum coēmere, sementēs quam maximās facere, ut in itinere cōpia frūmenti suppeteret, cum proximīs civitatibus pācem et amicitiam cōfirmāre. Ad eas rēs cōficiendās biennium sibi satis esse dūxē-

2. cōstituō, -stituere, -stitui, -stitutum, *tr.* [statuō, set up], set up, erect, construct; appoint, decide, decree, determine, establish, set, settle; (*of troops*) draw up, station; (*of ships*) anchor, station; raise (*a legion*). \*

proficiscor, proficisci, profectus sum, *intr.* [*cf.* prōficiō, advance], set out, start, depart; set out for, start for; go, proceed. \*

comparō, *1. tr.* [parō, prepare], prepare, get ready; acquire, gain, secure; prepare for. \*

3. iumentum, -i, *n.* [iungō, join, yoke], yoke or draft animal, beast of burden. 2.

carrus, -i, *m.*, cart. \*

quam, (1) *adv.*, (*a*) *interrog.*, how? (*b*) *rel.*, as; with *sup.* and with or without posse, as . . . as possible, very; quam diū, as long as; (2) *conj.* with comp., than; prius . . . quam, before; post . . . quam, postea . . . quam, after. \*

maximus, -a, -um, *adj.* [*sup.* of magnus, great. App. 42], greatest, largest. \*

numerus, -i, *m.*, number, quantity, amount; account; in numero, with gen., among, as. \*

coēmō, -emere, -ēmi, -ēptum, *tr.* [emō, buy], buy, buy up. 1.

4. sēmentis, -is, *f.* [sēmen, seed], sowing. 1.

iter, itineris, *n.* [eō, go], route, road; journey, march; passage; facere iter, march, travel; magnis itineribus, by forced marches. \*

frumentum, -i, *n.*, grain; *pl.*, crops. \*

5. suppetō, -petere, -petivi, -petitum, *intr.* [sub+petō, seek, obtain], be near or at hand; be in store, be supplied, hold out. 2.

pāx, pācis, *f.*, peace; favor. 2.

amicitia, -ae, *f.* [amicus, friend], friendship. \*

cōfirmō, *1. tr.* [firmō, strengthen], establish, strengthen, encourage, console; declare, assert. \*

6. cōficiō, -ficere, -fēci, -fectum, *tr.* [faciō, make], make or do thoroughly, complete, accomplish, finish; finish

Chap. 3. The Helvetii make preparations. Orgetorix conspires with other chiefs.

2. ad proficiendum: construction? App. 287; 293: G.-L. 426; 432: A. 502; 506: B. 338, 3: H.-B. 611; 612, III: H. 624; 628.

comparāre, coēmere, facere, cōfirmāre all depend on cōstituērunt; "they decided to get ready . . . , to buy . . . , to sow . . . , and to establish . . ."

3. iumentōrum: especially oxen: case? App. 101: G.-L. 368: A. 346, a: B. 201, 1: H.-B. 346: H. 440, 5; 441.

quam maximum numerum, "as great a number as possible" or "as many . . . as possible."

4. ut cōpia suppeteret, "in order that a supply might be at hand": mode? App. 225, a, 3: G.-L. 544, I; 545, 1, 3: A. 531, 1: B. 282, 1: H.-B. 503, 2: H. 568.

5. cum . . . cōfirmāre: although the Helvetii were warlike they wished to march peaceably while encumbered with their women and children and baggage train.

cum proximis civitatibus: the Sequani, Allobroges, etc. For case see App. 140: G.-L. 392: A. 413: B. 222: H.-B. 418; 419, 1: H. 473, 1.

6. ad . . . cōficiendās, lit. "for these things to be completed" = "for completing these preparations." Study

runt; in tertium annum profectiōnem lēge cōfirmant. Ad eās rēs cōficiendās Orgetorix dēligitur. Is sibi lēgatiōnem ad civitatēs suscipit. In eō itinere persuādet Casticō, Catamantaloedis filiō, Sēquanō, cuius pater rēgnum in Sēquanīs multōs annōs obtinuerat et ā senātū populi Rōmānī amicus appellātus

up, exhaust, weaken; furnish; dress (leather). \*

biennium, -ni, *n.* [bis, twice+annus, year], two years. 1.

satis, *adv. and indecl. adj. and noun*; (1) *as adv.*, enough, sufficiently; rather; very; well; (2) *as adj.*, sufficient; (3) *as noun*, enough. \*

dūcō, dūcere, dūxi, ductum, *tr.*, lead, conduct, guide, draw; bring, fetch; trace, construct, extend; deem, consider, judge; protract, defer. \*

7. annus, -i, *m.*, year. \*

profectiō, -ōnis, *f.* [profectiscor, set out], a setting out, start, departure. 3.

8. dēligō, -ligere, -lēgi, -lēctum, *tr.* [legō, choose], pick out, select, choose. \*

lēgatiō, -ōnis, *f.* [lēgō, delegate], embassy, legation; commission. \*

9. suscipiō, -cipere, -cēpi, -ceptum,

*tr.* [su(b)s+capīō, take], take or lift up; undertake, assume, take on one's self; begin, engage in. \*

Casticus, -i, *m.*, Casticus (kās'ti-kūs). 1.

Catamantaloedis, -is, *m.*, Catamantaloedis (kā'ta-mān'ta-lē'dis). 1.

10. filius, -li, *m.*, son. 4.

pater, -tris, *m.*, father; *in pl.*, forefathers, ancestors; pater familiae, father or head of a family. \*

multus, -a, -um, *adj.*, much, great; *pl.*, many; *with abl.* denoting time when, late; *as noun*, many persons or things; *comp. plūs, plurius*, more; *as noun*, more; *pl.*, more, several, many; *sup.*, plurimus, -a, -um, most; *pl.*, very many. \*

11. senātus, -ūs, *m.* [senex, old], a body of old men; senate; *esp.*, the administrative council of Rome. \*

populus, -i, *m.*, the people, the mass,

carefully this very common gerundive construction: App. 288; 293: G.-L. 427; 432: A. 503; 506: B. 339, 1, 2: H.-B. 609; 610; 612, III: H. 623; 628. Compare with it the gerund in l. 2. Notice that *ad* governs *rēs* and that *cōficiendās* is an adjective in agreement with *rēs*. App. 157: G.-L. 289: A. 286: B. 234: H.-B. 320: H. 394. But *cōficiendās* must be translated as if it were a verbal noun (gerund) governing *rēs* as its object.

sibi; case? App. 120: G.-L. 350, 2: A. 376: B. 188, 1: H.-B. 366, a (or 362, 1): H. 425, 4.

biennium... dūxērunt, "they judged that two years were sufficient." *Dūcō* with this meaning is followed by indirect discourse: cf. 2, 5. The Helvetii intended to spend the years 60 and 59 in preparation and to leave home in the spring of 58.

7. cōfirmant: tense? App. 190, a: G.-L. 229: A. 469: B. 259, 3: H.-B. 491, 1: H. 532, 3. Caesar uses the historical present much more freely than English idiom permits it to be used in translating. It is best always to translate by a past.

8. sibi suscipit, "he took on himself." For case cf. *omnibus*, 2, 5.

9. Casticō: case? App. 115: G.-L. 346, R. 2: A. 367: B. 187, II: H.-B. 362, I, footnote 3, b: H. 426, 2.

10. filiō, Sēquanō: case? App. 95, b: G.-L. 320: A. 281; 282: B. 169, 1, 2, 3: H.-B. 316, 317, 2, a: H. 393, 1.

11. annōs: case? App. 130: G.-L. 336: A. 423, 2: B. 181, 1: H.-B. 387, II: H. 417.

obtinerat, "had held." Always be suspicious of a translation which sounds like the Latin word. It may be

erat, ut rēgnū in civitate suā occupāret, quod pater ante habuerat; itemque Dumnorigī Haeduō, frātrī Diviciācī, qui eō tempore principātum in civitate obtinēbat ac maximē plēbi  
15 acceptus erat, ut idem cōnārētur persuādet, eīque filiam suam

the crowd, as opposed to individuals; a people or nation. \*

**Rōmānus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [Rōma, Rome], Roman; as *noun*, a Roman. \*

**amicus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [amō, love], friendly, well disposed; devoted; as *noun*, m., a friend, an ally. \*

**12. occupō**, 1, *tr.* [ob+capīō, take], take possession of, seize, occupy; engage, employ. \*

**ante**, (1) *adv.*, before, above, previously; (2) *prep. w. acc.*, before, in advance of. \*

**13. item**, *adv.*, in like manner, so, also, just so. \*

**Dumnorix**, -igis, m., Dumnorix (dūm'nō-rīks), a Haeduan chieftain, brother of Diviciacus. \*

**Haeduus**, -a, -um, *adj.* (Cef), of the Haedui (hēd'ū-i); Haeduan; as *noun*, a Haeduan; pl., the Haedui, possibly Haed-uans, one of the most powerful of the Gallic tribes. \*

**frāter**, -tris, m., brother. \*

**Diviciācus**, -i, m., Diviciacus (dīv'ī-

shī-ā/kūs), a chief of the Haedui, friendly to the Romans. \*

**14. tempus**, -oris, n., a division or section of time, a time, time (in general); occasion, crisis; **omni tempore**, always; in reliquum tempus, for the future; **unō tempore**, at the same time, at once. \*

**principātus**, -ūs, m. [princeps, chief], chief place or position; chief authority, leadership. 1.

**magis**, *adv.*, *comp.* [magnus, great], more, rather, in a higher degree; *sup.* **maximē**, especially, in the highest degree; mostly, mainly. \*

**plēbs**, plēbis, or plēbēs, -ēi, f., populace, common people. 3.

**15. acceptus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [*pf. part.* of accipīō, accept], acceptable, beloved by (with dative). 1.

**idem**, *eadem*, *idem* (App. 58), *dem. pron.* [is, this, that], the same; this very; **idem atque**, the same as. \*

**cōnor**, 1, *intr.*, attempt, endeavor, try. \*

**filia**, -ae, f., daughter. 4.

right, but it is very likely to be wrong. "Obtained" would be wrong here.

**ī senātū**: case? App. 137: G.-L. 401: A. 405: B. 216: H.-B. 406, 1: H. 468.

**amicus**: an honorary title often granted to foreign states or chiefs by the Roman Senate in recognition of special services or to attach them to Roman interests.

**12. ut occupāret**, "to seize." This clause is the object of *persuādet* in l. 10: mode? App. 228, a: G.-L. 546, 1, 2: A. 563: B. 295, 1: H.-B. 502, 3, a: H. 563, 1; 565. Cf. *ut suppeleret*, l. 4, which is not used as an object.

**13. Dumnorigī**: younger than Diviciacus, and a bold leader of the anti-Roman party among the Haedui.

**Haeduō**: the Haedui were the rivals of the Sequani for the leadership among the Gallic states. See map, and Int. 29. **qui**: i.e. Dumnorix.

**14. tempore**: case? App. 152: G.-L. 393: A. 423, 1: B. 230: H.-B. 439: H. 486.

**principātum**, "the leading position"; but he was not a magistrate.

**plēbi**: case? App. 122: G.-L. 359: A. 384: B. 192, 1: H.-B. 362, footnote 3, a: H. 434, 2.

**15. ut idem cōnārētur**, "to attempt the same thing"; i.e. attempt to overthrow the constitutional government and make himself king.

**eī**: case? App. 114: G.-L. 345: A. 303: B. 187, 1: H.-B. 365: H. 424; 425, 1.

in mātīmōnium dat. Perfacile factū esse illis probat cōnāta perficere, proptereā quod ipse suae cīvitatīs imperium obtentūrus esset: Nōn esse dubium quā tōtius Galliae plūrimum Helvētīi possent: sē suis cōpiis suōque exercitū illis rēgna conciliātūrum cōnfirmat. Hāc ōrātiōne adducti inter sē fidem et iūs iurandum

16. mātīmōnium, -nī, *n.* [māter, mother], marriage, wedlock, matrimony; in mātīmōnium dare, to give in marriage; in mātīmōnium dūcere, to marry (*said of the man*). 2.

dō, dare, dedi, datum (App. 85), *tr.*, give, bestow, present, grant, furnish; offer; yield, give up; in fugam dare, put to flight; dare manūs, yield; dare negōtium, with dat., employ, engage, direct. (*Some compounds of dō are derived from an obsolete verb. dō, put*). 4.

ille, illa, illud, *gen. illius, dat. illi* (App. 56), *dem. pron. (of what is remote in time, place, thought, etc., cf. hic)*, that, that man, woman, or thing; he, she, it; hic . . . ille, the latter . . . the former, *see* App. 170, a. 4.

probō, 1, *tr.* [probus, good], consider good, approve; prove, show, demonstrate. 3.

cōnātum, -ī, *n.* [cōnor, try], attempt, undertaking. 1.

17. perficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum, *tr.* [faciō, make, do], make or do thoroughly or completely, complete, finish;

construct, build; achieve, accomplish, cause. \*

18. nōn (App. 188, a), *adv.*, not; no. \* dubius, -a, -um, *adj.*, uncertain, doubtful. 1.

quā, *conj.* [quī, who or how+ne, negative], that not, but that; after negative words of doubt or hindrance, but that, that, from, to; quā etiam, nay even, moreover. \*

multum, *adv.* [acc. of multus, much], much, very, greatly, especially; *comp.* plūs, more; plūs posse, be more able or powerful, have more influence; *sup.* plūrimum, most, very; plūrimum posse, be most powerful; be very powerful or influential. \*

19. exercitus, -ūs, *m.* [exerceō, train], a trained or disciplined body of men, an army. \*

conciliō, 1, *tr.* [concilium, assembly], bring together; gain or win over, secure; reconcile, conciliate. 1.

20. ōrātiō, -ōnis, *f.* [ōrō, speak], a speaking, speech, language, words, address, argument. \*

fidēs, -ei, *f.* [fidō, confide], faith, con-

16. perfacile . . . perficere, lit. "he shows to them to accomplish the attempts to be very easy to do [factū, the supine]" = "he showed them that it was very easy to carry out the undertaking." esse: cf. 2, 5.

17. proptereā quod obtentūrus esset, lit. "because he was about to seize upon" = "because he intended to seize upon." The clause is causal, like proptereā quod absunt in 1, 6; but the subjunctive is used because it is a subordinate clause in indirect discourse. The second important fact about indirect discourse (cf. 2, 5) is that all

subordinate verbs which in the direct form were either indicatives or subjunctives must be subjunctives in the indirect form: App. 269: G.-L. 650: A. 580: B. 314, 1: H.-B. 534, 2, I; 535, 2: H. 643.

18. nōn . . . quā, "(he proved that) there was no doubt that."

19. sē illis conciliātūrum (sc. esse), "that he would win for them." Esse is usually omitted from the future infinitive.

illis: i.e. for Casticus and Dumnorix. 20. hāc ōrātiōne, "by this argument."

inter sē, "to one another."

dant et, rēgnō occupātō, per trēs potentissimōs ac firmissimōs populōs tōtius Galliae sēsē potiri posse spērant.

4. Ea rēs est Helvētiis per indicium ēnūtiāta. Mōribus suis Orgetorigem ex vinculis causam dicere coēgērunt; damnātum poenam sequi oportēbat, ut igni cremārētur. Diē

fidence; faithfulness, loyalty, trustworthiness; allegiance, protection, dependence; pledge, assurance; *fidem facere*, convince, give a pledge; *fidem sequi*, surrender. \*

iūs iurandum, iūris iurandi, *n.* [iūs, right+iūrō, swear], an oath. \*

21. *per*, *prep.* with *acc.*, through, throughout; by means of, through the agency of, on account of, through the efforts or influence of; *per se*, of their own accord, on their own responsibility; *sometimes with intensive force*, in itself, themselves; *in composition*, through, very, thoroughly, completely. \*

potēns, -entis, *adj.* [*pres. part.* of *possum*, be able], powerful, influential. 4.

firmus, -a, -um, *adj.*, strong, stable, vigorous, firm. 3.

22. spērō, 1, *tr.* [spēs, hope], hope, hope for, anticipate. 2.

1. indicium, -ci, *n.* [indicō, disclose], disclosure, information; *per indicium*, through informers. 1

ēnūtiō, 1, *tr.* [nūtiō, announce], report, declare, disclose. \*

mōs, mōris, *m.*, manner, custom, practice; *pl.*, customs, habits; character. \*

2. vinculum, -i, *n.* [vinciō, bind], bond, fetter, chain. 3.

coēgō, coēgere, coēgi, coēctum, *tr.* [co+agō, lead], lead or bring together, collect, draw together, assemble; force, compel, constrain. \*

3. damnō, 1, *tr.* [damnum, damage], declare guilty, sentence, condemn. 1.

poena, -ae, *f.*, punishment, penalty. 3.

sequor, sequi, secutus sum, *tr. and intr.*, follow, follow after, pursue; accompany, attend; follow in point of time; with *poena*, be inflicted; *fidem sequi*, seek the protection. \*

oportet, -ēre, -uit, —, *intr. impers.*, it is necessary, needful, becoming, proper; when translated as *personal verb*, must, ought. \*

ignis, -is, *m.*, fire. 4.

cremō, 1, *tr.*, burn. 2.

diēs, -ei, *m. and f.*, day; time; in diēs, from day to day; diem ex diē, day after day. \*

21. rēgnō occupātō potiri posse spērant, "they hoped that after they had seized the royal power [each in his own land] they could get control of." rēgnō occupātō: case? App 150: G.-L. 409; 410: A. 419: B. 227, 2, a H.-B. 421, 3: H. 489, 1. Latin is very fond of the ablative absolute: English very seldom uses its corresponding idiom, the nominative absolute. Never translate an ablative absolute literally "The royal power having been seized" is wretched English.

per trēs populōs: i.e. the Helvetii, the Sequani, and the Haedui.

22. Galliae: case? App. 111: G.-L.

407, n. 2, d: A. 410, a: B. 212, 2: H.-B. 353: H. 477, 1, 3.

Chap. 4. Orgetorix is tried for conspiracy, but escapes. His sudden death.

1. ea rēs, "this conspiracy."

Helvētiis: case? App. 114, c: G.-L. 345: A. 362; 365: B. 187, 1: H.-B. 365: H. 424; 425, 1.

mōribus: case? App. 142, a: G.-L. 399, n. 1: A. 418, a: B. 220, 3: H.-B. 414, a: H. 475, 3.

2. ex vinculis, "in chains." Cf. note on 1, 15.

3. damnātum . . . cremārētur, lit. "It was necessary for the punishment to

cōstitutā causae dictiōnis Orgetorix ad iūdicium omnem suam familiam, ad hominum milia decem, undique cōegit, et omnēs cūientēs obaerātōsque suōs, quōrum magnum numerum habēbat, eōdem condūxit; per eōs, nē causam diceret, sē ēripuit. Cum cīvitas ob eam rem incitāta armīs iūs suum exsequi cōnārētur, multitudinemque hominum ex agris

4. dictiō, -ōnis, *f.* [dicō, say], speaking, pleading. 1.

iūdicium, -ci, *n.* [iūdex, judge], judicial proceedings, trial; opinion, judgment; iūdicium facere, express an opinion; iūdicīō, by design, purposely. 4.

5. familia, -ae, *f.*, household (including slaves); retinue (including all dependents); family. 2.

decem (X), *indecl. card. num.*, ten. \*

6. cliēns, -entis, *m., f.* [clueō, hear, obey], client, vassal, dependent, retainer. 3.

obaerātus, -a, -um, *adj.* [aes, money], in debt; *as noun*, debtor. 1.

7. eōdem, *adv.* [old dative of idem], to the same place, to the same point (result, end, etc.). \*

condūcō, -dūcere, -dūxi, -ductum, *tr.* [dūcō, lead], lead or bring together, assemble; conduct; hire. 4.

nē (App. 188, b), (1) *conj. with subj.*,

that . . . not, so that . . . not, in order that . . . not, lest; *after verbs of fearing*, that, lest: (2) *adv.*, not; nē . . . quidem (enclosing the emphatic word), not even. \*

8. ēripīō, -ripere, -ripui, -reptum, *tr.* [rapiō, seize], wrest or take away, extort, deprive; rescue, relieve, save. \*

ob, *prep. with acc.*, on account of, for; *in compounds*, opposed to, to, toward, against; quam ob rem, wherefore, why. \*

incitō, 1, *tr.* [citō, put in motion], set in motion; incite, arouse, urge on, stimulate; exasperate; cursū incitātō, at full speed. \*

arma, -ōrum, *n. pl.*, arms; equipment; *by metonymy*, battle, war. \*

iūs, iūris, *n.*, right, justice, law; rights; power, authority. \*

9. exsequor, -sequi, -secutus sum, *tr.* [sequor, follow], follow out, enforce. 1.

follow (him) condemned that he should be burned with fire" = "if condemned it was necessary that the punishment of being burned be inflicted upon him." damnātum: use of participle? App. 263: G.-L. 667: A. 496: B. 337, 2, b: H.-B. 604, 3: H. 638, 2. ut cremārētur is a substantive clause in apposition with poenam; it is perhaps best taken as a substantive clause of result.

diē: gender? App. 80, a: G.-L. 64: A. 97, a: B. 53: H.-B. 101: H. 135: case? App. 152: G.-L. 393: A. 423: B. 230, 1: H.-B. 439: H. 486.

diē . . . dictiōnis, "on the day set for the pleading of the case." causae: case? App. 98: G.-L. 363, 2: A. 347, 348,

note: B. 200: H.-B. 364: H. 440, 2. dictiōnis: possessive genitive, limiting diē.

5. ad, "about."

6. obaerātōs: those who had become slaves on account of debt.

7. per eōs, "by their help."

nē . . . diceret, "to avoid pleading his case": mode? App. 225, b: G.-L. 545, 3: A. 531, 1: B. 232, 1: H.-B. 502, 2: H. 568.

8. cum cōnārētur . . . -que magistrātus cōgerent, "when the state was attempting . . . and the magistrates were collecting": mode? App. 240: 242, a: G.-L. 585: A. 546, notes 1, 2, 3: B. 238, b: H.-B. 524: H. 600, II, 1.

10 magistrātūs cōgerent, Orgetorix mortuus est; neque abest suspiciō, ut Helvētiī arbitrantur, quin ipse sibi mortem cōnsciverit.

5. Post eius mortem nihilō minus Helvētiī id quod cōstituerant facere cōnantur, ut ē finibus suis exeant. Ubi iam sē ad eam rem parātōs esse arbitrātī sunt, oppida sua omnia, numerō ad duodecim, vicōs ad quadringentōs, reliqua privāta aedificia incendunt; frūmentum omne, praeterquam quod sēcum

10. magistrātus, -ūs, *m.* [magister, master], public office, magistracy; public officer, magistrate. \*

mori, mori, mortuus sum, *intr.* [mors, death], die. 2.

neque (nec) (App. 188, a), *conj.* [ne + que], and not, not, nor; but not; neque . . . neque, neither . . . nor. \*

11. suspiciō, -ōnis, *f.* [suspicor, suspect], suspicion, distrust; cause for suspicion; indication, appearance. \*

mors, -tis, *f.*, death; sibi mortem cōnsciscere, commit suicide. 4.

12. cōnsciscō, -sciscere, -scīvi, -scitum, *tr.* [sciscō, resolve], resolve upon; sibi mortem cōnsciscere, commit suicide. 2.

1. post, *adv.*, and *prep.* with *acc.* (1) as *adv.*, later, afterwards; (2) as *prep.*, behind, after; post tergum or post sē, in the rear. \*

nihilō, *adv.*, by no means; nihilō minus, nevertheless; nihilō sētius, none the less, nevertheless. 3.

11. ut with the indicative usually means either "as", or "when."

quin . . . cōnsciverit, "that he committed suicide."

Chap. 5-8. Caesar thwarts the efforts of the Helvetii to cross the Rhone and march through the Roman Province.

Chap. 5. The Helvetii burn their dwellings and secure allies.

1. nihilō: case? App. 148: G.-L. 403: A. 414: B. 223: H.-B. 424: H. 479, 1.

2. cōnantur: tense? App. 190, a: G.-L. 229: A. 469: B. 259, 3: H.-B. 491, 1: H. 522, 3.

2. ubi, *adv.* (1) of place, in which place, where; (2) of time, when, whenever; as soon as; ubi primum, as soon as. \*

iam, *adv.*, now, at this time; already, by this time, at last; really, indeed, even; neque iam or iam nōn, no longer; ubi iam, as soon as. \*

3. parō, 1, *tr.*, prepare, get ready; procure, acquire; prepare for, get ready for; parātus, *pf. part. as adj.*, ready, prepared; equipped. \*

oppidum, -i, *n.*, fortified town, town, stronghold. \*

4. duodecim, *card. num. adj.* [duo, two + decem, ten], twelve. 2.

vicus, -i, *m.*, hamlet, village. \*

quadringenti, -ae, -a, *card. num. adj.*, four hundred. 2.

privātus, -a, -um, *adj.*, private, personal, individual; as *noun*, person, individual. 3.

5. aedificium, -ci, *n.* [aedificō, build], building, house. \*

incendō, -cendere, -cendi, -cēn-

ut exeant, "(namely) to go forth," is a substantive volitive (or purpose) clause in apposition with *id*.

3. ad eam rem, "for the enterprise."

parātōs is the adjective.

esse, "were": indirect discourse.

oppida, vicōs, aedificia: notice the absence of conjunctions, and cf. note on 1, 3.

4. numerō: case? App. 149: G.-L. 397: A. 418: B. 226: H.-B. 441: H. 480.

ad, "about."

5. sēcum: position of *cum*? App. 52, a: G.-L. 413, R. 1: A. 144, note 1: B. 142, 4: H.-B. 418, a: H. 175, 7.

"Ad"

portâtûri erant, combûrunt, ut, domum reditiônis spê sublâtâ, parâtiorês ad omnia pericula subeunda essent; trium mênſium molita cibâria sibi quemque domo efferre iubent. Persuâdent Rauracis et Tulingis et Latobrigis, finitimis, uti eodẽm usi

sum, *tr.* [*cf.* candeo, shine], set fire to, fire, burn; inflame, excite. \*

praeterquam, *adv.*, besides, except. 1.

6. portô, 1, *tr.*, carry, transport, bring, take. 3.

combûrô, -âre, -ussî, -ustum, *tr.* [com(b)+ûrô, burn], burn up. 1.

domus, -ûs (App. 29, d), *f.*, house; home; native country. \*

reditiô, -ônis, *f.* [redeo, return], return. 1.

spês, -ei, *f.*, hope, anticipation, expectation. \*

tollô, tollere, sustullî, sublâtum, *tr.*, lift, elevate; take on board; take away, remove; do away with, destroy; cancel; sublâtus, *pf. part. as adj.*, elated. \*

7. periculum, -i, *n.*, trial, test, attempt; risk, danger, peril. \*

subeo, -ire, -iî, -itum, *tr.* [eo, go. App. 84], come or go under, come up to, come up; undergo, endure. 4.

mênſis, -is, *m.*, month. 3.

8. molô, -ere, -ui, -itum, *tr.*, grind. 1. cibârius, -a, -um, *adj.* [cibus, food],

pertaining to food; *n. pl. as noun*, provisions; molita cibâria, meal, flour. 2.

quisque, quidque, and quisque, quaeque, quodque, *universal indef. pron.* (App. 62), each one, each; every one, all. \*

efferô, efferre, extullî, ôlâtum, *tr.* [ex+ferô, carry. App. 81], bring or carry out, carry or take away; raise; spread or publish abroad, make known; elate, puff up. 2.

iubeô, iubere, iussî, iussum, *tr.*, order, bid, command, enjoin. \*

9. Rauraci, -ôrum, *m.* (Cg), the Rauraci (raw'ra-si). 2.

Tulingi, -ôrum, *m.* (Cgh), the Tulingi (tû-lin'ji), a Gallic tribe east of the Rhine. 4.

Latobrigi, -ôrum, *m.* (Bh), the Latobrigi (lâv'ô-brî'ji), a Gallic tribe east of the Rhine. 3.

ûtor, ûti, ûsus sum, *intr.*, make use of, employ, use, avail one's self of, exercise; have, enjoy, experience, possess, show; adopt, accept; ûsus, *pf. part.* often translated with. \*

6. portâtûri erant, *lit.* "they were about to take" = "they intended to take." ut essent is a purpose clause.

domum reditiônis, "of returning home." domum: case? App. 131: G.-L. 337: A. 437, 2: B. 182, 1, d: H.-B. 450, b: H. 419, 1.

spê sublâtâ: translate the ablative absolute by a temporal clause.

7. ad . . . subeunda: construction? App. 288; 293: G.-L. 427; 432: A. 503; 506: B. 339, 1, 2: H.-B. 609; 610; 612, III: H. 623; 628.

trium mênſium cibâria, "supplies for three months." mênſium: case? App. 100: G.-L. 365, 2: A. 345, b: B. 203, 2: H.-B. 356: H. 440, 3. Napoleon III estimates

that 8,500 wagons, drawn by 34,000 draft animals, were needed to transport the necessary provisions and baggage of the Helvetian host: even this is probably an underestimate.

8. sibi: case? App. 120: G.-L. 352: A. 376: B. 188, 1: H.-B. 366: H. 425, 4.

domô: case? App. 134, a: G.-L. 390, 2: A. 427, 1: B. 229, 1, b: H.-B. 451, a: H. 462, 4.

9. uti . . . proficiſcantur, *lit.* "that having used the same plan, their towns . . . having been burned, they set out along with them" = "to adopt . . . , to burn . . . , and to set out." cõnsiliô: case? App. 145: G.-L. 407: A. 410: B. 218, 1: H.-B. 429: H. 477.

10 *cōnsiliō*, oppidis suis vicisque exustis, unā cum iis proficiantur; Boiōsque, qui trans Rhenum incoluerant et in agrum Noricum transierant Norēiamque oppugnābant, receptōs ad se sociōs sibi asciscunt.

6. Erant omninō itinera duo quibus itineribus domō exire

10. *cōnsiliū*, -li, *n.*, consultation, deliberation; counsel, advice; plan, design; measure, course of action; judgment; prudence, wisdom; an assembly for deliberation, council, council of war; *commūni cōnsiliō*, by, or in accordance with, general action; *pūblicō cōnsiliō*, by action of the state; *cōnsiliū capere* or *inire*, form or adopt a plan; *cōnsiliū habere*, think, consider. \*

*extrō*, -trere, -ussī, -ustum, *tr.* [trō, burn], burn up. 1.

*unā*, *adv.* [unus, one], (1) of place, together, along with, in one place; (2) of time, together, along with, at the same time, also. \*

11. *Boi*, -iōrum, *m.* (Ce), the Boii (bō'yi), a Celtic tribe once very powerful in southern Germany and Cisalpine Gaul. Those who joined the Helvetii were afterwards settled by Caesar as indicated on the map. \*

12. *Noricus*, -a, -um, *adj.*, pertaining to Noricum (a country between the Danube and the Alps), Norican. 2.

*trānsēō*, -ire, -il, -itum, *tr. and intr.* [eō, go. App. 84], go across or over, cross; march through, pass through; move, migrate; of time, pass by. \*

*Nōrēia*, -ae, *f.* (Ck), Noreia (nō-rē'ya), a town in Noricum, now Neumarkt. 1.

*oppugnō*, 1, *tr.* [ob+pugnō, fight], fight against, attack, assault, storm, besiege. \*

*recipiō*, -cipere, -cēpi, -ceptum, *tr.* [re+capio, take], take or get back, recover; admit, receive, receive in surrender or submission; admit of, allow; with *se*, withdraw one's self, retreat, escape, flee, run back; recover one's self. \*

13. *socius*, -ei, *m.* [cf. sequor, follow], companion; confederate, ally. \*

*asciscō*, -sciscere, -scivi, -scitum, *tr.* [ad+sciscō, approve], approve; admit or receive (as allies). 2.

1. *omninō*, *adv.* [omnis, all], at all; whatever; altogether, entirely, wholly; in all, only. \*

*duo*, *duae*, *duo* (App. 49), *card. num. adj.*, two. \*

11. *Boiōs* is the object of *asciscunt*: App. 124: G.-L. 330: A. 337: B. 172: H.-B. 390: H. 404.

12. *receptōs . . . asciscunt*, lit. "the Boii, received to themselves [ad se], they admit to themselves [sibi] as allies" = "they received among their people and joined to themselves as associates the Boii, who had," etc.

13. *sibi*: case? App. 116, I: G.-L. 347: A. 370: B. 187, III, 2: H.-B. 376, a: H. 429, 1.

As explained in the notes on 1, 1, each of the most common principles of syntax is referred to three times in the notes on I, 1-29. At the end of the chapter in which the third reference to any construction has been given, attention is

called to the fact; and if the pupil has not yet mastered the construction he should do so immediately.

#### THIRD REFERENCES:

*Direct object*

*Ablative of specification*

Chap. 6. The Helvetii decide to march through the Roman Province.

1. *erant*, "there were."

*quibus itineribus*, "by which." Caesar sometimes repeats the antecedent in the relative clause, where English usage requires its omission. Case? App. 144: G.-L. 339: A. 429, a: B. 218, 9: H.-B. 426, a: H. 476.

*quibus . . . possent*, "by which they

possent: unum per Sēquanōs, angustum et difficile, inter montem Iūram et flūmen Rhodanum, / vix quā singuli carri dūcerentur; mōns autem altissimus impendēbat, ut facile perpaucī prohibēre possent: alterum per prōvinciam nostram, multō facilius atque expeditius, proptereā quod inter finēs Helvētiōrum et Allobrogum, quī nūper pācātī erant, Rhodanus fluit, isque nōn nullis locis vadō trānsitur. Extrēmum oppidum

2. *difficilis*, -e, *adj.* [facilis, easy], not easy, hard, troublesome, difficult. \* 3.

3. *vix*, *adv.*, with difficulty, barely, hardly, scarcely. 4.

*quā*, *adv.* [abl. fem. of *qui*], by which way or road; in which place, where. \*

*singuli*, -ae, -a, *distrib. num. adj.*, one each, one; one at a time, single, separate; each, every; the several; in *annōs singulōs*, annually. \*

4. *impendeō*, -pendere, —, —, *intr.* [in+pendeō, hang], overhang, impend. 2.

5. *perpauci*, -ae, -a, *adj.* [pauci, few], very few, but very few; *m. pl. as noun*, very few. 4.

6. *multō*, *adv.* [abl. of *multus*, much], by far, much. 4.

could leave home," is a clause of characteristic: App. 230: G.-L. 631, 2: A. 535, a: B. 223, 1, 2: H.-B. 521, 1, a: H. 591, 1.

*demō*: case? App. 134, a: G.-L. 390, 2: A. 427, 1: B. 229, 1, b: H.-B. 451, a: H. 452, 4.

2. *unum (iter)* and *alterum (iter)* are appositives of *itinera duo*: App. 95, b: G.-L. 320: A. 281; 282, a: B. 169, 1, 2, 5: H.-B. 317, 2; 319, 1, a: H. 393, 4. Study the two routes on the map, p. 70. The one involved passing through Pas de l'Écluse, the other involved crossing the Rhone.

3. *vix*: notice its emphatic position before the relative, and cf. note on *quae pertinent*, 1, 8.

4. *dūcerentur*, "could be drawn." This is another subjunctive of characteristic, but it differs from *possent* in that here the subjunctive mode has the

*facilis*, -e, *adj.* [faciō, do], easy. 4.

*expeditus*, -a, -um, *adj.* [pf. part. of *expediō*, set free], unimpeded, free, unobstructed; without baggage; light armed; *as noun*, a light armed soldier. \*

7. *Allobrogēs*, -um, *m.* (Dfg), the Allobroges (ā-lōb'rō-jēs), a powerful Gallic people in the Province. \*

*nūper*, *adv.*, recently, not long ago. 3.

*pācō*, 1, *tr.* [pāx, peace], make peaceful, subdue, pacify; *pācātus*, *pf. part. as adj.*, peaceful, quiet, subdued. \*

8. *fluō*, *fluere*, *flūxī*, —, *intr.*, flow, run. 2.

*vadum*, -ī, *n.*, ford, shallow. \*

potential meaning "could": App. 230, c: G.-L. 631, 2: H.-B. 517, 2. The place referred to is Pas de l'Écluse: see map, p. 70.

*ut possent*: mode? App. 226: G.-L. 552: A. 537, 1: B. 224, 1: H.-B. 521, 2, a: H. 570.

5. *prohibēre*: sc. *ēōs*.

6. *multō*: case? App. 148: G.-L. 403: A. 414: B. 223: H.-B. 424: H. 479, 1.

7. *nūper pācātī erant*: in 61 B.C., after a desperate struggle to regain their independence.

8. *nōn nullis locis*, "at several points." Why is the preposition *in* not used? App. 151, b: G.-L. 355, n. 1: A. 429, 1: B. 223, 1, b: H.-B. 436: H. 485, 2.

*vadō trānsitur*, lit. "is crossed by a ford" = "is fordable."

*extrēmum*: i.e. it is on the northern frontier.

Allobrogum est proximumque Helvëtiôrum finibus Genava.  
 10 Ex eô oppidô pōns ad Helvëtiôs pertinet. Allobrogibus sēsē  
 vel persuāsūrōs, quod nōndum bonō animō in populum Rōmā-  
 num vidērentur, existimābant, vel vī coāctūrōs ut per suōs  
 finēs eōs ire paterentur. Omnibus rēbus ad profectiōnem  
 comparātis, diem dicunt quā diē ad ripam Rhodani omnēs  
 15 conveniant. Is diēs erat a. d. v. Kal. Aprīl., L. Pisōne A.  
 Gabiniō cōsulibus.

9. Genava, -ae, *f.* (Cg), Genava (jēn'a-va), a city of the Allobroges, now Geneva. 3.

10. pōns, pontis, *m.*, bridge. \*

11. nōndum, *adv.* [nōn, not+dum], not yet. \*

bonus, -a, -um, *adj.* good, beneficial, profitable, well-disposed; (with animō) friendly; as *noun*, bonum, -i, profit, advantage; bona, -ōrum, goods, property, estate; boni, -ōrum, the good, good men or citizens. *Comp.*, melior; *sup.*, optimus (App. 42). \*

12. vidēō, vidēre, vidi, visum, *tr.*, see, perceive, observe, examine, understand; see to, take care; in *pass.*, be seen; seem, appear; seem proper, seem best. \*

existimō, 1, *tr.* [aestimō], estimate, reckon, think, consider. \*

vel, *conj. and adv.* (1) as *conj.*, or; vel . . . vel, either . . . or; (2) as *adv.*, even. \*

vis, vis (App. 27), *f.*, force, might, energy, strength; violence, severity; authority, power; a force, a great number; *pl.*, virēs, strength, force; vim facere, use violence. \*

13. eō, ire, īl (ivl), itum (App. 84), *intr.*, go, proceed, march, pass. \*

patior, pati, passus sum, *tr. and intr.*, endure, withstand, suffer; permit, allow. \*

14. ripa, -ae, *f.*, bank (of a stream). \*

15. conveniō, -venire, -vēni, -ven-

9. est might more naturally have stood before Genava.

10. Allobrogibus . . . persuāsūrōs existimābant, "they thought they should either persuade the Allobroges." persuāsūrōs (esse) is the principal verb in indirect discourse: cf. note on *per facile esse*, 2, 5. In direct discourse their thought was *persuādēbimus*, "we shall persuade."

11. quod vidērentur is a subordinate clause in indirect discourse. App. 269: G.-L. 650: A. 580: B. 314: H.-B. 534, 2, I; 535, 2: H. 643.

bonō animō, "of a friendly disposition" or "well disposed." Case? App. 141: G.-L. 400: A. 415: B. 224, 1: H.-B. 443: H. 473, 2.

12. vel coāctūrōs (esse), "or should compel them": in the same construction as *persuāsūrōs*.

ut paterentur is a substantive volitive (or purpose) clause, the object of both *persuāsūrōs* and *coāctūrōs*.

13. omnibus rēbus comparātis, "when they had made everything ready."

14. quā diē: cf. note on *quibus itineribus*, 1. 1.

quā diē omnēs conveniant, "on which they should all assemble." Mode? App. 225, a, 1: G.-L. 545, 1: A. 531, 2: B. 282, 2: H.-B. 502, 1: H. 590.

15. a. d. V. Kal. Aprīl. = *ante diem quintum Kalendās Aprīlēs* = *diē quīntō ante Kalendās Aprīlēs*. The former phrase is idiomatic but can not be parsed. In all such reckonings the Romans counted both ends, while we count but one. The date here meant is the twenty-eighth of March, which we should consider the fourth day before the

7. *Caesari cum id nuntiatum esset, eos per provinciam nostram iter facere conari, maturat ab urbe proficisci, et quam maximis potest itineribus in Galliam ulteriorem contendit et ad Genavam pervenit. Provinciae toti quam maximum potest*

*tum, tr. and intr. [veniō, come], come together, assemble; convene, meet; come to, arrive; be agreed upon; impersonal, be convenient, suitable, necessary. \**

*quintus, -a, -um, ord. num. adj. [quinque, five], fifth. 3.*

*Kal., abbr. for Kalendae, -arum, f., the Calends, the first day of the Roman month. 1.*

*April., abbr. for Aprilis, -e, adj., of April, April. 2.*

*L., abbr. for Lūcius, Lucius (lū'shyūs), a Roman praenomen. \**

*Pisō, -ōnis, m., Lucius Calpurnius Piso (lū'shyūs kāl-pēr'nī-ūs pī'sō), Caesar's father-in-law, consul 58 B.C. 2.*

*A., abbr. for Aulus (aw'lūs), a Roman praenomen. 1.*

*16. Gabinius, -ni, m., Aulus Gabinius*

first of April, instead of the fifth.

*L. Pisōne . . . cōsulibus; cf. note on 2, 2.*

### THIRD REFERENCES:

#### *Apposition*

#### *Purpose clauses*

Chap. 7. Caesar hastens to Gaul and delays the Helvetii by a pretext.

1. *Caesari*: he had been consul in the year 59, and at the end of his year of office he had immediately become pro-consul of Gaul. See Int. 11, 12. He was at this time near Rome, preparing to leave for his province. The news merely hastened his movements.

*cum nuntiātum esset*: mode? App. 240; 242, a: G.-L. 585: A. 546, notes 1, 2, 3: B. 288, B: H.-B. 524: H. 600, II, 1.

*id*, "this fact," is explained by its appositive, the clause, *eos . . . cōnari*, "that they were planning, etc." *eos*: case? App. 123: G.-L. 203, R. 1; 343, 2: A. 397, c: B. 184: H.-B. 398: H. 415. *cōnari*: construc-

(aw'lūs gā-bīn'i-ūs), *consul with Lucius Piso, 58 B.C. 1.*

1. *Caesar, -aris, m.*, Gaius Julius Caesar (gā'yūs jū'li-ūs sē'zar), conqueror of Gaul and author of the *Commentaries*. \*

*nūntiō, 1, tr. [nūntius, messenger], announce, send news, report, make known; order, direct. \**

2. *mātūrō, 1, tr. and intr. [mātūrus, ripe], ripen; quicken, accelerate; make haste, hasten. 2.*

*urbs, urbis, f.*, city; especially, the city, Rome. 2.

3. *ulterior, -ius, adj., comp. [ultrā, beyond. App. 43], farther, more remote, ulterior. \**

4. *perveniō, -venire, -vēni, -ventum, intr. [veniō, come], come through; come to, arrive at, reach; of property, fall, revert. \**

tion? App. 266: G.-L. 650: A. 580: B. 314, 1: H.-B. 589; 591: H. 642.

2. *ab urbe*, "from [near] the city," instead of *ex urbe*, because one who held a military command could not legally be in the city.

*quam maximis potest itineribus*, lit. "by (as great) day's journeys as the greatest he can" = "by as long day's journeys as possible." *quam maximis itineribus* would have meant the same thing. These two idioms are very common in Caesar. We learn from Plutarch that Caesar traveled about ninety miles a day. *itineribus*: case? App. 142: G.-L. 399: A. 412: B. 220, 1: H.-B. 445, 2: H. 473, 3.

3. *ulteriorem = transalpinam*, "beyond the Alps" from Rome.

4. *ad Genavam*: use of preposition? App. 131, a: G.-L. 337, R. 4: A. 428, a: B. 182, 3: H.-B. 453, 1: H. 418, 4.

*provinciae imperat*, "he levied upon the province."

5 militum numerum imperat (erat omninō in Galliā ulteriōre legiō ūna), pontem quī erat ad Genavam iubet rescindī. Ubi dē eius adventū Helvētīi certiorēs factī sunt, lēgātōs ad eum mittunt, nōbilissimōs civitātis, cuius lēgatiōnis Nammēius et Verucloetius principem locum obtinēbant, quī dicerent sibi  
10 esse in animō sine ūllō maleficiō iter per prōvinciam facere, propterea quod aliud iter habērent nūllum; rogāre ut eius

5. miles, -itis, *m.*, soldier, private soldier; infantry (*opposed to equitēs*); militēs imperāre, levy soldiers upon. \*

imperō, 1. *tr. and intr.* [*in+parō*, procure], demand from, enjoin or levy upon; command, order, instruct, rule. \*

6. legiō, -ōnis, *f.* [*legō*, choose], a legion. \*

rescindō, -scindere, -scidi, -scissum, *tr.* [*re+scindō*, cleave], cut away or down, break down, destroy. 2.

7. adventus, -ūs, *m.* [*veniō*, come], coming, arrival, approach. \*

certus, -a, -um, *adj.* [*for crētus, part. of cernō*], decided; certain, sure, fixed; certiorēm facere, to inform (*acc. and inf.*); order (*ut or nē and subj.*); certior fieri, be informed. \*

lēgātus, -ī, *m.* [*lēgō*, delegate], one with delegated powers; ambassador, envoy, legate; lieutenant, legatus. \*

8. mittō, mittere, misi, missum,

*tr.*, send, send off, dismiss, let go, dispatch; hurl, discharge. \*

Nammēius, -ī, *m.*, Nammēius (*nā-mē-yūs*). 1.

9. Verucloetius, -tī, *m.*, Verucloetius (*vēr'ū-klē'shyūs*), an Helvetian envoy, sent to Caesar. 1.

princeps, -ipis, *adj.* [*primus*, first+capio, take], taking the first place; chief, most prominent, first; as noun, chief or principal person, leader, chief. \*

10. sine, *prep. with abl.*, without. \*

ūllus, -a, -um, *gen.*, ūllius (App. 32), *adj.*, a single, any; as noun, any one, anybody. \*

maleficiū, -ci, *n.* [*malum*, evil+faciō, do], evil doing, mischief, harm, injury. 4.

11. nūllus, -a, -um, *gen.*, nūllius, *adj.* [*ne+ūllus*, any], not any, no; as noun, no one, none; nōn nūllus, some; as noun, some, some persons. \*

rogō, 1. *tr.*, ask; request, ask for. \*

5. militum: case? App. 101: G.-L. 368: A. 346, a, 1: B. 201, 1: H.-B. 346: H. 440, 5; 441.

in Galliā: case? App. 151: G.-L. 385: A. 426, 3: B. 228: H.-B. 433: H. 483.

6. legiō: this was the tenth, afterwards Caesar's favorite legion. On the organization of a legion see Int. 33.

7. certiorēs facti sunt, lit. "were made more certain" = "were informed." certiorēs: case? App. 156; 157: G.-L. 211: A. 283; 284; 286: B. 233, 1, 2; 234: H.-B. 317, 3; 320, III: H. 394.

8. nōbilissimōs: used as a noun.

9. quī dicerent, "who were to say"

= "to say": a relative clause of purpose.

sibi esse in animō, "that they had in mind" or "intended." sibi: case? App. 117: G.-L. 349: A. 373: B. 190: H.-B. 374: H. 430.

11. quod habērent is a subordinate clause in indirect discourse. Cf. 3, 17.

rogāre (sc. sē), "that they asked." The speakers said to Caesar rogāmus, "we ask."

ut sibi liceat, "that it be permitted them" or "that they be allowed." For mode see App. 228, a: G.-L. 546, 1: A. 563: B. 295, 1: H.-B. 530, 2: H. 563, 1; 565.

eius: i.e. Caesar's.

voluntâte id sibi facere liceat. Caesar, quod memoriâ tenēbat L. Cassium cōsulem occisum exercitumque eius ab Helvētiis pulsum et sub iugum missum, concēdendum nōn putābat; neque hominēs inimicō animō, datā facultâte per prōvinciam 15

12. voluntās, -tātis, *f.* [volō, wish], wish, will, desire, inclination; good will, favor; consent, approval. \*

licet, licēre, licuit and licitum est, *intr., impers.*, it is lawful, one has permission, it is permitted, one may, one is allowed; licet mihi, I may; petere ut liceat, to ask permission. \*

memoria, -ae, *f.* [memor, mindful], the faculty of memory; recollection, memory, remembrance; tradition; memoriâ tenēre, remember; patrum memoriâ, in the time of our fathers. \*

tenēō, tenēre, tenui, tentum, *tr.*, hold, keep, occupy, possess, hold possession of; hold in, restrain, bind; sē tenēre, remain; memoriâ tenēre, remember. \*

13. Cassius, -si, *m.*, Lucius Cassius Longinus (lū'shyūs kăsh'yūs lōn-gi'nūs), consul 107 B.C., slain in battle by the Tigurini. 3.

occidō, -cidere, -cidi, -cisum, *tr.* [ob+caedō, cut, slay], cut down, kill, slay. \*

14. pellō, pellere, pepuli, pulsum,

*tr.*, beat, defeat, rout; drive out, expel. \*

sub, *prep. with acc. and abl.* (1) *With acc.*, (a) *with verbs of motion*, under, beneath; up to; (b) *of time*, just at, about, toward. (2) *With abl.*, (a) *of position*, under, beneath; toward, near to; at the foot or base of; (b) *of time*, during, within: *in compounds*, sub or subs, under; up, away; from beneath; secretly; in succession; slightly. \*

iugum, -i, *n.* [iungō, join], yoke; ridge, crest. \*

concēdō, -cēdere, -cessi, -cessum, *tr. and intr.* [cēdō, go], go away, depart, withdraw; grant, yield; allow, permit. \*

putō, 1, *tr.*, think, consider, believe. \*

15. inimicus, -a, -um, *adj.* [in+ami-cus, friendly], unfriendly, hostile; *as noun*, an enemy (*personal*), rival, to be distinguished from hostis, a public enemy. 3.

facultās, -tātis, *f.* [old *adj.*, facul=facilis, easy], power; opportunity, chance; resources, supply. \*

12. voluntâte is an ablative of accordance.

tenēbat: mode? App 244: G.-L. 540: A. 540: B. 286, 1: H.-B. 554; 555: H. 588, I.

13. occisum, pulsum, missum are perfect passive infinitives in indirect discourse, and depend on memoriâ tenēbat, which is equivalent to a verb of knowing. The perfect infinitive represents the action as past at the time of tenēbat; "that Lucius Cassius had been slain," etc.

ab Helvētiis: case? App. 137: G.-L. 401: A. 405: B. 216: H.-B. 406, 1: H. 468.

14. sub iugum, "under the yoke." This "yoke" was made of three spears, two planted in the ground and the third

fastened across them at a suitable height. Under this the soldiers of the captured army were compelled to pass, in token of submission and degradation.

concēdendum (*esse*), "that permission ought to be granted."

15. hominēs temperātūrōs (*esse*), "that men would refrain." The future infinitive shows that a future indicative was used in the direct form. Caesar thought nōn temperābunt, "they will not refrain."

animō: case? App. 141: G.-L. 400: A. 415: B. 224, 1: H.-B. 443: H. 473, 2.

datā facultâte may be translated by a conditional clause; "if an opportunity should be given."

itineris faciendī, temperātūrōs ab iniuriā et maleficiō existi-  
mābat. Tamen, ut spatium intercēdere posset, dum milites  
quōs imperāverat convenirent, lēgātis respondit diem sē ad  
dēliberandum sūmptūrum; sī quid vellent, ad Id. April.  
30 reverterentur.

16. temperō, 1, *intr.*, restrain or con-  
trol one's self, refrain; temperātus, *pf.*  
*part. as adj.*, temperate, mild. 2.

iniuria, -ae, *f.* [in-+iūs, right],  
wrong, injustice; outrage, injury, harm,  
violence. \*

17. tamen, *adv.* (opposed to some ex-  
pressed or implied concession), yet, never-  
theless, notwithstanding, still, however;  
at least. \*

spatium, -ti, *n.*, space, distance, ex-  
tent, length of space; period or length of  
time, hence time, opportunity. \*

intercēdō, -cēdere, -cessi, -cessum,  
*intr.* [cēdō, go], go or come between, lie  
between, intervene, be between; *pass.* 4.

dum, *conj.*, while, as long as; till,  
until. \*

18. respondeō, -spondēre, -spondi,  
-spōnsum, *tr.* and *intr.* [spondeō,  
promise], reply, answer. \*

19. dēliberō, 1, *tr.* [libra, balance],  
weigh well; consider, deliberate. 2.

sūmō, sūmere, sūmpsi, sūmptum,

*tr.* [sub+emō, take], take away, take;  
assume; *with supplicium*, inflict; *with*  
*labor*, spend. \*

sī, *conj.*, if, if perchance; to see  
whether or if; whether; quod sī, but if,  
now if. \*

quis, quid, and qui, quae, quod  
(App. 61 and 62), (1) *interrog. pron.*, who?  
which? what? quam ob rem, why?  
quem ad modum, how? (2) *indef. pron.*,  
*especially after sī, nisi, nō*, num, any  
one, anything, any; somebody, some-  
thing, some. \*

volō, velle, volui, — (App. 82). *tr.*  
and *intr.*, wish, be willing, want, desire;  
prefer, choose; intend; mean; quid sibi  
vellet, what did he intend or mean? \*

Idūs, -uum, *f., pl.*, the Ides: the 15th of  
March, May, July and October, and the  
13th of other months. 1.

20. revertō, -vertēre, -verti, -ver-  
sum, *intr.*, used almost exclusively in the  
perfect tenses, and revertor, -verti,  
-versus sum, *intr.*, used in the tenses

16. itineris faciendī: construction?  
App. 288; 291: G.-L. 427; 428: A. 503; 504:  
B. 339, 1: H.-B. 612, I; 613: H. 623; 626.

17. dum milites convenirent, "un-  
til the soldiers should arrive."

18. diem, "time."

sē sūmptūrum, "that he should take."

ad dēliberandum: construction?  
App. 287; 293: G.-L. 426; 432, R.: A. 502;  
506: B. 338, 3: H.-B. 611; 612, III: H. 624; 628.

19. sī quid vellent, "if they wanted  
anything." Why quid? App. 174: G.-L.  
315: A. 310, a: B. 91, 5: H.-B. 276, 1:  
H. 186.

20. reverterentur, "they should  
come again." This is a principal clause  
in indirect discourse, but the sub-  
junctive is used instead of the infinitive  
because an imperative was used in the

direct form. Caesar said sī quid vultis,  
revertimini, "if you want anything, come  
again." The third (cf. 2, 5 and 3, 17)  
important fact about indirect discourse  
is that all imperatives of the direct form  
become subjunctives in the indirect  
form: App. 287: G.-L. 652: A. 588: B. 316:  
H.-B. 534, 2; 538: H. 642.

#### THIRD REFERENCES:

*Predicate nouns and adjectives*

*Agreement of adjectives*

*Partitive genitive*

*Subject of infinitive*

*Substantive volitive (or purpose) clause*

*Causal clauses with quod, etc.*

*Infinitive in indirect discourse*

*Gerund*

*Gerundine*

8. Intereā eā legiōne quam sēcum habēbat mīlitibusque quī ex prōvinciā convēnerant, ā lacū Lemannō, quī in flūmen Rhodanum influit, ad montem Iūram, quī finēs Sēquanōrum ab Helvētiis dividit, milia passuum XIX mūrū in altitūdinem pedum sēdecim fossamque perdūcit. Eō opere perfectō praesidia dispōnit, castella commūnit, quō facilius, sī sē invitō trānsire

formed on the present stem [re-+vertō, turn], turn back, come back, return. \*

1. intereā, *adv.*, in the meantime, meanwhile. 4.

3. inflūō, -fluere, -flūxi, —, *intr.* [fluō. flow], flow into, empty into. \*

4. undēviginti (XIX), *card. num. adj.*, *indecl.* [ūnus, one+dg, from+viginti, twenty], nineteen. 2.

mūrus, -i, *m.*, a wall. \*  
altitūdō, -inis, *f.* [altus, high, deep], height; depth; thickness (*of timber*). \*

5. pēs, pedis, *m.*, the foot; a foot, 11.65 inches in length; pedibus, on foot; pedem referre, retreat. \*

sēdecim (XVI), *card. num. adj.*, *indecl.*, sixteen. 2.

fossa, -ae, *f.* [*pf. part. fem. of fodiō*, dig], trench, ditch. \*

perdūcō, -dūcere, -dūxi, -ductum,

Chap. 8. Caesar prevents the Helvetii from crossing the Rhone.

1. legiōne militibusque: case? App. 143: G.-L. 401, R. 1: A. 409: B. 218, 10: H.-B. 423, a: H. 476.

2. ā lacū . . . ad montem: see map, p. 70.

4. milia: case? App. 130: G.-L. 335: A. 425: B. 181: H.-B. 387: H. 417.

milia passuum XIX = about 17½ English miles: This is the distance from the lake to Pas de l'Écluse, following the windings of the river. Caesar's plain statement is that he constructed a wall and a trench nineteen miles in length. Napoleon III believed that the banks of the river were so steep for most of the distance that no artificial fortifications were needed, and the map on p. 70 shows the only places where he believed that Caesar con-

*tr.* [dūcō, lead], lead through or along, conduct, bring over, bring; construct, extend; influence, win over; draw out, prolong. 4.

opus, operis, *n.*, work, labor; military work or works, fortifications, defenses; a work of engineering or architecture; nātūrā et opere, by nature and art; opera, crafts. \*

praesidium, -di, *n.* [praesideō, guard], guard, garrison; safeguard, protection; fortification, stronghold; help, aid; safety. s.

6. dispōnō, -pōnere, -posui, -positum, *tr.* [pōnō, place], place apart or about; distribute, arrange, station. 2.

castellum, -i, *n.* [castrum, fort], fortress, redoubt. \*

commūniō, 4, *tr.* [mūniō, fortify], fortify strongly, intrench. 1.

quō, *conj.* [*abl. case form of quī*, who,

constructed the wall and trench—a total of about three miles. Napoleon's view is generally accepted, but there are good grounds for doubting its correctness.

in altitūdinem pedum sēdecim, lit. "of sixteen feet into height" = "sixteen feet high." pedum: App. 100: G.-L. 363, 2: A. 345, b: B. 203, 2: H.-B. 355: H. 440, 3. The "section of Caesar's wall," set into the map, p. 70, makes clear the method of constructing this wall. The top of the bank was cut down so as to make a steep front sixteen feet high: this was the mūrus. The earth which was dug out was simply thrown down the hill. A line of palisades was set on top, to serve as a breastwork for the Roman soldiers.

6. dispōnit, "stationed at several points." Caesar had too few men to man the entire line. He therefore sta-

cōnārentur, prohibēre posset. Ubi ea diēs quam cōstituerat cum lēgātis vēnit et lēgātī ad eum revertērunt, negat sē mōre et exemplō populi Rōmāni posse iter ūlli per prōvinciam dare; 10 et, sī vim facere cōnentur, prohibitūrum ostendit. Helvētiī

which], in order that, so that, that. \* **invitus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, against one's wish or will, unwilling, reluctant; **sē invitō**, against his will. \*

8. **veniō**, **venire**, **vēni**, **ventum**, *intr.*, come, arrive, go, advance; in **spem venire**, have hopes; *pass. often imper.*, as **ventum est**, they came, it came, etc. \*

tioned detachments (*praesidia*) in *castella*, at suitable points, and of course had pickets all along the line. At an alarm the nearest detachments were to run to the threatened point.

**negō**, 1, *tr. and intr.*, say no, refuse, say . . . not. 1.

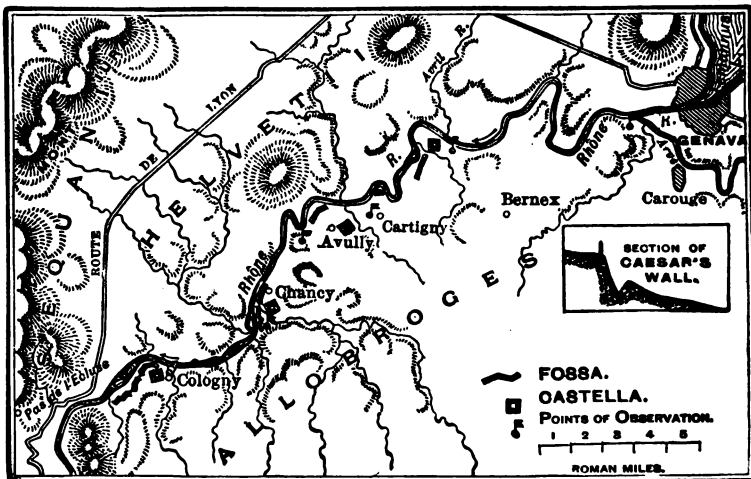
9. **exemplum**, -i, *n.*, example, precedent. 2.

10. **ostendō**, -tendere, -tendi, -tentum, *tr.* [obs+tendō, stretch], stretch before; present, show, bring into view, reveal; tell, declare; point out, mention. \*

G.-L. 409: A. 419, a; 420, 1: B. 227, 1, 2, a: H.-B. 421, 1: H. 489, 1.

8. **negat sē posse**, "he said that he could not."

**mōre et exemplō**: case? App. 142, a:



CAESAR'S FORTIFICATIONS ON THE RHONE

**quō facilius posset**: when is *quō* used in purpose clauses? App. 225, a, 2: G.-L. 245, 2: A. 531, 2, a: B. 282, a: H.-B. 502, 2, b: H. 568, 7.

**sī cōnārentur**, "if they should try."

**sē invitō**: construction? App. 150:

G.-L. 399, n. 1: A. 418, a: B. 220, 3: H.-B. 414, a: H. 475, 3.

10. **sī . . . cōnentur**, "if they should try to use force."

**prohibitūrum** (sc. *se* . . . *esse*), "that he would stop them."

*ea spē deiectionis, navibus iunctis ratibusque compluribus factis, alii vadis Rhodani, quā minima altitudo fluminis erat, non numquam interdū, saepius noctū si perrumpere possent conati, operis munitiōne et militum concursū et tēlis repulsi hoc conatū destiterunt.*

15

## 9. Relinquēbātur ūna per Sēquanōs via, quā Sēquanis

11. *deiciō, -icere, -lēci, -iectum, tr.* [iacciō, throw. App. 7], hurl or cast down; dislodge; kill; foil, disappoint. \*

*navis, -is, f., ship, boat; navis longa, galley, ship of war; navis oneraria, transport. \**

*iungō, iungere, iūxi, iunctum, tr., join or unite together, attach, connect. 4.*

*ratis, -is, f., raft. 2*  
*complurēs, -a, adj. [plūs, more], several, many; a great many. \**

12. *parvus, -a, -um, adj., little, small, insignificant; comp., minor, minus, lesser, smaller; shorter; minus, as noun, less; sup., minimus, -a, -um, least, very small. \**

13. *numquam, adv. [ne+umquam, ever], not ever, never; nōn numquam, sometimes. 3*

*interdū, adv. [diēs, day], during the day, by day. 1.*

*noctū, adv. [nox, night], by night. 4.*

*perrumpō, -rumpere, -rāpi, -ruptum, tr. and intr. [rumpō, break], break through, force one's way through, force a passage. 1.*

14. *munitiō, -ōnis, f. [muniō, fortify], fortifying; fortification, rampart, works, intrenchments. \**

*concursum, -us, m. [concurrō, run], a running together, attack, onset; collision. 2.*

*tēlum, -i, n., a weapon for fighting at a distance, missile, dart, javelin. \**

*repellō, repellere, reppulsi, repulsum, tr. [re+pellō, beat, drive], beat or drive back, repel, repulse. 4.*

15. *conatus, -us, m. [cōnor, try], attempt, undertaking. 1.*

*desistō, -sistere, -stiti, -stitum, intr. [sistō, stand], abandon, cease, give up. 4.*

1. *relinquō, -linquere, -liqui, -lic-*

*repulsi, "were repulsed and."*

15. *conatū* is an ablative of separation.

### THIRD REFERENCES:

*Accusative of extent of space*

*Ablative of separation*

*Ablative of means*

*Ablative absolute*

Chap. 9-15. The Helvetii march out through the territory of the Sequani. Caesar, with a reinforced army, cuts to pieces a fourth of them and follows the rest.

Chap. 9. The Helvetii obtain permission from the Sequani to pass through their country.

1. *una via*, "only the way." This was through Pas de l'Écluse, the way mentioned in 8, 2.

*quā*, "and by this." Case? App. 144:

11. *ea spē deiectionis*, lit. "cast down from this expectation" = "disappointed in this expectation." *spē*: case? App. 134: G.-L. 390, 2: A. 402: B. 214, 2: H.-B. 408, 2, footnote: H. 464.

*navibus iunctis*, "by joining together boats," and thus making a pontoon bridge.

12. *alii*: we should expect some corresponding word in the previous phrase, *navibus . . . factis*. The meaning is that most of the Helvetii tried to cross by boats and rafts, but others by fords.

13. *si possent*, "(to see) whether they could." For this use of *si*, see App. 264, b: G.-L. 460, 1, b; 467: A. 576, a: B. 300, 3: H.-B. 582, 2, a: H. 649, II, 3.

14. *concursum*: cf. note on *disponit*, 1. 6.

invītis propter angustias ire nōn poterant. His cum suā sponte persuādere nōn possent, lēgātōs ad Dumnorigem Haeduum mittunt, ut eō dēprecātore ā Sēquanīs impetrārent. 5 Dumnorix grātiā et largitiōne apud Sēquanōs plūrimum poterat et Helvētiis erat amicus, quod ex eā civitatē Orgetorigis filiam in mātrimonium dūxerat, et cupiditatē rēgnī adductus novis rēbus studēbat et quam plūrimās civitatēs suō beneficiō habēre obstrictās volēbat. Itaque rem suscipit et ā Sēquanīs

tum, *tr.* [re-+līnquō, leave], leave behind, leave, abandon; *pass.*, be left, remain. \*

via, -ae, *f.*, way, road, route; journey, march. \*

2. propter, *prep.* with acc. [prope, near], on account of, because of, in consequence of \*

angustiae, -arum, *f. pl.* [angustus, narrow], narrowness; a narrow place or pass, strait, defile; straits, difficulties, perplexity. \*

3. spontis, *gen.*, and sponte, *abl.* [obsolete *nom.*, spōns], *f.*, of one's own accord, willingly, voluntarily; by one's self. 2.

4. dēprecātor, *m.* [dēprecor, plead for], mediator, intercessor. 1.

impetrō, 1, *tr.* [in+patrō, accomplish], obtain (*by request, entreaty, exertion*), accomplish, succeed in obtaining (*one's request*); impetrāre ā (ab), gain permission from, persuade. \*

5. grātia, -ae, *f.* [grātus, pleasing],

favor, good will, gratitude, esteem, influence, popularity; grātiās agere, thank; grātiām habēre, to feel grateful; grātiām referre, to return a favor; hanc grātiām referre, to return a favor in this way; grātiām inire, to gain favor; grātiā following a *gen.*, for the purpose of, in order to. \*

largitiō, -ōnis, *f.* [largior, bribe], bribery. 1

8. novus, -a, -um, *adj.*, new, novel, unusual; fresh; rēs novae, a change of government, revolution; *sup.*, novissimus, -a, -um, latest, last; as *noun* or with *agmen*, those in the rear, the rear. \*

studeō, -endi, *intr.*, be eager or zealous; desire, strive after, devote one's self to; pay attention to; accustom one's self to. \*

beneficium, -ci, *n.* [bene, well+faciō, do], well-doing, benefit, favor, kindness. \*

9. obstringō, -stringere, -strinxī,

G.-L. 389: A. 429, a: B. 218, 9: H.-B. 426: H. 476.

Sēquanīs invītis, "if the Sequani should refuse." Ablative absolute.

2. cum possent: mode? App. 239: G.-L. 586: A. 549: B. 286, 2: H.-B. 526: H. 598.

suā sponte, "by their own efforts" or "by themselves." The phrase usually means "of their own accord."

3. Dumnorigem: this is the Dumnorix who is mentioned in 3, 13 as having conspired with Orgetorix. Although that plot had failed he was still seeking a chance to make himself king.

4. ut impetrārent is a clause of purpose.

eō dēprecātore, lit. "he being mediator" = "by his mediation."

5. grātiā: case? App. 138: G.-L. 408: A. 404: B. 219: H.-B. 444: H. 475.

6. Helvētiis: case? App. 122: G.-L. 359: A. 384: B. 192, 1: H.-B. 362, footnote 3, a: H. 434, 2.

8. rēbus: case? App. 115: G.-L. 346, R. 2: A. 367: B. 187, II: H.-B. 362, footnote 3, b: H. 426, 1.

suō . . . obstrictās, lit. "to hold bound by his kindness" = "to keep under obligations."

impetrat ut per finēs suōs Helvētiōs ire patiantur, obsidēsque 10  
utī inter sēsē dent perficit: Sēquanī, nē itinere Helvētiōs  
prohibeant; Helvētīi, ut sine maleficiō et iniuriā trāseant.

10. Caesari renūtiātur Helvētiis esse in animō per agrum  
Sēquanōrū et Haeduōrum iter in Santonum finēs facere, qui  
nōn longē ā Tolōsātium finibus absunt, quae civitās est in prō-  
vinciā. ✓ Id si fieret, intellegēbat magnō cum periculō prōvinciae

-strictum, *tr.* [stringō, tie], bind, hold  
under obligations, pledge. 2.

itaque, *conj.* [ita, so], and so, there-  
fore, accordingly. \*

10. obses, -idis, *m. and f.* [obsidēō,  
blockade], one that is guarded, hostage;  
pledge, security. \*

1. renūtiō, *1. tr.* [re-+nūtius, mes-  
sage], bring back word, bring news,  
report; declare elected. \*

2. Santoni, -ōrum, or Santonēs,  
-um, *m.* (Ded), the Santoni (sān'tō-nī),  
or Santones (sān'tō-nēz). 3.

3. Tolōsātēs, -ium, *m.*, the Tolosates  
(tōl'ō-sā'tēz), the people of Tolosa. 1.

4. intellegō, -legere, -lēxi, -lēctum,  
*tr.* [inter+legō, choose, select], select  
or distinguish between; understand;  
know; see, perceive, realize; find out,  
learn. \*

10. obsidēs: all through Caesar's  
narrative we find that states were  
obliged to bind themselves to carry out  
their agreements by giving hostages.  
The hostages were usually the children  
of the most influential men of the state,  
and were liable to enslavement or death  
if the state failed to fulfill its agree-  
ment.

11. Sēquanī, Helvētīi: *sc.* *obsidēs  
dent*; i.e. the Sequani bound themselves  
not to stop the Helvetii, etc. The clauses  
are substantive volitive clauses, objects  
of the implied phrase "bind themselves."

### THIRD REFERENCES:

*Dative with special verbs*

*Dative with adjectives*

Chap. 10. Caesar brings more troops  
from Italy.

1. Caesari: case? App. 114, c: G.-L.  
345: A. 362; 365: B. 187, I: H.-B. 365: H.  
424; 425, 1.

renūtiātur: tense? App. 190, a: G.-L.  
229: A. 469: B. 239, 3: H.-B. 491, 1: H.  
532, 3. Caesar had sent out spies and  
scouts to report the movements of the  
Helvetii.

Helvētiis: case? App. 117: G.-L. 349:  
A. 373: B. 190: H.-B. 374: H. 430.

esse is the subject of *renūtiātur*.

2. facere is the subject of *esse*.

3. nōn longē: the distance is really  
about 130 miles, but the Helvetii would  
be more dangerous in the territory of  
the Santones than in their own country,  
because they would no longer be hemmed  
in by natural barriers. Caesar had rea-  
son to fear that either the Helvetii or the  
Gauls whom they should drive from  
their homes would raid the Province;  
and since it was his duty to protect the  
Province he was justified in forcing the  
Helvetii to remain at home. He does  
not choose to add, however, that this  
movement of the Helvetii gave him an  
excellent opportunity to interfere in the  
affairs of Gaul, and thereby fitted in  
with his plans for the conquest of the  
country.

4. id si fieret, "if this should be car-  
ried out," is a subordinate clause in in-  
direct discourse, depending on *futūrum*:  
mode? App. 269: G.-L. 650: A. 580: B.  
314: H.-B. 534, 2, II: H. 643. Caesar's  
thought was, "if this shall be carried  
out [future indicative], it will, etc."

magnō . . . futūrum, "that it would  
be (attended) with great danger to the  
province." prōvinciae is a genitive.

6. *futūrum* ut *hominēs bellicōsōs*, *populī Rōmānī inimicōs*, *locīs patentibus maximēque frūmentāriis finitimōs habēret*. Ob *eās causās ei mūnitiōnī* quam *fēcerat* T. Labiēnum *lēgātum* praeficit; ipse in *Italiam* magnis itineribus contendit duāsque ibi *legiōnēs cōscribit*, et *trēs*, quae circum Aquilēiam *hiemābant*, ex *hibernis* *ēdūcit*, et quā *proximum iter in ulteriōrem*

5. *bellicōsus*, -a, -um, *adj.* [bellum, war], of or full of war, warlike. 3.

6. *patēns*, -entis, *adj.* [pateō, be open], open, unobstructed, accessible. 1.

*frūmentārius*, -a, -um, *adj.* [frūmentum, grain], of or pertaining to grain; of places, fruitful, productive of grain; *rēs frūmentāria*, supply of grain, provisions. \*

7. T. *abbr. for Titus* (tī' tūs), a Roman *praenomen*. \*

*Labiēnus*, -i, *m.*, Titus Atius Labienus (tī' tūs ā' shyūs lā' bi-ē' nūs), Caesar's most trusted lieutenant in the Gallic War. In the Civil War he aided Pompey and was slain at Munda 45 B.C. \*

8. *praeficiō*, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum, *tr.* [faciō, make], make before; place over, put in command of, put at the head of, place in charge of. 4.

*Italia*, -ae, *f.*, Italy, sometimes (in Caesar) including Cisalpine Gaul, but usually including only the rest of the peninsula. \*

9. *ibi*, *adv.*, there, in that place. \* *cōscribō*, -scribere, -scripsī, -scriptum, *tr.* [scribō, write], write together in a list; levy, enroll, enlist; write. \*

*circum*, *prep. with acc.* [circus, a circle], around, about, near. 2.

*Aquilēia*, -ae, *f.*, Aquileia (āk' wī-lē-ya), a city of Cisalpine Gaul. 1.

*hiemō*, 1, *intr.* [hiems, winter], pass the winter, winter. \*

10. *hiberna*, -ōrum, *n.* [sc. castra, camp], winter camp, winter quarters. \* *ēdūcō*, -ducere, -dūxī, -ductum, *tr.* [ducō, lead], lead out or forth; draw (a sword). \*

5. *ut habēret* is the subject of *futūrum*: mode? App. 229, b: G.-L. 553, 3: A. 569, 2: B. 297, 2: H.-B. 521, 3, a: H. 571, 1.

*inimicōs* is here used as a noun, and therefore a genitive depends on it. If used as an adjective it would govern the dative.

*locīs* is probably a dative depending on *finitimōs*, though it may be an ablative of place.

6. *habēret*: sc. *prōvincia*.

7. *mūnitiōnī*: case? App. 116, I: G.-L. 347: A. 370, a, note 1: B. 187, III, 2: H.-B. 376, a: H. 429, 1.

*lēgātum*: see Int. 38.

8. *Italiam*: i.e. Cisalpine Gaul, which was one of the provinces under his proconsular command.

*itineribus*: case? App. 142: G.-L. 399: A. 412: B. 220, 1: H.-B. 445, 2: H. 473, 3.

9. *cōscribit*: he did this without authority from Rome. He had been given only four legions,—the one in Transalpine Gaul and the three at Aquileia. But the situation was more serious than the Roman Senate realized. He therefore increased his army to six legions, perhaps 24,000 men. With these legions and some auxiliary troops he had to oppose 92,000 fighting men, according to the Gallic records given in chap. 29.

10. *hibernis*: case? App. 134, a: G.-L. 390, 1: A. 426, 1: B. 229: H.-B. 408, 1: H. 461.

*quā proximum iter erat*, "where there was the shortest route." He chose the pass of Mount Genève, and the route is shown on the map facing p. 42. He did not wish to return to Geneva, for by this time the Helvetii had left their

Galliam per Alpēs erat cum his quinque legiōnibus ire contendit. Ibi Centronēs et Graioceli et Caturigēs, locis superioribus occupātis, itinere exercitum prohibere cōnantur. Complūribus his proeliis pulsīs, ab Ocelō, quod est oppidum citeriōris provinciāe extrēmum, in finēs Vocontiōrum ulteriōris provinciāe diē septimō pervenit; inde in Allobrogum finēs, ab Allobrogibus in Segusiāvōs exercitum dūcit. Hī sunt extrā provinciā trans Rhodanum primī.

11. Helvētīi iam per angustias et finēs Sēquanōrum suās cōpiās trādūxerant, et in Haeduōrum finēs pervēnerant

11. Alpēs, -ium, *f. pl.* (Cghl), the Alps (āl'pēz), better, the Alps. \*  
quinque (V), *card. num. adj., indecl., five.* 4.

12. Centronēs, -um, *m.* (Dg), the Ceutrones (sū'trō-nēz). 1.

Graioceli, -ōrum, *m.* (Dg), the Graioceli (grā-yōs'ē-lī). 1.

Caturigēs, -um, *m.* (Dg), the Caturiges (kāt'ū-rī'jēz). 1.

superior, -ius, *adj.* [*comp. of superior*, high. App. 44], (1) *of place*, upper, higher, superior; (2) *of time*, previous, earlier, former. \*

14. Ocelum, -ī, *n.* (Dg), Ocelum (ōs'ē-lūm). 1.

citerior, -ius, *comp. adj.* (App. 43), nearer, hither; Gallia Citerior (= Cis-

alpina), Cisalpine Gaul, on the nearer (Italian) side of the Alps. \*

15. Vocontii, -ōrum, *m.* (Df), the Vocontii (vō-kōn'shyi). 1.

16. septimus, -a, -um, *ord. num. adj.* [septem, seven], seventh. \*

inde, *adv.*, from that place, thence; then, thereupon. \*

17. Segusiavi, -ōrum, *m.* (Def), the Segusiavi (sēg'ū-shī-ā'vi). 1.

extrā, *adv. and prep. with acc.*, out of, outside of, beyond, without. 1.

18. primus, -a, -um, *adj. sup.* (App. 43), first, foremost; first part of; *pl. as noun*, the first, the front rank or ranks; leaders, chiefs; in primis, especially. \*

2. trādūcō, -dūcere, -dūxi, -ductum, *tr.* [trās+dūcō, lead], lead across,

country. It is estimated that Caesar spent two months in securing his reinforcements.

11. legiōnibus: case? App. 140: G.-L. 392, R. 1: A. 413: B. 222: H.-B. 420: H. 473, 1.

13. complūribus . . . proeliis: English order, his pulsīs (ablative absolute) complūribus proeliis (ablative of means).

15. provinciāe: case? App. 99: G.-L. 362: A. 343: B. 198: H.-B. 339: H. 440, 1.

17. in Segusiāvōs: i.e. into that part of their territory which lies between the Rhone and the Arar. He encamped on the heights above the city of Lyons. Labienus must have rejoined him there.

# THIRD REFERENCES:

Possessive genitive

Indirect object

Dative with compound verbs

Ablative of place from which

Ablative of accompaniment

Historical present

Subordinate clause in indirect discourse

Chap. 11. Three states ask Caesar to protect them against the Helvetii.

1. iam, "by this time."

angustias: at Pas de l'Écluse.

2. pervēnerant: i.e. the head of their column had crossed the Arar, though its rear was some miles from

eōrumque agrōs populābantur. Haedui, cum sē suaque ab iīs dēfendere nōn possent, lēgātōs ad Caesarem mittunt rogātum  
 • auxilium: Ita sē omni tempore dē populō Rōmānō meritōs esse ut paene in cōspectū exercitūs nostrī agrī vāstārī, liberī in servitūtem abdūcī, oppida expugnārī nōn dēbuerint. Eōdem tempore Ambarri, necessariī et cōsanguineī Haeduōrum,

lead over; take across, transport; transfer, convey, pass on; win over. \*

3. *populor*, 1, *tr.*, devastate, ravage, lay waste. 4.

4. *dēfendō*, -fendere, -fendi, -fēsum, *tr.* [fendō, strike], keep or ward off, repel; defend, protect. \*

5. *auxilium*, -li, *n.* [augeō, increase], help, assistance, aid; *pl.*, auxiliary troops; reinforcements. \*

*ita*, *adv.*, so, thus, in this way; as follows; *ut* . . . *ita*, in proportion as . . . in such proportion, as . . . so; *nōn ita*, not so very, not very; *ita* . . . *ut*, just . . . as; so . . . that. \*

*mereō*, and *mereor*, 2, *tr.*, deserve, merit, be worthy of; win, earn, incur (odium); serve as a soldier (*i.e.* earn pay). 3.

6. *paene*, *adv.*, nearly, almost. \*  
*cōspectus*, -ūs, *m.* [cōspiciō, look at], sight, view; presence. \*

*vāstō*, 1, *tr.* [vāstus, waste], lay waste, ravage, devastate. 3.

*liberī*, -ōrum, *m.*, [liber, free], the free members of the household (as opposed to slaves); children. \*

7. *servitūs*, -ūtis, *f.* [servus, a slave], slavery, servitude. \*

*abdūcō*, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductum, *tr.* [dūcō, lead], lead away, draw or carry off, withdraw. 1.

*expugnō*, 1, *tr.* [pugnō, fight], take or carry by storm, capture by assault; overpower, sack. \*

*dēbeō*, 2, *tr.* [dē+habeō, have], have, or keep from some one; owe; with *inf.*, ought, must; *pass.*, be due. \*

8. *Ambarri*, -ōrum, *m.* (Cf. the Ambarri (ām-bār'i), clients of the Haedui. 2.

*necessariū*, -a, -um, *adj.* [necesse, necessary], necessary, requisite, pressing; with *tempus*, critical; as *noun*, kinsman, friend. \*

*cōsanguineus*, -a, -um, *adj.* [sanguis, blood], of the same blood; as *noun*, kinsman, relative. 3.

that river. They had traveled only about a hundred miles during the two months of Caesar's absence. Much of this time, however, had been spent in negotiations with the Sequani. Their line of march must have been at least fifty miles in length, and their progress was necessarily slow, especially at the pass. For their route see the map facing p. 42.

3. *cum possent*: causal.

*suaque*, "and their property."

4. *rogātum*: form and use? App. 295: G.-L. 435, n. 3: A. 509: B. 340, 1, a: H.-B. 612, a: H. 632, 1; 633.

5. *omni tempore*, "on every occasion."

*meritōs esse* depends on the idea of "saying" which is implied in *rogātum*. About sixty years before, the Haedui had been called "brothers" of the Roman people, and ever since that time their relations with Rome had been friendly; but we do not know that they had ever been of assistance to Rome.

6. *ut agrī vāstārī nōn dēbuerint*. "that their lands ought not to have been devastated." *dēbuerint*: mode? App. 226: G.-L. 552: A. 537, 1: B. 234, 1: H.-B. 521, 2: H. 570.

*nostrī* = *Rōmānī*. It agrees with *exercitūs*.

Caesarem certiorem faciunt sēsē dēpopulātis agrīs nōn facile ab oppidis vim hostium prohibēre. Item Allobrogēs qui trāns 10 Rhodanum vicōs possessiōnēsque habēbant fugā sē ad Caesarem recipiunt et dēmōstrant sibi praeter agri. solum nihil esse reliquī. Quibus rēbus adductus Caesar nōn exspectandum sibi statuit dum, omnibus fortūnis sociōrum cōsūptis, in Santonōs Helvētii pervenirent. < 15

12. Flūmen est Arar, quod per finēs Haeduōrum et

9. dēpopulor, 1, *tr.* populor, lay waste, lay waste, ravage. 2.

10. hostis, -is, *m., f., (public)* enemy or foe in distinction from inimicus, a personal enemy; *pl.*, the enemy. \*

11. possessiō, -ōnis, *f.* [possideō, possess], possession, occupation; a possession, property. 4.

fuga, -ae, *f.*, flight; in fugam conicere or dare, put to flight. \*

12. dēmōstrō, 1, *tr.* [mōstrō, show], point out, show, explain, describe; declare, state, say. \*

praeter, *prep. with acc.* [prae, before], before; beyond, past; contrary to; in addition to, except, besides. \*

solum, -i, *n.*, bottom; ground, soil, earth. 1.

nihil, *indecl. noun, n.*, nothing; with *gen.*, no, none of; *acc. as adv.*, not, not at

all, by no means; nōn nihil, somewhat. \*

13. exspectō, 1, *tr.* [spectō, look at], look out for, await, expect; wait to see; anticipate, apprehend. \*

14. statuō, statuere, statui, statutum, *tr.* [status, position], put in position, set up, place; determine, resolve; judge, pass sentence; think, consider. \*

fortūna, -ae, *f.* [fors, chance], fortune, luck, chance, opportunity; lot, condition; good fortune, success; property, estate. \*

cōsūmō, -sumere, -sumpsi, -sumptum, *tr.* [sumō, take], take together or all at once; devour, consume, destroy; use up, waste, pass. 3.

1. Arar, Araris (*acc. -im*), *m.* (CDf), the Arar (ārar), the modern Saone. 4.

9. sēsē dēpopulātis agrīs, "that their lands had been laid waste and that they," etc. In a number of deponent verbs the perfect participle is used with a passive meaning.

10. Allobrogēs, qui ... habēbant: most of the Allobroges were south of the Rhone and were not troubled; but the map shows that some were north of the river and on the route of the Helvetii.

12. sibi nihil esse reliquī, "that to them there was nothing of a remainder" = "that they had nothing left." sibi: case? App. 117: G.-L. 349: A. 373: B. 190: H.-B. 374: H. 430. reliquī is used as a noun and is a partitive genitive: App. 101, a: G.-L. 369, R. 2: A. 346, a, 1: B. 201, 2, a: H.-B. 346, a: H. 440, 5, note.

13. quibus: use of relative? App.

173, a: G.-L. 619, R. 1: A. 303, 2: B. 251, 6: H.-B. 284, 8: H. 510.

nōn exspectandum (sc. esse) sibi, "that it was not to be waited by him" = "that he must not wait." exspectandum: construction? App. 285, II, a: G.-L. 251, 1: A. 194, b: B. 237, 7, b, 1: H.-B. 600, 3; 162: H. 287. sibi: case? App. 118: G.-L. 215, 2: A. 374, a: B. 189, 1: H.-B. 373, 1: H. 431.

14. dum pervenirent, "until they should arrive."

#### THIRD REFERENCES:

*Dative of possessor*

*Relative instead of demonstrative*

Chap. 12. Caesar destroys the Tigurini, the rearguard of the Helvetii.

1. flūmen est Arar, "there is a river (named) the Arar."

Sēquanōrum in Rhodanum influit, incredibili lēnitāte, ita ut oculis in utram partem fluat iūdicārī nōn possit. Id Helvētīi ratibus ac lintribus iūctis trānsībant. Ubi per explorātōrēs  
 5 Caesar certior factus est trēs iam partēs cōpiārum Helvētiōs id flūmen trādūxisse, quārtam ferē partem citrā flūmen Ararim reliquam esse, dē tertiā vigiliā cum legiōnibus tribus ē castris profectus ad eam partem pervēnit quae nōndum flūmen trāns-

2. **incrēdibilis**, -e, *adj.* [*in* + *crēdibilis*, credible], incredible, unlikely; extraordinary. 4.

**lēnitās**, -tātis, *f.* [*lēnis*, smooth], smoothness, gentleness. 1.

3. **oculus**, -i, *m.*, eye. 3.

**uter**, *utra*, *utrum*, *gen. utrius* (App. 39), *adj.* (1) *as interrog.*, which one or which of two; (2) *as rel.*, the one who, of two, whichever. 1.

**iūdicō**, 1, *tr.* [*iūdex*, a judge], pass judgment on, judge, decide, determine; think, consider. \*

4. **linter**, -tris, *f.*, skiff, rowboat, canoe. 2.

**explorātor**, -ōris, *m.* [*explōrō*, search out], explorer, scout, spy. \*

6. **quārtus**, -a, -um, *ord. num. adj.* [*quattuor*, four], fourth. \*

**citrā**, *prep. with acc.*, on this side of. 3.

7. **vigilia**, -ae, *f.* [*vigil*, awake], wakefulness, watching; a watch, one of the four equal divisions of the night, used by the Romans in reckoning time. \*

**castrum**, -i, *n.*, fort; *pl.*, **castra**, **castrōrum**, fortified camp, camp; **castra facere** or **pōnere**, pitch camp; **castra movēre**, break up camp. \*

2. **incrēdibili lēnitāte**, "of remarkably slow current": descriptive ablative.

**ut possit**: mode? App. 226: G.-L. 552: A. 537, 1: B. 284, 1: H.-B. 521, 2: H. 570.

Why is the present tense used? Strictly because Caesar meant "can," not "could." Every subjunctive tense has a meaning and is used because that meaning is needed in the sentence; at the same time, however, they are almost invariably used in accordance with the rule for sequence of tenses. Learn once for all this very important rule, and the distinction between principal and historical tenses: App. 202; 203: G.-L. 509; 510; 511: A. 482, 1, 2; 483: B. 266, B; 267, 1, 2, 3: H.-B. 476, foot-note 2: H. 198; 543; 544; 545.

3. **in . . . fluat**, "in which direction it flows": mode? App. 203: G.-L. 467: A. 573; 574: B. 300, 1, a: H.-B. 534, 2, III; 537, b: H. 649, II.

4. **ratibus, lintribus**: ablatives of means.

**iūctis** modifies only *lintribus*.

**trānsībant**: at a point about twelve miles north of Caesar's camp. Excavations in this vicinity have brought to light numerous graves which give evidence of hasty interment, as if after a battle.

5. **trēs . . . trādūxisse**, "that the Helvetii had already conveyed three-fourths of their troops across this river." The verb *trādūxisse* governs two objects,—*partēs* depending on the meaning of the simple verb *dūcō*, *flūmen* depending on the meaning of the preposition *trāns*: App. 127: G.-L. 331, R. 1: A. 388, b: B. 175, 2, a, 1: H.-B. 391, 2: H. 406.

6. **citrā**: i.e. on the east.

7. **dē tertiā vigiliā**, "just after (the beginning of) the third watch"="just after midnight."

**legiōnibus**: how many men in a legion? Int. 33.

ierat. Eōs impeditōs et inopināntēs aggressus magnam partem eōrum concidit; reliquī sēsē fugae mandārunt atque in 10 proximās silvās abdidērunt. Is pāgus appellābātur Tigurinus; nam omnis civitās Helvētia in quattuor pāgōs divisa est. Hīc pāgus ūnus, cum domō exisset patrum nostrōrum memoriā, L. Cassium cōsulem interfēcerat et eius exercitum sub iugum miserat. ~~¶~~ Ita sive cāsū sive cōnsiliō deōram immortalium, 15 quae pars civitātis Helvētiae insignem calamitatem populō

9. **impeditus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [*pf. part. of impediō*, hinder], hindered, burdened, impeded, delayed; hindered or burdened by baggage; occupied or engaged in; at a disadvantage; of places, difficult of passage. \*

**inopināns**, -antis, *adj.* [in-+opl-nāns, expecting], not expecting, not suspecting, unawares, off one's guard. 2.

**aggredior**, -gredi, -gressus sum, *tr.* [ad+gradior, step], advance to or against; attack. 4.

10. **concidō**, -cidere, -cidi, -cisum, *tr.* [caedō, cut], cut down, slay, kill; cut off. 3.

**mandō**, 1, *tr.* [manus, hand+**dō**, give], give into one's hands; entrust, commit; enjoin, order, command. \*

11. **silva**, -ae, *f.*, a wood, forest, woods. \*

**abdō**, -dere, -didi, -ditum, *tr.* [dō, put], put away, remove, withdraw, hide, conceal. \*

**pāgus**, -i, *m.*, village; district, province, canton. \*

**Tigurinus**, -a, -um, of or belonging to the Tigurini; *pl. as noun*, Tigurini (Cg), the Tigurini (tig'ū-ri'ni). 2.

12. **nam**, *conj.*, for. \*  
**quattuor** (IV), *card. num. adj.*, indecl., four. \*

14. **interficiō**, -ficere, -feci, -fectum, *tr.* [faciō, make], make away with, kill, destroy. \*

15. **sive and seu**, *conj.* [si, if+ve, or], or if, if; or; whether; **sive . . . sive**, either . . . or, whether . . . or, to see if . . . or. \*

**cāsus**, -ūs, *m.* [cadō, fall], what befalls; accident, chance; misfortune, fate; crisis; **cāsū**, by chance. \*

**deus**, -i (*nom. pl.*, dii; *dat. pl.*, dis), *m.*, god, deity. 4.

**immortalis**, -e, *adj.* [in-+mortālis, mortal], not mortal, immortal. 3.

16. **insignis**, -e, *adj.* [signō, mark], marked, remarkable; *n. as noun*, mark, sign; ornament, trapping. 4.

**calamitās**, -tātis, *f.*, misfortune, disaster, defeat. \*

10. **mandārunt** = *mandāvērunt*: form? App. 72: G.-L. 131, 1: A. 181, a: B. 116, 1: H.-B. 163, 1: H. 238.

in **silvās**: from the English point of view we might expect the ablative (place where), but the verb implies motion into,—"ran into and hid."

13. **cum exisset**: mode? App. 240; 242, a: G.-L. 585: A. 546, notes 1, 2, 3: B. 288, 1, B: H.-B. 524: H. 600, II, 1. **exisset** = *exisset*.

**memoriā**: case? App. 152: G.-L. 393: A. 423: B. 231: H.-B. 439: H. 487.

14. **Cassium**, *sub iugum*: cf. 7, 13, 14.

16. **quae pars . . . ea**, "that part which." Not infrequently the antecedent is thus expressed in the relative clause instead of the principal clause, and the relative clause then precedes the antecedent.

**populō**: the compound *inferō* governs the indirect object.

Rōmānō intulerat, ea princeps poenās persolvit. Quā in rē Caesar nōn solum publicās sed etiam privātās iniuriās ultus est, quod eius socerī L. Pisōnis avum, L. Pisōnem lēgātum, Tigurini eōdem proeliō quō Cassium interfēcerant.

13. Hōc proeliō factō, reliquās cōpiās Helvētiōrum ut cōsequī posset, pontem in Ararī faciendū cūrat atque ita exercitum trādūcit. Helvētiī repentinō eius adventū commōti, cum id quod ipsī diēbus xx aegerrimē cōnfēcerant, ut flūmen trānsirent, illum ūnō diē fēcisse intellegent, lēgātōs ad

17. **persolvō**, -solvere, -solvi, -solutum, *tr.* [solvō, pay], pay in full; suffer (punishment). 1.

18. **solum**, *adv.* [sōlus, alone], only, merely. \*

**pūblicus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [populus, people], of the state or people, common, public; *n. as noun*, public, public view; *rēs pūblica*, common weal, state. \*

**sed**, *conj.*, but, but yet (a stronger adverbative than autem or at). \*

**ulciscor**, **ulcisci**, **ultus sum**, *tr.*, avenge; punish, take vengeance on. 3.

19. **socer**, -eri, *m.*, father-in-law. 1.

**avus**, -i, *m.*, grandfather. 2.

**Pisō**, -ōnis, *m.*, Lucius Calpurnius Piso (lū'shyūs kāl-pēr'nī-ūs pī'sō),

killed in the defeat of Cassius's army by the Tigurini, 107 B.C. 1.

2. **cōsequor**, -sequi, -secūtus sum, *tr.* [sequor, follow], follow up; go after, pursue; reach, overtake; gain, attain, accomplish; ensue, succeed. \*

**cūrō**, 1, *tr.* [cūra, care], care for, take care of, provide for; with *gerundive* (App. 285, II, b), have, order. 4.

3. **repentinus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [repēns, sudden], sudden, unexpected, hasty. 3. **commoveō**, -movēre, -mōvi, -mōtum, *tr.* [moveō, move], move or excite thoroughly, rouse, agitate, alarm. \*

4. **viginti** (XX), *card. num. adj.*, indecl., twenty. \*

**aegrē**, *adv.* [aeger, ill], hardly, with difficulty, scarcely. *Comp.*, aegrius; *sup.*, aegerrimē (App. 40). 3.

17. **princeps persolvit**, "was the first to pay."

19. Note the accumulation of appositives. — **Pisōnis** with *socerī*, **Pisōnem** with *avum*, **lēgātum** with *Pisōnem*.

**socerī**: in the year 59 Caesar had married Calpurnia, daughter of the Lucius Calpurnius Piso mentioned in 6, 15 as one of the consuls for the year 58.

20. **quō Cassium**: the same verb *interfēcerant* belongs in the relative clause and in the principal clause.

#### THIRD REFERENCES:

*Ablative of time*

*Result clause*

*Narrative cum clause*

Chap. 13. The Helvetii haughtily ask for peace.

1. **ut** would usually stand before *reliquās*.

2. **pontem faciendū cūrat**, "he had a bridge made": construction? App. 285, II, b: G.-L. 430: A. 500, 4: B. 337, 7, b, 2: H.-B. 612, III: H. 622. This bridge was probably of boats, and was made by the chief of engineers: see Int. 40.

in **Ararī**, "over the Arar."

4. **cum intellegent**, "since they saw," or better "seeing." The object of *intellegent* is *illum fēcisse*. **id** is the object of *fēcisse*. **ut trānsirent**, "(namely) the crossing of the river," is in apposition with *id*: mode? App. 229, a: G.-L. 553, 1: A. 558: B. 297, 1: H.-B. 521, 3, a: H. 571, 4.

5. **lēgātōs**, "envoys."

eum mittunt; cuius lēgatiōnis Divicō princeps fuit, quī bellō Cassiānō dūx Helvētiōrum fuerat. Is ita cum Caesare ēgit: Si pācem populus Rōmānus cūm Helvētiis faceret, in eam partem tūrōs atque ibi futūrōs Helvētiōs ubi eōs Caesar cōstituisset atque esse voluisset; sīn bellō persequi perseverāret, remi- 10 niscerētur et veteris incommodi populī Rōmānī et pristinae

6. Divicō, -ōnis, *m.*, Divico (div'ī-kō), an *Helvetian chieftain*. 2.

7. Cassiānus, -a, -um, *adj.*, of Cassius, see Cassius. 1.

agō, agere, ēgi, āctum, *tr.*, set in motion; drive (*of animals*); move forward, advance (*of military works*); do, transact, carry on (*of business*); discuss, speak; hold (*conventum*); give, render (*grātiās*); plead (*causam* or *rem*); quod agitur, the matter in hand; rēs agitur, something is at stake. \*

6. Divico was an old man, for the battle was fought 49 years before.

7. The rest of this chapter and the whole of the next are in indirect discourse. If the teacher wishes the class, at this point, to make a more detailed study of the construction than is called for by the notes, he will find help in the direct form of these speeches as printed after Book VII.

Remember the important facts already learned,—that in every declarative sentence the principal verb will be an infinitive, and that in every subordinate clause the verb will be a subjunctive. Usually the future infinitive shows that the speaker used a future indicative, a present infinitive shows that he used a present indicative, and a perfect infinitive shows that he used a past tense of the indicative. But note that not every infinitive stands for an indicative in the direct form; for all infinitives in the direct form are retained unchanged in the indirect. Note that every subjunctive follows the rule of sequence of tenses: App. 202; 203: G.-L. 509; 510; 511: A. 482, 1, 2; 483: B. 266, B; 267, 1, 2, 3: H.-B. 476, foot-note 2: H. 198; 543; 544; 545.

sī, *conj.*, if however, but if. 1.

10. persequor, -sequi, -secutus sum, *tr.* [sequor, follow], follow through, continue in; pursue, follow up; avenge. 2.

perseverō, 1, *intr.*, persist, persevere. 1.

reminiscor, -i, *intr.* [mēns, mind], call to mind, remember. 1.

11. vetus, -eris, *adj.*, old, ancient, former; *with* militēs, veteran. \*

incommodum, -i, *n.* [incommodus,

sī . . . faceret. "if . . . should make." Only the sense of the passage shows that *faceret* stands for an original future rather than a present, and for an indicative rather than a subjunctive.

9. Helvētiōs is the subject of *tūrōs* and *futūrōs*.

eōs is the subject of *esse*.

ubi cōstituisset, "where he should have decided" = "where he should decide" or "where he decided." The pluperfect can stand equally well for the perfect, the pluperfect, or the future perfect; but the Helvetii do not promise to return to their own country, and Caesar had not yet decided to settle them anywhere else; therefore *cōstituisset* must stand for a future perfect, a tense rarely used in English.

10. perseverāret stands for a future, like *faceret*, 1. 8.

reminiscerētur, "he should remember." Since this is a principal clause the use of the subjunctive shows that the sentence is not declarative. App. 267: G.-L. 652: A. 588: B. 316: H.-B. 534, 2; 538: H. 642.

11. et . . . et, "both . . . and."

incommodi: i.e. the defeat of Cassius: case? App. 107: G.-L. 376: A.

*virtūtis* Helvētiōrum: Quod imprōvisō ūnum pāgum adortus esset, cum ii quī flūmen trānsissent suis auxiliū ferre nōn possent, nē ob eam rem aut suae magnopere virtūtī tribueret  
 15 aut ipsōs dēspiceret; sē ita ā patribus maiōribusque suis didicisse ut magis virtūte contenderent quam dolō aut insidiis nīterentur. Quārē nē committeret ut is locus ubi cōstitissent

inconvenient], inconvenience, disadvantage, trouble; disaster, defeat, loss, injury. 1.

*pristinus*, -a, -um, *adj.* [for *pri-ustinus*, from *prior*, former], former, original; previous, preceding. 4.

12. *imprōvisō*, *adv.* [imprōvisus, unforeseen], unexpectedly, without warning. 1.

*adorior*, -oriri, -ortus sum, *tr.* [orior, arise], rise against, assail, attack. \*

13. *ferō*, *ferre*, *tull*, *lātum* (App. 81), *tr. and intr.*; *tr.*, bear, carry, bring; endure, suffer, support, withstand; receive; tell, report; give, render (*aid*); offer, propose (*terms*); *graviter* or *molestē ferre*, be annoyed or angry at; *pass.* (sometimes) rush; *intr.* almost = *verb* to be. \*

14. *magnopere*, *adv.* [magnus, great + opus, work], with great labor; especially, greatly, exceedingly, earnestly. \*

*tribuō*, *tribuere*, *tribul*, *tribūtum*, *tr.* [tribus, a tribe or division], divide, distribute; attribute, assign, allot, ascribe; grant, do for the sake of, render. 2.

15. *dēspiciō*, -*spicere*, -*spexi*, -*spec-tum*, *tr.* [speciō, look], look down; look down upon, scorn, despise. 2.

*maior*, *maius*, *adj.* [comp. of *mag-nus*, great], greater (in degree, size, time etc.); older, elder; *as noun*, *maiōrēs nātū*, elders, old men; *maiōrēs*, ancestors. \*

16. *discō*, *discere*, *didici*, —, *tr. and intr.*, learn, be taught. 1.

*dolus*, -I, *m.*, craft, trick, treachery. 2.

*insidiāe*, -ārum, *f. pl.* [sedeō, sit], a sitting or lying in wait; ambush, ambuscade, treachery; artifice, crafty device. \*

17. *nitor*, *niti*, *nixus sum*, *intr.* rest or rely upon; exert one's self, strive, endeavor. 1.

*quārē*, *adv.* [qui, which + rēs, thing], (1) *interrog.*, why? wherefore? (2) *rel.*, wherefore; on this account, therefore. \*

*committō*, -*mittere*, -*misi*, -*missum*, *tr.* [mittō, send], join, splice; commit (a crime), do; allow, permit; entrust; *proelium committere*, join or begin battle. \*

*cōsistō*, -*sistere*, -*stiti*, —, *intr.* [sistō, stand], take a stand or position, keep one's position, stand, form (of soldiers); stop, halt, remain, stay; (of ships) ride at anchor; consist in, depend or rest on. \*

350, c: B. 2<sup>6</sup>, 2: H.-B. 350: H. 454, 1.

12. *quod adortus esset*, "as to the fact that he had attacked."

14. *nō suae magnopere virtūtī tribueret*, lit., "he should not greatly ascribe to his own prowess" = "he should not overrate his own prowess." For mode cf. *reminisceretur*, I. 10.

15. *ipsōs*, *sē*: i e. the Helvetii.

16. *ut contenderent*: a result clause. *magis quam*, "rather than."

*dolō*: case? App. 143, a: G.-L. 401, n. 6: A. 431: B. 218, 3: H.-B. 438, 1: H. 476, 3.

17. The meaning of the last sentence is, "Do not let the spot on which we stand become famous as the scene of your bloody defeat."

*cōstitissent* stands for a perfect in-

ex calamitāte populī Rōmānī et interneciōne exercitūs nōmen caperet aut memoriam prōderet.

14. His Caesar ita respondit: Eō sibi minus dubitātiōnis dari, quod eās rēs quās lēgātī Helvētīī commemorāssent memoriā tenēret, atque eō gravius ferre quō minus meritō populī Rōmānī accidissent; quī sī alicuius iniūriāe sibi cōnsciūs fuisset, nōn fuisse difficile cavēre; sed eō dēceptum, quod s

18. interneciō, -ōnis, *f.* [necō, destroy], extermination, annihilation, utter destruction. 2.

nōmen, -inis, *n.*, name, title; reputation, prestige; nōmine with *gen.*, in the name of, as; suō nōmine, on his or their own account, personally. \*

19. prōdō, -dere, -didi, -ditum, *tr.* [dō, give], give forth, reveal; betray, give up; transmit, hand down; memoriā prōditum, told in tradition, handed down. 2.

1. dubitātiō, -ōnis, *f.* [dubitō, doubt], doubt, uncertainty; hesitation. 1.

2. commemorō, 1, *tr.* [memorō, call to mind], remind one of; state, mention. \*

3. graviter, *adv.* [gravis, heavy], heavily, with great weight, with force; severely, seriously; graviter ferre, take

to heart, be annoyed or vexed (*at*); graviter premere, press hard. \*

meritum, -i, *n.* [mereor, deserve], desert, merit, service; favor, kindness, benefit. 2.

4. accidō, -cidere, -cidi, —, *intr.* [ad+cadō, fall], fall to or upon; befall, happen, fall to the lot of, occur; accidit, it happens. \*

aliquis, -quid, and aliqui, -qua, -quod, *indef. pron.* [quis, who. App. 62, a], some one, something; any one, anything, any. \*

cōnsciūs, -a, -um, *adj.* [sciō, know], conscious; aware. 1.

5. caveō, cavēre, cāvī, cautum, *intr.*, be cautious, be on one's guard; obsidibus cavēre, exchange hostages as security. 1.

dēcipiō, -cipere, -cēpi, -ceptum, *tr.* [capiō, take], entrap; deceive. 1.

dicative: "where they had taken their stand" for "where we have taken our stand."

### THIRD REFERENCE:

*Substantive clause of result or fact*

Chap. 14. Caesar proposes terms, which the Helvetii refuse.

1. his: i.e. the envoys.

eō is an ablative of cause, explained by the causal clause quod . . . tenēret.

minus dubitātiōnis, "less hesitation." dubitātiōnis: partitive genitive.

2. eās rēs: i.e. the defeat of Cassius.

3. eō . . . quō: case? App. 148, a: G.-L. 403. A. 414, a: B. 228; H.-B. 424: H. 479, 1.

meritō: case? App. 142, a: G.-L. 399, n. 1: A. 418, a: B. 220, 3: H.-B. 414, a: H. 475, 3.

4. quī sī, "now if they." Caesar uses the singular in referring to the collective noun *populus*, but English prefers the plural.

iniūriāe, "of wrong doing": case? App. 106, a: G.-L. 374: A. 349, a: B. 244, 1: H.-B. 354, footnote 1: H. 451, n. 2.

sibi, lit. conscious "to themselves," should not be expressed in translating.

5. nōn fuisse difficile, "it would not have been difficult."

eō, is an ablative of cause, explained by the clause quod . . . putāret.

dēceptum: sc. *populum Rōmānum* . . .

esse.

neque commissum ā sē intellegeret quārē timēret, neque sine causā timendum putāret. Quod sī veteris contumēliae oblivisci vellet, num etiam recentium iniuriarum, quod eō invitō iter per prōvinciam per vim temptāssent, quod Haeduōs, quod 10 Ambarrōs, quod Allobrogēs vexāssent, memoriam dēpōnere posse? Quod suā victōriā tam insolenter glōriārentur, quodque tam diū sē impūne iniuriās intulisse admirārentur, eōdem

6. timeō, -ēre, -ui, —, *tr. and intr.*, fear, be afraid of, dread; *with dat.*, be anxious about, be anxious for, dread; nihil timēre, have no fear. \*

7. contumēlia, -ae, *f.*, affront, indignity, insult; injury, violence. 3.

obliscor, obliscī, obliscus sum, *intr.* [obliviō, forgetfulness], forget. 1.

8. num, *interrog. particle implying the expectation of a negative reply.* 1.

recens, -entis, *adj.*, recent, late; fresh, new, vigorous. 3.

9. temptō, 1, *tr.*, make an attempt upon, try to gain possession of, attack; try, test, 'try to win over. 4.

10. vexō, 1, *tr.* [intensive of vehō, carry], carry or drag hither and thither; harass, plunder, waste, overrun. 3.

6. commissum (*sc. quicquam . . . esse*), "that anything had been done."

ā sē, "by them"; i.e. the Roman people.

quārē timēret, "because of which they should be afraid." For mode see App. 230, c: G.-L. 631, 2: H.-B. 513, 2.

7. timendum, *lit.* "that it must be feared" = "that they need fear": construction? App. 285, II, a: G.-L. 251, 1: A. 194, b: B. 337, 7, b, 1: H.-B. 600, 3; 103: H. 237.

quod sī, "but if."

contumēliae: case? App. 107: G.-L. 376: A. 350, b: B. 206, 2: H.-B. 350: H. 454, 1.

8. vellet: the subject is still *populus Rōmānus*.

num posse, "they could not, could they," or simply "could they." This is a principal verb, but not in a declarative sentence. For mode see App. 268, II:

dēpōnō, -pōnere, -posui, -positum, *tr.* [pōnō, place], lay down or aside, put away, give up; place, station, deposit. 3.

11. victōria, -ae, *f.* [victor, victor], victory. \*

tam, *adv.*, so, so very. \*

insolenter, *adv.* [insolēns, unwonted], unusually; arrogantly, insolently. 1.

glōrior, 1, *intr.* [glōria, glory], glory, glory in, boast of. 1.

12. diū, *adv.*, for a long time, long; quam diū, as long as; *comp.*, diūtius, longer, too long, any longer; *sup.*, diūtissimē, for the longest time. \*

impūne, *adv.* [in-+poena, punishment], without punishment. 1.

admiror, 1, *tr.* [mīror, wonder at], wonder at, be surprised at, admire. 1.

G.-L. 651, R 1: A. 536: B. 315, 2: H.-B. 591, a: H. 642, 2.

iniuriarum depends on *memoriam*: App. 98: G.-L. 363, 2: A. 348: B. 200: H.-B. 354: H. 440, 2.

quod, "the fact that." These are substantive *quod* clauses, in apposition with *iniuriarum*. In direct discourse such clauses employ the indicative: App. 248: G.-L. 524; 525, 1: A. 572: B. 299, 1, a: H.-B. 552, 1: H. 588, II, 3.

eō = *populō Rōmānō*.

11. quod . . . admirārentur are substantive *quod* clauses, subjects of *pertinere*.

victōriā: i.e. the defeat of Cassius. For case see App. 138: G.-L. 408: A. 404: B. 219: H.-B. 444: H. 475.

12. sē intulisse, "that they [the Helveti] had inflicted."

eōdem pertinere, "tended to the same result."

pertinere. Cōsuēsse enim deōs immortālēs, quō gravius hominēs ex commūtatiōne rērum doleant, quōs prō scelere eōrum ulcisci velint, hīs secundiōrēs interdum rēs et diūturni-  
ōrem impūnitatem concēdere. Cum ea ita sint, tamen, si obsidēs ab iīs sibi dentur, uti ea quae polliceantur factūrōs intellegat, et si Haeduīs dē iniūriis quās ipsis sociisque eōrum intulerint, item si Allobrogibus satisfaciant, sēsē cum iīs pācem esse factūrum. Divicō respondit: Ita Helvētīōs ā maiōribus suis institūtōs esse uti obsidēs accipere, nōn dare, cōsuērint;

13. cōsuēscō, -suēscere, -suēvi, -suētum, *intr.* [suēscō, become used], become accustomed; *pf.* (App. 193, I, a), be accustomed, be wont; cōsuētus, *pf. part. as adj.*, accustomed, usual, wonted. \*

enim, *conj.*, in fact, really; for; sed enim, but in fact, however. \*

14. commūtatiō, -ōnis, *f.* [commūtō, change], a changing, change. 2. doleō, 2, *intr.*, feel pain, be distressed or annoyed, grieve. 2.

scelus, -eris, *n.*, crime, wickedness. 1.

15. secundus, -a, -um, *adj.* [sequor, follow], following, next, second; favorable, successful, prosperous; secundō flūmine, down the river. \*

interdum, *adv.* [dum, while], in the meantime; at times, sometimes. 2.

diūturnus, -a, -um, *adj.* [diū, long], long. 1.

16. impūnitās, -tātis, *f.* [in+poena, punishment], impunity, freedom from punishment. 1.

17. polliceor, 2, *tr. and intr.* [prō+liceor, bid, offer], hold forth, offer, promise, pledge. \*

19. satisfaciō, -facere, -fēcī, -factum, *intr.* [satis, enough+faciō, make], make or do enough for; give satisfaction, satisfy; make amends, apologize, ask pardon. 2.

21. institūō, -stituere, -stitui, -stitutum, *tr. and intr.* [statuō, set up],

13. cōsuēsse=cōsuēvisse.

quō: for use see 8, 6.

14. doleant: so far the subjunctive tenses have all been imperfects and pluperfects, because the indirect discourse depends on the past verb *respondit*. But it is quite common for the writer of indirect discourse to use the tenses that were used in the direct form instead of following the rule of sequence of tenses. Thus presents and perfects are used to the end of the chapter. This usage, called *repraesentatio*, is due to the same desire for vividness which leads to the use of the historical present for a past tense. It is usually better to translate as if the regular past tenses were used, just as it is better to translate the historical present indicative by a past.

15. secundiōrēs rēs, "a considerable degree of prosperity"; diūturniōrem, "quite long." The comparative may often be rendered by such words as "too," "rather," "quite," all of which imply comparison with some unexpressed standard.

16. concēdere depends on cōsuēsse. cum sint, by itself, might be either causal or adversative. Notice that the *tamen* which follows shows which it is: App. 239: G.-L. 587: A. 549: B. 309, 3: H.-B. 526: H. 598.

17. ab iīs: case? App. 137: G.-L. 401: A. 405: B. 216: H.-B. 406, 1: H. 468.

factūrōs: sc. sē . . . esse.

18. si Haeduīs: sc. satisfaciunt. ipsi: i.e. the Haeduī.

19. sēsē: i.e. Caesar.

eius rei populum Rōmānum esse testem. Hōc respōnsō datō discessit.

✓ 15. Posterō diē castra ex eō locō movent. Idem facit Caesar equitātumque omnem ad numerum quattuor milium, quem ex omni prōvinciā et Haeduis atque eōrum sociis coactū habēbat, praemittit quī videant quās in partēs hostēs iter s faciant. Quī cupidius novissimum agmen insecūtī aliēnō locō

set up or put in order, draw up; train, educate; procure, prepare; build, construct; begin, determine, decide upon, adopt; **institūtus**, *pf. part. as adj.*, usual, customary; finished, in addition to definitions above. \*

**accipio**, -cipere, -cēpi, -ceptum, *tr.* [**ad**+**capiō**, take], take or receive to one's self, accept; experience, suffer; learn, hear, take. \*

22. **testis**, -is, *m. and f.*, witness. 2. **respōsum**, -i, *n.* [**respondeō**, answer], reply, answer. 2.

23. **cededō**, -cēdere, -cessi, -cessum, *intr.* [**cēdō**, go], go away, depart, retire; leave (especially with **ab** or **ex**). \*

1. **posterus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [**post**, after], after, following, next; in *m. pl.* as noun, posterity; *sup.*, **postrēmus** or **postumus**, last. \*

**moveō**, **movēre**, **mōvi**, **mōtum**, *tr.*, set in motion, move; affect, influence;

with **castra**, move camp from one place to another, or break camp. \*

2. **equitātus**, -ūs, *m.* [**equitō**, ride; **equus**, horse], cavalry, horsemen. \*

4. **praemittō**, -mittere, -misi, -missum, *tr.* [**mittō**, send], send before or in advance. \*

5. **cupidē**, *adv.* [**cupidus**, desirous], desirously, eagerly. 2.

**agmen**, -inis, *n.* [**agō**, move], a moving body; a marching column; army; in **agmine**, on the march; **primum agmen**, the van; **novissimum** or **extrēmum agmen**, the rear. \*

**insequor**, -sequi, -secūtus sum, *tr. and intr.* [**sequor**, follow], follow up or after, follow close upon, pursue. \*

**aliēnus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [**alius**, other], of or belonging to another, another's; strange, alien, unfamiliar; unfavorable; foreign to the purpose; **aes aliēnum**, debt; **aliēnissimī**, entire strangers. 4.

### THIRD REFERENCES:

*Objective genitive*

*Ablative of agent*

*Ablative of cause*

*Ablative of degree of difference*

*Adversative cum clause*

Chap. 15. The Helvetii march on, followed by Caesar. His cavalry are defeated.

1. **castra movent**, "march on." The map facing p. 42 shows the route followed by the Helvetii. They could not march due west toward the Santones because the country is too mountainous. They therefore marched north, then northwest, intending to reach the Liger

(Loire) and march down its valley.

2. **equitātum**: see Int. 48.

3. **quem coactum habēbat**, "which he had collected," almost=*quem coegerat*: App. 286, b: G.-L. 238: A. 497, b: B. 337, 6: H.-B. 605, 5, a: H. 640, 2.

4. **quī videant**: a purpose clause. **quī** is plural, agreeing with the collective noun **equitātum**.

**quās . . . faciant**, "in what direction the enemy were marching." **faciant**: mode? App. 262: G.-L. 467: A. 573; 574: B. 300, 1, a: E.-B. 534, 2, III; 537, b: H. 649, II.

5. **cupidius**: cf. note on 14, 15.

**locō**: case? App. 151, b: G.-L. 385, n. 1: A. 429, 1: B. 228, 1, b: H.-B. 436: H. 485, 2.

cum equitātū Helvētiōrum proelium committunt; et paucī dē nostris cadunt. Quō proeliō sublāti Helvētii, quod quīgentīs equitibus tantam multitudinem equitum prōpulerant, audācius subsistere nōn numquam et novissimō agmine proeliō nostrōs lacessere coepērunt. Caesar suōs ā proeliō continēbat ac satis 10 habēbat in praesentiā hostem rapinīs, pābulatiōnibus, populatiōnibusque prohibēre. Ita diēs circiter quīndecim iter fecērunt, utī inter novissimum hostium agmen et nostrum

6. pauci, -ae, -a, *adj.* (used rarely in *sing.*), few; as *noun*, few persons or things. \*

7. cadō, cadere, cecidī, cāsum, *intr.*, fall; fall in battle, be slain, die. 8. quingenti, -ae, -a (D), *card. num. adj.* [quinque, five+centum, hundred], five hundred. 3.

8. eques, -itis, *m.* [equus, horse], a horseman, a rider; *pl.*, cavalry. Then (as originally serving on horseback), a knight (one of the moneyed class at Rome, next in rank to the senate). Also, a knight (of Gaul, of a corresponding class). \*

tantus, -a, -um, *adj.* [*cf.* tam, so], so much, so great, so powerful, such; quantō . . . tantō, with comparatives, see quantō. \*

prōpellō, -pellerē, -pull, -pulsū, *tr.* [pellō, drive], drive forward, put to flight, rout; dislodge, drive back. 2.

audācter, *adv.* [audāx, bold], boldly, fearlessly, daringly. *Comp.*, audācius; *sup.*, audāciissimō. \*

9. subsistō, -sistere, -stiti, —, *intr.* [sistō, stand], halt, make a stand; be strong enough, hold out. 1.

10. lacessō, -ere, -ivi, -itum, *tr.*, arouse, harass, provoke, irritate, attack. \*

coepi, coepisse (App. 86 and a), *tr.*, began, commenced, undertook; coeptus, *pf. part.*, begun, commenced. \*

11. praesentia, -ae, *f.* [praesēns; praesum, be present], presence; the present moment; in praesentiā, for the present; then. 1.

rapina, -ae, *f.* [rapīō, seize], plunder; *pl.*, plundering. 1.

pābulatiō, -ōnis, *f.* [pābulor, forage], getting fodder, foraging. 1.

populatiō, -ōnis, *f.* [populor, ravage], ravaging, pillaging. 1.

12. circiter, *adv.* [circus, circle], about, near. \*

quīndecim (XV), *card. num. adj.*, *indecl.* [quinque, five+decem, ten], fifteen. \*

6. pauci dē nostris, "a few of our men." The rest fled at the instigation of their commander, the treacherous Dumnorix, as Caesar afterwards learned.

9. novissimō . . . lacessere, "to challenge our men to battle with their rearguard." Both agmine and proeliō are ablatives of means.

10. satis habēbat . . . prohibēre, "considered it sufficient . . . to keep." Caesar had never before commanded so

large an army or met so strong an enemy. His army was outnumbered by an enemy whom the Romans had long dreaded. Defeat meant the total destruction of his army. Nothing was lost by postponing the battle. Therefore he wisely decided to wait until he could choose his own time and place.

12. ita uti, "in such a way that," introduces a result clause.

primum nōn amplius (<sup>for 6 each day</sup> quinis aut sēis) milibus passuum  
15 interesset.

16. Interim cotidiē Caesar Haedui frumentum (quod essent  
publicē polliciti) flāgitāre. Nam propter frigora, quod Gallia  
sub septentrionibus, ut ante dictum est, posita est, nōn modo  
frumenta in agris mātūra nōn erant, sed nē pābuli quidem satis

14. **amplius**, -a, -um, *adj.*, of large extent, spacious, large; illustrious, splendid, noble; generous, magnificent; **amplius**, *comp. as noun*, more, a greater number, a greater distance. \*

**quinī**, -ae, -a, *distr. num. adj.* [**quinque**, five], five each, five at a time, five. 1.  
**sēnī**, -ae, -a, *distr. num. adj.*, six each, six. 1.

15. **intersum**, -esse, -fui, *intr.* [**sum**, be. App. 66], be or lie between, intervene; be present at, take part in; *impers.*, interest, it concerns, it is important; there is a difference or an interval; **magnī interest**, it is of great importance. 3.

1. **interim**, *adv.*, meanwhile, in the meantime. \*

**cotidiē**, *adv.* [quot, how many+diēs, day], daily, every day. \*

2. **publicē**, *adv.* [**publicus**, public],

14. **primum**: sc. *agmen*.

**amplius** is the subject of *interesset*.

**quinis aut sēis**, "five or six [each day]."

**milibus**: case? App. 139: G.-L. 398: A. 406: B. 217, 1: H.-B. 416, d: H. 471

### THIRD REFERENCE:

*Abative of place*

Chap. 16-20. Caesar learns that Dumnorix is treacherously thwarting his plans, but pardons him.

Chap. 16. The Haedui fail to furnish supplies to Caesar.

1. **interim**: i.e. during the fifteen days of marching.

**Haedui frumentum**: for the two objects see App. 125, a: G.-L. 339, a: A. 396: B. 178, 1, a: H.-B. 393, footnote: H. 411.

**quod essent polliciti**, "which [as he said] they had promised." This subor-

publicly, in the name of the state on behalf of the state. 2.

**flāgitō**, 1, *tr.*, demand. 1.

**frigus**, -oris, *n.*, cold weather, cold; *pl.*, frigora, cold seasons. 1.

3. **pōnō**, **pōnere**, **posui**, **positum**, *tr.*, place, put, place over; lay down, set aside; station, post; regard, consider; make, build; *with castra*, pitch; *pass.*, be situated; *with in and abl.*, depend on, in addition to above meanings. \*

**modo**, *adv.* [**modus**, measure], *with measure or limit*; only, merely; even, just, at least, but; *of time*, just now, recently; **nōn modo . . . sed etiam**, not only . . . but also. \*

4. **mātūrus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, ripe; early. 3.

**pābulum**, -i, *n.* [*cf.* **pāscō**, feed], fodder, provender. 2.

**quidem**, *adv.*, indeed, at any rate, at

dinate clause employs the subjunctive to imply that Caesar made the statement in demanding the grain. It is indirect discourse; but, because there is no verb of saying and the clause does not depend on an accusative and infinitive, it is called "implied indirect discourse": App. 273: G.-L. 628: A. 592, 3, n.: B. 323: H.-B. 535, 1, a: H. 619, 1.

2. **flāgitāre**=*flāgitābat*. Note that its subject is a nominative. See App. 281: G.-L. 647: A. 463: B. 335: H.-B. 595: H. 601.

3. **sub septentrionibus**, lit. "under the northern stars" = "toward the north."

4. **frumenta**: the plural means grain standing in the fields.

**mātūra nōn erant**: it was now late in June.

**pābuli**: for the cavalry horses and

magna cōpia suppetēbat; eō autem (frūmentō quod flūmine Arari nāvibus subvexerat) propterea ūti minūs poterat, quod iter ab Arari Helvētii āverterant, ā quibus discēdere nōlēbat. Diem ex diē dūcere Haedui; cōferri, comportāri, adesse dicere. Ubi sē diūtius dūci intellēxit et diem instāre quō diē frūmentum militibus mētiri oportēret, convocātis eōrum principibus, quōrum magnam cōpiam in castris habēbat, in his Diviciācō et Liscō, quī summō magistratūi praeerat, quem

least, truly; on the other hand; nē . . . quidem, not even. \*

6 subvehō, -vehere, -vexi, -vectum, *tr.* [vehō, carry], bring or carry up; convey. 1.

7. āvertō, -vertere, -verti, -versum, *tr.* [vertō, turn], turn away from or away, turn aside; turn back, repulse; *pf. part. as adj.*, with back turned. \*

nōlō, nōlle, nōlui, — (App. 82), *tr. and intr.* [nē-+volō, wish], not wish, be unwilling; refuse; *imp.* nōll or nōllite, *with inf.* (App. 219), do not. \*

8. cōferō, cōferre, contuli, collātum, *tr.* [ferō, bring. App. 81], bring or get together, collect, gather, carry, bring; crowd together, ascribe to; put

off, defer; compare; sē cōferre, be-take one's self, take refuge. \*

comportō, 1, *tr.* [portō, carry], carry together, collect, bring. \*

adsum, adesse, affui, *intr.* [sum, be. App. 77], be near or present, be at hand, appear. 3.

9. instō, -stāre, -stiti, -stātum, *intr.* [stō, stand], stand upon or near, be at hand, press on; threaten. 4.

10. mētiri, mētiri, mēnsus sum, *tr.*, deal or measure out, distribute. 2.

convocō, 1, *tr.* [vocō, call], call together, summon, assemble. 4.

12. Liscus, -i, *m.*, Liscus (līsk's), a chief magistrate of the Haedui. 4.

summus, -a, -um, *adj.* [*sup. of supe-*

pack animals. The cattle of the Helvetii had swept the country clean.

5. frūmentō ūti: case? App. 145: G.-L. 407: A. 410: B. 218, 1: H.-B. 429: H. 177.

flūmine: case? App. 144: G.-L. 389: A. 429, a: B. 218, 9: H.-B. 426, a: H. 476.

6. nāvibus, "in ships," is an ablative of means.

iter āverterant: see map facing p. 42.

8. diem: accusative of duration of time.

dūcere, "put him off," is an historical infinitive.

cōferri, comportāri, adesse (sc. frūmentum) are the objects of the historical infinitive dicere.

9. ubi intellēxit: mode? App. 237: G.-L. 561: A. 543: B. 287, 1: H.-B. 554; 557: H. 602.

sē diūtius dūci, "that he was being put off too long."

quō diē, "on which." Cf. 6, 1.

10. frūmentum mētiri oportēret, lit. "for him to measure out grain was right."—"he had to distribute grain." This was done twice a month. oportēret: subordinate clause in indirect discourse. Its subject is frūmentum mētiri.

convocātis principibus, "summoning," etc. Remember that the ablative absolute must not be translated literally.

12. Diviciācō et Liscō: in apposition with principibus.

summō . . . praeerat, "held the highest office."

quem vergobretum: for the two objects see App. 123: G.-L. 310; A. 393: B. 177, 1: H.-B. 392, a: H. 410, 1.

vergobretum appellant Haedui, qui creatur annuus et vitae necisque in suos habet potestatem, graviter eos accusat, quod, cum neque emi neque ex agris sumi posset, tam **necessario** tempore, tam propinquis hostibus, ab iis non sublevetur; praesertim cum magna ex parte eorum precibus adductus bellum suscepit, multo etiam gravius quod sit destitutus queritur.

17. Tum demum Liscus oratione Caesaris adductus quod

rus, high. App. 44], highest, very high; the highest part of, the top of; pre-eminent, greatest, chief, supreme; all. \*

praesum, -esse, -ful, intr. [sum, be. App. 77], be before or over, be in command of, rule over, be at the head of; praesens, pres. part. as adj., present, in person; for the present. \*

13. vergobretus, -i, m., vergobret (vēr'gō-brēt), the title of the chief magistrate of the Haedui. 1.

creō, 1, tr., create; elect, choose, appoint. 1.

annuus, -a, -um, adj. [annus, year], yearly. 1.

vita, -ae, f. [cf. vivō, live], life; manner of living, living. 4.

14. nex, necis, f., violent death, death, execution. 1.

potestas, -tatis, f. [potēns, powerful], ability, power, authority; control, sway, rule; chance, opportunity, possibility; potestatem facere, grant permission, give a chance. \*

accūsō, 1, tr. [ad+causa, cause, case],

bring a case or charge against; blame, censure, accuse. 2.

15. emō, emere, ēl.i, ēmptum, tr., take; buy, purchase. 2.

16. propinquus, -a, -um, adj. [prope, near], near, neighboring, close at hand; pl. as noun, relatives. \*

sublevō, 1, tr. [levō, lift], lift from beneath, lift or raise up, support; assist, aid; lighten, lessen. 3.

17. praesertim, adv., particularly, especially. \*

prex, precis, f. (in sing. only in dat., acc., and abl.) [precor, pray], prayer, entreaty; imprecation. 2.

18. destituō, -stituere, -stitui, -stitutum, tr. [statuō, set up], set or place aside, forsake, desert. 1.

19. queror, queri, questus sum, tr. and intr., complain, bewail, lament. \*

1. tum, adv., then, at this or that time; then, secondly; then, also, cum... tum, both... and, not only... but also. \*

demum, adv., at length, at last, finally. 3.

14. in suos, "over his fellow-citizens."

quod non sublevetur, "because [as he said] he was not aided." This is another case of implied indirect discourse: cf. I. 1, and see App. 214: G.-L. 541: A. 540, 2: B. 286, 1: H.-B. 535, 2, a: H. 649, I.

15. posset: sc. frumentum.

16. tempore may be either ablative absolute or ablative of time; hostibus is an ablative absolute.

17. With praesertim, cum is almost always causal.

magna ex parte, "in great part."

18. quod sit destitutus: cf. I. 14.

THIRD REFERENCES:

Ablative of the way (route)

Ablative with utro, etc.

Chap. 17. Liscus tells Caesar that a powerful faction among the Haedui is working against the Romans.

1. Supply id as the antecedent of quod and the object of prōponit.

anteā tacuerat prōpōnit: Esse nōn nullōs quōrum auctōritās apud plēbem plūrimū valeat, quī privātīm plūs possint quam ipsi magistrātūs. Hōs seditiōsā atque improbā ōratiōne multitudinem dētērrere nē frumentum cōferant quod dēbeant: 5 Praestāre, sī iam principātum Galliae obtinēre nōn possint, Gallōrum quam Rōmānōrum imperia perferre; neque dubitāre quīn, sī Helvētīōs superāverint Rōmānī, unā cum reliquā Galliā Haeduīs libertātem sint ēreptūrī. Ab isdem nostra

2. **anteā**, *adv.* [ante, before+ēā, this], formerly, before; previously, once; always with a verb. 2.

**taceō**, 2, *tr. and intr.*, be silent; keep silent, pass over in silence; **tacitus**; *pf. part. as adj.*, silent. 3.

**prōpōnō**, -pōnere, -posui, -positum, *tr.* [pōnō, place], place or put forward, present, offer; relate, tell of, explain; propose, purpose; expose. \*

3. **valeō**, 2, *intr.*, be strong or vigorous, have weight, influence, or strength; **plūrimū valēre**, be very powerful. \*

**privātīm**, *adv.* [privātus, private], privately, individually, as private citizens. 1.

4. **seditiōsus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [seditiō, sedition], seditious, mutinous. 1.

**improbū**, -a, -um, *adj.* [in+probus, good], unprincipled. 1.

5. **dētērrēō**, 2, *tr.* [tērrēō, frighten], frighten away or off, hinder, deter, prevent. 3.

7. **perferō**, -ferre, -tuli, -lātum, *tr.* [ferō, bear], bear or carry through, convey, deliver; announce, report; submit to, endure, suffer. \*

**dubitō**, 1, *intr.* [dubius, doubtful], be uncertain, doubt; hesitate, delay. \*

8. **superō**, 1, *tr. and intr.* [super, over], go over; overmatch, be superior to, surpass, conquer, master, overcome, prevail; be left over, remain; **vītā superāre**, survive. \*

9. **libertās**, -tātis, *f.* [liber, free], freedom, liberty, independence. \*

2. The direct form of the indirect discourse in this and the following chapters will be found after Book VII.

3. **valeat**; for tense see note on 14, 14.

**quam magistrātūs**: the ablative without *quam* might have been used instead of this nominative: App. 139, a: G.-L. 296, R. 1: A. 406; 407: B. 217, 1, 2: H.-B. 416: H. 471, 1.

4. **improbā**, "reckless."

5. **dētērrere nē cōferant**, "were preventing . . . from bringing."

6. **praestāre . . . sint ēreptūrī**, "(saying) that it was better," etc. This is the indirect form of the malcontents' *seditiōsa ōratiō*. The subject of *praestāre* is *perferre*.

**sī (sc. Haeduī) iam obtinēre nōn pos-**

**sint**, "if they could no longer hold." The Haedui claimed the leadership among the Gallic states. See Int. 29.

7. **neque (sc. sē) dubitāre**, "nor did they doubt"; i.e. they said "we do not doubt."

8. **quīn Haeduīs sint ēreptūrī**, "that they would wrest from the Haedui." **Haeduīs**: dative with the compound verb of separation: App. 116, I: G.-L. 345, R. 1: A. 381: B. 188, 2, d: H.-B. 371: H. 429, 2. **sint ēreptūrī**: form? App. 75: G.-L. 129: A. 194, a: B. 115: H.-B. 162: H. 236. Mode? App. 229, d: G.-L. 555, c: A. 558, a: B. 298: H.-B. 521, 3, b: H. 595, 1.

**superāverint**, "should conquer," is a perfect subjunctive, for a future perfect indicative in the direct form.

**unā**: the adverb.

10 cōnsilia quaeque in castris gerantur hostibus enūtiārī. Hōs ā sē coērcērī nōn posse; quīn etiam, quod necessariō rem coactus Caesarī enūtiārīt, intellegere sēsē quantō id cum periculō fēcerit, et ob eam causam quam diū potuerit tacuisse.

18. Caesar hāc orātiōne Liscī Dumnorigem, Dīviaciī frātre, dēsignārī sentiēbat; sed, quod plūribus praesentibus eās rēs iactārī nōlēbat, celeriter concilium dīmīttit, Liscum retinet. Quaerit ex sōlō ea quae in conventū dixerat. Dicit 15 liberius atque audācius. Eadem sēcrētō ab aliis quaerit; reperit esse vērā: Ipsum esse Dumnorigem, summā audāciā,

11. coērcēō, 2, *tr.* [arceō, shut up], shut up completely, restrain, check. 1.

necessariō, *adv.* [abl. of necessariū, necessary], necessarily, of necessity, unavoidably. \*

12. quantus, -a, -um, *adj.* [cf. quam, how? as], (1) *interrog.*, how much? how great? how large? what? quantum, *as adv.*, how much? (2) *rel.*, as much as, as; quantum, *as adv.*, as much as, as; quantō . . . tantō (*with comparatives*), the . . . the. \*

2. dēsignō, 1, *tr.* [signō, mark], mark out; mean, indicate. 1.

sentiō, sentire, sēnsī, sēnsū, *tr.*, perceive, be aware of, notice; experience, undergo; realize, know; decide, judge; sanction, adhere to. 4.

3. iactō, 1, *tr.* [freq. of iaciō, throw], throw or hurl repeatedly, toss about; talk about, discuss. 2.

celeriter, *adv.* [celer, swift], quickly, rapidly, speedily. *Comp.*, celerius; *sup.*, celerrimē (App. 40). \*

10. Supply *ea* as the antecedent of *quae* and as one of the subjects of *enūtiārī*.

11. sē: i.e. Liscus, the chief magistrate.

12. coactus, "under compulsion." quantō . . . fēcerit is an indirect question, the object of *intellegere*.

Chap. 18. Liscus tells Caesar of the power of Dumnorix, and that he favors the Helvetii.

concilium, -ii, *n.*, gathering, assembly, council. \*

dīmīttō, -mittere, -misi, -misum, *tr.* [mittō, send], send in different directions, send away or off, dismiss; break up; let go, let slip, let pass, give up, lose. \*

4. retineō, 2, *tr.* [re-+teneō, hold], hold back, detain, keep; restrain, hinder, detain forcibly, seize; retain, preserve maintain. \*

quaerō, quaerere, quaeivi, quaeisum, *tr. and intr.*, seek or look for; inquire, ask, ask or inquire about. \*

sōlus, -a, -um, *gen.* sōlius (App. 32), *adj.*, alone, only; the only. \*

conventus, -us, *m.* [conveniō, come together], a coming together, meeting, assembly; court. 1.

5. liberē, *adv.* [liber, free], freely, without restraint, boldly. 1.

sēcrētō, *adv.* [sēcernō, separate], separately, privately, secretly. 2.

6. reperit, reperire, repperi, repertum, *tr.* [re-+pariō, procure], pro-

2. plūribus praesentibus, "when many were present."

4. ex sōlō, "from him in private." Most verbs of asking may take two accusatives (cf. 16, 1), but the person is more commonly expressed by the ablative with a preposition: App. 125, a: G.-L. 329, a, R. 1: A. 396, a: B. 178, 1, a: H.-B. 393, c: H. 411, 3.

6. reperit esse vērā, "he learned that this was the truth"; explained by

magnā apud plēbem propter liberālitatem grātiā, cupidum rerum novarum. Complūrēs annōs, portōria reliquaue omnia Haeduōrum vectigālīa (parvō pretiō) redēmta habēre, propterea quod illō licente contrā licērī audeat nēmō. His rēbus et suam rem familiārem auxisse et facultātēs ad largiendum magnās comparāsse; magnum numerum equitātūs suō sūmptū semper alere et circum sē habēre; neque solum domī, sed etiam apud

cure; find: find out, discover, ascertain; devise. \*

vērus, -a, -um, *adj.*, true; *n. as noun*, the truth; vēri similis, likely, probable. 4.

audācia, -ae, *f.* [audāx, bold], boldness, daring, courage; presumption, effrontery. 1.

7. liberālitās, -tātis, *f.* [liber, free], freedom in giving, etc.; generosity. 2.

8. portōrium, -ri, *n.*, toll, tariff on imports or exports. 2.

9. vectigal, -ālīs, *n.* [vectigālīs, tributary], tax, tribute; *pl.*, revenues. 2.

pretium, -ti, *n.*, price. 2.

redimō, -imere, -ēmī, -ēmtum, *tr.* [red-+emō, buy], buy back; buy up, purchase. 3.

10. liceor, 2, *intr.*, bid (at an auction). 2.

contrā, *adv. and prep. with acc.*: (1) *as adv.*, against him or them; on the other

hand; contrā atque, contrary to what; (2) *as prep.*, against, contrary to; opposite, facing. \*

audeō, audēre, ausus sum (App. 74), *intr.*, dare, risk, venture. \*

nēmō, *acc. nēminem, m. and f.* [ne-+homō, man], no man, no one, nobody. \*

11. familiāris, -e, *adj.* [familia, household], personal, private; *as noun*, intimate friend; rēs familiāris, personal property, estate. 4.

augeō, augēre, auxi, auctum, *tr.*, increase, augment, enhance, add to. 3.

largior, 4, *tr.* [largus, large], give largely or freely; bribe. 1.

12. sūmptus, -ūs, *m.* [sūmō, spend], expense. 1.

semper, *adv.*, always, ever, continually. 3.

13. alō, alere, alui, altum, *tr.*, nourish, feed, support; promote, foster, encourage. 4.

the indirect discourse which follows.

ipsum esse Dumnorigem, "that Dumnorix was the very man" or "that it was, in fact, Dumnorix." By putting together what is said of Orgetorix in 4, 5, 6, and the following description of Dumnorix we are able to appreciate the extraordinary power of some of the Gallic nobles.

summā audāciā, "(a man) of the utmost recklessness." For case see App. 141: G.-L. 400: A. 415: B. 224: H.-B. 443: H. 473, 2.

8. rerum: case? App. 106, a: G.-L. 374: A. 349, a: B. 204, 1: H.-B. 354: H. 450.

portōria . . . redēmta habēre: instead of collecting the duties and taxes by its own agents, the state farmed

them; i.e. it sold at auction the privilege of collecting them. The successful bidder collected all he could, paid to the state the amount of his bid, and pocketed the difference.

9. parvō pretiō: thus defrauding the state. For case see App. 147: G.-L. 404: A. 416: B. 225: H.-B. 427, 1: H. 478.

redēmta habēre: differs how from redēmisses? App. 286, b: G.-L. 238: A. 497, b: B. 337, 6: H.-B. 605, 5, a: H. 640, 2.

10. illō licente, "when he bid."

12. comparāsse: form? App. 72:

G.-L. 131, 1: A. 181, a: B. 116, 1: H.-B. 163, 1: H. 238.

13. domi: case? App. 151, a: G.-L. 411, R. 2: A. 427, 3: B. 2.2, 2: H.-B. 449, a: H. 484, 2.

finitimās civitatēs largiter posse, atque huius potentiae causā  
 15 mātrem in Biturigibus hominī illic nobilissimō ac potentissimō  
 collocāsse, ipsum ex Helvētiis uxorem habēre, sorōrem ex mātře  
 et propinquās suās nūptum in aliās civitatēs collocāsse. Favēre  
 et cupere Helvētiis propter eam affinitātem, ōdisse etiam suō  
 nōmine Caesarem et Rōmānōs, quod eōrum adventū potentia  
 20 eius dēminūta et Dīviciācus frāter in antiquum locum grātiaē  
 atque honoris sit restitūtus. Sī quid accidat Rōmānīs, sum-  
 mam in spem per Helvētiōs rēgnī obtinendī venīre; imperiō  
 populī Rōmānī nōn modo dē rēgnō, sed etiam dē eā quam  
 habeat grātiā dēspērāre. Reperiēbat etiam in quaerendō

14. **largiter**, *adv.* [largus, large], largely, freely, much; **largiter posse**, to have great influence. 1.

**potentia**, -ae, *f.* [potēns, powerful], power, authority, influence. 2.

15. **māter**, -tris, *f.*, mother; **mātrēs familiae**, matrons. 3.

**Biturīgēs**, -um, *m.* (Cde), the Bituriges (bit'ū-rī'jēz). 1.

**illic**, *adv.* [ille, that], in that place, there. 1.

16. **collocō**, 1, *tr.* [con+locō, place], place, set, station; arrange; **nūptum collocāre**, to give in marriage. \*

**uxor**, -ōris, *f.*, wife. 3.

**soror**, -ōris, *f.*, sister. 2.

17. **nūbō**, **nūbere**, **nūpsi**, **nūptum**, *intr.*, veil one's self for the marriage ceremony, marry. 1.

**favēō**, **favēre**, **fāvi**, **fautum**, *intr.*, favor. 1.

18. **cupiō**, **cupere**, **cupivi**, **cupitum**,

*tr. and intr.*, long or be eager for, desire; wish well to, favor. \*

**affinitās**, -tātis, *f.*, alliance by marriage, relationship. 2.

**ōdi**, **ōdisse** (App. 86), *tr.*, *pf.* with meaning of *pres.*, hate, detest. 2.

20. **dēminuō**, -minuere, -minui, -minūtum, *tr.* [minuō, lessen], lessen, diminish, impair. 1.

**antiquus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [ante, before], former, old, ancient. 2.

21. **honōs**, -ōris, *m.*, honor, regard, glory, distinction; honorable position, office. 3.

**restituō**, -stituere, -stitui, -stitūtum, *tr.* [re+statuō, set up], set up again, rebuild, renew, restore. 4.

24. **dēspērō**, 1, *intr.* [spērō, hope], despair, be hopeless, lack confidence; **dēspērātus**, *as part.*, from transitive meaning, despaired of; *as adj.*, desperate. \*

14. **causā**: see vocabulary.

16. **collocāsse**: sc. **nūptum**.

**ipsum**: i.e. Dumnorix. His wife was the daughter of Orgetorix: cf. 3, 15.

**sorōrem ex mātře**, "sister on his mother's side"; i.e. his half-sister.

17. **nūptum**: construction? App. 295: G.-L. 435: A. 509; B. 340, 1, b: H.-B. 618: H. 632; 633, 1.

**in civitatēs**: the accusative implies "sent them into and caused them to be married there."

18. **Helvētiis**: indirect object with verbs meaning to favor.

19. **nōmine**: ablative of cause.

20. **dēminūta**: sc. **sic**.

21. **sī quid**: why *quid*? App. 174: G.-L. 315: A. 310, a: B. 91, 5: H.-B. 276, 1: H. 186.

**summam in spem venīre**, "he entertained the highest hopes."

22. **imperiō**, "under the sovereignty": case? App. 142, b: G.-L. 399: B. 221: H.-B. 423, 1: H. 474, 1.

Caesar, quod proelium equestre adversum paucis ante diēbus<sup>25</sup> esset factum, initium fugae factum ā Dumnorige atque eius equitibus (nam equitatūi quem auxiliō Caesari Haedui miserant Dumnorix praeerat); eōrum fugā reliquum esse equitatum perterritum.

19. Quibus rēbus cognitīs, cum ad hās suspiciōnēs certissimae rēs accēderent, quod per finēs Sēquanōrum Helvētiōs trādūxisset, quod obsidēs inter eōs dandōs cūrasset, quod ea omnia nōn modo iniussū suō et civitātis, sed etiam inscientibus ipsis fēcisset, quod ā magistratū Haeduōrum

25. *equester*, -tris, -tre, *adj.* [eques, horseman], of or belonging to a horseman, equestrian, of cavalry, cavalry. \*

*adversus*, -a, -um, *adj.* [*pf. part. of* *advertō*, turn to], turned to or against; opposite, fronting; adverse, unfavorable; unsuccessful; *adversō flumine*, up the river; in *adversum ōs*, full in the face. \*

29. *perterreō*, 2, *tr.* [terreō, frighten], frighten thoroughly, terrify greatly. \*

1. *cognōscō*, -nōscere, -nōvī, -nī-

25. *quod . . . esset factum*, "as to the fact that an unsuccessful cavalry engagement had been fought," etc. = "as to the . . . engagement which," etc. See 15, 5-7.

*paucis ante diēbus*, lit. "before by a few days" = "a few days before." *diēbus* is an ablative of degree of difference, with the adverb *ante*.

27. *auxiliō Caesari*, "as an aid to Caesar." For the two datives see App. 119: G.-L. 356, 3: A. 382, 1: B. 191, 2, b: H.-B. 360, b: H. 433, 2.

#### THIRD REFERENCES:

*Contracted verb forms*

*Descriptive ablative*

Chap. 19. Caesar consults Diviciacus about the punishment of his brother.

1. *cum certissimae rēs accēde-*

*tum*, *tr.* [co+(g)nōscō, learn], learn, ascertain; study, investigate; *pf.*, I have learned, I know (App. 193, I, a). \*

2. *accēdō*, -cēdere, -cessi, -cessum, *intr.* [ad+cēdō, go], approach, draw near to, arrive at, come to; be added; *accēdebāt*, it was added. \*

4. *iniussū*, *abl. of* *iniussus*, -ūs, *m.* [iubeō, order], without command or order. 1

5. *insciēns*, -entis, *adj.* [in+sciēns, knowing], not knowing, unaware, ignorant. 1.

*rent*, "since the most clearly proven facts were added." These facts are stated in the following *quod* clauses, which are in apposition with *rēs*. For tense see App. 202; 203: G.-L. 509; 510; 511: A. 482, 1, 2; 483: B. 266, B; 267: H.-B. 476: H. 198; 543.

2. *quod trādūxisset*: kind of clause? App. 248: G.-L. 524; 525, 1: A. 572: B. 299, 1, a: H.-B. 552, 1: H. 588, II, 3. Mode? App. 274: G.-L. 663: A. 593: B. 324, 2: H.-B. 539: H. 652.

3. *quod . . . cūrasset*, lit. "that he had taken care of hostages to be given between them" = "that he had caused hostages to be exchanged." *eōs* = *Helvētiōs et Sēquanōs*.

*dandōs*: construction? App. 285, II, b: G.-L. 430: A. 500, 4: B. 337, 7, b, 2: H.-B. 605, 2; 612, III: H. 622.

4. *suō* = *Caesaris*.

5. *ipsis*: i.e. Caesar and the Haedui.

accūsārētur, satis esse causae arbitrābātur quārē in eum aut ipse animadverteret aut civitatem animadvertere iubēret. His omnibus rēbus ūnum repugnābat, quod Diviciāci frātris summum in populum Rōmānum studium, summam in sē  
 10 voluntatē, ēgrēgiam fidē, iūstitiam, temperantiam cognō-  
 verat; nam nē eius suppliciō Diviciāci animum offenderet verēbātur. Itaque priusquam quicquam cōnārētur, Diviciācum ad sē vocārī iubet et, cotidiānis interpretibus remōtis, per C. Valerium Troucillum, principem Galliae prōvinciae, familiārem  
 15 suum, cui summam omnium rērum fidem habēbat, cum eō

7. animadvertō, -vertere, -verti, -versum, *tr. and intr.* [animus, mind + ad + vertō, turn], turn the mind to; notice; animadvertere in, punish. \*

8. repugnō, 1, *intr.* [re + pugnō, fight], fight back; resist, oppose. 2.

9. studium, -di, *n.* [studeō, be zealous], zeal, eagerness, enthusiasm, desire; good will, devotion; pursuit, occupation. \*

10. ēgrēgius, -a, -um, *adj.* [ē + grex, herd], out of the common herd; excellent, superior, eminent, remarkable. 2.

iūstitia, -ae, *f.* [iūstus, just], justice, fair dealing, uprightness. 2.

temperantia, -ae, *f.* [temperō, control one's self], prudence, self-control. 1.

11. supplicium, -ei, *n.* [sub + plicō, bend], a bending over to receive punishment; punishment, death. 4.

offendō, -fendere, -fendi, -fēsum,

*tr.* [ob + fendō, strike], strike against, hurt, harm; animum offendere, hurt the feelings, offend. 1.

12. vereor, verēri, veritus sum, *tr.*, revere; fear, dread, be afraid of. \*

priusquam or prius . . . quam, *conj.*, sooner than, before; until. \*

quisquam, quicquam, *indef. pron.* (App. 62), any; any person or thing. \*

13. vocō, 1, *tr.* [vōx, voice], call, summon; invite. 3.

interpres, -etis, *m., f.*, interpreter; mediator. 1.

removeō, -movēre, -mōvi, -mōtum, *tr.* [re + moveō, move], move back or away, remove, withdraw, remōtus, *pf. part. as adj.*, remote, far away. 4.

14. Valerius, -ri, *m.* (1) Gaius Valerius Troucillus (gā'yūs va-lē'ri-ūs trū-sil'ūs), a Gallic interpreter and confidential friend of Caesar. \*

6. causae: partitive genitive with satis, which is used as a noun.

quārē animadverteret, "why he should punish." For mode see App. 230, c; G.-L. 631, 2; H.-B. 513, 2.

8. ūnum, "one thing," is explained by its appositive, the clause quod cognōverat.

9. Note the lack of conjunctions, and cf. the note on 1, 3.

10. cognōverat, lit. "had learned" = "knew."

11. nū offenderet, "that he should offend." Meaning of nē, and mode? App.

228, b; G.-L. 550, 1, 2; A. 564. B. 296, 2; H.-B. 502, 4; H. 567, 1.

eius: i.e. Dumnorix.

12. priusquam . . . cōnārētur, "before he ventured on anything."

13. per . . . colloquitur: English order, colloquitur cum eō per, etc.

14. principem: not necessarily a chief, but a prominent man.

15. cui . . . habēbat, "in whom he had the utmost confidence in all matters." cui: case? App. 115, a; G.-L. 346, n. 5; A. 367, a, n. 2; H.-B. 362, footnote 3. b.

colloquitur; simul <sup>div</sup>commonefacit quae ipsō praesente in concilio dē Dumnorige sint dicta, et ostendit quae sēparātīm quisque dē eō apud sē dixerit. Petit atque hortātur ut sine eius offēnsiōne animī vel ipse dē eō causā cognitā statuāt, vel civitātem statuere iubeat.

20. Diviciācus multis cum lacrimis Caesarem complexus obsecrāre coepit nē quid gravius in frātre statueret: Scire sē illa esse vērā, nec quemquam ex eō plūs quam sē dolōris capere, propterea quod, (cum ipse grātiā plūrimum domī atque in reliquā Galliā, ille minimum propter adulēscēntiam posset),

16. colloquor, -loqui, -locūtus sum, *intr.* [con-+loquor, speak], speak with, converse, confer, have a conference. \*

simul, *adv.*, at once, at the same time, thereupon; simul... simul, both... and, partly... partly; simul atque, as soon as. \*

commonefaciō, -facere, -fēci, -factum, *tr.* [monēō, remind+faciō, make], remind forcibly. 1.

17. sēparātīm, *adv.* [sēparō, separate], separately, privately. 2.

18. petō, -ere, -ivi or -ii, -itum, *tr. and intr.*, seek, hunt for, aim at, make for, attack, go to, direct one's course to or toward; seek to obtain,

16. quae sint dicta, quae dixerit: indirect questions.

ipsō: i.e. Diviciācus.

18. ut... statuāt, "that without wounding his [i.e. Diviciācus's] feelings he might either himself [i.e. Caesar] investigate the case and pass sentence on him [i.e. Dumnorix]."

### THIRD REFERENCE:

*Sequence of tenses*

Chap. 20. At the earnest request of Diviciācus Caesar spares Dumnorix, but he takes precautions for the future.

1. complexus: probably clasping Caesar's knees, for this was the ancient attitude of suppliant entreaty.

2. nē quid: why quid? App. 174: G.-L.

strive after; ask, request, beseech. \*

hortor, 1, *tr.*, exhort, encourage, incite, urge strongly. \*

19. offēnsiō, -ōnis, *f.* [offendō, hurt], offense. 1.

1. lacrima, -ae, *f.*, tear. 2.

complector, -plecti, -plexus sum, *tr.* [plectō, fold], embrace, clasp, enclose. 1.

2. obsecrō, 1, *tr.* [sacer, sacred], implore, entreat, beseech. 1.

gravis, -e, *adj.*, heavy, oppressive, hard, severe, serious; advanced (*in years*). \*

sciō, 4, *tr.*, distinguish; know, understand. \*

5. adulēscēntia, -ae, *f.* [adulēs-

315: A. 310, a: B. 91, 5: H.-B. 276, 1: H. 186. gravius, "too severe."

scire: the indirect discourse depends on the idea of "saying," which is implied in obsecrāre. The direct form is given after Book VII.

3. nec quemquam, "and that no one."

eō: i.e. Dumnorix.

capere, "felt."

4. ipse: i.e. Diviciācus. It is the subject of posset, to be supplied from the next clause.

domī: case? App. 151, a: G.-L. 411, R. 2: A. 427, 3: B. 232, 2: H.-B. 449, a: H. 484, 2.

5. minimum posset, "had very little influence." Supply cum from the preceding clause.

per sē crēvisset; quibus opibus ac nervis nōn solum ad minuendam grātiā, sed paene ad perniciem suā ūterētur. Sēsē tamen et amorē frāternō et existimātiōne vulgī commovārī. Quod sī quid eī ā Caesare gravius accidisset, cum ipse eum locum amicitiae apud eum teneret, nēminem existimātūrum nōn suā voluntāte factum; quā ex rē futurum uti tōtius Galliae animi ā sē āverterentur. Haec cum plūribus verbis flēns ā Caesare peteret, Caesar eius dextram prēndit; cōsōlātus rogat finem orandī faciat; tantī eius apud sē grātiā esse ostendit

cēns, youth], youthfulness, youth. 1.

6. crēscō, crēscere, crēvi, crētum, *intr.*, grow or increase (*in size, power, age, etc.*), swell. 1.

ops, opīs, *f.*, help, aid; *pl.*, wealth, resources; authority, influence, strength. 3.

nervus, -ī, *m.*, sinew; *in pl.*, vigor, strength, power. 1.

7. minuō, minuire, minui, minūtum, *tr. and intr.* [minus, less], lessen, impair, diminish; settle (*contrōversias*); minuyente aestū, the tide ebbing. 3.

perniciēs, -ēī, *f.* [*cf. nex*, death], ruin, destruction. 2.

8. amor, -ōris, *m.* [amō, love], love. 1.

frāternus, -a, -um, *adj.* [frāter,

brother], brotherly, fraternal, of a brother. 2.

existimātiō, -ōnis, *f.* [existimō, estimate], judgment, opinion. 1.

vulgus, -ī, *n.*, the common people the multitude, the public, the masses; a crowd. 3.

12. verbum, -ī, *n.*, word; *pl.*, speech; entreaty; verba facere, plead. 3.

flēō, flēre, flēvi, flētum, *intr.*, weep, shed tears, lament. 4.

13. dextra, -ae, *f.* [dexter, right; *sc. manus*], the right hand. 1.

prēndō, prēndere, prēndī, prēnsūm, *tr.*, seize, grasp. 1.

cōsōlōr, 1, *tr.* [sōlōr, comfort], cheer, comfort. 1.

14. ōrō, 1, *tr.* [ōs, mouth], speak; beseech, entreat. 3.

6. sē: i.e. Diviciacus. He said *per mē*, "by my help."

opibus: ablative with *ūterētur*.

7. suam refers to Diviciacus.

8. sēsē: i.e. Diviciacus.

9. quod sī, lit. "as to which, if": *quod* is strictly an adverbial accusative, but with *sī* it has become a mere connective, and is translated "and," "but," "now," etc.

accidisset stands for an original future perfect.

ipse: i.e. Diviciacus.

eum, "such."

10. eum: i.e. Caesar.

11. suā refers to Diviciacus.

voluntāte: ablative of accordance.

futurum (*sc. esse*) uti ... āverteren-

tur, lit. "it would be that . . . would be turned from him." This construction is the regular substitute for the future passive infinitive, which very rarely occurs. uti āverterentur is a substantive clause of result.

12. ā Caesare: the usual construction after verbs of asking, instead of a second accusative.

13. rogat (*sc. ut*) faciat, "he asked him to make." In what kind of clauses and after what verbs may *ut* be omitted? App. 228, a: G.-L. 546, R. 2: A. 565, a: B. 295, 8: H.-B. 502, 3, a: H. 565, 4.

14. tantī: case? App. 105: G.-L. 380, 1: A. 417: B. 203, 3: H.-B. 356, 1: H. 448, 1.

utī et reī publicae iniūriam et suum dolōrem eius voluntātī ac 15  
precibus condōnet. Dumnorigem ad sē vocat, frātrem adhibet;  
quae in eō reprehendat ostendit; quae ipse intellegat, quae  
civitās queratur prōpōnit; monet ut in reliquum tempus  
omnēs suspiciōnēs vitet; praeterita sē Diviciacō frātrī con-  
dōnāre dicit. Dumnorigī custōdēs pōnit, ut quae agat, 20  
quibuscum loquātur, scīre possit.

21. Eōdem diē ab explōrātōribus certior factus hostēs sub  
monte cōnsēdisse milia passuum ab ipsiūs castris octō, quālis

16. condōnō, 1, *tr.* [dōnō, give], give up; pardon, forgive. 2.

adhibeō, 2, *tr.* [habeō, have], bring to, bring in, summon; employ, use. 4.

17. reprehendō, -prehendere, -prehendi, -prehensum, *tr.* [re-+prehendō (=prēndō), seize], hold back; criticize, blame, censure. 1.

18. moneō, 2, *tr.*, warn, advise, instruct, order. 8.

19. vitō, 1, *tr.*, avoid, shun, evade, escape. 3.

praeterēō, -īre, -īl, -itum, *tr. and intr.* [eō, go. App. 84], go beyond, pass by,

omit; praeteritus, *pf. part. as adj.*, past; *n. plu. as noun*, the past. 1.

20. custōs, -ōdis, *m.*, guard, watchman, spy. 2.

21. loquor, loqui, locūtus sum, *intr.*, speak, talk, converse. \*

2. cōnsidō, -sidere, -sēdi, -sessum, *intr.* [sidō, sit down], sit down together, settle; take a position, halt, encamp. \*

octō (VIII), *card. num. adj.*, indecl., eight. \*

quālis, -e, *interrog. adj.*, of what sort, kind, or nature? 2.

15. utī condōnet: a result clause. voluntātī, "out of consideration for his wish," is indirect object of condōnet.

17. quae reprehendat: mode? App. 262: G.-L. 467: A. 573; 574: B. 300, 1, a: H.-B. 534, 2, III; 537, b: H. 649, II.

20. Dumnorigī: case? App. 120: G.-L. 350, 2: A. 376: B. 188, 1: H.-B. 366: H. 435, 4.

It was tactful of Caesar to make Diviciacus believe that Dumnorix was spared for his sake. In reality, however, Caesar had his hands full with the Helvetii and could not afford to stir up a revolt of the Haedui in addition—a result which might easily have followed an attempt to punish their most popular noble. A few years later Caesar put Dumnorix to death for obstinate disobedience. See V, 7.

### THIRD REFERENCES:

*Use of the indefinite quis*

*Dative of reference*

*Construction with verbs of asking, etc.*

*Indirect question*

Chap. 21-22. The failure of a plan to attack the Helvetii.

Chap. 21. Caesar plans a double attack on the Helvetii.

Chapters 16-20 interrupted the narrative of Caesar's pursuit of the Helvetii. The events of this chapter follow immediately after those narrated in chapter 15.

1. sub monte: the exact location is unknown; it was only a few miles from the battlefield south of Bibracte. See map facing p. 42.

2. milia: accusative of extent of space.

quālis esset: indirect question, object of cognōscerent.

esset nātūra montis et quālis in circuitū ascēsus quī cognōscerent misit. Renūntiātum est facilem esse. Dē tertiā  
 5 vigiliā T. Labiēnum, lēgātum prō praetōre, cum duābus  
 legiōnibus et iis ducibus quī iter cognōverant summum iugum  
 montis ascendere iubet; quid suī cōnsilī sit ostendit. Ipse dē  
 quārtā vigiliā eōdem itinere quō hostēs ierant ad eōs contendit  
 - equitātumque omnem ante sē mittit. P. Cōnsidius, quī rei  
 10 militāris peritissimus habēbātur et in exercitū L. Sullae et  
 postea in M. Crassī fuerat, cum explōrātōribus praemittitur.

3. circuitus, -ūs, *m.* [circumēō, go around], a going around; a winding path; circumference, circuit. 4.

ascēsus, -ūs, *m.* [ascendō, climb up], a climbing up, ascending; approach, ascent. 2.

5. praetor, -ōris, *m.*, praetor; commander. 1.

6. dux, ducis, *m.* [ducō, lead], leader, guide, commander. \*

7. ascendō, -scendere, -scendi, -scēsum, *tr. and intr.* [ad+scandō, climb], climb up, ascend, mount, climb. 2.

9. P., *abbr. for* Pūblius, a Roman praenomen. 2.

Cōnsidius, -di, *m.*, Publius Considius (pūb'li-ūs kōn-sid'i-ūs), one of Caesar's officers. 3.

10. militāris, -e, *adj.* [miles, soldier], of a soldier, military, martial; rēs militāris, military matters, warfare, the science of warfare. \*

peritus, -a, -um, *adj.* [cf. experior, try], tried, experienced, skilled; familiar with, acquainted with. 2.

Sulla, -ae, *m.*, Lucius Sulla (lū'shyūs sūl'a), the dictator; leader of the nobility; engaged in civil war with Marius, leader of the popular party; lived from 138 B.C. to 78 B.C. 1.

11. postea, *adv.* [post, after], after this, afterwards. \*

Crassus, -i, *m.*, Marcus Licinius Crassus (mār'kūs li-sin'i-ūs krās'-ūs), triumvir with Caesar and Pompey. 2.

3. in circuitū, "in going around [behind] it."

quī cognōscerent misit, "he sent (men) to learn."

4. facilem esse: sc. *ascēsum*.

dē tertiā vigiliā: see on 12, 7.

5. lēgātum prō praetōre, "lieutenant with the powers of a general"; i.e. he was temporarily given special independent powers. Labienus was Caesar's most competent and most trusted officer.

cum iis ducibus, "with those men as guides."

7. quid . . . sit, *lit.*, "what is of his plan" = "what his plan was"; namely, that Labienus should take a position on the top of the mountain, in the rear of the enemy, and that he and Caesar

should attack them at the same moment. cōnsilī is a possessive genitive, used predicatively.

dē quārtā vigiliā: the fourth watch would begin at three A. M. when the nights were twelve hours long. As this was June, the nights were shorter, and the fourth watch began about two. \*

9. P. Cōnsidius . . . fuerat: Caesar states these facts about Considius to excuse his own ready acceptance of the latter's statements, as told in the next chapter.

rei militāris, "in military matters": case? App. 106, a; G.-L. 374: A. 349, a; B. 204, 1; H.-B. 354, footnote: H. 451, 1.

10. Sullae: cf. Int. 6.

11. in M. Crassī, "in (that) of Marcus

**22.** Primā lūce, cum summus mōns ā Labiēnō tenērētur, ipse ab hostium castris nōn longius mille et quingentis passibus abesset, neque, ut postea ex captivis comperit, aut ipsius adventus aut Labiēnī cognitus esset, Cōnsidius equō admissō ad eum accurrit, dīcit montem quem ā Labiēnō occupārī voluerit ab hostibus tenērī; id sē ā Gallicis armīs atque insignibus cognōvisse. Caesar suās cōpiās in proximum collem subducit, aciem instruit. Labiēnus, ut erat ei praeceptum ā

1. lūx, lūcis, *f.*, light, daylight; primā lūce, at daybreak. 3.

3. captivus, -ī, *m.* [capiō, take], captive, prisoner. 4.

comperiō, -perire, -peri, -pertum, *tr.* [pariō, procure], find out with certainty, discover, ascertain. \*

4. equus, -ī, *m.*, horse. \*  
admittō, -mittere, -misi, -missum, *tr.* [mittō, send], admit; commit; incur; let go; give reins to (a horse). 3.

5. accurrō, -currere, -curri or -cucurri, -cursum, *intr.* [ad+currō, run], run or hasten to. 2.

6. Gallicus, -a, -um, *adj.* [Gallia, Gaul], pertaining to Gaul or the Gauls, Gallic. \*

7. collis, -is, *m.*, hill. \*

8. subducō, -ducere, -dūxi, -ductum, *tr.* [ducō, lead], draw or lead up; lead or draw off, withdraw; *with nāvēs*, haul up, beach. 3.

aciēs, -ēī (old gen., aciō), *f.*, sharp point or edge of a weapon; sharp or keen sight, glance; a line (as forming an edge), battle line; prima, the van; media, the center; novissima, the rear. \*

Instruō, -struere, -struxi, -structum, *tr.* [struō, build], build upon, build, construct; form, draw up in battle array; equip, furnish. \*

praecipio, -cipere, -cēpi, -ceptum, *tr.* [capiō, take], take or obtain beforehand, anticipate; instruct, bid, order. 1.

Crassus." In such cases the word for "that" is never expressed in Latin.

### THIRD REFERENCE:

*Genitive with adjectives*

Chap. 22. Caesar's plan is frustrated by a mistake of Considius.

1. summus mōns, "the top of the mountain." For the adjective in agreement, where we should expect a noun followed by a genitive, see App. 160: G.-L. 291, R. 2: A. 293: B. 241, 1: H.-B. 244: H. 497, 4.

2. ipse: i.e. Caesar.

passibus: case? App. 139: G.-L. 398: A. 406: B. 217, 1: H.-B. 416: H. 471.

3. ut, "as."

4. Labiēnī, "that of Labienus." See on 21, 11.

cognitus esset: the force of cum still continues.

equō admissō, "at full gallop."

7. insignibus: the decorations on their helmets, shields, etc. See Plate II, 5-8.

8. aciem instruit: Caesar concluded from the report of Considius that Labienus had been defeated, and expected that the victors would immediately attack him.

ut... praeceptum, lit. "as it had been directed to him"="as he had been directed." Intransitive verbs can not be used in the passive except impersonally. English idiom generally requires the personal construction in translation. ei: case? App. 116, c: G.-L. 217: A. 365: B. 187, II, b: H.-B. 364, 2: H. 426, 3.

Caesare nē proelium committeret, nisi ipsius cōpiae prope  
 10 hostium castra visae essent, ut undique ūnō tempore in hostēs  
impetus fieret, monte occupātō nostrōs expectābat proeliō que  
abstinēbat. Multō dēnique diē per explōrātōrēs Caesar cognōvit  
et montem ā suīs tenērī et Helvētiōs castra mōvisse et Cōn-  
sidium timōre perterritum quod nōn vidisset prō visō sibi  
 15 renūntiāvisse. Eō diē, quō cōnsuērat intervallō, hostēs sequitur  
et milia passuum tria ab eōrum castrīs castra pōnit.

23. Postridiē eius diēi, quod omnīnō bīdium supererat  
cum exercitūi frūmentum mētiri oportēret, et quod ā Bibracte,

9. nisi, *conj.* [ne+si, if], if not, except, unless. \*

prope, *adv. and prep. with acc.* (1) *As prep.*, near, close to. (2) *As adv.*, almost, nearly; recently. \*

11. impetus, -ūs, *m.*, attack, onset, charge; impetuosity, force, vehemence. \*

12. abstinēō, -tinēō, -tinui, -tentum, *intr.* [teneō, hold], keep aloof from, refrain; spare. 1.

dēnique, *adv.*, and then, thereupon, finally, at last; at least. 3.

14. timor, -ōris, *m.* [timeō, fear], fear, alarm, dread. \*

15. intervallum, -i, *n.* [vāllus, palisade], the space between two palisades; interval (of space or time); distance. \*

1. postridiē, *adv.* [posterus, following+diēs, day], on the day following the next day; postridiē eius diēi, on the next or following day. \*

bīdium, -i, *n.* [bis, twice+diēs, day], space or period of two days, two days. 2  
supersum, -esse, -ful, *intr.* [sum, be App. 77], be over or above; be left, remain, survive. \*

2. Bibracte, -is, *n.* (Cef). Bibracte (bi-brāk'tē), the chief town of the Haedui. 2

9. nē committeret: a substantive volitive (or purpose) clause, subject of *erat praeceptum*.

nisi visae essent: mode? App. 273: G.-L. 663; 663, 2, b: A. 592, 1: B. 323: H.-B. 533, a: H. 649, I. The pluperfect stands for an original future perfect.

ipsius=*Caesaris*.

10. ut fieret: a purpose clause.

11. proeliō: ablative of separation.

12. multō diē, "late in the day."

14. timōre perterritum, "panic-stricken." This was probably due in part to the exaggerated notion of Gallic prowess that prevailed in the Roman army.

quod ... renūntiāvisse, "had reported to him what he had not seen as if seen." visō is a participle used as a noun.

15. quō ... intervallō=*eō intervāl-lō quō sequi cōnsuērat*. For case see App. 142, b: G.-L. 899: A. 412: B. 221: H.-B. 422, I: H. 473, 3. According to 15, 14, the distance was five or six miles.

#### THIRD REFERENCE:

*Ablative of comparison*

Chap. 23-29. Caesar defeats the Helvetii in a great battle and forces the survivors to return home.

Chap. 23. Caesar marches toward Bibracte to secure grain, and is followed by the Helvetii.

2. cum ... oportēret, "(before the time) when he would have to distribute grain to the army." See on 16, 10. The peculiar *cum* clause is best explained by H.-B. 509.

Bibracte: now Mont Beuvray, twelve miles west of Autun.

oppidō Haeduōrum longē maximō et cōpiōsissimō, nōn amplius milibus passuum XVIII aberat, rei frūmentāriæ prōspiciendum existimāvit; itaque iter ab Helvētiis āvertit ac Bibracte ire contendit. Ea rēs per fugitivōs L. Aemili, decuriōnis equitum Gallōrum, hostibus nūntiātur. Helvētīi, seu quod timōre perterritōs Rōmānōs discēdere ā sē existimārent, eō magis quod prīdiē superiōribus locīs occupātis proelium nōn commisissent, sive eō, quod rē frūmentāriā interclūdī posse cōnfiderent, commūtātō cōnsiliō atque itinere conversō nostrōs ā novissimō agmine īnsequī ac lacessere coopērunt.

3. cōpiōsus, -a, -um, *adj.* [cōpia, plenty], well supplied, wealthy. 1.

4. duodēviginti (XVIII), *card. num. adj.* [duo, two+dg, from+viginti, twenty], eighteen. 4.

prōspiciō, -spicere, -spexi, -spectum, *intr.* [speciō, look], look forward; look to beforehand, see to, provide for, take care. 1.

6. fugitivus, -a, -um, *adj.* [fugio, flee], fleeing; as noun, runaway slave. 1. Aemilius, -ii, *m.*, Aemilius (ē-mil'i-us). 1.

decuriō, -ōnis, *m.* [decem, ten], decurion, a cavalry officer in charge of a decuria, a squad of ten. 1.

4. milibus: ablative of comparison. rei ... prōspiciendum, "that he must look out for supplies." Evidently his vigorous talk to Dumnorix and the rest of the chiefs, two days before, had as yet produced no results. prōspiciendum: construction? App. 285, II, a: G.-L. 251, 1: A. 194, b: B. 337, 7, b, 1: H.-B. 600, 3; 102: H. 237.

5. itaque ... contendit: he was south and a little east of Bibracte. The plan on p. 104 shows that the Helvetii were marching northwest, and that the more northerly route taken by Caesar was almost parallel, for some distance, with the route of the Helvetii. This explains the fact that the Helvetii were able to overtake Caesar's army.

Bibracte: case? App. 131: G.-L. 337: A. 427, 2: B. 182, 1, a: H.-B. 450: H. 418.

9. prīdiē, *adv.* [diēs, day], on the day before. 3.

10. interclūdō, -clūdere, -clūsi, -clūsum, *tr.* [claudō, shut], shut or cut off, separate, hinder; with itinera, block. \*

cōnfidō, -fidere, -fusus sum, *intr.* [fidō, trust. App. 74], trust completely, rely on, feel confident, hope; cōnfisus, *pf. part.* with present meaning, relying on. \*

11. commūtō, 1, *tr.* [mūtō, change], change or alter completely, change, exchange. 2.

convertō, -vertere, -verti, -versum, *tr. and intr.* [vertō, turn], turn

8. existimārent, commisissent, cōnfiderent: mode? App. 244; 273: G.-L. 662; 663, 2, b: A. 592, 3: B. 286, 1; 323: H.-B. 535, 2, a: H. 588, II; 649, I.

eō magis quod, "all the more because." eō is an ablative of cause.

9. quod ... commisissent: the Helvetii did not understand the reason for the failure of Caesar and Labienus to attack them on the previous day.

10. sive eō, "or for this reason."

interclūdī posse, "that (the Romans) could be cut off"; i.e. by being prevented from reaching Bibracte.

11. commūtātō cōnsiliō: if the Helvetii had held to their plan of march, they might have foiled Caesar. Their safety lay in avoiding battle, which they could do as long as they were in advance of him, on account of the rugged nature

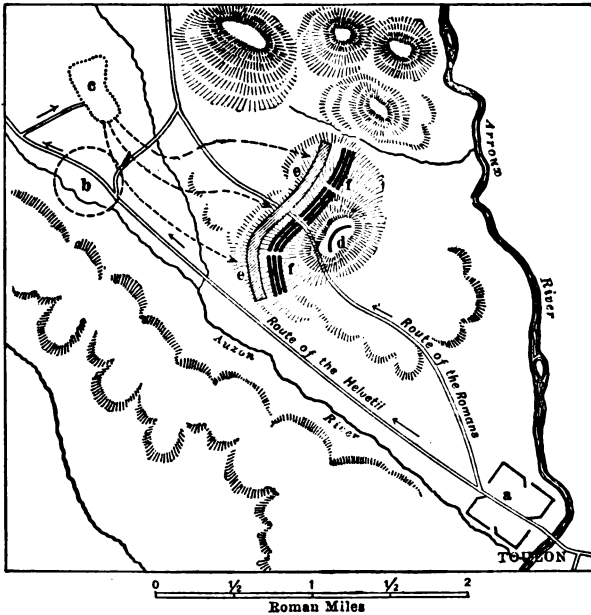
24. Postquam id animadvertit, cōpiās suās Caesar in proximum collem subdūxit equitātumque quī sustinēret hostium

completely, turn or wheel around; turn, change; *signa convertere*, face about. \*

1. postquam, conj. [post, afterwards

+quam, than], after, as soon as. 4.

2. sustinēō, 2, tr. and intr. [su(b)+teneō, hold], hold up from below; hold



BATTLE WITH THE HELVETII. First stage, Chap. 24-25, 10.

- a, Camp of the Romans on the night before the battle.
- b, Camp of the Helvetii on the night before the battle.
- c, Wagons of the Helvetii during the battle (24, 9).
- d, Roman fortification (24, 8).
- e, The Helvetii.
- f, The Romans.

of the country. Their fatal mistake lay in thinking that they were strong enough to throw away this advantage.

ā novissimō agmine, "on the rear." See on 1, 15.

#### THIRD REFERENCES:

*Accusative of place to which*

*Implied indirect discourse*

*Passive periphrastic conjugation*

Chap. 24. Caesar prepares for battle and the Helvetii advance.

1. animadvertit: mode and tense? App. 237: G.-L. 561: A. 543: B. 287, 1: H.-B. 554; 557: H. 602.

2. quī ... sustinēret: i.e. to check the skirmishers of the enemy and give Caesar time to form his lines. The cavalry was not expected to meet the main attack.

impetum mīsit. Ipse interim in colle mediō triplicem aciem instrūxit legiōnum quattuor veterānārum; in summō iugō duās legiōnēs quās in Galliā citeriōre proximē cōscripserat et omnia auxilia collocārī, ac tōtum montem hominibus complērī, et intereā sarcinās in ūnum locum cōferri, et eum ab iis qui in superiōre aciē cōstitērant mūniri (iussit). Helvētīi cum omnibus suis carrīs secūtī impedimenta in ūnum locum contulērunt; ipsī cōfertissimā aciē, rēiectō nostrō equitātū, 10 phalange factā sub primam nostram aciem successērunt.

up, sustain; hold back, check, restrain; hold out against, withstand, endure, bear; hold out. \*

3. medius, -a, -um, *adj.*, in the middle of; in the middle, intervening, intermediate; locus medius utriusque, a place midway between the two. \*

triplex, -icis, *adj.* [trēs, three + pliō, fold], three-fold, triple. 4.

4. veterānus, -a, -um, *adj.* [vetus, old], old, veteran; *pl. as noun*, veterans. 1.

5. proximē, *adv.* [proximus, last], last; lately. 4.

6. complēō, -plēre, -plēvi, -plētum, *tr.* [obsolete, plēō, fill], fill up or completely; complete; cover. \*

7. sarcina, -ae, *f.*, pack, luggage; *pl.*, baggage, packs (of individual soldiers, which they carried). 3.

3. in colle mediō, "half-way up the hill." For the meaning of the adjective see App. 160: G.-L. 291, R. 2: A. 293: B. 241, 1: H.-B. 244: H. 497, 4.

triplicem aciem: on the battle formation of the Romans see Int. 55, 56.

4. legiōnum quattuor veterānārum: case? App. 102: G.-L. 368, R.: A. 344: B. 197: H.-B. 349. These legions were the one which Caesar found in Transalpine Gaul (cf. 7, 5), and the three which he brought from their quarters near Aquileia (cf. 10, 9).

5. quās . . . cōscripserat: cf. 10, 8. Caesar dared not put these untrained and untried troops in the fighting lines.

6. auxilia: Caesar never expected much of his Gallic infantry. See Int. 47.

8. mūniō, 4, *tr.*, defend with a wall, fortify, defend, protect; mūnitus, *pf. part. as adj.*, fortified, defended, protected. \*

9. impedimentum, -i, *n.* [impediō, hinder], hindrance, obstacle, impediment; *pl.*, baggage, luggage (of an army), baggage-train (including the draught animals). \*

10. cōnfertus, -a, -um, *adj.* [*pf. part. of cōferciō*, crowd together], dense, thick, compact. 4.

rēiciō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectum, *tr.* [re- + iaciō, hurl. App. 7], hurl or drive back, repel; cast down or off; drive off or out. 4.

11. phalanx, -ngis, *f.*, a compact body of troops, phalanx. 4.

succēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessum, *in tr.* [sub + cēdō, go], go or come under;

collocārī, complērī, cōferri, mūniri: all depend on iussit.

7. sarcinās: see Int. 37.  
eum: sc. locum.

iis . . . cōstitērant: i.e. the two new legions.

8. mūniri: the location of the battle-field was long uncertain, but in 1886 excavations were made on one of the proposed locations, and evidences of a semi-circular wall and ditch were found on the top of a hill, as indicated in the plan, p. 104. Three years later nine trenches were found in which the dead had been buried.

9. in ūnum locum: marked c on the plan. Bits of Gallic pottery have been found there.

11. phalange: in the phalanx for-

**25.** Caesar primum suō, deinde omnium ex cōspectū remōtis equis, ut aequatō omnium periculō spem fugae tolleret, cohortātus suōs proelium commisit. Militēs ē locō superiōre pilis missis faciē hostium phalangem perfrēgerunt. Eā disiectā gladiis dēstrictis in eōs impetū fecērunt. Gallis magnō ad pugnam erat impedimentō quod, plūribus eōrum scūtis ūnō ictū pilōrum trānsfixis et colligātis, cum ferrum sē inflexisset,

come up to, come up, advance, be next to; succeed, take the place of; succeed, prosper. \*

1. **primum**, *adv.* [primus, first], first, at first, in the first place, for the first time; **cum primum**, *or ubi primum*, as soon as; **quam primum**, as soon as possible, very soon. \*

**deinde**, *adv.* [dē+inde, thence], thereupon, then, next. \*

2. **aequō**, *1. tr.* [aequus, equal], make even or equal, equalize. 1.

3. **cohortor**, *1. tr.* [co+hortor, encourage], encourage greatly, cheer, animate. \*

4. **pilum**, *-ī, n.*, heavy javelin, pike. \*

**perfringō**, *-fringere, -frēgi, -frāc-*

**tum, tr.** [frangō, break], break or burst through. 1.

**disiciō**, *-icere, -iēci, -iectum, tr.* [iaciō, throw. App. 7], scatter, rout, disperse. 2.

5. **gladius**, *-di, m.* sword. \* **dēstringō**, *-stringere, -strinxi, -strictum, tr.* [stringō, bind tight], unbind, unsheathe, draw (gladium). 1.

6. **pugna**, *-ae, f.* [pugnō, fight], fight, battle, contest; **genus pugnae**, method of fighting. \*

**scūtum**, *-ī, n.*, shield, buckler; *oblong. convex (2¼×4 ft.), made of wood covered with leather or iron plates, with a metal rim.* \*

7. **ictus**, *-ūs, m.*, stroke, blow. 1. **trānsfigō**, *-figere, -fixi, -fixum, tr.*

mation the soldiers overlapped their shields, shingle fashion, so as to make an impenetrable covering. The front rank held the shields vertically, the other ranks horizontally. If the phalanx remained unbroken, it could break the opposing line by sheer weight; but if it broke, the men were too closely packed to use their weapons effectively.

Chap. 25. The Helvetii fight bravely, but are forced to retreat.

1. **suō**: *sc. equō remōtō.*

**omnium**: i.e. of the higher officers, not of the cavalry. Caesar wished in part to encourage his men by showing that the officers shared their danger, and in part to prevent some timid tribune from setting an example of flight. See Int. 41.

2. **aequatō periculō**, "by making the danger equal."

3. **cohortātus suōs**: Caesar was a skillful orator (see Int. 22), and usually encouraged his men before battle by a short speech.

**ē locō superiōre**: see Int. 55.

4. **pilis**: see Int. 36, a.

5. **gladiis**: see Int. 36, b.

**Gallis impedimentō**: for the two datives see App. 119: G.-L. 356, 3: A. 382, 1: B. 191, 2: H.-B. 360, b: H. 433, 2.

6. **quod . . . poterant** is the subject of *erat*. For mode see App. 248: G.-L. 524; 525, 1: A. 572: B. 299, 1, a: H.-B. 552, 1: H. 588, II, 3.

**plūribus . . . colligātis**: remember that the shields overlapped.

7. **cum inflexisset**: mode? App. 242, b: G.-L. 567, n: A. 542; 518, c: B. 288, 3, a: H.-B. 540: H. 601, 4.

neque ēvellere neque sinistrā impeditā satis commodē pugnāre poterant, multī ut diū iactātō bracchiō praeoptārent scūtum manū ēmittere et nūdō corpore pugnāre. Tandēm vulneribus dēfessī et pedem referre et, quod mōns suberat circiter mille passuum spatiō, (eō) sē recipere coepērunt. Captō monte et succēdentibus nostris, Bōiī et Tulingī, quī hominum milibus

[figō, fix], thrust or pierce through, transfix. 1.

colligō, 1, tr. [con+ligō, bind], bind or fasten together. 1.

ferrum, -ī, n., iron, steel; anything made of iron, sword, spear-point. 1.

inflectō, -flectere, -flecti, -flexum, tr. [flectō, bend], bend down; with reflex., become bent. 2.

8. ēvellō, -vellere, -velli, -vulsum, tr. [vellō, pluck], pluck out, pull out. 1.

sinister, -tra, -trum, adj., left; fem. sing. as noun (sc. manus), the left hand; sub sinistrā, on the left. 4.

commodō, adv. [commodus, convenient], conveniently; readily, easily, fitly; satis commodō, to much advantage, very easily. \*

pugnō, 1, intr., fight, give battle, contend; strive; often *impers.*, as pugnātur, it is fought, i.e. they fight. \*

9. brachium, -chl, n., the arm, forearm. 1.

praeoptō, 1, tr. [optō, wish], wish before; prefer. 1.

10. manus, -ūs, f., the hand; in manibus, near at hand; manū, by hand, by art; ferrea manus, a grappling-hook;

8. ēvellere: supply *pila* as the object. sinistrā: the shield was held with the left hand.

9. multī is put before *ut* for emphasis.

iactātō bracchiō, "after throwing their arms about," in the effort to shake out the javelins, and so tear the shields apart.

10. corpore: case? App. 142: G.-L. 399: A. 412: B. 220, 1: H.-B. 445, 2: H. 473, 3.

11. mōns . . . spatiō, lit. "a moun-

dare manūs, yield; an armed force, troop, band, company. \*

ēmittō, -mittere, -misi, -missum, tr. [mittō, send], let go, send out or forth, release; hurl, discharge; drop. 2.

nūdus, -a, -um, adj., naked, unclothed, bare; exposed, unprotected. 1. corpus, -oris, n., body; person; a (dead) body. \*

tandēm, adj., at last, at length, finally; in *interrog. clauses* to add emphasis, as quid tandem, what, pray? what then? 3.

vulnus, -eris, n., a wound. \*

11. dēfessus, -a, -um, adj. [*pf. part.* of *dēfeticor*, grow weary], wearied, exhausted, faint. 3.

referō, referre, rettuli, relātum, tr. [re+ferō, bear. App. 81], bear, carry, or bring back, report; pedem referre, go back, retreat; grātiām referre, show one's gratitude, make a requital. \*

subsum, -esse, -ful, intr. [sum, be. App. 77], be under or below; be near or close at hand. 2.

12. eō, adv. [*old dative of is*], thither, there (in *sense of* thither), to the place (*where, etc.*), to them (it, him, etc.). \*

tain was near at hand, (separated) by a distance of about a mile" = "there was a mountain about a mile away." passuum: case? App. 100: G.-L. 365, 2: A. 345, 6: B. 203, 2: H.-B. 355: H. 440, 3. spatiō: ablative of degree of difference.

12. eō: the adverb.

captō monte, "when they had reached the mountain."

13. quī . . . claudēbant: they had formed the van of the Helvetian army, and became the rear when the line of march was reversed. They had proba-

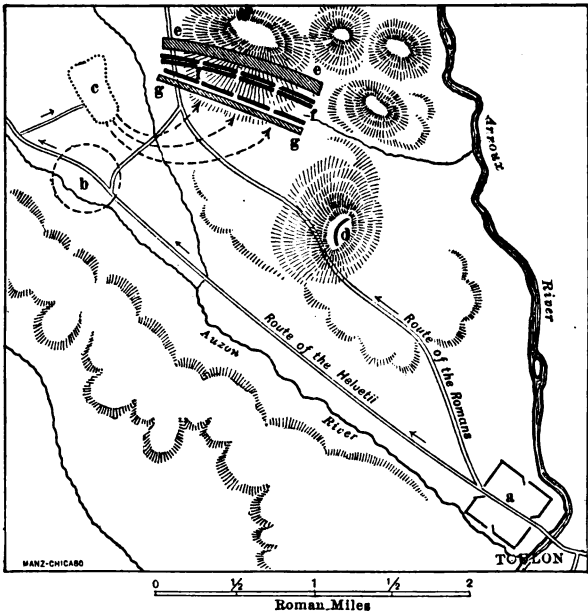
circiter xv agmen hostium claudēbant et novissimis praesidiō  
 15 erant, ex itinere nostrōs ab latere apertō aggressi circumvenire,

14. claudō, claudere, clausi, clausum, *tr.*, shut, close; **agmen claudere**, close the line, bring up the rear. 4.

15. latus, -eris, *n.*, side; wing or flank of an army. \*

apertus, -a, -um, *adj.* [*pf. part. of* aperiō], open, exposed; **ab latere apertō**, on the unprotected flank. \*

circumveniō, -venire, -vēni, -ventum, *tr.* [veniō, come], come or get



BATTLE WITH THE HELVETII. Second stage, Chap. 25, 10, through Chap. 26.

- a, Camp of the Romans on the night before the battle.
- b, Camp of the Helvetii on the night before the battle.
- c, Wagons of the Helvetii during the battle (24, 9).
- d, Roman fortification (24, 9).
- e, The Helvetii.
- f, The Romans.
- g, The Boii and Tulingi.

bly been separated from the Helvetii by a wagon train, which they had been obliged to pass on the road. This accounts for their coming up so late in the battle.

15. **ex itinere**: i.e. they went

straight from their march into the battle, without a halt.

**ab latere apertō**: i.e. the right flank, for their shields protected the soldiers' left sides. The plan shows that the left flank was the nearer to the Boii and

et id cōspicātī Helvētīi, quī in montem sēsē recēperant, rūsus instāre et proelium redintegrāre coepērunt. Rōmānī conversa signa bipertitō intulērunt: prima et secunda aciēs, ut victis ac submōtis resisteret; tertia, ut venientēs sustinēret.

26. Ita ancipitī proeliō diū atque ācrit̄er pugnātum est. Diūtius cum sustinēre nostrōrum impetūs nōn possent, alterī sē, ut coeperant, in montem recēpērunt, alterī ad impedimenta et carrōs suōs sē contulērunt. Nam hōc tōtō proeliō, cum ab

around, surround, cut off, beset; betray, defraud. \*

16. cōspicor, 1, tr. [speciō, look], observe, descry, perceive. 3.

17. rūsus, adv. [for reversus, from revertō, turn back], again, back, anew; in turn. \*

redintegrō, 1, tr. [red-+integrō, make whole], make whole again, renew, restore, revive. \*

18. signum, -i, n., mark, sign, signal, watchword; signal for battle, standard, ensign; ab signis discēdere, withdraw from the ranks; signa inferre, advance to the attack; signa conversa inferre, face about and advance to the attack; signa ferre, advance on the march; direct the attack; signa convertēre, face or wheel about; ad signa convenire, join the army. \*

Tulingi, but they came up in the rear, trying to work their way around (circumvenire) to the more advantageous position. circumvenire depends on coepērunt, to be supplied from l. 17.

18. conversa . . . intulērunt, lit. "carried forward in two directions they turned standards" = "faced about and advanced in two directions." In reality only the third line faced about. signa: see Int. 44.

prima et secunda aciēs; tertia (sc. aciēs): in apposition with Rōmānī.

19. victis ac submōtis = Helvētīis. venientēs = Bōiōs et Tulingōs.

### THIRD REFERENCES:

*Descriptive genitive*

*Ablative of manner*

*Substantive quod clause*

bipertitō, adv. [bis, twice+partior, divide], in two parts or divisions, in two ways. 1.

19. vincō, vincere, vici, victum, tr., conquer, overcome, vanquish; prevail; have one's way or desire. \*

submoveō, -movēre, -mōvi, -mōtum, tr. [moveō, move], move away, drive away, dislodge. 2.

resistō, -sistere, -stiti, —, intr. [re-+sistō, stand], stand back, remain behind, halt, stand still; withstand, resist, oppose. \*

1. anceps, ancipitis, adj. [ambō, both+caput, head], two headed, with two sides or fronts, double. 1.

ācrit̄er, adv. [ācer, sharp], sharply, keenly, fiercely, vigorously. Comp. ācrius; sup. ācerrimē (App. 40). \*

Chap. 26. The Helvetii are routed and flee northwards. Caesar follows.

1. ancipitī: i.e. against the Helvetii on one side and the Boii and Tulingi on the other.

pugnātum est, "they fought." For translation see note on 22, 8.

2. alterī . . . alterī, "the one body [the Helvetii] . . . the other [the Boii and Tulingi]."

3. ut coeperant: see 25, 12.

4. nam: this sentence gives the reason for Caesar's statement that the enemy withdrew, instead of fleeing in disorder.

cum pugnātum sit: an adversative clause. Note that the perfect subjunctive is an exception to the rule of sequence of tenses.

ab hōrā septimā, "from about noon."

5 hōrā septimā ad vesperum pugnātum sit, āversum hostem  
vidēre nēmō potuit. Ad multam noctem etiam ad impedimenta  
pugnātum est, proptereā quod pro vāllō carrōs obiēcerant et ē  
llocō superiōre in nostrōs venientēs tēla coniciēbant, et nōn  
nūllī inter carrōs raedāsque matarās ac trāgulās subiciēbant  
10 nostrōsque vulnerābant. Diū cum esset pugnātum, impedimentis  
castrisque nostrī potitī sunt. Ibi Orgetorigis filia atque  
ūnus ē filiis captus est. Ex eō proeliō circiter hominum milia  
CXXX superfuērunt eāque tōtā nocte continenter iērunt; nūllam

5. hōra, -ae, f., hour. *The Roman hour was the twelfth part of the day or night (reckoning between sunrise and sunset), and hence varied according to the season.* \*

vesper, -ari, m., evening; sub vesperum, towards evening. 3.

6. nox, noctis, f., night; media nox, middle of the night, midnight; multā nocte, late at night. \*

7. vāllum, -i, n. [vāllus, palisade], wall or rampart of earth set with palisades; entrenchments, earthworks. \*

obiciō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectum, tr. [iaciō, throw. App. 7], throw against or in the way; place in front or opposite, present; expose; obiectus, pf. part. as adj., lying in the way or opposite, in the way. 2.

8. coniciō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectum, tr. [iaciō, throw. App. 7], hurl, throw, cast; put; put together logically, conjecture; in fugam conicere, put to flight. \*

9. raeda, -ae, f., wagon with four wheels. 2.

matarā, -ae, f., Celtic javelin. 1.

trāgula, -ae, f., a javelin or dart used by the Gauls. 1.

subiciō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectum, tr. [iaciō, hurl. App. 7], hurl or put under; throw from beneath; place below; subject to, expose to. 3.

10. vulnerō, 1, tr. [vulnus, a wound], wound. \*

13. trīgintā (XXX), card. num. adj. indecl. [trēs, three], thirty. \*

The seventh hour began at noon, and in such expressions the Romans probably reckoned from the beginning of the hour.

7. prō vāllō, "as a rampart."

ē locō superiōre: i.e. from the tops of the wagons.

8. coniciēbant, "kept throwing." The imperfect here denotes repeated action.

12. captus est agrees with the nearer subject.

milia CXXX superfuērunt: according to chap. 29 the original number was 368,000. If both statements are correct the slaughter in this battle was terrible, though we must remember that the original number had been reduced by

the destruction of the Tigurini, and of course by natural deaths on the journey, especially among the children and the aged.

13. nocte: case? App. 152, a: G.-L. 393, R. 2: A. 424, b: B. 231, 1: H.-B. 440. H. 417, 2. *alt. den. tertia*

nūllam... pervēnērunt: the map facing p. 42 shows the direction of this flight. Of course no individual traveled every day and every night. There was only a panic-stricken mob, under no leadership, every member of which rested or moved on at his own pleasure, so that as a whole it was in ceaseless motion. Tonnerre is about a hundred miles north of the battlefield, and only the strongest could have traveled so far.

partem noctis itinere intermissō in finēs Lingonum diē quārtō pervēnērunt, cum et propter vulnera militum et propter sepul-  
tūram occisōrum nostrī triduum morātī eōs sequī nōn potuis-  
sent. Caesar ad Lingonēs litterās nūntiōsque misit nē eōs  
frumentō nēve aliā rē iuvārent; quī sī iūvissent, sē eōdem  
locō quō Helvētiōs habitūrum. Ipse triduō intermissō cum  
omnibus cōpiis eōs sequī coepit.

27. Helvētiī omnium rērum inopiā adductī lēgātōs dē  
dēditiōne ad eum misērunt. Quī cum eum in itinere con-  
vērissent sēque ad pedēs prōiēcissent suppliciterque locūtī  
flentēs pācem petissent, atque eōs in eō locō quō tum essent  
suum adventum expectāre iussisset, pārūrunt. Eō postquam

14. *intermittō, -mitterē, -misi, -missum, tr. and intr. [mittō, send],* send between; intervene, separate; abate, cease, discontinue; delay, neglect, omit; let pass. \*

Lingonēs, -um, m. (Bf), the Lingones (ling'gō-nēz). 4.

15. *sepultūra, -ae, f., burial.* 1.

16. *triduum, -i, n. [trēs, three + diēs, day],* three days. \*

*moror, 1, tr. and intr. [mora, a delay],* delay, hinder; tarry, linger. \*

17. *littera, -ae, f., a letter of the alphabet, a written sign, mark, or character; in pl., letters of the alphabet; letter, epistle.* \*

*nūntius, -ti, m., messenger; mes-*

sage, news, report. \*

18. *nēve (neu) (App. 188, b), conj. [nē + ve, or], and not, nor.* 3.

*iuvō, iuvāre, iuvi, iūtum, tr., aid,* assist, help. 3.

1. *inopia, -ae, f. [inops, needy],* need, want, poverty, lack; want of provisions, hunger. \*

2. *dēditō, -ōnis, f. [dēdō, surren-der],* capitulation. \*

3. *prōiciō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectum, tr. [iaciō, throw. App. 7],* throw forward or away; throw, cast; reject, give up; sē *prōicere*, cast one's self; jump. 4.

*suppliciter, adv. [supplex, suppli-ant],* as suppliants, humbly. 1.

5. *pārēō, 2, intr. [cf. pariō, bring*

*sē ... habitūrum: i.e. he should treat them as enemies.*

19. *quō Helvētiōs: sc. habēret.*

### THIRD REFERENCE:

*Commands in indirect discourse*

Chap. 27. Surrender of the Helvetii. Six thousand escape.

2. *quī cum, "when they."*

4. *essent: implied indirect discourse.* Caesar said *quō nunc estis*, "where you [the Helvetii as a whole, not the envoys] now are."

5. *iussisset: supply Caesar as the subject.*

*postquam pervēnit: mode and tense?*

14. *partem: accusative of duration of time.*

*diē quārtō: by the Roman method of reckoning, the day of the battle counted as the first day. We should say "in three days."*

15. *cum: causal.*

17. *nē iuvārent, "(ordering them) not to assist." The subjunctive stands for an imperative of the direct discourse, though it may also be called a substantive volitive clause: App. 267: G.-L. 652: A. 588: B. 316: H.-B. 534, 2; 538: H. 642.*

18. *iūvissent* stands for a future perfect indicative in the direct form.

Caesar pervēnit, obsidēs, arma, servōs quī ad eōs perfūgissent poposcit. Dum ea conquīruntur et cōferuntur, nocte intermissā, circiter hominum mīlia vi eius pāgī quī Verbigenus appellātur, sive timōre perterriti nē armīs trāditis supplicio afficerentur, sive spē salūtis inducti, quod in tantā multitudine dediticiōrum suam fugam aut occultārī aut omninō ignōrārī posse existimarent, primā nocte ē castris Helvētiōrum ēgressi ad Rhēnum finēsque Germānōrum contendērunt.

28. Quod ubi Caesar rescit, quōrum per finēs ierant, his

forth], appear; obey, yield to, be subject to. 1.

6. **servus**, -i, m., slave, servant. 1. **perfuḡiō**, -fugere, -fūgi, -fugitum, intr. [fuḡiō, flee], flee for refuge, take refuge; desert. 1.

7. **poscō**, **poscere**, **poposci**, —, tr., ask, demand, request, require. 3.

**conquīrō**, -quīrere, -quīsivī, -quīsītum, tr. [quaerō, search], seek for carefully, search for, hunt up. 2.

8. **sex** (VI), card. num. adj., indecl., six. \*

**Verbigenus**, -i, m. (Cgh), Verbigenus (vēr-bij'ē-nūs), a canton of the Helvetii. 1.

9. **trādō**, -dere, -didī, -ditum, tr. (trāns+dō, give), give over, give up, surrender, deliver; intrust, commit; hand down, transmit; teach, communicate; recommend. \*

App. 237: G.-L. 561: A. 543: B. 287, 1: H.-B. 554; 557: H. 602.

6. **servōs**: fugitive slaves from the Roman army. See 23, 6.

**perfūgissent**: implied indirect discourse. Caesar said *quī ad vōs perfūgērunt*, "who have fled to you."

7. **dum ea conquīruntur**, "while these were being sought out." For mode and tense, see App. 234, a: G.-L. 570: A. 556: B. 293, 1: H.-B. 571: H. 533, 4.

**ea**=*obsidēs, arma, servōs*.

9. **timōre nē supplicio afficerentur**, "by the fear that they would be punished"; lit. "be treated with punishment." For the meaning of *nē*, see App. 228, b: G.-L. 550, 1, 2: A.

10. **salūs, salūtis**, f. [salvus, safe], welfare, security, safety; preservation, deliverance; place of safety; life (*when in danger*). \*

11. **dediticius**, -a, -um, adj. [dēdō, surrender], surrendered; as noun, one surrendered, prisoner, subject. 4.

**occultō**, 1, tr. [occultus, secret], hide, keep secret, conceal. 1.

**ignōrō**, 1, tr. [ignārus, not knowing], not know, be ignorant of; fail to observe, overlook. 1.

12. **ēgredior**, -gredi, -gressus sum, intr. [gradior, step], step or go out, come forth, depart; march out, make a sortie; land (*from a ship*), disembark. \*

1. **resciscō**, -sciscere, -scīvī, -scītum, tr. [re-+sciscō, inquire], find out, learn. 1.

564: B. 296, 2: H.-B. 502, 4: H. 567, 1.

**perterriti** agrees with *mīlia*, but is masculine because the idea of men is prominent.

12. **primā**: for translation, see App. 160: G.-L. 291, R. 2: A. 293: B. 241, 1: H.-B. 244: H. 497, 4.

#### THIRD REFERENCES:

*Adjectives with participial meaning*  
*Clauses introduced by postquam, etc.*

Chap. 28. The six thousand are retaken and put to death. The others are sent back to their homes.

1. **rescit**=*rescivit*.

*his* is the antecedent of *quōrum* and the indirect object of *imperāvit*.

utī conquīrerent et redūcerent, sī sibi pūrgātī esse vellent, imperāvit; reductōs in hostium numerō habuit; reliquōs omnēs obsidibus, armis, perfugīs trāditīs in dēditionem accēpit. Helvētiōs, Tulingōs, Latobrigōs in finēs suōs, unde erant profectī, revertī iussit et, quod omnibus frūgibus āmissis domi nihil erat quō famem tolerārent; Allobrogibus imperāvit ut iis frūmentī cōpiam facerent; ipsōs oppida vicōsque quōs incendarant restituere iussit. Id eā maximē ratiōne fēcit, quod nōluit eum locum unde Helvētīi discesserant vacāre, nē propter bonitātem agrōrum Germānī, quī trāns Rhēnum incolunt, ex suis finibus in Helvētiōrum finēs trānsīrent et finitimī Galliae prōvinciae Allobrogibusque essent. Bōiōs petentibus Haeduis,

2. redūcō, -dūcere, -dūxi, -ductum, *tr.* [re-+dūcō, lead], lead or bring back; draw back, pull back; extend back. \*

pūrgō, 1, *tr.* [pūrus, clean+agō, do, make], clean, clear, excuse, exonerate; pūrgātus, *pf. part. as adj.*, freed from blame, exonerated. 2.

4. perfuga, -ae, *m.* [perfugiō, flee for refuge], refugee, deserter. 3.

5. unde, *adv.*, from which place, whence. \*

6. frūx, -gis, *f.* [fruor, enjoy], fruit; *pl.*, crops, produce. 1.

āmittō, -mittere, -misi, -missum, *tr.* [mittō, send], send away, dismiss; let go; lose. \*

7. famēs, -is, *f.*, hunger, starvation. 1.

tolerō, 1, *tr.* [cf. tollō, lift up], bear, endure; hold out; nourish, support; with famem, appease, alleviate. 1.

9. ratiō, -ōnis, *f.* [reor, reckon], reckoning, account, estimate; design, plan, strategy, science; method, arrangement; cause, reason; regard, consideration; condition, state of affairs; manner, way; condition, terms; *in pl.*, transactions. \*

10. vacō, 1, *intr.*, be empty or unoccupied; lie waste. 4.

11. bonitās, -tātis, *f.* [bonus, good], goodness; fertility. 1.

2. sī vellent: implied indirect discourse. Caesar said *sī vultis*, "if you wish."

sibi: dative of reference. It refers to Caesar.

3. in...habuit: i.e. he had them put to death. They had broken a military agreement.

4. in dēditionem accēpit: this act made them subjects of Rome.

6. domi: case? App 151, a: G.-L. 411, R. 2: A. 427, 3: B. 232, 2: H.-B. 449, a: H. 484, 2.

7. quō tolerārent: mode? App. 230, c: G.-L. 631, 2: H.-B. 517, 2.

ut iis facerent, "to provide them with."

8. ipsōs: i.e. the Helvetii and their allies.

ipsōs restituere is the object of iussit. The object of iubeō is regularly an accusative and infinitive, while the object of imperō is regularly a substantive volitive clause, as in 1. 2.

9. eā maximē ratiōne, "chiefly for this reason," is explained by the quod clause.

13. prōvinciae Allobrogibusque, "the province and (especially) the Allo-

quod egregiâ virtûte erant cognitî, ut in finibus suis collocarent, concessit; quibus illi agrôs dedêrunt quôsque postea in parem iûris libertâtisque condiçionem atque ipsi erant recepêrunt.

29. In castris Helvêtiôrum tabulae repertae sunt litteris Graecis cōfectae et ad Caesarem relatae, quibus in tabulis nōminâtîm ratiō cōfecta erat, quî numerus domō exisset eôrum quî arma ferre possent, et item sêparâtîm quot pueri, senês,

16. *pâr, paris, adj.*, equal, like, similar; equal to, a match for; *with words of number and quantity*, the same; *pâr atque*, the same as. \*

*condiciô, -ônis, f.*, condition, state; agreement, stipulation, terms. \*

1. *tabula, -ae, f.*, board; tablet; list. 2.

2. *Graecus, -a, -um, adj.*, of or belonging to the Greeks, Greek, Grecian; *pl. as noun*, the Greeks. 1.

3. *nōminâtîm, adv.* [*nōminô*, name], by name; expressly; in detail. 3.

4. *quot, adj., indecl.*, (1) *interrog.*, how many? (2) *rel.*, as many as, the number that. 2.

*puer, -eri, m.*, boy, child, son; *in pl.*, children (of both sexes); & *pueris*, from childhood. \*

*senex, senis, adj.*, old; *as noun*, old man. 1.

broges"; for the Allobroges were a part of the province.

*Bôlôs* is the object of *collocarent*. It is put first for the sake of the emphatic contrast with *Helvêtiôs, Tulingôs, Lato-brigôs*, in l. 5.

*Haeduls*: indirect object of *concessit*.

14. *êgregiâ virtûte*, "(men) of very great courage": a descriptive ablative.

*ut collocarent* is the object of *concessit*. The Boli had had no fixed home, as is shown by 5, 11, 12. The map facing p. 42 shows where they were settled by the Haedul. The Haedul wished to strengthen their frontier against invasions by neighboring states, just as Rome wished the Helvetii to guard her frontier against the Germans.

15. *quibus, quôs*: the antecedent is *Bôlôs*.

16. *parem... atque ipsi erant*, lit. "equal... as they themselves were (in)" = "the same... as they themselves enjoyed."

### THIRD REFERENCE:

*The locative*

Chap. 29. Enumeration of the Helvetii and their allies.

1. *tabulae*, "lists," written on wax tablets. The tablets used by the Romans were like folding slates, but made entirely of wood, with the inner surfaces thinly coated with wax. They wrote on this wax with a pointed *stylus*.

*litteris Graecis*: Gallic words were written in Greek characters, the Gauls having no alphabet of their own. The Greek alphabet was known to the Gauls through their intercourse with the Greek colony, Massilia, and was used by the Druid priests.

2. *quibus in tabulis*, "in which."

3. *ratiô*, "an account."

*qui exisset*: indirect question.

4. *qui possent*: mode? App. 230: G.-L. 631, 2: A. 535: B. 283, 1: H.-B. 521, 1: H. 569.

*pueri, senês, mulierêsque* are subjects of *exissent*, to be supplied from *exisset*. Note that this use of *-que* is an exception to the statement of the note on l. 3.

mulierēsque. Summa erat capitum Helvētiōrum milium 5  
CCLXIII, Tulingōrum milium XXXVI, Latobrigōrum XIV,  
Rauracōrum XXIII, Bōiōrum XXXII; ex hīs, quī arma ferre  
possent, ad milia nōnāgintā duo. Summa omnium fuērunt ad  
milia CCCLXVIII. Eōrum quī domum rediērunt cēnsū habitō,  
ut Caesar imperāverat, repertus est numerus milium c et x. 10

5. *mulier, -eris, f.*, woman; wife. \*  
*summa, -ae, f.* [*summus*, highest],  
the main thing or point, sum total, ag-  
gregate, the whole; general manage-  
ment, control, direction; *summa im-*  
*peri*, the chief command. \*

*caput, capitis, n.*, the head (*of men  
and animals*); person, individual; mouth  
*of a river*; *capitis poena*, capital  
punishment. \*

6. *quattuordecim (XIV)*, *card. num.*  
*adj., indecl.*, fourteen. 2.

8. *nōnāgintā, card. num. adj., indecl.*,  
ninety. 1.

9. *redeō, -ire, -ii, -itum, intr.* [*red-*  
*+eō*, go. App. 84], go or turn back, re-  
turn; come; fall to, descend; be re-  
ferred. \*

*cēnsus, -ūs, m.*, enumeration. 1.

5. *summa . . . CCLXIII*, lit. "the  
total was [i.e. consisted] of 263,000 of  
heads of the Helvetii" = "the total was  
263,000 Helvetii, etc."

6. *CCLXIII = ducentōrum sexāgintā  
trium*.

*XXXVI = trigintā sex*.

7. *XXIII = vigintī trium*.

*XXXII = trigintā duōrum*.

*quī possent*: cf. 1. 4. Supply *fuērunt*;  
"there were . . . who could, etc."

8. *ad*, "about," is an adverb in both  
instances.

*fuērunt* agrees in number with the  
predicate noun *milia*.

9. *CCCLXVIII = trecenta sexāgintā octō*.

## BOOK I, CHAPTERS 30 TO 54. WAR WITH ARIOVISTUS

The complete success of Caesar's campaign against the Helvetii at once established his prestige in Gaul. Representatives from most of the states came to beg his aid against their common enemy, Ariovistus, a German king who had established himself in Gaul. It was still early in July, and there was time for another campaign that summer. Caesar willingly accepted the task, for if ever he was to become master of Gaul he must first put out of his way this rival conqueror; and in any case it was most important that the Germans should be kept to the east of the Rhine. Yet the Germans were no mean antagonists, and Caesar was ready to make some concessions rather than fight them. He first proposed to Ariovistus that they settle their differences in friendly conference, but he met a haughty refusal. Determined to bring the king to terms before he should be joined by other German tribes, Caesar marched against him with all speed.

During a few days' halt at Vesontio the soldiers heard such fearful tales of the Germans that they were on the point of mutiny. By a masterly speech Caesar quieted their fears and aroused their enthusiasm to the highest pitch; and at once he led them on toward the enemy. Never again during the Gallic campaigns did his soldiers give him trouble.

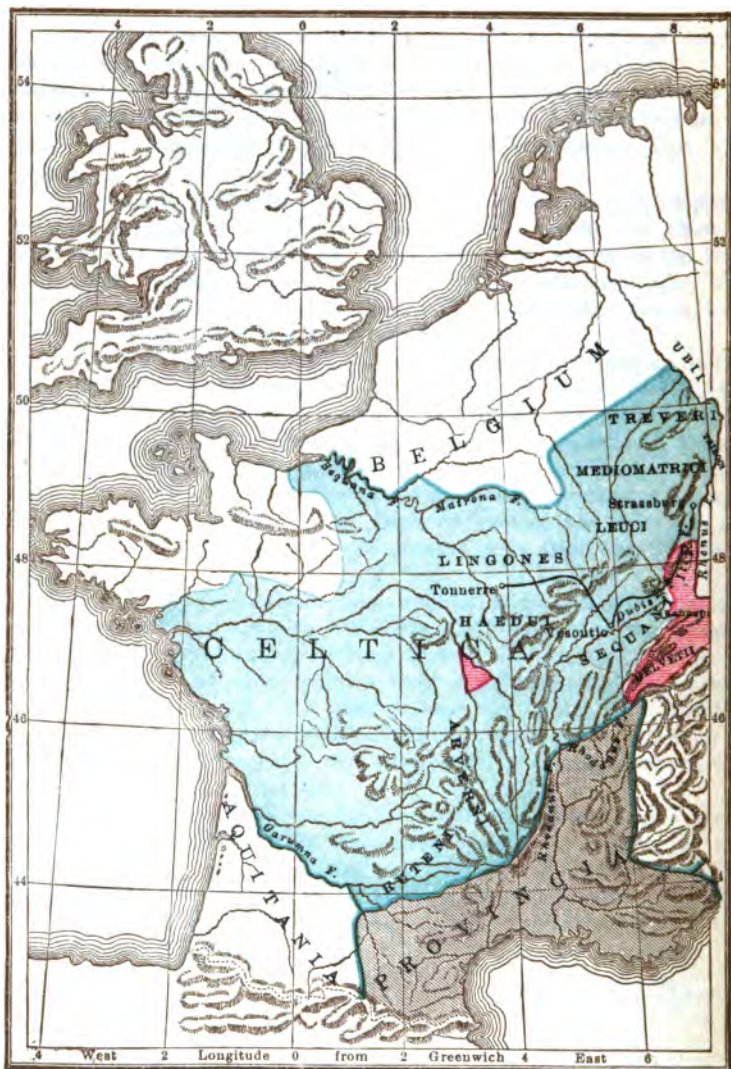
Impressed by Caesar's activity, Ariovistus in his turn now proposed a conference; but when they met he replied boastfully to Caesar's demands, and the interview was broken off by an attack of the German guard. Caesar refused to meet Ariovistus a second time, but sent two representatives in his place. These Ariovistus threw into chains. The negotiations were thus finally broken off.

At once Ariovistus marched past Caesar's camp, keeping up on the slopes of a mountain where he was safe from attack, and boldly established his camp in such a way as to command the road by which Caesar had come, and by which his provisions were to follow. Caesar immediately offered battle, but the Germans were not ready to fight. Five days later Caesar marched back past the German camp and fortified and garrisoned a small camp to protect the way for his provisions. The Germans were unsuccessful in an assault on this small camp.

At last Caesar determined to force a battle, and he marched straight at the German camp. As this was not fortified, Ariovistus was obliged to lead out his army and draw it up against the Romans. Caesar in person led his right wing, which was successful; his left, on the contrary, was beaten back. The reserves, hurrying to this spot, decided the contest. The Germans broke and fled to the river Ill, a branch of the Rhine, so closely pursued that only a few, including, however, the king, escaped to the other bank.

In the two campaigns of this one year important results were achieved. The Rhine for the first time became the frontier of the Roman possessions; the tide of barbarian invasion was rolled back for five hundred years; the destiny of Gaul as a future dependency of Rome was fixed; and the Roman's traditional fear of the Gauls and the Germans was dispelled.





**Campaign Map for Book I, 30-54**

## EXPLANATION OF CAMPAIGN MAP

Brown indicates Roman possessions when Caesar entered Gaul. Red indicates states which Caesar conquered. Blue indicates the states which submitted without fighting. Compare all these with the map facing page 42.

Crossed sabers indicate the battlefield. Colonel Stoffel's identification of it (*Guerre de César et d'Arioviste*) is very probable, and is indicated on this map.

**30.** *Bellō Helvētiōrum cōfectō tōtius ferē Galliae lēgātī, principēs civitātum, ad Caesarem grātulātum convēnērunt: Intellegere sēsē, tametsī prō veteribus Helvētiōrum iniūriis populī Rōmānī ab hīs poenās bellō repetisset, tamen eam rem*

2. *grātulor*, 1, *intr.* [*grātus*, pleasing], express joy, congratulate, thank. 1.

3. *tametsī*, *conj.* [*tamen*, however + *et*], even if], although, though, notwithstanding. 1.

4. *repetō*, -*petere*, -*petivī*, -*petitum*, *tr.* [*re-* + *petō*, seek], seek or ask again, demand back; *with poenās*, exact, inflict. 2.

Chap. 30-36. At the request of the Gallic states Caesar warns Ariovistus to cease encroaching on Gallic territory, but he receives a defiant reply.

Chap. 30. Deputations from the Gallic states congratulate Caesar and ask permission to hold a council.

1. *tōtius ferē Galliae*: Gallia Celtica is meant. The blue color on the map facing p. 42 shows the part of Gaul from which envoys may have come; but probably not all the states so colored were represented at this time.

2. *grātulātum*: construction? App. 205: G.-L. 435: A. 509: B. 340, 1, b: H.-B. 618: H. 632; 633, 1.

3. Since there is a large amount of indirect discourse in 30-54, it is necessary to make a more detailed study of the construction than has been called for by the notes on 1-29. It is assumed that the following points are clearly understood by the student: the accusative and infinitive in principal declarative clauses; the subjunctive in principal

imperative clauses; the subjunctive in subordinate clauses. The direct form of all long passages of indirect discourse is given after Book VII.

*sēsē*: the envoys said "we." The reflexive pronoun *sui* or the corresponding possessive *suus* is regularly used in indirect discourse wherever a pronoun of the first person is changed to one of the third. In this use the reflexive is often called the indirect reflexive, in contrast with the direct reflexive, which refers to the subject of the clause in which it stands. App. 165: G.-L. 520; 521: A. 300, 2: B. 244, 1, II: H.-B. 202, 2: H. 504.

*Helvētiōrum . . . Rōmānī*, "the wrongs inflicted by the Helvetii upon the Roman people," refers to the defeat of Cassius, 12, 13. Since the phrase implies "the Helvetii wronged the Roman people," *Helvētiōrum* is a subjective genitive, *populī Rōmānī* an objective genitive: App. 98: G.-L. 363, 1, 2: A. 348, n.: B. 199; 200: H.-B. 344; 351: H. 440. 1. ?

5 nōn minus ex ūsū Galliae quam populī Rōmānī accidisse, propterea quod eō cōnsiliō flōrentissimis rēbus domōs suās Helvētīi reliquissent, utī tōtī Galliae bellum inferrent imperiōque potirentur locumque domiciliō ex magnā cōpiā deligerent, quem ex omnī Galliā opportūnissimum ac fructuōsis-  
 10 simum iūdicāssent, reliquāsque civitatēs stipendiāriās habērent. Petiērunt utī sibi concilium tōtius Galliae in diem certam indicere idque Caesaris voluntāte facere liceret: Sēsē habēre quāsdam rēs quās ex commūnī cōnsēnsū ab eō petere vellent. Eā rē permissā diem conciliō cōstituērunt et iūre iūrando

5. ūsus, -ūs, *m.* [ūtōr, use], use, experience, practice, skill; service, advantage; need, necessity; ūsus est, there is need; ūsuisse or ex ūsū esse, be of advantage or service; ūsū venire, come by necessity; happen. \*

6. flōrens, -entis, *adj.* [flōrēō, flower], flourishing, prosperous, influential. 2.

8. domiciliū, -ii, *n.* [domus, house], residence, dwelling, home, domicile. 3.

9. opportūnus, -a, -um, *adj.*, fit, opportune, lucky, suitable; favorable, advantageous. \*

fructuōsus, -a, -um, *adj.* [fructus, fruit], fruitful, productive. 1.

10. stipendiārius, -a, -um, *adj.* [stipendium, tribute], paying tribute,

tributary; *pl. as noun*, tributaries. 2.

12. indicō, -dicere, -dixi, -dictum, *tr.* [dicō, say], say publicly, proclaim, appoint, call. 1.

13. quidam, quaedam, quiddam and quidam, quaedam, quoddam; *indef. pron.* (App. 62 and b), a certain one, some one; a certain, some, a; a kind of. \*

commūnis, -e, *adj.*, common, general; rēs commūnis, the common interest. \*

cōnsēnsus, -ūs, *m.* [cōnsentiō, agree], united opinion, agreement, consent; coalition. 3.

14. permittō, -mittere, -misi, -misum, *tr.* [mittō, send], give up or over, surrender; entrust, commit; permit, allow. \*

11. petiērunt utī sibi liceret, "they requested permission."

concilium: The envoys mentioned in 1.1 did not constitute this council. They issued a call for representatives from each state. The blue color on the map facing p. 117 indicates the part of Gaul from which envoys probably came to the council.

12. Caesaris voluntāte: "with Caesar's consent." They did not wish Caesar to suspect that the council was for the purpose of making war on him. The request shows that they were impressed by Caesar's power, and may fairly be regarded as the first step in their submission to him.

6. flōrentissimis rēbus, "although they were in a very prosperous condition." The ablative absolute is here equivalent to an adversative clause.

suās: this is a direct reflexive, since it refers to *Helvētīi*, the subject of the clause in which it stands: App. 164: G.-L. 309, 1: A. 300, 1: B. 244, 1, I: H.-B. 262, 1: H. 504.

7. utī inferrent, potirentur, deligerent, habērent: substantive volitive (or purpose) clauses, in apposition with *eō cōnsiliō*.

8. domiciliō: dative of purpose.

10. iūdicāssent, "they should decide," lit. "they should have decided."

nē quis ēnūntiāret, nisi quibus commūnī cōnsiliō mandātum esset, inter sē sānxērunt.

31. Eō conciliō dimissō idem principēs cīvitātum quī ante fuerant ad Caesarem revertērunt petiēruntque uti sibi sēcrētō dē suā omniumque salūte cum eō agere liceret. (Eā rē impetrātā) sēsē omnēs flentēs Caesarī ad pedēs prōiēcērunt: Nōn minus sē id contendere et labōrāre, nē ea quae dixissent ēnūntiārentur, quam uti ea quae vellent impetrārent, propterea quod, sī ēnūntiātum esset, summum in cruciātum sē ventūrōs vidērent. Locūtus est prō hīs Diviciācus Haeduus: Galliae tōtius factiōnēs esse duās: hārum alterius principātum tenēre Haeduōs, alterius Arvernōs. Hī cum tantopere dē potentātū

16. *sanciō, sancire, sānxi, sānc-tum*, tr. [cf. sacer, sacred], makesacred, sanction; bind; *sānctus*, *pf. part. as adj.*, sacred, inviolable; established. 2.

5. *labōrō*, 1, *intr.* [labor, toll], toll, work hard; be anxious, troubled, or per-

plexed; labor, suffer, be hard pressed. 3.

7. *cruciātus*, -ūs, *m.* [cruciō, torture; crux, cross], torture, torment. \*

9. *factiō*, -ōnis, *f.* [faciō, make], party, faction. 1.

10. *Arvernus*, -i, *m.* (CDe), an Ar-

15. *nē ēnūntiāret* is the object of *sānxērunt*.

*nisi (iis)* quibus mandātum esset, "except to those to whom they should be directed" (to disclose it). *mandātum esset* is impersonal. The pluperfect subjunctive stands for a future perfect indicative by implied indirect discourse, for the agreement was in effect "we will tell no one except those whom we shall have agreed upon."

Chap. 31. They implore him to aid them against the German king Ariovistus.

1. *eō conciliō dimissō*: Caesar leaves it to be inferred from the fact that his permission was given (30, 14) that the council was held.

*Idem principēs*: when they had come to Caesar before (30, 2) they had had no authority to act for their states. Now the council had authorized them to ask for Caesar's help.

3. *dē . . . salūte*, "for their own safety and (that) of all."

*agere*, "to confer."

4. *Caesarī ad pedēs*, "at Caesar's

feet." But *Caesarī* does not depend on *pedēs*, nor is it a dative of possessor: App. 120: G.-L. 350, 1: A. 377: B. 183, 1, n.: H.-B. 368: H. 423, 4, n.

5. *nōn minus*, etc., "(saying) that they were no less urgent and anxious that . . . should not be reported, than that, etc."

*sē*: cf. note on *sēsē*, 30; 3.

*quae dixissent*, "which they should say."

7. *sī ēnūntiātum esset*, "if reports should get out." The verb is used impersonally. All the conditional clauses in this chapter employed the indicative in the direct form. *ēnūntiātum esset* stands for a future perfect and is a vivid future condition: App. 256: G.-L. 595: A. 516, a, c: B. 302, 1: H.-B. 579, a: H. 574, 1.

8. *Galliae*: Gallia Celtica is meant.

9. *factiōnēs*: see Int. 29.

10. *cum contenderent*, "when they had fought." We might expect the pluperfect, but the imperfect is used on the principle laid down for the imperfect indicative in App. 191, b: G.-L. 234: A. 471, b: B. 260, 4: H.-B. 485: H. 535, 1.

inter sē multōs annōs contenderent, factū esse utī ab Arvernīs Sēquanisque Germānī mercēde arcesserentur. Hōrum primō circiter milia xv Rhēnum trānsisse; posteaquam agrōs et cultum et cōpiās Gallōrum hominēs ferī ac barbarī adāmassent, trāductōs plūrēs; nunc esse in Galliā ad centum et vīginti milium numerum. Cum hīs Haeduōs eōrumque clientēs (semel atque iterum) armīs contendisse; magnam calamitātem pulsōs accēpisse, omnem nōbilitātem, omnem senātum, omnem equitātum amīsisse. Quibus proeliīs calamitātibusque frāctōs, quī et suā virtūte et populī Rōmānī hospitio atque amicitia plūrimum ante in Galliā potuissent, coāctōs esse Sēquanīs obsidēs dare, nōbilissimōs civitātis, et iūre iūrاندō civitātem obstringere sēsē neque obsidēs repetitūrōs neque auxilium ā

vernian; *pl.*, the Arverni (ār-vēr'nī), possibly the Arvernians. 3.

**tantopere**, *adv.* [tantus, so great + opus, work], so greatly, so earnestly. 1. **potētātus**, -ūs, *m.* [potēs, powerful], chief power, supremacy. 1.

**12. mercēs**, -ēdis, *f.*, pay, hire. 1. **arcessō**, -ere, -īvi, -itum, *tr.*, summon, send for invite. \*

**primō**, *adv.* [primus, first], at first, in the first place. \*

**13. posteaquam**, *adv.* [postea, afterwards + quam, than], after. 4.

**14. ferus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, wild, savage, fierce. \*

**barbarus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, foreign (to Greeks and Romans), uncivilized, bar-

barous; *pl. as noun*, savages, barbarians. \*

**adamō**, 1, *tr.* [amō, love], love strongly, covet. 1.

**15. nunc**, *adv.*, now, at present, at this time. 3.

**16. semel**, *adv.*, once, a single time; ut semel, as soon as. 2.

**17. iterum**, *adv.*, again, a second time; **semel atque iterum**, again and again. \*

**19. frangō**, frangere, frēgi, frāctum, *tr.*, break, wreck; crush, discourage. 2.

**20. hospitium**, -tī, *n.* [hospes, host or guest], the relation of host and guest; friendship, hospitality. 2.

**11. factum esse utī**, "it had come to pass that." The perfect infinitive, *factum esse*, stands for *factum est* of the direct form, as *contendere* (l. 5) stands for a present indicative, and as *ventūrōs* (l. 7) stands for a future indicative. For the uses of the infinitive tenses in indirect discourse, see App. 205. G.-L. 530; 531: A. 584: B. 270, 1, a, b, c: H.-B. 472, a: H. 617; 618; 619; 620.

**12. mercēde**: the Germans were at first simply hired soldiers. This was fourteen years before Caesar came to Gaul.

**14. adāmassent** = *adamāvissent*. It stands for the perfect indicative of the direct form.

**15. esse**, etc., "They were in Gaul to the number of, etc."

**17. pulsōs accēpisse**, "as they were beaten, they had suffered."

**18. omnem . . . amīsisse**: this was an exaggeration, for the nobles and the cavalry of the Haedui were prominent in some of the campaigns of the Gallic war.

**20. quī**, "although they."

populō Rōmānō implorātūrōs neque recūsātūrōs quōminus perpetuō sub illōrum diciōne atque imperiō essent. Ūnū sē esse ex omni cīvitatē Haeduōrum quī addūci nōn potuerit ut iūrāret aut liberōs suōs obsidēs daret. Ob eam rem sē ex cīvitatē profūgissee et Rōmam ad senātum vēnissee auxiliū postulātum, quōd sōlus neque iūre iūrāndō neque obsidibus tenērētur. Sed peius victōribus Sēquanīs quam Haeduis victis accidisse, proptereā quod Ariovistus, rēx Germānōrum, in eōrum finibus cōnsēdisset tertiamque partem agrī Sēquanī, quī esset optimus tōtius Galliae, occupāvisset et nunc dē alterā parte tertiā Sēquanōs dēcēdere iubēret, proptereā quod paucis

24. implorō, 1, tr. [in + plorō, call out], beseech, entreat, implore. 3.

recūsō, 1, tr. and intr., refuse, reject; object to, make objections, complain; with periculum, shrink from. \*

quōminus, conj. [quō, so that + minus, not], so that not, that not; from. 2.

25. perpetuō, adv. [perpetuus, continuous], continuously, constantly; forever. 1.

diciō, -ōnis, f., dominion, authority, rule, sway. 3.

27. iūrō, 1, tr. and intr. [iūs, right], take oath; swear. 1.

28. profugio, -fugere, -fūgi, -fug-

itum, intr. [fugio, flee], flee, flee from, run away, escape. 4.

Rōma, -ae, f., Rome. 1.

29. postulō, 1, tr., request, ask, demand; require, necessitate. \*

30. malus, -a, -um, adj., evil, bad, injurious; comp., peior, peius; n. as noun, a worse thing; sup., pessimus. 1.

victor, -ōris, m. [vincō, conquer], conqueror, victor; as adj., victorious. \*

31. Ariovistus, -i, m., Ariovistus, (A'ri-ō-vis' tūs), a king of the Germans. \*

rēx, rēgis, m., king. \*

34. dēcēdō, -cēdere, -cessi, -cessum, intr. [cēdō, go], go from or away, depart, withdraw, leave, forsake; die. 3.

24. quōminus essent: construction? App. 228, c: G.-L. 549: A. 558, b: B. 295, 3: H.-B. 502, 3, b: H. 568, 8.

25. ūnū sē esse, "that he was the only one." sē is Diviciacus. Cf. note on sēē, 30, 3.

26. quī potuerit: mode? App. 230: G.-L. 631, 1: A. 535, b: B. 283, 1, 3: H.-B. 521, 1, a, b: H. 591, 5. So far in this chapter all the subjunctives have been imperfects and pluperfects, in accordance with the rule for sequence of tenses; for the indirect discourse depends on an historical tense, *locutus est*, 1.8. But in *potuerit* we have an instance of *representatio*; i.e. the tense of the direct form is retained in the indirect: App. 270, a: G.-L. 654, n.: A. 585, b, n.: B. 318: H. 644, 1.

29. postulātum: the supine. His request for assistance was made three years before this time, and was unsuccessful. Cicero met him in Rome and speaks of him with admiration.

30. peius accidisse, "a worse fate had befallen."

32. tertiam partem: this was probably an exaggeration. The part taken by Ariovistus corresponds pretty well with upper Alsace, on the Rhine, and is colored red on the map facing p. 117.

33. alterā, "a second."

34. paucis mēnsibus ante, lit. "before by a few months" = "a few months before." mēnsibus is an ablative of degree of difference.

as mēnsibus ante Harūdum milia hominum xxiv ad eum vēnissent, quibus locus ac sēdēs parārentur. Futūrum esse paucis annis uti omnēs ex Galliae finibus pellerentur atque omnēs Germāni Rhēnum trānsirent; neque enim cōnfereudum esse Gallicum cum Germānōrum agrō, neque hanc cōnsuētūdinem victūs cum illā comparandam. Ariovistum autem, ut semel Gallōrum cōpiās proeliō vicerit, quod proelium factum sit ad Magetobrigam, superbē et crūdēliter imperāre, obsidēs nōbilissimi cuiusque liberōs pōscere et in eōs omnia exempla cruciātūsque ēdere, sī qua rēs nōn ad nūtum aut ad voluntātem eius facta sit. Hominem esse barbarum, irācundum, temerārium; nōn posse eius imperia diūtius sustinērī. Nisi quid in Caesare

35. Harūdēs, -um, *m.* (Ch), the Harudes (ha-ry/dēz), a German tribe. 3.

36. sēdēs, -is, *f.* [sedēō, sit], seat, chair; residence, abode, settlement. 4.

39. cōnsuētūdō, -inis, *f.* [cōnsuēscō, become accustomed], habit, custom, practice; mode of life. \*

victus, -ūs, *m.* [vivō, live], living, mode of life; provisions, food. 1.

40. comparō, 1, *tr.* [pār, equal], place in comparison, compare. 1.

41. Magetobriga, -ae, *f.* (Cf), Magetobriga (māj'ō-tōb'ri-ga), a Gallic town

where Ariovistus defeated the Gauls. 1.

42. superbē, *adv.*, proudly, haughtily. 1.

crūdēliter *adv.* [crūdēlis, cruel], cruelly. 1.

44. ēdō, -dere, -didi, -ditum, *tr.* [dō, give], give out; inflict. 1.

nūtus, -ūs, *m.* [nuō, nod], nod; sign, command; ad nūtum at one's nod or command. 2.

45. irācundus, -a, -um, *adj.* [ira, anger], irritable. 1.

temerārius, -a, -um, *adj.* [temerē, rashly], rash, imprudent, reckless. 1.

36. futūrum esse uti omnēs pellerentur, lit. "it would be that all would be expelled" = "all would be expelled." The direct form was *omnēs pellantur*. As the future indicative must be rendered by the future infinitive, one might expect *puleum iri*; but this form of the future passive infinitive is very rare and the periphrasis found in the text is the usual method of expressing the future passive infinitive: App. 205, b: G.-L. 531: A. 569, 3, a: B. 270, 3, a: H.-B. 472, c: H. 619, 2.

37. omnēs [ex]: i.e. all the Gauls.

38. Gallicum: sc. *agrum*.

39. hanc = *Gallicam*.

victus: note the quantity of *i*, and compare *victus*, the perfect participle of

*vincō*.

41. vicerit: from this point on to the end of the chapter *repraesentatio* is employed. See note on *potuerit*, 1. 26.

proelium: this final and decisive battle was fought two years before Caesar came to Gaul. It is probable that the Sequani had joined forces with the Haedui in an effort to expel Ariovistus.

43. cuiusque: the singular forms of *quisque*, "each," with superlatives have the force of "every" or "all."

exempla, "punishments."

44. si facta sit: this condition stands for an original *si facta est*. See note on 1. 7, and App. 253: G.-L. 595: A. 515-518, b: B. 302, 1, 3: H.-B. 579: H. 574, 1.

46. quid auxilii, "some help."

populōque Rōmānō sit auxili, omnibus Gallīs idem esse faciendum quod Helvētīi fēcerint, ut domō ēmigrant, aliud domicilium, aliās sēdēs, remōtās ā Germānīs, petant fortūnamque, quaecumque accidat, experiantur. Haec sī ēnūntiāta Ariovistō sint, nōn dubitāre quā dē omnibus obsidibus quī apud eum sint gravissimum supplicium sūmat. Caesarem vel auctoritāte suā atque exercitūs vel recentī victoriā vel nōmine populi Rōmānī dēterrere posse nē maior multitudō Germānōrum Rhēnum trādūcātur, Galliamque omnem ab Ariovistī iniuriā posse dēfendere.

**32.** Hāc orātiōne ab Diviciācō habitā, omnēs quī aderant magnō flētū auxilium ā Caesare petere coepērunt. Animadvertit Caesar ūnōs ex omnibus Sēquanōs nihil eārum rērum facere quās cēteri facerent, sed tristēs capite dēmissō terram intrērī. Eius rei quae causa esset mirātus ex ipsis quaeiit. Nihil Sēquanī respondere, sed in eādē tristitiā tacitī pērmānere.

**48.** *ēmigrō*, 1, *intr.* [*migrō*, migrate], depart, migrate. 1.

**50.** *quicumque*, *quaecumque*, *quodcumque*, *indef.* (or *generalizing*) *rel. pron.*, whoever; whatever; whosoever; whatsoever, any . . . whatever; everyone who; everything that. \*

*experior*, *-periri*, *-pertus sum*, *tr.*, prove, try, test, experience. \*

**2.** *flētus*, *-ūs*, *m.* [*flēō*, weep], weeping, lamentation. 1.

**4.** *cēteri*, *-ae*, *-a*, *adj.* the rest of, the remainder; *as noun*, the rest, remaining, others. 4.

*tristis*, *-e*, *adj.*, sad, dejected. 1.

*dēmittō*, *-mittere*, *-misi*, *-missum*, *tr.* [*mittō*, send], send, thrust, or let down; sink; bow; *sē dēmittere*, come or get down, descend; *sē animō dēmittere*, lose courage; *dēmissus*, *pf. part. as adj.*, low. 1.

*terra*, *-ae*, *f.*, earth, land, soil, ground; region, district; *terrae* (*pl.*) and *orbis terrārum*, the world. 3.

*intueor*, 2, *tr.* [*tueor*, look], look at. 1.

**5.** *miror*, 1, *tr.* and *intr.*, wonder or marvel at; wonder, be astonished. 1.

**6.** *tristitia*, *-ae*, *f.*, sadness. 1.  
*permaneo*, *-manere*, *-mansi*, *-mān-*

**47.** *Gallis*: case? App. 118: G.-L. 355: A. 374: B. 189, 1: H.-B. 373, 1: H. 431.

**48.** *ut domō ēmigrant*, etc., "(namely) leave home, etc.," explains *idem*.

**51.** *nōn* (*ēō*) *dubitāre quā sūmat*, "he did not doubt that Ariovistus would inflict." *sūmat*: mode? App. 229, d: G.-L. 556, 2: A. 558, a: B. 298: H.-B. 521, 3, b: H. 595, 1.

**54.** *dēterrere nē trādūcātur*: for construction see note on *esset*, 1. 24.

Chap. 32. The desperate condition of the Sequani.

**2.** *magnō flētū*: Caesar often mentions the demonstrative manners of the Gauls.

*auxilium petere*: the Gauls failed to see that they were simply changing masters in appealing to Caesar against Ariovistus.

**5.** *quae causa esset*: an indirect question depending on *mirātus*.

Cum ab his saepius quaereret neque ullam omnino vocem exprimere posset, idem Diviciacus Haeduus respondit: Hoc esse miseriorem et graviorem fortunam Sequanorum quam  
 10 reliquorum, quod soli ne in occulto quidem queri neque auxilium implorare auderent absentisque Ariovisti crudelitatem, velut si coram adesset, horrerent, propterea quod reliquis tamen fugae facultas daretur, Sequanis vero, qui intra fines suos Ariovistum recepissent, quorum oppida omnia in potestate  
 15 eius essent, omnes cruciatus essent perferendi.<sup>3</sup>

**33.** His rebus cognitis Caesar Gallorum animos verbis confirmavit pollicitusque est sibi eam rem curae futuram: Magnam se habere spem et beneficio suo et auctoritate adductum

**sum, intr.** [maneo, remain], stay through or to the end, stay, remain; continue, persist. 3.

**7. vox, vocis, f.,** voice, tone; outcry, cry; word; *pl.*, words, language; *variously translated according to context, as entreaties, complaints, tales, etc.* \*

**8. exprimo, -primere, -pressi, -pressum, tr.** [premo, press], press out, extort, elicit; raise. 1.

**9. miser, -era, -erum, adj.,** wretched, miserable, pitiable, unfortunate; poor, worthless. 2.

**10. occultus, -a, -um, adj.,** covered, hidden, concealed, secret; *n. as noun*, a hidden place, an ambush. 2.

**6. respondere, permanere:** historical infinitives.

**7. quaereret:** a pluperfect would seem more natural.

**8. hoc:** ablative of cause.

**11. absentis:** "even when absent."

**velut si adesset:** mode and tense? App. 261: G.-L. 602: A. 524: B. 307, 1, 2: H.-B. 504, 3, a: H. 584, 2.

**12. tamen:** "at any rate"; i.e. though they could not resist Ariovistus.

**13. Sequanis:** for case, cf. note on Gallis, 31, 47.

**Chap. 33.** Caesar decides to under-

**11. absens, -entis, adj.** [*pres. part. of absum*, be absent], absent, at a distance. 2.

**crudelitas, -tatis, f.** [crudelis, cruel], cruelty, harshness. 1.

**velut, adv.,** as, just as. 1.

**12. coram, adv.,** face to face, in person. 1.

**horreo, -ere, -ui, —, tr.,** shudder at, dread. 1.

**13. vero, adv.** [verus, true], in truth, truly, really, indeed; but, however, on the other hand. \*

**intra, prep. with acc.** [inter, between], within, inside; into. 4.

**2. cura, -ae, f.,** care, attention. 2.

take their defense. His reasons for doing so.

**2. sibi . . . futuram,** "that the matter should receive his attention." For the two datives, see App. 119: G.-L. 356, 3: A. 382, 1: B. 191, 2, a: H.-B. 360, b: H. 433, 2. *purpose*

**3. beneficio suo:** in Caesar's consulship, only the year before, the senate had conferred upon Ariovistus the titles "rex" and "amicus." This had been done to keep Ariovistus from interfering with Roman interests in Gaul until Caesar should be ready to take charge of his province.

Digitized by Google

ā prōvinciā nostrū Rhodanus dīvideret; quibus rēbus quam mātūrrimē occurrēdum putābat. Ipse autem Ariovistus  
 30 tantōs sibi spīritūs, tantam arrogantiam sūmpserat ut ferendus nōn vidērētur.

34. Quam ob rem placuit eī ut ad Ariovistum lēgātōs mitteret quī ab eō postulārent utī aliquem locum medium utriusque colloquiō dēligeret: Velle sēsē dē rē publicā et summīs utriusque rēbus cum eō agere. Eī lēgātīōnī Ariovistus  
 5 respondit: Sī quid ipsī ā Caesare opus esset, sēsē ad eum

19. mātūrō, *adv.* [mātūrus, ripe], early, speedily, soon. 3.

occurrō, -currere, -curri, -cursum, *intr.* [ob+currō, run], run in the way of, meet; happen upon; go to, come to; oppose, counteract; occur. \*

20. spīritus, -ūs, *m.* [spīrō, breathe], breath, air; *in pl.*, haughtiness, pride. 2.

arrogantia, -ae, *f.* [arrogāns, arrogant], arrogance, haughtiness, presumption, insolence. 2.

1. placeō, 2. *intr.* [cf. plācō, appease], please, satisfy; often *impers.*,

seem good to one, hence, decide, resolve, determine. 2.

3. uterque, utraque, utrumque *adj.* [uter, which of two], each of two, either of two; both. \*

colloquium, -quī, *n.* [colloquer, talk together], talking together; conference, parley, interview. \*

5. opus, *indecl. noun, n.* [cf. opus, work, deed], need, necessity; opus est, it is necessary, there is need, the thing needed being expressed either by the *nom.* or *abl.* (App. 146.) \*

18. Rhodanus dīvideret, "only the Rhone separates." Caesar's statement of the reasons for espousing the cause of the Gauls is candid and convincing. No doubt the enterprise fell in with his bold and ambitious spirit; but it appealed also to the statesman and lover of his country. Gaul must certainly yield to the barbarism of the German or the civilization of the Roman. No half-way ground was possible.

quibus rēbus occurrēdum, "that he must face this danger." Since *occurrō* is an intransitive verb it cannot be used in the passive except impersonally: App. 115, *d.*: G.-L. 346, R. 1: A. 372: B. 187, II, *b.*: H.-B. 364, 2: H. 426, 3.

Chap. 34. Ariovistus haughtily rejects Caesar's proposal to confer with him.

1. ad Ariovistum: he was somewhere in the country he had taken from the Sequani. Cf. note on 31, 32.

3. colloquiō: dative of purpose.

velle sēsē agere, "(saying) that he wished to confer." Caesar was anxious to secure his end without a war and probably thought that the diplomatic relations which had been maintained with Ariovistus could be kept up (cf. note on 33, 3).

4. summīs . . . rēbus, "matters of the greatest importance to both."

5. sī esset, sēsē ventūrum fuisse: the direct form was *sī esset, venissem*, "if I wanted anything, I should have gone," a contrary to fact condition: App. 254: G.-L. 597, R. 1: A. 517, *a.*: B. 304, 1, 2: H.-B. 581: H. 579, 1. When such a condition is turned into indirect discourse, the conclusion always takes the infinitive form *-ūrus fuisse*, although some of the grammars make the mistake of saying that the imperfect subjunctive becomes *-ūrus esse*: App. 272, II: G.-L. 597, R. 4: A.

ventūrum fuisse; sī quid ille sē velit, illum ad sē venire oportere. Praetereā sē neque sine exercitū in eās partēs Galliae venire audere quās Caesar possideret, neque exercitum sine magnō commeātū atque mōlimentō in ūnum locum contrahere posse. Sibi autem mirum vidēri quid in suā Galliā, 10 quam bellō vicisset, aut Caesari aut omnīnō populō Rōmānō negōtī esset. *dat. poss.*

35. His respōnsīs ad Caesarem relātīs iterum ad eum Caesar lēgātōs cum his mandātīs mittit: Quoniam tantō suō populique Rōmānī beneficiō affectus, cum in cōsulātū suō rēx atque amīcus ā senātū appellātus esset, hanc sibi populōque

7. praetereā, *adv.* [praeter, beyond], beyond this, besides, furthermore. \*

8. possideō, -sidere, -sēdī, -sesum, *tr.* [sedeō, sit], occupy, hold, possess. 2.

9. commeātus, -ūs, *m.* [commeō, go back and forth], trip, voyage; supplies, provisions. \*

mōlimentum, -ī, *n.* [mōlior, exert one's self], effort, difficulty. 1.

contrahō, -trahere, -trāxī, -tractum, *tr.* [trahō, draw], draw or bring together, assemble, collect; draw into smaller compass, contract. 1.

10. mirus, -a, -um, *adj.* [mīror,

wonder at], strange, astonishing; mirum in modum, surprisingly. 2.

12. negōtium, -tī, *n.* [neg-+ōtium, leisure], concern, business, undertaking; trouble, difficulty, labor; negōtium dare, employ, direct; quid negōtī, what business; nihil negōtī, no difficulty. \*

2. mandātum, -ī, *n.* [mandō, command], charge, injunction, order, command; message. \*

quoniam, *conj.* [quom=cum, since +iam, now], since now, since, inasmuch as, because, whereas. 4.

3. cōsulātus, -ūs, *m.* [cōsul, consul], consulship. 1.

589, b, 1, 2: B. 321, A. 2: H.-B. 581, b, 1: H. 647.

ipsi: case? App. 117: G.-L. 349: A. 373: B. 190: H.-B. 374: H. 430. The indirect reflexive, *sibi*, would be more usual, but *ipsi* is more emphatic.

6. si . . . velit, "if Caesar wanted anything of him," lit. "if Caesar wanted him (for) anything." Volō sometimes, as here, governs two accusatives, like verbs of asking or demanding: App. 125, b: G.-L. 341, n. 2: A. 390, d: H.-B. 397, 1: H. 412. si velit stands for an original sī vult: App. 253: G.-L. 595: A. 515: B. 302, 1: H.-B. 579: H. 574, 1.

8. quās . . . possideret: i.e. the land of the Haedui and the Lingones,

which Ariovistus assumes that Caesar has conquered.

10. mirum: predicate adjective with vidēri; "it seemed strange."

quid Caesari negōtī esset, lit. "what of business there was to Caesar" = "what business Caesar had"; an indirect question, subject of vidēri. Caesari is a dative of possessor.

omnīnō, "in general."

Chap. 35. Caesar demands that Ariovistus cease his oppression of the Gauls.

3. beneficiō affectus: cf. note on 33, 3. The German was shrewd enough to estimate the beneficiū at its true value.

4. quoniam (1. 2) hanc grātiā re-

5 Rōmānō grātiā referret, ut in colloquium venīre invitātus gravārētur neque dē commūnī rē dicendum sibi et cognōscendum  
 ✓ putāret, haec esse quae ab eō postulāret. <sup>†</sup> primum, nē quam  
 multitudinē hominū amplius trāns Rhēnum in Galliā  
 trādūceret; deinde, obsidēs quōs habēret ab Haeduīs redderet  
 10 Sēquanisque permitteret ut quōs ipsī habērent (voluntātē eius)  
 reddere illīs licērēt; nēve Haeduōs iniuriā lacesseret, nēve  
 hīs sociisq̄ eōrum bellum inferret. Sī ita fēcisset, sibi popu-  
 lōque Rōmānō perpetuā grātiā atq̄ amicitiam cum eō  
 futūrā; sī nōn impetrāret, sēsē, quoniam M. Messālā M.

5. invitō, 1, *tr.*, invite, summon; allure, persuade. 2.

6. gravor, 1, *intr.* [gravis, heavy], be unwilling. 1.

8. ampli, *adv.* [amplus, large], largely; *comp.*, amplius, more, farther. \*

9. reddō, -dere, -didī, -ditum, *tr.*

[red-+dō, give], give back, return, restore; give *something due*; make or cause to be, render. \*

13. perpetuus, -a, -um, *adj.*, continuous, uninterrupted; permanent, lasting, continual; whole, entire; *n. as noun in phrase in perpetuum*, forever. 3.

ferret, ut, "since he made this requital, that." The direct form given after Book VII represents Caesar's words to his envoys, in which Ariovistus was spoken of in the third person. It would also be possible to give the form in which the message was to be repeated to Ariovistus, in which he would be addressed in the second person. In the latter case *referret* stands for *refers*, "you make."

6. neque dicendum . . . putāret, "and did not think it necessary to discuss and learn." sibi: case? App. 118: G.-L. 355: A. 374: B. 189, 1: H.-B. 373, 1: H. 431.

7. haec esse quae, "these were (the things) which."

nē trādūceret: as addressed to the envoys the direct form was *nē trādūcat*, "that he shall not bring," a substantive volitive clause, in apposition with *haec*. As addressed to Ariovistus it would be *nōlī trādūcere*, "do not bring,"

a prohibition: App. 219: G.-L. 271, 2: A. 450: B. 276, c: H.-B. 501, 3, a, 2: H. 561, 1.

10. Sēquanisque . . . licērēt, "and grant permission to the Sequani to return with his [Ariovistus's] approval those [hostages] whom they [the Sequani] had [from the Haeduī]," lit. "permit that it be allowed." illis = *Sēquanis*.

12. fēcisset stands for a future perfect indicative: App. 256: G.-L. 595: A. 516, a, c: B. 302, 1: H.-B. 579, a: H. 574, 1.

sibi: i.e. Caesar; a dative of possessor.

14. sī nōn impetrāret, "if he [Caesar] should not obtain (such assurances)."

sēsē: the direct form would be *ego*, if expressed at all. It is the subject of *neglētūrum*, l. 18; but, because the sentence is so long, the subject is repeated in *sē*, l. 17.

M. Messālā . . . cōsulibus: in 61 B. C. Cf. note on 2, 2.

Pisōne cōsulibus senātus cēnsuisset utī quicumque Galliam 15  
prōvinciam obtinēret, quod commodō rei pūblicae facere posset,  
Haeduōs cēterōsque amīcōs populi Rōmānī dēfenderet, (sē)  
Haeduōrum iniūriās nōn neglētūrum.

36. Ad haec Ariovistus respondit: Iūs esse bellī ut quī  
vicissent iīs quōs vicissent quem ad modum vellent imperārent;  
item populum Rōmānum victīs nōn ad alterius praescriptum,  
sed ad suum arbitrium imperāre cōsuēsse. Sī ipse populō  
Rōmānō nōn praescriberet quem ad modum suō iūre ūterētur, 5  
nōn oportēre sē ā populō Rōmānō in suō iūre impediri.)  
Haeduōs sibi, quoniam bellī fortūnam temptāssent et armīs  
congressī ac superātī essent, stipendiāriōs esse factōs. Magnam

15. cēnsēō, cēnsēre, cēnsul, cēn-  
sum, *tr.*, think, decide (*acc. and inf.*);  
propose, advise, vote (*ut and subj.*);  
propose, vote for (*acc.*). 1.

16. commodum, -ī, *n.* [commodus,  
convenient], convenience, interest, ad-  
vantage. 2.

18. neglēō, -legere, -lēxi, -lēc-  
tum, *tr.* [neg-+lēō, choose, regard],  
not heed, disregard, neglect. \*

3. praescriptum, -ī, *n.* [praescri-  
bō, order], order, dictation, command. 1.

4. arbitrium, -ri, *n.* [arbitr, um-  
pire], decision or judgment (*of the ar-  
biter*); opinion, discretion, pleasure.  
1.

5. praescribō, -scribere, -scripsi,  
-scriptum, *tr.* [scribō, write], write  
beforehand; order, direct, prescribe, dic-  
tate to. 3.

8. congredior, -gredi, -gressus  
sum, *intr.* [gradior, step], meet, en-  
counter, meet in battle; join (*peace-  
fully*). \*

15. senātus cēnsuisset: this decree  
of the senate was the only result of the  
entreaties of Diviciacus (cf. 31, 28), and  
no governor had paid any attention to  
it, as Ariovistus very well knew.

16. quod . . . posset, "so far as he  
could do it in accordance with the inter-  
ests of the state"; a common formula  
in decrees of the senate.

18. neglētūrum: tense? App. 205:  
G.-L. 530: 531: A. 584: B. 270, 1, a, b, c:  
H.-B. 472, a: H. 617; 618; 619; 620.

Chap. 36. Ariovistus responds de-  
fiantly.

1. ut imperārent: a substantive  
volitive clause, in apposition with iūs.

vicissent, vicissent, vellent might  
all have been indicative in the direct

form, but would probably be attracted  
into the subjunctive.

iīs: indirect object of imperārent.

3. ad alterius praescriptum, "in  
accordance with the dictates of anyone  
else."

4. ipse: direct form, ego. The re-  
flexive cannot be used to replace a pro-  
noun of the first person (cf. note on  
sēē, 30, 3) when a nominative is re-  
quired, because it has no nominative.  
Usually no pronoun is used; but if there  
is emphasis, as here, ipse is used.

5. quem . . . ūterētur, "how they  
should exercise their rights."

6. nōn oportēre sē impediri, "he  
[Ariovistus] ought not to be hampered."

7. sibi: dative with the adjective  
stipendiāriōs.

Caesarem iniūriam facere, quī suō adventū vectigālīa sibi  
 10 dēteriōra faceret. Haeduis sē obsidēs redditūrum nōn esse,  
 neque hīs neque eōrum sociis iniūriā bellum illātūrum, si  
 in eō manērent quod convēnisset stipendiumque quotannis  
 penderent; sī id nōn fēcissent, longē iīs frāternum nōmen  
 populī Rōmānī āfutūrum. Quod sibi Caesar dēnūntiāret sē  
 15 Haeduōrum iniūriās nōn neglētūrum, nēminem sēcum sine  
 suā pernitiē contendisse. Cum vellet, congregērētur: intel-  
 lētūrum quid invictī Germānī, exercitātissimī in armīs, quī  
 inter annōs XIV tētum nōn subissent, virtūte possent.

37. Haec eōdem tempore Caesarī mandāta referēbantur,

10 dēterior, -ius, *comp. adj.* (App. 43), worse, less. 1.

12. maneō, manēre, mānsī, mān-  
 sum, *intr.*, remain, continue, abide,  
 stay. 2.

stipendium, -di, *n.*, tax, tribute. \*  
 quotannis, *adv.* [quot, as many as +  
 annus, year], every year, yearly. 2.

13. pendō, pendere, pependi, pēn-  
 sum, *tr.*, weigh, weigh out; weigh out  
 money, pay, pay out; *with poenās*,  
 suffer. 2.

14. dēnūntiō, 1, *tr.* [nūntiō, an-  
 nounce], announce, give or send notice,  
 declare, threaten. 1.

17. quid, *interrog. adv.*, why? *with*  
*posse*, how? e.g. quid Germānī pos-  
 sent, how strong the Germans were. \*  
 invictus, -a, -um, *adj.* [in-+victus,  
 conquered], unconquerable, invin-  
 cible. 1.

exercitātus, -a, -um, *adj.* [*pf. part.*  
*of exercitō*, train or practice well], well  
 trained, skilled, versed. 2.

9. quī faceret may be translated by  
 a causal clause, "since he, etc.," but the  
 indicative was probably used in the  
 direct form. Apparently the presence  
 of Caesar had given hope to the Haedui  
 and had made them less careful in pay-  
 ing their tribute to Ariovistus.

neque . . . neque, "but . . . not . . .  
 or."

11. illātūrum, sī manērent: a vivid  
 future condition.

12. in . . . convēnisset, lit. "should  
 remain in that which had been agreed  
 upon" = "adhered to the terms which  
 had been agreed upon."

13. fēcissent stands for a future  
 perfect indicative.

longē . . . āfutūrum, "the name of  
 brothers of the Roman people would be  
 of little value to them."

14. quod, "as to the fact that":

App. 248, a: G.-L. 525, 2: A. 572, a: B. 299,  
 2: H.-B. 552, 2: H. 588, 3, n.

15. sēcum, suā: sēcum is the indirect  
 reflexive, referring to Ariovistus, suā  
 is the direct reflexive, referring to nēmi-  
 nem. Cf. notes on 30, 3 and 6.

16. cum vellet, congregērētur, "let  
 him come on when he liked."

18. inter, "during."

Chap. 37-41. Caesar marches into  
 the country of Ariovistus, checking a  
 panic on the way.

Chap. 37. Because of this reply and  
 further complaints of the Gauls, Cae-  
 sar marches toward Ariovistus.

1. eōdem tempore: the reply of  
 Ariovistus and the complaints of the  
 Gauls reached Caesar at the same time.  
 It was now about the beginning of  
 August.

et lēgātī ab Haeduīs et ā Trēverīs veniēbant: Haeduī questum quod Harūdēs, quī nūper in Galliam trānsportātī essent, finēs eōrum populārentur: Sēsē nē obsidibus quidem datīs pācem Ariovistī redimere potuisse; Trēverī autem, pāgōs centum Suebōrum ad ripās Rhēnī cōnsēdisse, quī Rhēnum trānsire cōnārentur; hīs praeesse Nasuam et Cimberium frātrēs. Quibus rēbus Caesar vehementer commōtus mātūrandū sibi existimāvit, nē, sī nova manus Suebōrum cum veteribus cōpiīs - Ariovistī sēsē coniūnxisset, minus facile resistī posset. Itaque 10 rē frūmentāriā quam celerrimē potuit comparātā magnīs itineribus ad Ariovistum contendit.

**38.** Cum tridui viam processisset, nuntiātum est ei Ario-

**2. Trēvir, -eri, m.,** one of the Treveri; *pl.* Trēverī (Bfgh), the Treveri (trēv'ē-rī). \*

**3. trānsportō, 1, tr. [portō, carry],** carry across or over, bring over, convey, transport. \*

**6. Suebus, -a, -um, adj. of or pertaining** to the Suebi, Sueban; *pl. as noun*, Suebī, (Bhi), the Suebi (swē'bi), a powerful people of central Germany, consisting of several independent tribes, the modern Swabians. \*

**7. Nasua, -ae, m.** Nasua (nāsh'ū-ā),

a leader of the Suebi. 1.

**Cimberius, -ri, m.,** Cimberius (sim-bē'ri-ūs), a leader of the Suebi. 1.

**8. vehementer, adv. [vehemens, violent],** violently, severely, strongly, very much, greatly. 4.

**10. coniungō, -iungere, -iūnxī, -iūnctum, tr. [iungō, join],** join with or together, connect, unite, bind. \*

**1. prōcēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessum, intr. [cēdō, go],** go forth or forward, proceed, advance. \*

**2. questum:** the supine.

**3. Harūdēs:** cf. 31, 35.

**4. eōrum:** the indirect reflexive, *suōs*, would have been more correct, since the Haeduī said "our."

**obsidibus datīs,** "by giving hostages."

**5. Trēverī:** sc. *veniēbant questum*, followed by indirect discourse.

**6. trānsire:** somewhere north of where Ariovistus was, probably near modern Mayence. The Treveri were a strong people, and it is probable that Ariovistus was marching north to help the Suebi cross when he was interrupted by the news of Caesar's approach.

**9. si coniūnxisset:** implied indirect discourse for the future perfect indicative.

**10. minus . . . posset, lit.** "it could be less easily resisted (to them)."

**11. magnīs itineribus:** cf. Int. 54. Caesar intended to strike Ariovistus before he could effect a junction with the Suebi. He started from the country of the Lingones, where he had received the surrender of the Helvetii and where his army had been encamped near Tonnerre pending the result of his negotiations with Ariovistus. See map facing page 117.

**Chap. 38.** Caesar occupies Vesontio.

**1. tridui:** descriptive genitive. The descriptive genitive must ordinarily be modified by an adjective; but *tridui* = *trium dierum*.

**viam:** case? App. 128: G.-L. 333, 2: A, 390: B. 176, 4: H.-B. 396, 1: H. 409.

The three days' march was east from Tonnerre (see map facing p. 117), and

vistum cum suis omnibus cōpiis ad occupandum Vesontiōnem, (quod est oppidum maximum Sēquanōrum) contendere, triduique viam ā suis finibus prōcessisse. Id ne accideret magnopere sibi praecavendum Caesar existimābat. Namque omnium rerum (quae ad bellum ūsuī erant) summa erat in eō oppidō facultās, idque nātūrā locī sic mūniēbātur ut magnam ad dūcendum bellum daret facultātem, propterea quod flūmen Dūbis, ut circinō circumductum, paene tōtū oppidum cingit; reliquum spatium, quod est nōn amplius pedum sescentōrum, quā flūmen intermittit, mōns continet magnā altitūdine, ita ut rādīcēs eius montis (ex utrāque partē) ripae flūminis contin-

2. **Vesontiō, -ōnis, m.** (Cf) Vesontio (vē-sōn'shyō), the chief town of the Sequani, situated on the Doubs, modern Besançon. 2.

5. **praecaveō, -cavēre, -cāvī, -cautum, intr.** [caveō, guard against], guard against before hand, take precautions. 1.

**namque, conj.** [nam, for], for. 3.

7. **sic, adv.** so, thus, in this manner; sic . . . ut, so . . . that; so . . . as. \*

9. **Dūbis, -is, m.** (Cf g), the (river) Dubis (dū'bis), now the Doubs. 1.

**circinus, -i, m.** [circus, circle], a pair

of compasses. 1.

**circumducō, -ducere, -dūxī, -ductum, tr.** [ducō, lead], lead or draw around. 2.

**cingō, cingere, cinxī, cinctum, tr.** encircle, surround, invest, encompass; man (a wall). 1.

10. **sescentī, -ae, -a, (DC)** *num. adj.* [sex, six], six hundred. \*

12. **rādix, -icis, f., root; in pl. with montis or collis,** foot, base. ..

**contingō, -tingere, -tigi, -tāctum, tr. and intr.** [tangō, touch], touch, reach; extend to; befall, happen to. 2.

brought Caesar to the point where his route turns to the southeast.

**nūtiātum est:** this report that Ariovistus was marching toward Vesontio proved false. Probably it grew out of the fact that Ariovistus had got his army together for the purpose of marching north to help the Suebi. Cf. note on 37, 6.

3. **quod** agrees in gender with *oppidum*, although its antecedent is masculine. A subject pronoun often agrees in gender with a predicate noun.

4. **id:** i.e. the capture of Vesontio.

6. **summa facultās,** "a very great supply."

9. **ut, "as if."**

**paene cingit:** i.e. the river makes a loop, the two sides of which (according

to Caesar) are at one point only 600 feet apart. The neck of land at this point is very high. The town lies within the loop. A wall encloses both the town and the high neck of land.

10. **spatium:** object of *continet*.

**nōn . . . sescentōrum,** "of not more than six hundred feet." **pedum** is a descriptive genitive: why is not the ablative used after the comparative? App. 139, b: G.-L. 296, R. 4: A. 407, c: B. 217, 3: H.-B. 416, d: H. 471, 4.

11. **quā flūmen intermittit,** "where the river does not flow."

**magnā altitūdine:** descriptive ablative.

12. **rādīcēs** is the object of *contingant*, **ripae** its subject.

delay, hinder  
 & help ...  
 & kindness of eye  
 & not men  
 & minds & hearts

gant. Hunc mûrus circumdatus arcem efficit et cum oppidô coniungit. Hûc Caesar magnis nocturnis diurnisque itineribus contendit occupâtôque oppidô ibi praesidium collocat. 15

39. Dum paucôs diês ad Vesontionem rei frumentariae commeâtûsque causâ morâtur, ex percontâtione nostrorum vöcibusque Gallorum ac mercâtörum, quî ingenti magnitüdine corporum Germânôs, incredibili virtûte atque exercitâtione in armis esse praedicâbant (saepe numerô sêsê cum his congressôs nê vultum quidem atque aciêm oculörum dicêbant ferre potuisse); tantus subitô timor omnem exercitum occupâvit ut nôn mediocriter omnium mentês animôsque perturbâret. Hic

13. circumdô, -dare, -dedi, -datum, *tr.* [dô, put], put around, encompass, surround. 3.

arx, arcis, *f.*, citadel, fortress, stronghold. 1.

efficiô, -ficere, -feci, -fectum, *tr.* [ex + faciô, make], make or do completely, complete, accomplish, construct; make, cause, bring about, render. \*

14. hûc, *adv.* [old form for hûc from hic], to this place, hither, here; against these, to these. \*

nocturnus, -a, -um, *adj.* [nox, night], at night, nocturnal, nightly. 1.

diurnus, -a, -um, *adj.* [diês, day], of the day, by day, daily. 1.

2. percontâtio, -onis, *f.*, inquiring, inquiry. 1.

3. ingéns, -entis, *adj.*, enormous, huge, vast, large. 2.

magnitüdô, -inis, *f.* [magnus, great], greatness, great size, extent; stature (corporum); violence (venti); severity (poenae); m. magnitüdô animi, courage. \*

4. exercitâtio, -onis, *f.* [exercitô, *freq.* of exerceô, exercise], exercise, training; practice, experience. \*

5. praedicô, 1, *tr.* [dicô, proclaim], proclaim publicly or before others; declare, report, tell of. 3.

6. vultus, -ûs, *m.*, countenance, looks. 2.

7. subitô, *adv.* [subitus, sudden], suddenly, unexpectedly, of a sudden. \*

8. mediocriter, *adv.* [mediocris,

13. hunc (montem) is the object of *efficit*, *arcem* is a predicate accusative: App. 126: G.-L. 340: A. 393: B. 177, 1: H.-B. 392, a: H. 410, 1.

14. hûc contendit: he turned from his eastward march to the southeast.

nocturnis: Caesar very rarely marched at night, but if the report about Ariovistus had been true, Ariovistus would have been much nearer Vesontio than Caesar was, and only the most extraordinary effort could have enabled Caesar to arrive first.

Chap. 39. Fear of the Germans causes a panic in the Roman army.

1. dum morâtur: mode and tense?

App. 234, a: G.-L. 570: A. 556: B. 293, I: H.-B. 559: H. 533, 4. The principal clause of this sentence begins with *tantus*, 1. 7.

rei . . . causâ: Caesar was always careful about his supplies. In this case he had no doubt arranged for supplies along his intended line of march, but he had suddenly changed the direction of his march, and therefore failed to meet his convoys. Consequently he now had to make new arrangements.

3. vöcibus, "replies."  
 magnitüdine, virtûte, exercitâtione: descriptive ablatives.

7. *gradual*  
15  
20  
primum ortus est ā tribūnīs militum, praefectīs, reliquīsque quī ex urbe amicitiae causā Caesarem secūtī nōn magnum in rē militārī ūsūm habēbant; quōrum alius aliā causā illātā, quam sibi ad proficiscendum necessariam esse diceret, petēbat ut eius voluntāte discēdere liceret; nōn nūllī pudōre adducti, ut timōris suspiciōnem vitārent, remanēbant. Hī neque vultum fingere neque interdum lacrimās tenēre poterant; additī in tabernāculis aut suum fātum querēbantur aut cum familiāribus suis commūne periculum miserābantur. Vulgō tōtis castris testāmenta obsignābantur. Hōrum vōcibus ac timōre paulatim etiam ii quī magnum in castris ūsum habēbant, militēs centuriōnēsque quique equitatūi praeerant, perturbābantur. Qui

moderate, moderately: nōn mediocriter, in no small degree. 1.

mēns, mentis, *f.*, the thinking faculty, mind, intellect; thought; disposition, feelings; mentēs animōsque, minds and hearts; aliēnātā mente, bereft of reason. 4.

perturbō, 1, *tr.* [turbō, disturb], disturb greatly, throw into confusion, embarrass, disturb; alarm, terrify. \*

9. tribūnus, -ī, *m.* [tribus, tribe], tribune, a magistrate elected by the people voting in tribes, to defend the interests of the plebs; tribūnus militum, or militāris, a military tribune. \*

praefectus, -ī, *m.* [praeficiō, place over], overseer, prefect, commander, officer, captain (usually of cavalry). 4.

13. pudor, -ōris, *m.* [pudet, it shames], shame, sense of shame; sense

of honor. 2.

14. remanēō, -manēre, -mānsī, -mānsū, *intr.* [re-+manēō, remain], stay or remain behind, remain. \*

15. fingō, fingere, finxi, fectum, *tr.*, form, imagine, devise, invent. 2.

16. tabernāculum, -ī, *n.*, tent. 1. fātum, -ī, *n.* [fārī, to speak], fate, lot. 1.

17. miseror, 1, *tr.* [miser, wretched], bewail, lament over, deplore. 1.

vulgō, *adv.* [vulgus, the crowd], commonly; everywhere. 2.

18. testāmentum, -ī, *n.* [testor, be a witness], will. 1.

obsignō, 1, *tr.* [signō, mark], seal, sign and seal. 1.

19. centuriō, -ōnis, *m.* [centum, a hundred], centurion, the commander of the century, the sixtieth part of a legion. \*

9. tribūnīs: see Int. 41.

10. amicitiae causā: Caesar puts it delicately. We know from other sources that Caesar had with him young men, friends or relatives of influential men at Rome, who hoped for personal gain from their connection with him in his province. Some of them had little taste for real fighting.

11. quōrum . . . illātā, "one of them alleging one reason, another another."

12. diceret, "they said," agrees in

number with *alius*. Mode? App. 230: G.-L. 631, 2: A. 535; B. 283, 1: H.-B. 521, 1, a: H. 591, 1.

14. vultum fingere, "control their features," so as to look unconcerned.

17. tōtis castris: why is there no preposition? App. 151, b: G.-L. 388: A. 429, 2: B. 228, 1, b: H.-B. 436, a: H. 485, 2.

19. centuriōnēs: who were appointed especially for their bravery.

20. qui ex his, "(those) of them who."

se ex his minus timidōs existimārī volēbant, nōn sē hostem verērī, sed angustias itineris et magnitudinem silvārum quae intercēderent inter ipsōs atque Ariovistum, aut rem frūmentāriam, ut satis commodē supportārī posset, timēre dicēbant. Nōn nullī etiam Caesarī nūntiābant, cum castra movērī ac signa ferri iussisset, nōn fore dictō audientēs militēs neque propter timōrem signa lātūrōs.

40. Haec cum animadvertisset, convocātō cōnsiliō omniumque ōrdinum ad id cōnsilium adhibitīs centuriōnibus, vehementer eōs incūsāvit: Prīmum, quod (aut quam in partem aut quō cōnsiliō dūcerentur) sibi quaerendum aut cōgitandum putārent. Ariovistum sē cōnsule cupidissimē populi Rōmānī

21. **timidus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [timeō, fear], fearful, frightened, timid, cowardly, afraid. 1.

24. **supportō**, 1, *tr.* [sub+portō, carry], carry or bring up from beneath; bring, convey; supply, furnish. 4.

26. **dictum**, -i, *n.* [*pf.* part. of dicō, say], saying, remark; command; **dictō audiēns**, obedient. 1.

**audiō**, 4, *tr.*, hear, hear of; **dictō audiēns**, obedient. \*

2. **ōrdō**, -inis, *m.*, row, tier, layer; rank, line of soldiers; arrangement, order; degree, rank; **primi ordinēs**, centurions of the first rank. \*

3. **incūsō**, 1, *tr.* [causa, cause or case], bring a case or charge against; censure, upbraid, blame. 2.

22. **angustias itineris**: the valley of the Dubis is narrow and very rough, and if Ariovistus had really been marching toward them it would have given opportunity for ambuscades.

24. **rem frūmentāriam, ut posset, timēre**, lit. "feared the supplies, that they could not" = "feared that the supplies could not." (ut) translation? App. 228, b: G.-L. 550, 1, 2: A. 564: B. 296, 2: H.-B. 502, 4: H. 567, 1.

26. **cum iussisset**: indirect discourse for *cum iusseris*, "when you shall have ordered," = "when you order." The clause depends on what follows, not on *nūntiābant*.

**fore** = *futūrōs esse*.

**neque signa lātūrōs**, "and would not advance." See Int. 44.

Chap. 40. Caesar encourages his officers.

1. **omnium ōrdinum**: to the ordinary council of war only the centurions

of the first rank were admitted (Int. 42). This, however, was a special gathering of all the officers to listen to Caesar's speech.

3. **incūsāvit**: this implies a verb of saying, and what follows is in indirect discourse. The tactful and self-reliant combination of rebuke and encouragement makes the speech very effective. Military discipline demands severe punishment for mutiny, but this speech prevented open mutiny and served Caesar's purpose better than punishment. There was never again any sign of mutiny in the Gallic war.

4. **dūcerentur**: subjunctive in an indirect question.

**sibi . . . cōgitandum**, "that they ought to inquire or consider." The grammatical subject is the clause *aut . . . dūcerentur*.

5. **sē cōnsule**: in the preceding year. *sē* and the other reflexives through l. 9

*What, pray, is the result?*

amicitiā appetisse; cūr hunc tam temerē quisquam ab officiō discessūrū iudicāret? Sibi quidem persuādērī, cognitīs suā postulātis atque aequitāte condiciōnum perspectā, eum neque suam neque populī Rōmānī grātiā repudiātūrū. Quod si 30 furōre atque āmentīā impulsus bellum intulisset, quid tandem verērentur? aut cūr dē suā virtūte aut dē ipsius diligentiā dēspērārent? Factum eius hostis pericūlum patrum nostrōrum memoriā, cum Cimbris et Teutonis ā C. Mariō pulsīs nōn minōrem laudem exercitus quam ipse imperātor meritis vidē-

6. appetō, -petere, -petivī (-petī), -itum, *tr. and intr.* (ad+petō, seek), seek for, aim at, encroach upon; approach, be near. 3.

cūr, *interrog. and rel. adj.*, why, for what reason; for which reason, wherefore. 4.

temerē, *adv.*, rashly, blindly, without good reason. 2.

officiū, -ci, *n.*, service, allegiance, duty; official duty, business; esse, manēre, or permanēre in officiō, to remain faithful. \*

8. postulātum, -i, *n.* [postulō, demand], demand, claim, request. 4.

aequitās, -tātis, *f.* [aequus, equal], equality; fairness, equity; animī aequitās, contentment. 1.

perspicīō, -spicere, -spexī, -spectum, [*tr.* specīō, look], look or see

through, view, examine, inspect; perceive, realize, learn, find out, ascertain. \*

9. repudiō, 1, *tr.*, reject. 1.

10. furor, -ōris, *m.*, rage, frenzy, madness. 2.

āmentia, -ae, *f.* [mēns, mind], bewilderment of mind, folly, insanity. 1.

impellō, -pellere, -pulī, -pulsum, *tr.* [in+pellō, drive], drive or urge on, incite, instigate, impel. 3.

11. diligētia, -ae, *f.* [diligēns, careful], carefulness, heedfulness, painstaking, care. 4.

13. C., *abbr. for praenomen* Gāius (gā'yūs). \*

Marius, -ri, *m.*, Gaius Marius (gā'yūs mā'ri-ūs), the conqueror of the Cimbri and Teutoni. 1.

14. laus, laudis, *f.*, praise, com-

are indirect reflexives: App. 165: G.-L. 520; 521: A. 300, 2: B. 244, 1, II: H.-B. 262, 2: H. 504.

6. cūr iudicāret: the direct form was *cūr iudicet*, "why should anyone suppose?": App. 210, a; 268, III: G.-L. 265; 651, R. 2: A. 444; 587: B. 277; 315, 3: H.-B. 513, 1: H. 559, 4; 642, 3. Contrast with this subjunctive question the infinitive in 14, 8.

7. sibi . . . persuādērī, "in fact he was convinced": App. 115, d: G.-L. 346, R. 1: A. 372: B. 187, II, b: H.-B. 364, 2: H. 426, 3.

9. quod si intulisset, "but if he should make": App. 256: G.-L. 505: A. 516, a: B. 302, 1: H.-B. 579, a: H. 574.

11. verērentur, dēspērārent: cf. note on 1. 6.

suā: the direct reflexive: App. 164: G.-L. 309, 1: A. 300, 1: B. 244, 1, I: H.-B. 262, 1: H. 504.

ipsius: i.e. Caesar's; *suā* could have been used here as the indirect reflexive, but it would be confusing because it has just been used as the direct reflexive. The use is something like that of *ipse* in 36, 4.

12. periculum, "a test."

13. Cimbris et Teutonis: cf. Int. 27.

Mariō: cf. Int. 5.

14. vidēbātur: no satisfactory explanation can be given for the retention of this indicative in a subordinate clause of indirect discourse.

batur; factum etiam nuper in Italiâ servili tumultû, quôs tamen aliquid usus ac disciplina quam â nobis accëpissent sublevarent. Ex quô iudicâri posse quantum habëret in sê boni cōstantia, propterea quod, quôs aliquamdiû inermēs sine causâ timuissent, hōs postea armâtōs ac victōrēs superâssent. Dënique hōs esse eōsdem Germânōs quibuscum saepe numero Helvétii congressi nōn solum in snis, sed etiam in illōrum finibus, plērumque superârint, quī tamen parēs esse nostrō exercitui nōn potuerint. Sī quôs adversum proelium et fuga Gallōrum commovëret, hōs, sī quaererent, reperire posse, diuturnitate bellī dëfatigâtis Gallis, Ariovistum, cum multōs

mendation; renown, popularity, glory. 1

imperâtor, -ōris, *m.* [imperō, command], commander-in-chief, general. \*

15. servilis, -e, *adj.* [servus, a slave], of or like a slave, servile.

tumultus, -ūs, *m.* [tumeō, swell], uproar, confusion, disorder, tumult; uprising, insurrection. 2

16. disciplina, -ae, *f.* [discō, learn], learning; discipline; instruction; system. 2

ego, mei (App. 51), *first pers. pron.*, I; *pl. nōs*, we, us, etc. \*

18. cōstantia, -ae, *f.* [cōnstō, stand firm], firmness, steadfastness. 1

15. factum: sc. esse periculum.

servili tumultû: the insurrection of the gladiators under Spartacus in 73-71 a. c. Many of the gladiators and slaves who joined the uprising were Germans.

quôs: the antecedent is implied in the adjective servili, which is equivalent to servitorum.

17. quantum boni, "how great an advantage."

18. inermēs: a part of Spartacus's band was at first armed only with stakes; yet they won victories and thus secured arms.

20. quibuscum Helvétii congressi

aliquamdiû, *adv.* [aliquis, some + diû, long], for some time. 1

inermis, -e, *adj.* [in- + arma, arms] without arms or weapons, unarmed. 3

19. armō, 1, *tr.* [arma, arms], arm, equip; *pass.*, arm one's self; armâtus, *pf. part.*, as *adj.*, armed; armâtī, as *noun*, armed men. \*

22. plērumque, *adv.* [plērusque, the greater part], for the most part, mostly, generally; again and again, very often. \*

25. diuturnitās, -tātis, *f.* [diuturnus, long], long duration. 2

dëfatigō, 1, *tr.* [fatigō, weary], completely weary, fatigue, tire out, exhaust. 1

superârint, lit. "with whom the Helvetii having met had conquered" = "whom the Helvetii had met and conquered." superârint: tense? App. 270, c: G.-L. 654, n.: A. 585, b, n.: B. 318: H. 644, 1.

22. qui: the antecedent is Helvétii. The argument is that since the Helvetii have beaten the Germans and the Romans have beaten the Helvetii, the Romans can beat the Germans.

23. proelium: the battle at Magetobriga; see 31, 41.

24. commovëret: the direct form was commovel: App. 253: G.-L. 596: A. 515: B. 302, 1: H.-B. 579: H. 574, 1.

mēnsēs castrīs sē ac palūdibus tenuisset neque sui potestātem fēcisset, dēspērāntēs iam dē pugnā et dispersōs subitō adortum magis ratiōne et cōnsiliō quam virtūte vicisse. Cui ratiōnī contrā hominēs barbarōs atque imperitōs locus fuisset, hāc nē  
 30 ipsum quidem spērāre nostrōs exercitūs capī posse. Quī suum timōrem in rei frūmentāriae simulātiōnem angustiasque itineris cōferrent facere arroganter, cum aut dē officiō imperātōris dēspērāre aut praescribere vidērentur. Haec sibi esse cūrae: frūmentum Sēquanōs, Leucōs, Lingonēs subministrāre, iamque  
 35 esse in agrīs frūmenta mātūra; dē itinere ipsōs brevī tempore iūdicātūrōs. † Quod nōn fore dictō audientēs neque signa lātūrī dicantur, nihil sē eā rē commovērī; scīre enim, quibuscumque exercitus dictō audiēns nōn fuerit, aut male rē gestā fortunam dēfuisse aut aliquō facinore compertō avāritiam esse convictam;

26. palūs, -ūdis, *f.*, marsh, morass, swamp. \*

27. dispersō, -aspergere, -aspersi, -persum, *tr.* [dispersō, scatter], scatter, disperse. 3.

29. imperitus, -a, -um, *adj.* [in-+peritus, experience], inexperienced, unskilled, ignorant. 4.

31. simulātiō, -ōnis, *f.* [simulō, make like], simulation, pretense, deceit, disguise. 2.

32. arrogator, *adv.* [arrogāns, arrogant], arrogantly, presumptuously. 1.

34. Leuci, -ōrum, *m.* (Bfg), the Leuci (lū'si). 1.

subministrō, 1. *tr.* [ministrō, wait upon], furnish, supply, give.

35. brevis, -e, *adj.*, short, brief, transitory; brevi, in a short time. \*

38. male, *adv.* [malus, bad], badly, ill, adversely. *Comp.*, peius; *sup.*, pessimē. 1.

39. dōsum, deesse, dēfui, —, *intr.* [sum, be. App. 66], be wanting, be absent from, fail. \*

facinus, -noris, *n.* [faciō, do], deed; misdeed, outrage, crime. 2.

26. sui potestātem, "a chance at him."

27. dēspērāntēs, dispersōs agree with an implied *eōs* which is the object of *adortum* and refers to the Gauls.

28. ratiōnī: translate with *hāc* in next line, and omit here.

29. hāc . . . posse, "not even (Arlovistus) himself hoped that our armies could be caught by this stratagem."

31. rei . . . simulātiōnem, "a pretense about the supplies." *rei* is an objective genitive.

32. dē . . . dēspērāre, "to lack con-

fidence in the general's attention to his duties."

35. mātūra: it was now August.

36. quod . . . dicantur, "as to the statement that they would not obey his orders or advance." quod: translation? App. 248, a: G.-L. 525, 2: A. 572, a: B. 299, 2: H.-B. 552, 2: H. 588, 3, n.

37. quibuscumque . . . convictam, lit. "that to whomsoever an army had not been obedient, (to them) either fortune had failed or avarice had been proved." This must be turned into English.

suam innocentiam perpetuā vitā, felicitatem Helveticorum bello esse perspectam. Itaque se quod in longiorem diem collaturus fuisset repraesentaturum et proximā nocte de quartā vigiliā castra moturum, ut quam primum intellegere posset utrum apud eos pudor atque officium an timor plus valeret. Quod si praeterea nemō sequatur, tamen se cum solā decimā legione iturum, de quā nō dubitet, sibiue eam praetoriam cohortem futuram. Huic legioni Caesar et indulserat praecipue et propter virtutem confidebat maximē.

41. Hāc oratione habitā mirum in modum conversae sunt omnium mentes summaque alacritas et cupiditas belli gerendi illata est, princepsque decima legio per tribunos militum ei gratias egit, quod de se optimum iudicium fecisset, seque esse ad bellum gerendum paratissimam confirmavit. Deinde s

**avaritia**, -ae, *f.* [avārus, greedy], greed, covetousness. 1.

**convincō**, -vincere, -vici, -victum, *tr.* [vincō, conquer], conquer completely; prove. 1.

**innocentia**, -ae, *f.* [innocēns, innocent], integrity. 1.

**felicitas**, -tatis, *f.* [fēlix, happy], happiness, success, good fortune. 1.

**longus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, long, distant; of long duration; tedious. \*

**repraesentō**, 1, *tr.* [re-+prae-sēns, present], make present; do at once. 1.

**utrum**, *conj.* [uter, which of two], whether; **utrum . . . an**, whether . . . or; **utrum . . . necne**, whether . . . or not. 3.

**an**, *conj.*, used to introduce the

second member of alternative questions, or, or rather. \*

**decimus**, -a, -um, *ord. num. adj.* [decem, ten], tenth. \*

**praetorius**, -a, -um, *adj.* [praetor, commander], praetorian, belonging to the general. 2.

**cohors**, -tis, *f.*, cohort. \*

**indulgēō**, -dulgēre, -dulse, *intr.*, be indulgent to, favor. 1.

**praecipue**, *adv.* [praecipuus, especial], especially, particularly. 1.

**modus**, -i, *m.* measure, quantity, size; manner, method, style; **eius modi**, of such a kind, such; *abl.*, **modo**, with gen., in the character of, like. \*

**alacritas**, -tatis, *f.* [alacer, lively], liveliness, ardor. 3.

**40. innocentiam**, "fair dealing," not "innocence"; opposed to *avaritiam*. What the soldiers would object to would be the general's keeping too large a share of the booty for himself.

**perpetuā vitā**, "throughout his life."

**41. quod . . . repraesentaturum**, "he would do at once what he had intended to put off, etc."

**42. utrum . . . valeret**: an indirect

double question: App. 214; 264, c: G.-L. 458; 460, 2: A. 334; 335: B. 162, 4; 300, 4: H.-B. 234: H. 380; 650.

**46. praetoriam cohortem**, "his body-guard," which would naturally be composed of the bravest troops.

**Chap. 41.** The panic is checked and the army advances.

**4. gratias egit**, "expressed its thanks."

reliquae legiōnēs cum tribūnīs militum et primōrum ōrdinum centuriōnibus ēgērunt, utī Caesarī satisfacerent: Sē neque umquam dubitāsse neque timuisse neque dē summā bellī suum iūdicium, sed imperātōris esse existimāvisse. Eōrum satisfactiōne acceptā et itinere exquisitō per Diviciācum, quod ex Gallis eī maximam fidem habēbat, ut, milium amplius quīnquāgintā circuitū, locis apertis exercitum dūceret, dē quārtā vigiliā, ut dixerat, profectus est. Septimō diē, cum iter nōn intermitteret, ab explorātōribus certior factus est Ariovistī cōpiās ā nostris milia passuum quattuor et vigintī abesse.

**42.** Cognitō Caesaris adventū Ariovistus lēgātōs ad eum mittit: Quod antea dē colloquiō postulāset, id per sē fieri

**8.** *umquam*, *adv.*, at any time, ever; *neque . . . umquam*, and never, never. 2.

**9.** *satisfactiō, -ōnis*, *f.* [*satisfaciō*, give satisfaction], satisfaction; excuse, apology. 1.

**10.** *exquirō*, -quirere, -quisivī, -quisitum, *tr.* [*quaerō*, search], seek or search out, inquire, investigate. 2.

**11.** *quīnquāgintā* (L), *card. num. adj.*, *indecl.*, fifty. 3.

**6.** *cum tribūnīs ēgērunt utī*, "arranged with the tribunes that" or "begged the tribunes to."

**8.** *neque dē . . . existimāvisse*, "and that they had not thought that the decision regarding the conduct of the war was theirs, but (knew that it was) the commander's."

**10.** *itinere . . . Diviciācum ut . . . dūceret*, "having sought a route, with the help of Diviciacus . . . in order that he might march his army through open country, (though) by a circuit of more than fifty miles."

*ex Gallis*, "of (all) the Gauls."

**11.** *eī*: case? App. 115, *a*: G.-L. 346, n. 5: A. 367, *a*, n. 2: H.-B. 362, footnote 3, *b*.

*milium quīnquāgintā* is a descriptive genitive. Why not an ablative after the comparative? App. 139, *b*: G.-L. 296, R. 4: A. 407, *c*: B. 217, 3: H.-B. 416, *d*: H. 471, 4.

**12.** *circuitū*: he passed around to the north of the broken country in the valley of the Dubis near Vesontio (see

map facing p. 117), and then marched straight on. The distance marched around the bend was fifty miles.

**13.** *ut dixerat*: cf. 40, 42.

*septimō diē*: the seven days' march brought him to the battlefield indicated on the map facing p. 117. Ariovistus, who had probably been marching northward (cf. note on 37, 6), had learned that Caesar was marching toward him, and had turned back to meet Caesar. At this time he was not far from Strassburg.

*cum . . . intermitteret*: i.e. he did not allow the day of rest which was usually given about every fifth day. Cf. Int. 54.

Chap. 42-47. Negotiations with Ariovistus are fruitless.

Chap. 42. Ariovistus asks for a conference, under conditions which Caesar grants.

**2.** *postulāset*: sc. *Caesar*.

*id . . . licēre*, "that . . . might be done as far as he was concerned." *id* is the antecedent of *quod*.

licere, quoniam propius accessisset, seque id sine periculo facere posse existimaret. Non respuat condicionem Caesar iamque eum ad sanitatem reverti arbitrabatur, cum id quod antea petenti denegasset ultro polliceretur, magnamque in speem veniebat, pro suis tantis populique Romani in eum beneficiis, cognitis suis postulatis, fore uti pertinacia desisteret. Dies colloquio dictus est ex eo die quintus. Interim saepe cum legati ultro citroque inter eos mitterentur, Ariovistus postulavit ne quem peditem ad colloquium Caesar adduceret: Vereri se ne per insidias ab eo circumveniretur; uterque cum equitatu veniret; alia ratione sese non esse venturum. Caesar, quod neque colloquium interposita causa tolli volebat neque salutem suam Gallorum equitatu committere auderet, commodissimum esse statuit, omnibus equis Gallis equitibus

3. *propius*, *adv.* and *prep.* with *acc.* (App. 122, b) [*comp.* of *prope*, near], nearer.

4. *respuo*, -*spuere*, -*spul*, —, *tr.* reject, spurn. 1.

5. *sanitās*, -*tātis*, *f.* [sanus, sound, soundness of mind, good sense, discretion, sanity. 1.

6. *denegō*, 1, *tr.* [negō, deny], refuse. *ultro*, *adv.*, to or on the farther side, beyond; of one's own accord, voluntarily, spontaneously, without provocation; besides, moreover; *ultro citroque*, back and forth. \*

8. *pertinacia*, -*ae*, *f.* [pertineō, hold through or fast], obstinacy, stubbornness, pertinacity. 1.

10. *citrō*, *adv.*, hither; *ultro citroque*, back and forth. 1.

11. *pedes*, *peditis*, *m.* [pēs, foot], foot soldier; *pl.*, infantry, foot. 3

14. *interpōnō*, -*pōnere*, -*posui*, -*positum*, *tr.* [pōnō, place], place between, interpose; allege; cause; *fidem interpōnere*, pledge. 4.

15. *commodus*, -*a*, -*um*, *adj.* [modus, measure], in full measure; convenient, suitable, satisfactory. 3.

3. *accessisset*: Ariovistus's reason for refusing a conference (see 34, 7) no longer existed. Caesar's prompt advance had impressed him and he was more inclined to confer.

6. *petenti*, "when he [Caesar] asked it."

8. *fore uti desisteret*, lit. "that it would be that he would give up" = "that he would give up." The use of this periphrasis is here a matter of choice on Caesar's part, since the verb is active and has a future infinitive form. Cf. note on 31, 36, and App. 205, b: G.-L. 531:

A. 569, 3, a: B. 270, 3, a: H.-B. 472, c: H. 619, 2.

13. *veniret*: the subjunctive of command in indirect discourse.

*alia ratione*, "on any other terms."

15. *salutem . . . audēbat*: Caesar could not be sure of the trustworthiness of the Gallic cavalry, and he knew that in any case they were no match for German cavalry.

16. *Gallis equitibus*: case? App. 116, I: G.-L. 345, R. 1: A. 381: B. 188, 2, d: H.-B. 371: H. 427.

dētractis, eō legiōnāriōs mīlitēs legiōnis decimae, cui quam maximē cōnfidēbat, impōnere, ut praesidium quam amīcissimum, sī quid opus factō esset, habēret. Quod cum fieret, nōn irrīdiculē quīdam ex militibus decimae legiōnis dixit plūs quam pollicitus esset Caesarem facere; pollicitum sē in cohortis praetōriae locō decimam legiōnem habitūrum, ad equum rescribere.

**43.** Plānitēs erat magna et in eā tumulus terrēnus satis grandis. Hīc locus aequum ferē spatium ā castris utriusque aberat. Eō, ut erat dictum, ad colloquium vērērunt. Legiōnem Caesar quam equīs vexerat passibus ducentis ab eō tumulō

**17.** dētrahō, -trahere, -trāxi, -tractum, *tr.* [trahō, draw], draw off or away, withdraw, take off, remove. 4.

**legiōnārius, -a, -um, adj.** [legiō, legion], relating to a legion, legionary. 4.

**18.** impōnō, -pōnere, -posui, -positum, *tr.* [in+pōnō, place], place upon, set on, put or impose on; mount. 4.

**20.** irrīdiculē, *adv.* [in+ridiculus, witty], without wit, unwittily. 1.

**23.** rescribō, -scribere, -scripsi, -scriptum, *tr.* [re+scribō, write], write again; transfer. 1.

**1.** plānitēs, -ei, *f.* [plānus, level], level ground, plain. 4.

**tumulus, -i, m.** [tumeō, swell], swelling; mound, hill. 1.

**terrēnus, -a, -um, adj.** [terra, earth], of earth. 1.

**2.** grandis, -e, *adj.*, great, large, bulky. 1.

**aequus, -a, -um, adj.**, even, level, equal; equitable, impartial just; **aequus animus**, equanimity, composure. 3.

**4.** vehō, vehere, vexti, vectum, *tr.*, carry; bring along. 1.

**17.** eō, the adverb, = *in eōs*.

**19.** sī . . . esset, lit. "if there should at all be need of something done" = "if there should be any need of their services." **quid:** case? App. 128, b: G.-L. 334: A. 39, c: B. 176, 3: H.-B. 387, III: H. 416, 2. **factō:** construction? App. 146, b: G.-L. 406: A. 411, a: B. 218, 2, c: H.-B. 430, 2: H. 477, III. **esset:** implied indirect discourse, for in making his plans Caesar thought *sī erit*, "if there shall be."

**20.** nōn irrīdiculē, "wittily."

**21.** pollicitum . . . rescribere: the soldier said, in substance, "After promising only to make us his body-guard, Caesar is actually making us cavaliers." The pun is based on the double meaning of *ad equum rescribere*, namely, (1) to transfer to the cavalry, a part of the

army looked down upon by the legionary soldiers, and (2) to knight, i.e. raise to a high rank in Roman society. "Cavalier" means either "cavalry man" or "knight."

**Chap. 43.** At the conference Caesar repeats his previous demands.

**1.** erat, "there was." The hill was about twelve miles north of the battlefield, and has been identified with considerable certainty.

**2.** spatium: accusative of extent of space.

**3.** ut erat dictum, "as had been agreed."

**4.** equis, "on horseback."

**passibus, intervallō:** ablatives of degree of difference with *ab*, "away from."

cōstituit. Item equitēs Ariovistī parī intervāllō cōstitērunt. Ariovistus ex equis ut colloquerentur et praeter sē dēnōs ad colloquium addūcerent postulāvit. Ubi eō ventum est, Caesar initio orātiōnis sua senātūque in eum beneficia commemorāvit, quod rēx appellātus esset ā senātū, quod amicus, quod mūnera amplissima missa; quam rem et paucis contigisse et prō magnis hominum officiis cōsuēsse tribuī docēbat; illum, cum neque aditum neque causam postulandī iūstam habēret, beneficiō ac liberalitāte suā ac senātū ea praemia cōsecūtum. Docēbat etiam quam veterēs quamque iūstae causae necessitudinis ipsīs cum Haeduīs intercēderent, quae senātū cōnsulta quotiēns quamque honōrifica in eōs facta essent, ut omni tempore tōtius Galliae principātum Haeduī tenuissent, prius etiam quam nostram amicitiam appetissent. Populī Rōmānī hanc esse

6. dēnī, -ae, -a, *distr. num. adj.* [decem, ten], ten each, ten at a time, by tens. 1.

9. mūnus, -eris, *n.*, duty, service, task; present. 1.

11. doceō, docēre, docuī, doctum, *v.*, show, teach, instruct; inform. \*

12. aditus, -ūs, *m.* [adeō, go to], approach, means of approach, right of approach, access. \*

iūstus, -a, -um, *adj.* [iūs, right], in accordance with law or right, lawful, valid, just, fair; proper, regular; with funera, appropriate. 4.

5. cōstitērunt: distinguish carefully between *cōsistō* and *cōstituō*.

6. ex equis, "on horseback." Cf. 1. 4: in that line the horses are the means by which the soldiers are brought to the hill; in this they are the places from which the conversation goes on.

9. quod amicus: sc. *appellātus esset*. Cf. note on 33, 3.

10. missa: sc. *essent*. The three *quod* clauses are substantive clauses in apposition with *beneficia*, and the subjunctive is due to implied indirect discourse.

12. aditum: i.e. to the senate.

13. praemium, -mī, *n.*, distinction, prize, reward. \*

14. necessitūdō, -inis, *f.* [necesse, cf. *necessarius*, friend], friendship, alliance. 1.

15. cōsultum, -ī, *n.* [cōsulō, take counsel], *result of deliberation*; decree, enactment, decision. 1.

quotiēns, *adv.* [quot, how many], (1) *interrog.*, how many times? how often? (2) *rel.*, as often as. 1.

16. honōrificus, -a, -um, *adj.* [honōs, honor+faciō, make], conferring honor. 1.

14. ipsīs . . . intercēderent, "existed between them [the Romans] and the Haedui." intercēderent: subjunctive in an indirect question.

16. in eōs, "in their behalf." ut, "how," introducing an indirect question.

17. Galliae: i.e. Celtic Gaul; but we have learned in 31, 8 that even there their supremacy had always been disputed.

prius . . . quam = *praequam*. The subjunctive which it introduces is due to the indirect discourse.

cōnsuētūdinem, ut sociōs atque amīcōs nōn modo suī nihil  
 10 dēperdere, sed grātiā, dignitatē, honōre auctiōrēs vellet esse;  
 quod vērō ad amicitiam populī Rōmānī attulissent, id iīs ēripi  
 quis pati posset? Postulāvit deinde eadem quae lēgātis in  
 mandātis dederat: Nē aut Haeduīs aut eōrum sociīs bellum  
 25 inferret; obsidēs redderet; sī nūllam partem Germānōrum  
 eorum remittere posset, at nē quōs amplius Rhēnum trānsire  
 paterētur.

44. Ariovistus ad postulāta Caesaris pauca respondit, dē  
 suis virtūtibus multa praedicāvit: Trānsisse Rhēnum sēsē nōn  
 suā sponte, sed rogātum et arcessitum ā Gallīs; nōn sine  
 magnā spē magnisque praemiis domum propinquōsque  
 5 reliquisse; sēdēs habēre in Galliā ab ipsis concessās, obsidēs  
 ipsōrum voluntāte datōs; stipendium capere iūre bellī quod  
 victōrēs victis impōnere cōsuērint. Nōn sēsē Gallīs, sed  
 Gallōs sibi bellum intulisse; omnēs Galliae cīvitatēs ad sē

20. dēperdō, -perdere, -perdidī, -perditum, *tr.* [perdō, destroy], destroy utterly; forfeit, lose. 2.

dignitās, -tātis, *f.* [dignus, worthy], worthiness, dignity, merit, rank. 3.

auctus, -a, -um, *adj.* [*pf. part.* of augeō, increase], increased, advanced, 1.

21. afferō, afferre, attulī, allātum,

*tr.* [ad+ferō, carry. App. 81], bring, take or carry to, present; occasion, cause; bring forward, allege; report. 3.

25. remittō, -mittere, -misi, -missum, *tr.* [re+mittō, send], send or despatch back, return, restore, remit; release, relax, give up; remissus, *pf. part.* as *adj.*, mild. \*

at, *conj.*, but, at least. \*

19. ut vellet, "to wish"; a substantive clause of result, in apposition with *hanc cōsuētūdinem*.

sui, "of their own"; the neuter of *suius*, used as a noun.

20. sed auctiōrēs esse, "but rather to be advanced."

grātiā, etc.: ablatives of specification.

21. iīs: for case, cf. note on 42, 16.

22. quis posset: the direct form was *quis possit*, "who would be able?" and the subjunctive is retained in the indirect discourse.

23. dederat: as stated in chap. 35.

24. inferret, etc.: subjunctives of

command in indirect discourse. What was the direct form of *nē inferret*? App. 219: G.-L. 271, 2: A. 450: B. 276, c: H.-B. 501, 3, a, 2: H. 561, 1.

Chap. 44. Ariovistus justifies his own course and makes counter demands and proposals.

3. rogātum et arcessitum: the participles may be translated by a causal clause.

ā Gallīs: cf. 31, 11.

5. ab ipsis: sc. *Gallis*.

6. iūre: ablative of accordance.

7. cōsuērint: the tenses in the early part of this chapter are due to *representation*.

oppugnandum vënisse ac contrā sē castra habuisse; eās omnēs cōpiās ā sē ūnō proeliō pulsās ac superātās esse. Si iterum 10 experiri velint, sē iterum parātum esse dēcertāre; si pāce ūtī velint, inīquum esse dē stipendiō recūsāre, quod suā voluntāte ad id tempus pependerit. Amicitiam populi Rōmānī sibi ōrnāmentō et praesidiō, nōn dētrimentō esse oportēre, atque sē hāc spē petisse. Si per populum Rōmānum stipendium 15 remittātur et dēditiciī subtrahantur, nōn minus libenter sēsē recūsātūrum populi Rōmānī amicitiam quam appetierit. Quod multitudinem Germānōrum in Galliam trādūcat, id sē suī mūniendī nōn Galliae impugnandae causā facere; eius rei testimoniū esse quod nisi rogātus nōn vēnerit et quod bellum 20 nōn intulerit, sed dēfenderit. Sē prius in Galliam vënisse quam populum Rōmānum. Numquam ante hoc tempus exercitum populi Rōmānī Galliae prōvinciae finibus ēgressum. Quid sibi vellet? Cūr in suās possessiōnēs venīret? Prōvinciam

11. dēcertō, 1, *intr.* [certō, contend], fight to the end, fight out, struggle fiercely or earnestly, vie, contend. \*

12. inīquus, -a, -um, *adj.* [in-+aequus, even, just], uneven; unjust, unfair; unfavorable, disadvantageous. \*

13. ōrnāmentum, -i, *n.* [ōrnō, adorn], ornament; mark of honor. 1.

dētrimentum, -i, *n.* [de+terō, rub, or wear out], harm, loss, injury; disaster, defeat. 1.

16. subtrahō, -trahere, -trāxi, -tractum, *tr.* [trahō, draw], draw or carry off from beneath; take away; withdraw. 1.

libenter, *adv.* [libēns, willing], willingly, gladly, with pleasure. 2.

19. impugnō, 1, *tr.* [in+pugnō, fight], fight against, attack, assail. 2.

20. testimoniū, -nī, *n.* [testor, be a witness], testimony, evidence, proof. 1.

9. oppugnandum: gerund or gerundive? App. 289: G.-L. 427: A. 506, n. 2: B. 339, 2: H.-B. 613, 1: H. 628, footnote 2. castra habuisse, "had encamped."

10. ūnō proeliō: the battle at Magobriga: cf. 31, 41.

13. amicitiam sibi ōrnāmentō esse oportēre, lit. "that it was right for the friendship to be to him for an honor." Make English of this.

15. petisse: sc. eam, referring to amicitiam, as the object. The king admits that he had sued for the honor.

si remittātur: a vivid future condition.

17. quam, "than."

quod, "as to the fact that."

21. prius quam populum Rōmānum: prius quam = priusquam, a conjunction, and the more accurate expression would be priusquam populus Rōmānus vēnerit. The truth of the statement is denied by Caesar in the next chapter.

24. quid sibi vellet, lit. "what did he wish for himself?" an idiomatic expression for "what did he mean?" For mode, see App. 268, 1: G.-L. 651: A. 586: B. 315, 1: H.-B. 537: H. 642.

suās refers to Ariovistus.

25 suam hanc esse Galliam, sicut illam nostram. Ut ipsi concēdi  
 nōn oportēret, si in nostrōs finēs impetum faceret, sic item  
 nōs esse iniquōs, quod in suō iūre sē interpellārēmus. Quod  
 frātrēs ā senātū Haeduōs appellātōs diceret, nōn sē tam  
 barbarum neque tam imperitū esse rērum ut nōn scīret neque  
 30 bellō Allobrogum proximō Haeduōs Rōmānīs auxilium tulisse  
 neque ipsōs in hīs contentiōnibus quās Haedui sēcum et cum  
 Sēquanīs habuissent auxiliō populi Rōmāni ūsōs esse. Dēbere  
 sē suspicārī simulātā Caesarem amicitīā, quod exercitum in  
 Galliā habeat, suī opprimendī causā habēre. Quī nisi dēcēdat  
 35 atque exercitum dēducāt ex hīs regiōnibus, sēsē illum nōn prō  
 amicō, sed prō hoste habitūrum. Quod si eum interfēcerit,

25. sicut or sicutī, *adv.* [sic, so+ut-  
 (1), as], so as; just as, as; just as if. 1.

27. interpellō, 1, *tr.*, interrupt, hin-  
 der. 1.

31. contentiō, -ōnis, *f.* [contendō,  
 strive], striving, struggle, contest, dis-  
 pute. 1.

33. suspicor, 1, *tr.* [suspiciō, sus-  
 pect], suspect, distrust; surmise. \*

simulō, 1, *tr.* [similis, like], make  
 like; pretend. 2.

34. opprimō, -primere, -pressi,

-pressum, *tr.* [ob+premō, press], press  
 down, oppress; overwhelm, overpower,  
 destroy; fall upon, surprise. 4.

35. dēducō, -ducere, -dūxi, -duc-  
 tum, *tr.* [ducō, lead], lead down or  
 away, withdraw; bring, conduct, lead;  
 influence; launch (*ships*); give in mar-  
 riage. \*

regiō, -ōnis, *f.* [regō, keep straight],  
 line, direction; quarter, region, country,  
 territory, place; *ē regione, with gen.*,  
 opposite. \*

25. hanc Galliam, "this (part of)  
 Gaul." He claims that his right of pos-  
 session in the land near the Rhine is as  
 clear as that of the Romans in the  
 Roman province.

ut . . . oportēret, "just as there  
 ought to be no yielding to him." The  
 direct form of the conditional sentence  
 was probably *oporteat, si faciam*, lit.  
 "it would be right if I should make."  
 This is a less vivid future condition:  
 App. 257: G.-L. 593: A. 516, 2, b: B. 303:  
 H.-B. 580: H. 576. Such a condition has  
 the same form in indirect discourse as a  
 vivid future condition, and can be dis-  
 tinguished only by the sense of the pas-  
 sage.

27. quod diceret, "as to the fact  
 that he said," or "as to his state-  
 ment."

29. imperitū rērum, "ignorant of  
 political matters."

30. bellō Allobrogum: cf. note on  
 6, 7.

Haeduōs . . . ūsōs esse: Ariovistus  
 here lays his finger on the weak point in  
 Caesar's argument; for in fact the alli-  
 ance of the Haedui and the Romans had  
 been mere words until now when it suited  
 Caesar's purpose to consider it binding.

31. ipsōs = *Haeduōs*.

32. dēbere sē suspicārī, "he had a  
 right to suspect."

33. simulātā amicitīā, "although  
 he made a pretense of friendship" to-  
 ward Ariovistus.

quod, "inasmuch as."

35. sēsē . . . amicō habitūrum, "he  
 would regard him [Caesar] not as a  
 friend."

multis sēsē nōbilibus prīncipibusque populī Rōmānī grātum esse factūrum; id sē ab ipsis per eōrum nūntiōs compertum habēre, quōrum omnium grātiā atque amicitiam eius morte redimere posset. Quod sī dēcessisset et liberā possēssiōnem Galliae sibi trādidisset, magnō sē illum praemiō remūnerātūrum et quaecumque bella gerī vellet sine ūllō eius labōre et periculō cōfectūrum.

45. Multa ā Caesare in eam sententiā dicta sunt, quārē negōtiō dēsistere nōn posset: Neque suam neque populī Rōmānī cōsuētūdinem patī utī optimē meritōs sociōs dēsereret, neque sē iūdicāre Galliam potius esse Ariovistī quam populī Rōmānī. Bellō superātōs esse Arvernōs et Rutēnōs ā Q. Fabiō

37. grātus, -a, -um, *adj.*, pleasing, agreeable, acceptable. 1.

40. liber, -era, -erum, *adj.*, unrestrained, free; undisputed. 1.

41. remūneror, 1, *tr.* [re-+māneror, present], repay, reward. 1.

42. labor, -ōris, *m.*, toil, effort, striving; labor, hardship. \*

1. sententiā, -ae, *f.* [sentīō, think], way of thinking, opinion, sentiment; purpose, design, scheme, plan; decision, resolve; verdict; sentence. \*

3. bene, *adv.* [bonus, good], well, rightly, successfully. *Comp.*, melius; *sup.*, optimē. 2.

dēserō, -serere, -serui, -sertum, *tr.* [serō, entwine, join], disjoin; abandon, desert, forsake; dēsertus, *pf. part. as adj.*, deserted, solitary. 3.

4. potius, *adv.* [*comp. of* potis, able], rather. 2.

5. Rutēni, -ōrum, *m.* (Dēde), the Ruteni (rū-tē'ni). \*

Q., *abbr. for* Quintus, Quintus (kwīn'-tūs), a Roman praenomen. \*

Fabius, -bi, *m.* Quintus Fabius Maximus (kwīn' tūs fā'bi-ūs māk'si-mūs), victor over the Gauls, 121 B. C. 1.

37. multis . . . factūrum: as the head of the democratic party, Caesar had made many bitter enemies in the aristocratic party, especially during his consulship. It is entirely possible that some of them had indicated to Ariovistus their desire to have him put out of the way.

38. id compertum habēre differs very slightly from id comperisse, "had found this out." This means "he possessed this as a thing fully ascertained"; App. 286, b: G.-L. 238: A. 497, b: B. 337, 6: H.-B. 605, 5, a: H. 640, 2.

Chap. 45. Caesar insists on Roman rights in Gaul.

1. in eam sententiā, quārē, *lit.* "to this effect, why" = "to show why." quārē posset is an indirect question.

3. patī utī dēsereret, "allowed him to abandon." patior is usually followed by an infinitive instead of an ut clause.

4. Ariovistī, populī Rōmānī: predicative genitives of possession.

5. superātōs esse: in the year 121, at the time when the Allobroges were conquered. As this was fifty years before Ariovistus had entered Gaul, it disposed of the claim (44, 21) that Ariovistus had come into the country before the Roman people.

Maximō, quibus populus Rōmānus ignōvisset neque in prōvinciam redēgisset neque stipendium imposuisset. Quod si antiquissimum quodque tempus spectārī oportēret, populi Rōmāni iūstissimum esse in Galliā imperium; si iūdicium  
 10 senātūs observārī oportēret, liberam dēbere esse Galliam, quam bellō victam suis lēgibus ūtī voluisset.

46. Dum haec in colloquiō geruntur, Caesarī nūntiātum est equitēs Ariovistī propius tumulum accēdere et ad nostrōs adequitāre, lapidēs tēlaque in nostrōs conicere. Caesar loquendī finem fēcit sēque ad suōs recēpit suisque imperāvit  
 5 nē quod omnīnō tēlum in hostēs reīcerent. Nam etsī sine ūllō periculō legiōnis dēlēctae cum equitātū proelium fore vidēbat, tamen committendum nōn putābat ut pulsīs hostibus dici posset eōs ab sē per fidem in colloquiō circumventōs. Postea-

6. **Maximus**, -i, m., Quintus Fabius Maximus (quin'tūs fā'bī-ūs māk'sī-mūs), victor over the Gauls, 121 B. C. 1.

**ignōscō**, -nōscere, -nōvī, -nōtum, *intr.* [in-+(g) nōscēns, knowing: nōscō], forgive, pardon. 3.

7. **redigō**, -igere, -ēgi, -āctum, *tr.* [red-+agō, put in motion], bring back,

bring under; render, make; reduce. \*

10. **observō**, 1, *tr.* [servō, give heed], observe, mark, watch; regard, obey; celebrate. 1.

3. **adequitō**, 1, *intr.* [equitō, ride; equus, horse], ride up. 1.

**lapis**, -idis, m., stone. \*

5. **etsī**, *conj.* [et+si, if], even if, although. \*

6. neque . . . redēgisset: the intransitive *ignōvisset* governs the dative, *quibus*; but *redēgisset* is transitive and we must supply *quōs*; *quibus* is needed again with *imposuisset*. The Arverni and Ruteni lay on the other side of the Cevennes Mountains, which formed a natural frontier for the Roman province: this was the real reason for the forbearance of the Romans.

8. **antiquissimum quodque tempus**, lit. "each most ancient time" = "priority of time."

11. **lēgibus**: ablative with *ūtī*, *voluisset*: sc. *senātus* as the subject.

Chap. 46. An attack by the German cavalry breaks up the conference.

1. **geruntur**: mode and tense? App.

234, a: G.-L. 570: A. 556: B. 293, I: H.-B. 559: H. 533, 4.

2. **tumulum**: case? App. 122, b: G.-L. 359, n. 1: A. 432, a: B. 141, 3: H.-B. 380, b: H. 420, 5.

5. **quod**: the adjective form of the indefinite pronoun.

6. **legiōnis dēlēctae**, "to his picked legion"; the genitive cannot always be translated by "of."

7. **committendum ut dici posset**, lit. "that it ought to be permitted that it could be said" = "that he ought to permit it to be said."

**pulsīs hostibus**, "after the defeat of the enemy."

8. **per fidem**, "because of their confidence (in Caesar's honor)." This is equivalent to saying "treacherously."

quam in vulgus militum ēlātum est quā arrogantīā in colloquiō Ariovistus ūsus omnī Galliā Rōmānīs interdixisset, impetumque 10 ut in nostrōs eius equitēs fēcissent eaque rēs colloquium dirēmisset, multō maior alacritās studiumque pugnandī maius exercituī iniectum est.

47. Bīduō post Ariovistus ad Caesarem lēgātōs mīsit: Velle sē dē iīs rēbus quae inter eōs agī coeptae neque perfectae essent agere cum eō; utī aut iterum colloquiō diem cōstitueret aut, sī id minus vellet, ēx suis lēgātīs aliquem ad sē mitteret. Colloquendī Caesarī causa vīsa nōn est, et eō magis, quod pridīe 5 eius diēi Germānī retinēri nōn potuerant quā tēla in nostrōs conicerent. Lēgātum ex suis sēsē magnō cum periculō ad eum, missūrum et hominibus ferīs obiectūrum exīstimābat. Commodissimum vīsum est C. Valerium Procillum, C. Valerī Cabūrī

10. **interdicō, -dicere, -dixi, -dictum, intr.** [dicō, say], prohibit, exclude, forbid, interdict; **aquā atque igni interdicerē, forbid the use of fire and water, banish.** 1.

11. **dirimō, -imere, -ēmī, -ēmp-**

9. **quā arrogantīā ūsus,** "using what arrogance" = "with what arrogance. It is often well to translate *ūsus* in this way.

10. **omni . . . interdixisset,** "had forbidden the Romans all Gaul." **Galliā** is an ablative of separation. **Rōmānīs** is the indirēct object.

11. **ut,** "how," introduces both *fēcissent* and *dirēmisset*. It would more naturally precede *impetum*.

Chap. 47. Ariovistus requests a second conference, but seizes the envoys sent by Caesar.

1. **bīduō post,** "on the following day." The literal meaning is "afterwards by two days," but the Latin writer counts the day of the interview as one, the next day as the second. In this case the meaning is proved by l. 5.

2. **quae agī coeptae essent,** "which had begun to be discussed," or better,

**tum, tr.** [emō, take], take apart, interrupt, break off. 1.

13. **iniciō, -icere, -lēci, -iectum, tr.** [iaciō, hurl. App. 7], throw into or upon; put or place on; inspire, infuse. 3.

9. **Procillus, -ī, m.,** Gaius Valerius

"which they had begun to discuss." The passive forms of *coepi* are used when the dependent infinitive is in the passive voice.

3. **utī cōstitueret:** a substantive clause, the object of an implied verb of asking.

4. **lēgātīs,** "legates," not "envoys." Ariovistus wished to confer with an officer of the highest rank, if Caesar should refuse a second personal interview.

5. **colloquendī . . . est,** "Caesar saw no occasion for a conference."

**pridīe eius diēi** is only a fuller expression for *pridīe*, and has the same meaning.

6. **retinēri quā conicerent,** "be kept from casting." For construction see App. 228, c: G.-L. 554: A. 558: B. 295, 3: H.-B. 502, 3, b: H. 595, 2.

8. **commodissimum vīsum est,** "it seemed best." The subject is *mittere*, l. 15.

40 filium, summā virtūte et hūmānitāte adulescentem, cuius pater ā C. Valeriō Flaccō civitāte dōnātus erat, et propter fidem et propter linguae Gallicae scientiam, quā multā iam Ariovistus longinquā cōsuētūdine ūtēbātur, et quod in eō peccandī Germānis causa nōn esset, ad eum mittere, et ūnā M. Mētium, 45 quī hospitio Ariovisti ūtēbātur. His mandāvit ut quae diceret Ariovistus cognōscerent et ad sē referrent. Quōs cum apud sē in castris Ariovistus cōspexisset, exercitū suō praesente conclāmāvit: Quid ad sē venīrent? an speculandī causā? Cōnantēs dicere prohibuit et in catēnās coniēcit.

Procillus (gā'yus vā-lē'ri-us prō-sil'us), a Gaul. 2.

Cabūrus, -ī, m., Gaius Valerius Caburus (gā'yūs vā-lē'ri-ūs kə-bū'rūs), a Gaul who possessed Roman citizenship; father of C. Valerius Procillus and C. Valerius Domnotaurus. 1.

10. adulescēns, -entis, m. [pres. part. of adolēscō, grow up], youth, young man. 4.

11. Flaccus, -ī, m., Gaius Valerius Flaccus (gā'yus vā-lē'ri-us flāk' ūs), Governor of Gaul, 83 B. C. 1.

dōnō, 1, tr. [dōnum, gift], give, present; endow with. 1.

12. scientia, -ae, f. [sciō, know],

knowledge, science, skill. 4.

13. longinquus, -a, -um, adj. [longus, long], far off, distant, remote; long, long continued. 2.

peccō, 1, intr., sin, transgress, do wrong. 1.

14. Mētius, -ti, m., Marcus Metius (mār'kūs mē'shyūs). 2.

17. cōspiciō, -spicere, -spexi, -spectum, tr. [speciō, look], look at, observe, descry, perceive. \*

conclāmō, 1, intr. [clāmō, cry out], shout or cry out, call aloud. 2.

18. speculor, 1, intr. [cf. speciō, look], spy. 1.

19. catēna, -ae, f., chain, fetter. 3.

11. civitāte dōnātus erat, "had been granted citizenship."

et . . . et (l. 12) . . . et (l. 13), "both . . . and . . . and."

12. quā multā ūtēbātur, "which Ariovistus spoke fluently."

13. in eō, "in his case."

14. Germānis: dative of possessor. esset: implied indirect discourse, for Caesar is quoting the reason which influenced him at the time of his action: "because (as he thought) the Germans had."

ūnā, "with him."

15. hospitio, "guest-friendship." This is an awkward rendering, but as we no longer recognize such a relationship we have no name for it. In its simplest form it bound two men, residing in different states, to give hospi-

talities or render other services to each other whenever occasion arose. A similar relationship might exist between a man and a state, or between two states. The obligation was peculiarly binding and sacred.

17. conclāmāvit, etc.: Ariovistus was angry at his failure to secure an interview with either Caesar or one of Caesar's legates.

18. an is not to be translated. The full thought is something like 'is it for anything else, or, etc.' By such an ellipsis of the first alternative an not infrequently introduces a simple question, though its proper place is in the second alternative of a double question.

cōnantēs, "while they were attempting."

48. Eodem diē castra prōmōvit et milibus passuum sex ā Caesaris castris sub monte cōnsēdit. Postridiē eius diēi praeter castra Caesaris suās cōpiās trādūxit et milibus passuum duobus ultrā eum castra fēcit eō cōnsiliō, utī frūmentō commeātūque quī ex Sēquanīs et Haeduīs supportārētur Caesarem inter- 5 clūderet. Ex eō diē diēs continuos quīnque Caesar prō castris suās cōpiās prōdūxit et aciem instrūctam habuit, ut, si vellet Ariovistus proeliō contendere, ei potestās nōn deesset. Ariovistus his omnibus diēbus exercitum castris continuū, equestri proeliō cotidiē contendit. Genus hoc erat pugnae 10

1. **prōmoveō, -movēre, -mōvi, -mōtum, tr.** [moveō, move], move forward, advance, push forward. 2.

4. **ultrā, prep.** with acc., beyond, on the farther side of. 2.

6. **continuus, -a, -um, adj.** [continēō, hold together], holding together,

unbroken, uninterrupted, continuous. 2.

7. **prōducō, -ducere, -dūxi, -duc-tum, tr.** [ducō, lead], lead out or forth, bring forth; prolong, protract; produce; with cōpiās, arrange, draw up. \*

10. **genus, -eris, n.,** descent, origin, race, class, tribe, family; kind, nature. \*

Chap. 48-54. After some maneuvering Caesar forces Ariovistus to give battle and destroys the German host.

Chap. 48. Ariovistus marches past Caesar's camp. The German cavalry tactics.

1. **milibus:** ablative of measure of difference. Ariovistus had been twenty-four miles north of Caesar's camp.

2. **sub monte:** at the foot of the Vosges Mountains.

**postridiē eius diēi = postridiē,** Cf. note on 47, 5.

**praeter castra:** see the plan, p. 153. Ariovistus marched on high ground along the foothills of the mountains, so that Caesar could not safely attack him as he passed the Roman camp.

5. **supportārētur:** mode? App. 274: G.-L. 663, 1: A. 593: B. 324, 1: H.-B. 539: H. 652.

**interclūderet:** Ariovistus did not encamp on the road which the convoys of provisions would have to take, for he preferred a safer position on the hills; but he was near enough to the road to cut off the supplies if they tried to pass.

6. **prō castris:** this was the favorite

position for a battle, since the camp formed a place of refuge if the Romans should be defeated (Int. 49). Although Caesar could not tempt the Germans to fight him in this position, he at least encouraged his men by making it clear that the Germans were not anxious to fight them.

7. **aciem . . . habuit,** "kept his line drawn up."

**ut deesset:** a purpose clause, although *nō* is regularly used in negative purpose clauses instead of *ut nōn*. Here *nōn* belongs closely with the verb. *nōn deesset*, lit. "might not be lacking" = "might be offered him."

8. **vellet:** implied indirect discourse, for the thought in Caesar's mind was *ei vult*, "if he wishes."

9. **castris,** "in camp." Why not *in castris*? App. 151, c: G.-L. 389: A. 409: B. 218, 7: H.-B. 423: H. 476. Ariovistus had a superstitious reason for refusing to fight, as appears later.

10. **proeliō:** cf. references on *castris*, l. 9.

**genus . . . exercuerant,** "the kind . . . was as follows."

quō sē Germānī exercuerant. Equitum milia erant sex, totidem numerō peditēs vēlōcissimī ac fortissimī, quōs ex omni cōpiā singulī singulōs suae salūtis causā dēlēgerant; cum his in proeliis versābantur, ad eōs sē equitēs recipiēbant; hī, si  
 15 quid erat dūrius, concurrēbant; sī quī graviōre vulnere acceptō equō dēciderat, circumsistēbant; sī quō erat longius prōdeundum aut celerius recipiendum, tanta erat hōrum exercitātiōne celeritās ut iubīs sublevātī equōrum cursum adaequārent.

49. Ubi eum castris sē tenēre Caesar intellēxit, nē diūtius commeātū prohibērētur, ultrā eum locum quō in locō Germānī

11. **exerceō**, 2, *tr.*, practice, train, exercise. 1.

12. **totidem**, *indecl. adj.* [tot, so many], just as many, the same number. 3.

**vēlōx**, -ōcis, *adj.*, swift, rapid, speedy. 1.

14. **versō**, 1, *tr.*, turn; deal with; *pass. as deponent*, turn one's self; be, remain; engage in; fight. \*

15. **dūrus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, hard, rough, difficult, dangerous; severe, inclement. 1.

**concurrō**, -currere, -curri, -cursum, *intr.* [currō, run], run or rush together; hurry, run, rush; run to the rescue; come, gather. 2.

16. **dēcidō**, -cidere, -cidī, —, *intr.* [cadō, fall], fall from or off. 1.

**circumsistō**, -sistere, -stitī, —, *tr.*

[**sistō**, stand], stand, flock or rally around, surround, hem in. \*

**quō**, *adv.* [old *dat. case form of qui*, who, which], (1) *interrog.*, whither? to what place? (2) *rel.*, to which, to whom; to where, whither; toward which; where, wherein; (3) *indef.*, to any place, anywhere. \*

**prōdeō**, -ire, -itum, *intr.* [prō+eō, go. App. 84], go or come forth, go forward, advance. 2.

18. **celeritās**, -tātis, *f.* [celer, swift], swiftness, quickness, speed. \*

**iuba**, -ae, *f.*, mane. 1.

**cursus**, -ūs, *m.* [currō, run], running, speed; course, career; passage, voyage. \*

19. **adaequō**, 1, *tr.* [aequō, make equal], make level with or equal to, equal; keep up with. 3.

12. **numerō**: ablative of specification, with *totidem*.

13. **singulī singulōs dēlēgerant**, lit. "individuals had chosen individuals" = "had chosen, each for himself."

14. **versābantur**, etc.: tense? App. 191, a: G.-L. 233: A. 470: B. 260, 2: H.-B. 484: H. 534, 3.

**hī . . . concurrēbant**, "if there was anything too hard (for the cavalry to accomplish), the infantry ran to their aid."

15. **quī**: the substantive indefinite

pronoun, instead of the more usual *quis*.

16. **quō**: this adverb, like the pronoun *quis*, is used as an indefinite after *sī*, *nisi*, *nē*, and *num*.

Chap. 49. Caesar constructs a smaller camp, beyond the camp of Ariovistus.

1. **eum** = *Ariovistum*.

**nē . . . prohibērētur**: the plan shows that the second camp commanded the road and protected it from the Germans.

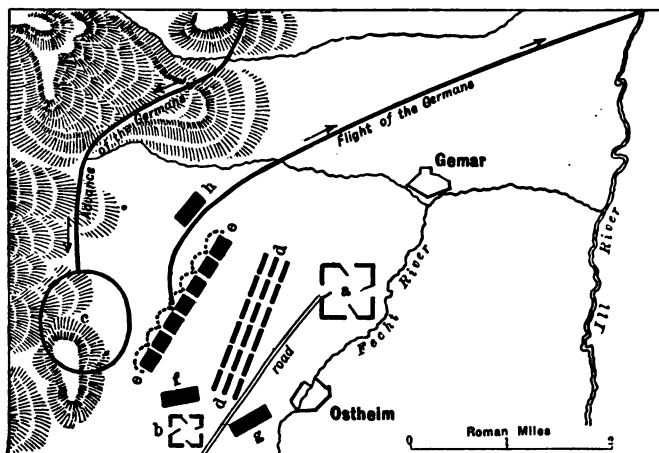
cōnsēderant, circiter passūs sescentōs ab iis, castrīs idōneum locum dēlēgit aciēque triplici instrūctā ad eum locum vēnit. Primam et secundam aciem in armīs esse, tertiam castra mūnīre iussit. Hīc locus ab hoste circiter passūs sescentōs, utī dictum est, aberat. Eō circiter hominū sēdecim milia expedita cum omni equitatū Ariovistus mīsīt, quae cōpiā nostrōs perterrērent et mūnitiōne prohibērent. Nihilō sētius Caesar, ut ante cōstituerat, duās aciēs hostem propulsāre, tertiam opus

3. *idōneus*, -a, -um, *adj.*, fit, suitable, adapted. \*

9. *sētius*, *adv.*, less, otherwise; *nihilō*

15 *sētius*, none the less, nevertheless likewise. 2.

10. *propulsō*, 1, *tr.* [freq. of *prō-*



BATTLE WITH ARIOVISTUS.

a, Large Roman camp.  
b, Small Roman camp.  
c, Camp of the Germans.  
d, The Roman legions.

e, The German infantry.  
f, The Roman auxiliaries.  
g, The Roman cavalry.  
h, The German cavalry.

3. *castris*: dative with the adjective *idōneum*.

4. *aciēs triplici*: see Int. 56. Usually the army marched in column; but on this occasion it had to expect an attack at any moment, and therefore it marched in battle formation.

5. *in armīs*: to repel the expected attack.

7. *hominū . . . expedita*, lit. "sixteen light-armed thousands of men" = "sixteen thousand light-armed infantry."

perficere iussit. Mūnitis castris duās ibi legiōnēs reliquit et partem auxiliōrum, quattuor reliquās in castra maiōra redūxit. ✓ 50. Proximō diē institūtō suō Caesar ex castris utrīsq̄e cōpiās suās ēdūxit, paulumque ā maiōribus castris prōgressus aciem instrūxit, hostibusque pugnandī potestātem fēcit. Ubi nē tum quidem eōs prōdire intellēxit, circiter meridiē exercitum 5 in castra redūxit. Tum dēmūm Ariovistus partem suārum cōpiārum quae castra minōra oppugnāret mīsīt. Ācriter utrimque usque ad vesperum pugnātum est. Sōlis occāsū suās cōpiās Ariovistus multīs et illātīs et acceptīs vulneribus in castra redūxit. Cum ex captivīs quaereret Caesar quam ob 10 rem Ariovistus proeliō nōn dēcertāret, hanc reperiēbat causam, quod apud Germānōs ea cōsuetūdō esset, ut matrēs familiae

pellō, drive forward], drive back, repel; ward off. 1.

2. paulum, *adv.* [paulus, little], a little, somewhat, slightly. \*

prōgredior, -gredi, -gressus sum, *intr.* [gradior, step], step or go forward, advance, proceed, go. \*

4. meridiēs, -ēī, *m.*, [for medidiēs,

from medius, middle+diēs, day], the middle of the day, midday, noon; the south. 1.

7. utrimque, *adv.* [uterque, each of two], on each side, on both sides. 2.

usque, *adv.* (1) of place, all the way to, even to, as far as; (2) of time, up to, till; with ad, until. 3.

12. reliquās: sc. legiōnēs.

redūxit: although Caesar's forces were divided, he had regained the control of the communications and was in a position to fall upon Ariovistus's flank if he should attack either of the Roman camps.

Chap. 50. Ariovistus unsuccessfully attacks the smaller camp. Caesar learns that he wishes to postpone the decisive battle.

1. institūtō: ablative of accordance.

2. paulum . . . prōgressus: Caesar had failed to secure a battle in the position most favorable to himself (see 48, 6, and note); therefore he now offered battle in a position equally favorable to both armies.

7. utrimque pugnātum est, "both sides fought."

9. quam ob rem, "why," is here in-

terrogative and introduces an indirect question.

10. proeliō: see note on castris, 48, 9. dēcertāret: i.e. fight a general and decisive battle.

11. quod ea cōsuetūdō esset, "that there was this custom," is a substantive quod clause in apposition with hanc causam. The subjunctive is due to implied indirect discourse.

ut dēclārarent: a substantive clause of result in apposition with ea cōsuetūdō.

matrēs familiae: Tacitus tells us that the Germans ascribed prophetic powers to their women. He describes the lots (sortibus, l. 12) as twigs, cut into small pieces, marked, and scattered on a white cloth. Three of them were picked up at random, and an examination of the marks (runes) disclosed the will of the gods.

eōrum sortibus et vāticinātiōnibus dēclārarent utrum proelium committi ex ūsū esset necne; eās ita dicere: Nōn esse fās Germānōs superāre, sī ante novam lūnam proeliō contendissent.

51. Postfīdiē eius diēi Caesar praesidiō utrisque castris quod satis esse vīsum est reliquit; ālāriōs omnēs in cōspectū hostium prō castris minōribus cōstituit, quod minus multitudīne militum legiōnāriōrum prō hostium numerō valēbat, ut ad speciem ālāriis ūteretur; ipse triplici instrūctā aciē usque ad castra hostium accessit. Tum dēmum necessariō Germāni suās cōpiās castris ēdūxerunt generātimque cōstituērunt

12. *sors, sortis, f., lot, chance, fate; casting or drawing of lots.* 3.

vāticinātiō, -ōnis, *f., divination.* 1.  
dēclārō, 1, *tr. [clārus, clear], make plain, declare.* 1.

13. *necne, conj. [nec, nor+ -ne], or not.* 1.

-ne, *interrog. enclitic; in direct questions, simply sign of a question* (App. 213, a); *in indirect questions, whether; -ne ... -ne, -ne ... an, utrum ...*

-ne, *whether ... or.* 2.

fās, *n., indecl., right, divine right, will of Heaven.* 1.

14. lūna, -ae, *f., the moon.* 2.

2. ālārius, -a, -um, *adj. [āla, wing], on the wing; pl. as noun, auxiliaries.* 2.

5. speciēs, -ei, *f. [speciō, see], seeing, sight; look, appearance, show, presence.* 4.

7. generātim, *adv. [genus, tribe], by tribes.* 1.

12. *utrum ... necne: construction?* App. 214; 261, c: G.-L. 458; 459: A. 334; 335, n.: B. 162, 4; 300, 4, a: H.-B. 234, a: H. 380; 650, 1.

14. *si contendissent, "if they should fight." contendissent stands for a future perfect of the direct form.*

*novam lūnam: this fell on Sept. 18.*

Chap. 51. Caesar compels Ariovistus to prepare for battle.

2. *quod ... visum est, "(a garrison) which seemed to be sufficient."*

ālāriōs: the word got the meaning "auxiliaries" from the fact that in earlier times the Romans posted the auxiliaries on the wings of the battle-line. For Caesar's use of such troops see Int. 47.

3. *multitudīne: ablative of specification.*

4. *prō, "in comparison with."*

6. *necessariō: the Germans did not entrench their camps. As Caesar was*

evidently about to attack them, and as there was no room for a battle-line in their camp, they had to come out. Caesar probably had to make the attack uphill, but there was a great advantage in forcing the enemy to fight at a time when they believed they could not conquer.

7. *generātim, etc.: about 150 years later, Tacitus speaks thus of the Germans: "And what most stimulates their courage is, that their squadrons or battalions, instead of being formed by chance or by a fortuitous gathering, are composed of families and clans. Close by them, too, are those dearest to them, so that they hear the shrieks of women, the cries of infants. They are to every man the most sacred witnesses of his bravery—they are his most generous applauders. The soldier brings his wounds to mother and wife, who shrink not from counting or even demanding them, and who administer both food*

paribus intervallis, Harūdēs, Marcomannōs, Tribocōs, Vangionēs, Nemetēs, Sedusiōs, Suēbōs, omnemque aciem suam raedis  
 10 et carris circumdederunt, nē qua spēs in fugā relinquerētur.  
 Eō mulierēs imposuerunt, quae ad proelium proficiscentēs  
 militēs passis manibus flentēs implorābant nē sē in servitūtem  
 Rōmānis trāderent.

52. Caesar singulis legiōnibus singulōs lēgātōs et quaestōrem  
 praefecit, uti eōs testēs suae quisque virtutis haberet; ipse ā  
 dextrō cornū, quod eam partem minimē firmam hostium esse  
 animadverterat, proelium commisit. Ita nostrī ācriter in hostēs  
 5 signō datō impetum fecerunt, itaque hostēs repente celeriterque  
 prōcurrerunt ut spatium pīla in hostēs coniciendī nōn darētur.  
 Rēiectis pilis comminus gladiis pugnātum est. At Germāni,  
 celeriter ex cōsuētūdine suā phalange factā, impetūs gladiōrum  
 excēperunt. Reperti sunt complūrēs nostrī quī in phalangem

8. **Marcomanni**, -ōrum, *m.* (B1), the Marcomanni (mār'kō-mān'i). 1.

**Triboci**, -ōrum, *m.* (Bgh), the Triboci (trib'ō-si). 2.

**Vangiones**, -um, *m.* (Bgh), the Vangiones (vān-j'ō-nēz). 1.

9. **Nemetēs**, -um, *m.* (Bh), the Nemetes (nēm'ē-tēz). 1.

**Sedusi**, -ōrum, *m.* (Bh), the Sedusi (sē-dū'shyi). 1.

12. **pandō**, **pandere**, **pandī**, **passum**, *tr.*, spread or stretch out, extend; **passis capillis**, with disheveled hair; **passis manibus**, with outstretched hands. 2.

1. **quaestor**, -ōris, *m.* [quaerō,

and encouragement to the combatants." (Church and Brodribb's translation of the *Germania*).

8. **intervallis**: ablative of attendant circumstance.

10. **circumdederunt**: i.e. on the rear and both flanks.

11. **eō**, "on them," is the adverb.

Chap. 52. A fierce battle is fought.

1. **singulis . . . praefecit**: i.e. each of the six legions was put under the command of either the quaestor or one

seek], a quaestor (kwēs'tōr), one of a class of officers in charge of the public revenues or the finances of the army. 3.

3. **dexter**, -tra, -trum, *adj.*, on the right, right. 4.

**cornū**, -ūs, *n.*, horn; (of an army) flank, wing. \*

5. **repente**, *adv.* [repēs, sudden], suddenly, unexpectedly. 2.

6. **prōcurrō**, -currere, -curri, -cursum, *intr.* [currō, run], run or rush forward, rush out, charge. 1.

7. **comminus**, *adv.* [manus, hand], hand to hand, in close contest. 1.

9. **excipiō**, -cipere, -cēpi, -ceptum, *tr. and intr.* [capio, take], *tr.*, take up,

of the five legates. See Int. 38, 39.  
 3. **eam partem**: i.e. the enemy's left wing.

5. **signō datō**: by trumpeters.  
**itaque** = *et ita*.

6. **pīla . . . coniciendī**: on this and other details of the battle see Int. 55.

7. **rēiectis**, "throwing aside." The *pīla* were intended only for casting, and were useless in a hand-to-hand encounter.

8. **phalange**: on this formation see 24, 11, note.

9. **in phalangem insillirent**: i.e.

insilirent et scūta manibus revellerent et dēsuper vulnerārent. 10  
Cum hostium aciēs ā sinistrō cornū pulsa atque in fugam  
coniecta esset, ā dextrō cornū vehēmenter multitūdine suōrum  
nostram aciem premēbant. Id cum animadvertisset P. Crassus  
adulēscēns, quī equitatūi praeerat, quod expeditior erat quam  
ī quī inter aciem versābantur, tertiam aciem labōrantibus nos- 15  
tris subsidiō misit.

53. Ita proelium restitūtum est, atque omnēs hostēs terga  
vertērunt nec prius fugere dēstitērunt quam ad flūmen Rhēnum  
milia passuum ex eō locō circiter quīnque pervēnērunt. Ibi

catch, receive; take up (*in turn*); meet,  
withstand; relieve (*of soldiers in battle*);  
*intr.*, follow. \*

10. **insiliō**, -sillire, -silui, -sultum,  
*tr.* [saliō, leap], leap upon. 1.

**revellō**, -vellere, -vellī, -vulsum,  
*tr.* [re-+vellō, pluck], pluck or tear  
away, pull out. 1.

**dēsuper**, *adv.* [super, above], from  
above. 1.

13. **premō**, -premere, -pressi, -pres-  
sum, *tr.*, press, press upon, press hard;  
oppress, burden, annoy, harass. \*

**Crassus**, -I, *m.* Publius Licinius  
Crassus (pūb'li-ūs li-sin'i-ūs krās'ūs)

one of Caesar's lieutenants, a son of the  
triumvir. \*

16. **subsidiū**, -di, *n.* [subsidiō,  
sit near or in reserve], sitting in reserve;  
reserve force, reserves; help, aid, as-  
sistance. \*

1. **tergum**, -I, *n.*, the back; **terga**  
**vertere**, to flee; **post tergum** or **ab**  
**tergō**, in the rear. \*

2. **vertō**, **vertere** **verti** **versum**, *tr.*,  
turn, turn around; **terga** **vertere**,  
flee. \*

**fugiō**, **fugere**, **fugi**, **fugitum**, *tr.* and  
*intr.* [fuga, flight], flee, run away,  
escape; *tr.*, shun, avoid. 4.

the soldiers leaped on the roof of shields.  
If the Romans had been able to begin the  
battle with the customary volley of  
javelins, this solid array of shields  
would have been broken up as it was in  
the battle with the Helvetii, 25, 3-10. **in-**  
**silirent**: subjunctive in a clause of  
characteristic.

11. **cum**, "though."  
4. **sinistrō cornū**, "on the left  
wing," which was the weakest part of  
the German line.

14. **expeditior**, "freer to act."  
Crassus and the cavalry were posted be-  
hind the Roman left wing (see plan, p.  
153), out of the way of the German cav-  
alry, for whom they were no match.  
They were taking no part in the battle,  
but were waiting to pursue the enemy  
when the legions should win the victory.

15. **tertiā aciem**: as usual, this  
was being held in reserve for just such  
an emergency.

**labōrantibus nostris subsidiō**, "to  
the assistance of our hard-pressed men."

**Chap. 53.** The Germans are routed.  
Caesar's envoys are rescued.

1. **terga vertērunt**: the line of wag-  
ons (51, 9) might hinder their flight, but  
could not entirely prevent it. It is pos-  
sible, too, that during the battle the  
Germans had advanced so far that  
there was space enough for flight be-  
tween the wagons and the German line.

2. **flūmen Rhēnum**: as the Rhine is  
much more than five miles from the  
battlefield, it is probable that the Ill  
river is meant, and that Caesar mistook  
it for the Rhine.

perpauci aut viribus cōfisi trānāre contendērunt aut lintribus  
 5 inventis sibi salutem reppererunt; in his fuit Ariovistus, qui  
 nāviculam dēligatam ad ripam nactus eā profūgit; reliquos  
 omnes cōsecūti equites nostri interfecērunt. \* Duae fuērunt  
 Ariovisti uxōrēs, ūna Suēba nātiōne, quam domō sēcum  
 10 dūxerat, ā frātre missam; utraque in eā fugā periit. Fuērunt  
 duae filiae: hārum altera occisa, altera capta est. C. Valerius  
 Procillus, cum ā custōdibus in fugā trīnis catēnis vinctus  
 traheretur, in ipsum Caesarem hostēs equitatū insequentem  
 incidit. Quae quidem rēs Caesarī nōn minōrem quam ipsa  
 15 victōria voluptātem attulit, quod hominem honestissimum  
 prōvinciae Galliae, suum familiārem et hospitem, ēreptum ex  
 manibus hostium sibi restitūtum vidēbat, neque eius calamitāte

4. trānō, 1, *intr.* [trāns+nō, swim], swim across. 1.

5. invenīō, -venīre, -vēnī, -ventum, *tr.* [venīō, come], come upon, find, meet with; find out, learn. 2.

6. nāvicula, -ae, *f.* [*dim.* of nāvis, ship], small boat, skiff. 1.

dēligō, 1, *tr.* [ligō, bind], bind or tie down, fasten, moor. 2.

nanciscor, nancisci, nactus sum, *tr.*, get, obtain possession of; meet with, find. \*

8. nātīō, -ōnis, *f.* [nāscor, be born], race, tribe, people, nation. \*

9. Vocciō, -ōnis, *m.*, Voccio (vōk'-shyō), *a king of Noricum.* 1.

10. pereō, -īre, -ī, -itum, *intr.* [eō, go. App. 84], be destroyed or killed,

4. viribus: case? App. 143, a: G.-L. 401, n. 6: A. 431: B. 219, 1: H.-B. 437: H. 476, 3.

5. Ariovistus: four years later we hear that the Germans desired to avenge his death. Possibly he died of wounds received in this battle.

6. eā, "in this," is an ablative of means.

reliquos omnes: it is stated by Plutarch that 80,000 were killed in the battle and retreat.

perish. 2.

12. trīni, -ae, -a, *distr. num. adj.*, three each; three, triple. 1.

vinciō, vincire, vinxi, vinctum, *tr.*, bind. 1.

13. trahō, trahere, trāxi, tractum, *tr.*, drag, drag along. 1.

14. inciō, -cidere, -cidi, —, *intr.* [cadō, fall], fall into or upon; fall in with, meet; happen, arise. 2.

15. voluptās, -tātis, *f.* [volō, wish], what one wishes; pleasure, delight, enjoyment. 2.

honestus, -a, -um, *adj.* [honōs, honor], honorable, worthy, distinguished, eminent. 1.

16. hospes, -itis, *m.*, host, entertainer; guest, friend; stranger. 1.

7. duae uxōrēs: among the Germans polygamy was permitted in the case of the nobles only.

8. nātiōne: ablative of specification.

10. dūxerat: "had married"; while dūxerat in l. 9 means "had brought."

12. Procillus: cf. 47, 9.

13. Insequentem, "who was following."

17. neque . . . dēminuerat, "nor had Fortune, by injury to Procillus,

dē tantā voluptātē et grātulātiōne quicquam fortūna dēminuerat. Is sē praesente dē sē tē sortibus cōsultum dicēbat utrum igni statim necārētur an in aliud tempus reservārētur; sortium 20 beneficiō sē essē incolumem. Item M. Mētius repertus et ad eum reductus est.

54. Hōc proeliō trāns Rhēnum nūntiātō, Suēbī quī ad ripās Rhēnī vēnerant domum reverti coepērunt; quōs Ubiī, quī proximī Rhēnum incolunt, perterritōs īsecūtī magnum ex iis numerum occidērunt. Caesar, ūnā aestāte duōbus maximis bellis cōfectis, mātūrius paulō quam tempus annī pōstulābat, 5 in hiberna in Sēquanōs exercitū dēdūxit; hibernis Labiēnum praeposuit; ipse in cīteriōrem Galliam ad conventūs agendōs profectus est.

18. grātulātīō, -ōnis, *f.* [grātulor, express joy], expression of joy, congratulation, rejoicing. 1.

19. tē, *num. adv.* [cf. trēs, three], three times. 1.

cōsultō, -ere, -ui, -tum, *tr. and intr.*; *tr.*, take counsel, consult, consider; *intr. with dat.*, take counsel for, study the interests of, take care of; spare. 1.

20. statim, *adv.* [stō, stand], as one stands, hence, forthwith, immediately, at once. \*

necō, 1. *tr.* [nec, death], put to death, kill, murder. 2.

reservō, 1. *tr.* [re-+ser-vō, save, keep], keep back, save up, reserve. 2.

21. incolumis, -e, *adj.*, unhurt, uninjured, safe and sound, unimpaired. 4.

2. Ubiī, -ērū, *m.* (ABgh), the Ubiī (ū'bī-i). \*

4. aestās, -tātis, *f.*, summer. \*

5. paulō, *adv.* [paulus, little], a little, somewhat, slightly. \*

7. praepōnō, -pōnere, -posui, -positum, *tr.* [pōnō, place], place before or over, put in command of, put in charge of. 1.

lessened in any degree Caesar's great satisfaction and rejoicing"; lit. "lessened anything of," quicquam being the direct object.

19. sē praesente, "in his presence."

cōsultum: sc. esse.

20. necārētur: this is an indirect question, but the subjunctive is not due to that fact: App. 210; 263: G.-L. 265; 467: A. 444; 575, b: B. 277; 300, 2: H.-B. 503: H. 559, 4.

Chap. 54. The fate of the Suebi. Arrangements for the winter.

1. quī . . . vēnerant: cf. 37, 5.

3. Rhēnum: case? App. 122, b. G.-L.

359, n. 1: A. 432, a: B. 141, 3: H.-B. 380, b: H. 435, 2.

5. mātūrius paulō: in the latter half of September. The army needed rest after such arduous labors.

6. in Sēquanōs: probably in Vesontio. The quartering of the army on Gallic soil signified Caesar's intention to assume a protectorate over Gaul, and thus brought about the Belgic uprising of the following year.

7. ad conventūs agendōs, "to hold the provincial courts." This was a part of his duty as governor of the province. Moreover he wished to be as near Rome as possible in order to keep in touch with affairs there.

## BOOK II. WAR WITH THE BELGAE

Caesar's first year of fighting had brought central Gaul under Roman control (see map facing p. 117), and this fact was made clear to the Gauls when Caesar kept his army through the winter in Vesontio; for no Roman army had ever before been stationed north of the Province. The Belgae, fearing that they would be attacked next, formed during the winter a league of defense, and levied a force of nearly three hundred thousand men, which they massed not far from the southern frontier. Early in the spring Caesar moved against them. At his approach the Remi, ambitious to gain supreme power in Belgium as the Haedui had in central Gaul, came to terms with him and furnished him valuable information regarding the strength of the allied army. At first he did not venture to attack with his much smaller army an enemy so noted for daring and warlike skill as the Belgae. (Therefore he chose a strong position on the Axona (*Aisne*) river, and sent a force of the Haedui under Diviciacus to ravage the territory of the Bellovaci, hoping by this means to break up the army of the enemy. The Belgae made an unsuccessful assault upon Bibrax, a town of the Remi, and then encamped before Caesar's position on the Axona. A little skirmishing discouraged the badly organized and poorly fed Belgic army. The men of each state went off to defend their own territory, all falsely promising to come to the rescue of whichever state Caesar should first attack. Caesar was thus left free to deal with the states one at a time.

Sweeping through western Belgium he quickly received the submission of the Suessiones, the Bellovaci, and the Ambiani. No doubt the neighboring states too sent envoys of peace, though they are not mentioned. The eastern tribes, however, still remained unconquered and defiant. Forming a second and closer union, the Nervii, the Viromandui, and the Atrebates assembled a numerous army in the forests near the Sabis (*Sambre*) river, and planned to surprise and destroy the legions while separated on the march. When the Roman van reached the stream and began to fortify a camp, the enemy suddenly burst out of the coverts near by and fell upon it; Caesar was taken unawares. So fierce was the conflict and so great the danger that he seized a shield and fought in the foremost rank. After long uncertainty, Roman tactics and discipline prevailed. The enemy lost

heavily, especially the Nervii, who made the last desperate stand and were slain almost to a man.

The battle of the Sabis was decisive. Only the Atuatucaii dared to raise a brave but ineffectual opposition. They were quickly subdued, and on account of an attempt at treachery were sold into slavery. The conquest of Belgium was complete, with the exception of the Morini and the Menapii, who were not attacked and who sent no envoys. With his customary moderation Caesar was content with a general disarmament and the furnishing of hostages. The treacherous Remi were raised to supreme power in Belgium, and were thus firmly attached to the Roman interest.

Meanwhile, the states of northwestern Gaul had submitted to Publius Crassus, Caesar's legate, apparently without fighting.

This is one of the most interesting of the Gallic campaigns in its presentation of the strong qualities of the Roman leader. His tactical skill, celerity of movement, energy, and courage are seen at their best. Yet the surprise at the Sabis was due to his failure to observe the most common rules of prudence in the presence of the enemy. That it was not a disastrous defeat must be attributed chiefly to the excellence of his soldiers.

## EXPLANATION OF CAMPAIGN MAP

For the meaning of the colors, see the explanation of the campaign map for **I, 1-29**, facing p. 42.

The same territory is colored red as in the campaign map for **I, 30-54**, facing p. 117. In addition, the Nervii, the Viromandui, the Atrebatas, and the Atuatucae are colored red, for they seriously fought with Caesar.

Most of the rest of Belgium is colored blue, though it is hard to decide between blue and red for some of the states. Although all the states had promised to send quotas to the great army which melted away before Caesar at the Axona, we cannot be sure how many did so; and it can hardly be said that Caesar won the submission of the several states by defeating that army. The Suessiones prepared to fight, but did not do so. The Bellovaci and the Ambiani did not even prepare to fight. Therefore these three states are colored blue. The states which are not mentioned must in general have sent embassies of submission; but the Morini and the Menapii are left uncolored, because in **III, 28** we are told that they had never sued for peace.

The northwestern states mentioned in chap. **34** are colored blue. Crassus went to them with only one legion, and the events of Book **III** make it certain that one legion could not have defeated those states in battle. Evidently they submitted without fighting.

The battle-fields on the Axona and on the Sabis are as certain as they well can be. The site of the town of the Atuatucae is very uncertain. The one indicated on the map is Mont Falhize, championed by Von Göler (*Caesars Gallischer Krieg*, pp. 90 ff.). Caesar does not tell us that the town was on a river; but all the other sites which have been suggested are open to more serious objections.



Campaign Map for Book II



## LIBER SECUNDUS.

1. Cum esset Caesar in citeriøre Galliä, ita uti suprà dēmōnstrāvimus, crēbri ad eum rŭmōrēs afferēbantur, litterisque item Labiēni certior fiēbat omnēs Belgās, quam tertiam esse Galliae partem dixerāmus, contrā populum Rōmānum coniūrāre obsidesque inter sē dare. Coniūrandī hās esse causās: primum, quod verērentur nē omni pācātā Galliā ad eōs exercitus noster adducerētur; deinde, quod ab nōn nullis Gallis sollicitārentur,

1. *suprà*, *adv. and prep. with acc.* (1) *as adv.*, before, previously; (2) *as prep. with acc.*, above; before. \*

2. *crēber*, -bra, -brum, *adj.*, thick, close, repeated, numerous, frequent, at short intervals. *Comp. crēbrior*; *sup.*, *crēberrimus* (App. 40). 4.

*rŭmor*, -ōris, *m.*, hearsay, report, rumor. 2.

*afferō*, *afferre*, *attuli*, *allātum*, *tr.*

[*ad+ferō*, carry. App 81], bring, take or carry to, present; occasion, cause; bring forward, allege; report. 3.

4. *coniūrō*, 1, *intr.* [*iūrō*, swear], swear or take an oath together, league together, conspire. \*

7. *sollicitō*, 1, *tr.*, move violently, stir up, agitate; incite, tempt, instigate. 2.

Chap. 1. The Belgae form a league against Caesar.

1. *citeriøre Galliä*: Caesar's province south of the Alps; now northern Italy.

*dēmōnstrāvimus*: in I. 54. Caesar uses the rhetorical *we*. Caesar the writer is spoken of in the first person, Caesar the general in the third.

3. *Labiēni*: as commander of the winter quarters, he of course sent regular reports to Caesar on all matters of importance.

*certior fiēbat*, "was informed from time to time." The imperfect of repeated action.

*Belgās*: see Int. 28.

*quam . . . dixerāmus*, "who, as I said, are a third part of Gaul." *quam* refers to *Belgās*, but agrees in gender and number with the predicate noun *partem*. The pluperfect *dixerāmus* is occasionally used in such statements

instead of the more common perfect.

4. *coniūrāre*, "were forming a league," not "conspiring." The Belgae were not rebelling, for they had never been subject to Rome. Caesar had no scruples about conquering them, but he did not treat them as rebels.

6. *quod verērentur*; a substantive *quod* clause, in apposition with *causās*. The subjunctive is due to indirect discourse.

*omni . . . Galliä*, "now that all Gaul had been brought under control." *Galliä* here refers only to Celtic Gaul. See Int. 23.

7. *sollicitārentur*: the indirect discourse still continues, but stops at this point. Apparently Labienus reported the two reasons for the action of the Belgae, but Caesar himself supplies the three reasons why Celtic Gauls instigated a rising of the Belgae.

partim quī, ut Germānōs diūtius in Galliā versārī nōluerant, ita populī Rōmānī exercitum hiemāre atque inveterāscere in 10 Galliā molestē ferēbant, partim quī mōbilitāte et levitāte animī novīs imperiīs studēbant, ab nōn nūllīs etiam, quod in Galliā ā potentiōribus atque iīs quī ad condūcendōs hominēs facultātēs habēbant vulgō rēgna occupābantur, quī minus facile eam rem imperiō nostrō cōsequī poterant.

8. **partim**, *adv.* [*acc. of pars, part*], partly, in part; **partim** . . . **partim**, some . . . others. 4.

**versō**, 1, *tr.*, turn; deal with; *pass. as deponent*, turn one's self; be, remain; engage in; fight. \*

9. **inveterāscō**, -**veterāscere**, -**veterāvi**, -**veterātum**, *intr.*, grow old; become established. 1.

10. **molestē**, *adv.*, with annoyance;

**molestē ferre**, be annoyed. 1.

**mōbilitās**, -**tātis**, *f.* [*mōbilis*, movable], movableness, activity, speed; changeableness, fickleness, inconstancy. 2.

**levitās**, -**tātis**, *f.* [*levis*, light], lightness; fickleness, restlessness. 1.

13. **vulgō**, *adv.* [*vulgus*, the crowd], commonly; everywhere. 2.

8. **partim quī**, "some of whom"; i.e. the opponents of all foreigners.

10. **partim quī**, "others of whom." **mōbilitāte et levitāte**: Caesar often speaks of these qualities as characteristic of the Gauls.

11. **ab nōn nūllīs** (*solicittārentur*): a third class, such men as Orgetorix (I, 2), Casticus (I, 3), and Dumnorix (I, 18).

12. **ad . . . hominēs**, "for employing mercenaries."

13. **quī . . . poterant**: see Int. 29, end. Of course this power of the nobles would be held in check by a strong government like that of the Romans.

14. **imperiō nostrō**: case? App. 143, b: G.-L. 399: B. 221: H.-B. 423, I: H. 473, 3.

\*1. **esset**: mode? App. 240; 242, a: G.-L. 579, II, a; 585: A. 546: B. 288, 1, b: H.-B. 524: H. 600, II.

2. **litteris**: case? App. 143: G.-L. 401: A. 409: B. 218: H.-B. 423: H. 476.

3. **Labiēni**: case? App. 98: G.-L. 363, 1: A. 343, n. 1: B. 199: H.-B. 344: H. 440, 1. **certior**: case? App. 156; 157: G.-L. 205; 206; 211: A. 283; 284; 286: B. 233, 2; 234: H.-B. 316; 317, 3: H. 394.

**Belgās**: case? App. 123: G.-L. 343, 2: A. 397, c: B. 184: H.-B. 398: H. 415.

4. **coniūrāre**: construction? App. 266: G.-L. 650: A. 580: B. 314, 1: H.-B. 534, 1: H. 642.

**obsidēs**: case? App. 124: G.-L. 330: A. 387: B. 172: H.-B. 390: H. 404.

6. **verērentur**: mode? App. 269: G.-L. 650: A. 580: B. 314, 1: H.-B. 534, 2, I: H. 643.

**Galliā**: case? App. 150: G.-L. 409; 410: A. 419; 420, 2: B. 227, 2, d: H.-B. 421, 4: H. 489, 1.

7. **addūcerētur**: mode? App. 223, b: G.-L. 550, 2: A. 564: B. 296, 2: H.-B. 502, 4: H. 567, 1.

**Gallis**: case? App. 137: G.-L. 401: A. 405: B. 216: H.-B. 406, 1: H. 468.

9. **populī**: case? App. 99: G.-L. 363: A. 343: B. 196: H.-B. 339: H. 440, 1.

10. **mōbilitāte**: case? App. 138: G.-L. 408: A. 404: B. 219: H.-B. 444: H. 475.

11. **imperiis**: case? App. 115: G.-L. 346, 2: A. 367: B. 187, II, a: H.-B. 363, footnote 3, (b): H. 426, 1.

13. **occupābantur**: mode? App. 244: G.-L. 539: A. 540: B. 286, 1: H.-B. 554; 555: H. 588, I.

\*These grammar references are as far as possible duplicates of those given in the notes on each of the first 29 chapters of Book I. They are given for the convenience

2. His nūntiis litterisque commōtus Caesar duās legiōnēs in ceteriōre Galliā novās cōscripsit et initā aestāte, in ulteriōrem Galliam quī dēdūceret, Q. Pedium lēgātum mīsīt. Ipse, cum primum pābuli cōpia esse inciperet, ad exercitum vēnit. Dat negōtium Senonibus reliquisque Gallis qui finitimī Belgīs erant uti ea quae apud eōs gerantur cognōscant sēque dē his rēbus certiōrem faciant. Hi cōstanter omnēs nūntiāvērunt manūs cōgi, exercitum in ūnum locum condūcī. Tum vērō dubitandum

2. ineō, -ire, -ī, -itum, *tr.* [eō, go. App. 84], go into; enter upon, begin; inire cōsiliū, form; inire ratiōnem, make an estimate, decide; inire grātiam, gain; inire numerum, enumerate. \*

aestās, -tātis, *f.*, summer. \*

3. dēdūcō, -dūcere, -dūxi, -dūctum, *tr.* [dūcō, lead], lead down or away, withdraw; bring, conduct, lead; influence; launch (*ships*); give in marriage. \*

Q., *abbr.* for Quintus, Quintus (kwīn'tūs), a Roman praenomen. \*

Pedius, -di, *m.*, Quintus Pedius (kwīn'tūs pē'di-ūs), one of Caesar's lieutenants. 2

4. incipiō, -cipere, -cēpi, -ceptum, *tr.* [capio, take], undertake; begin, commence. 1.

5. negōtium, -ti, *n.* [neg- + ōtium, leisure], concern, business, undertaking; trouble, difficulty, labor; negōtium dare, employ, direct; quid negōti, what business; nihil negōti, no difficulty. \*

Senonēs, -um, *m.* (Bel), the Senones (sēn'ō-nēz). 1.

7. cōstanter, *adv.* [cōnstō, stand firm], uniformly, consistently; resolutely. 2.

8. vērō, *adv.* [vērus, true], in truth, truly, really, indeed; but, however, on the other hand. \*

3. quī (cūs) dēdūceret, "to take them."

cum primum: in June. *Cum primum* usually takes the indicative.

6. gerantur: Caesar said *ea quae gerantur cognōscite*, "find out what is being done." *gerantur* is the subjunctive of implied indirect discourse: App. 273: G.-L. 628: A. 592, 3, note: B. 333: H.-B. 535, 1, a: H. 649, 1.

7. manūs cōgi, "that armed bands were gathering."

8. dubitandum (*sibi esse*) quīn proficiscerētur, lit. "that it ought to be hesitated by him that he should set out." = "that he should hesitate to set out." When *dubitō* means "hesitate" it is usually followed by the infinitive. See App. 229, d: G.-L. 505, 2, R. 3: A. 558, a, n. 2:

Chap. 2-4. Caesar marches to Belgium and gets information from the Remi.

Chap. 2. Caesar makes preparations and moves against the Belgae.

1. duās legiōnēs: Caesar now had eight legions, numbered consecutively from VII to XIV, approximately 32,000 legionary soldiers. In addition he had auxiliary cavalry and infantry, on whom, however, he placed little reliance. See Int. 32, 33.

2. initā aestāte, "after the beginning of warm weather." *Aestās* included more than our summer, and the time here meant is spring.

in ulteriōrem Galliam: i.e. to join the other legions in Vesontio. See map facing p. 162.

of teachers who begin the study of Caesar with Book II. References are given three times for each of the most common principles of syntax, in order that it may be studied and twice reviewed.

nōn exīstimāvit quīn ad eōs proficīscerētur. Rē frūmentāriā  
10 comparātā castra movet diēbusque circiter quīndecim ad finēs  
Belgārū pervenit.

3. Eō cum dē imprōvisō celeriusque omnium opīniōne  
vēnisset, Rēmī, quī proximī Galliae ex Belgis sunt, ad eum  
lēgātōs Iccium et Andebrogium, primōs civitātis, mīserunt, qui

1. **imprōvisus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [in- + **prōvisus**, foreseen; **prōvideō**], unforeseen, unexpected; **dē imprōvisō**, unexpectedly, suddenly. 1.

**opīniō**, -ōnis, *f.* [opinor, think], way of thinking, opinion; impression; expectation; reputation; **opīniō timōris**, impression of cowardice. \*

2. **Rēmūs**, -a, -um, *adj.*, belonging to or one of the Remi; *pl. as noun*, **Rēmī**, *m.* (Bel), the Remi (rē'mī). \*

3. **Iccius**, -ci, *m.*, Iccius (Ik'shyūs), a chief of the Remi. 3.

**Andebrogius**, -gi, *m.*, Andebrogius (ān'dē-brō'jyūs). 1.

B. 296, b: H.-B. 521, 3, b; 586: H. 595, 1; 607, 1.

10. **ad finēs**: it was about 145 miles to the boundary of the Remi; but Caesar probably passed the boundary and nearly reached Durocortorum, their capital, in the fifteen days. See map facing p. 162, and Int. 54.

Chap. 3. The Remi submit to Caesar.

1. **eō**: the adverb.

**omnium opīniōne**, lit. "than the opinion of all," = "than any one had expected."

2. **Rēmī**: a Belgian state, of appar-

ently only moderate strength, which saw an opportunity to increase its power by treacherously deserting its fellow states. In reward for its services Caesar made it the leader of a confederation, and it remained constantly faithful to him.

**proximī . . . Belgis**, "the nearest of the Belgae to Gaul"; i.e. at the point where Caesar entered the Belgian frontier.

**ex Belgis**: the ablative with *dē* or *ex* is often used instead of the partitive genitive.

3. **quī dicerent**: purpose. The rest

1. **legiōnēs**: case? App. 124: G.-L. 330: A. 387: B. 172: H.-B. 390: H. 404.

2. **aestāte**: case? App. 150: G.-L. 409; 410: A. 419; 420, 1: B. 227, 2, a: H.-B. 421, 3: H. 489, 1.

3. **dēducere**: mode? App. 225, a, 1: G.-L. 630: A. 531, 2: B. 282, 2: H.-B. 502, 2: H. 590.

**lēgātum**: case? App. 95, b: G.-L. 320; 321: A. 281; 282: B. 169, 1, 2: H.-B. 316; 317, 2: H. 393.

4. **pābuli**: case? App. 101: G.-L. 367; 368: A. 346, a, 1: B. 201, 1: H.-B. 346: H. 440, 5; 441.

**inciperet**: mode? App. 240; 242, a: G.-L. 579, II, a; 585: A. 546: B. 288, 1, B: H.-B. 524: H. 600, II.

5. **Senonibus**: case? App. 114: G.-L. 345: A. 362: B. 187, I: H.-B. 365, a: H. 424.

**Belgis**: case? App. 122: G.-L. 359: A. 384: B. 192, 1: H.-B. 362, footnote 3, (a): H. 494, 2.

6. **cognōscant**: mode? App. 228, a: G.-L. 546: A. 563: B. 295, 1: H.-B. 502, 3, a: H. 563, 1; 565.

7. **certiōrem**: case? App. 126: G.-L. 340: A. 392; 393: B. 177, 1: H.-B. 392: H. 410, 1.

**manūs**: case? App. 123: G.-L. 343, 2: A. 397, a: B. 184: H.-B. 398: H. 415.

8. **cōgi**: construction? App. 266: G.-L. 650: A. 580: B. 314, 1: H.-B. 534, 1: H. 642.

10. **diēbus**: case? App. 152: G.-L. 393: A. 423: B. 231: H.-B. 439: H. 487.

11. **Belgārū**: case? App. 99: G.-L. 362: A. 343: B. 196: H.-B. 339: H. 440, 1.

dicerent sē suaeque omnia in fidem atque potestātem populi Rōmānī permittere; neque sē cum reliquīs Belgis cōsensisse, neque contrā populum Rōmānum coniūrāsse, parātōsque esse et obsidēs dare et imperāta facere et oppidīs recipere et frūmentō cēterisque rēbus iuvāre; reliquōs omnēs Belgās in armīs esse, Germānōsque quī his Rhēnum incolant sēsē cum his coniūnxisse; tantumque esse eōrum omnium furōrem ut nē Suessiōnēs quidem, frātrēs cōsanguineōsque suōs, quī eōdem iūre et isdem lēgibus ūtantur, ūnum imperium ūnumque magistrātum cum ipsis habeant, dēterrere potuerint quin cum his cōsentirent.

5. **permittō, -mittere, -misi, -misum, tr.** [mittō, send], give up or over, surrender; entrust, commit; permit, allow. \*

6. **cōsentiō, -sentire, -sēnsi, -sēnsu, intr.** [sentio, feel], think together; agree, combine. 2.

7. **imperātum, -i, n.** [imperō, command], command, order. 2.

8. **cēteri, -ae, -a, adj.**, the rest of,

of the chapter is in indirect discourse. The direct form is given after Book VII.

4. **sē** is the object of *permittere*. Another *sē* must be supplied as its subject: "that they entrusted themselves and all their possessions," etc.

5. **neque . . . neque . . . que**, "(and) not . . . and not . . . and."

1. **opiniōne**: case? App. 139: G.-L. 398: A. 406, a: B. 217, 1, 4: H.-B. 416, e: H. 471, 8.

2. **vēnisset**: mode? App. 239: G.-L. 586: A. 549: B. 286, 2: H.-B. 526: H. 598.

**proximi**: case? App. 156; 157: G.-L. 205; 206; 211: A. 283; 284; 286: B. 233, 2; 234: H.-B. 316; 317, 3: H. 394.

**Galliae**: case? App. 122: G.-L. 350: A. 384: B. 192, 1: H.-B. 362, footnote 3, (a): H. 434, 2.

3. **légātōs**: case? App. 126: G.-L. 340: A. 392; 393: B. 177, 1: H.-B. 392: H. 410, 1.

5. **Belgīs**: case? App. 140: G.-L. 392: A. 413: B. 222: H.-B. 419, 1: H. 473, 1.

6. **coniūrāsse**: form? App. 72: G.-L.

the remainder; as noun, the rest, remaining, others. 4.

9. **cis**, prep. with acc., on this side of. 2.

10. **coniungō, -iungere, -iūnxī, -iūctum, tr.** [iungō, join], join with or together, connect, unite, bind. \*

**furor, -ōris, m.**, rage, frenzy, madness. 2.

11. **Suessiōnēs, -um, m.** (Be), the Suessiones (swēs'i-ō'nēs). \*

7. **esse**: infinitive in indirect discourse. *dare, facere, recipere*, and *iuvāre* depend on *parātōs*.

9. **cis**: the Gallic side.

10. **sēsē**: do not translate.

11. **ut**: with *potuerint*.

**Suessiōnēs**: object of *dēterrere*.

13. **dēterrere quin**, "prevent from."

131, 1: A. 181, a: B. 116, 1: H.-B. 163, 1: H. 238.

7. **oppidīs**: case? App. 143: G.-L. 401: A. 409: B. 218, 7: H.-B. 423; 446, 1: H. 476, 3.

9. **incolant**: mode? App. 269: G.-L. 650: A. 580: B. 314, 1: H.-B. 534, 2: H. 643.

11. **frātrēs**: case? App. 95, b: G.-L. 320; 321: A. 281; 283: B. 169, 1, 2: H.-B. 316; 317, 2: H. 393.

12. **iūre**: case? App. 145: G.-L. 407: A. 410: B. 218, 1: H.-B. 429: H. 477, 1.

13. **potuerint**: mode? App. 226: G.-L. 552: A. 537, 1: B. 284, 1: H.-B. 521, 2: H. 570.

14. **cōsentirent**: mode? App. 228, c: G.-L. 555, 1: A. 558: B. 295, 3: H.-B. 502, 3, b: H. 563, 1; 566.

4. Cum ab iis quaereret quae civitatēs quantaeque in armis essent et quid in bellō possent, sic reperiēbat: Plērōsque Belgās esse ortōs ā Germānīs, Rhēnumque antiquitus trāductōs propter loci fertilitatem ibi cōnsēdisse, Gallōsque quī ea loca incolerent  
 5 expulisse, sōlōsque esse quī patrum nostrōrum memoriā, omni Galliā vexatā, Teutonōs Cimbrōsque intrā suōs finēs ingredi prohibuerint; quā ex rē fieri uti eārum rērū memoriā magnam sibi auctōritatem magnōsque spīritūs in rē militārī sūmerent. Dē numerō eōrum omnia sē habēre explōrāta Rēmī dicēbant,  
 10 proptereā quod propinquitātibus affinitātibusque coniūcti, quantam quisque multitudinem in commūnī Belgārū conciliō

2. *quid*, *interrog. adv.*, why? *with posse*, how? e.g. *quid Germāni possent*, how strong were the Germans. \* *sic*, *adv.*, so, thus, in this manner; *sic . . . ut*, so . . . that; so . . . as. \* *plērīque*, *-aeque*, *-aque*, *adj. pl.*, very many, the most of; *as noun*, a great many, very many. 2.

3. *antiquitus*, *adv.* [antiquus, ancient], from early or ancient times; long ago, anciently. 2.

4. *fertilitās*, *-tātis*, *f.* [fertilis, productive], productiveness. 1.

5. *expellō*, *-pellere*, *-pulli*, *-pulum*, *tr.* [pellō, drive], drive out or forth, expel. 4.

6. *Teutoni*, *-ōrum* or *Teutonēs*, *-um*, *m.*, the Teutoni (tū'tō-ni) or Teu-

tones (tū'tō-nēz).

*Cimbri*, *-ōrum*, *m.*, the Cimbri (sim'bri). 4.

*intrā*, *prep. with acc.* [inter, between] within, inside; into. 4.

*ingredior*, *-gredi*, *-gressus sum*, *intr.* [gradior, go], go or come into, enter. 1.

8. *spīritus*, *-ūs*, *m.* [spirō, breathe], breath, air; *in pl.*, haughtiness, pride. 2.

9. *explōrō*, *1. tr.*, search or find out, investigate, spy out, reconnoiter. 2.

10. *propinquitās*, *-tātis*, *f.* [propinquus, neighboring, near], nearness, vicinity; relationship. 3.

11. *commūnis*, *-e*, *adj.*, common, general; *rēs commūnis*, the common interest. \*

Chap. 4. The Remi inform Caesar of the numbers in the Belgian army.

1. *iis*: i.e. the envoys of the Remi.

2. *quid*: case? App. 128, b: G.-L. 334, R. 1: A. 390, c: B. 176, 3: H.-B. 387, III: H. 416, 2.

*plērōsque Belgās*: the remainder of the chapter is in indirect discourse. The direct form is given after Book VII.

The tradition that most of the Belgae were descended from Germans was not strictly true, but the Belgae prided themselves on the supposed fact because of the Germans' renown in war.

4. *Gallōs*: the object.

6. *Teutonōs Cimbrōsque*: on this invasion see Int. 27.

*ingredi prohibuerint*, "prevented from entering." Caesar always uses the infinitive after *prohibeo*, instead of the subjunctive with *nē* or *quominus*.

7. *prohibuerint* was subjunctive in the direct form. See App. 230, b: G.-L. 631, 2: A. 536, b: B. 233, 2: H.-B. 521, 1: H. 591, 1.

9. *dē numerō*: i.e. the numerical strength of the Belgian army.

*omnia . . . explōrāta*, "that they had ascertained everything." See references at the end of the chapter.

11. *quisque*: i.e. each delegate.

ad id bellum pollicitus sit, cognoverint. Plurimum inter eos Bellovacōs et virtūte et auctoritate et hominum numero valere; hos posse cōficere armata milia centum; pollicitos ex eo numero electa milia sexaginta, totiusque belli imperium sibi postulare. <sup>15</sup> Suesionēs suos esse finitimos; finēs latissimos feracissimosque agrōs possidere. Apud eos fuisse regem nostrā etiam memoriā Diviciacum, totius Galliae potentissimum, qui cum magnae partis hārum regiōnum tum etiam Britanniae imperium obtinuerit; nunc esse regem Galbam; ad hunc propter iustitiam <sup>20</sup> prudentiamque summam totius belli omnium voluntate deferri; oppida habere numero XII; polliceri milia armata quinquaginta;

13. *Bellovaci*, -ōrum, *m.* (Bde), the Bellovaci (bē-lōv'ā-si). \*

14. *armō*, 1, *tr.* [arma, arms], arm, equip; *pass.*, arm one's self; *armātus*, *pf. part. as adj.*, armed; *armāti*, *as noun*, armed men. \*

15. *eligō*, -ligere, -lēgi, -lēctum, *tr.* [legō, choose], choose or pick out, select; *electus*, *pf. part. as adj.*, picked (men, etc.). 1.

16. *sexagintā* (LX), *card. num. adj.*, indecl. [sex, six], sixty. 1.

*postulō*, 1, *tr.*, request, ask, demand; require, necessitate. \*

17. *ferāx*, -ācis, *adj.* [ferō, bear], productive, fertile. 1.

18. *possideō*, -sidere, -sēdi, -sesum, *tr.* [sedeō, sit], occupy, hold, possess. 2.

*rēx*, *rēgis*, *m.*, king. \*

19. *Diviciacus*, -i, *m.*, Diviciacus, (div'i-shī-ā'kūs), a chief of the Suesiones. 1.

20. *pollicitus sit*: an indirect question, and therefore subjunctive in the direct form.

*plurimum*: compare note on *quid*, 1. 2.

21. *armata milia centum*, lit. "one hundred armed thousands," = "one hundred thousand armed men."

*pollicitos*: supply *esse*.

22. *suos*: i.e. of the Remi; see map.

23. *possidere*: supply *eos* (*Suesionēs*) on the subject.

24. *regiō*, -ōnis, *f.* [regō, keep straight], line, direction; quarter, region, country, territory, place; *ē regiōne*, with *gen.*, opposite. \*

*Britannia*, -ae, *f.* (Aabcd), Britannia (brī-tān'ī-a), better Britain, Great Britain (*England and Scotland*), never *Britany*. \*

25. *nunc*, *adv.*, now, at present, at this time. 3.

*Galba*, -ae, *m.*, Galba (gāl'ba), a king of the Suesiones. 2.

26. *prudentia*, -ae, *f.* [prūdēns, foreseeing], prudence, foresight. 1.

*deferō*, -ferre, -tuli, -lātum, *tr.* [ferō, carry. App. 81], bring from or down, carry, take; report, disclose; bring before, refer; bestow, confer; *dēlātus* (*sometimes*), falling; coming by chance. \*

27. *quinquagintā* (L), *card. num. adj.*, indecl., fifty. 3.

28. *Diviciacum*: of course not the Haeduan mentioned in Book I.

*cum . . . tum*, "not only . . . but also."

29. *partis* and *Britanniae* both depend on *imperium*.

*Britanniae*: not the whole of Britain, but only parts lying opposite the Belgian coast. This is the first notice of Britain in Latin literature.

30. *summam*: the noun: not the superlative adjective.

totidem Nervios, qui maximè ferì inter ipsos habeantur longis-  
simèque absint; quindecim milia Atrebatès, Ambianòs decem  
25 milia, Morinòs xxv milia, Menapiòs vii milia, Caletòs x milia,  
Vellocassès et Viromanduòs totidem, Atuatucòs xix milia;  
Condrusòs, Eburonès, Caeròsòs, Caemànòs, qui unò nòmine  
Germànì appellantur, arbitràri ad xl milia.

23. *totidem*, indecl. adj. [tot, so many], just as many, the same number. 3.

*Nervius*, -a, -um, adj. (Aef), of the Nervii; *m. sing. as noun*, one of the Nervii; *m. pl. as noun*, the Nervii (nēr'vī-i).

\* *ferus*, -a, -um, adj., wild, savage, fierce. \*

24. *Atrebatès*, -bātis, *m.* (Ae), an Atrebatian; *pl.*, the Atrebates (āt'rē-bā-tēs). \*

*Ambianì*, -òrum, *m.* (ABde), the Ambiani (ām'bi-ā'nī). 2.

25. *Morinì*, -òrum, *m.* (Ae), the Morini (mōr'i-nī). \*

*Menapii*, -òrum, *m.* (Afg), the Menapii (mē-nā'pī-i). \*

*septem* (VII), card. num. adj., indecl., seven. 2.

*Caleti*, -òrum (or -ēs, -um), *m.* (Bd), the Caleti (kāl'ē-tī). 1.

26. *Vellocassès*, -um, *m.* (Bd), the Vellocasses (vē'll-ō-kās'ēs). 1.

*Viromandui*, -òrum *m.* (Be), the Viromandui (vīr'ō-mān'dū-i). 3.

*Atuatuci*, -òrum, *m.* (Af), the Atuatuci (āt'ū-āt'ū-sī). 4.

27. *Condrusi*, -òrum, *m.* (Af), the Condrusi (kōn-drū'sī). 2.

*Eburonès*, -um, *m.* (Afg), the Eburones (ēb'ū-rō'nēs). 2.

*Caeròsi*, -òrum, *m.* (Ag), the Caerosi (sē-rō'sī). 1.

*Caemànì*, -òrum, *m.* (Af), the Caemani (sē-mā'nī). 1.

23. *Nervios*: with this and the following proper nouns supply *pollicēri*. *maximè ferì*: the superlative. *longissimè absint*: i.e. from the

southern frontier. But the map shows that they were no more distant than the Morini and the Menapii.

23. *Germànì*: these tribes were very

2. *essent*: mode? App. 262: G.-L. 467: A. 573; 574: B. 300, 1, a: H.-B. 537, b: H. 649, II.

3. *Germànīs*: case? App. 135: G.-L. 365, n. 1: A. 403, a, n. 1: B. 215, 2: H.-B. 413, b: H. 469, 1.

*Rhēnum*: case? App. 127, a: G.-L. 331, R. 1: A. 395, n. 1, 2: B. 179, 1, 3: H.-B. 386, a: H. 413.

5. *patrum*: case? App. 98: G.-L. 363, 1: A. 343, n. 1: B. 199: H.-B. 344: H. 440, 1, n. 1.

7. *quā*: use? App. 173, a: G.-L. 610, R. 1: A. 308, f: B. 251, 6: H.-B. 284, 8: H. 510.

*rērum*: case? App. 98: G.-L. 363, 2: A. 347; 348, n.: B. 200: H.-B. 354: H. 440, 2. *memoriā*: case? App. 138: G.-L. 408: A. 404: B. 219: H.-B. 444: H. 475.

8. *sibi*: case? App. 114: G.-L. 345: A. 365: B. 187, 1: H.-B. 365, a: H. 424.

*stumerent*: mode? App. 229, b: G.-L. 553, 3: A. 569, 2: B. 297, 2: H.-B. 521, 3, a: H. 571, 1.

9. *explōrāta*: use? App. 286, b: G.-L. 238: A. 497, b: B. 337, 6: H.-B. 605, 5, a: H. 640, 2.

13. *virtūte*: case? App. 149: G.-L. 397, 2: A. 418: B. 226: H.-B. 441: H. 480.

18. *memoriā*: case? App. 152: G.-L. 393: A. 423: B. 231: H.-B. 439: H. 487.

19. *regiōnum*: case? App. 101: G.-L. 368: A. 346, a, 1: B. 201, 1: H.-B. 346: H. 440, 5; 441.

21. *voluntāte*: case? App. 142, a: G.-L. 399, n. 1: A. 413, a: D. 220, 3: H.-B. 414, a: H. 475, 3.

5. Caesar Rēmōs cohortātus liberāliterque orātiōne prōsecūtus omnem senātum ad sē convenire principumque liberōs obsidēs ad sē addūcī iussit. Quae omnia ab hīs diligenter ad diem facta sunt. Ipse Diviciācum Haeduum magnopere cohortātus docet quantopere rei publicae commūnisque salutis intersit manūs hostium distinēri, nē cum tantā multitudīne unō tempore cōnfligendum sit. Id fieri posse, sī suās cōpiās Haedni in finēs Bellovacōrum intrōdūxerint et eōrum agrōs populārī coeperint. Hīs datīs mandātis eum ā sē dimittit. Postquam

1. liberāliter, *adv.* [liber, free], graciously, generously, kindly. 3.

prōsequor, -sequi, -secūtus sum, *tr.* [sequor, follow], follow, accompany; pursue; with orātiōne, address. 3.

3. diligenter, *adv.* [diligēns, careful], carefully; with exactness, pains, or care. 4.

5. doceō, docēre, docui, doctum, *tr.*, show, teach, instruct; inform. \*

quantopere, *adv.* [quantus, how much + opus, work], (1) *interrog.*, how greatly? how much? (2) *rel.*, as much

as. 1.

6. distineō, -tinēre, -tinui, -tentum, *tr.* [teneō, hold], hold or keep apart; divide, isolate. 3.

7. cōnfligō, -fligere, -fixi, -fictum, *intr.* [fligō, strike], strike against, contend, fight. 1.

8. intrōducō, -ducere, -dūxi, -ductum, *tr.* [intrō, within + ducō, lead], lead or bring into. 3.

9. mandātum, -i, *n.* [mandō, command], charge, injunction, order, command; message. \*

likely really Germans who had settled in Gaul just as Ariovistus tried to do.

**appellantur**: the indicative shows that this is an explanation by Caesar, not a quotation from the Remi.

**arbitrārī** (*pollicērī*), "they (the Remi) thought the Condrusi . . . promised."

**Chap. 5-8.** The armies approach each other.

**Chap. 5.** Caesar sends the Haedui to ravage one state, and himself marches to meet the whole Belgian army.

**5. quantopere**: interrogative. Explain the mode of *intersit*.

**commūnis salutis**: i.e. of both Haedui and Romans. Caesar poses as the champion of Gallic as well as Roman interests.

**intersit . . . distinēri**, lit. "the bands of the enemy to be kept apart concerned," = "it concerned . . . that the

bands of the enemy be kept apart." The clause *manūs . . . distinēri* is the subject of the impersonal verb *intersit*.

**6 nē cōnfligendum sit**, lit. "that it might not have to be fought," = "that they might not have to fight." The verb is used impersonally, but English idiom will not allow an impersonal translation.

**7. id**: i.e. keeping the bands of the enemy apart. The sentence *id . . . coeperint* is in indirect discourse, depending on *docet*, l. 5.

**in finēs Bellovacōrum**: the Belloaci were no doubt angry because they had not obtained leadership of the league (see 4, 15 and 20), and the ravaging of their territory would probably draw them away home.

**8. intrōdūxerint, coeperint**: perfect subjunctive in indirect discourse, for future perfect indicative of the direct form.

10 *omnēs Belgārum cōpiās in ūnum locum coāctās ad sē venire neque iam longē abesse ab iīs quōs mīserat explōrātōribus et ab Rēmīs cognōvit, flūmen Axonam, quod est in extrēmīs Rēmōrum finibus, exercitum trādūcere mātūrāvit atque ibi castra posuit. Quae rēs et latus ūnum castrōrum ripīs flūminis*  
 15 *mūniēbat, et post eum quae erant tūta ab hostibus reddēbat, et commeātūs ab Rēmīs reliquisque civitatibus ut sine periculō ad eum portārī possent efficiēbat. In eō flūmine pōns erat. Ibi praesidium pōnit et in alterā parte flūminis Q. Titūrium Sabinum lēgātum cum sex cohortibus relinquit. Castra in altitūdi-*

12. *Axona, -ae, m.* (Bf), the Axona (āk'sō-nā), a river, now the Aisne. 2.

15. *tātus, -a, -um, adj.* [tutor, protect], protected, safe, secure. \*

*reddō, -dere, -didi, -ditum, tr.* [red- + dō, give], give back, return, restore; give something due; make or cause to be, render. \*

16. *commeātus, -ūs, m.* [commeō, go back and forth], trip, voyage; sup-

plies, provisions. \*

17. *efficiō, -ficere, -feci, -fectum, tr.* [ex + faciō, make], make or do completely, complete, accomplish, construct; make, cause, bring about, render. \*

18. *Sabinus, -i, m.*, Quintus Titurius Sabinus (kwī'n'tūs tī-tū'rī-ŭssa-bī'nūs), one of Caesar's lieutenants. \*

19. *cohort, -tis, f.*, cohort. \*

10. *in ūnum locum*: somewhere to the northwest of the Axona river.

*coāctās venire*, lit. "having been gathered were coming," = "had gathered and were coming."

*venire, abesse*: indirect discourse, depending on *cognōvit*.

11. *ab iīs explōrātōribus cognōvit*, "learned from the scouts."

14. *castra*: the excavations made by the engineers of Napoleon III have fixed beyond question the site of this camp. It is a hill situated on the north bank of the Aisne, between that stream and a little marshy tributary, the Miette, which formed an excellent defense in front. See plan, p. 177. The hill is eighty feet high.

*quae rēs et*, "this position both."

*latus ūnum*: the left side, for the camp faced west.

15. *post . . . reddēbat*, "rendered safe from the enemy all that was behind

him"; i.e. that part of the Remi from whom he had just marched, and the road by which supplies were coming.

16. *commeātūs ut portārī possent efficiēbat*, lit. "made that provisions could be brought up," = "made it possible for." *ut . . . possent* is a substantive clause of result, the object of *efficiēbat*.

17. *in*, "over."

18. *praesidium*: a small fortified camp, to defend the northern end of the bridge.

*in alterā parte*, "on the other side"; i.e. at the southern end of the bridge. This guard was posted to protect the bridge in case some of the enemy should cross the river by a ford.

19. *sex cohortibus*: how many men? See Int. 33.

*castra*: the main camp on the hill. For a plan of this camp and for details of camp fortification, see Int. 49-52.

nem pedum XII vällō fossāque duodēvigintī pedum mūniri iubet.

6. Ab his castris oppidum Rēmōrum nōmine Bibrax aberat milia passuum octō. Id ex itinere magnō impetū Belgae oppugnāre coepērunt. Aegrē eō diē sustentātum est. Gallōrum eadem atque Belgārum oppugnātiō est haec. Ubi circumiectā multitudine hominum tōtis moenibus undique in mūrum lapidēs iaci coepti sunt mūrusque dēfēnsōribus nūdātus est, testūdine factā

1. **Bibrax**, -ctis, *f.* (Be), Bibrax (bī-brāks), a town of the Remi. 1.

3. **sustentō**, 1, *tr. and intr.* [freq. of **sustineō**, hold up], hold up, sustain, maintain; hold out; endure, withstand. 2.

4. **oppugnātiō**, -ōnis, *f.* [oppugnō, storm], a storming, besieging, siege, assault, attack; plan or method of storming. 2.

**circumiciō**, -icere, -iēcī, -iectum, *tr.* [iaciō, throw. App. 7], throw, set, or place around. 1.

5. **moenia**, -ium, *n. pl.*, defensive

20. **duodēvigintī pedum**: i.e. in width. When Caesar mentions only one dimension of a trench he always means the width. The depth was about ten feet.

Chap. 6. The Belgae assault a town of the Remi.

1. **nōmine**: ablative of specification. **Bibrax**: see map facing p. 162.

2. **ex itinere**: i.e. without stopping to make camp.

3. **sustentātum est**, lit. "it was held

3. **quae**: use? App. 173, a: G.-L. 610, R. 1: A. 308, f: B. 251, 6: H.-B. 284, 8: H. 510.

**his**: case? App. 137: G.-L. 401: A. 405: B. 216: H.-B. 406, 1: H. 468.

5. **docet**: tense? App. 190, a: G.-L. 230: A. 469: B. 259, 8: H.-B. 491, 1: H. 532, 3.

**rei publicae**: case? App. 110: G.-L. 381: A. 355: B. 210; 211, 1: H.-B. 345: H. 449, 1.

6. **multitudine**: case? App. 140: G.-L. 392: A. 413, b: B. 222: H.-B. 419, 4: H. 473, 1.

walls, city walls, ramparts, bulwarks, fortifications, defenses. 3.

**lapis**, -idis, *m.*, stone. \*

**iaciō**, **iacere**, **iēcī**, **iectum**, *tr.*, throw, cast, hurl; (of an agger), throw up, construct. \*

6. **dēfēnsōr**, -ōris, *m.* [dēfendō, defend], defender, protector; (means of) defense. \*

**nūdō**, 1, *tr.* [nūdus, bare], strip, uncover, make bare, expose. 3.

**testūdō**, -inis, *f.*, tortoise; shed; a testudo, a column of men, holding their shields overlapped over their heads. 1.

out"; but translate personally.

**eadem atque Belgārum**, "(which is) the same as (that) of the Belgae." See *atque* in the Vocabulary. In such expressions Latin never uses a word for "that."

4. **haec**, "as follows."

**circumiciētā**: this ablative absolute is best translated by a clause; "when a great number has been thrown around . . . and stones have begun, etc."

6. **coepti sunt**: why not *coepērunt*?

7. **cōfligendum sit**: mode? App. 225, b: G.-L. 545, 3: A. 531, 1: B. 282, 1: H.-B. 502, 2: H. 568.

12. **cognōvit**: mode and tense? App. 237: G.-L. 561: A. 543: B. 287, 1: H.-B. 551; 557: H. 602.

**flūmen**, **exercitum**: case? App. 127: G.-L. 331, R. 1: A. 395, n. 1: B. 179, 1: H.-B. 386: H. 413.

20. **pedum**: case? App. 100: G.-L. 365, R. 2: A. 345, b: B. 203, 2: H.-B. 355: H. 440, 3.

succēdunt mūrumque subruunt. Quod tum facile fiēbat. Nam cum tanta multitudō lapidēs ac tēla conicerent, in mūrō cōsistendī potestās erat nullī. Cum finem oppugnandī nox fēcisset, 10 Iccius Rēmus, summā nōbilitāte et grātiā inter suōs, quī tum oppidō praeerat, ūnus ex iīs quī lēgātī dē pāce ad Caesarem vēnerant, nūntiōs ad eum mittit: Nisi subsidium sibi submittātur, sēsē diūtius sustinēre non posse.

7. Eō dē mediā nocte Caesar, isdem ducibus ūsus quī

7. **subruō, -ruere, -rui, -rutum, tr.** [ruō, fall], cause to fall from beneath, overthrow; dig under, undermine. 1.

12. **subsidium, -di, n.** [subsideo, sit near or in reserve], sitting in re-

serve; reserve force, reserves; help, aid, assistance. \*

**submittō, -mittere, -misi, -misum, tr.** [mittō, send], send up, send, send to the assistance of. \*

See App. 86, a: G.-L. 175, 5, a: A. 205, a: B. 133, 1: H.-B. 199, 2: H. 299, 1.

**testudinē**: see Plate III, 3, facing p. 34.

8. **conicerent** agrees with the meaning, not the grammatical form, of the collective noun *multitudō*.

10. **summā**, "(a man) of the highest."

11. **ūnus ex iīs**: App. 101, b: G.-L. 372, R. 2: A. 346, c: B. 201, 1, a: H.-B. 346, e: H.

2. **millia**: case? App. 130: G.-L. 335: A. 425: B. 181: H.-B. 387, I: H. 417.

**impetū**: case? App. 142: G.-L. 399: A. 412: B. 220, 1: H.-B. 445, 2: H. 473, 3.

3. **diē**: case? App. 152: G.-L. 393: A. 423: B. 230: H.-B. 439: H. 486.

5. **moenibus**: case? App. 116, I: G.-L. 347: A. 370: B. 187, III: H.-B. 376: H. 429, 2.

6. **coepti sunt**: mode and tense? App. 237: G.-L. 561: A. 543: B. 287, 1: H.-B. 554; 557: H. 602.

**dēfēnsōribus**: case? App. 134, b: G.-L. 390, 2: A. 401: B. 214, 1, b: H.-B. 408, 2: H. 462.

8. **conicerent**: mode? App. 240; 242, a: G.-L. 579, II, a; 585: A. 546: B. 288, 1, b: H.-B. 524: H. 600, II.

9. **nulli**: case? App. 117: G.-L. 349: A. 373: B. 190: H.-B. 374: H. 430.

10. **nōbilitāte**: case? App. 141: G.-L. 400: A. 415: B. 224: H.-B. 443: H. 473, 2.

444. **ūnus** is here used as a noun in apposition with *Iccius*.

12. **submittātur**: the subjunctive here stands for a future indicative of the direct form. *nūntiōs mittit* implies "saying."

Chap. 7. Failing to take the town, the Belgae march against Caesar.

1. **eō**: to Bibrax.

**isdem ducibus ūsus**, "employing the same persons as guides."

12. **mittit**: tense? App. 190, a: G.-L. 229: A. 469: B. 259, 3: H.-B. 491, 1: H. 532, 3.

13. **sēsē**: case? App. 123: G.-L. 343, 2: A. 397, e: B. 184: H.-B. 398: H. 415.

**posse**: construction? App. 266: G.-L. 650: A. 580, a: B. 314, 1, 2: H.-B. 534, 1: H. 642, 1.

As explained under II, 1, each of the most common principles of syntax is referred to three times in the notes on Book II. At the end of the chapter in which the third reference to any construction has been given, attention is called to the fact; and if the pupil has not yet mastered the construction he should do so at once.

THIRD REFERENCES:

*Subject of infinitive*

*Abative of time*

*Narrative cum clause*

*Infinitive in indirect discourse*

nūntiī ab Iccio vēnerant, Numidās et Crētēs sagittāriōs et funditōrēs Baleārēs subsidiō oppidānis mittit; quōrum adventū et Rēmīs cum spē dēfēnsiōnis studium prōpugnandī accessit, et hostibus eādē dē causā spēs potiundī oppidī discessit. Itaque paulisper apud oppidum morātī agrōsque Rēmōrum dēpopulātī, omnibus vicīs aedificiisque quō adire potuerant incēnsīs, ad castra Caesaris omnibus cōpiīs contendērunt et ā milibus passuum minus duōbus castra posuērunt; quae castra, ut fūmō

2. Numidae, -arum, *m.*, the Numidæ (nū'mī-dē), *better* the Numidians, a people of North Africa, in modern Algiers.

\*

Crētēs, -um, *m.*, the Cretes (krē'tēr), *better*, Cretans, natives of the island of Crete. 1.

sagittārius, -ri, *m.* [sagitta, an arrow], Bowman, archer. 3.

3. funditor, -oris, *m.* [funda, sling], slinger. 4.

Baliāris, -e, *adj.*, Balearic (bāl'ē-ā-rik), (i.e. coming from the islands Majorca and Minorca) 1.

oppidānus, -a, -um, *adj.* [oppidum, town], of or pertaining to a town; *in pl.* as noun, townspeople, inhabitants of a town. 2.

4. dēfēnsiō, -ōnis, *f.* [dēfendō, defend], a defending, defense. 1.

prōpugnō, 1, *intr.*, fight for, defend; rush out to fight, attack. 1.

6. paulisper, *adv.* [paulus, little], for a short time, for a little while. 3.

adeō, -ire, -ii, -itum, *tr. and intr.* [eō, go. App. 84], go to, approach, visit; assault, attack. \*

9. fūmus, -i, *m.*, smoke. 1.

3. mittit: the auxiliaries probably entered the town on the south side, where the slope of the hill was very steep. The Belgae could not attack effectively on that side and would be likely to leave it unguarded.

quōrum adventū, "at their arrival"; an ablative of time, but with a suggestion of cause as well.

4. et . . . et, "not only . . . but also."

cum spē dēfēnsiōnis, "along with the hope of (making a successful) defense."

5. hostibus discessit, lit. "went away for the enemy" = "left the enemy." *hostibus* is a dative of reference. As the idea here is one of separation, it may be called a dative of separation.

potiundī: the older form of the gerundive, for *potiendī*. How can *potior*, an

intransitive verb, have a gerundive? App. 289, I, a: G.-L. 427, 4, 5: A. 503, n. 2: B. 339, 4: H.-B. 613, 2, b, n.: H. 623, 1.

6. morātī, dēpopulātī: as *moror* and *dēpopulor* are deponent verbs, their perfect participles have active meanings; therefore they agree with the subject of *contendērunt*. But as *incēnsus* is passive in meaning, the idea "having burned their villages" must be expressed by the ablative absolute.

7. quō: the adverb.

8. ā . . . duōbus, "less than two miles away"; i.e. from Caesar's camp. *ab* is here used adverbially; *milibus* is the ablative of degree of difference, the comparative *minus* not affecting the construction. See App. 139, b: G.-L. 296, R. 4: A. 407, c: B. 217, 3: H.-B. 416, d: H. 471, 4.

9. ut, "as."

atque ignibus significābatur, amplius milibus passuum octō in lātitudinem patēbant.

8. Caesar primō et propter multitudinem hostium et propter eximiam opīniōnem virtūtis proeliō supersedēre statuit; cotīdiē tamen equestribus proeliis, quid hostis virtūte posset et quid nostrī audērent, periclitābatur. Ubi nostrōs nōn esse inferiōrēs intellēxit, locō prō castris ad aciem instruendam

10. **significō**, 1, *tr.* [**signum**, sign + **faciō**, make], make signs; show, indicate, signify. 4.

1. **primō**, *adv.* [**primus**, first], at first, in the first place. \*

2. **eximius**, -a, -um, *adj.* [**eximō**, take out], taken from the mass; hence

choice, eminent. 1.

**supersedō**, -ēre, -sēdi, -sessum, *intr.* [**sedeō**, sit], sit above, be above, be superior to; refrain from. 1.

4. **periclitōr**, 1, *tr. and intr.* [**periculum**, trial, danger], try, test; be in danger or peril. 1.

10. **milibus**: ablative after the comparative *amplius*. The references on I. 8 say only that *plūs*, *minus*, *amplius*, and *longius* are not necessarily followed by the ablative.

Chap. 8. Caesar fortifies his position and prepares for battle.

1. **multitudinem**: if the states sent the quotas promised in chap. 4, the total was 296,000 men; but probably not all were sent.

2. **opiniōnem virtūtis**, "reputation for valor."

**proeliō**: ablative of separation.

4. **nostrī**: especially the Gallic cavalry. The Belgae were thought to be better fighters than the Celtic Gauls.

5. The following description is less clear than most of Caesar's descriptions of places, so that it cannot be understood without constant reference to the plan. The camp and trenches were discovered in the course of excavations made at the order of Emperor Napoleon III. The ridge on which the camp lay is about two miles in length, extending

1. **mediā**: meaning? App. 160: G.-L. 291, R. 2: A. 293: B. 241, 1: H.-B. 244: H. 497, 4.

**isdem**: case? App. 145: G.-L. 407: A. 410: B. 218, 1: H.-B. 429: H. 477, I.

2. **sagittāriōs**: case? App. 124: G.-L. 330: A. 387: B. 172: H.-B. 390: H. 404.

3. **subsidiō, oppidānis**: case? App. 119: G.-L. 356, n. 1: A. 382, 1: B. 191, 2, b: H.-B. 360, b: H. 433, 2.

4. **dēfēnsiōnis**: case? App. 98: G.-L. 363, 2: A. 348, n.: B. 200: H.-B. 354: H. 440, 2.

**prōpugnandī**: construction? App. 287; 291: G.-L. 425; 428: A. 501; 503; 504: B. 338, 1, a: H.-B. 611; 612, 1: H. 624; 625; 626.

5. **potiundī**: construction? App. 288; 291: G.-L. 427; 428: A. 503, a; 504: B. 332,

1: H.-B. 609; 610; 612, 1: H. 623; 626.

7. **viciis**: case? App. 150: G.-L. 409; 410: A. 419; 420, 1: B. 227, 2, a: H.-B. 421, 3: H. 489, 1.

8. **Caesaris**: case? App. 99: G.-L. 362: A. 343: B. 198: H.-B. 339: H. 440, 1.

**cōpilis**: case? App. 142: G.-L. 399: A. 412: B. 220, 1: H.-B. 445, 2: H. 473, 3.

**milibus duōbus**: case? App. 148: G.-L. 403: A. 414: B. 223: H.-B. 424: H. 479, 3.

10. **milibus octō**: case? App. 139: G.-L. 398: A. 406: B. 217, 1: H.-B. 416: H. 471.

#### THIRD REFERENCES:

*Possessive genitive*

*Direct object*

*Ablative absolute*

*nâtūrâ opportûnō atque idōneō, quod is collis ubi castra posita erant paululum ex plānitie ēditus tantum adversus in lātitudinem patēbat quantum loci aciēs instructa occupāre poterat, atque*

6. *opportūnus, -a, -um, adj.*, fit, opportune, lucky, suitable; favorable, advantageous. \*

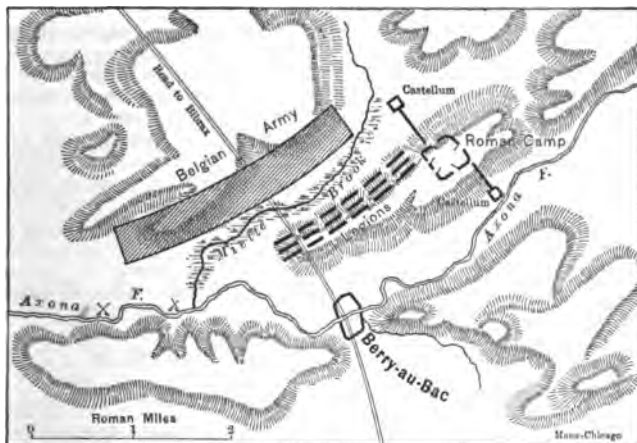
*idōneus, -a, -um, adj.*, fit, suitable, adapted. \*

7. *paululum, adv.* [paulus, little],

a very little. 1.

*plānitēs, -ēs, f.* [plānus, level], level ground, plain. 4.

*ēditus, -a, -um, adj.* [*pf. part. of* *ēdō*, give out, raise up], elevated, lofty. 2.



BATTLE ON THE AXONA

nearly east and west. The camp was at the east end, facing west. The Roman army was drawn up along the ridge, facing north. Therefore the front of the camp was the west side, looking toward the battle line; but the front of the hill was the north side, looking toward the enemy. Caesar calls the north and the south slopes of the hill its *latera*.

*locō opportūnō*, "since the place was suitable." The ablative absolute here has a causal meaning.

*prō castris*: i.e. to the west of the camp.

6. *collis* is the subject of *patēbat*, *habebat*, and *redibat*.

7. *tantum . . . poterat*, lit. "extended so much opposite (to the enemy) as of space a line drawn up could fill" = "was as wide on the side facing the enemy as a battle line could extend."

*in lātitudinem*: i.e. from the camp to the west end of the hill. Perhaps we should call this the length of the hill.

8. *loci*: we should expect this participial genitive to limit *tantum* rather than *quantum*.

- ex utrâque parte lateris dêiectûs habēbat et in fronte lēniter  
 10 fastigātus paulātīm ad plānitīem redibat, ab utrōque latere  
 eius collis trānsversam fossam obdūxit circiter passuum CD et  
 ad extrēmās fossās castella cōstituit ibique tormenta collocāvit,  
 nē, cum aciem instrūxisset, hostēs, quod tantum multītūdine  
 poterant, ab lateribus pugnantes suōs circumvenire possent.  
 15 Hōc factō, duābus legiōnibus quās proximē cōscripserat in  
 castrīs relictīs, ut, sī quō opus esset, subsidiō dūcī possent, reli-

9. *uterque, utraque, utrumque*, *adj.* [uter, which of two], each of two, either of two; both. \*

*dēiectus, -ūs, m.* [dēiciō, cast down], declivity, slope, descent. \*

*frōns, frontis, f.*, forehead; front. 3.  
*lēniter, adv.* [lēnis, smooth], softly, smoothly, gently, gradually. 2.

10. *fastigātus, -a, -um, adj.*, sloping. 1.

*paulātīm, adv.* [paulus, little], little by little, by degrees, gradually. \*

11. *trānsversus, -a, -um, adj.* [trānsvertō, turn across], turned across, cross. 1.

*obdūcō, -dūcere, -dūxi, -ductum*, *tr.* [dūcō, lead], lead towards; extend,

dig. 1.

12. *tormentum, -ī, n.* [torquē, twist], means of twisting; an engine for hurling missiles, e.g. *catapulta* and *ballista*; windlass, hoist; device for torturing, hence, torment, torture. 3.

16. *quō, adv.* [old dat. case of qui, who, which], (1) *interrog.*, whither? to what place? (2) *rel.*, to which, to whom; to where, whither; toward which; where, wherein; (3) *indef.*, to any place, anywhere. \*

*opus, indecl. noun, n.* [cf. *opus*, work, deed], need, necessity; *opus est*, it is necessary, there is need, *the thing needed being expressed either by the nom. or the abl.* (App. 146). \*

9. *ex . . . lateris*, lit. "at each end of the side" = "at each end"; i.e. the east and west ends of the hill. *utrāque parte* alone might mean either the ends or the sides. As *latus* means one of the long sides of the hill, *utrāque parte lateris* must mean the ends.

*in fronte*: i.e. the northern slope.

10. *ab utrōque latere*, "on each side"; i.e. on the northern and southern slopes.

11. *trānsversam*, "at right angles" to the ridge. The plan shows that one trench ran from the camp to the Miette, the other from the camp to the Axona.

12. *extrēmās*: i.e. the outer ends.

*tormenta*: see Int. 63.

13. *instrūxisset*: implied indirect discourse for the future perfect, for Caesar's thought was "that I may not be surrounded when I shall have drawn up my line."

14. *ab lateribus*, "on the flanks." The trenches protected only the right flank of the army, but the left was sufficiently protected by the Miette.

15. *quās . . . cōscripserat*: cf. 2. 1. These legions were not sufficiently disciplined to be brought into the battle unless it were necessary.

16. *quō*: the adverb; supply *dūcī*; "if there should be need of their being led anywhere."

*subsidiō*: dative of purpose.

quās sex legiōnēs prō castris in aciē cōstituit. Hostēs item suās cōpiās ex castris ēductās instrūxērunt.

9. Palūs erat nōn magna inter nostrum atque hostium exercitum. Hanc sī nostrī trānsirent, hostēs exspectābant; nostrī autem, sī ab illis initium trānseundī fieret, ut impeditōs aggrederentur parātī in armīs erant. Interim proeliō equestri inter duās aciēs contendēbātur. Ubi neutri trānseundī initium 5 faciunt, secundiōre equitum proeliō nostris Caesar suōs in castra redūxit. Hostēs prōtinus ex eō locō ad flūmen Axonam contendērunt, quod esse post nostra castra dēmōnstrātum est. Ibi vadis repertīs partem suārum cōpiārum trādūcere cōnātī sunt, eō cōnsiliō, ut, sī possent, castellum cui praeerat Q. 10 Titūrius lēgātus expugnārent pontemque interscinderent; sī

1. **palūs**, -ūdis, *f.*, marsh, morass, swamp. \*

5. **neuter**, -tra, -trum (*gen.* -trius, *dat.* -trī), *adj.* used as noun [ne- + uter, which of two], neither; in *pl.*, neither side, neither party. 1.

7. **prōtinus**, *adv.* [tenus, as far as], continuously; forthwith, immediately. 1.

11. **interscindō**, -scindere, -scidi, -scissum, *tr.* [scindō, cut, destroy], cut through, cut in two; destroy. 1.

Chap. 9-11. The Belgae return home without risking a decisive battle.

Chap. 9. Not venturing to attack Caesar, the Belgae attempt to pass him by a ford.

1. **palūs erat**, "there was a marsh"; i.e. the marshy ground along the Miette.

2. **sī trānsirent**: construction? App. 264, b: G.-L. 460, b: A. 576, a: B. 300, 3: H.-B. 582, 2, a: H. 649, II, 3.

3. **sī . . . fieret**, "if they should begin to cross." The clause depends on *ut aggrederentur*, and the subjunctive is due to implied indirect discourse; for Caesar's thought was "I will have my men ready to attack if they shall begin." **impeditōs**: i.e. bycrossing the marsh.

6. **faciunt**: historical present, for the more usual perfect after *ubi*.

**secundiōre proeliō**: ablative absolute.

8. **contendērunt**: Caesar did not see this movement, probably because of an intervening forest.

9. **vadis**: the probable location of these fords is shown in the plan by crossed sabres.

10. **eō cōnsiliō, ut**, etc., "with this design, to storm, if they could, etc."

**possent**: implied indirect discourse for the future indicative; for they thought "we will storm if we shall be able." But *praeerat* is indicative, because it is an explanation added by Caesar, not a part of their thought.

3. **proeliis**: case? App. 143: G.-L. 401: A. 409: B. 218, 7: H.-B. 423: H. 476.

**possent**: mode? App. 262: G.-L. 467: A. 573: 574: B. 300, 1, a: H.-B. 537, b: H. 649, II.

6. **nātūrā**: case? App. 149: G.-L. 397:

A. 418: B. 226: H.-B. 441: H. 480.

8. **patēbat**: mode? App. 244: G.-L. 540: A. 540: B. 286, 1: H.-B. 554: 555: H. 588, I.

THIRD REFERENCE:

*Ablative of means*

minus potuissent, agrōs Rēmōrum populārentur, quī magnō nōbīs ūsuī ad bellum gerendum erant, commeātūque nostrōs prohibērent.

10. Caesar certior factus ab Titūriō omnem equitātum et levis armātūrae Numidās, funditōrēs sagittāriōsque pontem trādūcit atque ad eōs contendit. Ācriter in eō locō pugnātum est. Hostēs impeditōs nostrī in flūmine aggressī magnum eōrum numerum occidērunt; per eōrum corpora reliquōs audācissimē trānsire cōnantēs multitūdine tēlōrum reppulērunt; primōs, quī trānsierant, equitātū circumventōs interfēcērunt. Hostēs ubi et dē expugnandō oppidō et dē flūmine trānseundō

13. ego, mei (App. 51), *first pers. pron.*, I; *pl. nōs*, we, us, etc. \*

ūsus, -ūs, *m.* [ūtor, use], use, experience, practice, skill; service, advantage; need, necessity; ūsus est, there is need; ūsuī esse or ex ūsū esse, be of advantage or service; ūsū venīre, come by

necessity, happen. \*

2. levis, -e, *adj.*, light (*in weight*), slight; light-minded, fickle, inconstant. 2.

armātūra, -ae, *f.* [armō, arm], armor, equipment; levis armātūrae, light-armed. 2.

12. minus, "not," as is usual after *sī*. potuissent stands for a future perfect indicative of the direct form.

populārentur, prohibērent: in the same construction as *expugnārent*.

Chap. 10. The Belgae are repulsed at the ford and decide to return home.

1. equitātum: the cavalry and light-

armed troops were not equal to the legions in fighting power, but they could get to the ford more quickly.

3. in eō locō: i.e. at the fords.

4. nostrī is the subject of *occidērunt*, *reppulērunt*, and *interfēcērunt*.

8. ubi introduces *intellēxērunt*, *vidērunt*, and *coepit*.

3. trānseundi: construction? App. 287; 291: G.-L. 425; 428: A. 501; 502; 504: B. 338, 1, a: H.-B. 611; 612, 1: H. 624; 625; 626.

4. aggredierentur: mode? App. 225, a; 3: G.-L. 545, 1: A. 531, 1: B. 282, 1: H.-B. 502, 2: H. 568.

6. nostrīs: case? App. 122: G.-L. 359: A. 384: B. 192, 1: H.-B. 362, footnote 3, a: H. 434, 2.

10. cōsiliō: case? App. 138: G.-L. 408: A. 404: B. 219: H.-B. 414, a: H. 475.

cul: case? App. 116, I: G.-L. 347: A. 370: B. 187, III: H.-B. 376: H. 429, 2.

11. lēgātus: case? App. 95, b: G.-L.

330; 331: A. 281; 282: B. 169, 1, 2: H.-B. 316; 317, 2: H. 393.

13. nōbīs ūsuī: case? App. 119: G.-L. 356: A. 382, 1: B. 191, 2, b: H.-B. 360, b: H. 433, 2.

gerendum: construction? App. 288; 289; 293: G.-L. 427; 432: A. 503, a; 506, n. 2: B. 339, 1, 2: H.-B. 639; 610; 612, III: H. 623; 628, footnote 2.

commeātū: case? App. 134: G.-L. 390, 2: A. 401: B. 214, 2: H.-B. 408, 2: H. 462.

THIRD REFERENCES:

*Apposition*

*Dative with adjectives*

*Ablative of cause*

*Purpose clauses*

spem sē fefellisse intellēxērunt neque nostrōs in locum inīqu-  
ōrem prōgredi pugnandī causā vidērunt, atque ipsōs rēs 10  
frūmentāria dēficere coepit, conciliō convocātō cōstituērunt  
optimum esse domum suam quemque revertī, et, quōrum in  
finēs primum Rōmānī exercitum intrōdūxissent, ad eōs dēfen-  
dendōs undique convenīrent, ut potius in suis quam in aliēnis  
finibus dēcertārent et domesticis cōpiis rei frūmentāriae ūter- 15  
entur. Ad eam sententiam cum reliquis causis haec quoque  
ratiō eōs dēdūxit, quod Diviciācum atque Haeduōs finibus  
Bellovacōrum appropinquāre cognōverant. His persuādērī ut

9. fallō, fallere, fefelli, falsum. *tr.*,  
deceive, cheat, disappoint. 2.

iniquus, -a, -um, *adj.* [in-+aequus,  
even, just], uneven; unjust, unfair; un-  
favorable, disadvantageous. \*

10. prōgredior, -gredi, -gressus  
sum, *intr.* [gradior, step], step or go  
forward, advance, proceed, go. \*

11. dēficiō, -ficere, -fici, -fectum,  
*tr. and intr.* [faciō, make], fail, desert,  
fall away, revolt. \*

14. potius, *adv.* [comp. of potis,  
able], rather. 2.

15. dēcertō, 1, *intr.* [certō, contend],  
fight to the end, fight out, struggle  
fiercely or earnestly, vie, contend. \*

domesticus, -a, -um, *adj.* [domus,  
house], belonging to the home, domes-  
tic; in or of one's own land. 1.

16. sententia, -ae, *f.* [sentio,  
think], way of thinking, opinion, senti-  
ment; purpose, design, scheme, plan;  
decision, resolve; verdict; sentence. \*

18. appropinquō, 1, *intr.* [ad + pro-  
pinquus, near], come near or close, ap-  
proach. \*

9. ubi . . . intellēxērunt, lit. "when  
they saw that their hope about the town  
to be taken . . . had disappointed them"  
="when they saw that they were dis-  
appointed in their hope of taking the  
town."

neque = et nōn.

nostrōs . . . prōgredi: i.e. the le-  
gions would not descend the hill to the  
Miette.

10. ipsōs: the enemy. It requires  
thorough organization to supply so large  
an army. Caesar's superiority to the  
Gallic leaders is always evident in this  
matter no less than on the battle field.  
He sometimes marched into the heart of  
a hostile country, where it is hard to  
see how he secured supplies; but we hear  
only once of a failure to keep his army  
well fed.

11. cōstituērunt has two objects,

(1) *optimum esse*, "that it was best" (in-  
direct discourse), and (2) (ut) *convenīrent*,  
"to assemble" (a substantive volitive  
clause).

13. intrōdūxissent: implied indirect  
discourse for the future perfect indica-  
tive. Their thought was "let us assem-  
ble to protect those into whose territory  
the Romans shall have led."

16. cum, "in addition to."

17. Diviciācum . . . appropinquāre:  
in accordance with Caesar's directions.  
See 5, 7.

finibus: indirect object of the com-  
pound verb *appropinquāre*.

18. his persuādērī nōn poterat,  
lit. "it could not be persuaded to these."  
Turn into English. It will be remem-  
bered that the Bellovaci had reason to  
be lukewarm in their allegiance to the  
confederation. See note on 5, 7.

diūtius morārentur neque suis auxilium ferrent nōn poterat.

11. Eā rē cōstitutā secundā vigiliā magnō cum strepitū ac tumultū castris ēgressi nullō certō ordine neque imperiō, cum sibi quisque primum itineris locum peteret et domum pervenire properāret, fēcērunt ut cōnsimilis fugae profectiō viderētur. Hāc rē statim Caesar per speculātōrēs cognitā

1. **strepitus**, -ūs, *m.* [strepō, make a noise], noise, rattle, uproar. 2.

2. **tumultus**, -ūs, *m.* [tumeō, swell], uproar, confusion, disorder, tumult; uprising, insurrection. 2.

**ōrdō**, -inis, *m.*, row, tier, layer; rank, line of soldiers; arrangement, order; degree, rank; **primi ordinēs**, centurions of the first rank. \*

4. **properō**, 1, *intr.* [properus, quick], hasten, hurry. 2.

**cōnsimilis**, -e, *adj.* [similis, like], very like, similar. 1.

5. **statim**, *adv.* [stō, stand], as one stands, hence, forthwith, immediately, at once. \*

**speculātor**, -ōris, *m.* [speculor, spy], spy, scout. 1.

19. **neque** = *et nōn*.

Chap. 11. The Belgae are pursued with great slaughter.

1. **secundā vigiliā**: i.e. during the second quarter of the night. As the nights wereshort, this would be between

ten and twelve.

2. **castris**: ablative of separation.

4. **fēcērunt ut profectiō viderētur**, "they made their departure seem." **fugae**: dative.

1. **certior**: case? App. 156; 157: G.-L. 205; 206; 211: A. 233; 284; 286: B. 233, 2; 234: H.-B. 316; 317, 3: H. 394.

**ab Tituriō**: case? App. 137: G.-L. 401: A. 405; B. 216: H.-B. 406, 1: H. 468.

2. **armātūrae**: case? App. 100: G.-L. 305: A. 345; B. 203: H.-B. 355; H. 440, 3.

**equitatum, pontem**: case? App. 127: G.-L. 331, R. 1: A. 395, n. 1: B. 179, 1: H.-B. 386: H. 413.

5. **eorum (numerus)**: case? App. 101: G.-L. 367; 368: A. 346, a, 1: B. 201, 1: H.-B. 346: H. 440, 5; 441.

8. **expugnandō**: construction? App. 288; 289; 294: G.-L. 427; 433: A. 503, a; 507: B. 339, 1, 2: H.-B. 609; 610; 612, IV; 613, 1: H. 623; 629.

9. **intellēxērunt**: mode and tense? App. 237: G.-L. 561: A. 543; B. 287, 1: H.-B. 554; 557: H. 602.

10. **pugnandi**: construction? App. 287; 291: G.-L. 425; 428, R. 2: A. 501; 502; 504, b: B. 338, 1, c: H.-B. 611; 612, 1: H. 624; 626.

12. **domum**: case? App. 131: G.-L.

337: A. 427, 2: B. 182, 1, b: H.-B. 450, b: H. 419, 1.

13. **intrōdūxissent**: mode? App. 269: G.-L. 650: A. 580: B. 314, 1: H.-B. 534, 2, I: H. 643.

18. **cognōverant**: construction? App. 248: G.-L. 523, n. 1; 524; 525, 3: A. 572: B. 299, 1: H.-B. 549; 552, 1: H. 588, I, 3.

**his**: case? App. 115, d: G.-L. 346, R. 1, 2: A. 367: B. 187, II, a, b: H.-B. 362; 364, 2: H. 426, 2, 3.

19. **morārentur**: mode? App. 228, a: G.-L. 546: A. 563: B. 295, 1: H.-B. 502, 2, a: H. 563, 1; 565.

**suis**: case? App. 114: G.-L. 345: A. 362: B. 187, I: H.-B. 365, a: H. 424.

#### THIRD REFERENCES:

*Predicate adjective*      *Indirect object*  
*Partitive genitive*      *Ablative of agent*  
*Gerund*      *Gerundive*  
*Two objects with compound verbs*  
*Substantive volitive (purpose) clauses*  
*Clauses with ubi, postquam, etc.*  
*Dependent clauses in ind. discourse*

insidiās veritus, quod quā dē causā discēderent nōndum perspexerat, exercitum equitātumque castris continuit. Primā lūce cōfirmatā rē ab explorātōribus, omnem equitātum, quī novissimum agmen morārētur, praemisit. His Q. Pedium et L. Aurunculēium Cottam lēgātōs praefēcit. T. Labiēnum 10 lēgātum cum legiōnibus tribus subsequi iussit. Hī novissimōs adorti et multa milia passuum prōsecūti magnam multitudinem eōrum fugientium concidērunt, cum ab extrēmō agmine ad quōs ventum erat cōsisterent fortiterque impetum nostrōrum militum sustinērent, priōrēs, quod abesse ā periculō 15 vidērentur neque ūllā necessitatē neque imperiō cōtinērentur, exaudītō clāmōre perturbātis ordinibus omnēs in fugā sibi praesidium pōnerent. Ita sine ūllō periculō tantam eōrum

6. *perspicio*, -*spicere*, -*spexi*, -*spectum*, *tr.* [*speciō*, look], look or see through, view, examine, inspect; perceive, realize, learn, find out, ascertain. \*

10. *Aurunculēius*, -*i*, *m.*, Lucius Aurunculeius Cotta (lū'shyūs aw-rūng'-kū-lē'yūs cōt'a), one of Caesar's lieutenants. 3.

11. *subsequor*, -*sequi*, -*secutus sum*, *tr. and intr.* [*sequor*, follow], follow closely, follow up or on, follow. \*

13. *fugio*, *fugere*, *fugī*, *fugitum*, *tr. and intr.* [*fuga*, flight], *intr.*, flee, run away, escape; *tr.*, shun, avoid. 4.

6. *quod perspexerat*: a causal clause.

7. *castris*, "in camp"; but the absence of *in* shows that the construction is means, not place.

8. *quī morārētur*, "to delay"; a purpose clause.

11. *lēgātum*: see Int. 38.

*subsequi*: the legions could not overtake the fugitives, but if the latter stopped to resist the cavalry the legions could make short work of them.

13. *fugientium*, "in their flight."  
*cum . . . cōsisterent*, "since (those) in the rear, whom (our men) had overtaken, would stop." *cōsisterent*, *sustinērent*,

14. *fortiter*, *adv.* [fortis, brave], bravely, stoutly, courageously. \*

15. *prior*, *prius*, *adj.*, *comp.* (App. 43), former, previous, prior, first; *pl. as noun*, those in front. 2.

16. *necessitās*, -*tātis*, *f.* [necesse, necessary], necessity, constraint, need. 2.

17. *exaudio*, 4, *tr.* [*audio*, hear], hear (from a distance). 1.

*clāmōr*, -*ōris*, *m.* [*clāmō*, cry out], outcry, noise, din, clamor. \*

*perturbō*, 1, *tr.* [*turbō*, disturb], disturb greatly, throw into confusion, embarrass, disturb; alarm, terrify. \*

and *pōnerent* are imperfects of repeated action: all through the day the cavalry kept overtaking bodies of the enemy, who were killed in the manner described in the text.

14. *ventum erat* is impersonal, but, as usual, the translation must be personal.

15. *priōrēs*, "(but) those [of the enemy] in advance."

*quod vidērentur neque cōtinērentur*: a causal clause; mode? App. 274: G.-L. 663, 1: A. 593: B. 324, 1: H.-B. 539: H. 652.

16. *neque . . . neque*, "and . . . not . . . nor."

multitudinem nostrī interfēcērunt quantum fuit diēi spatium;  
 20 sub occāsum sōlis sequī dēstitērunt sēque in castra, ut erat  
 imperātum, recēpērunt.

12. Postridiē eius diēi Caesar, priusquam sē hostēs ex  
 terrōre ac fugā reciperent, in finēs Suessiōnum, quī proximī  
 Rēmīs erant, exercitum dūxit et magnō itinere ad oppidum  
 Noviodūnum contendit. Id ex itinero oppugnāre cōnātus,  
 5 quod vacuum ab dēfēnsōribus esse audiēbat, propter lātitudinem  
 fossae mūrīque altitudinem paucīs dēfendentibus expugnāre

2. terror, -ōris, *m.* terreō, fright-  
 en], fright, alarm, panic, terror. 2.

4. Noviodūnum, -ī, *n.*, Noviodunum  
 (nō"vi-ō-dū'nūm) (Be) *the capital of the*  
*Suessiones, the modern Soissons.* 1.

5. vacuus, -a, -um, *adj.* [vacō, be  
 empty], empty, unoccupied; free from,  
 destitute of. 2.

audiō, 4, *tr.*, hear, hear of; dictō au-  
 diēns, obedient. \*

19. quantum . . . spatium, *lit.* "as  
 was the length of the day" = "as the  
 length of the day permitted."

Chap. 12-15. The Suessiones, the  
 Bellovaci, and the Ambiani surrender  
 to Caesar.

Chap. 12. Caesar takes the chief  
 town of the Suessiones.

1. priusquam reciperent: mode?  
 App. 236, b: G. L. 577: A. 551, b: B. 292, 1,  
 b: H.-B. 507, 4, b: H. 605, 2. Now that  
 Caesar had broken up the combination  
 of states, it only remained for him to  
 subdue them one by one.

3. magnō itinere: about 28 miles.  
 Caesar recrossed the Axona and marched  
 along its south bank. See map facing  
 p. 162.

4. ex itinere: i.e. before making  
 camp and without letting the soldiers  
 rest, although they were tired after their  
 unusually long march (Int. 54). Caesar  
 wanted to take the town before its gar-  
 rison could be reënforced. On this  
 method of taking towns see Int. 60.

6. paucīs dēfendentibus, "although  
 there were but few defenders"; ablative  
 absolute with adversative meaning.

1. strepitū, tumultū, ōrdine, im-  
 poriō: case? App. 142: G.-L. 399: A. 412:  
 B. 220, 1: H.-B. 445, 2: H. 473, 3.

3. peteret: mode? App. 239: G.-L.  
 586: A. 549: B. 286, 2: H.-B. 526: H. 598.

domum: case? App. 131: G.-L. 337:  
 A. 527, 2: B. 182, 1, b: H.-B. 450, b: H.  
 419, 1.

5. vidērētur: mode? App. 229, b:  
 G.-L. 553, 3: A. 569, 2: B. 257, 2: H.-B.  
 521, 3, a: H. 571, 1.

6. discēderent: mode? App. 262:  
 G.-L. 467: A. 573; 574: B. 300, 1, a: H.-B.  
 537, b: H. 649, II.

11. legiōnibus: case? App. 140: G.-L.  
 392, R. 1: A. 413: B. 222: H.-B. 419, 1: H.  
 473, 1.

12. milia: case? App. 130: G.-L.  
 335: A. 425: B. 181: H.-B. 387, I: H. 417.

15. militum: case? App. 98: G.-L.  
 363, 1: A. 343, n. 1: B. 199: H.-B. 344: H.  
 440, 1.

periculō: case? App. 134: G.-L. 390,  
 1: A. 400; 401: B. 214, 3: H.-B. 408, 2, a:  
 H. 461.

17. sibi: case? App. 120: G.-L. 350  
 2: A. 376: B. 188, 1: H.-B. 366: H. 495, 4.

#### THIRD REFERENCES:

*Subjective genitive*

*Ablative of separation*

*Ablative of accompaniment*

*Ablative of manner*

*Indirect question*

nōn potuit. Castris munitis vineās agere quaeque ad oppug-  
nandum ūsuī erant comparāre coepit. Interim omnis ex fugā  
Suessionum multitudō in oppidum proximā nocte convēnit.  
Celeriter vineis ad oppidum āctis, aggere iactō turribusque  
cōstitūtis, magnitudine operum, quae neque viderant ante  
Galli neque audierant, et celeritāte Rōmānōrum permōti  
lēgātōs ad Caesarem dē dēditionē mittunt et, petentibus Rēmīs  
ut cōservārentur, impetrant.

13. Caesar, obsidibus acceptis primis civitatis atque ipsius  
Galbae rēgis duobus filiis armisque omnibus ex oppidō trāditis,  
in dēditionem Suessionēs accipit exercitumque in Bellovacōs  
dūcit. Quī cum sē suaeque omnia in oppidum Bratuspantium  
contulissent, atque ab eō oppidō Caesar cum exercitū circiter  
milia passuum quīnque abesset, omnēs maiōrēs nātū ex oppidō

7. vinea, -ae, *f.* [vinum, wine],  
vine arbor, hence, a shed for the defense  
of a besieging party. 4.

10. agger, aggeris, *m.*, material for  
earthworks. earth; embankment,  
mound; rampart. \*

turris, -is, *f.*, tower. \*

11. magnitūdō, -inis, *f.* [magnus,  
great], greatness, great size, size, ex-  
tent; stature (corporum); violence  
(venti); severity (poenae); magnitū-

7. vineās agere, "to move up the  
vineae." See Int. 62, d.

quaeque, "and (those things) which."

8. ūsuī: dative of purpose.

9. in oppidum: they probably en-  
tered from the north by crossing the  
Arona. There may have been a bridge  
which Caesar had not had time to de-  
stroy.

10. aggere turribusque: see Int. 61.

13. petentibus Rēmīs: on the rela-  
tions between the Remi and the Suessi-  
ones see 3, 11.

14. impetrant, "they [the Suessi-

14. cōservārentur: tense? App.  
202; 203; 204, b. G.-L. 509, 1, 2, 1, a; 510:  
A. 482; 483; 485, c: B. 267; 268, 3. H.-B.  
476, 491, 1, 2: H. 543; 544; 546.

dō animi, courage. \*

12. celeritās, -tātis, *f.* [celer,  
swift], swiftness, quickness, speed. \*

14. cōservō, 1, *tr.* [servō, save],  
save, spare, protect; observe, maintain.  
\*

4. Bratuspantium, -ti, *n.* (Be), Brat-  
uspantium (brāt'ūs-pān'shyūm). 1.

6. nātus, -ūs, *m.* [nāscor, be born],  
birth; maiōrēs nātū, greater by birth,  
elders. 3.

ones] obtained their request." The  
verb is used absolutely.

Chap. 13. Caesar marches against  
the Bellovaci, who sue for peace.

1. obsidibus, "as hostages"; in ap-  
position with *primis*, which is used as a  
noun, and with *filiis*.

2. Galbae: who had been head of the  
league; see 4, 20.

3. Bellovacōs: the strongest Bel-  
gian state. For the direction of his  
march see map facing p. 162.

6. ex oppidō: is *ex* needed with this  
verb? See 11, 2.

impetrant: tense? App. 190, a: G.-L.  
229: A. 469: B. 259, 3: H.-B. 491, 1: H. 533, 3.

THIRD REFERENCE:  
*Historical present*

ēgressi manūs ad Caesarem tendere et vōce significāre coepērunt, sēsē in eius fidem ac potestātem venire neque contrā populum Rōmānum armīs contendere. Item, cum ad oppidum  
 10 accessisset castraque ibi pōneret, puerī mulierēsque ex mūrō passīs manibus suō mōre pācem ab Rōmānīs petiērunt.

14. Prō hīs Dīviciācus (nam post discessum Belgārum dīmīssīs Haeduōrum cōpiīs ad eum reverterat) facit verba: Bellovacōs omnī tempore in fidē atque amicitīā civitātis Haeduae fuisse; impulsōs ab suis principibus, quī dicerent Haeduōs ā  
 5 Caesare in servitūtem redāctōs omnēs indignitātēs contumēliāsque perferre, et ab Haeduīs dēfēcisse et populō Rōmānō bellum intulisse. Quī eius cōsiliī principēs fuissent, quod

7. **tendō, tendere, tetendi, tentum** or **tēsum, tr.**, stretch, stretch out, extend; *stretch a tent*, pitch; encamp. 1.

**vōx, vōcis, f.**, voice, tone; outcry, cry; word; *pl.*, words, language, *variously translated according to context*, as entreaties, complaints, tales, etc. \*

11. **pandō, pandere, pandi, passum, tr.**, spread or stretch out, extend; **passis capillis**, with disheveled hair; **passis manibus**, with outstretched hands. 2.

7. **vōce significāre**: the Romans did not understand the language, but did understand their meaning. *sēsē . . . contendere* depends on this expression.

10. **puerī**, "children," both boys and girls.

**ex mūrō**, "on the wall." The Romans thought of the entreaties as coming "from the wall."

Chap. 14. Diviciacus pleads for the Bellovaci.

1. **discessum**: i.e. the breaking up of the great army at the Axona.

4. **quī**: use? App. 173, a: G.-L. 610, R. 1: A. 308, f: B. 251, 6: H.-B. 284, 8: H. 510.

6. **nātū**: case? App. 149: G.-L. 397: A. 418: B. 226, 1: H.-B. 441: H. 480, 1.

11. **mōre**: case? App. 142, a: G.-L.

1. **discessus, -ūs, m.** [**discēdō**, de-part], departure, withdrawal, absence. 3.

4. **impellō, -pellere, -pulli, -pulum, tr.** [**in + pellō**, drive], drive or urge on, incite, instigate, impel. 3.

5. **redigō, -igere, -ēgi, -āctum, tr.** [**red- + agō**, put in motion], bring back, bring under; render, make; reduce. \*

**indignitās, -tātis, f.** [**indignus**, unworthy], unworthiness; outrage, disgrace. 1.

3. **omni tempore fuisse**, "had always been." Diviciacus claims the Bellovaci as members of the league which was headed by the Haedui. See Int. 29.

4. **impulsōs . . . et dēfēcisse et intulisse**, "that they [the Bellovaci] instigated . . . had both revolted and made."

5. **redāctōs perferre**, "had been reduced . . . and were enduring."

7. **quī**, "those who." The unexpressed antecedent is the subject of *profūgissee*.

399, n. 1: A. 418, a: B. 220, 3: H.-B. 414, a: H. 475, 3.

#### THIRD REFERENCES:

*Ablative of specification*  
*Coördinate relative*

intellegerent quantam calamitatem civitati intulissent, in Britanniam profugisse. Petere non solum Bellovacōs sed etiam prō his Haeduōs ut suā clēmentiā ac mānsuētūdine in eōs 10 utātur. Quod si fēcerit, Haeduōrum auctōritatem apud omnēs Belgās amplificātūrum; quōrum auxiliis atque opibus, si qua bella inciderint, sustentāre cōsuērint.

15. Caesar honōris Dīviciāci atque Haeduōrum causā sēsē eōs in fidem receptūrum et cōservatūrum dixit, et, quod erat civitās magnā inter Belgās auctōritate atque hominum multitūdine praestābat, sescentōs obsidēs poposcit. His trāditis omnibusque armīs ex oppidō collātis, ab eō locō in finēs 5 Ambianōrum pervēnit, quī sē suaque omnia sine morā dēdidē-

9. **profugiō**, -fugere, -fūgi, -fugitum, *intr.* [fugiō, flee], flee, flee from, run away, escape. 4.

10. **clēmentia**, -ae, *f.* [clēmōns, gentle], gentleness, kindness, mercy, clemency. 2.

**mānsuētūdō**, -inis, *f.* [mānsuētus, tame], gentleness, clemency, compassion. 2.

12. **amplificō**, 1, *tr.* [amplus, large + faciō, make], extend, enlarge, increase, \*

8. **quantam intulissent**: indirect question.

9. **Britanniam**: the relations between the Belgae and the Britons appear to have been rather close. See 4, 19.

10. **suā**, "his usual."

11. **quod si fēcerit**, "if he should do this." The direct form meant "if you shall have done this."

12. **quōrum**: the antecedent is *Belgās*.

13. **qua**: the usual form of the neuter plural, nominative and accusative,

6. **populō**: case? App. 116, I: G.-L. 347: A. 370; B. 187, III, 2: H.-B. 376, a: H. 429, 1.

10. **clēmentiā**: case? App. 145: G.-L. 407: A. 410; B. 218, 1: H.-B. 429: H. 477, I.

11. **utātur**: tense? App. 202; 203; 270, a: G.-L. 509, 1; 510; 654, n.: A. 482; 483; 585, b: B. 267; 318: H. 543; 544; 644, 1.

expand. 1.

13. **incidō**, -cidere, -cidi, —, *intr.* [cadō, fall], fall into or upon; fall in with, meet; happen, arise. 2.

4. **sescenti**, -ae, -a (DC), *card. num. adj.* [sex, six], six hundred. \*

6. **mora**, -ae, *f.*, delay. 3.

**dēdō**, -dere, -didi, -ditum, *tr.* [dō, give], give up or over, yield, surrender; devote; **sē dēdere**, submit, surrender. \*

when *quis* is used as an indefinite.

Chap. 15. Caesar accepts the surrender of the Bellovaci and the Ambiani. The character of the Nervii.

1. **honōris causā**, lit. "for the sake of the honor of" = "in deference to."

2. **eōs**, i.e. the Bellovaci, is the object of *receptūrum et cōservatūrum* (*esse*).

3. **multitūdine**: ablative of specification.

6. **Ambianōrum**: see map facing p. 162.

13. **qua**: use? App. 174: G.-L. 107, R.: A. 310, a: B. 91, 5: H.-B. 276, 1: H. 186. **cōsuērint**: form? App. 72: G.-L. 131, 1: A. 181, a: B. 116, 1: H.-B. 163, 1: H. 238.

#### THIRD REFERENCES:

*Dative with compound verbs*  
*Ablative with ūtor, etc.*

runt. Eōrum finēs Nervii attingēbant; quōrum dē nātūrā mōribusque Caesar cum quaereret, sic reperiēbat: Nullum aditum esse ad eōs mercātōribus; nihil patī vinī reliquārumque  
 10 rērum ad lūxuriā pertinentium inferri, quod hīs rēbus relanguēscere animōs et remitti virtutem existimārent; esse hominēs ferōs magnaeque virtūtis; increpitāre atque incūsāre reliquōs Belgās, quī sē populō Rōmānō dēdidissent patriamque virtutem prōiēcissent; cōfirmāre sēsē neque lēgātōs missūrōs  
 15 neque ūllam condiціōnem pācis acceptūrōs.

16. Cum per eōrum finēs trīduum iter fēcisset, inveniēbat ex captivīs Sabim flūmen ā castris suis nōn amplius milia

9. *aditus*, -ūs, *m.* [adeō, go to], approach, means of approach, right of approach, access. \*

*vinum*, -i, *n.*, wine. 2.

10. *lūxuria*, -ae, *f.*, luxury, high living. 1.

11. *relanguēscō*, -languēscere, -languī, —, *intr.* [re-+languēscō, become weak], become weak or enfeebled. 1.

*remittō*, -mittere, -misi, -missum, *tr.* [re-+mittō, send], send or despatch back, return, restore, remit; release, relax, give up; *remissus*, *pf. part. as adj.*, mild. \*

7. *quōrum*, "their."

8. *nūllum... mercātōribus*, "that traders had no access to them."

9. *patī*, "that (they) allowed."

*vinī, rērum*: partitive genitives with *nihil*.

10. *quod existimārent*: causal clause in indirect discourse.

13. *dēdidissent, prōiēcissent*: may have been subjunctive in the direct form. See App. 245: G.-L. 633: A. 535, c: B. 283,

12. *increpitō*, 1, *tr.* [freq. of *increpō*, chide], chide, blame; make sport of, taunt. 2.

*incūsō*, 1, *tr.* [causa, cause or case], bring a case or charge against; censure, upbraid, blame. 2.

13. *patrius*, -a, -um, *adj.* [pater, father], fatherly; ancestral. 1.

1. *invenīō*, -venire, -venī, -ventum, *tr.* [venīō, come], come upon, find, meet with; find out, learn. 2.

2. *Sabis*, -is, *m.* (Af), the river Sabis (sā/bis). 2.

*amplē*, *adv.* [amplus, large], largely; *comp.*, *amplius*, more, farther. \*

3: H.-B. 523: H. 592.

14. *cōfirmāre sēsē neque mis-sūrōs*, "they declared that they would neither send."

Chap. 16-28. Caesar narrowly escapes defeat by the Nervii, but secures their submission after almost entirely destroying their army.

Chap. 16. The Nervii encamp at the Sabis, prepared for battle.

2. *Sabim*: note the accusative in *-im*.

2. *erat*: mode? App. 244: G.-L. 540: A. 540: B. 286, 1: H.-B. 554; 555: H. 588, I.

3. *auctōritāte*: case? App. 141: G.-L. 400: A. 415: B. 224: H.-B. 443: H. 473, 2.

9. *mercātōribus*: case? App. 117: G.-L. 349: A. 373: B. 190: H.-B. 374: H. 430.

12. *virtūtis*: case? App. 100: G.-L.

365: A. 345: B. 203: H.-B. 355: H. 440, 3.  
 13. *reliquōs*: meaning? App. 160: G.-L. 291, R. 2: A. 293: B. 241, 1: H.-B. 244: H. 497, 4.

THIRD REFERENCES:

*Descriptive genitive*

*Causal clauses with quod, etc.*

passuum x abesse; trāns id flūmen omnēs Nervios cōnsēdisse adventumque ibi Rōmānōrum expectāre unā cum Atrebātibus et Viromanduis, finitimis suis (nam his utrisque persuāserant 5 uti eandem bellī fortūnam experirentur); expectārī etiam ab iis Atuaticōrum cōpiās atque esse in itinere; mulierēs quīque per aetātem ad pugnam inūtilēs vidērentur in eum locum conīcisse quō propter palūdēs exercitui aditus nōn esset.

17. His rēbus cognitīs explōrātōrēs centuriōnēsque prae-mittit quī locum idōneum castris dēligant. Cum ex dēditiciis Belgis reliquisque Gallis complūrēs Caesarem secūtī unā iter facerent, quidam ex his, ut postea ex captivis cognitum est, eōrum diērum cōnsuētūdine itineris nostrī exercitūs perspectā, 5 nocte ad Nervios pervēnerunt atque his dēmōstrārunt inter

6. **experior, -periri, -pertus sum,** tr., prove, try, test, experience. \*

8. **aetās, aetātis, f.,** period of life, age. 2.

**inūtilis, -e, adj. [in- + ūtilis, useful],** useless, worthless; disadvantageous. 2.

1. **centuriō, -ōnis, m. [centum, a hundred],** centurion, the commander of the century, the sixtieth part of a legion. \*

4. **quidam, quaedam, quiddam and quidam, quaedam, quoddam, indef. pron.** (App. 62 and b), a certain one, some one; a certain, some, a; a kind of. \*

5. **cōnsuētūdō, -inis, f. [cōnsuēscō,** become accustomed], habit, custom, practice; mode of life. \*

For the course of the river see map facing p. 162.

**milia:** accusative of extent of space. Why not the ablative after the comparative? App. 139, b: G.-L. 296, R. 4: A. 407, c: B. 217, 3: H.-B. 416, d: H. 471, 4.

3. **trāns flūmen:** i.e. on the southern bank. For the exact location see plan, p. 191.

5. **finitimis:** in apposition with *Atrebātibus* and *Viromanduis*. See map.

6. **ab iis:** i.e. by the Nervii.

7. **quīque,** "and (the men) who."

8. **eum locum quō,** "a place to which."

9. **conīcisse:** as subject supply *eōs*, referring to the Nervii.

**esset;** mode? App. 230, a: G.-L. 631, 1: A. 535: B. 283, 1: H.-B. 521, 1: H. 591, 2.

Chap. 17. The Nervii plan to surprise Caesar.

2. **ex . . . Gallis:** equivalent to a partitive genitive.

3. **Caesarem . . . facerent,** "had joined Caesar and were marching along with him."

5. **eōrum . . . exercitūs,** "our army's usual order of march during those days." Both *diērum* and *exercitūs* depend on *itineris*. On the order of march see Int. 53.

6. **inter singulās legiōnēs,** "between every two legions."

1. **trīduum:** case? App. 130: G.-L. 336: A. 423: B. 181, 1: H.-B. 387, II: H. 417.

5. **his:** case? App. 115: G.-L. 346, R. 2: A. 367: B. 187, II, a: H.-B. 362, footnote 3, b: H. 426, 2.

9. **exercitui:** case? App. 117: G.-L. 349: A. 373: B. 190: H.-B. 374: H. 430.

THIRD REFERENCES:

*Indirect object with intransitive verbs*  
*Dative of possessor*

singulās legiōnēs impedimentōrum magnum numerum intercēdere, neque esse quicquam negōtī, cum prīma legiō in castra vēnisset reliquaeque legiōnēs magnum spatium abessent, hanc  
 10 sub sarcinīs adorīrī; quā pulsā impedimentisque direptīs, futūrum ut reliquae contrā cōsistere nōn auderent. Adiuvābat etiam eōrum cōnsilium quī rem dēferēbant, quod Nervī  
 antiquitus, cum equitatū nihil possent (neque enim ad hoc  
 tempus eī rei student, sed quicquid possunt pedestribus valent  
 15 cōpiīs), quō facilius finitimōrum equitatū, sī praedandī causā ad eōs vēnissent, impedirent, teneris arboribus incīsīs atque

10. diripiō, -ripere, -ripul, -reptum, *tr.* [rapiō, seize], rend or tear asunder; plunder, pillage. 1.

11. adiuvo, -iuvāre, -iūvi, -iūtum, *tr.* [iuvō, aid], aid, help, assist; contribute to, support. 1.

14. quisquis, quicquid, *indef.* (or *generalizing*) *rel. pron.* (App. 60, a), whoever, whatever. 1.

pedester, -tris, -tre, *adj.* [pēs, foot],

on foot, pedestrian; pedestres cōplae, infantry. \*

15. praedor, 1, *tr.* [praeda, booty],

make booty, plunder, rob, despoil. \*

16. tener, -era, -erum, *adj.*, tender. 1.

arbor, -oris, *f.*, tree. 2.

incidō, -cidere, -cidi, -cisum, *tr.* [caedō, cut], cut into. 1.

7. impedimentōrum: see Int. 46.

numerus, "amount." Caesar is thinking of the number of pack animals.

8. neque . . . negōtī, "and that it would be [lit. was] no trouble."

castra, "camping-ground."

9. vēnisset, abessent: indirect discourse for the future perfect and the future, respectively. The direct form meant "when . . . shall have come and . . . shall be distant."

spatium: accusative of extent of space.

10. sarcinīs: see Int. 37.

11. futūrum (*esse*) ut, "the result would be that." This clause is connected with the preceding by a relative, so that it appears to be a subordinate clause in indirect discourse. Why is the infinitive used instead of the subjunctive? App. 269, a: G.-L. 635: A. 583, b: B. 314, 4: H.-B. 535, 1, b: H. 643, 1.

adiuvābat: the subject is the clause quod . . . effecerant; "the fact that the Nervii had made, etc., assisted."

13. nihil: case? App. 128, b: G.-L. 334, R. 1: A. 390, c: B. 176, 2, b: H.-B. 397, III: H. 416, 2.

14. ei rei: i.e. cavalry.

quicquid . . . cōpiīs, "whatever strength they have consists in infantry."

15. quō impedirent: a purpose clause. Why is not *ut* used? App. 235, a, 2: G.-L. 545, 2: A. 531, a: B. 282, a: H.-B. 502, 2, b: H. 568, 7.

16. vēnissent: implied indirect discourse for the future perfect indicative. Their thought was "that we may check the cavalry if they shall have come."

teneris . . . interiectis: a row of young trees was planted around a field; their trunks were partly cut through (*incīsīs*) and their tops bent over (*inflexīs*). The tops would then continue growing slowly, and many branches would spring out from the sides of the trunk below the cut (*crēbris* . . . *ēnatis*). In all thin spots bramble bushes were planted (*rubis* . . . *interiectis*).

inflexis, crēbrisque in lātitudinem rāmīs ēnātīs, et rubis senti-  
busque interiectīs, effēcerant ut instar mūrī hae saepēs mūni-  
menta praeberent quō nōn modo nōn intrārī, sed nē per-  
spici quidem posset. His rēbus cum iter agminis nostrī ⁂

17. rāmus, -ī, *m.*, branch, bough. 1.  
ēnāscor, -nāsci, -nātus sum, *intr.*  
[nāscor, be born], be born from; spring  
up. 1.

rubus, -ī, *m.*, bramble. 1.

sentis, -is, *m.*, briar. 1.

18. intericiō, -icere, -lēci, -lectum,  
*tr.* [iaciō, hurl. App. 7], throw or hurl  
between; put or place between; inter-  
fectus, *pf. part. as adj.*, lying between,  
intervening, interspersed; mediocri

interiectō spatiō, not far away. 4.

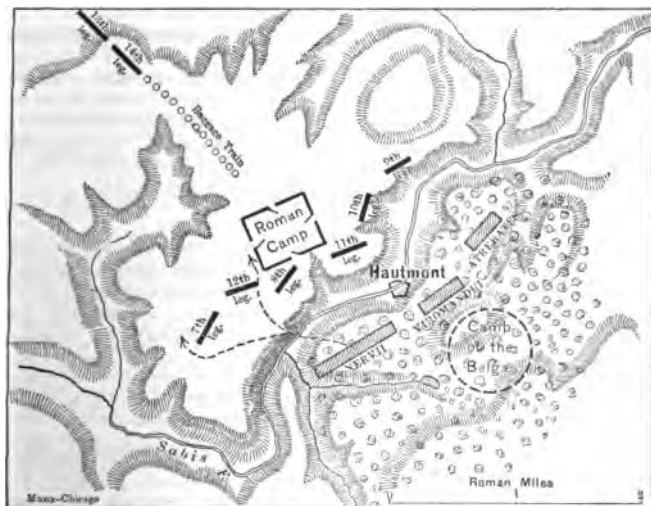
instar, *n., indecl.*, likeness; with *gen.*,  
like. 1.

saepēs, -is, *f.*, hedge. 2.

mūnimentum, -ī, *n.* [mūniō, fortify],  
defense, fortification. 1.

19. praebeō, 2, *tr.* [prae + habeō,  
hold], hold out, offer, furnish, present.  
3.

intrō, 1, *tr.*, go or walk into, enter,  
penetrate. 1.



BATTLE ON THE SABIS

18. effēcerant ut praeberent, "they  
had made these hedges furnish."

19. quō . . . posset: a clause of

characteristic. Translate personally,  
"into which one not only could not pen-  
etrate, but could not even see."

impedirētur, nōn omittendum sibi cōnsilium Nervii existimāverunt.

18. Locī nātūra erat haec quem locum nostrī castris dēlēgerant. Collis ab summō aequāliter dēclivis ad flūmen Sabim, quod suprā nōmināvimus, vergēbat. Ab eō flūmine parī acclivitatē collis nāscēbātur adversus huic et contrārius, passūs circiter ducentōs infimus apertus, ab superiōre parte silvestris, ut nōn facile intrōsus perspicī posset. Intrā eas silvās hostēs in occultō sēsē continēbant; in apertō locō secun-

21. omittō, -mittere, -misi, -mis-sum, *tr.* [ob+mittō, send], let go or fall, drop; give up, neglect, disregard. 1.

2. aequāliter, *adv.* [aequālis, equal; aequus, equal], equally, evenly. 1.

dēclivis, -e, *adj.* [clivis, a slope], sloping downward, declining; *n. pl. as noun*, slopes. 2.

3. nōminō, 1, *tr.* [nōmen, name], call by name, name, mention. 1.

4. acclivitās, -tātis, *f.* [acclivis, ascending], ascent, slope. 1.

nāscor, nāsci, nātus sum, *intr.*, be born or produced; rise, spring up, be reared; be found. 3.

contrārius, -a, -um, *adj.* [contrā, against], lying over against, opposite, facing; *ex contrāriō*, on the contrary. 3.

6. silvestris, -e, *adj.* [silva, forest], of a wood, wooded; in a wood or forest. 1.

intrōsus, *adv.* [intrō, within+versus, *pf. part. of* vertō, turn], within, on the inside. 1.

7. occultus, -a, -um, *adj.*, covered, hidden, concealed, secret; *n. as noun*, a hidden place, an ambush. 2.

secundum, *prep. with acc.* [sequor, follow], along; in the direction of; besides, in addition to. 3.

Chap. 18. Description of the battlefield.

1. haec, "as follows."

locum: omit in translation.

nostrī: i.e. the scouts and centurions who had been sent on ahead; 17, 1.

2. collis: north of the river. See

plan, p. 191.

summō, "the top"; the ablative singular of *summus*, used as a noun.

4. collis: south of the river.

5. passūs . . . apertus, "at the bottom bare of trees for two hundred paces."

2. dēligant: tense? App. 202; 203; 204, b: G.-L. 509, 1, 2, 1, a: A. 482; 483; 485, c: B. 267; 268, 3: H.-B. 476; 491, 1, 2: H. 543; 544; 546.

6. dēmōnstrārunt: form? App. 72: G.-L. 131, 1: A. 181, a: B. 116, 1: H.-B. 163, 1: H. 238.

11. audērent: mode? App. 229, b: G.-L. 553, 3: A. 569, 2: B. 297, 2: H.-B. 521, 3, a: H. 571, 1.

12. quod effēcerant: construction? App. 248: G.-L. 524; 525, 3: A. 572: B. 299,

1: H.-B. 549; 552, 1: H. 588, I, 3.

21. omittendum (*esse*): construction? App. 285, II, a: G.-L. 251, 1: A. 500, 2: B. 337, 7, b, 1: H.-B. 162; 600, 3: H. 237.

sibi: case? App. 118: G.-L. 355: A. 374, a: B. 189, 1: H.-B. 373, 1: H. 431.

#### THIRD REFERENCES:

*Contracted verb forms*

*Sequence of tenses*

*Substantive clauses of result*

dum flūmen paucae statīōnēs equitum vidēbantur. Flūminis erat altitūdō pedum circiter trium.

19. Caesar equitātū praemissō subsequēbātur omnibus cōpiis; sed ratiō ōrdōque agminis aliter sē habēbat ac Belgae ad Nervios dētulerant. Nam quod hostibus appropinquābat, cōsuetūdine suā Caesar sex legiōnēs expeditās dūcēbat; post eas tōtius exercitūs impedimenta collocārat; inde duae legiōnēs quae proximē cōscriptae erant tōtum agmen claudēbant praesidiōque impedimentis erant. Equitēs nostrī cum funditōribus sagittāriisque flūmen trāsgressi cum hostium equitātū proelium commiserunt. Cum sē illi identidem in silvās ad suos reciperent ac rursus ex silvā in nostrōs impetum facerent, neque nostrī longius quam quem ad finem porrēcta loca aperta perti-

8. statīō, -ōnis, *f.* [stō, stand], standing or stationing; a military post or station; sentries, pickets, outposts; in statīōne esse, be on guard. 4.

2. aliter, *adv.* [alius, other], otherwise; aliter . . . ac, otherwise . . . than. 2.

8. trāsgredior, -gredi, -gressus

8. vidēbantur, "were seen," not "seemed."

9. pedum trium: descriptive genitive, in the predicate.

Chap. 19. The Romans are attacked while fortifying their camp.

1. omnibus cōpiis: why is *cum* not used? App. 140, a: G.-L. 392, R. 1: A. 413, a: B. 222, 1: H.-B. 420: H. 474, 2, n. 1.

Caesar is now picking up the thread of the story which he dropped in 17, 2.

2. aliter . . . ac, lit. "had itself otherwise than" = "was different from what."

habēbat is singular because *ratiō* *fr.*

sum, *tr.* [gradior, step], step over, cross. 1.

9. identidem, *adv.* [Idem, the same], repeatedly. 1.

11. porrigō, -rigere, -rēxi, -rēc-tum, *tr.* [prō+regō, keep straight], extend; porrēctus, *pf. part. as adj.*, extended, in extent. 1.

*dōque* is thought of as a single idea, almost "method of arrangement."

4. expeditās, "without baggage"; whereas the Nervii had been told that each legion would be separated from the next by a long train of baggage.

6. legiōnēs . . . cōscriptae erant: as the enemy was known to be in front, Caesar did not expect these legions to be attacked. The same legions were left in camp at the Axona; 8, 15.

10. reciperent, facerent, "kept retreating, kept making."

11. longius . . . finem, "than the limit to which." Our idiom would lead

2. ad flūmen: construction? App. 131: G.-L. 337: A. 426, 2: B. 182, 2: H.-B. 335: H. 418.

4. acclivitāte: case? App. 141: G.-L. 400: A. 415: B. 224: H.-B. 443: H. 473, 2.

5. infimus: meaning? App. 160: G.-L. 291, R. 2: A. 293: B. 241, 1: H.-B. 244: H. 497, 4.

6. posset: mode? App. 226: G.-L. 552: A. 537, 1: B. 284, 1: H.-B. 521, 2: H. 570.

#### THIRD REFERENCES:

*Places to which*

*Descriptive ablative*

*Adjectives with partitive meaning.*

nēbant cēdentēs insequī audērent, interim legiōnēs sex quae primae vēnerant opere dimēnsō castra mūnīre coepērunt. Ubi prima impedimenta nostrī exercitūs ab iīs quī in silvīs abditi  
 15 latēbant vīsa sunt, quod tempus inter eōs committendī proeli convēnerat, ut intrā silvās aciem ordinēsque cōstituerant atque ipsī sēsē cōfirmāverant, subitō omnibus cōpiīs prōvolāvērunt impetumque in nostrōs equitēs fēcērunt. Hīs facile  
 20 rērunt, ut paene ūnō tempore et ad silvās et in flūmine hostēs vidērentur. Eādē autem celeritātē adversō colle ad nostra castra atque eōs quī in opere occupātī erant contendērunt.

**20. Caesarī omnia ūnō tempore erant agenda: vexillum**

**12. cēdō, cēdere, cessi, cessum,** *intr.*, go; go away; give way, yield, retreat. 2.

**13. dimētiōr, -mētiōr, -mēsus sum,** *tr.* [mētiōr, measure], measure out or off. 2.

**15. lateō, -ēre, -ui, —, intr.,** escape notice, lurk, lie concealed or hidden. 2.

**17. subitō, adv.** [subitus, sudden], suddenly, unexpectedly, of a sudden. \*

us to expect *ad finem, ad quem*, but the antecedent is attracted into the relative clause.

**porrēcta pertinēbant**, lit. "extended stretched out" = "extended." The whole clause *quem . . . pertinēbant* means "to the edge of the woods."

**12. cēdentēs:** sc. *eōs*; i.e. the enemy.

**13. dimēnsō:** this is one of a few deponent verbs whose perfect participles have a passive meaning.

**14. prima impedimenta**, "the head of the baggage train."

**15. quod tempus**, "the time which."

**16. convēnerat**, "had been agreed upon."

ut . . . ipsī sēsē cōfirmāverant, "as . . . they had pledged each other

**prōvolō, 1. intr.** [volō, fly], fly or rush forth. 1.

**19. prōturbō, 1. tr.** [turbō, disturb], drive in confusion; dislodge. 1.

**dēcurrō, -currere, -cucurri, -cursum, intr.** [currō, run], run down, hurry down. 4.

**1. vexillum, -i, n.,** banner, flag, standard. 1.

(to do)."

**20. ut vidērentur:** a result clause.

**21. adversō colle**, lit. "by way of the hill facing them" = "up the hill." For the case of *colle*, see App. 144: G.-L. 389: A. 429, a: B. 218, 9: H.-B. 426, a: H. 476.

**22. opere:** i.e. of fortifying the camp.

The attack was a complete surprise. The Roman scouts had not done their work properly, and Caesar himself appears to have been careless in not keeping a part of his men under arms while the enemy were so near.

Chap. 20. The critical position of the Romans, and the value of their discipline.

**1. Caesarī omnia erant agenda,**

382, 1: B. 191, 2, b: H.-B. 360, b: H. 433, 2.

**THIRD REFERENCES:**

*Double dative*

*Ablative of accordance*

**4. cōsuetūdine:** case? App. 142, a: G.-L. 399, n. 1: A. 418, a: B. 220, 3: H.-B. 414, a: H. 475, 3.

**6. praesidiō impedimentis:** construction? App. 119: G.-L. 356, n. 1: A.

prōpōnendum, quod erat insigne cum ad arma concurrī oportēret, signum tubā dandum, ab opere revocandī militēs, qui paulō longius aggeris petendī causā prōcesserant arcessendī, aciēs instruenda, militēs cohortandī, signum dandum. Quārum 5 rerum magnam partem temporis brevitās et incursus hostium impediēbat. His difficultātibus duae rēs erant subsidiō, scientia atque ūsus militum, quod, superiōribus proeliis exercitātī, quid fierī oportēret nōn minus commodē ipsī sibi praescribere quam ab aliīs docērī poterant; et quod ab opere singulisque 10 legiōnibus singulōs lēgātōs Caesar discēdere nisi mūnītis castris

2. concurrō, -currere, -curri, -cursum, *intr.* [currō, run], run or rush together; hurry, run, rush; run to the rescue; come, gather. 2.

3. tuba, -ae, *f.*, trumpet. 1. revocō, 1, *tr.* [re-+vocō, call], call back, recall; withdraw. 2.

4. paulō, *adv.* [paulus, little], a little, somewhat, slightly. \*

prōcēdō, -cēdere, -cessi, -cessum, *intr.* [cēdō, go], go forth or forward, proceed, advance. \*

arcessō, -ere, -ivi, -itum, summon, send for, invite. \*

6. brevitās, -tātis, *f.* [brevis,

short], shortness; brevity. 2.

incursus, -ūs, *m.* [incurrō, rush into or upon], attack. 1.

7. difficultās, -tātis, *f.* [difficilis, difficult], difficulty, trouble, embarrassment. \*

scientia, -ae, *f.* [sciō, know], knowledge, science, skill. 4.

8. exercitātus, -a, -um, *adj.* [*pf. part. of* exercitō, train or practice well], well trained, skilled, versed. 2.

9. praescribō, -scribere, -scripsi, -scriptum, *tr.* [scribō, write], write beforehand; order, direct, prescribe, dictate to. 3.

lit. "all things had to be done by Caesar"="Caesar had to do everything."

vexillum: a red banner which was displayed in front of the general's headquarters.

2. prōpōnendum: supply *erat*. Similarly supply *erat* or *erant* with each of the future passive participles which follow.

3. signum: to form ranks.

qui, "(those soldiers) who."

4. paulō longius, "a little too far." aggeris: here the materials for building the rampart, especially timber; for the sod and earth were taken from the trench on the spot. See p. 30, fig. 5.

arcessendī: by messengers.

5. signum: here the signal for the attack.

7. duae rēs: explained by two appos-

itives, first, *scientia atque ūsus*, "the theoretical and practical knowledge of the soldiers"; second, *quod . . . vetuerat* (l. 10), "the fact that Caesar had forbidden, etc."

8. quod poterant: a causal clause.

proeliis, "in battles"; but it is an ablative of means.

9. quid fieri oportēret, "what ought to be done"; an indirect question, object of *praescribere*.

10. ab singulis . . . discēdere, "each legate to leave a particular legion." It is not quite correct to translate "leave his legion," because the legates did not have permanent commands. See Int. 88.

11. nisi mūnītis castris, lit. "unless the camp having been fortified"="until the camp had been fortified."

vetuerat. Hī propter propinquitātem et celeritātem hostium nihil iam Caesaris imperium expectābant, sed per sē quae vidēbantur administrābant.

21. Caesar necessariis rēbus imperātis ad cohortandōs milites quam in partem fors obtulit decucurrit, et ad legiōnem decimam devenit. Milites nōn longiore orātiōne cohortātus quam uti suae pristinae virtutis memoriam retinērent ne perturbarentur animō hostiumque impetum fortiter sustinērent, quod nōn longius hostēs aberant quam quō telum adigi posset, proeli committendī signum dedit. Atque in alteram partem item cohortandī causā profectus pugnantibus occurrit. Tem-

12. **vetō, -āre, -ul-, -itum, tr.**, forbid.

14. **administrō, 1, tr.** [minister, servant], serve, attend, wait upon; manage, guide. \*

2. **fors, fortis, f.**, chance; **forte, abl. as adv.**, by chance, perchance. 3.

**offerō, offerre, obtuli, oblātum, tr.** [ob + ferō, bear], bring before, present; offer, confer upon, give; *with sē*, expose one's self to, charge upon, encounter. 3.

3. **decimus, -a, -um, ord. num. adj.** [decem, ten], tenth. \*

13. **nihil**: an emphatic *nōn*.  
**quae vidēbantur**, "whatever seemed best."

Chap. 21. Caesar encourages his men.

1. **ad . . . milites**: with *decucurrit*.

2. **quam in partem** = *in eam partem in quam*. Cf. note on 19, 11.

**legiōnem decimam**: Caesar's favorite legion; cf. I, 40, 45-48. Note its position on the plan, p. 191.

3. **nōn longiore orātiōne quam uti**, "with a speech no longer than (this:) that they should, etc."

1. **Caesari**: case? App. 118: G.-L. 355: A. 374, a: B. 189, 1: H.-B. 373, 1: H. 431.

**erant agenda**: construction? App. 285, II, a: G.-L. 251, 1: A. 500, 2: B. 337, 7, b, 1: H.-B. 162; 600, 3: H. 237.

4. **paulō**: case? App. 148: G.-L. 403:

**devenitō, -venire, -vēni, -ventum, intr.** [venitō, come], come down, go, come. 2.

**longus, -a, -um, adj.**, long, distant; of long duration; tedious. \*

6. **adigō, -igere, -ēgi, -actum, tr.** [agō, move], drive or bring by force, move; thrust, plunge, hurl (*of weapons*); bind (*by an oath*). \*

8. **occurrō, -currere, -curri, -cursum, intr.** [ob + currō, run], run in the way of, meet; happen upon; go to, come to; oppose, counteract; occur. \*

4. **neu**: the regular expression for "and not" in substantive volitive (purpose) clauses.

6. **quod aberant**: a causal clause, explaining *signum dedit*.

**quam . . . posset**, lit. "than to which a javelin could be thrown." Omit *quō* in translating. For the mode of *posset* see App. 230: G.-L. 631, 3: A. 535, c: B. 283, 1, 2, a: H.-B. 531, 2, c: H. 570, 1.

7. **in alteram partem**: the right wing. See plan.

8. **pugnantibus occurrit**, "he found (them already) fighting."

A. 414: B. 223: H.-B. 424: H. 479, 1.

10. **quod vetuerat**: construction? App. 248: G.-L. 524; 525, 3: A. 572: B. 299, 1: H.-B. 549; 553, 1: H. 588, I, 3.

### THIRD REFERENCE:

*Substantive quod clause*

poris tanta fuit exiguitās hostiumque tam parātus ad dīmican-  
dum animus ut nōn modo ad insignia accommodanda, sed etiam 10  
ad galeās induendās scūtisque tegimenta dētrahenda, tempus  
dēfuerit. Quam quisque ab opere in partem cāsū dēvēnit  
quaeque prīma signa cōspexit, ad haec cōstitit, nē in quae-  
rendis suis pugnandī tempus dimitteret.

22. Instrūctō exercitū magis ut locī nātūra dēiectusque col-  
lis et necessitās temporis quam ut rei militāris ratiō atque ōrdō  
postulābat, cum diversae legiōnēs aliae aliā in parte hostibus

9. *exiguitās*, -tātis, *f.* [exiguus, scant], scantiness, meagerness, shortness, want. \*

*dīmīcō*, 1, *intr.* [micō, brandish], fight, struggle, contend. 3.

10. *accommodō*, 1, *tr.*, adjust or adapt to one's self, fit or put on. 1.

11. *galea*, -ae, *f.*, a leather helmet. 1.  
*indūō*, -duere, -duī, -dātum, *tr.*, put on; *sē induere*, be impaled or pierced. 1.

*tegimentum*, -i, *n.* [tegō, cover], a covering. 1.

*dētrahō*, -trahere, -trāxi, -trac-  
tum, *tr.* [trahō, draw], draw off or away,  
withdraw, take off, remove. 4.

12. *dēsum*, *deesse*, *dēfui*, —, *intr.*  
[sum, be. App. 66], be wanting, be ab-  
sent from, fail. \*

13. *cōspiciō*, -spicere, -spexi,  
-spectum, *tr.* [speciō, look], look at,  
observe, descry, perceive. \*

3. *diversus*, -a, -um, *adj.* [*ps. part.*  
*of divertō*, turn in different directions],  
diverse, different; separate, remote. 3.

10. ad . . . accommodanda, "for  
fitting on their decorations"; especially  
on the helmets; see Plate I, facing p. 27.  
These *insignia* probably distinguished  
the legions.

11. *galeās*: these would be laid aside  
while the soldiers were working on the  
fortifications.

*scūtis*: dative of separation.

*tegimenta*: leather coverings for the  
protection of the metal work of the  
shields.

12. *dēfuerit*: note the exception to  
sequence; App. 204, a: G.-L. 513: A. 485,  
c (incorrectly stated. The imperfect is  
much more common): B. 268, 6: H.-B.  
478: H. 580.

quam in partem, "to whatever  
place."

13. *quaeque . . . cōspexit*, "and  
whatever standards he saw first." On  
the importance of the standards see Int.

44.

14. *suis*: sc. *signis*.

Chap. 22. Caesar cannot plan the  
battle as a whole.

1. ut, "as."

2. *rei . . . ōrdō*, lit. "the theory and  
arrangement of military matters" = "the  
theory of military tactics." When he  
could, Caesar drew up his army in three  
unbroken lines, the third of which acted  
as a reserve force to meet emergencies.

3. *cum . . . resisterent . . . impe-*

570.

THIRD REFERENCES:

*Objective genitive*

*Result clause*

*Clause of characteristic*

4. *virtūtis*: case? App. 98: G.-L.  
363, 2: A. 347; 348, n.: B. 200: H.-B. 354:  
H. 440, 2.

12. *dēfuerit*: mode? App. 226: G.-L.  
558: A. 537, 1: B. 284, 1: H.-B. 521, 2: H.

resisterent, saepibusque dēnsissimis, ut ante dēmōnstrāvimus, interiectis prōspectus impedirētur, neque certa subsidia collocārī neque quid in quāque parte opus esset prōvidērī neque ab ūnō omnia imperia administrārī poterant. Itaque in tantā rērum inīquitāte fortūnae quoque ēventūs variī sequēbantur.

**23.** Legiōnis nōnae et decimae militēs, ut in sinistrā parte aciē cōstitēbant, pīlis ēmissis cursū ac lassitūdine exanimātōs vulneribusque cōfectōs Atrebātēs (nam his ea pars obvenerat) celeriter ex locō superiōre in flūmen compulērunt, et trānsire

4. **dēnsus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, closely set or packed, thick, dense. 3.

5. **prōspectus**, -ūs, *m.* [prōspiciō, look forth], view, prospect; sight. 1.

6. **prōvideō**, -vidēre, -vidī, -visum, *tr.* [videō, see], see beforehand, foresee; care for, provide. \*

8. **inīquitās**, -tātis, *f.* [inīquus, unequal], inequality, unfairness; disadvantage. 2.

ēventus, -ūs, *m.* [ēveniō, turn out], outcome, issue, result, consequence. 3.

varius, -a, -um, *adj.*, diverse, changing, various. 1.

1. **nōnus**, -a, -um, *ord. num. adj.*, ninth. 2.

**dirētur** gives the reason for the main clause, *neque . . . poterant*.

**diversae**, lit. "separated" = "separately."

**aliae . . . parte**, "some in one place, others in another."

4. **ante**: see 17, 12-20.

5. **interiectis**, "which intervened."

**neque**: the principal clause begins here.

**certa**, lit. "sure" = "so that they could be counted on."

6. **quid . . . esset**: an indirect question, subject of *prōvidērī* (*poterat*).

**quid**: construction? App. 146, a: G.-L. 406: A. 411, b: B. 218, 2, a: H.-B. 430, 2, a: H. 477, III, n.

7. **in . . . inīquitāte**, "in such a diversity of circumstances."

4. **resisterent**: mode? App. 239: G.-L. 586: A. 549: B. 286, 2: H.-B. 526: H. 598.

2. **cursus**, -ūs, *m.* [currō, run], running, speed; course, career; passage, voyage. \*

**lassitūdō**, -inis, *f.* [lassus, weary], weariness, faintness, exhaustion, lassitude. 2.

**exanimō**, 1, *tr.* [anima, breath], deprive of breath, render breathless, exhaust; kill. 2.

3. **obveniō**, -venire, -vēnī, -ventum, *intr.* [veniō, come], come to, happen upon, meet; fall to *by lot*. 1.

4. **compellō**, -pellere, -pulli, -pulsus, *tr.* [pellō, drive], drive together, assemble, collect; force, compel. 1.

8. **fortūnae**: genitive limiting *ēventūs*.

Chap. 23. The left wing repulses the Atrebates, the center repulses the Viromandui, and the Nervii attack the right wing.

1. **nōnae et decimae**: these legions were commanded by Labienus.

2. **aciē** = *aciēi*; App. 30, b: G.-L. 63, n. 1: A. 98, n.: B. 52, 3: H.-B. 100, 2: H. 134, 2.

**pīlis**: see Int. 36, a.

**cursū**: the Atrebates had run a mile, much of it uphill.

**cursū . . . cōfectōs**: translate after *Atrebātēs*.

3. **ea pars**: the left wing of the Romans.

THIRD REFERENCE:

*Cum causal*

cōnantēs insecūtī gladiīs magnam partem eōrum impeditam interfēcērunt. Ipsī trānsire flūmen nōn dubitāvērunt, et in locum inīquum prōgressī rūrsus resistentēs hostēs redintegrātō proeliō in fugam coniēcērunt. Item aliā in parte diversae duae legiōnēs, ūndecima et octāva, prōfligātīs Viromanduis, quibuscum erant congressae, ex locō superiōre in ipsīs flūminis rīpiis proeliābantur. At tōtīs ferē castris ā fronte et ā sinistrā parte nūdātīs, cum in dextrō cornū legiō duodecima et nōn magnō ab eā intervāllō septima cōstitisset, omnēs Nervii cōnfertissimō agmine duce Boduognātō, quī summam imperi tenēbat, ad eum locum contendērunt; quōrum pars ab apertō latere legiōnēs circumvenīre, pars summum castrōrum locum petere coepit.

24. Eōdem tempore equitēs nostrī levisque armātūrae

9. *ūndecimus*, -a, -um, *ord. num. adj.* [ūndecim, eleven], eleventh. 1.

octāvus, -a, -um, *ord. num. adj.* [octō, eight], eighth. 1.

prōfligō, 1, *tr.* [fligō, strike], strike down; overcome; put to flight. 1.

10. *congregior*, -gredi, -gressus *sum, intr.* [gradior, step], meet, encounter, meet in battle; join (*peacefully*). \*

11. *proelior*, 1, *intr.* [proellum, bat-

tle], join or engage in battle, fight. 3.

at, *conj.*, but, at least. \*

12. *dexter*, -tra, -trum, *adj.*, on the right, right. 4.

cornū, -ūs, *n.*, horn; (*of an army*) flank, wing. \*

duodecimus, -a, -um, *ord. num. adj.* [duodecim, twelve], twelfth. 2.

14. *Boduognātus*, -ī, *m.*, Boduognatus (bōd'ū-ōg-nā'tūs). 1.

5. *cōnantēs*, "as they [the Atreba-tes] were trying."

*gladiīs*: see Int. 36, b.

*imeditam*, "while thus embarrassed"; i.e. by crossing the river.

6. *ipsī*: the Romans of the left wing.

7. *locum inīquum*: up the hill south of the river. This gave the enemy the advantage of position.

*resistentēs hostēs*: object of *coniēcērunt*.

8. *aliā in parte*: the center.

*diversae*: i.e. separated from the other legions.

10. *ex locō superiōre*, "(having come down) from their higher position."

12. *nūdātīs*: by the advance of the four legions already mentioned. See the plan.

13. *nōn magnō intervāllō*, "at no

very great distance." Case? App. 142, b: G.-L. 399: B. 221: H.-B. 422, I: H. 473, 3.

*omnēs Nervii*: 60,000 in number.

14. *duce Boduognātō*, "under the leadership of Boduognatus." Ablative absolute.

*summam*: the noun.

15. *ab apertō latere*: the right flank, because the shields were carried on the left arm. The part which pushed on for the camp passed the Roman left flank. Others, of course, attacked in front.

16. *summum . . . locum*, lit. "the highest place belonging to the camp" = "the height on which the camp stood."

Chap. 24. The panic of the auxiliaries and the camp servants.

1. We expect Caesar to tell us at once of the fortunes of the 7th and 12th legions, but he pauses to give a vivid

peditēs, quī cum iis ūnā fuerant, quōs primō hostium impetū pulsōs dixeram, cum sē in castra reciperent, adversis hostibus occurrēbant ac rūsus aliam in partem fugam petēbant; et cālōnēs, quī ab decumānā portā ac summō iugō collis nostrōs victōrēs flūmen trānsisse cōspexerant, praedandī causā ēgressī, cum respexissent et hostēs in nostris castris versārī vīdisent, praecipitēs fugae sēsē mandābant. Simul eōrum quī cum impedimentis veniēbant clāmor fremitusque oriēbātur, aliīque  
 10 aliam in partem perterriti ferēbantur. Quibus omnibus rēbus permōtī equitēs Trēverī, quōrum inter Gallōs virtūtis opiniō est singulāris, quī auxiliī causā ā civitate missī ad Caesarem vēnerant, cum multitūdine hostium castra complērī, legiōnēs

2. **pedes, peditis**, *m.* [pēs, foot], foot soldier; *pl.*, infantry. foot. 3.

5. **cālō, -ōnis**, *m.*, a soldier's servant, camp porter or follower. 8.

**decumānus, -a, -um**, *adj.* [decimus, tenth], of or belonging to the tenth; decuman; **decumāna porta**, the rear gate (of the camp). 1.

**porta, -ae**, *f.*, gate. \*

6. **victor, -ōris**, *m.* [vincō, conquer], conqueror, victor; *as adj.*, victorious. \*

7. **respicō, -spicere, -spexi, -spectum, tr.** [re- + speciō, look], look back; look at, take notice of; consider, re-

gard. 1.

8. **praeceps, -cipitis**, *adj.* [caput, head], headforemost, headlong; steep, precipitous. 2.

9. **fremitus, -ūs**, *m.*, a confused noise, uproar, din. 2.

11. **Trēvir, -eri**, *m.*, one of the Treveri; *pl.* **Trēverī** (Bēgh), the Treveri (trēv'ē-rī). \*

12. **singulāris, -e**, *adj.* [singuli, one each], one at a time, one by one; single, alone; singular, remarkable, extraordinary, matchless. 2.

picture of the panic elsewhere, a panic which seemed to foretell the complete destruction of the Roman army.

**levis armātūrae**: a descriptive genitive. The reference is to the slingers and archers of 19, 7.

2. **iis**: the cavalry.

**fuerant**: before their repulse.

**quōs pulsōs dixeram**, lit. "whom I had said to have been routed" = "who, as I said, had been routed." *quōs* refers to both *equitēs* and *peditēs*. *dixi* would be more natural and more usual than *dixeram*.

3. **adversis**, "face to face." Evidently they had made a circuit and were entering the camp by the east gate just as the Belgae were entering by the west.

4. **occurrēbant**: note how the imperfects in the first part of the chapter describe a number of events, all going on at about the same time.

5. **ab decumānā portā**: the camp was on the slope, so that the rear was higher than the front and gave a better view of the battle. But perhaps the fierce charge of the Belgae had something to do with their choice of position.

6. **victōrēs**, "as victors."

8. **eōrum**: the muleteers, not the rear guard of two legions.

9. **alii . . . partem**: for translation cf. note on 22, 3.

11. **virtūtis opiniō**, "reputation for courage"; an objective genitive.

13. **cum**: with *vidissent*.

premi et paene circumventas tenēri, cālōnēs, equitēs, funditōrēs, Numidās diversōs dissipātōsque in omnēs partēs fugere vidissent, dēspērātis nostris rēbus domum contendērunt; Rōmānōs pulsōs superātōsque, castris impedimentisque eōrum hostēs potītōs civitatī renūntiāverunt.

25. Caesar ab decimae legiōnis cohortātiōne ad dextrum cornū profectus, ubi suōs urgērī signisque in ūnum locum collātis duodecimae legiōnis cōfertōs militēs sibi ipsōs ad pugnam esse impedimentō vidit, quārtae cohortis omnibus centuriōnibus occisis, signiferō interfectō, signō āmissō, reliquārum cohortium omnibus ferē centuriōnibus aut vulnerātis aut

14. premō, -premēre, -pressi, -pressum, *tr.* press, press upon, press hard; oppress, burden, annoy, harass. \*

15. dissipō, 1, *tr.*, spread on all sides, scatter, disperse. 1.

1. cohortātiō, -ōnis, *f.* [cohortor,

encourage], encouragement, cheering. 1.

2. urgēō, urgēre, *urāl*, —, *tr.*, press, press hard. 2.

5. signifer, -erī, *m.* [signum, standard + ferō, bear], standard-bearer. 1.

16. dēspērātis, "despairing of."

17. castris: what deponent verbs govern the ablative?

Chap. 25. Caesar finds the 7th and 12th legions in desperate straits, and reanimates them by his valor.

1. Caesar: subject of *prōcessit* (l. 15) and *iussit* (l. 16). This is an excellent Latin "period," with the subject first, the subordinate clauses in the middle, and the principal verbs toward the end. The sentence is not hard to understand in its Latin order, and is very effective; for the mass of subordinate clauses represents the impression made on Caesar when he saw all at once the many details of the fearful struggle. But it is hard to translate effectively, because such a sentence is intolerable in English. After the pupil thoroughly understands the sentence he should translate it very freely, breaking it up into a number of short sentences. Each of the following groups of words may be turned into a sentence, or two or more may be combined: *Caesar . . . profectus; ubi . . . ur-*

*gērī; signis . . . vidit; quārtae . . . āmissō; reliquārum . . . occisis; in his . . . posset; reliquōs . . . vīdāre; hostēs . . . instāre; et . . . posset; scūtō . . . prōcessit; centuriōnibus . . . posset.*

cohortātiōne: cf. 21, 2.

2. ubi, "when"; with *vidit*, l. 4, which is repeated in l. 12.

urgērī: this and most of the other infinitives before the end of l. 12 depend on *vidit*. Other dependent ideas are expressed by the ablative absolute.

signis collātis: the position of the standards regulated the position of the cohorts. As the standards were now huddled together, the soldiers naturally crowded together.

3. sibi . . . impedimentō, lit. "were themselves for a hindrance to themselves for fighting" = "hindered one another in fighting."

4. quārtae cohortis: this cohort had suffered especially, because it was stationed at the left end of the front line.

5. signō āmissō: regarded as a great disgrace.

occisīs, in hīs primipilō P. Sextiō Baculō, fortissimō virō, multis gravibusque vulneribus cōfectō, ut iam sē sustinēre nōn posset, reliquōs esse tardiōrēs et nōn nullōs ab novissimis  
 10 dēsertō locō proeliō excēdere ac tēla vitāre, hostēs neque ā fronte ex inferiōre locō subeuntēs intermittere et ab utrōque latere instāre, et rem esse in angustō vidit neque ūllum esse subsidium quod submitti posset, scūtō ab novissimis militi detractō, quod ipse eō sine scūtō vēnerat, in primam aciem  
 15 prōcessit centuriōnibusque nōminātim appellātis reliquōs cohortātus milites signa inferre et manipulōs laxāre iussit, quō facilius gladiis ūti possent. Cuius adventū spē illātā militibus ac redintegrātō animō, cum prō sē quisque in cōspectū impe-

7. **primipilus**, -ī, *m.* [**primus**, first + **pilus**, a century], the centurion of the first century, chief centurion. 1.

**Sextius**, -ti, *m.*, Publius Sextius Baculus (pūb'li-ūs sēks'ti-ūs bāk'ū-lūs), a centurion in Caesar's army. 2.

**vir**, **virī**, *m.*, man; husband; a man of distinction or honor; cf. **homō**, a human being as distinguished from the lower animals. \*

9. **tardus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, slow, sluggish. 1.

10. **dēsērō**, -serere, -serul, -sertum, *tr.* [serō, entwine, join], disjoin;

abandon, desert, forsake; **dēsertus**, *pf. part. as adj.*, deserted, solitary. 3.

**excēdō**, -cēdere, -cessi, -cessum, *intr.* [cēdō, go], go out or away, withdraw, retire. \*

16. **manipulus**, -ī, *m.* [**manus**, hand + **pleō**, fill], a handful (*esp. of hay, about a pole, anciently used as a standard*), a company (*of two centuries, the third of a cohort*), manipule. 1.

**laxō**, 1, *tr.*, stretch out, extend, open. 1.

18. **imperātor**, -ōris, *m.* [**imperō**, command], commander-in-chief, general. \*

7. **primipilō**: see Int. 42.

8. **multis gravibusque**, "many severe." When *multī* and another adjective modify the same noun, the two adjectives are usually connected by *et* or *que*.

**sē sustinēre**, "stand on his feet."

9. **ab novissimis**, "in the rear."

10. **dēsertō locō**, "deserting their posts."

**tēla vitāre**, "were getting out of the range of missiles."

**neque . . . et**, "not . . . and."

12. **rem . . . angustō**, "and affairs were in a critical condition."

**vidit**: simply repeats the *vidit* of l. 4.

13. **quod . . . posset**: a clause of characteristic.

**scūtō detractō**, "snatching a shield." Here begins Caesar's action.

**militi**: dative of separation.

14. **eō**: the adverb.

16. **signa . . . laxāre**, "to advance and (by so doing) to open out the ranks."

**quō**: cf. note on 17, 15.

17. **spē . . . animō**, "hope was inspired in the soldiers, and their courage renewed."

18. **prō sē**, lit. "in proportion to himself" = "to the best of his ability,"

rātōris etiam in extrēmīs suis rēbus operam nāvāre cuperet, paulum hostium impetus tardātus est.

26. Caesar cum septimam legiōnem, quae iūxtā cōstitērat, item urgērī ab hoste vīdisset, tribūnōs militum monuit ut paulatim sēsē legiōnēs coniungerent et conversa signa in hostēs inferrent. Quō factō, cum alius alii subsidium ferret, neque timērent nē āversī ab hoste circumvenirentur, audācius resistere ac fortius pugnāre coepērunt. Interim militēs legiōnum duārum quae in novissimō agmine praesidiō impedimentis fuerant, proeliō nūntiātō, cursū incitātō, in summō colle ab hostibus cōspiciēbantur; et T. Labiēnus castris hostium potitus et ex locō superiōre quae rēs in nostris castris gereretur cōspicātus decimam legiōnem subsidio nostris misit. Qui cum ex equitum et cālōnum fugā quō in locō rēs esset quantōque in periculō et castra et legiōnēs et imperātor versā-

19. *opera*, -ae, *f.* [opus, work], work, exertion; service; pains, attention; *dare operam*, give attention, take pains. 1.

*nāvō*, 1, *tr.*, do zealously or well. 1.

20. *paulum*, *adv.* [paulus, little], a little, somewhat, slightly. \*

*tardō*, 1, *tr.* [tardus, slow], make

slow, delay; hinder, check. 1.

1. *iūxtā*, *adv.* [iungō, join], next, near. 1.

2. *tribūnus*, -i, *m.* [tribus, tribe], tribune, a magistrate elected by the people, voting in tribes, to defend the interests of the plebs; *tribūnus militum* or *militaris*, a military tribune. \*

19. *etiam* . . . *rēbus*, "even in his own extreme danger."

Chap. 26. The 7th and 12th legions fight more successfully, and three other legions come to their rescue.

1. *iūxtā*: i.e. near the 12th legion, in whose ranks Caesar was fighting.

*cōstitērat*, "had taken its position." Distinguish carefully between *cōstitūtō* and *cōstitutō*.

2. *tribūnōs*: see Int. 41.

3. *sēsē coniungerent*: i.e. to close up the gap between them.

*conversa signa inferrent*, "to face about and attack." Of course only a part of the Romans were to face about. Probably the rear line faced about, and the cohorts at the ends of the

line wheeled half around. Thus an oblong would be formed, facing the enemy on every side.

4. *cum* . . . *ferret*, "since they protected one another."

5. *timērent*: agreeing with *militēs*, which is implied in *alii alii*.

*āversī*, "in the rear."

7. *quae* . . . *fuerant*: cf. 19, 5.

8. *proeliō* . . . *incitātō*, "quickening their step on hearing of the battle."

*colle*: at the rear of the Roman camp.

9. *Labiēnus*: cf. note on 23, 1.

10. *quae rēs gererentur*: indirect question.

11. *qui cum*, "when they"; i.e. the soldiers of the 10th legion.

12. *quō in locō*, "in what condition."

rētur cognōvissent, nihil ad celeritatem sibi reliquī fēcērunt.

27. Hōrum adventū tanta rērum commūtatiō est facta ut nostrī, etiam quī vulneribus cōfectī prōcubuissent, scūtis innixī proelium redintegrārent; cālōnēs perterritōs hostēs cōspicātī etiam inermēs armātis occurrerent; equitēs vērō, ut turpitūdinem fugae virtūte dēlērent, omnibus in locis pugnandō sē legiōnāriis militibus praeferrent. At hostēs etiam in extrēmā spē salūtis tantam virtūtem praestitērunt ut, cum primī eōrum cecidissent, proximī iacentibus insisterent atque ex eōrum corporibus pugnārent; hīs dēiectis et coacervātis cadāveribus, quī superessent ut ex tumultō tēla in nostrōs conicerent et pīla inter-

2. prōcumbō, -cumbere, -cubui, -cubitum, *intr.* [cubō, lie down], lean forwards, fall down, lie down; be beaten down; incline. 2.

3. innitor, -niti, -nixus sum, *intr.* [nitor, rest on], lean upon. 1.

4. inermis, -e, *adj.* [in-+arma, arms], without arms or weapons, unarmed. 3.

5. turpitūdō, -inis, *f.* [turpis, disgraceful], disgrace. 1.

dēlēō, dēlēre, dēlēvi, dēlētum, *tr.*, rub out, efface, destroy, annihilate. 1.

6. legiōnārius, -a, -um, *adj.* [legiō, legion], relating to a legion, legionary. 4.

14. nihil . . . fēcērunt, lit. "made nothing of a remainder as regards speed" = "made all possible speed." This legion fell upon the rear of the Nervii.

Chap. 27. The Nervii are slain, fighting desperately.

2. qui, "those who." The clause is determinative, not characteristic; App. 231: H.-B. 550. The subjunctive is due to attraction; App. 274: G.-L. 663, 1: A. 593: B. 324, 1: H.-B. 539: H. 652.

scūtis: case? App. 143, a: G.-L. 401, n. 6: A. 431: B. 218, 3: H.-B. 438, 1: H. 476, 3.

5. circumvenirentur: construction? App. 228, b: G.-L. 550, 2: A. 564: B. 296, 3: H.-B. 503, 4: H. 567, 1.

praeferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum, *tr.* [ferō, bear, bring. App. 81], place before, esteem above, prefer to *with* quam; praeferre sē alicui, *surpass.* 1.

8. iaceō, iacēre, iacui, —, *intr.*, lie; lie slain. 1.

insistō, -sistere, -stiti, —, *tr. and intr.* [sistō, stand], stand upon; stand firm, take a stand; press on, pursue; *with* ratiōnem, adopt, use. 4.

9. coacervō, 1, [acervō, heap up; acervus, heap], heap or mass together, pile one upon another. 1.

cadāver, -eris, *n.* [cadō, fall], a fallen or dead body, corpse. 1.

10. tumultus, -i, *m.* [tumeō, swell],

4. inermēs . . . occurrerent, "(though) unarmed, attacked the armed (enemy)."

6. etiam . . . salūtis, "even at the end of their hope of safety"; i.e. even in their extreme danger.

8. proximī . . . insisterent, "the next stood upon them as they lay prostrate."

9. hīs: i.e. proximī.

qui superessent: cf. note on qui, l. 2. 10. ut ex tumultō, "as if from a mound."

conicerent: result. The force of ut (l. 7) still continues.

14. sibi: case? App. 120: G.-L. 350 2: A. 376: B. 188, 1: H.-B. 366: H. 426, 4

cepta remitterent: ut nōn nēquiquam tantae virtūtis hominēs iudicārī dēberet ausōs esse trānsīre lātissimum flūmen, ascendere altissimās rīpās, subīre inīquissimum locum; quae facilia ex difficillimīs animī magnitūdō redēgerat.

28. Hōc proeliō factō et prope ad interneciōnem gente ac nōmine Nerviorū <sup>\*</sup>redāctō, maiōrēs nātū, quōs ūnā cum pueris mulieribusque in aestuāria ac palūdēs coniectōs dixerāmus, hāc pugnā nūntiātā, cum victōribus nihil impeditum, victis nihil tūtum arbitrārentur, omnium quī supererant cōn- sēnsū lēgātōs ad Caesarem misērunt sēque eī dēdidērunt; et, in commemorandā civitātis calamitāte, ex sescentis ad trēs senātōrēs, ex hominum milibus LX vix ad quīngentōs quī arma ferre possent sēsē redāctōs esse dixerunt. Quōs Caesar, ut in miserōs ac supplicēs ūsus misericordiā vidērētur, diligentissimē 10

swelling; mound, hill. 4.

intercipiō, -cipere, -cēpi, -ceptum, *tr.* [capio, take], take or catch between (one point and another); interrupt; intercept, cut off. 1.

11. nēquiquam, *adv.* [nē+qui(d)-quam, anything], in vain, to no purpose. 1.

1. gēns, gentis, *f.*, race; clan, tribe, people. 3.

3. aestuārium, -ri, *n.* [aestus, tide],

low marsh-land, tidal inlet, estuary, marsh. 2.

5. cōnsēnsus, -ūs, *m.* [cōnsentiō, agree], united opinion, agreement, consent; coalition. 3.

8. senātor, -ōris, *m.* [senex, old], elder; senator. 1.

10. miser, -era, -erum, *adj.*, wretched, miserable, pitiable, unfortunate; poor, worthless. 2.

supplex, -icis, *m. and f.*, suppliant. 1.

11. ut . . . dēberet, "so that it must be believed that not without prospects of success had men, etc."; i.e. they were so brave that they had a right to expect success.

13. altissimās: at the point where the Nervii crossed, the bank of the river is higher and steeper than elsewhere.

quae, "deeds which"; i.e. those summed up in the preceding infinitives.

14. ex, "instead of."

Chap. 28. The survivors submit to Caesar.

2. quōs coniectōs dixerāmus, "who, as I have said, had been, etc."; cf. note on 24, 2.

4. victōribus . . . tūtum, "that nothing was an obstacle to the victors

and nothing safe for the conquered."

5. quī supererant: compare quī superessent, 27, 9. This clause has precisely the same meaning, but does not depend on a subjunctive.

8. vix ad quīngentōs: this has been considered an exaggeration, because the Nervii revolted again three years later, and put 5,000 men in the field two years after that. But in so large a state there must have been thousands of boys too young to fight in the present battle, but old enough to fight a few years later.

qui possent: a clause of characteristic, and therefore subjunctive in the direct discourse.

9. ut . . . vidērētur, "that he might be seen to have shown mercy, etc."

cōservāvit suisque finibus atque oppidīs ūtī iussit, et finitimis imperāvit ut ab iniuriā et maleficiō sē suōsque prohibērent.

29. Atuatucl, dē quibus suprà scripsimus, cum omnibus cōpiis auxiliō Nervii venirent, hāc pugnā nūntiātā ex itinere domum revertērunt; cūctis oppidis castellisque dēsertiis sua omnia in ūnum oppidum ēgregiē nātūrā mūnitum contulērunt.
- 5 Quod cum ex omnibus in circuitū partibus altissimās rūpēs dēiectūsque habēret, ūnā ex parte lēniter acclivis aditus in lātitudinem nōn amplius ducentōrum pedum relinquēbātur; quem locum duplici altissimō mūrō mūnierant; tum magni ponderis saxa et praeacūtās trabēs in mūrō collocābant. Ipsi
- 10 erant ex Cimbris Teutonisque prōgnāti, quī, cum iter in prōvinciam nostram atque Italiam facerent, iis impedimentis quae

**misericordia**, -ae, *f.* [**misereō**, pity + **cor**, the heart], pity, mercy, compassion. 1.

1. **scribō**, **scribere**, **scripsi**, **scriptum**, *tr.*, write, record or make mention in writing. 1.

3. **cūctus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [*for* **con-functus**, joined together], all together, all. 1.

4. **ēgregiē**, *adv.* [**ēgregius**, excellent], excellently, admirably, remarkably. 1.

5. **rūpēs**, -is, *f.*, rock, cliff. 1.

**acclivis**, -e, *adj.* [**ad** + **clivus**, a slope], sloping upward, rising, ascending. 2.

8. **duplex**, -plicis, *adj.* [duo, two + **plicō**, fold], twofold, double. 2.

9. **pondus**, -eris, *n.* [*cf.* **pendō**, weigh], weight. 1.

**saxum**, -i, *n.*, rock, large stone. 2.

**praeacūtus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [*pf. part. of* **praeacuō**, sharpen at the end], sharp in front or at the end, sharpened, pointed. 3.

**trabs**, **trabis**, *f.*, beam, timber, pile. 3.

10. **prōgnātus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [**nās-cor**, be born], born; descended, sprung. 1.

11. **iussit**, **imperāvit**: the sentence illustrates well the contrasting constructions with these verbs. **iubeō** regularly governs an accusative and infinitive; **imperō**, the dative with *ut* and the subjunctive.

Chap. 29-33. Caesar subdues the Atuatucl.

Chap. 29. The Atuatucl take refuge in a stronghold. Their origin.

1. **suprà**: in 16, 7.

**cum venirent**, "while coming."

**omnibus cōpiis**: ablative of manner. Such ablatives are often called "military accompaniment," but it is not logical to

say that the Atuatucl came in company with themselves.

4. **oppidum**: for its probable location see map facing p. 162.

5. **quod cum**, "although this town." **ex . . . partibus**, "at all (other) points in its circumference," or simply "on all (other) sides."

7. **ducentōrum pedum**: descriptive genitive, modifying **aditus**. The comparative **minus** has no effect on the construction; *cf.* note on **milia**, 16, 2.

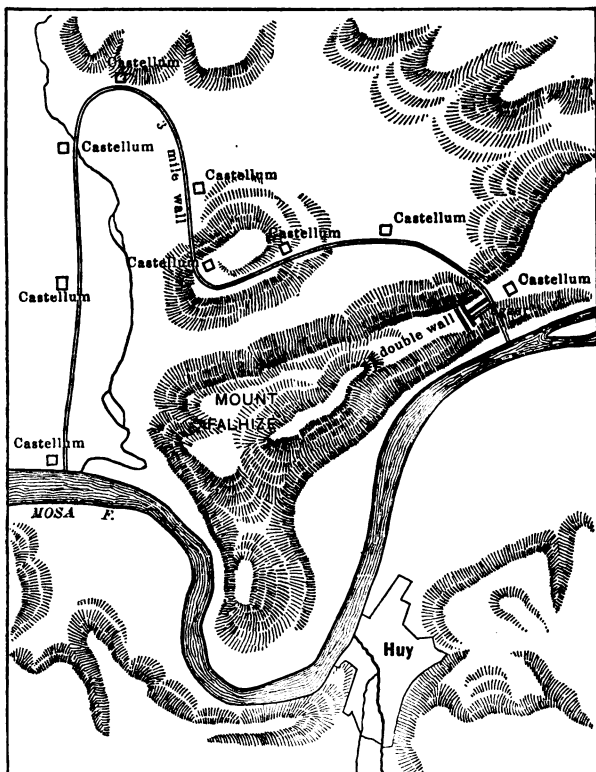
8. **duplici mūrō**: see plan, p. 207.

**tum**: at the time of Caesar's approach.

10. **Cimbris Teutonisque**: *cf.* Int. 27.

sēcum agere ac portāre nōn poterant citrā flūmen Rhēnum  
dēpositis, custōdiam ex suis ac praesidium sex mīlia hominum

13. custōdia, -ae, f. [custōs, guard], | pl., guards, keepers. 2.  
custody, guard (*state of being guarded*);



THE TOWN OF THE ATUATUCI

12. agere ac portāre, "to drive and to carry"; for *impedimentis* here means "possessions" rather than "baggage," and includes cattle.

citrā: the west side.

13. custōdiam . . . reliquerant, lit. "had left along (with their possessions) a guard of their (men) and a garrison, six thousand men (in all)."

unā reliquerant. Hī post eōrum obitum multōs annōs ā finitimis exagitātī, cum aliās bellum inferrent, aliās illātum dēfenderent, cōnsensū eōrum omnium pāce factā hunc sibi domiciliō locum dēlēgerant.

30. Ac primō adventū exercitūs nostrī crēbrās ex oppidō excursiōnēs faciēbant parvulisque proeliis cum nostris contendēbant; postea vāllō pedum XII in circuitū XV milium crēbrisque castellis circummūnītī oppidō sēsē continēbant. Ubi vineis āc aggere extrūctō turrim procul cōstitui viderunt, primum irridēre ex mūrō atque increpitāre vōcibus, quod tanta

14. obitus, -ūs, *m.* [obeō, go to death], destruction. 1.

15. exagitō, 1, *tr.* [agitō, freq. of agō, drive], drive out or away; disturb, harass. 2.

aliās, *adv.* [alius, another], at another place, elsewhere; at another time; aliās . . . aliās, at one time . . . at another. 4.

17. domiciliū, -ii, *n.* [domus, house], residence, dwelling, home, domicile. 3.

2. excursiō, -ōnis, *f.* [excurrō, run forth], a running out or forth, sally,

14. eōrum: the main bodies of the Cimbri and Teutoni.

15. cum . . . dēfenderent: some cum clauses are best translated by participles; so here, "sometimes making war, sometimes defending themselves against war made on them," lit. "when they . . . warded off war made (on them)."

16. cōnsensū . . . factā, "peace was made by common consent, and." eōrum refers to both the Atuatucl and their neighbors.

hunc locum: the whole tract of country occupied by the Atuatucl at this time.

Chap. 30. The Atuatucl scorn the Roman preparations for attack.

2. faciēbant, "kept making"; imperfect of repeated action.

10. ex Cimbris: case? App. 135: G.-L. 395, n. 1: A. 403, a, n. 1: B. 215, 2: H.-B. 413, b: H. 460, 1.

sortie. 1.

parvulus, -a, -um, *adj.* [*dim.* of parvus, little], small, insignificant, slight; parvula proelia, skirmishes; parvuli, children. 1.

4. circummūniō, 4, *tr.* [mūniō, fortify], wall around; fortify, protect. 1.

5. extruō, -struere, -struxi, -strūctum, *tr.* [struō, build], build or pile up, rear, construct, build. 2.

procul, *adv.*, afar off, from afar, in the distance, at a distance. 2.

6. irridēō, -ridēre, -risi, -risum, *intr.* [in+rideō, laugh], laugh, jeer. 1.

3. pedum XII: in height.

XV milium: supply pedum as a partitive genitive; "(of) 15,000 feet in circumference"; i.e. three miles. The plan shows that the wall did not cross the river, which itself forms a sufficient obstacle.

4. oppidō: ablative of means, but to be translated as if an ablative of place.

5. vineis, aggere, turrim: see Int. 61; 62, d. The vineae afforded shelter to the soldiers who made the agger. In this case the agger was intended only as a roadway up which to push the tower.

6. irridēre: on this use of the infinitive see App. 281: G.-L. 647: A. 463: B. 335: H.-B. 595: H. 610.

14. annōs: case? App. 130: G.-L. 336: A. 423: B. 181, 1: H.-B. 387, II: H. 412

māchinātiō ā tantō spatiō instituerētur: Quibusnam manibus aut quibus viribus praesertim hominēs tantulae statūrae (nam plērumque omnibus Gallīs prae magnitudīne corporum suōrum brevitas nostra contemptuī est) tantī oneris turrīm in mūrō 10 sēsē posse collocāre cōnfiderent?

31. Ubi vērō movērī et appropinquāre moenibus vidērunt, novā atque inūsitatā speciē commōtī lēgātōs ad Caesarem dē pāce misērunt, quī ad hunc modum locūtī: Nōn sē existimāre

7. *māchinātiō*, -ōnis, *f.* [*māchinor*, contrive], a mechanical contrivance, machine, engine, derrick. 3.

*quisnam*, *quidnam*, and *quānam*, *quodnam*, *interrog. pron.* (App. 61 and a), who? which? what? who then? what pray? 1.

8. *tantulus*, -a, -um, *adj.* [*dim. of tantus*, so great], so small or little, so diminutive; trifling. 2.

*statūra*, -ae, *f.* [*status*; *stō*, stand], a standing upright; size or height of the body, stature. 1.

9. *plērumque*, *adv.* [*plērusque*, the greater part], for the most part, mostly, generally; again and again, very often. \*

*prae*, *prep. with abl.*, before, in front

of; on account of; in comparison with; *in composition*, before, at the head of, in front, very. 1.

10. *contemptus*, -ūs, *m.* [*contemnō*, despise], contempt; an object of contempt. 1.

*onus*, -eris, *n.*, load, burden; weight, size. 4.

2. *inūsitātus*, -a, -um, *adj.* [*in- + ūsitātus*, usual], unusual, uncommon, strange, startling. 3.

*speciēs*, -ēi, *f.* [*speciō*, see], seeing, sight; look, appearance, show, pretense. 4.

3. *modus*, -i, *m.*, measure, quantity, size; manner, method, style; *eius modi*, of such a kind, such, *abl.*, *modō*, *with gen.*, in the character of, like. \*

7. a *tantō spatiō*, "so far away"; lit. "away by so great a distance," ā being used as an adverb. Cf. 7, 8.

*instituerētur* mode? App. 244: G.-L. 541: A. 540, 2; 592, 3: B. 286, 1: H.-B. 535, 2, a; H. 588, II.

*quibusnam manibus . . . cōnfiderent*, "(asking) by what hands, pray, did they hope?"; indirect discourse for *cōnfiditis*, "do you hope?" For mode see App. 268, I: G.-L. 651: A. 586: B. 315, 1: H.-B. 537: H. 642.

8. *hominēs*: in apposition with the subject of *cōnfiderent*; "especially (as they were) men, etc."

10. *contemptuī est*, "is an object of contempt."

*in mūrō collocāre*: the Gauls ignorantly supposed that the Romans would try to set the tower on the wall, for the only towers they knew of were built on walls.

Chap. 31. The Atuatuclī propose a conditional surrender.

1. *movērī*, "that it [the tower] moved."

3. *locūtī*: the rest of the chapter is in indirect discourse. *nōn sē . . . possent* depends on *locūtī*; everything else, on *dixerunt* (l. 6), "speaking as follows . . . said." But it makes smoother English to translate *locūtī* as *locūtī sunt* and omit *dixerunt*, "spoke as follows."

7. *spatiō*: case? App. 148: G.-L. 403: A. 414: B. 223: H.-B. 424: H. 479, 3.

THIRD REFERENCE:

*Ablative of degree of difference*

Rōmānōs sine ope dīvinā bellum gerere, quī tantae altitudinis  
 s machinātiōnēs tantā celeritatē prōmovēre possent; sē suaque  
 omnia eōrum potestātī permittere dixerunt. Ūnum petere ac  
 dēprecārī: sī forte prō suā clēmētiā ac mānsuetūdine, quam  
 ipsī ab aliīs audirent, statuisset Atuatucōs esse cōservandōs,  
 nē sē armīs dēspoliāret. Sibi omnēs ferē finitimōs esse ini-  
 10 mīcōs ac suae virtūtī invidēre; ā quibus sē dēfendere trāditis  
 armīs nōn possent. Sibi praestāre, sī in eum cāsum dēduce-  
 rentur, quamvis fortūnam ā populō Rōmānō patī, quam ab his  
 per cruciātum interficī inter quōs dominārī cōsuēssent.

**32.** Ad haec Caesar respondit: Sē magis cōsuētūdine suā  
 quam meritō eōrum civitātem cōservātūrum, sī priusquam

4. **divinus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [dīvus, divine], of the gods, divine, sacred. 1.

5. **prōmoveō**, -movēre, -mōvi, -mōtum, *tr.* [moveō, move], move forward, advance, push forward. 2.

7. **dēprecor**, 1, *tr. and intr.* [precor, pray], pray for deliverance from; beg off; implore, plead for. 2.

9. **dēspoliō**, 1, *tr.* [spoliō, strip], deprive. 1.

10. **invidēō**, -vidēre, -vidī, -visum,

*intr.* [videō, see], look askance at; envy. 1.

12. **quīvis**, **quaevis**, **quidvis**, and **quūvis**, **quaevis**, **quodvis**, *indef. pron.* (App. 62), [qui, who+vis, you wish], whom or what you wish; any one, anything, any whatever, any. 3.

13. **cruciātus**, -ūs, *m.* [cruciō, torture; crux, cross], torture, torment. \* **dominor**, 1, *intr.* [dominus, master], be master, rule. 1.

4. **quī possent**, "since they could," may have been subjunctive in the direct form; App. 245: G.-L. 633: A. 535, c: B. 283, 3: H.-B. 523: H. 592.

6. **ūnum**, "one favor"; i.e. *nē... dēspoliāret*.

7. **sī statuisset**, "if he should decide." The direct form used the future perfect indicative; lit. "if you shall have decided."

**prō**, "in accordance with."

**quam audirent**, "of which they kept hearing."

9. **nē dēspoliāret**: the original form was probably *nōli dēspoliāre*; App. 219; 267: G.-L. 271, 2; 652: A. 450; 538: B. 276,

c; 316: H.-B. 501, 3, a, 2; 534, 2: H. 561, 1; 642.

**sibi**: with the adjective *inimicōs*.

10. **virtūtī**: what verbs, transitive in English, govern the dative?

**trāditis armīs**, "if they should, etc."

11. **sibi praestāre**, lit. "it was better for them" = "they preferred."

**cāsum**, "extremity."

Chap. 32. The Atuatuci surrender unconditionally, but treacherously retain a part of their arms.

1. **cōsuētūdine**: ablative of accordance.

2. **meritō**: ablative of cause.

8. **esse cōservandōs**: construction? App. 285, II, a: G.-L. 251, 1: A. 500, 2: B. 337, 7, b, 1: H.-B. 162; 600, 3: H. 237.

9. **sibi**: case? App. 120: G.-L. 350, 2:

A. 376: B. 188, 1: H.-B. 366: H. 425, 4.

**THIRD REFERENCES:**

*Passive periphrastic conjugation*  
*Native of reference*

mūrum ariēs attigisset sē dēdidissent; sed dēditiōnis nūllam esse condiōnem nisi armis trāditis. Sē id quod in Nerviis fēcisset factūrum, finitimisque imperatūrum nē quam dēditi-  
ciis populi Rōmāni iniūriam inferrent. Rē renūtiatā ad suōs, quae imperārentur facere dixerunt. Armōrum magnā multi-  
tūdine dē mūrō in fossam quae erat ante oppidum iactā, sic ut prope summam mūri aggerisque altitudinem acervi armōrum  
adaequārent, et tamen circiter parte tertiā, ut postea perspec-  
tum est, celātā atque in oppidō retentā, portis patefactis eō  
diē pāce sunt ūsi.

**33.** Sub vesperum Caesar portās claudī militesque ex oppidō exire iussit, nē quam noctū oppidāni ā militibus iniū-  
riam acciperent. Illi ante initō, ut intellēctum est, cōnsiliō, quod dēditiōne factā nostrōs praesidia dēductūrōs aut dēnique indiligentius servātūrōs crēdiderant, partim cum iis quae reti-

**3. ariēs**, arietis, *m.*, a ram; battering-ram, a long beam for demolishing walls; one end of it was capped with iron in the form of a ram's head; brace, buttress. 2.

**9. acervus**, -i, *m.*, a heap, mass. 1.

**10. adaequō**, 1, *tr.* [aequō, make equal], make level with or equal to, equal; keep up with. 3.

**3. ariēs**: see Int. 62, c. Apparently in this case the battering-ram was hung in the lowest story of the tower.

**attigisset, dēdidissent** represent future perfect indicatives of the direct form.

**4. nisi armis trāditis**: cf. 20, 11, note.

**in**, "in the case of."

**5. factūrum . . . que imperatūrum**, "he would do . . . and would command" means "he would do . . . ; namely, he would command."

**6. rē**, "answer."

**7. facere**: we might expect a future infinitive; but the envoys return and say that the people are already executing his commands.

**11. celō**, 1, *tr.*, keep covered or hidden, secrete, conceal; *in pass.*, escape observation, be unnoticed. 2.

**patefaciō**, -facere, -fēci, -factum, *tr.* [pateō, be open + faciō, make], make or throw open, open. 2.

**5. indiligenter**, *adv.* [indiligēns, careless], carelessly. 1.

**servō**, 1, *tr.*, save, preserve; maintain,

**8. ante**: i.e. on the side where the Romans were.

**9. aggeris**: the Roman agger, which had reached the trench.

**11. portis patefactis**, "they opened the gates and."

**12. pāce sunt ūsi**, "remained quiet."

**Chap. 33.** The Atuatuaci make a night attack and are repulsed. They are sold as slaves.

**2. nē quam**: cf. references on 32, 5. This care for the safety of the townspeople shows Caesar's intention of acting humanely.

**4. praesidia**, "the outposts" in the *castella* (30, 4) which guarded the Roman wall.

**5. cum**: with both *iis armis* and *scūtis*.

**J. quam**: use? App. 174: G.-L. 107, R.: A. 310, a: B. 91, 5: H.-B. 276, 1: H. 186.

nuerant et cēlāverant armīs, partim scūtīs ex cortice factīs aut vīminibus intextīs, quae subitō, ut temporis exiguitās postulābat, pellibus indūxerant, tertiā vigiliā, quā minimē arduus ad nostrās mūnitiōnēs ascēnsus vidēbātur, omnibus cōpiīs repente  
 10 ex oppidō ēruptiōnem fēcērunt. Celeriter, ut ante Caesar imperāverat, ignibus significātiōne factā, ex proximīs castellis eō concursus est, pugnātumque ab hostibus ita ācritur ut ut ā virīs fortibus in extrēmā spē salūtis, iniquō locō, contrā eōs qui ex vāllō turribusque tēla iacerent, pugnārī dēbuit, cum in  
 15 ūnā virtūte omnis spēs salūtis cōnsisteret. Occīsīs ad hominum mīlibus quattuor reliquī in oppidum rēiectī sunt. Post-ridiē eius diēi refrāctis portīs, cum iam dēfenderet nēmō, atque intrōmissīs militibus nostrīs, sectiōnem eius oppidī ūni-

keep; guard, watch; reserve. 2.

crēdō, -dere, -didī, -ditum, *tr.*, believe, suppose; entrust. 2.

6. cortex, -icis, *m., f.*, bark. 1.

7. vīmen, -inis, *n.*, a plant twig, switch, osler. 1.

intexō, -texere, -texui, -textum, *tr.* [texō, weave], weave in or together. 1.

8. pellis, -is, *f.*, a hide, a skin (*either on or off the body of an animal*); tent, made of hides. 4.

arduus, -a, -um, *adj.*, high, steep; difficult. 1.

9. repente, *adv.* [repēns, sudden], suddenly, unexpectedly. 2.

10. ēruptiō, -ōnis, *f.* [ērumpō, break forth], a breaking out, bursting forth, sortie, sally. \*

11. significātiō, -ōnis, *f.* [significō, make signs], making of signs, signal; indication, intimation. 1.

17. refringō, -fringere, -frēgi, -frāctum, *tr.* [re+frangō, break], break in or open; break, diminish. 1.

18. intrōmittō, -mittere, -misi, -missum, *tr.* [intrō, within + mittō, send], send or let in. 1.

sectiō, -ōnis, *f.* [secō, cut], cutting; dividing of captured goods; booty. 1.

ūniversus, -a, -um, *adj.* [ūnus, one+]

6. ex . . . intextīs, "made of bark or of oslers woven together."

8. quā: the adverb.

minimē arduus: evidently the Roman wall was on rising ground. The desire to keep the wall on high ground accounts for its irregular course as shown on the plan.

10. imperāverat: therefore Caesar had foreseen the possibility of treachery.

11. ignibus, "by signal fires."

12. concursus est, pugnātum est: translate personally.

14. ut pugnārī dēbuit, *lit.* "as it

ought to have been fought" = "as brave men ought to have fought."

eōs qui iacerent, "men who threw"; a clause of characteristic.

15. in ūnā virtūte cōnsisteret, "depended on valor alone."

ad, "about," used adverbially.

18. sectiōnem: including the inhabitants as well as their possessions. The action was perfectly justifiable, according to ancient ideas, as a punishment for their treachery. Such methods were probably the only means by which he could have secured the respect of the Gauls.

versam Caesar vëndidit. Ab iis qui ēmerant capitum numerus ad eum relātus est mīlium quīnquāgintā trium.

34. Eōdem tempore ā P. Crassō, quem cum legiōne ūnā miserat ad Venetōs, Venellōs, Osismōs, Coriosolitēs, Esuviōs, Aulercōs, Redonēs, quae sunt maritimae civitatēs Ōceanumque attingunt, certior factus est omnēs eās civitatēs in diciōnem potestātemque populi Rōmānī esse redāctās.

35. His rēbus gestis, omni Galliā pācātā, tanta huius belli ad barbarōs opīniō perlāta est utī ab iis nātiōnibus quae trāns

vertō, turn], turned into one; all together, whole, universal, all as a mass. \*

19. vëndō, -dere, -didi, -ditum, tr. [vēnum, sale + dō, give], put to sale, sell, sell at auction. 3.

1. Crassus, -i, m., Publius Licinius Crassus, one of Caesar's lieutenants. \*

2. Veneti, -ōrum, m. (Cb), the Veneti (vën'ē-ti). \*

Venelli, -ōrum, m. (Bc), the Venelli (vë-nē'l'i). \*

Osismi, -ōrum, m. (Bb), the Osismi (ō-sis'mi), a Gallic people in modern Brittany. 2.

Coriosolitēs, -um, m. (Bb), the Coriosolites (kō'rī-ō-sō'l'i-tēz). 3.

Esuvii, -ōrum, m. (Bcd), the Esuvii (ē-sū'vī-i). 2.

3. Aulerci, -ōrum, m., the Aulerci

(aw-lēr'si), a Gallic people divided into four branches. (1) Aulerci Eburovices (ēb'ū-rō-vī'sēz), (Bd); (2) Aulerci Cenomani (sē-nōm'a-ni), (Bd); (3) Aulerci Brannovices (brān'ō-vī'sēz), location unknown; (4) Aulerci Diablintes (di'ā-blīn'tēz), (Bc). 3.

Redonēs, -um, m. (BCc), the Redones (rēd'ō-nēz). 1.

maritimus, -a, -um, adj. [mare, sea], of the sea, sea; maritime, naval, on the sea; ōra, the sea shore. \*

4. diciō, -ōnis, f., dominion, authority, rule, sway. 3.

2. barbarus, -a, -um, adj., foreign (to Greeks and Romans), uncivilized, barbarous; pl. as noun, savages, barbarians. \*

nātiō, -ōnis, f. [nāscor, be born], race, tribe, people, nation. \*

19. iis qui ēmerant: slave dealers who were with Caesar constantly and who supplied the slave market at Rome. numerus . . . trium, lit. "the number was reported (to be) of 53,000" = "was reported as 53,000."

Chap. 34. The northwestern states submit to Crassus.

1. legiōne ūnā: this was the 7th, one of the two which had suffered most severely in the battle with the Nervii. Caesar must have sent Crassus immediately after that battle.

3. quae: agrees in gender with the predicate noun, civitatēs.

5. esse redāctās: they gave hostages

without fighting. One legion could not have conquered these states, for we learn in the next book that it took Caesar himself and most of his army to do it.

Chap. 35. German envoys offer submission. Arrangements for the winter. A thanksgiving in Caesar's honor.

1. omni Galliā: the map facing p. 162 shows that Caesar now controlled everything but Aquitania and two Belgic states.

2. opīniō, "impression."

quae incoherent: for mode see note on qui, 27, 2.

Rhēnum incolerent lēgātī ad Caesarem mitterentur qui sē obsidēs datūrās, imperāta factūrās pollicērentur. Quās lēgātī sōnēs Caesar, quod in Italiam Illyricumque properābat, initā proximā aestāte ad sē revertī iussit. Ipse in Carnutēs, Andēs, Turonōs, quaeque cīvitatēs propinquae iis locis erant ubi bellum gesserat legiōnibus in hiberna dēductis in Italiam profectus est. Ob eāsque rēs ex litteris Caesaris diērum quīndecim supplicātiō dēcrēta est, quod ante id tempus accidit nūlli.

5. **Illyricum**, -ī, *n.*, Illyricum (I-līr'i-kūm), Illyria, lying northeast of the Adriatic, forming a part of Caesar's province. 2.

6. **Carnutēs**, -um, *m.* (BCde), the Carnutes (kār'nū-tēz).

**Andēs**, -ium, or **Andī**, -ōrum, *m.* (Cc), the Andes (ān'dēz) or Andī (ān'dī). 2.

7. **Turonī**, -ōrum, *m.* (Cd), the Tu-

roni (tūrō-nī). 1.

10. **supplicātiō**, -ōnis, *f.* [supplex, suppliant], public prayer to the gods in thanksgiving for successes, hence thanksgiving. 2.

**dēcernō**, -cernere, -crēvi, -crētum, *tr.* [cernō, separate; decide], decide; vote, decree. 3.

3. **qui pollicērentur**: a purpose clause.

4. **datūrās**: feminine, because *sē* refers to *nūlliōnibus*.

5. **initā proximā aestāte**, "at the beginning of the next summer." At that time they had so far changed their minds that only the Ubii sent hostages.

6. **in Carnutēs**: with *dēductis*.

7. **quaeque cīvitatēs** = *et eās cīvitatēs quae*.

8. **in Italiam**: i.e. Cisalpine Gaul.

He could not legally go outside of his province, which included Cisalpine Gaul and Illyricum.

9. **ex**, "in consequence of."

10. **supplicātiō**: a public thanksgiving, voted by the senate in honor of a victory. The number of days was supposed to be in proportion to the importance of the victory. Before this time no more than twelve days had ever been voted.

**quod**, "(an honor) which." The antecedent is the preceding clause.

### BOOK III. OPERATIONS IN THE ALPS, IN THE NORTHWEST, AND IN AQUITANIA

Since Rome was to possess Gaul, she needed to control the shortest route across the Alps—that which leads over the Great St. Bernard pass. Caesar accordingly sent Galba with one legion, in the autumn of 57, to subdue the mountain tribes which controlled that route. Having apparently accomplished this, Galba went into winter quarters in a little town at the foot of the northern slope of the mountains. Here he was attacked by an overwhelming force of mountaineers, whom, however, he succeeded in driving off after a sharp engagement. He then retreated to a less exposed position. The tribes were not thoroughly conquered, but as we hear of no further operations against them it is evident that they stopped molesting travellers.

In 57 the northwestern states had submitted to Crassus and had sent him hostages; but when he established winter quarters among them and began sending out officers to levy tribute of supplies, they grew weary of the yoke. Ignorant of the Roman resources and power, three states took the fatal step of arresting the officers sent to them. This virtual declaration of war was followed by the formation of a powerful league of the coast tribes between the Loire and the Seine. The Britanni, the Morini, and the Menapii sent men and ships to their aid.

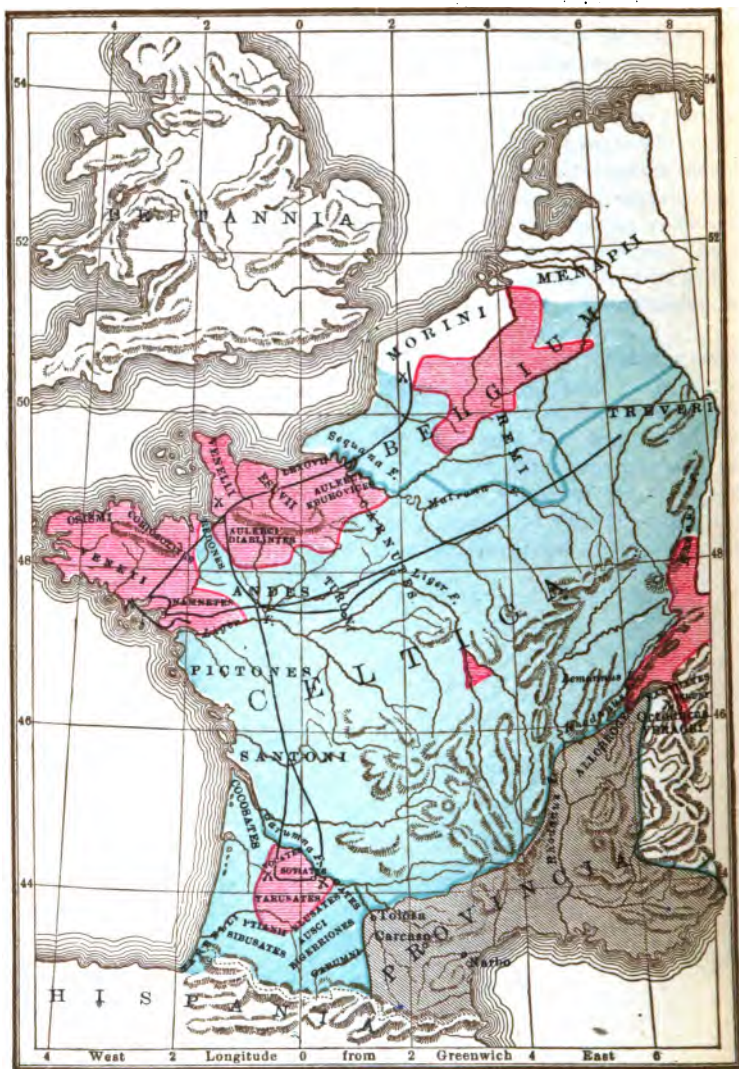
As early as possible in 56 Caesar hastened to Gaul and gave orders for an extensive campaign. In order to prevent any effective co-operation on the part of his enemies, he divided his forces. Titus Labienus, with part of the cavalry, was sent toward the Rhine to check a possible uprising among the Belgae and to prevent the Germans from crossing. Quintus Titurius Sabinus went to the country of the Venelli to cut off communications between the eastern and the western portions of the confederacy. Publius Crassus marched into Aquitania to prevent help reaching the insurgents from that quarter. Caesar himself, with the assistance of a strong fleet under Decimus Brutus, undertook the conquest of the Veneti, the most powerful sea-board state and the forefront of the confederacy.

The Veneti skilfully utilized the advantages of their position. Their country was wild and barren and their strongholds were built on the ends of promontories which the tides cut off from the main land. Hence

supplies for the Roman army were obtained with difficulty and siege operations were greatly hindered. The Veneti, on the other hand, had control of the sea and could supply their towns at will with provisions and defenders, or if necessary could transport the garrisons to other places, leaving the foe only a barren victory. The Roman fleet would have prevented this, but it was kept away by stormy weather during most of the summer. When it finally appeared, the much superior fleet of the Veneti confidently sailed out to meet it; but Roman valor and ingenuity won the day. The destruction of their fleet forced the Veneti to submit. Their prominence in the revolt marked them out for severe punishment, as a warning to other Gallic states. Accordingly the senate was put to the sword and the people were sold as slaves.

The legates of Caesar were as successful as himself. Sabinus easily defeated Viridovix, the general in command of the land forces of the confederacy. Labienus overawed the Belgae. Crassus, after much fighting, subdued Aquitania. In all Gaul only the Morini and the Menapii had made no submission. Therefore Caesar marched against them; but after making strenuous efforts to reach the foe, in almost impenetrable forests and swamps, the approach of winter warned him to desist. Quartering his legions upon the conquered tribes, as in the previous winter, he proceeded to Italy.





Campaign Map for Book III

## EXPLANATION OF CAMPAIGN MAP

For the meaning of the colors, see the explanation of the campaign map for **I, 1-29**, facing page 42.

The same territory is colored red as in the campaign map for **Book II**, facing page 162. In addition, a narrow strip leading into the Alps, most of the northwestern states, and three states of Aquitania are colored red. In all these cases it is difficult to decide on the coloring.

It seems probable that Galba did not completely subdue the Nantuates, the Veragri, and the Seduni, but that he did secure the route through the Alps.

It seems probable that all the revolting states in the northwest had sent so large a proportion of their ships and men to help the Veneti, that the defeat of the Venetan fleet amounted to a defeat of all the states. Hence they are colored red. The Redones are not mentioned among the revolting states.

It is possible that all of Aquitania should be colored red; but it seems improbable that other states than the Sotiates, the Tarusates, and the Vocates were so largely represented in the armies defeated by Crassus as to make further resistance impossible. They are colored blue on the theory that they submitted only because they were discouraged by the fate of the states which did fight.

Caesar's army had probably been quartered along the Liger (Loire). Therefore the routes on this map begin at the point of the probable winter quarters farthest east, where Orleans now stands. Marching westward, he picked up another part of his army, and then probably collected the whole of it at the point on the map from which four lines diverge, which is now the site of Angers. From that point he sent out Labienus, Crassus, and Sabinus, and himself marched against the Veneti. From the Veneti Caesar marched against the Morini and the Menapii, and was probably joined on the route by Sabinus and Crassus.

## LIBER TERTIUS.

1. Cum in Italiam proficisceretur Caesar, Servium Galbam cum legiōne duodecimā et parte equitātūs in Nantuātēs, Veragrōs, Sedūnōsque mīsit, quī ā finibus Allobrogum et lacū Lemannō et flūmine Rhodanō ad summās Alpēs pertinent.  
5 Causa mittendī fuit quod iter per Alpēs, quō magnō cum

1. **Servius, -vī, m.,** Servius (sēr'vī-ūs), a Roman praenomen. 1.

**Galba, -ae, m.,** Servius Sulpicius Galba (sēr'vī-ūs sūl-pīsh'yūs gāl'ba), one of Caesar's legates, and said to have been one of his assassins. \*

2. **Nantuātēs, -um, m.** (CDg), the Nantuates (nān'tū-ā'tēz). 4.

**Veragri, -ōrum, m.** (CDg), the Veragri (vē'r'a-gri). 3.

3. **Sedūnī, -ōrum, m.** (Cgh), the Seduni (sē-dū'nī). 3.

Chap. 1-6. Galba is sent to secure a pass over the Alps. Although he defeats the mountaineers in battle, he dares not winter in the mountains.

Chap. 1. Galba is sent to secure a pass over the Alps. He occupies Octodurus.

1. **cum . . . proficisceretur:** as stated in II, 35. Therefore the narrative given in the first six chapters of Book III belongs chronologically with Book II.

2. **legiōne duodecimā:** this was one of the two legions which had suffered most severely in the battle with the Nervii; cf. II, 25.

**Nantuātēs, etc.:** see the map facing p. 217.

3. **mīsit:** the pupil should notice carefully Caesar's use of the indicative tenses. The distinction between the imperfect and the perfect is difficult for English speaking people to grasp, but Caesar was as careful in their use as in the choice of modes and cases. Study App. 197, 198. Notice that in this chapter the perfect is used in every principal clause. Notice, too, that all but one of

these perfects tell something that Caesar or Galba did; i.e. they all narrate events in the story.

4. **pertinent:** several of the subordinate verbs in this chapter are in the present tense, because they state facts which are still true at the time when Caesar is writing.

5. **fuit:** this might have been imperfect, for it is not an event in the story. Very few such perfects will be found in Caesar.

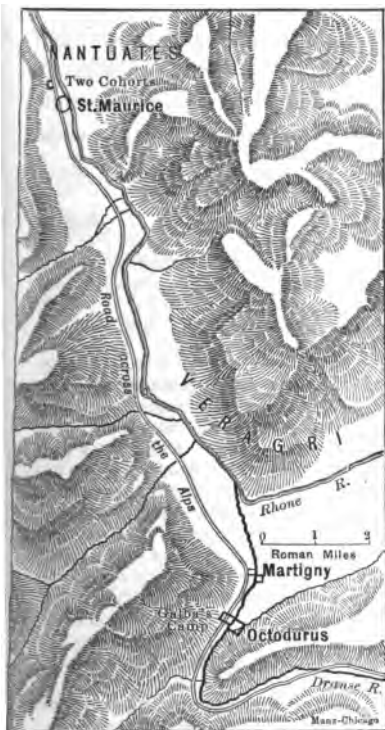
**quod volēbat,** "that he wished"; a substantive *quod* clause, in apposition with *causa*. The imperfect does not narrate an event in the story, but *describes* something (Caesar's feelings) as *going on* at the time of a main act (Caesar's decision to send Galba). This is the most common use of the imperfect, and is called the *descriptive imperfect*.

**iter per Alpēs:** the route leading over the famous Great St. Bernard pass. For the other route used by Caesar see map facing p. 42.

**quō:** case? App. 144: G.-L. 389: A. 429. a: B. 218, 9: H.-B. 426: H. 476.

periculō magnisque cum portōriis mercatōrēs ire cōsuērānt, patefieri volēbat. Huic permīsit, sī opus esse arbitrārētur, uti in his locis legiōnem hiemandi causā collocāret. Galba, secundis aliquot proeliis factis castellisque complūribus eōrum expugnātis, missis ad eum undique lēgātis obsidibusque datis 10 et pāce factā, cōstituit cohortēs duās in Nantuātibus collocāre et ipse cum reliquīs eius legiōnis cohortibus in vicō Veragrōrum, quī appellātur Octodūrus, hiemāre; quī vicus positus in valle, nōn magnā adiectā plānitīē, altissimis montibus undique continētur. Cum hic in duās partēs flūmine dīviderētur, al-

teram partem eius vicī Gallis concessit, alteram vacuum ab his relictam cohortibus ad hiemandum attribuit. Eum locum vāllō fossāque mūnīvit. 20



GALBA'S CAMP

9. *aliquot*, indecl. num. adj. [quot, how many], some, a few, several. 3.

13. *Octodūrus*, -i, m. (Cg). Octodurus (ōk'tō-dū'rūs). 1.

14. *vallēs*, -is, f., vale, valley. 2. *adiō*, -icere, -icēci, -iectum, tr. [iaciō, throw. App. 7]. throw to, throw up, hurl; add. 1.

19. *attribuō*, -tribuere, -tribui, -tribūtum, tr. [ad + tribuō, assign], assign, allot. 2.

6. *periculō*: from the natives. *portōriis*, "tolls," levied by the natives on all merchandise carried through their country.

*cōsuērānt*: meaning of tense? App. 194, a: G.-L. 241, R.: A. 476: B. 262, A.: H.-B. 487: H. 538, 4.

7. *arbitrārētur*: implied indirect discourse. Caesar said *arbitrāberis*.

11. *cohortēs duās*: for the location of these cohorts, see map.

14. *nōn . . . plānitīē*, "with a little level ground adjacent."

17. *vacuam relictam*, "left vacant."

19. *eum locum*: the western half of the village.

2. Cum diēs hibernōrum complūrēs trānsissent frūmentumque eō comportārī iussisset, subitō per explorātōrēs certior factus est ex eā parte vicī quam Gallis concesserat omnēs noctū discessisse montēsque quī impendērent ā maximā multitudine Sedūnōrum et Veragrōrum tenērī. Id aliquot dē causis acciderat, ut subitō Gallī bellī renovandī legiōnisque opprimendae cōsiliū caperent: primum, quod legiōnem, neque eam plēnissimam, detractīs cohortibus duābus et complūribus singillātīm, quī commeātūs petendī causā missi erant, propter  
 10 paucitātem dēspiciēbant; tum etiam, quod propter iniquitātem locī, cum ipsi ex montibus in vallem decurrerent et tēla conicerent, nē primum quidem impetum suum posse sustinērī existimābant. Accēdēbat quod suōs ab sē liberōs abstractōs obsidum nōmine dolēbant et Rōmānōs nōn solum itinerum  
 15 causā, sed etiam perpetuae possēssiōnis culmina Alpium occu-

6. *renovō*, 1. *tr.* [re+novus, new], renew. 2.

*opprimō*, -primere, -pressi, -pressum, *tr.* [ob+premō, press], press down, oppress; overwhelm, overpower, destroy; fall upon, surprise. 4.

8. *plēnus*, -a, -um, *adj.* [plēō, fill], full, whole, complete. 3.

9. *singillātīm*, *adv.* [singuli, one

each], singly, one by one; individually. 1.

10. *paucitās*, -tātis, *f.* [paucus, few], fewness, small number. \*

13. *abstrahō*, -trahere, -trāxi, -tractum, *tr.* [trahō, draw], to drag away, carry away by force. 1.

15. *perpetuus*, -a, -um, *adj.*, continuous, uninterrupted; permanent,

Chap. 2. The mountaineers revolt and occupy the neighboring heights.

2. *eō*: i.e. into the winter quarters.

3. *quam . . . concesserat*: this is not a part of the quotation, but is an explanation added by the writer; therefore it is not subjunctive.

4. *montēs*: the foot-hills, bordering on the valley.

5. *aliquot dē causis*: these reasons are (1) *quod dēspiciēbant*, 1. 7; (2) *quod existimābant*, 1. 10; (3) *accēdēbat quod dolēbant*, 1. 13; (4) *(accēdēbat quod) habēbant*. Note that the Imperfect is used in these clauses because they all describe the condition of things existing at the time the Gauls revolted.

6. *ut caperent*: a substantive clause of fact (result), in apposition with *id*.

7. *neque eam plēnissimam*, "and that not at its full strength"; explained by the ablatives absolute which follow.

8. *complūribus singillātīm*, "many men individually."

11. *cum decurrerent et conicerent*, "when they should, etc.," is a part of the indirect discourse. They thought "when we shall run down . . . they cannot withstand, etc."

13. *accēdēbat quod*, lit. "there was added that" = "a further reason was that" or "besides."

*liberōs abstractōs (esse)*, "that their children, etc."

14. *obsidum nōmine*, lit. "under the name of hostages" = "as hostages."

15. *perpetuae possēssiōnis*: *ac causā*.

pāre cōnārī et ea loca finitimae prōvinciae adiungere sibi persuāsum habēbant.

3. His nūntiis acceptis Galba, cum neque opus hibernōrum mūnitiōēsque plēnē essent perfectae neque dē frūmentō reliquōque commeātū satis esset prōvisum, quod dēditiōne factā obsidibusque acceptis nihil dē bellō timendum existimāverat, cōnsiliō celeriter convocātō sententiās exquirere coepit. Quō in cōnsiliō, cum tantum repentīni periculī praeter opīniōnem accidisset ac iam omnia ferē superiōra loca multitudīne armātōrum complēta cōspicerentur neque subsidiō venīrī neque commeātūs supportārī interclūsīs itineribus possent, prope iam dēspērātā salūte nōn nullae eius modī sententiae dicēbantur, 10 ut impedimentis relictis ēruptiōne factā isdem itineribus quibus eō pervēnissent ad salūtem contenderent. Maiōrī tamen parti

lasting, continual; whole, entire; *n. as noun in phrase in perpetuum*, forever. 3.

culmen, -inis, *n.*, top, ridge. 1.

16. adiungō, -iungere, -iānxī, -iānctum, *tr.* [iungō, join], join to, attach, unite; add. 1.

2. plēnē, *adv.* [plēnus, full], fully. 1.  
5. exquirō, -quirere, -quisivī, -quisitum, *tr.* [quaerō, search], seek or search out, inquire, investigate. 2.  
9. supportō, 1, *tr.* [sub + portō, carry], carry or bring up from beneath; bring, convey; supply, furnish. 4.

16. finitimae: the province bounded them on the west. See map.

sibi persuāsum habēbant: the clause *Rōmānōs . . . adiungere* is the object of *habēbant*, and *persuāsum* is a predicate adjective in the neuter, agreeing with the clause; lit. "they had . . . persuaded to themselves" = "they were persuaded that."

Chap. 3. The Romans resolve to defend their camp.

1. opus hibernōrum: especially the making of huts. Although they were occupying part of a village, it cannot have been large enough to house all the soldiers.

2. essent perfectae agrees with the nearer subject, mūnitiōēs.

3. esset prōvisum: translate personally.

4. nihil timendum (*esse*), "that he need have no fear."

5. cōnsiliō: a council of war, composed of the tribunes and the centurions of the first rank. See Int. 42.

8. neque . . . venīrī (*posset*), lit. "and it could not be come to their assistance."

10. eius modī, "to this effect."  
dicēbantur: this narrates a new event in the story, so that the perfect might have been used; but the imperfect is used to express repeated action; App. 191, a: G.-L. 233: A. 470: B. 260, 2. H.-B. 484: H. 531, 3.

12. pervēnissent: implied indirect discourse.

maiōrī parti placuit, "the majority determined."

placuit, hōc reservātō ad extrēmum cōnsiliō, interim rei ēven-  
tum experīri et castra dēfendere.

4. Brevī spatiō interiectō, vix ut iīs rēbus quās cōstitu-  
issent collocandīs atque administrandīs tempus darētur, hostēs  
ex omnibus partibus signō datō decurrere, lapidēs gaesaque in  
vāllum conicere. Nostrī primō integrīs vīribus fortiter prō-  
pugnāre neque ūllum frūstrā tēlum ex locō superiōre mittere,  
et quaecumque pars castrōrum nūdāta dēfēnsōribus premi  
vidēbātur, eō occurrere et auxilium ferre; sed hōc superārī,  
quod diūturnitāte pugnae hostēs dēfessī proeliō excēdēbant,  
aliī integrīs vīribus succēdēbant; quārum rērum ā nostris  
10 propter paucitātem fierī nihil poterat, ac nōn modo dēfessō ex

13. placeō, 2, *intr.* [cf. plācō, ap-  
pease], please, satisfy; *often impers.*,  
seem good to one, hence, decide, resolve,  
determine. 2.

reservō, 1, *tr.* [re-+servō, save,  
keep], keep back, save up, reserve.  
2.

1. brevis, -e, *adj.*, short, brief, tran-  
sitory; brevi, in a short time. \*

3. gaesum, -ī, *n.*, a heavy iron jav-  
elin (*of the Gauls*). 1.

4. integer, -gra, -grum, *adj.*, un-

touched, intact, whole, unimpaired;  
fresh; rē integrā, before anything was  
done. 3.

5. frūstrā, *adv.*, without effect, in  
vain, to no purpose. 3.

6. quicumque, quaecumque, quod-  
cumque, *indef. (or generalizing) rel.*  
*pron.*, whoever, whatever; whosoever,  
whatsoever, any . . . whatever; every-  
one who, everything that. \*

8. diūturnitās, -tātis, *f.* [diūtur-  
nus, long], long duration. 2.

Chap. 4. The mountaineers attack  
the camp in great numbers.

1. vix: placed before *ut* for emphasis.  
rēbus . . . administrandīs: the da-  
tive of the gerundive is not common.

quās cōstituissent: a determina-  
tive clause; App. 231: H.-B. 550. Reason  
for the subjunctive? App. 274: G.-L.  
663, 1: A. 593: B. 324, 1: H.-B. 539: H. 652.

3. decurrere: an historical infin-  
itive. In what case is its subject, *hos-*  
*tes*? App. 281: G.-L. 647: A. 463: B. 335:  
H.-B. 595: H. 610.

4. integrīs vīribus: ablative abso-  
lute, "while their strength was fresh."

5. ex locō superiōre: the top of the  
rampart.

7. hōc superārī, quod, "they were  
overmatched in this, that."

8. excēdēbant, succēdēbant, "kept

withdrawing, etc."; imperfects of re-  
peated action.

9. integrīs vīribus: descriptive ab-  
lative. Contrast the construction of the  
same words in l. 4.

quārum . . . poterat, "while none  
of these things, etc."

10. poterat and dabātur are de-  
scriptive imperfects, describing a condi-  
tion of things that went on all through  
the battle.

nōn modo dēfessō facultās dabā-  
tur, "not only was an opportunity  
not given to an exhausted man." H.  
656, 3; "Nōn modo (or solum) nōn,  
sed nē . . . quidem means *not only not*,  
*but not even*, and nōn modo (solum),  
sed nē . . . quidem, has the same mean-  
ing when the verb standing in the second  
clause belongs also to the first."

pugnâ excédendī, sed nē sauciō quidem eius locī ubi cōstit-  
erat relinquendī ac suī recipiendī facultās dabātur.

5. Cum iam amplius hōris sex continenter pugnārētur, ac  
nōn solum virēs sed etiam tēla nostrōs dēficerent, atque hostēs  
ācrius instārent, languidiōribusque nostrīs vāllum scindere et  
fossās complēre coepissent, rēsque esset iam ad extrēmum per-  
ducta cāsum, P. Sextius Baculus, primī pilī centuriō, quem  
Nervicō proeliō complūribus cōfectum vulneribus diximus, et  
item C. Volusēnus, tribūnus militum, vir et cōsili magnī et  
virtūtis, ad Galbam accurrunt atque ūnam esse spem salūtis  
docent, sī ēruptiōne factā extrēmum auxilium experirentur.  
Itaque convocātis centuriōnibus celeriter militēs certiōrēs facit

11. saucius, -a, -um, *adj.*, wounded. 1.

3. languidus, -a, -um, *adj.*, weak,  
faint, sluggish. 1.

scindō, scindere scidi, scissum,  
*tr.*, split; tear down, destroy. 1.

5. pilus, -i, *m.*, century of soldiers;  
primus pilus, first century of a legion;  
primi pilī centuriō, or primipilus,  
the centurion of the first century, chief

centurion. 1.

6. Nervicus, -a, -um, *adj.* [Ner-  
vius], of the Nervii. 1.

7. C., *abbr.* for praenomen Cāius  
(gā'yus). \*

Volusēnus, -i, *m.*, Gaius Voluse-  
nus Quadratus (gā'yūs vōl'ū-sē'nūs  
kwa-drā'tūs), a tribune of Caesar's army,  
afterward commander of cavalry. 4.

11. excédendī: gerund or gerun-  
dive?

locī relinquendī: gerund or gerun-  
dive?

12. suī recipiendī: construction?  
App. 291, a: G.-L. 428. R. 1: A. 504, c: B.  
339, 5: H.-B. 614: H. 626, 3.

Chap. 5. As a last resort Galba de-  
cides on a sortie.

1. cum pugnārētur, "when the bat-  
tle had lasted." The imperfect sub-  
junctive is to be translated on the same  
principle as is laid down for the imper-  
fect indicative in App. 191, b: G.-L. 234:  
A. 471, b: B. 260, 4: H.-B. 485: H. 535, 1.

hōris: ablative after the comparative,  
*amplius*; cf. note on *milibus*, II. 7, 10.

3. languidiōribus nostrīs, "as our  
men grew weaker"; ablative absolute.

5. cāsum, "extremity."

quem . . . diximus: cf. II. 25, 7.

8. accurrunt: the principal verbs in

this chapter are all historical presents.  
The historical present narrates a new  
event in a story just as the perfect does.  
It may be followed by either the primary  
or the secondary tenses of the subjunc-  
tive. In this chapter the dependent  
subjunctives are all imperfects, as if the  
principal verbs were perfects.

ūnam . . . si experirentur, lit. "told  
him that there was one hope of safety,  
if they should try" = "that their only  
hope of safety was to try."

9. extrēmum auxilium, "their last  
resource."

experirentur: indirect discourse for  
the future indicative.

10. militēs certiōrēs facit, "he di-  
rected the soldiers." This phrase is fol-  
lowed by indirect discourse, as usual;  
but all the verbs are in the subjunctive  
mode, because they represent impera-  
tives of the direct form.

paulisper intermitterent proelium ac tantummodo tela missa exciperent sēque ex labōre reficerent, post datō signō ex castris ērumperent atque omnem spem salūtis in virtūte pōnerent.

6. Quod iussī sunt faciunt, ac subitō omnibus portīs ēruptiōne factā neque cognōscendī quid fieret neque suī colligendī hostibus facultātem relinquunt. Ita commūtātā fortunā eōs qui in spem potiundōrum castrōrum vēnerant undique circumventōs interficiunt, et ex hominum milibus amplius XXX, quem numerum barbarōrum ad castra vēnisse cōstābat, plūs tertiā parte interfectā reliquōs perterritōs in fugam coniciunt ac nē in locīs quidem superiōribus cōsistere patiuntur. Sic omnibus hostium cōpiis fūsis armisque exūtis sē in castra mūnitiōnēs-

11. tantummodo, adv., only. 1.

12. excipiō, -cipere, -cēpl, -ceptum, tr. and intr. [capio, take]; tr., take up, catch, receive; take up (in turn); meet, withstand; relieve (of soldiers in battle); intr., follow. \*

labor, -ōris, m., toil, effort, striving; labor, hardship. \*

reficiō, -ficere, -fēci, -festum, tr. [re-faciō, make], remake, repair; allow to rest; with sē, refresh one's self, rest. 3.

13. ērumpō, -rumpere, -rupi, -ruptum, intr. [rumpō, break], break forth,

sally. 1.

2. colligō, -ligere, -lēgi, -lēctum, tr. [con+legō, gather], gather together, collect; acquire; sē colligere, collect one's self, rally. 3.

6. cōstō, -stāre, -stiti, -stātum, intr. [stō, stand], stand firm; depend on; be complete; cost; impersonal, it is agreed, certain, evident, known. \*

9. fundō, fundere, fūdi, fūsum, tr., pour, throw; rout, put to flight. 1.

exuō, -uere, -ul, -ūtum, tr., draw out or off, put or strip off, divest, despoil. 1.

12. exciperent, lit. "catch," on their shields = "shield themselves from." post; the adverb.

Chap. 6. The Gauls are routed with great loss. Galba retires from the mountains.

1. quod iussī sunt faciunt, "they did as they had been commanded." iussī sunt is used instead of a pluperfect, just as faciunt is used instead of a perfect. Notice how regularly the indicative tenses are used in this chapter: all the principal verbs are in the perfect or historical present; all the subordinate verbs except iussī sunt are in the imperfect or pluperfect.

2. sui colligendī: cf. note on 4, 12.

3. commūtātā fortunā: the dangerous plan succeeded, partly because the Romans, like other men, fought with

more spirit on the offensive than on the defensive, partly because the enemy were taken by surprise, and partly because the Gauls always lacked persistence and ability to rally from a reverse.

4. potiundōrum castrōrum: how can the intransitive verb potior be used in the gerundive construction? App. 239, I, a: G.-L. 427, 4, 5: A. 503, n. 2: B. 330, 4: H.-B. 613, 2, b, n.: H. 623, 1.

circumventōs: translate by a coordinate clause.

5. ex milibus XXX depends on tertiā parte. Galba probably exaggerated the number in his report to Caesar, for those tribes cannot have had 30,000 soldiers.

9. armis: ablative of separation. The Gauls threw away their arms in their flight.

que suās recipiunt. Quō proeliō factō, quod saepius fortunam 20 temptāre Galba nōlēbat atque aliō sē in hiberna cōnsiliō vēnisse meminerat, aliis occurrisset rēbus viderat, maximē frūmenti commeātusque inopiā permōtus, posterō diē, omnibus eius vici aedificiis incensīs, in prōvinciam reverti contendit ac nūllō hoste prohibente aut iter dēmorante incolumem legiōnem in 15 Nantuātēs, inde in Allobrogēs perdūxit ibique hiemāvit.

7. His rēbus gestis, cum omnibus dē causis Caesar pācātā Galliam existimāret, superātis Belgis, expulsis Germānis, victis in Alpibus Sedūnis, atque ita initā hieme in Illyricum profectus esset, quod eās quoque nātiōnēs adire et regiōnēs cognōscere volēbat, subitum bellum in Galliā coortum est. Eius bellī 5

12. *memini*, -isse (App. 86), *tr.*, remember, bear in mind. 1.

15. *dēmoror*, 1, *tr.* [moror, delay], hinder, delay. 1.

*incolumis*, -e, *adj.*, unhurt, uninjured, safe and sound, unimpaired. 4.

3. *hiems*, -is, *f.*, winter time,

winter. \*

5. *subitus*, -a, -um, *adj.* [subeō, come up, come by stealth], unexpected, sudden.

*coorior*, -oriri, -ortus sum, *intr.* [co- + orior, rise], arise, spring up, break out. 2.

10. *quod . . . nōlēbat*: Galba felt that it would be foolish to court another attack by remaining in so dangerous a position. The complete victory which he had gained made it possible for him to retire with honor. Since Caesar never fought these tribes again, we may suppose that they were taught by this battle not to molest Roman travelers.

11. *aliō cōnsiliō*, "with one purpose"; namely, to spend the winter there quietly.

12. *aliis . . . rēbus*, "that he had met a different state of affairs"; namely, a dangerous battle.

15. *in Nantuātēs*: there, of course, he picked up the other two cohorts of his legion.

Chap. 7-11. The Aremoricans revolt, under the leadership of the Veneti. Caesar prepares a fleet for their subjugation, and takes measures to prevent a wide-spread uprising of Gaul.

The events of the preceding six chap-

ters occurred in the fall of 57. At this point the events of 56 begin.

Chap. 7. The Aremoricans revolt because Crassus demands supplies from them.

1. *omnibus dē causis*, "for every reason"; explained by the ablatives absolute *superātis . . . Sedūnis*, which should be translated by causal clauses.

*pācātā (esse) Galliam*: this belief was premature, for it took Caesar seven more years to subdue Gaul thoroughly.

2. *superātis Belgis*: cf. II, 1-33.

*expulsis Germānis*: cf. I, 30-54.

*victis Sedūnis*: cf. 1-6. The Seduni were the most important of the tribes there mentioned.

4. *quod . . . volēbat*: under Augustus, Caesar's successor, the Romans were obliged to conquer the tribes between the Adriatic and the Danube. No doubt Caesar foresaw this necessity and hoped to do the work himself, but Gaul kept his hands full.

haec fuit causa. P. Crassus adulēscēns cum legiōne septimā proximus mare Ōceanum in Andibus hiemābat. Is, quod in his locis inopia frūmenti erat, praefectōs tribūnōsque militum complūrēs in finitimās civitatēs frūmenti causā dīmisit; quō in numerō est T. Terrasidius missus in Esuviōs, M. Trebius Gallus in Coriosolitēs, Q. Velānius cum T. Siliō in Venetōs.

8. Huius est civitātis longē amplissima auctōritās omnis ōrae maritimae regiōnum eārum, quod et nāvēs habent Venetī plūrimās, quibus in Britanniam nāvigāre cōsuērunt, et scientiā atque ūsū rērum nauticarum cēterōs antecēdunt, et in magnō impetū maris vāstī atque apertī paucīs portibus interiectis, quōs tenent ipsī, omnēs ferē quī eō mari ūti cōsuērunt habent vectigālēs. Ab his fit initium retinendī Sili atque

6. **adulēscēns, -entis, m.** [*pres. part. of adolēscō, grow up*], youth, young man. 4.

7. **mare, -is, n.**, sea; **mare Ōceanum**, the ocean. \*

8. **praefectus, -i, m.** [*prae-ficiō, place over,*] overseer, prefect, commander, officer, captain (*usually of cavalry*). 4.

10. **Terrasidius, -di, m.**, Titus Terrasidius (tī'tūs tēr'a-sid'i-ūs), a military tribune in Caesar's army. 2.

**Trebius, -bi, m.**, Marcus Trebius Gallus (mār'kūs trē'bi-ūs gāl'ūs), a military tribune in Caesar's army. 2.

11. **Velānius, -ni, m.**, Quintus Velanius (kwīn'tūs vē-lā'ni-ūs), a military tribune in Caesar's army. 2.

**Silius, -li, m.**, Titus Silius (tī'tūs

sil'i-ūs), a military tribune in Caesar's army. 2.

2. **ōra, -ae, f.**, border, margin; coast, shore. 4.

3. **nāvigō, 1. intr.** [*nāvis, ship*], set sail, sail. \*

4. **nauticus, -a, -um, adj.** [*nauta, sailor*], pertaining to sailors; nautical, naval. 1.

**antecēdō, -cēdere, -cessi, -cessum, tr. and intr.** [*cēdō, go*], go before, precede, excel, surpass. 3.

5. **vāstus, -a, -um, adj.**, waste; boundless, vast. 3.

**portus, -ūs, m.** [*cf. porta, gate*], harbor, haven, port. \*

7. **vectigālīs, -e, adj.** [*vehō, carry*], paying revenue or tribute; tributary. 2.

7. **proximus . . . Ōceanum:** i.e. nearer than any other officer. For case see App. 122, b: G.-L. 359, n. 1: A. 432, a: B. 141, 3: H.-B. 380, b: H. 435, 2.

9. **in finitimās civitatēs:** especially the sea-board states of the northwest, called Aremorian states. These had all submitted to Crassus in the fall; see II, 34.

Chap. 8. Led by the Veneti, the Aremorian states arrest Roman envoys and form a league.

1. **huius civitātis:** the Veneti, who were last mentioned.

2. **ōrae:** partitive genitive, depending on *amplissima*.

**regiōnum:** depending on *ōrae*.

**quod:** belongs with *habent*, 1. 2; *antecēdunt*, 1. 4; and *habent*, 1. 7.

4. **in magnō . . . interiectis,** "there being only a few harbors in that dangerous stretch (lit. great violence) of vast and open sea."

7. **habent vectigālēs,** "they treat

Velānī, quod per eōs suōs sē obsidēs, quōs Crassō dedissent, recuperātūrōs existimābant. Hōrum auctōritāte finitimī ad-  
ductī, ut sunt Gallōrum subita et repentinā cōnsilia, eādē dē 10  
causā Trebium Terrasidiumque retinent, et celeriter missis  
légātis per suōs principēs inter sē coniūrant nihil nisi commūnī  
cōnsiliō āctūrōs eundemque omnēs fortunāe exitum esse lātūrōs,  
reliquāsque civitātēs sollicitant ut in eā libertāte quam ā ma-  
iōribus accēperint permanēre quam Rōmānōrum servitūtem 15  
perferre mālint. Omnī ōrā maritimā celeriter ad suam senten-  
tiam perductā commūnem légatiōnem ad P. Crassum mittunt:  
Si velīt suōs recuperāre, obsidēs sibi remittat.

9. Quibus dē rēbus Caesar ab Crassō certior factus, quod  
ipse aberat longius, nāvēs interim longās aedificārī in flūmine  
Ligerī, quod influit in Ōceanum, rēmigēs ex prōvinciā institui,

9. recuperō, 1, *tr.*, recover, regain.  
L

13. exitus, -ūs, *m.* [exēō, go out], a  
going out, exit, passage; issue, result,  
end. 2.

15. permanēō, -manēre, -mānsi,  
-mānsū, *intr.* [manēō, remain], stay  
through or to the end. stay, remain;  
continue, persist. 3.

16. mālō, māllo, mālul, — (App.  
82), *tr. and intr.* [magis, more+volō,  
wish], wish more or rather, prefer. 1.

2. aedificō, 1, *tr.* [aedēs, house+  
faciō, make], build, construct. 1.

3. Liger, -eris, *m.* (Coe), the river  
Liger (li'jēr), better the Loire. 1.

rēmex, -igis, *m.* [cf. rēmus, oar],  
oarsman, rower. 1.

as tributaries"; i.e. the ship owners paid  
a tax for the privilege of using the har-  
bors.

ab . . . retinendī, lit. "a beginning  
is made by these of arresting" = "they  
began by arresting."

9. finitimī: the Esvii and the Cori-  
osolites.

10. ut, "as," almost "since."

12. commūnī cōnsiliō, "by common  
agreement."

13. āctūrōs (*esse*), "that they would  
do."

14. ut permanēre quam perferre  
mālint, "to prefer to remain (rather)  
than to endure."

15. accēperint: implied indirect dis-  
course.

16. si velit, remittat: the direct  
form was *sī vīs, remitte*.

Chap. 9. Caesar equips a fleet. The  
Veneti make preparations to resist  
him.

2. aberat longius, "was too far off,"  
to take command in person.

nāvēs longās: cf. Int. 64.

in flūmine Ligerī: on the map facing  
p. 217, notice that there are three towns  
along the Liger, connected by a line of  
march. These were the winter quarters  
of the army, and no doubt ships were  
built at all of them.

3. ex provinciā: the Gauls were not  
competent oarsmen, for their ships were  
managed by sails, not oars; otherwise  
oarsmen might have been secured from  
the friendly maritime states, the An-  
des and the Pictones.

Institul, "to be procured."

nautās gubernātōrēsque comparārī iubet. His rēbus celeriter  
 5 administrātis ipse, cum primum per annī tempus potuit, ad  
 exercitum contendit. Venetī reliquaeque item cīvitatēs cog-  
 nitō Caesaris adventū, simul quod quantum in sē facinus ad-  
 misissent intellegēbant, lēgātōs, quod nōmen apud omnēs nā-  
 tiōnēs sānctum inviolātumque semper fuisset, retentōs ab sē et  
 10 in vincula coniectōs, prō magnitudīne periculī bellum parāre  
 et maximē ea quae ad ūsum nāvium pertinent prōvidēre  
 instituunt, hōc maiōre spē, quod multum nātūrā locī cōfidē-  
 bant. Pedestria esse itinera concīsa aestuāriis, nāvigātiōnem  
 impeditam propter inscientiam locōrum paucitātemque por-  
 15 tuum sciēbant, neque nostrōs exercitūs propter frūmentī ino-  
 piam diūtius apud sē morārī posse cōfidēbant; ac iam ut  
 omnia contrā opiniōnem acciderent, tamen sē plūrimū nāvibus  
 posse, Rōmānōs neque ūllam facultātem habēre nāvium neque  
 eōrum locōrum ubi bellum gestūrī essent vada, portūs, insulās

4. nauta, -ae, m. [for nāvita; nāvis, ship], sailor. 1.

gubernātor, -ōris, m. steersman, pilot. 1.

7. facinus, -noris, n. [faciō, do], deed; misdeed, outrage, crime. 2.

9. sancio, sancire, sāxi, sānctum, tr. [cf. sacer, sacred], make sacred, sanction; bind; sānctus, pf. part. as

adj., sacred, inviolable, established. 2. inviolātus, -a, -um, adj. [in-+violā- tus, injured], uninjured; inviolate, sacred. 1.

13. nāvigātiō, -ōnis, f. [nāvigō, sail], sailing, navigation; voyage. 3.

14. inscientia, -ae, f. [insciēns, ignorant], ignorance. 3.

19. insula, -ae, f., island. \*

5. cum primum . . . potuit: prob- ably in May. For tense see App. 237: G.-L. 561: B. 237, 1: H.-B. 557, a.

ad exercitum contendit: probably he went first to the most eastern town indicated on the Liger (see map facing p. 217), and then marched west, thus concentrating his army at Angers, where Crassus had spent the winter.

7. quantum . . . admisissent, "how great a crime they had committed"; an indirect question.

8. lēgātōs retentōs (esse), "(namely), that envoys had been arrested," explains facinus; syntactically it is indirect dis- course after intellegēbant.

quod nōmen, "a name which"; i.e.

lēgātōs.

10. prō, "in proportion to."

12. hōc: ablative of cause, explained by quod . . . cōfidēbant.

nātūrā: case? App. 143, a: G.-L. 401, n. 6: A. 431: B. 219, 1: H.-B. 437: H. 476, 3.

13. pedestria itinera, "land routes."

14. impeditam (esse), "was difficult."

15. neque posse cōfidēbant, "and they trusted that . . . would not be able."

16. iam, "even."

ut: translation? App. 247: G.-L. 608: A. 527, a: H.-B. 532, 2, b: H. 586, II.

17. sē posse, sc. sciēbant.

18. facultātem, "supply."

19. locōrum, depends on vada, etc.

nōvisse; ac longē aliam esse nāvigātiōnem in conclūsō mari<sup>20</sup> atque in vāstissimō atque apertissimō Ōceanō perspiciēbant. His initīs cōnsiliīs oppida mūniunt, frūmenta ex agrīs in op-pida comportant, nāvēs in Venetiam, ubi Caesarem primum bellum gestūrum cōstābat, quam plūrimās possunt cōgunt. Sociōs sibi ad id bellum Osismōs, Lexoviōs, Namnetēs, Am-<sup>25</sup> biliatōs, Morinōs, Diablintēs, Menapiōs asciscunt; auxilia ex Britannīā, quae contrā eās regiōnēs posita est, arcessunt.

10. Erant hae difficultātēs bellī gerendī quās suprà osten-dimus, sed tamen multa Caesarem ad id bellum incitābant: iniūria retentōrum equitum Rōmānōrum, rebellīō facta post dēditiōnem, dēfectiō datīs obsidibus, tot civitātum coniūrātiō, in primīs nē hāc parte neglētā reliquae nātiōnēs sibi idem<sup>5</sup> licēre arbitrārentur. Itaque cum intellexeret omnēs ferē Gal-lōs novīs rēbus studēre et ad bellum mōbiliter celeriterque

20. nōscō, nōscere, nōvī, nōtum, *tr.* learn, become acquainted or familiar with; nōvī, *pf.*, have learned, hence, know; nōtus, *pf. part. as adj.*, known, well known, familiar. 4.

conclūdō, -clūdere, -clūsi, -clūsum, *tr.* [claudō, close], shut up; conclū-sum mare, an inland sea. 1.

23. Venetia, -ae, *f.*, Venetia (vē-nē-shya), the country of the Veneti. 1.

25. Lexovii, -ōrum, *m.* (Bd), the Lexovii (lēk-sō'vī-i). 4.

Namnetēs, -um, *m.* (Cc), the Namnetes (nām'nē-tēz). 1.

Ambiliati, -ōrum, *m.*, the Ambiliati (ām'bi-li'a-ti). 1.

26. Diablintēs, -um, *m.* (Bc), the Diablintes (di'a-blīn'tēz). 1.

3. rebellīō, -ōnis, *f.* [rebellō, renew war], renewal of war, rebellion, revolt. 3.

4. dēfectiō, -ōnis, *f.* [dēficiō, fail], falling away, desertion, revolt. 1.

tot, *indecl. adj.*, so many. 1.

5. neglegō, -legere, -lēxi, -lēctum, *tr.* [neg-+legō, choose, regard], not heed, disregard, neglect. \*

7. mōbiliter, *adv.* [mōbilis, mov-

20. aliam esse atque, "was different from (what it was)."

in conclūsō mari: i.e. the Mediterranean, where the tides are very small.

23. in Venetiam: probably in the bay of Quiberon. See map, p. 232.

primum: the adverb.

25. Ambiliatōs: their location is entirely unknown. The rest of the states should be looked up on the map.

Chap. 10. Caesar plans to prevent a spread of the uprising.

1. suprà: in chap. 9.

2. multa, "many considerations."

3. iniūria . . . equitum, *lit.* "the outrage of knights arrested" = "the outrage of arresting knights."

5. nē, "the fear that." This clause, like the nouns *iniūria*, etc., is in apposition with *multa*.

hāc parte neglētā: translate by a conditional clause.

sibi idem licēre, "that the same course was open to them."

6. cum: causal.

7. rēbus: what verbs, though transitive in English, govern the dative in Latin?

excitārī, omnēs autem hominēs nātūrā libertātī studēre et condiōnem servitūtis ōdisse, priusquam plūrēs cīvitatēs cōspirārent, partiendum sibi ac lātius distribuendum exercitum putāvit.

11. Itaque T. Labiēnum lēgātum in Trēverōs, quī proximi flūminī Rhēnō sunt, cum equitātū mittit. Huic mandat Rēmōs reliquōsque Belgās adeat atque in officiō contineat, Germānōsque, quī auxiliō ā Belgīs arcessitī dicēbantur, sī per vim nāvibus flūmen trānsire cōnentur, prohibeat. P. Crassum cum cohortibus legiōnāriīs XII et magnō numerō equitātūs in Aquītāniam proficiscī iubet, nē ex hīs nātiōnibus auxilia in Galliam mittantur ac tantae nātiōnēs coniungantur. Q. Titūrium Sabīnum lēgātum cum legiōnibus tribus in Venellōs, Coriosolitēs,

able], readily, easily. 1.

**excitō**, 1, *tr.* [citō, rouse], call forth, excite, animate, arouse; erect, construct (*towers*); kindle (*fires*). 3.

**cōspirō**, 1, *intr.* [spirō, breathe], combine, conspire. 1.

**partior**, 4, *tr.* [pars, part], part, share, divide. 1.

**distribuō**, -tribuere, -tribul-, -tribūtum, *tr.* [tribuō, assign], assign, divide distribute. 3.

**3. officium**, -ci, *n.*, service, allegiance, duty; official duty, business; **esse**, **manēre**, *or* **permanēre** in officiō, to remain faithful. \*

**8. autem**, "moreover."

**9. cōspirārent**: translate this clause after the principal clause. The subjunctive was probably used in the direct form; App. 236, *b*: G.-L. 577: A. 551, *b*: B. 292, 1, *b*: H.-B. 507, 4, *b*: H. 605, 1.

**10. partiendum (esse) sibi**, lit. "must be divided by him" = "he must divide." Remember that the future passive participle of deponent verbs is passive in meaning.

**lātius distribuendum**: so as to overawe several parts of Gaul at the same time.

Chap. 11. Accordingly he sends divisions of his army into various parts of Gaul, and himself marches against the Veneti.

**2. flūminī**: what other case may *proximus* govern? See note on 7, 7.

**mittit**: probably the various expeditions mentioned in this chapter all

started from Angers. See map facing p. 217.

**mandat adeat**: note the primary sequence after the historical present; cf. note on *accurrunt*, 5, 8. Note also the lack of a conjunction; App. 228, *a*: G.-L. 546, R. 2: A. 565, *a*: B. 295, 8: H.-B. 502, 3, *a*: H. 565, 4.

**Rēmōs**: this state had earned the hatred of the other Belgae in the preceding year, and it may have needed support.

**4. arcessitī**: sc. *esse*.

**5. cōnentur** is a part of Caesar's instructions to Labienus, and is therefore implied indirect discourse. But *dicēbantur* is not a part of the instructions, and is therefore indicative.

**6. cohortibus legiōnāriīs**: Roman soldiers, in contrast to the cavalry, which was Gallic.

**7. in Galliam**: i.e. Celtic Gaul.

**Lexoviōsque mittit, quī eam manum distinendam cūret.** D. 10 Brūtum adulēscēntem classī Gallicisque nāvibus quās ex Pictonibus et Santonis reliquisque pācātis regiōnibus convenīre iusserat praeficit, et cum primum possit in Venetōs proficisci iubet. Ipse eō pedestribus cōpiis contendit.

**12.** Erant eius modī ferē sitūs oppidōrum ut posita in extrēmīs lingulis prōmunturiisque neque pedibus aditum haberent cum ex altō sē aestus incitāvisset, quod bis accidit semper hōrārū XXIII spatiō, neque nāvibus, quod rūsus minuentē aestū nāvēs in vadīs affictārentur. Ita utrāque rē oppidōrum oppugnātiō impediēbātur; ac sī quandō magnitūdine operis

**10.** D., *abbr. for praenomen Decimus* (dēs'i-mūs). 1.

**11.** Brūtus, -i, m., Decimus Junius Brutus (dēs'i-mūs jū'nī-ūs brū'tūs), *one of Caesar's lieutenants in the Gallic war, and in the war with Pompey. He took part in the conspiracy against Caesar, and was killed by order of Antony.* 2.

**classis**, -is, f., fleet. \*

**Pictonēs**, -um, m. (Ced), the Pictones (pik'tō-nēs). 1.

**1.** situs, -ūs, m. [sinō, put down], situation, site, position. 1.

**2.** lingua, -ae, f. [lingua, tongue],

a little tongue; a tongue of land. 1.

**prōmunturium**, -ri, n. [prēmīnēō, project], promontory, headland. 1.

**3.** aestus, -ūs, m., heat; boiling, surging; tide; minuentē aestū, at ebb tide. \*

**bis**, num. adv. [for duis, from duo, two], twice. 3.

**5.** affictō, 1, tr. [freq. of affligō, strike against, damage], damage greatly, shatter, injure; harass, distress. 2.

**6.** quandō, *indef. adv.*, ever, at any time. 1.

**10.** quī . . . cūret, "to see that that force be kept away." For the construction of *distinendam*, see App. 285, II, b: G.-L. 430: A. 500, 4: B. 337, 7, b, 2: H.-B. 612, III: H. 622.

**11.** classis, nāvibus: indirect objects of the compound verb *praeficit*. The fleet had probably assembled in the Liger, near its mouth.

**12.** eō: i.e. in Venetōs. He probably moved along the coast, laying siege to the towns in succession. After the distribution of troops described in this chapter, Caesar had left three legions and eight cohorts. One legion was probably assigned to the fleet, leaving Caesar two legions and eight cohorts with which to attack the Veneti.

**cōpiis**: why may *cum* be omitted? App. 140, a: G.-L. 392, R. 1: A. 413, a: B.

222, 1: H.-B. 420: H. 474, 2, n. 1.

**Chap. 12-16.** Caesar crushes the Veneti.

**Chap. 12.** Situation of the towns of the Veneti.

**1.** sitūs oppidōrum: see the small plan in the lower left hand corner of the map on p. 232.

**extrēmīs**, "the end of."

**2.** pedibus, "on foot"; i.e. by land. At high tide the low ground between the towns and the mainland was overflowed.

**3.** sē incitāvisset, "had rushed in."

**4.** nāvibus. sc. *aditum habērent*.

**5.** in vadīs affictārentur, "were stranded on the shallows." The subjunctive is due to attraction.

**6.** si quandō . . . coeperant, . . . dēportābant, "whenever they began

forte superatī, extrūsō mari aggere ac mōlibus atque hīs oppidi moenibus adaequātis, suis fortūnis dēspērāre coeperant, magnō numerō nāvium appulsō, cuius rei summam facultātem habē-

7. **extrūdō, -trudere, -trūsi, -trusum, tr.** [trūdō, thrust], thrust or shut out. 1.

**mōlēs, -is, f.,** mass; dike. 1

9. **appellō, -pellere, -puli, -pulsus, tr.** [ad+pellō, drive], bring to land; bring together. 1.



OPERATIONS AGAINST THE VENETI

... they would carry off, etc." *dēportabant* is an imperfect of repeated action, for they kept moving from town to town. *coeperant* is pluperfect because in each case they had begun to despair before they moved. Latin is more exact than English in its use of tenses of repeated action.

**operis**, "of the works"; explained by the following ablatives absolute.

7. **extrūsō . . . adaequātis**: apparently the Romans ran two parallel dykes from the mainland to the town,

completing them at low tide, when the ground was dry. Thus the sea was shut out (*extrūsō*) from the space between the dykes, and the soldiers could work there continuously. The outer ends of these dykes (or of one of them) were built as high as the wall of the town, so as to serve as aggers.

**aggere ac mōlibus**: ablatives of means.

8. **fortūnis**: indirect object. The ablative with *dē* is more common.

9. **cuius rei**: i.e. ships.

bant, sua dēportābant omnia sēque in proxima oppida recipi-  
ēbant; ibi sē rūsus isdem opportunitātibus loci dēfendēbant.  
Haec, eō facilius magnam partem aestātis faciēbant, quod nos-  
trae nāvēs tempestātibus dētīnēbantur, summaque erat vāstō  
atque apertō mari, magnīs aestibus, rārīs ac prope nūllis porti-  
bus, difficultās nāvīgandī.

13. Namque ipsōrum nāvēs ad hunc modum factae armā-  
taeque erant: carinae aliquantō plāniōrēs quam nostrārum nā-  
vium, quō facilius vada ac dēcessum aestūs excipere possent;  
prōrae admodum ērēctae atque item puppēs ad magnitudinem  
flūctuum tempestātumque accommodatae; nāvēs tōtae factae  
ex rōbre ad quamvis vim et contumēliam perferendam; trāns-

10. dēportō, 1, *tr.* [portō, carry],  
carry off or away. 1.

11. opportunitās, -tātis, *f.* [oppor-  
tūnus, fit], fitness; fit time, opportu-  
nity; advantage; with loci, favorable  
situation or position; with temporis,  
favorable opportunity. 3.

13. tempestās, -tātis, *f.* [tempus,  
time], time, season; weather, usually  
bad weather, storm, tempest. \*

dētīnēō, -tinēre, -tinui, -tentum,  
*tr.* [teneō, hold], hold off or back; hin-  
der, detain. 1.

14. rārūs, -a, -um, *adj.*, scattered,  
far apart; in small detachments, a few  
at a time; few. 1.

1. namque, *conj.* [nam, for], for. 3.

2. carina, -ae, *f.*, keel. 1.

aliquantō, *adv.* [aliquantus, some],  
somewhat, a little. 1.

plānus, -a, -um, *adj.*, even, level,  
flat, plain. 2.

3. dēcessus, -ūs, *m.* [dēcōdō, de-  
part], departure; ebb, fall (of the tide). 1.

4. prōra, -ae, *f.*, prow. 1.

admodum, *adv.* [modus, measure],  
up to the measure; very much, very; with  
num., fully; with neg., at all. 1.

ērīgō, -rigere, -rēxi, -rēctum, *tr.*  
[regō, direct], lift or raise; ērēctus, *pf.*  
part. as *adj.*, standing upright, high. 1.

puppis, -is, *f.*, stern of a ship. 2.

5. flūctus, -ūs, *m.* [fluō, flow], flood,  
billow, wave. 3.

accommodātus, -a, -um, *adj.* [*pf.*  
part. of accommodō, adapt], fit, adapt-  
ed, appropriate. 2.

6. rōbur, -oris, *n.*, oak. 1.

trānstrum, -ī, *n.*, cross-beam,  
thwart. 1.

12. partem: duration of time.

13. summa agrees with difficultās.

vāstō . . . portibus: ablatives abso-  
lute with causal meaning.

Chap. 13. Description of the ships  
of the Veneti.

1. namque introduces the reason for  
the ability of the enemy's ships to op-  
erate while the Roman ships were help-  
less.

2. carinae . . . nāvium, "the bot-  
toms (were) flatter than (those) of, etc."  
In such cases Latin never inserts a

word for "those."

3. quō: when is quō used in purpose  
clauses?

excipere, "meet," "encounter."  
They were less likely to strike bottom,  
and if stranded they would not heel  
over.

5. tōtae, "entirely."

6. ex rōbre: construction? App.  
136: G.-L. 396: A. 403, 2: H.-B. 403, 4: H.  
470.

quamvis: accusative of quivis.

trānstra: these heavy timbers, set in

tra ex pedālibus in altitūdinem trabibus cōfixa clāvis ferreis  
 digiti pollicis crassitūdine; ancorae prō fūnibus ferreis catēnis  
 revinctae; pellēs prō vēlis alūtaeque tenuiter cōfectae; sive  
 10 propter inopiam linī atque eius ūsūs inscientiam, sive eō, quod  
 est magis vēri simile, quod tantās tempestātēs Ōceanī tantōsque  
 impetūs ventōrum sustinērī ac tanta onera nāvium regī vēlis  
 nōn satis commodē posse arbitrābantur. Cum his nāvibus  
 nostrae classī eius modī congressus erat ut ūnā celeritāte et  
 15 pulsū rēmōrum praestāret, reliqua prō loci nātūrā, prō vī tem-  
 pestātum illis essent aptiōra et accommodātiōra. Neque enim

7. **pedālis**, -e, *adj.* [**pēs**, foot], of a foot in thickness or diameter. 1.

**cōfigō**, -figere, -fixī, -fixum, *tr.* [**figō**, fix], fasten. 1.

**clāvus**, -ī, *m.*, nail, spike. 1.

**ferreus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [**ferrum**, iron], of iron, iron. 2.

8. **digitus**, -ī, *m.*, finger; as measure of length, a finger's breadth, the 16th part of a Roman foot; **digitus pollex**, the thumb. 1.

**pollex**, -icis, *m.*, the thumb, with or without digitus. 1.

**crassitūdō**, -inis, *f.* [**crassus**, thick], thickness. 1.

**ancora**, -ae, *f.*, anchor; in **ancorīs**, at anchor. \*

**fūnis**, -is, *m.*, rope, cable. 3.

**catēna**, -ae, *f.*, chain; fetter. 3.

9. **revinciō**, -vincire, -vīnxi, -vinc-

**tum**, *tr.* [**re** + **vinciō**, bind], bind back; fasten, bind. 2.

**vēlum**, -ī, *n.*, covering, veil; sail. 3.

**alūta**, -ae, *f.*, soft leather. 1.

**tenuiter**, *adv.* [**tenuis**, thin], thinly. 1.

10. **linum**, -ī, *n.*, flax; linen, canvas. 1.

11. **similis**, -e, *adj.*, like, similar. 1.

12. **ventus**, -ī, *m.*, wind. \*

**regō**, **regere**, **rēxi**, **rēctum**, *tr.*, keep straight; guide, direct, control. 1.

14. **congressus**, -ūs, *m.*, [**congre-**  
**dior**, meet], meeting, engagement, con-  
 flict. 1.

15. **pulsus**, -ūs, *m.* [**pellō**, strike], stroke. 1.

**rēmus**, -ī, *m.*, oar. 4.

16. **aptus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, fitted, suited, adapted. 1.

across the inside of the ship, strength-  
 ened the sides and helped them to with-  
 stand the Roman **rōstra** (I. 17). In  
 Roman ships they were rowers' benches,  
 but the Veneti had no rowers.

7. in **altitūdinem**, "in thickness."

8. **crassitūdine**: this descriptive  
 ablative is modified by a genitive in-  
 stead of the usual adjective,

**prō**, "instead of."

9. **pellēs** . . . **cōfectae**, "skins  
 and thinly dressed leather (served) as  
 sails."

11. **quod**: explaining **eō**.

12. **tanta onera nāvium**, "such  
 heavy ships."

13. **nōn satis commodē**, "not very  
 well."

14. **classī**: dative of possessor.

**ūnā celeritāte**, "only in speed."

15. **pulsū rēmōrum**, "in rowing";  
 i.e. "in having oars." In the battle  
 which followed the fact that the Roman  
 ships had oars was an immense advan-  
 tage.

**reliqua**, "all other things."

**prō**, "in view of."

16. **illis**: the ships of the enemy.

iis nostrae rōstrō nocēre poterant (tanta in iis erat firmitūdō), neque propter altitudinem facile tēlum adigēbātur, et eādem dē causā minus commodē cōpulīs continēbantur. Accēdēbat ut, cum saevire ventus coepisset et sē ventō dedissent, et tempestātem ferrent facilius et in vadīs cōsisterent tūtius, et ab aestū relictāe nihil saxa et cautēs timērent; quārum rērum omnium nostrīs nāvibus cāsus erat extimēscendus.

14. Complūribus expugnātis oppidis Caesar, ubi intellēxit frūstrā tantum labōrem sūmī, neque hostium fugam captīs oppidis reprimī neque iis nocērī posse, statuit expectandam classem. Quae ubi convēnit ac primum ab hostibus visa est, circiter CCXX nāvēs eōrum parātissimae atque omni genere armōrum ōrnatissimae profectae ex portū nostrīs adversae cōn-

17. rōstrum, -ī, *n.* [rōdō, gnaw, consume], beak of a bird; beak or prow of a ship. 2.

noceō, nocēre, nocui, nocitum, *intr.*, injure, hurt; nocēns, *pres. part. as noun*, guilty person. 4.

firmitūdō, -īnis, *f.* [firmus, strong], strength, firmness, solidity. 2.

19. cōpula, -ae, *f.*, grappling-hook. 1.

20. saevio, -ire, -ii, -itum, *intr.* [saevus, raging], rage; be fierce. 1.

21. tūtō, *adv.* [tātus, safe], safely, securely. 2.

22. cautēs, -is, *f.*, reef. 1.

23. extimēscō, -timēscere, -timui, —, *tr.* [timēscō, *incept. of* timeō, fear], dread. 1.

3. reprimō, -primere, -pressi, -pressum, *tr.* [re-+premō, press], press or keep back, check, restrain. 1.

5. genus, -eris, *n.*, descent, origin, race, class, tribe, family; kind, nature. \*

6. ōrnō, 1, *tr.*, adorn; furnish, supply; ōrnātus, *pf. part. as adj.*, equipped, furnished, fitted out. 1.

17. nostrae: *sc. nāvēs.*

18. adigēbātur, "could be thrown."

19. cōpulīs: *see* Int. 64.

accēdēbat ut et ferrent et cōsisterent et timērent, "there was the additional advantage that they weathered, etc.," or simply, "besides, they weathered, etc."

20. sē ventō dedissent, "ran before the wind."

21. cōsisterent, "came to anchor."

22. relictāe, "when left."

quārum rērum cāsus. "the danger of these things."

23. nāvibus: *dative of the agent.*

Chap. 14. The naval battle. The

Romans ruin the rigging of the hostile ships.

1. expugnātis: by the method described in chap. 12.

2. neque . . . posse, "and that they could not be injured." What is the literal translation? App. 115, d: G.-L. 346, R. 1: A. 372: B. 187, II, b: H.-B. 364, 2: H. 426, 3.

6. armōrum, "equipment," including everything necessary for the defense and management of the ships during the battle.

nostris: *sc. nāvibus.*

cōstitērunt, "took their position"; from cōsistō. *See* the map on p. 232.

stitērunt; neque satis Brūtō, quī classi praeerat, vel tribūnis militum centuriōnibusque, quibus singulae nāvēs erant attribūtāe, cōnstābat quid agerent aut quam ratiōnem pugnae insisterent. Rōstrō enim nocērī nōn posse cognōverant; turribus autem excitātis tamen hās altitūdō puppiū ex barbaris nāvibus superābat, ut neque ex inferiōre locō satis commodē tēla adigi possent et missa ā Gallis gravius acciderent. \* Ūna erat magnō ūsuī rēs praeparāta ā nostris, falcēs praecūtāe insertae affixae  
15 que longuriis nōn absimili fōrmā mūrālium falcium. His cum fūnēs quī antemnās ad mālōs dēstinābant comprehēnsi adduc-

14. praeparō, 1, *tr.* [parō, prepare], prepare beforehand, provide. 1.

falx, falcis, *f.*, sickle, pruning-hook; hook (for pulling down walls). 2.

inserō, -serere, -serui, -sertum, *tr.*, insert, thrust in. 1.

affigō, -figere, -fixi, -fixum, *tr.* [ad + figō, fix], fasten to. 1.

15. longurius, -ri, *m.* [longus, long], a long pole. 2.

absimilis, -e, *adj.* [similis, like], unlike. 1.

fōrma, -ae, *f.*, form, shape, appearance. 1.

mūrālis, -e, *adj.* [mūrus, wall], pertaining to a wall, mural; mūrālē'pilum, mural javelin, a heavy javelin to be thrown from the top of a wall. 1.

16. antemna, -ae, *f.*, sail-yard. 3.  
mālus, -i, *m.*, mast; pole, beam (upright). 1.

dēstinō, 1, *tr.*, fasten, secure; catch firmly; appoint, choose. 1.

comprehēdō, -prehendere, -prehendi, -prehensum, *tr.* [prehēdō, (prēndō), seize], grasp or lay hold of, seize, catch, arrest; take, catch (fire). 2.

7. Brūtō, tribūnis, centuriōnibus: indirect objects of cōnstābat.

9. quid . . . insisterent, "what to do or what plan of fighting to adopt." These are indirect questions, but the subjunctive would be used in corresponding direct questions; App. 210: G.-L. 265: A. 444: B. 277: H.-B. 503: H. 559 4.

10. rōstrō: ablative of means.

nocērī: sc. nāvibus hostium; cf. references on neque . . . posse, l. 2.

turribus excitātis, "even when the towers were erected." These towers were erected on the fore and after decks. One appears in Fig. 12, Int. 64; but the sculptor represented it in miniature, so as to get it into the available space.

11. ex, "on."

12. neque . . . et = et (both) nōn . . . et. In translating, omit the first et.

13. missa, "those thrown."  
erat magnō ūsuī, "was very useful." In fact this device saved the day.

15. longuriis: dative with insertae and affixae.

nōn . . . falcium, "of a form not unlike (that) of mural hooks."

his . . . concidēbant: the ships of the Veneti had each a single square sail, supported by a sail-yard. The sail was hoisted and held up by means of a rope (halyard) which ran from this sail-yard through a pulley at the top of the mast down to one side (gunwale) of the ship, where it was made fast. The Romans caught the halyard just above the gunwale and broke it, whereupon the sail fell.

his: i.e. hooks. Ablative of means.

cum . . . comprehēnsi erant: mode? App. 241, b: G.-L. 584: A. 542: B. 288, 3: H.-B. 579: H. 601, 4. For the

tique erant, nāvigio rēmīs incitātō prærumpēbantur. Quibus abscīsīs antennae necessāriō concidēbant, ut, cum omnis Gallicīs nāvibus spēs in vēlīs armāmentisque cōsisteret, hīs ēreptīs omnis ūsus nāvium ūnō tempore ēriperētur. Reliquum erat certāmen positum in virtūte, quā nostrī militēs facile superābant, atque eō magis, quod in cōspectū Caesaris atque omnis exercitūs rēs gerēbātur, ut nūllum paulō fortius factum latēre posset; omnēs enim collēs ac loca superiōra unde erat propinquus dēspectus in mare ab exercitū tenēbantur.

15. Dēiectīs, ut diximus, antennīs, cum singulās binae ac ternae nāvēs circumsteterant, militēs summā vī trāscendere in hostium nāvēs contendēbant. Quod postquam barbari fieri animadvertērunt, expugnātīs complūribus nāvibus, cum ei rei nūllum reperirētur auxilium, fugā salūtem petere contendērunt.

17. nāvigium, -gī, *n.* [nāvigō, sail], a sailing vessel, ship, craft. 2.

prærumpō, -rumpere, -rūpl, -rumpum, *tr.* [rumpō, break], break off, tear away; præruptus, *pf. part. as adj.*, steep, precipitous. 1.

18. abscidō, -cidere, -cidī, -cīsum, *tr.* [caedō, cut], cut or lop off, tear off or away. 1.

concidō, -cidere, -cidī, —, *intr.* [cadō, fall], fall down fall. 1.

19. armāmenta, -ōrum, *n.* [armō, arm], implements, gear; tackle or rigging of a ship. 2.

21. certāmen, -inis, *n.* [certō, strive], strife, struggle, contest, combat. 1.

23. factum, -ī, *n.* [*pf. part. of faciō*, half noun, half participle], act, exploit, deed. 1.

25. dēspectus, -ūs, *m.* [dēspiciō, look down upon], a looking down, view. 1.

1. bīnī, -ae, -a, *distrib. num. adj.* [bis, twice], two each, two apiece, by twos. 3.

2. ternī, -ae, -a, *distrib. num. adj.* [ter, thrice], three each, three apiece. 1. circumsistō, -sistī, —, *tr.* [sistō, stand], flock or rally around, surround, hem in. \*

trāscendō, -scendere, -scendi, -scēsum, *tr. and intr.* [scandō, climb], climb over; board. 1.

tenses cf. note on si quandō . . . dēportābant, 12, 6.

17. quibus: i.e. fūnibus.

18. cum: causal.

19. nāvibus, "of the ships"; a dative of reference modifying the whole clause, where a genitive might have been used instead; cf. *Caesari*, I, 31, 4.

22. in cōspectū, etc.: Caesar and his army were on the heights of St. Gildas; see the map on p. 232.

23. paulō fortius, "a little braver than usual."

Chap. 15. Almost all the ships of the Veneti are destroyed.

1. cum circumsteterant: for mode see note on cum comprehēsi erant, 14, 15.

singulās . . . ternae, "two or three . . . each." Only the disabled Gallic ships were thus surrounded, for probably there were more Gallic ships than Roman.

3. quod, ei rei: both refer to the statement in the first sentence, cum . . . contendēbant.

Ac iam conversis in eam partem nāvibus quō ventus ferēbat, tanta subitō malacia ac tranquillitās exstitit ut sē ex locō movēre nōn possent. Quae quidem rēs ad negōtium cōficiendum maximē fuit opportūna; nam singulās nostrī cōsectātī expug-  
 80 nāvērunt, ut perpaucae ex omnī numerō noctis interventū ad terram pervenirent, cum ab hōrā ferē quārtā usque ad sōlis occāsum pugnārētur.

16. Quō proeliō bellum Venetōrum tōtiusque ōrae maritimae cōfectum est. Nam cum omnis iuventūs, omnēs etiam graviōris aetātis in quibus aliquid cōsili aut dignitātis fuit, eō convēnerant, tum nāvium quod ubique fuerat in ūnum locum  
 5 coēgerant; quibus āmissis, reliquī neque quō sē reciperent neque quem ad modum oppida dēfenderent habēbant. Itaque sē suaeque omnia Caesarī dēdidērunt. In quōs eō gravius Caesar vindicandum statuit, quō dīligentius in reliquum tempus ā

7. malacia, -ae, *f.*, a calm at sea. 1. tranquillitās, -tātis, *f.*, calmness, stillness; a calm. 1.

exsistō, -sistere, -stiti, —, *intr.* [sistō, stand], stand or come forth, appear, arise; ensue. 1.

9. cōsector, 1, *tr.* [sector, *freq.* of sequor, follow], follow eagerly, pursue, chase. 4.

10. interventus, -ūs, *m.* [inter-veniō, come between], coming; aid. 1.

11. terra, -ae, *f.*, earth, land, soil, ground; region, district; terrae (*pl.*) and orbis terrārum, the world. 3.

6. in . . . ferēbat, "in that direction toward which the wind was blowing."

9. singulās, "one by one."

11. cum pugnārētur, "when the battle had been going on." For this translation of the imperfect see note on cum pugnārētur, 5, 1.

hōrā quārtā: between about 8:30 and 9:30 A.M., at that season.

Chap. 16. The Veneti surrender. Caesar slays their senate and sells the rest into slavery.

2. cum . . . tum, "not only . . . but also."

usque, *adv.* (1) of place, all the way to, even to, as far as; (2) of time, up to, till; with ad, until. 3.

2. iuventūs, -ūtis, *f.* [iuvenis, young], period of youth, from seventeen to forty-five years; the youth, the young men. 1.

3. dignitās, -tātis, *f.* [dignus, worthy], worthiness, dignity, merit, rank. 3.

4. ubique, *adv.* [ubi, where], anywhere, everywhere. 1.

8. vindicō, 1, *tr.*, assert authority, assert, claim; set free, deliver; inflict punishment. 1.

3. in quibus . . . fuit, "who had any ability to advise or any rank."

eō: to the seat of war.

4. nāvium . . . fuerat, "whatever [of] ships they had had anywhere."

5. quibus, refers to both men and ships.

neque . . . habēbant, "did not know where to take refuge, etc." For construction see note on quid . . . insistrent, 14, 9.

7. eō gravius, quō, *lit.* "more severely on this account, in order that" = "the more severely, etc."

barbaris ius legatorum conservaretur. Itaque omni senatu necato reliquos sub corona vendidit.

17. Dum haec in Venetis geruntur, Q. Titurius Sabinus cum iis copiis quas a Caesare acceperat in fines Venellorum pervenit. His praeerat Viridovix ac summam imperi tenebat earum omnium civitatum quae defecerant, ex quibus exercitum magnasque copias coegerat; atque his paucis diebus Aulerici Eburovices Lexoviique senatu suo interfecto, quod auctores belli esse volebant, portas clauserunt seque cum Viridovice coniunxerunt; magnaque praeterea multitudo undique ex Gallia perditorum hominum latronumque convenerat, quos spes praedandi studiumque bellandi ab agricultura et cotidiano labore revocabat. Sabinus idoneo omnibus rebus loco castris sese

10. *necō*, 1, *tr.* [nex, death], put to death, kill, murder. 2.

*corōna*, -ae, *f.*, wreath, chaplet; ring, circle; sub *corōnā vēdere*, sell at auction. 1.

3. *Viridovix*, -icis, *m.*, Viridovix vi-ri-dō-viks), a chief of the Venelli. 4.

6. *Eburovices*, -um, *m.* (Bd), the Aulerici Eburovices (aw-lēr'si ēb'ū-rō-vi'sēs). 1.

*auctor*, -ōris, *m.* [augeō, increase], one who produces, creates, or originates;

promoter, instigator, adviser, author: *auctor esse*, advise. 1.

8. *praeterea*, *adv.* [praeter, beyond], beyond this, besides, furthermore. \*

9. *perdō*, -dere, -didi, -ditum, *tr.* [dō, give], give over, ruin; *perditus*, *p. part. as adj.*, desperate, ruined. 1.

*latrō*, -ōnis, *m.*, freebooter, bandit, robber. 1.

10. *agricultūra*, -ae, *f.* [ager, land + colō, cultivate], cultivation of the land, agriculture. 3.

10. *reliquos*: i.e. all who fell into his hands; certainly not all the state, since it remained in existence.

sub *corōnā*: the phrase came down from early times, when it was the custom to put chaplets of leaves on the heads of captives who were to be sold.

The punishment of the Veneti, like that of the Atuatucl (II, 33, 18) seems barbarous to us. It is nevertheless true that on the whole Caesar was merciful to the Gauls, judging him by the standards of his own times, and that these severe punishments were necessary for the accomplishment of his purposes.

Chap. 17-19. Sabinus defeats the land forces of the allies.

Chap. 17. Sabinus encamps among the Venelli and refuses battle.

1. *dum geruntur*: for mode and tense, see App. 234, a: G.-L. 570: A. 556: B. 293, I: H.-B. 571: H. 604, 1.

*Sabinus*: see 11, 8.

5. *his paucis diebus*, "a few days before": i.e. before the arrival of Sabinus.

7. *nōlēbant*: the senators.

8. *undique ex Galliā*, "from all parts of Gaul"; not simply from the Aremoric states. This was the Romans' third year in Gaul, and the long-continued war had unsettled everything.

11. *idoneo . . . tenēbat*, "shut himself up in camp in a place suitable in all respects." Notice the three ablatives: *rebus* is an ablative of specification: *locō* is an ablative of place, App.

tenēbat, cum Viridovix contrā eum duōrum milium spatiō cōsēdisset cotidiēque prōductis cōpiis pugnandī potestātem faceret, ut iam nōn solum hostibus in contemptiōnem Sabīnus veniret,   
 15 sed etiam nostrōrum militum vōcibus nōn nihil carperētur; tantamque opiniōnem timōris praebuit ut iam ad vāllum castrōrum hostēs accēdere audērent. Id eā dē causā faciēbat, quod cum tantā multitudīne hostium, praesertim eō absente quī summam imperī tenēret, nisi aequō locō aut opportunitate   
 20 aliquā datā lēgātō dīmicandum nōn existimābat.

18. Hāc cōfirmatā opiniōne timōris idōneum quendam hominem et callidum dēlēgit, Gallum, ex iis quōs auxiliī causā sēcum habēbat. Huic magnīs praemiīs pollicitātiōnibusque persuādet utī ad hostēs trāseat, et quid fierī velit ēdocet. Quī   
 5 ubi prō perfugā ad eōs vēnit, timōrem Rōmānōrum prōpōnit, quibus angustiīs ipse Caesar ā Venetīs premātur docet neque longius abesse quin proximā nocte Sabīnus clam ex castris exercitum

13. *prōducō, -ducere, -dūxi, -ductum* *tr.* [*dūcō, lead*], lead out or forth, bring forth: prolong, protract; produce; with cōpiās, arrange, draw up. \*

14. *contemptiō, -ōnis, f.* [*contemnō, despise*], disdain, contempt. 1.

15. *carpō, carpere, carpsī, carptum, tr.*, pluck: censure, jeer at. 1.

16. *absēns, -entis, adj.* [*pres. part. of absum be absent*], absent, at a distance. 2.

19. *aequus, -a, -um adj.* even.

level, equal; equitable, impartial, just; *aequus animus*, equanimity, composure. 3.

2. *callidus, -a, -um, adj.*, shrewd. 1.

3. *praemium, -mī, n.*, distinction, prize, reward \*

*pollicitātiō, -ōnis f.* [*polliceor, promise*], promise, offer. 2.

4. *ēdoceō, -docēre, -docui, -docutum, tr.* [*doceō, teach*], teach thoroughly, inform in detail, explain. 1.

7. *clam, adv.*, secretly. 3.

151, b: *castris* appears to be an ablative of place, but is an ablative of means, App. 151, c.

12. *cum*, "although."

*milium*: sc. *passuum*.

*spatiō*: ablative of degree of difference; lit "opposite by a distance, etc."

14. *hostibus*: dative of reference.

18 *eō absente* "in the absence of the man"; i.e. Caesar.

20. *lēgātō*: dative of the agent with *dīmicandum (esse)*; "that a legate ought to fight."

Chap. 18. Sabinus tricks the enemy into attacking his camp.

2. *Gallum*, "a Gaul."

*ex iis*, "(one) of those."

5. *prō perfugā*, "pretending to be a deserter."

6. *docet* has as objects the two substantive clauses *quidus . . . premātur* (indirect question) and *abesse*, etc. (indirect discourse).

*neque . . . nocte*, lit. "and that it was not farther off but that on the next night," = "and that no later than the next night."

ēducāt et ad Caesarem auxili ferendī causā proficiscātur. Quod ubi auditum est, conclāmant omnēs occāsionem negōti bene gerendī āmittendam nōn esse, ad castra irī oportēre. Multae 10 rēs ad hoc cōnsilium Gallōs hortābantur: superiōrum diērum Sabīnī cūctātiō, perfugae cōfirmātiō, inopia cibāriōrum, cui rei parum diligenter ab iis erat prōvisum, spēs Veneticī belli, et quod ferē libenter hominēs id quod volunt crēdunt. His rēbus adductī nōn prius Viridovicem reliquōsque ducēs ex con- 15 ciliō dīmittunt quam ab iis sit concessum arma utī capiant et ad castra contendant. Quā rē concessā laetī, ut explōrātā victōriā, sarmentis virgultisque collēctis quibus fossās Rōmānōrum compleant, ad castra pergunt.

19. Locus erat castrōrum ēditus et paulātim ab imō acclivis circiter passūs mille. Hūc magnō cursū contendērunt, ut

9. conclāmō, 1, *intr.* [clāmō, cry out], shout or cry out, call aloud. 2.

occāsio, -ōnis, *f.* [occidō, fall, happen], occasion, opportunity. 1.

bene, *adv.* [bonus, good], well, rightly, successfully. *Comp.*, melius; *sup.*, optimē. 2.

12. cūctātiō, -ōnis, *f.* [cūctor, delay], delaying, delay, hesitation, reluctance. 2.

cōfirmātiō, -ōnis, *f.* [cōfirmō, assert], assurance. 1.

13. parum, *adv.* [parvus, little], little, too little, not sufficiently. 1.

Veneticus, -a, -um, *adj.*, of the Ven-

eti, Venetian. 2.

14. libenter, *adv.* [libēns, willing], willingly, gladly, with pleasure. 2.

17. laetus, -a, -um, *adj.*, joyful. 1.  
explōrātus, -a, -um, *adj.* [*pf. part.* of explōrō, search out], ascertained; sure, certain. 1.

18. sarmentum, -i, *n.*, brushwood, fagots. 1.

virgultum, -i, *n.*, thicket, brush, brushwood. 1.

19. pergō, pergere, perrēxi, perrēctum, *intr.* [per + regō, keep straight], go on, proceed. 1.

9. negōtī . . . gerendī, "of winning a victory."

10. Irī, oportēre, "(but) that they must go."

11. superiōrum diērum, "during the preceding days."

13. spēs . . . belli, "the hope of (a fortunate outcome) of, etc." The genitive is objective. They had not yet learned the result of the war.

14. quod . . . crēdunt: this substantive clause, like the preceding nominatives, is in apposition with rēs, l. 11.

15. prius quam . . . concessum, "until they had granted them permission." The fate of the senate, 17. 6, no doubt helped the council to yield. *Mode?* App. 236, b: G.-L. 577, 2, n. 2: A. 551, b, n. 2: B. 292: H.-B. 507, 4, c: H. 605, I.

17. ut . . . victōriā, "as if victory were assured."

18. quibus . . . compleant: a purpose clause.

Chap. 19. The enemy are routed and the states are forced to surrender.

1. ab imō, "from the bottom."

quam minimum spatī ad sē colligendōs armandōsque Rōmānī darētur, exanimātique pervēnērunt. Sabinus suōs hortātus cupientibus signum dat. Impeditis hostibus propter ea quae ferēbant onera, subitō duābus portis ēruptionem fieri iubet. Factum est opportunitate locī, hostium inscientiā ac defatigatiōne, virtūte militum et superiōrum pugnārū exercitātiōne, ut nē ūnum quidem nostrōrum impetum ferrent ac statim terga verterent. Quōs integris viribus milites nostri cōsecūtī magnum numerum eōrum occidērunt; reliquōs equitēs cōsectāti paucōs quī ex fugā ēvāserant reliquērunt. Sic ūnō tempore et dē nāvālī pugnā Sabinus et dē Sabīnī victoriā Caesar certior factus est, civitatēsque omnēs sē statim Tituriō dēdiderunt.

15 Nam ut ad bella suscipienda Gallōrum alacer ac prōptus est animus, sic mollis ac minimē resistēns ad calamitatēs perferendās mēns eōrum est.

20. Eōdem ferē tempore P. Crassus, cum in Aquitāniam per-

7. *defatigatiō*, -ōnis, *f.* [defatigō, weary], fatigue, weariness. 1.

8. *exercitātiō*, -ōnis, *f.* [exercitō, *freq. of exerceō*, exercise], exercise, training; practice, experience. \*

9. *tergum*, -i, *n.*, the back; *terga vertere*, to flee; *post tergum* or *ab tergō*, in the rear. \*

10. *vertō*, *vertere*, *verti*, *versum*, *tr.*, turn, turn around; *terga vertere*, flee. \*

12. *ēvādō*, -vādere, -vāsī, -vāsūm, *intr.* [vādō, go], escape. 1.

13. *nāvālis*, -e, *adj.* [nāvis, ship], pertaining to ships, naval. 1.

15. *alacer*, -cris, -cre, *adj.*, lively, eager, active, ready, joyous. 2.

*prōptus*, -a, -um, *adj.*, ready, active. 1.

16. *mollis*, -e, *adj.*, soft; smooth; weak. 1.

17. *mēns*, *mentis*, *f.*, the thinking faculty, mind, intellect; thought; disposition, feelings; *mentēs animōsque*, minds and hearts; *aliēnātā mēte*, bereft of reason. 4.

3. *quam . . . spatī*, "the least possible time."

5. *cupientibus*, lit. "to them desiring," = "as they eagerly awaited it."

6. *onera*: the bundles of brush; 18, 18.

7. *factum est opportunitate*, "it resulted from the advantage, etc." The subject of *factum est* is *ut . . . verterent*.

8. *militum*: the Romans.

9. *ac*, "but." Latin usually says "and," when such an affirmative clause follows a negative one; English usually says "but."

11. *equitēs*: nominative.

13. *Sabinus*: sc. *certior factus est*.

14. *Tituriō*: Titurius Sabinus.

15. *ut . . . sic*, "while . . . yet."

16. *animus*, "impulse."

17. *mēns*, "will-power."

Chap. 20-27. Crassus forces the Aquitani to submit.

Chap. 20. Crassus is attacked on the march by the Sotiates.

1. Crassus: read 11, 5-8, and see map facing p. 217.

vēnisset, quae, ut ante dictum est, est tertia pars Galliae, cum intellexeret in iis locis sibi bellum gerendum ubi paucis ante annis L. Valerius Praeconinus lēgātus exercitū pulsō interfectus esset, atque unde L. Manlius prōcōnsul impedimentis āmissis 5 profūgisset, nōn mediocrem sibi dīligentiam adhibendam intellegēbat. Itaque rē frūmentāriā prōvisā, auxiliis equitātūque comparātō, multis praeterea viris fortibus Tolōsā et Carcasōne et Narbōne, quae sunt civitatēs Galliae prōvinciae finitimae his regiōnibus, nōminatim ēvocātis, in Sotiātium finēs exercitum 10 intrōdūxit. Cuius adventū cognitō Sotiātēs magnis cōpiis coactis equitātūque, quō plūrimum valēbant, in itinere agmen nostrum adortī primum equestre proelium commisērunt, deinde equitātū suō pulsō atque insequentibus nostris subitō pedestrēs cōpiās, quās in convalle in insidiis collocāverant, ostendērunt. 15 Hī nostrōs disiectōs adortī proelium renovārunt.

4. **Praeconinus**, -i, m., Lucius Valerius Praeconinus (lū'shyūs va-lē' ri-ūs prēk'ō-ni'nūs), a Roman lieutenant in Gaul, before Caesar's time. 1.

5. **Manlius**, -ii, m., Lucius Manlius (lū'shyūs mǎn'li-ūs), proconsul in 78 B.C. 1.

**prōcōnsul**, -is, m., a proconsul, one who at the close of his consulship in Rome became governor of a province. 1.

6. **mediocris**, -cre, adj. [medius, the middle of], middling, ordinary, moderate. 2.

**diligentia**, -ae, f. [diligēns, careful], carefulness, heedfulness, painstaking,

care. 4.

8. **Tolōsa**, -ae, f. (Ed), Tolosa (tō-lō'sa), now Toulouse. 1.

**Carcasō**, -ōnis, f. (Ee), Carcaso (kār'ka-sō). 1.

9. **Narbō**, -ōnis, m. (Ee), Narbo (nār'bō), now Narbonne. 1.

10. **ēvocō**, 1, tr. [vocō, call], call forth or out, summon; **ēvocātus**, pf. part. as noun, reenlisted veteran. 3.

**Sotiātēs**, -um, m. (DEcd), the Sotiates (sō'shī-ā'tēz). 4.

15. **convallis**, -is, f. [vallis, valley], enclosed valley, defile. 1.

2. **ante**: see I, 1, 2.

3. **paucis annis**: twenty-two or twenty-three years before, in 78 or 79, B.C. Our knowledge of these events is very vague. Manlius, governor of the Gallic province, marched against Sertorius, who was in Spain, and was defeated by a lieutenant of Sertorius. The Aquitani seem to have stripped him of his baggage as he retreated. Nothing whatever is known of Praeconinus.

6. **nōn mediocrem**, "unusual."

8. **viris**: ablative absolute with

**ēvocātis**. These were retired veterans who were induced to serve again by high pay and special privileges.

**Tolōsā**: place from which, with **ēvocātis**.

9. **civitātēs**, "cities." **finitimae** agrees with it.

**his regiōnibus**: Aquitania. The dative depends on **finitimae**.

12. **quō**: ablative of specification.

13. **primum**: the adverb.

16. **disiectōs**, "while scattered," in pursuit of the cavalry.

21. Pugnatum est diu atque acriter, cum Sotiātēs superioribus victōriis frētī in suā virtūte tōtius Aquitāniae salutem positam putārent, nostrī autem quid sine imperātore et sine reliquīs legiōnibus adulēscēntulō duce efficere possent perspicere cuperent; tandem cōfecti vulneribus hostēs terga vertērunt. Quōrum magnō numerō interfectō Crassus ex itinere oppidum Sotiātium oppugnāre coepit. Quibus fortiter resistentibus vineās turrēque ēgit. Illi aliās ēruptiōne temptatā, aliās cuniculis ad aggerem vineāsque āctis (cuius rei sunt longē  
10 peritissimi Aquitāni, propterea quod multis locis apud eos aerariae secturaeque sunt), ubi diligentia nostrorum nihil his rebus profici posse intellēxerunt, lēgātōs ad Crassum mittant sēque in dēditionem ut recipiat petunt. Quā rē impetratā arma trādere iussi faciunt.

22. Atque in eam rem omnium nostrorum intentis animis,

2. frētus, -a, -um, *adj.*, relying upon. 1.

4. adulēscēntulus, -i, *m.* [*dim.* of adulēscēns, youth], a very young man. 1.

9. cuniculus, -i, *m.*, burrow; tunnel, mine. 1.

11. aeraria, -ae, *f.* [aes, copper], copper mine. 1.

sectura, -ae, *f.* [secō, cut], cutting;

shaft, mine. 1.

12. prōficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum, *tr.* and *intr.* [faciō, make], make progress, advance; effect, accomplish, gain. 2.

1. intendō, -tendere, -tendi, -tentum, *tr.* [tendō, stretch], stretch out or to; intentus, *pf. part.*, intent on, absorbed in, attentive to. 3.

Chap. 21. Crassus defeats the Sotiates and takes their town.

1. superioribus victōriis: those mentioned in 20, 4-5. Case? App. 143, a: G.-L. 401, n. 6: A. 431, a: B. 218, 3: H.-B. 433: H. 476, 1.

3. quid . . . possent: subject of *perspicere*.

imperātore, "commander-in-chief."

sine . . . legiōnibus: Crassus had only twelve cohorts of legionary soldiers.

4. adulēscēntulō duce: ablative absolute.

5. cuperent: like *putārent*, with *cum*, 1. 1.

ex itinere: as in II. 12, 4.

8. aliās: the adverb.

9. cuniculis āctis, "having driven tunnels." They probably tried to set fire to the agger from beneath, as it was made largely of wood.

culus rei, "an art in which." Case? App. 106, a: G.-L. 374: A. 349, a: B. 204, 1: H.-B. 354: H. 451, 1.

11. diligentia: ablative of cause. The Romans may have dug counter mines, thus meeting the enemy before they got under the agger.

14. faciunt, "they did so."

Chap. 22. The chief of the Sotiates vainly attempts to escape.

1. rem: the surrender of the arms.

aliā ex parte oppidī Adiatunnus, quī summam imperī tenēbat, cum de devōtīs (quōs illi solduriōs appellant, quōrum haec est condiciō, ut omnibus in vitā commodis unā cum iis fruuntur quōrum sē amicitiae dēdiderint, sī quid hīs per vim accidat, aut eundem cāsum unā ferant aut sibi mortem cōnsciscant; neque adhūc hominum memoriā repertus est quisquam quī, eō interfectō cuius sē amicitiae devōvisset, mortem recūsāret), cum hīs Adiatunnus ēruptionem facere cōnātus, clāmōre ab eā parte mūnitiōnis sublātō, cum ad arma militēs concurrissent vehementerque ibi pugnātum esset, repulsus in oppidum, tamen utī eādē dēditiōnis condiciōne ūterētur ā Crassō impetrāvit.

### 23. Armīs obsidibusque acceptīs Crassus in finēs Vocātium

2. **Adiatunnus**, -ī, *m.*, Adiatunnus (ā'dī-a-tūn'ūs), the leader of the Sotiates. 2.

3. **devoveō**, -vovēre, -vovī, -vōtūm, *tr.* [voveō, vow], vow away, consecrate, devote; **devōtū**, *pf. part. as noun*, a sworn follower. 2.

**soldurius**, -rī, *m.*, vassal. 1.

4. **commodum**, -ī, *n.* [commodus, convenient], convenience, interest, advantage. 2.

**fruo**, **frui**, **fractus sum**, *intr.*, en-

joy. 1.

7. **adhūc**, *adv.* [hūc, hither], hitherto, as yet. 1.

8. **recūsō**, 1, *tr. and intr.*, refuse, reject; object to, make objections, complain; with **periculum**, shrink from. \*

10. **vehementer**, *adv.* [vehemēns, violent], violently, severely, strongly, very much, greatly. 4.

1. **Vocātēs**, -um, *m.* (Ded), the Vocates (vō-kā'tēz). 2.

3. **quōrum . . . condiciō**, ut fruatur, "whose position is this, that they enjoy."

4. **ut . . . fruuntur . . . ferant . . . cōnsciscant**: substantive clauses of fact (result).

**commodis**: what deponent verbs govern the ablative?

**unā**: the adverb.

5. **quōrum . . . dēdiderint**: a determining clause, App. 231. Mode? App. 274: G.-L. 663, 1: A. 593: B. 324, 1: H.-B. 539: H. 652.

**sī . . . accidat**: the mode is due to the same reason as that of *dēdiderint*. Otherwise such a condition would be expressed by the indicative; App. 253: G.-L. 595: A. 515; 518, b: B. 302, 1, 3: H.-B. 579: H. 574, 1.

7. **memoriā**: ablative of time within which.

**quisquam**: why is this the proper indefinite? App. 177: G.-L. 317, 1: A. 311: B. 252, 4: H.-B. 276, 7: H. 513.

8. **devōvisset**: cf. note on *quōrum . . . dēdiderint*, l. 5.

**recūsāret**: subjunctive in a clause of characteristic.

**cum hīs**: this simply repeats *cum de devōtīs*, l. 3, after the long parenthesis.

11. **tamen**, "nevertheless"; i.e. in spite of his attempt to escape after surrender. The offense was the same as that of the Atuatuci, II, 33, and might have been punished as severely.

12. **eādē**: i.e. the same as those who had not attempted to escape.

Chap. 23. The Aquitani assemble a large force. Crassus decides to give battle.

1. in finēs, etc.: see map facing p. 217.

et Tarusātium profectus est. Tum vērō barbari commōti, quod oppidum et nātūrā loci et manū munitum paucis diēbus quibus eō ventum erat expugnātum cognōverant, lēgātōs quō-  
 5 queversus dimittere, coniūrāre, obsidēs inter sē dare, cōpiās parāre coepērunt. Mittuntur etiam ad eās civitatēs lēgātī quae sunt citeriōris Hispāniae finitimae Aquitāniae; inde auxilia ducēsque arcessuntur. Quōrum adventū magnā cum auctōritāte et magnā cum hominum multitudīne bellum gerere  
 10 cōnantur. Ducēs vērō iī dēliguntur quī ūnā cum Q. Sertoriō omnēs annōs fuerant summamque scientiam rei militāris habēre existimābantur. Hī cōsuētūdine populī Rōmānī loca capere, castra mūnīre, commeātibus nostrōs interclūdere instituunt. Quod ubi Crassus animadvertit suās cōpiās propter  
 15 exiguītatem nōn facile didūcī, hostem et vagārī et viās obsidēre et castrīs satis praesidī relinquere, ob eam causam minus commodē frūmentum commeātumque sibi supportārī, in diēs hostium numerum augērī, nōn cūctandum existimāvit quīn

2. **Tarusātēs, -ium, m.** (DEc), the Tarusates (tār''ū-sā'tēz). 2.

4. **quōqueversus, adv.**, in every direction, all around. 1.

10. **Sertōrius, -ri, m.**, Quintus Sertorius (kwīn'tūs sēr-tō'ri-ūs) a partisan of Marius; after the death of the latter, he continued the war in Spain against the senatorial party, until murdered in 72

3. **oppidum:** subject of *expugnātum* (*esse*).

**paucis . . . erat**, lit. "within the few days within which it had been come there." = "within a few days after his arrival."

7. **citeriōris Hispāniae:** Spain between the Pyrenees and the Ebro.

**finitimae** agrees with *quae* and governs *Aquitāniae*.

8. **auctōritāte**, "assurance."

10. **ducēs**, "as commanders."

**Sertōriō:** as Sertorius was a Roman general of great ability and had organized his Spanish army after the Roman fashion, those who had served under

B.C. 1.

15. **didūcō, -ducere, -dūxī, -ductum, tr.** [dūcō, lead], lead or draw apart; separate, divide. 1.

**obsideō, -sidēre, -sēdī, -sessum, tr.** [sedeō, sit], sit in the way of, obstruct, besiege, blockade. 2.

18. **cūctor, 1, intr.**, delay, hesitate, be reluctant. 2.

him understood Roman tactics. But the result shows that it took more than Roman tactics to make a Roman general or army.

12. **cōsuētūdine:** ablative of accordance.

**loca capere**, "to choose suitable positions."

14. **quod**, "therefore"; conjunction, not pronoun.

15. **nōn facile didūcī**, "could not easily be divided." This and the following infinitives, through *augērī*, depend on *animadvertit*.

18. **nōn . . . dēcertāret**, "he thought he must not delay to fight a de

pugnā decertāret. Hāc rē ad cōsiliū dēlātā, ubi omnēs idem sentire intellēxit, posterum diem pugnae cōstituit.

24. Primā lūce prōductis omnibus cōpiis, duplici aciē institūtā, auxiliis in mediam aciem coniectis, quid hostēs cōsili caperent expectābat. Illi, etsi propter multitudinem et veterem bellī glōriam paucitatemque nostrōrum sē tūtō dimicātūrōs existimābant, tamen tūtius esse arbitrābantur obsessis viis commeātū interclūsō sine ullō vulnere victoriā potiri et, si propter inopiam rei frumentariae Rōmāni sēsē recipere coepissent, impeditōs in agmine et sub sarcinis adoriri cōgitābant. Hōc cōsiliō probātō ab ducibus, prōductis Rōmānōrum cōpiis sēsē castris tenēbant. Hāc rē perspectā Crassus, cum suā cūctātiōne atque opiniōne timōris hostēs nostrōs militēs alacriōres ad pugnandum effēcissent, atque omnium vōcēs audirentur expectārī diūtius nōn oportere quā ad castra irētur, cohortātus suōs omnibus cupientibus ad hostium castra contendit.

25. Ibi cum aliī fossās complērent, aliī multis telis con-

3. *etsi*, conj. [et + *si*, if], even if, although. \*

8. *cōgitō*, 1. tr. and intr. [co + *agitō*,

consider], consider thoroughly or carefully, ponder, reflect; think, purpose, plan. 3.

cisive battle."

On the *quā* clause, see App. 228, c: G.-L. 555: A. 558: B. 298: H.-B. 502, 3, b: H. 595, 1.

19. *cōsiliū*, "a council of war."

20. *pugnae*: dative.

Chap. 24. Since the enemy refuses to meet him, Crassus attacks their camp.

1. *duplici aciē*: The Roman force was smaller than that of the enemy, and this arrangement made a longer front than the usual triple line.

2. *auxiliis . . . coniectis*: the longer line of the enemy might be expected to turn both Roman flanks; therefore it was important that the wings consist of reliable Roman legions. Caesar never trusted the auxiliaries anywhere in the line.

4. *sē . . . dimicātūrōs*, "that it would be safe to fight."

5. *tūtius esse*, "that it was still safer."

*obsessis . . . interclūsō*, "by blocking . . . and cutting off."

7. *coepissent*: indirect discourse for the future perfect indicative.

8. *imeditōs*: both by their heavy baggage (*impedimenta*) and by the difficulty of fighting in marching order.

10. *suā* refers to the subject, *hostēs*.

11. *opiniōne*, lit. "impression" which they gave, = "appearance."

13. *expectārī . . . oportere*, "that they ought not to delay longer."

*quā . . . irētur*: cf. 23, 18, note.

14. *omnibus cupientibus*, "to the delight of all."

Chap. 25. The camp is vigorously defended, but Crassus learns that the rear is weak.

1. *coniectis*, "by throwing."

iectis dēfēnsōrēs vāllō mūnitiōnibusque dēpellerent, auxiliārēs-  
que, quibus ad pugnam nōn multum Crassus cōfidēbat,  
lapidibus tēlisque subministrandis et ad aggerem caespitibus  
comportandis speciem atque opiniōnem pugnantium praeberent,  
cum item ab hostibus cōstanter ac nōn timidē pugnārētur  
tēlaque ex locō superiōre missa nōn frūstrā acciderent, equitēs  
circumitis hostium castris Crassō renūtiāvērunt nōn eādem  
esse diligentiā ab decumānā portā castra mūnita facilemque  
10 aditum habere.

26. Crassus equitum praefectōs cohortātus ut magnis  
praemiis pollicitatiōnibusque suōs excitārent, quid fieri vellet  
ostendit. Illi, ut erat imperātum, ēductis iis cohortibus quae  
praesidiō castris relictæ intritæ ab labōre erant et longiōre  
1 itinere circumductis, nē ex hostium castris cōspici possent,  
omnium oculis mentibusque ad pugnam intentis, celeriter ad  
eās quās diximus mūnitiōnēs pervēnērunt atque his prōrutis

2. dēpellō, -pellere, -pulli, -pulsum, *tr.* [pellō, drive], drive from or away, ward off. 1.

auxiliāris, -e, *adj.* [auxilium, aid], auxiliary; *m. pl. as noun*, auxiliary troops. 1.

4. subministrō, 1, *tr.* [ministrō, wait upon], furnish, supply, give. 3.

caespēs, -itis, *m.*, a sod, turf. 1.

6. timidē, *adv.* [timidus, fearful], fearfully, cowardly, timidly. 1.

8. circumeō, -ire, -ii, -itum, *tr.* [eō, go. App. 84], go or march around, traverse, visit. 1.

4. intritus, -a, -um, *adj.* [in-+tritus, worn], unwearied. 1.

5. circumducō, -ducere, -dūxi, -ductum, *tr.* [ducō, lead], lead or draw around. 2.

7. prōruō, -ruere, -rui, -rutum, *tr.* [ruō, fall], overthrow. 1.

3. quibus: the dative, since with cōfidō the dative (App. 115) is regularly used of persons, the ablative (App. 143, a) of things.

4. subministrandis: to the legionary soldiers.

ad aggerem, "for an agger." The Romans were compelled to build a sloping embankment in order to surmount the high wall of the Gallic camp.

7. ex locō superiōre: the top of the rampart.

8. circumitis castris, "having ridden around the camp."

9. ab, "at."

Chap. 26. The Romans capture the camp and cut down the fleeing enemy.

1. cohortātus ut excitārent, "urging . . . to stimulate."

4. intritæ ab labōre, "not worn out by fighting." ab labōre is strictly an ablative of separation, as if Caesar had said "free from"; hence the preposition.

longiōre, "roundabout."

7. diximus: in 25, 9.

prius in hostium castris cōstitērunt quam plānē ab hīs vidēri aut quid rei gererētur cognōscī posset. Tum vērō clāmōre ab eā parte auditō nostrī redintegrātis viribus, quod plērumque in spē victōriæ accidere cōsuevit, ācius impugnāre coepērunt. Hostēs undique circumventī dēspērātis omnibus rēbus sē per mūnitiōnēs dēicere et fugā salūtem petere contendērunt. Quōs equitātus apertissimis campis cōsectātus ex milium L numerō, quæ ex Aquitāniā Cantabrisque convēnisse cōstābat, vix quārtā parte relictā multā nocte sē in castra recēpit.

27. Hāc auditā pugnā maxima pars Aquitāniæ sēsē Crassō dēdidit obsidēsque ultrō mīsīt, quō in numerō fuērunt Tarbellī, Bigerriōnēs, Ptianī, Vocātēs, Tarusātēs, Elusātēs, Gatēs, Auscī, Garumnī, Sibusātēs, Cocosātēs; paucae ultimæ nātiōnēs annī tempore cōnfisæ, quod hiems suberat, id facere neglēxērunt.

8. **plānē**, *adv.* [plānus, even, plain], plainly, clearly, distinctly. 1.

11. **impugnō**, 1. *tr.* [in + pugnō, fight], fight against, attack, assail. 2.

14. **campus**, -i, *m.*, plain, open space or country. 1.

15. **Cantabril**, -ōrum, *m.* (Eab), the Cantabri (kăn'ta-brī). 1.

2. **ultrō**, *adv.*, to or on the farther side, beyond; of one's own accord, voluntarily, spontaneously, without provocation; besides, moreover; **ultrō citrōque**, back and forth. \*

**Tarbelli**, -ōrum, *m.* (Ec), the Tarbelli (tār-bél'i). 1.

3. **Bigerriōnēs**, -um, *m.* (Ecd), the

Bigerriōnēs (bī-jēr'i-ō'nēz or bī'jē-rī-ō'nēz). 1.

**Ptianī**, -ōrum, *m.* (Ec), the Ptianī (ti-ā'nī-i). 1.

**Elusātēs**, -um, *m.* (Ed), the Elusates (ēl'ū-sā'tēz). 1.

**Gatēs**, -um, *m.* (DEd), the Gates (gā'tēz). 1.

4. **Auscī**, -ōrum, *m.* (Ed), the Ausci (aw'sī). 1.

**Garumnī**, -ōrum, *m.* (Ed), the Garumni (gā-rūm'nī). 1.

**Sibusātēs**, -um, *m.* (Ec), the Sibusates (sīb'ū-sā'tēz). 1.

**Cocosātēs**, -um, *m.* (Dc), the Cocosates (kōk'ō-sā'tēz). 1.

8. **prius . . . quam**: see App. 236, c. **vidēri**: supply *posse* from *posset*.

9. **quid rei gererētur**, "what was going on"; subject of *posset*.

10. **nostrī**: i.e. those who were attacking in front.

**quod**, "a thing which." The antecedent is *redintegrātis viribus*.

12. **per**, "over."

14. **campis**: ablative of the way, not of place; therefore without a preposition.

**ex . . . numerō** depends on *quārtā parte*.

15. **quæ (milia) convēnisse** is the subject of the impersonal *cōstābat*, "who were known to have gathered."

16. **multā nocte**, "late at night."

Chap. 27. Nearly the whole of Aquitania submits.

4. **paucae ultimæ nātiōnēs**, "only a few tribes, the most remote"; probably those living among the Pyrenees.

5. **tempore**: cf. note on *quibus*, 25, 3.

- 28.** Eòdem ferē tempore Caesar, etsi prope exācta iam aestās erat, tamen, quod omni Galliā pācātā Morini Menapiique supererant qui in armis essent neque ad eum umquam lēgātōs dē pāce mīssissent, arbitrātus id bellum celeriter cōficī posse, eō exercitum dūxit; qui longē aliā ratiōne ac reliqui Galli bellum gerere coepērunt. Nam quod intellegēbant maximās nātiōnēs quae proeliō contendissent pulsās superātāsque esse, continentēsque silvās ac palūdēs habēbant, eō sē suaque omnia contulērunt. Ad quārum initium silvārum cum Caesar
- 10** pervēisset castraque mūnīre instituisset, neque hostis interim vīsus esset, dispersis in opere nostris, subitō ex omnibus partibus silvae ēvolāvērunt et in nostrōs impetum fēcērunt. Nostri celeriter arma cēpērunt eōsque in silvās reppulērunt et complūribus interfectis longius impeditiōribus locis secūti paucōs
- 15** ex suis dēperdidērunt.

**ultimus, -a, -um, adj., sup.** [ultrā, beyond. App. 43], farthest, most distant or remote; as *noun*, those in the rear. 2.

**1. exigō, -igere, -ēgi, -āctum, tr.** [agō, drive], finish, pass. 1.

**3. umquam, adv.,** at any time, ever; **neque . . . umquam,** and never, never. 2.

**8. continēns, -entis, adj.** [*pres. part.* of *contineō*, hold together], holding

together; continuous, unbroken; neighboring; as *noun*, mainland, continent. \*

**11. dispergō, -spargere, -spersi, -spersum, tr.** [spargō, scatter], scatter, disperse. 3.

**12. ēvolō, 1, intr.** [volō, fly], fly or rush forth. 1.

**15. dēperdō, -perdere, -perdidī, -perditum, tr.** [perdō, destroy], destroy utterly; forfeit, lose. 2.

Chap. 28-29. Caesar makes an unsuccessful attempt to subdue the Morini and the Menapii.

Chap. 28. The Morini take refuge in forests and swamps.

**1. exācta, "past";** the participle used as an adjective.

**2. omni Galliā** Gaul in general, including Aquitania and Belgium, though the same words in II, 1, 6, refer only to Celtic Gaul.

**3. qui essent, mīssissent:** a clause of characteristic.

**5. eō, "against them."**

**exercitum:** on his march from the

Veneti he doubtless picked up Sabinus and his legions. See map facing p. 217.

**qui, "but they."**

**ac, "than" or "from";** cf. *aliā atque*, 9, 2).

**7. contendissent:** the mode is due only to indirect discourse.

**9. initium, "edge."**

**11. dispersis nostris:** just as they had been surprised at the Sabis, II, 19 and 20.

**13. complūribus:** of the enemy.

**14. longius, "too far."**

**impeditiōribus, "very difficult."**

**29.** Reliquis deinceps diebus Caesar silvas caedere instituit et, ne quis inermibus imprudentibusque militibus ab latere impetus fieri posset, omnem eam materiam quae erat caesa conversam ad hostem collocabat et pro vallō ad utrumque latus extruebat. Incrēdibili celeritate magnō spatiō paucis diebus cōfectō, cum iam pecus atque extrēma impedimenta a nostris tenērentur, ipsi dēnsiōrēs silvas peterent, eius modi sunt tempestatēs cōsecutae uti opus necessariō intermitteretur et continuatiōne imbrium diūtius sub pellibus milites continēri nōn possent. Itaque vāstātis omnibus eōrum agris, vicis aedificiisque incēnsis Caesar exercitum redūxit et in Aulercis Lexoviisque, reliquis item civitatibus quae proximē bellum fecerant, in hibernis collocavit.

1. *deinceps*, *adv.*, one after the other, in turn, successively. 1.

*caedō*, *caedere*, *cecidi*, *caesum*, *tr.*, cut; kill, slay. 2.

2. *imprūdēns*, *-entis*, *adj.* [*in- + prūdēns*, *prudent*], imprudent, off one's guard, unwary. 1.

3. *māteria*, *-ae*, *f.*, material; wood,

timber. 4.

6. *pecus*, *-oris*, *n.*, cattle, a herd; usually small cattle, sheep; meat; flesh. 2.

9. *continuātiō*, *-ōnis*, *f.* [*continuu*, *continuous*], continuance, succession. 1.

*imber*, *-bris*, *m.*, a rainstorm, rain. 1.

Chap. 29. Caesar ravages the country and withdraws to winter quarters.

2. *ne quis impetus*, "that no attack."

*inermibus . . . militibus*: ablative absolute.

4. *conversam ad hostem*, "with their tops turned toward the enemy."

*pro vallō*, "to serve as a rampart."

Caesar cut a way through the forest, with this rampart on each side.

6. *cōfectō*, *lit.* "finished," = "cleared."

7. *ipsi*: the Morini themselves, in contrast with their animals and baggage.

9. *sub pellibus*: in winter the soldiers lived in huts.

## BOOK IV. WAR WITH THE GERMANS. FIRST INVASION OF BRITAIN

The campaign of 55 B.C. is memorable in history as the occasion when the Roman arms were first carried beyond the Rhine and across the Channel. The map facing page 217 shows how completely Gaul had come under Caesar's control, either by conquest or by peaceful submission. But Caesar knew that his task was not yet finished. If the Rhine was to be the Roman frontier (Int. 3), the Germans must be taught to respect that frontier. And the unknown Britain, lying so near Gaul, tempted him. It might be worth conquering. If not, at any rate both Gauls and Britons must be shown that Britain could afford neither to send aid to Gaul nor offer refuge to Gauls who wished to escape from Caesar. Only when Caesar had shown that neither the Rhine nor the Channel could stop a Roman army, might he expect Gaul to rest quietly under the Roman yoke.

Two German tribes, the Usipetes and the Tencteri, had been driven out of their homes, far in the interior of Germany, by the Suebi. After wandering homeless for three years, they crossed the Rhine into the Gallic possessions of the Menapii and there spent the early months of 55. Nothing shows more clearly the lack of unity among the states of Gaul than the indifference with which the neighbors of the Menapii regarded this incursion of their hereditary foes. Some states even tried to repeat the mistake of the Sequani (**I, 31**), and invited the Germans to settle in their territory and make common cause with them against Caesar or the rest of Gaul. But Caesar interfered at once by marching against the Germans. Using as a pretext a treacherous attack by a small body of German cavalry, he made himself guilty of the most treacherous and indefensible act in his whole career. He arrested all their leaders, who had come to apologize for the attack and then surprised and slew almost the whole German host, men, women, and children. If the deed has an excuse it lies in the absolute necessity of teaching the other Germans never to invade Gaul.

Caesar decided to reënforce this terrible lesson by making the Germans fear for their own territory. The Sugambri, who had given refuge to the remnants of the Usipetes and the Tencteri, refused to give them up at Caesar's command. Moreover the Ubii begged Caesar's aid against

the Suebi. In the marvellously brief space of ten days he constructed a great bridge across the Rhine, over which he led his entire army. At the first news of his approach the Sugambri and the Suebi had retired into the safe depths of their vast forests: Since it was no part of Caesar's purpose to subjugate these peoples, he contented himself with ravaging the nearer possessions of the Sugambri. Satisfied with this demonstration of Roman power, he recrossed the Rhine and destroyed his bridge, after a stay of only eighteen days on German soil.

Caesar had neither time nor ships enough to attempt a real invasion of Britain this summer, nor could he learn by inquiry anything about the country and the amount of force needed for accomplishing his purpose there. Therefore he determined to devote the remainder of the summer to a preliminary expedition which would at least show him what preparations he must make for the next year. Taking only two legions he sailed to Deal from the nearest point in Gaul. A landing was effected only after a sharp struggle with the Britons. A few nearby tribes surrendered, but Caesar waited for the arrival of his cavalry before penetrating the interior. Just as the cavalry transports were approaching the island, a storm not only drove them back to Gaul but shattered the main fleet, which lay in an exposed roadstead. Caesar beat off an attack of the natives, repaired his ships, and sailed back to Gaul.

Before leaving for Britain, Caesar had received the submission of a part of the Morini. During his absence the remainder of his army harried the Menapii and the rest of the Morini. On the return voyage two ships were driven out of their course, and the men carried by them were attacked by the Morini. A vigorous raid at last caused the final submission of the Morini; but the Menapii still remained unconquered in their forests and swamps.

## EXPLANATION OF CAMPAIGN MAP

For the meaning of the colors, see the explanation of the campaign map for **I, 1-29**, facing page 42.

The coloring in this map is the same as in the campaign map for Book **III**, facing page 217, except that the Morini and a part of the Menapii are colored red.

Every important geographical point in this year's campaigning is open to discussion. Holmes agrees with some other authorities in locating the battle with the Usipetes and the Tencteri near the junction of the Mosella and the Rhine, but his discussion is less fair than usual. His own arguments, carefully sifted, seem decisive for the location near the junction of the Mosa and the Rhine. If the battle is rightly located, there is no valid argument for locating the bridge elsewhere than at Bonn. Holmes seems to have proved that Wissant, not Boulogne, was the sailing point for Britain. The landing point in Britain must have been either near Deal or a considerable distance west of Deal, near Hythe; it is almost certain that it was near Deal. The map on page 294 gives in more detail the parts of Gaul and Britain which are involved in discussions as to the sailing and landing points.



Campaign Map for Book IV

WAND-CH.



## LIBER QUARTUS.

1. Eā quae secūta est hieme, quī fuit annus Cn. Pompēiō M. Crassō cōsulibus, Usipetēs Germānī et item Tēncterī magnā cum multitudine hominum flūmen Rhēnum trānsiērunt, nōn longē ā mari quō Rhēnus influit. Causa trānseundi fuit quod ab Suēbīs complūrēs annōs exagitātī bellō premēbantur et agricultūrā prohibēbantur. Suēbōrum gēns est longē maxima et bellicōsissima Germānōrum omnium. Hī centum pāgōs habēre dīcuntur, ex quibus quotannis singula mīlia armātōrum bellandī causā ex finibus ēdūcunt. Reliquī, quī domī mānsē-

1. Cn., abbr. for Gnaeus (nē'ūs), a Roman praenomen. 1.

Pompēius, -i, m. Gnaeus Pompeius (nē'ūs pōm-pē'yūs), better, Pompey, triumvir with Caesar and Crassus in 60 B.C., defeated by Caesar at Pharsalia, and murdered in Egypt by Ptolemy, 48 B.C. 1.

2. Usipetēs, -um, m., the Usipetes (ū-sip'ē-tēz). 4.

Tēncterī, -ōrum, m., the Tencteri (tēngk'tē-rī). 4.

5. Suēbus, -a, -um, adj. of or pertaining to the Suebi, Sueban; pl. as noun, Suēbi (Bhi), the Suebi (swē'bi), a powerful people of central Germany consisting of several independent tribes, the modern Swabians. \*

8. quotannis, adv. [quot, as many as+annus, year], every year, yearly. 2.

9. maneō, manēre, mānsī, māsum, intr., remain, continue, abide, stay. 2.

Chap. 1-4. Two German tribes cross the Rhine. Description of the German tribes who are concerned in the following narrative.

Chap. 1. Two German tribes, expelled by the Suebi, cross into Gaul. The warlike character and training of the Suebi.

1. quī agrees with *annus*, though its antecedent is *hieme*; cf. *quod*, I, 88, 3, note.

quī . . . cōsulibus, "in the year when, etc."

Cn. Pompēiō, etc.: Pompey and Crassus were Caesar's associates in the First Triumvirate; Int. 11. Their election as consuls for the year 55 had been planned

at a meeting with Caesar in the preceding spring. Caesar had been given his province for only five years, and he needed more time. These consuls secured another five years for him, and an important province for each of themselves.

4. nōn longē ā mari: probably near Emmerich, a few miles above the point at which the Rhine divides to flow around the island of the Batavi. See map.

quō: the adverb.

8. singula: i.e. a thousand from each canton.

10 runt, sē atque illōs alunt; hī rŭrsus in vicem annō post in  
armis sunt, illī domī remanent. Sic neque agricultūra nec  
ratiō atque ūsus bellī intermittitur. Sed privāti ac sēparāti  
agrī apud eōs nihil est, neque longius annō remanēre ūnō in  
locō colendī causā licet. Neque multum frūmentō sed maxi-  
15 mam partem lacte atque pecore vivunt multumque sunt in  
vĕnātiōnibus; quae rēs et cibī genere et cotidiānā exercitātiōne  
et libertāte vitāe, quod ā pueris nullō officiō aut disciplinā assue-  
factī nihil omnīnō contrā voluntātem faciunt, et virēs alit et  
immānī corporum magnitudīne hominēs efficit. Atque in eam sē  
20 cōnsuetūdinem addūxērunt, ut locis frigidissimis neque vestītūs

10. *vicis*, *gen.* (no *nom.*), change; only in the *adv. phrase* in *vicem*, alternately, in turn. 1.

11. *remaneo*, -*manere*, -*mānsi*, -*mānsū*, *intr.* [*re*+*maneo*, remain], stay or remain behind, remain. \*

12. *sēparō*, 1, *tr.* [*sē*+*parō*, prepare], prepare apart; separate; *sēparātus*, *pf. part. as adj.*, separate. 1.

14. *colō*, *colere*, *colui*, *cultum*, *tr.*, cultivate, dwell in; honor, worship. 1.

15. *lāc*, *lactis*, *n.*, milk. 1.

*vivō*, *vivere*, *vixi*, *victum*, *intr.*, live; subsist on. 2.

16. *vĕnātiō*, -*ōnis*, *f.* [*vĕnor*, hunt], hunting, the chase. 1.

*cibus*, -*i*, *m.*, food. 1.

17. *disciplina*, -*ae*, *f.* [*discō*, learn], learning; discipline; instruction, system. 2.

*assuefaciō*, -*facere*, -*fēci*, -*factum*, *tr.*, accustom, train. 2.

19. *immānis*, -*e*, *adj.*, huge, immense. 1.

20. *frigidus*, -*a*, -*um*, *adj.*, cold. 1.

*vestītus*, -*ūs*, *m.* [*vestiō*, clothe], clothing. 1.

10. *illōs*: i.e. those who are fighting. *annō post*, lit. "afterwards by a year," = "the following year."

12. *ratiō atque ūsus*, "the [theoretical] training and practice in."

*privāti . . . est*: i.e. all the land belonged to the state, none to individuals. This is generally true of barbarous peoples.

14. *frūmentō*, "on grain"; ablative of means with *vivunt*.

*maximam partem*: case? App. 128, b: G.-L. 334, R. 2: A. 397, a: B. 185, 1: H.-B. 388: H. 416, 2.

15. *multumque . . . vĕnātiōnibus*, "are devoted to hunting."

16. *quae res*, "a practice which"; subject of *alit* and *efficit*.

17. *quod . . . faciunt* explains *libertate*.

*ā pueris*, "from boyhood."

*nullō officiō assuefacti*, "trained by no service"; ablative of means.

19. *hominēs*: predicate accusative; "makes (them) men of, etc."

*in eam . . . addūxērunt*, lit. "have brought themselves into this custom," = "have trained themselves to such hardiness."

20. *locis frigidissimis*, "though their climate is extremely cold"; ablative absolute.

*vestītūs* depends on *quicquam*. On the choice of indefinites, see App. 177: G.-L. 317, 1: A. 311: B. 252, 4: H.-B. 276, 7: H. 513.

praeter pellēs habērent quicquam, quārum propter exiguitatem magna est corporis pars aperta, et lavārentur in flūminibus.

2. Mercatōribus est aditus magis eō, ut quae bellō cēperint quibus vëndant habeant, quam quō ūllam rem ad sē importārī dēsiderent. Quin etiam iūmentis, quibus maximē Gallī dēlectantur, quaeque impēnsō parant pretiō, Germānī importātis nōn ūtuntur; sed quae sunt apud eōs nāta, parva atque dēfōrmia, haec cotidiānā exercitātiōne summī ut sint labōris efficiunt. Equestribus proeliis saepe ex equis dēsiliunt ac pedibus proeliantur, equōsque eōdem remanēre vēstigiō assuēfēcērunt, ad quōs sē celeriter, cum ūsus est, recipiunt; neque eōrum mōribus turpius quicquam aut inertius habētur quam ephippiis 10

22. lavō, lavāre, lāvī, lautum, *tr.*, wash; *in pass.*, bathe. 1.

3. dēsiderō, 1. *tr.*, feel the lack of, miss, lose; desire, wish, wish for. 1.

dēlectō, 1. *tr.*, delight; *pass.*, delight in, take pleasure in. 1.

4. impēnsus, -a, -um, *adj.*, expensive; with pretium, great. 1.

5. dēfōrmis, -e, *adj.* [fōrma, form], misshapen, deformed, unsightly. 1.

7. dēsiliō, -sillire, -silui, -sultum,

*intr.* [salīō, leap], leap from or down, alight, dismount. \*

8. vēstigiū, -gi, *n.* [vēstigō, trace out], trace, track, footprint; spot, place; moment, instant. 2.

10. turpis, -e, *adj.*, ugly, unseemly; shameful, disgraceful, dishonorable. 2.

iners, -ertis, *adj.* [in-+ars, skill], without skill; unmanly, cowardly. 1.

ephippium, -pi, *n.*, horse-cloth, riding-pad, saddle. 1.

21. habērent, lavārentur: translate by presents. The use of the imperfect illustrates the fact that the Romans usually regarded the perfect indicative (here *adduxērunt*) as a secondary tense, even when it seems to us to refer to present time.

Chap. 3. Their freedom from luxury, and their cavalry tactics.

1. mercatōribus: dative of possessor.

eō, ut habeant, "on this account, that they may have."

cēperint: subjunctive in implied indirect discourse.

2. quibus vëndant: a purpose clause. Supply some word like "persons" as the antecedent of *quibus* and the object of *habeant*.

quam quō dēsiderent, "than because they desire." *Nōn quō* with the subjunctive is used to reject a reason. In

this sentence *magis quam* takes the place of *nōn*. The meaning is "not because they want anything, but because they wish to sell."

3. iūmentis importātis nōn ūtuntur: the important word is the participle *importātis*, as if he had said "they do not import the horses which they need."

4. quaeque = *et quae*.

6. haec: antecedent of *quae* (*iūmenta*). summī . . . efficiunt, lit. "make that they be (capable) of the greatest labor." See App. 104.

7. pedibus, "on foot."

9. eōrum mōribus, "according to their standards."

10. habētur, "is considered."

ephippiis: the ancient saddles were of little real use, since they had no stirrups.

ūti. Itaque ad quemvis numerum ephippiatōrum equitum quamvis pauci adire audent. Vinum omninō ad sē importārī nōn patiuntur, quod eā rē ad labōrem ferendum remollēscere hominēs atque effēminārī arbitrantur.

3. Publicē maximam putant esse laudem quam lātissimē ā suis finibus vacāre agrōs: hāc rē significārī magnum numerum civitātum suam vim sustinēre nōn posse. Itaque unā ex parte ā Suēbis circiter milia passuum sescenta agri vacāre dicuntur.
6. Ad alteram partem succēdunt Ubiī, quōrum fuit civitās ampla atque flōrēns, ut est captus Germānōrum; ii paulō, quamquam sunt eiusdem generis, sunt cēteris hūmāriōrēs, proptereā quod Rhēnum attingunt multumque ad eōs mercātōrēs ventitant et ipsi propter propinquitātem Gallicis sunt mōribus assuefacti. Hōs cum Suēbi multis saepe bellis experti propter amplitūdinem gravitātemque civitātis finibus expellere nōn

11. ephippiātus, -a, -um, *adj.* [ephippium, saddle], using a saddle. 1.

12. quamvis, *adv.* [quam, as+vis, you wish], as you wish, however, very. 1.

13. remollēscō, -mollēscere, —, —, *intr.*, become weak, become enervated. 1.

1. laus, laudis, *f.*, praise, commendation; renown, popularity, glory. 3.

5. Ubiī, -ōrum, *m.* (ABgh), the Ubiī (ū'bī-i). \*

6. flōrēns, -entis, *adj.* [flōreō, flower], flourishing, prosperous, in-

fluential. 2.

captus, -ūs, *m.* [capiō, take], comprehension, ideas. 1.

7. hūmānus, -a, -um, *adj.* [homō, man], natural to man, human; civilized, cultured, refined, cultivated. 1.

8. ventitō, 1, *intr.* [freq. of veniō, come], keep coming, resort; go back and forth, visit. 2.

11. amplitūdō, -inis, *f.* [amplus, large], wide extent, size; importance, consequence, dignity. 1.

gravitās, -tātis, *f.* [gravis, heavy], heaviness, weight; power. 1.

12. quamvis pauci, "however few (they may be)." Caesar does not exaggerate the strength of the German cavalry. In his seventh year in Gaul, when he had to face a revolt of the whole country, he hired a body of German cavalry. In three decisive battles they saved the day for him.

vinum: but we know from Tacitus that they drank great quantities of a kind of beer.

Chap. 3. Their treatment of the Ubiī.

1. publicē, "for the state."

2. vacāre agrōs: subject of *esse*.

3. unā ex parte: i.e. on the east of the Suebi.

4. sescenta: this must be a great exaggeration. Caesar had no personal knowledge of the interior of Germany.

5. ad alteram partem: i.e. the northwest. See map.

fuit, "was (once)"; i.e. before their feat by the Suebi.

6. paulō: with hūmāniōrēs.

10. cum, "although."

multis . . . experti, "in spite of many attempts in numerous wars."

potuissent, tamen vectigālēs sibi fēcērunt ac multō humiliōrēs infirmiorēsque redēgērunt.

4. In eādē causā fuērunt Usipetēs et Tēncterī, quōs suprā diximus, quī complūrēs annōs Suēbōrum vim sustinuērunt, ad extrēmum tamen agrīs expulsi et multis locis Germāniae triennium vagātī ad Rhēnum pervēnērunt; quās regiōnēs Menapiī incolēbant. Hī ad utramque ripam flūminis agrōs, aedificia, vicōsque habēbant; sed tantae multitudinis adventū perterriti ex iīs aedificiis quae trāns flūmen habuerant dēmigrāvērunt, et cis Rhēnum dispositis praesidiis Germānōs trānsire prohibēbant. Illi omnia experti, cum neque vī contendere propter inopiam nāvium neque clam trānsire propter custōdiās Menapiōrum possent, reverti sē in suās sēdēs regiōnēsque simulāvērunt, et tridui viam prōgressi rūsus revertērunt atque omni hōc itinere unā nocte equitātū cōfectō insciōs inopinantesque Menapiōs oppressērunt, quī dē Germānōrum discessū per explorātōrēs certiōrēs facti sine metū trāns Rhēnum in suōs

12. *humilis*, -e, *adj.* [humus, the ground], *on the ground*; low, humble, abject, weak. 1.

13. *infirmus*, -a, -um, *adj.* [in- + firmus, strong], not strong, weak, feeble. 2.

3. *Germānia*, -ae, *f.*, Germania (jēr-mā'ni-a), *better, Germany, the country east of the Rhine.* 1.

4. *triennium*, -ni, *n.* [trēs, three + annus, year], three years. 1.

7. *dēmigrō*, 1, *intr.* [migrō, move, migrate], move from or away, emigrate,

remove. 2.

11. *sēdēs*, -is, *f.* [sedeō, sit], seat, chair; residence, abode, settlement. 4. *simulō*, 1, *tr.* [similis, like], make like; pretend. 2.

13. *inscius*, -a, -um, *adj.* [sciō, know], not knowing, ignorant, not aware. 1.

15. *metus*, -ūs, *m.* [metuō, fear], fear, dread, anxiety, apprehension; *metū territāre*, terrify; *hōc metū = metū huius rei*, from fear of this. 2.

Chap. 4. The stratagem by which the Germans crossed the Rhine.

1. *in eādē causā*, "in the same condition"; i.e. of oppression by the Suebi. It is probable that the Usipetes and the Tencteri lived in or near the kingdom of Saxony, to the northeast of the Suebi.

2. *suprā*: in 1, 2.

6. *multitudinis*: 430,000 persons, according to a later chapter.

7. *trāns*: on the German side.

*habuerant*: before the arrival of the Germans.

9. *vī contendere*, "force a passage."

10. *inopiam nāvium*: the Menapii had, of course, taken all the boats with them.

13. *equitātū*: although cavalry are persons, they are thought of here as the means employed by the Germans.

vīcōs remigrāverant. His interfectis nāvibusque eōrum occu-  
pātis, priusquam ea pars Menapiōrum quae citrā Rhēnum erat  
certior fieret, flūmen trāsiērunt atque omnibus eōrum aedi-  
ficiis occupātis reliquam partem hiemis sē eōrum cōpiis  
20 aluērunt.

5. His dē rēbus Caesar certior factus et infirmitātem Gal-  
lōrum veritus, quod sunt in cōsiliis capiendis mōbiles et novis  
plērumque rēbus student, nihil his committendum existimāvit.  
Est enim hoc Gallicae cōsuētūdinis, uti et viātōrēs etiam in-  
vitōs cōsistere cōgant, et quid quisque eōrum dē quāque rē  
audierit aut cognōverit quaerant, et mercātōrēs in oppidis vul-  
gus circumsistat quibusque ex regiōnibus veniant quāsque ibi  
rēs cognōverint prōnūntiāre cōgat. His rēbus atque auditiō-  
nibus permōti dē summis saepe rēbus cōsilia ineunt, quōrum  
10 eōs in vēstigiō paenitēre necesse est, cum incertis rūmōribus  
serviant et plērique ad voluntātem eōrum ficta respondeant.

16. remigrō, 1, *intr.* [re-+migrō, move], move back, return. 2.

1. infirmītās, -tātis, *f.* [infirmus, not strong], weakness; fickleness, inconstancy. 2.

2. mōbilis, -e, *adj.* [moveō, move], changeable. 1.

4. viātōr, -ōris, *m.* [via, road], traveler. 1.

8. prōnūntiō, 1, *tr.* [nūntiō, announce], announce, give out publicly, tell, relate, report, say; give orders; with *sententia*, pronounce. 1.

auditiō, -ōnis, *f.* [audiō, hear], hearing, hearsay, report. 1.

19. eōrum cōpiis, "on their supplies"; those which the Menapii had stored up for their own use.

Chap. 5-6. Caesar, fearing that the Gauls and the Germans will unite against him, hastens his preparations for war.

Chap. 6. Caesar fears the fickleness of the Gauls.

3. nihil . . . committendum, "that no confidence should be placed in them."

4. cōsuētūdinis: see App. 103.

10. paenitet, paenitēre, paenituit, —, *tr., impers.*, it causes regret; makes one repent; *when translated as pers. verb.*, repent (App. 109). 1.

necesse, *indecl. adj.*, necessary, unavoidable, indispensable. 2.

incertus, -a, -um, *adj.* [in-+certus, decided], undecided, uncertain, untrustworthy; indefinite, vague; disordered. 2.

11. serviō, 4, *intr.* [servus, slave], be a slave to, be subservient to; pay attention to, devote one's self to, follow. 1.

fingō, fingere, finxi, factum, *tr.*, form, imagine, devise, invent. 2.

uti: with *cōgant, quaerant, circumsistat*, and *cōgat*.

7. quāsque = *et quā*s.

8. rēbus, "stories."

9. quōrum eōs paenitēre necesse est, *lit.* "of which it must repent them"; App. 109: G.-L. 377: A. 354, b: B. 209, 1: H.-B. 352, 1: H. 457.

11. plērique . . . respondeant, "give answers shaped to their wishes"; i.e. the wishes of the questioners.

6. Quā cōnsuētūdine cognitā Caesar, nē graviōrī bellō occurreret, mātūrius quam cōnsuērat ad exercitum proficiscitur. Eō cum vēnisset, ea quae fore suspicātus erat facta cognōvit: missās lēgatiōnēs ab nōn nullīs cīvitatibus ad Germānōs, invitātōsque eōs utī ab Rhēnō discēderent: omnia quae postulās-  
sent ab sē fore parāta. Quā spē adductī Germānī lātius iam vagābantur et in finēs Eburōnum et Condrūsōrum, quī sunt Trēverōrum clientēs, pervēnerant. Principibus Galliae ēvocā-  
tis Caesar ea quae cognōverat dissimulanda sibi exīstimāvit, eōrumque animīs permulsis et cōfirmātis equitātūque impe-  
rātō bellum cum Germānīs gerere cōstituit.

7. Rē frūmentāriā comparātā equitibusque dēlectīs iter in ea loca facere coepit quibus in locīs esse Germānōs audiēbat.

2. mātūrē, *adv.* [mātūrus, ripe], early, speedily, soon. 3

3. suspicor, 1, *tr.* [suspiciō, suspect], suspect, distrust; surmise. \*

4. invitō, 1, *tr.*, invite, summon; allure, persuade. 2.

9. dissimulō, 1, *tr.* [simulō, make like], disguise, conceal. 1.

10. permulceō, -mulcōre, -mulsi, -mulsum, *tr.* [mulceō, soothe], soothe completely, appease. 1.

Chap. 6. Caesar joins his army and learns that some Gallic states are welcoming the Germans.

2. *ad exercitum*: where? was it? See III, 29, 11, and the map facing p. 254. Caesar himself, as usual, had spent the winter in Cisalpine Gaul.

3. *ea facta (esse)*, "that those things had happened"; explained by the following clauses.

5. *ab Rhēnō discēderent*: i.e. to advance further into Gaul. The purpose of the Gauls was to get help against Caesar.

*postulāsset*: for the future perfect indicative of the direct form.

6. *fore parāta*, lit. "would be in a prepared condition." This is one of the ways of avoiding the rare future infinitive given in the grammars, *parātum iri*. The infinitive depends on a verb of saying implied in *invitātōs*.

*lātius vagābantur*, etc.: this only means that small bodies were sent out in various directions to see where they could best settle, and that some of them

had got as far as the Condrusi (see the map facing p. 254). The main body remained among the Menapii, between the Mosa and the Rhine.

7. *quī* refers only to *Condrūsōrum*.

10. *permulsis et cōfirmātis*: Caesar pretended to believe that they were loyal to him and afraid of the Germans.

*equitātū*: it appears later that he secured 5,000.

11. *cōstituit*, "announced his decision." He had decided the matter long before.

Chap. 7-10. Being met by envoys, Caesar proposes that the Germans settle among the Ubii; he then marches on into a locality whose geographical features he describes.

Chap. 7. Caesar is met on his march by German envoys, who demand land.

1. *dēlectis*, "having levied."

*iter coepit*: for his route see the map facing p. 254. The envoys must have met him near the point where the route crosses the Mosa.

À quibus cum paucōrum diērum iter abesset, lēgātī ab iis vērunt, quōrum haec fuit ōrātiō: Germānōs neque priōrēs  
 5 populō Rōmānō bellum inferre neque tamen recūsāre, si laces-  
 santur, quā armīs contendant, quod Germānōrum cōnsuetūdō  
 sit ā maiōribus trādita, quicumque bellum inferant, resistere  
 neque dēprecārī. Haec tamen dicere: vēnisse invītōs, ēiectōs  
 domō; si suam grātiā Rōmānī velint, posse iis ūtilēs esse  
 10 amicōs; vel sibi agrōs attribuant vel patiantur eōs tenēre quōs  
 armīs possēderint; sēsē ūnīs Suēbīs concēdere, quibus nē dii  
 quidem immortālēs parēs esse possint; reliquum quidem in  
 terris esse nēminem quem nōn superāre possint.

8. Ad haec quae vīsum est Caesar respondit; sed exitus  
 fuit ōrātiōnis: Sibi nūllam cum iis amicitiam esse posse, si in  
 Galliā remanērent; neque vērū esse, quī suōs finēs tuērī nōn  
 potuerint, aliēnōs occupāre, neque ūllōs in Galliā vacāre agrōs  
 5 quī darī tantae praesertim multitūdīnī sine iniuriā possint; sed  
 licēre, si velint, in Ubiōrum finibus cōsidere, quōrum sint  
 lēgātī apud sē et dē Suēbōrum iniuriis querantur et ā sē auxi-  
 lium petant; hoc sē Ubiīs imperātūrum.

8. ēiciō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectum, *tr.*  
 [iacciō, throw. App. 7], cast or drive  
 out, expel; cast up; sē ēicere, rush out,  
 sally. 2.

9. ūtilis, -e, *adj.* [ūtor, use], useful,

3. ā quibus: the Germans.

4. haec, "as follows." The haughty  
 tone of the speech recalls the speeches  
 of Divico, I, 13, and of Ariovistus, I, 36.  
 priōrēs, "first"; i.e. they were not  
 the aggressors.

5. recūsāre quā, "refuse to"; App.  
 228, c: G.-L. 555: A. 558: B. 295, 3: H.-B.  
 502, 3, d: H. 595, 2.

7. quicumque = omnibus (dative  
 with resistere) quī.

8. haec tamen dicere, "this, how-  
 ever, they would say."

10. attribuant: the subjunctive rep-  
 represents an imperative of the direct  
 form.

11. tūis, "alone."

serviceable. 1.

11. possidē, -sidere, -sēdī, -ses-  
 sum, *tr.*, take possession of, seize. 1.

3. tueor, tuērī, tātus sum, *tr.*,  
 watch, guard, protect. 1.

12. reliquum nēminem, "no one  
 else."

13. quem possint: a clause of char-  
 acteristic.

Chap. 8. Caesar refuses Gallic  
 land, but offers to let them settle  
 among the Ubi.

1. quae vīsum est, "what seemed  
 best." quae is the object of respondēre,  
 to be supplied from respondit.

exitus, "the conclusion."

3. vērū, "right," "just."

quī: supply eōs as the antecedent.

7. Suēbōrum iniuriis, "the wrongs  
 done them by the Suebi."

8. hoc: i.e. that they allow the Ubi-  
 etes and the Tencteri to settle among

9. Lēgātī haec sē ad suōs relātūrōs dixērunt et rē dēlibē-rātā post diem tertium ad Caesarem reversūrōs; intereā nē propius sē castra movēret petiērunt. Nē id quidem Caesar ab sē impetrārī posse dīxit. Cognōverat enim magnam partem equitātūs ab iīs aliquot diēbus ante praedandī frūmentandique causā ad Ambivaritōs trāns Mosam missam; hōs expectārī equitēs atque eius rei causā moram interpōnī arbitrābātur.

10. Mosa prōfluit ex monte Vosegō, quī est in finibus Lingonum, et parte quādam ex Rhēnō receptā, quae appellātur Vacalus, insulam efficit Batāvōrum neque longius inde milibus passuum LXXX in Ōceanum influit. Rhēnus autem oritur ex

3. *propius*, *adv. and prep. with acc.* (App. 122, b) [*comp. of prope*, near], nearer. \*

5. *frumentor*, 1, *intr.* [frumentum, grain], get grain, forage. 4.

6. *Ambivaritī*, -ōrum, *m.* (Af), the Ambivaritī (ām'bi-vār't-tī). 1.

*Mosa*, -ae, *m.* (ABf), the river Mosa (mō'sa), now the Meuse or Maas. \*

7. *interpōnō*, -pōnere, -posui, -positum, *tr.* [pōnō, place], place be-

tween, interpose; allege; cause; *fidem interpōnere*, pledge. 4.

1. *prōfluō*, -fluere, -fluxi, —, *intr.* [fluō, flow], flow forth, rise. 1.

*Vosegus*, -i, *m.* (BCg), the Vosegus (vō'sē-gūs), better, the Vosges Mountains. 1.

3. *Vacalus*, -i, *m.* (Af), the Vacalus (vāk'a-lūs) river, now the Waal. 1.

*Batāvi*, -ōrum, *m.* (Af), the Batavi (bā-tā'vi). 1.

them. The arrangement would have been advantageous to both parties; for, as the Ubii were nearly a match for the Suebi, the combined Ubii, Uspetes, and Tencteri should have more than held their own.

Chap. 9. The envoys ask for time to consider, but Caesar marches on.

2. *post diem tertium*, "on the third day"; i.e. the next day but one, since the present day was counted in.

3. *propius sē*: App. 122, b: G.-L. 359, n. 1: A. 432, a: B. 141, 3: H.-B. 380, b: H. 420, 5.

5. *diēbus*: ablative of degree of difference.

6. *trāns*: to the west.

*expectārī equitēs*: The German cavalry was far superior to Caesar's, and he could afford to take no risk. However, it is quite possible that the envoys were honest in asking time to

consider, for they can have had no power to bind their people to accept Caesar's proposition.

Chap. 10. Description of the Rhine, the Mosa, and their confluence.

1. *ex monte Vosegō*: more correctly from the plateau lying between the Vosges and the Cevennes.

2. *parte quādam*, etc.: the Rhine divides at the eastern end of the island of the Batavi. The southern stream, called Vacalus, flows west till it joins the Mosa. The combined Mosa and Vacalus flow on into the sea, making the southern boundary of the island. The confluence of the Mosa and the Vacalus was probably eighty miles from the sea, as Caesar says; but it is now nearer the sea, owing to a change in the river beds.

3. *inde*: from the confluence.

5 Lepontiis, quī Alpēs incolunt, et longō spatiō per finēs Nantuātium, Helvētiōrum, Sēquanōrum, Mediomatricum, Tribocōrum, Trēverōrum, citātus fertur; et, ubi Ōceanō appropinquāvit, in plūrēs diffuit partēs multis ingentibusque insulis effectis, quārum pars magna ā feris barbarisque nātiōibus  
10 incolitur, ex quibus sunt quī piscibus atque ōvis avium vivere existimantur, multisque capitibus in Ōceanum influit.

¶ 11. Caesar cum ab hoste nōn amplius passuum XII milibus abesset, ut erat cōstitutum, ad eum lēgātī revertuntur; quī in itinere congressī magnopere nē longius prōgrederētur ōrābant. Cum id nōn impetrāssent, petēbant utī ad eōs equitēs  
5 quī agmen antecessissent praemitteret eōsque pugnā prohibēret, sibi ut potestātem faceret in Ubiōs lēgātōs mittendī; quōrum sī principēs ac senātus sibi iūre iūrاندō fidem fēcisset, eā condiciōne quae ā Caesare ferrētur sē ūsūrōs ostendēbant; ad hās rēs cōficiendās sibi trīduī spatium daret. Haec omnia

5. Lepontii, -ōrum, *m.* (Ch), the Lepontii (lē-pōn'shyi). 1.

6. Mediomatrici, -ōrum, *m.* (Btg), the Mediomatrici (mē'di-ō-māt'ri-si). 1.  
Triboci, -ōrum, *m.* (Bgh), the Triboci (trib'ō-si). 2.

7. citātus, -a, -um, *adj.* [*pf. part. of* citō, put in motion], swift. 1.

8. diffuō, -fluere, -fūxi, —, *intr.* [fluō, flow], flow in different directions, divide. 1.

ingēns, -entis, *adj.*, enormous, huge, vast, large. 2.

10. piscis, -is, *m.*, fish. 1.

ōvum, -ī, *n.*, egg. 1.

avis, -is, *f.*, bird. 1.

5. longō spatiō, "in a long course."

Nantuātium: either there is some mistake, or we know nothing of this tribe of Nantuates.

8. insulis effectis, "making islands."

10. sunt qui, "there are some who," is usually followed by the subjunctive of characteristic.

Chap. 11-15. Caesar slaughters the German host in revenge for a treacherous attack.

Chap. 11. Envoys beg for time to consult the Ubi. Caesar grants a short truce.

2. ut erat cōstitutum: translate after *ad* . . . *revertuntur*. See 9, 2.

5. antecessissent: implied indirect

discourse.

6. quōrum si, "and if their."

7. fēcisset: for the future perfect of the direct form.

8. eā condiciōne sē ūsūrōs, "that they would accept the terms"; i.e. the offer to let them settle among the Ubi.

9. trīduī spatium: this seems a short time for the purpose, since the Ubi were some seventy miles away; but there are well authenticated instances of longer rides in less time. The envoys of the Ubi, who were with Caesar, could tell them where to find the authorities, so that no time would be lost in looking them up.

daret: for the imperative of the direct form.

Caesar eodem illō pertinēre arbitrābātur, ut tridui morā inter- 10  
positā equitēs eōrum quī abessent reverterentur; tamen sēsē  
nōn longius milibus passuum quattuor aquātiōnis causā prō-  
cessūrum eō diē dixit; hūc posterō diē quam frequentissimī  
convenirent, ut dē eōrum postulātis cognōsceret. Interim ad  
praefectōs, quī cum omni equitātū antecesserant, mittit quī 15  
nūntiārent nē hostēs proeliō lacesserent et, si ipsī lacesserentur,  
sustinērent quoad ipse cum exercitū propriis accessisset.

12. At hostēs ubi primum nostrōs equitēs cōspexērunt,  
quōrum erat quinque milium numerus, cum ipsī nōn amplius  
octingentōs equitēs habērent, quod iī quī frumentandī causā  
ierant trāns Mosam nōndum redierant, nihil timentibus nostrīs,  
quod lēgātī eōrum paulō ante ā Caesare discesserant atque is 5  
diēs indūtiis erat ab hīs petitus, impetū factō celeriter nostrōs  
perturbāvērunt; rūsus hīs resistentibus cōnsuētūdine suā ad  
pedēs dēsiluērunt, suffossis equīs complūribusque nostrīs dē-

10. illō, *adv.* [old *dat.* of ille],  
thither, to that place, there (= thither).  
1.

12. aquātiō, -ōnis, *f.* [aqua, water],  
getting water. 1.

13. frequēns, -entis, *adj.*, in great  
numbers, in crowds. 2.

14. postulātum, -ī, *n.* [postulō, de-  
mand], demand, claim, request. 4.

17. quoad, *adv.* [quō, whither+ad,  
to], to where; as long as, as far as; till,  
until. 2.

3. octingenti, -ae, -a, *card. num.*  
*adj.* [octō, eight], eight hundred. 1.

6. indūtia, -arum, *f.*, truce. 2.

8. suffodiō, -fodere, -fodi, -fossam,  
*tr.* [sub+fodiō, dig], dig under; stab  
underneath. 1.

10. eodem illō pertinēre, "tended  
to that same object." See 9, 6, and  
note. It is quite likely that Caesar was  
mistaken. At any rate their request  
for time to consult the Ubii was  
perfectly natural, for they could not  
know whether the Ubii would respect  
Caesar's command (8, 8).

13. hūc: i.e. to the camping ground.

14. convenirent: see *daret.*, l. 9. note.

15. quī nūntiārent, "men to give  
orders."

17. sustinērent: i.e. they were  
simply to defend themselves.

accessisset: implied indirect dis-  
course for the future perfect.

Chap. 12. The German cavalry  
treacherously attack and rout Cae-

sar's cavalry.

1. ubi primum, "as soon as."

3. equitēs: why not the ablative after  
the comparative *amplius*? App. 139, b.  
For this attack of 800 cavalry on 5,000,  
compare 2, 11.

quī ierant: cf. 9, 5.

6. impetū factō: this attack cannot  
have been authorized by the German  
leaders. They certainly wanted a truce,  
whatever their motives may have been,  
and the defeat of Caesar's cavalry was  
not important enough to tempt them to  
break it. Either the German cavalry  
had failed to receive orders, or it could  
not resist the delight of attacking a  
despised foe.

7. cōnsuētūdine: cf. 2, 7.

iectis reliquos in fugam coniēcērunt atque ita perterritos  
 10 ēgērunt ut nōn prius fugā dēsisterent quam in cōspectum  
 agminis nostrī vēnissent. In eō proeliō ex equitibus nostris  
 interficiuntur quattuor et septuāgintā, in hīs vir fortissimus,  
 Pisō Aquitānus, amplissimō genere nātus, cuius avus in civitate  
 suā rēgnū obtinuerat amicus ā senātū nostrō appellātus.  
 15 Hic cum frātrī interclūsō ab hostibus auxilium ferret, illum  
 ex periculō ēripuit, ipse equō vulnerātō dēiectus quoad potuit  
 fortissimē restitit; cum circumventus multis vulneribus accep-  
 tis cecidisset, atque id frāter, quī iam proeliō excesserat,  
 procul animadvertisset, incitātō equō sē hostibus obtulit atque  
 20 interfectus est.

13. Hōc factō proeliō Caesar neque iam sibi lēgātōs au-  
 diendōs neque condicionēs accipiendās arbitrābātur ab iīs quī  
 per dolum atque insidiās petitā pāce ultrō bellum intulissent;  
 exspectāre vērō dum hostium cōpiāe augērentur equitātusque  
 5 reverterētur summae dēmentiae esse iūdicābat; et cognitā Gal-  
 lōrum infirmitate quantum iam apud eōs hostēs unō proeliō  
 auctōritātis essent cōsecūtī sentiēbat; quibus ad cōsilia  
 capiēda nihil spatī dandum existimābat. Hīs cōstitutis  
 rēbus et cōsiliō cum lēgātis et quaestōre cōmunicātō, nē

12. septuāgintā (LXX), *card. num.*  
*adj., indecl.* [septem, seven], seventy.  
 1.

13. Pisō, -ōnis, *m.*, Pīso (pī'sō), an  
*Aquitanian*. 1.

5. dēmentia, -ae, *f.* [mēns, mind],  
 madness, folly. 1.

9. quaestor, -ōris, *m.* [quaerō,  
 seek], a quaestor (kwēs'tōr), one of a  
 class of officers in charge of the public  
 revenues or the finances of the army. 3  
 cōmunicō, 1, *tr.* [communis, com-  
 mon], make common, communicate,  
 impart, share. 1.

9. ita . . . ēgērunt, "drove them  
 back in such a panic."

10. prius quam vēnissent: the sub-  
 junctive is probably due to attraction,  
 but may be explained by App. 236, b.

13. genere: case? App. 135: G.-L.  
 305: A. 403, a: B. 215: H.-B. 413: H. 409, 2.

15. interclūsō: translate by a rela-  
 tive clause.

Chap. 13. Caesar decides on venge-  
 ance and detains the German leaders,

who have come to apologize.

1. neque iam, "no longer."

4. exspectāre: subject of esse.

dum augērentur: App. 235, b.

5. summae . . . esse, "was (an act)  
 of the utmost folly."

6. quantum auctōritātis, "what  
 prestige."

9. quaestōre: see Int. 39.

nē . . . praetermitteret, "not to let  
 any opportunity for battle go by."

quem diem pugnae praetermitteret, opportunissima res accidit, 10 quod postridie eius diei mane eadem et perfidia et simulatione usi Germani frequentes, omnibus principibus maioribusque natu adhibitis, ad eum in castra venerunt, simul, ut dicebatur, sui purgandi causa, quod, contra atque esset dictum et ipsi petissent, proelium pridie commisissent, simul ut, si quid 15 possent, de indutiis fallendo impetrarent. Quos sibi Caesar oblatus gavisus illos retinere iussit, ipse omnes copias castris eduxit equitatumque, quod recenti proelio perterritum esse existimabat, agmen subsequi iussit.

14. Acie triplici instituta et celeriter VIII milium itinere confecto prius ad hostium castra pervenit quam quid ageretur Germani sentire possent. Qui omnibus rebus subito perterriti,

10. *praetermittō, -mittere, -misi, -missum, tr. [mittō, send], send by; let pass, overlook.* 1.

11. *mane, adv., in the morning, early.* 1.

*perfidia, -ae, f. [perfidus, faithless], treachery, perfidy; falsehood, dis-*

*honesty.* 2.

*simulatio, -onis, f. [simulō, make like], simulation, pretense, deceit, disguise.* 2.

17. *gaudeō, gaudēre, gavisus sum (App. 74), intr., rejoice.* 1.

11. *quod, "(namely) that."*

13. *ad eum . . . venerunt:* this action seems to disprove Caesar's charge of perfidy.

14. *sui purgandi causa,* "to excuse themselves." Construction? App. 291, a: G.-L. 428, R. 1: A. 504, c: B. 339, 5: H.-B. 614: H. 626, 3.

*contra atque, "contrary to what."*

15. *ut . . . impetrarent,* "to obtain whatever [lit. "if anything"] they could in the way of a truce by deceiving him."

16. *quos oblatus (esse),* "that they had come into his power."

17. *retinere:* this, with what follows, was a shocking violation of the law of nations. Compare what Caesar says of the action of the Veneti, III, 9, 8. Cato, Caesar's enemy, proposed in the Roman senate that Caesar be handed over to the Germans for punishment. Caesar's motives may be summed up as

follows: 1, a determination to teach the Germans, once for all, never to invade Gaul; 2, a determination to counteract at once the bad effect which the cavalry defeat must have had on the already disaffected Gauls; 3, irritation at the treacherous attack, although everything shows that it was not authorized by the leaders; 4, a real doubt as to whether the Germans were not trying to gain time for the return of their formidable cavalry; 5, the certainty that a pitched battle with the entire force of Germans would cost him the lives of many soldiers.

Chap. 14. Caesar surprises the German camp.

1. *acie . . . instituta:* usually an army has to march in column along a road. Here the country was open and level, so that the army could march in battle formation.

2. *prius quam possent:* App. 236, b.

et celeritâte adventûs nostrî et discessû suôrum, neque cōnaili  
 5 habendî neque arma capiendî spatiô datô, perturbantur cōpi-  
 âsne adversus hostem dūcere, an castra dēfendere, an fugâ  
 salūtem petere praestāret. Quôrum timor cum fremitû et  
 concursû significārētur, militēs nostrî pristinî diēi perfidiâ  
 incitâtî in castra irrūpērunt. Quô locô quî celeriter arma  
 10 capere potuērunt paulisper nostrîs restitērunt atque inter  
 carrôs impedimentaue proelium commisērunt; at reliqua  
 multitudô puerôrum mulierumque (nam cum omnibus suis  
 domô excesserant Rhēnumque trānsierant) passim fugere  
 coepit; ad quôs cōnsectandôs Caesar equitātum mīsīt.

15. Germānî post tergum clāmōre auditô cum suôs inter-  
 ficî vidērent, armis abiectis signisque militāribus relictis sē ex  
 castris eiēcērunt, et cum ad cōnfluentem Mosae et Rhēnî per-  
 vēnissent, reliquâ fugâ dēspērātâ magnô numerô interfectô  
 5 reliquî sē in flūmen praecipitāvērunt atque ibi timōre, lassitū-

6. -ne, *interrog. enclitic; in direct ques-  
 tions, simply sign of a question* (App. 213,  
 a); *in indirect questions, whether; -ne*  
 . . . -ne, -ne . . . an, *utrum* . . . -ne,  
 whether . . . or. 2.

adversus, *prep. w. acc.* [adversus,  
 turned against], opposite to, against.  
 1.

an, *conj., used to introduce the second  
 member of alternative questions, or, or*  
 rather. \*

9. irrumpô, -rumpere, -rūpi, -rup-  
 tum, *tr.* [in+rumpô, break], break in-

to, rush into; force a way into, storm.  
 1.

13. passim, *adv., in all directions.*  
 1.

2. abiciô, -icere, -iēcī, -iectum, *tr.*  
 [iaciô, throw. App. 7], throw away or  
 down; hurl. 2.

3. cōnfluēs, -entis, *f.* [cōnfluô,  
 flow together], a flowing together, con-  
 fluence. 1.

5. praecipitô, 1, *tr.* [praeceps, head-  
 long], throw or hurl headlong, precipi-  
 tate. 1.

4. et . . . et, "both . . . and."  
 suôrum: i.e. their leaders, who had  
 been detained by Caesar.

5. perturbantur -ne praestāret,  
 "were in great confusion, (not know-  
 ing) whether it was better." On the  
 kind of question see App. 214; 264, c.

9. quî: sc. ūas antecedent.

14. cōnsectandôs: the beginning of  
 the next chapter shows that the object  
 was massacre, not the taking of prison-  
 ers.

Chap. 15. The Germans are routed  
 and slaughtered.

3. Rhēnî: i.e. the Vaucal; see *parte*  
*quādam*, 10, 2, note.

4. reliquâ, "further."

5. reliquî periērunt: some must  
 have escaped. At any rate in later  
 years there were Uspetes and Tencteri  
 living east of the Rhine, not far from  
 this battlefield. But they may be ac-  
 counted for by the escape of the cav-  
 alry.

dine, *vī flūminis oppressi perierunt*. *Nostri ad ūnum omnēs incolumēs perpaucis vulnerātis ex tantī belli timōre, cum hostium numerus capitum ccccxiii milium fuisset, sē in castra recēperunt*. Caesar iis quōs in castris retinuerat discēdendī potestātem fēcit. Illi supplicia cruciātusque Gallōrum veritī, 10 quōrum agrōs vexāverant, remanēre sē apud eum velle dixerunt. His Caesar libertātem concessit.

16. Germānicō bellō cōfectō multis dē causis Caesar statuit sibi Rhēnum esse trānseundum; quārum illa fuit iūstissima, quod, cum vidēret Germānōs tam facile impelli ut in Galliam venirent, suis quoque rēbus eōs timēre voluit, cum intellegerent et posse et audēre populi Rōmānī exercitum 5 Rhēnum trānsire. Accessit etiam quod illa pars equitātis Usipetum et Tēncterōrum quam suprà commemorāvi prae-dandī frūmentandique causā Mosam trānsisse neque proeliō interfuisse post fugam suōrum sē trāns Rhēnum in finēs Sugambrōrum recēperat sēque cum his coniūnixerat. Ad quōs 10

6. *pereō*, -ire, -ii, -itum, *intr.* [eō, go. App. 84], be destroyed *or*, killed, perish. 2.

1. *Germānicus*, -a, -um, *adj.* [Germānus, German], of *or* pertaining to the Germans, German. 1.

2. *iustus*, -a, -um, *adj.* [iūs, right], in accordance with law *or* right, lawful, valid, just, fair; proper, regular; *with funera*, appropriate. 4.

10. *Sugambri*, -ōrum, *m.* (Ag), the Sugambri (sū-gām'brī). 4.

6. *oppressi*, "overwhelmed."  
ad ūnum, "to a man."

7. *ex*, "after," "relieved of."

9. *discēdendī . . . fēcit*: if Caesar had believed the leaders guilty of treachery, they above all others should have been punished.

12. *libertātem*, "permission" to remain.

However unjust and brutal Caesar's treatment of the Germans may have been, it served his purpose. More than a year later, when Caesar had lost a legion and a half and all Gaul seemed ripe for revolt, the Treveri tried to get German help. But the Germans replied (V. 55) that the thing had been tried twice, by Ariovistus and by the Tenceteri; they would tempt fortune no more.

Chap. 16-19. Caesar crosses the Rhine, as a warning to the Germans.

Chap. 16. Caesar's reasons for deciding to cross the Rhine.

2. *iustissima*, "most valid," "strongest."

3. *quod . . . voluit*: in apposition with *illa*.

4. *suis . . . rēbus*, "for their own possessions too." The possessive usually follows its noun; why does it here precede?

*cum intellegerent*, "(as they would) when they should see"; implied indirect discourse for the future indicative.

6. *accessit etiam quod*, lit. "there was added also the fact that," = "moreover," "and besides."

7. *suprà*: see 9, 5.

cum Caesar nūntiōs mīsisset quī postulārent eōs quī sibi Galliaeque bellum intulissent sibi dēderent, respondērunt: Populī Rōmānī imperium Rhēnum finīre; sī sē invitō Germānōs in Galliam trānsīre nōn aequum existimāret, cūr suī quicquam  
 15 esse imperī aut potestātis trāns Rhēnum postulāret? Ubiī autem, quī ūnī ex Trānsrhēnānis ad Caesarem lēgātōs miserant, amicitiam fēcerant, obsidēs dederant, magnopere ōrābant ut sibi auxilium ferret, quod graviter ab Suēbīs premerentur; vel, sī id facere occupātiōnibus rei pūblicae prohibē-  
 20 rētur, exercitum modo Rhēnum trānsportāret: id sibi ad auxilium spemque reliquī temporis satis futūrum. Tantum esse nōmen atque opīniōnem eius exercitūs, Ariovistō pulsō et hōc novissimō proeliō factō, etiam ad ultimās Germānōrum nātiōnēs, utī opīniōne et amicitia populī Rōmānī tūtī esse  
 25 possent. Nāvium magnam cōpiam ad trānsportandum exercitum pollicēbantur.

17. Caesar hīs dē causīs quās commemorāvi Rhēnum trānsīre dēcrēverat; sed nāvibus trānsīre neque satis tūtum

13. finīō, 4, *tr.* [finis, limit], limit, bound; determine, measure. 1.

14. cūr, *interrog. and rel. adv.*, why, for what reason; for which reason, wherefore. 4.

16. Trānsrhēnānus, -a, -um, *adj.*, beyond or across the Rhine; *pl. as noun*, Trānsrhēnānī, the people across the Rhine. 1.

19. occupātiō, -ōnis, *f.* [occupō, seize], seizing; occupation, business, engagement. 2.

20. trānsportō, 1, *tr.* [portō, carry], carry across or over, bring over, convey, transport. \*

22. Ariovistus, -ī, *m.* Ariovistus (ā"ri-ō-vis'tūs), a king of the Germans.

\*

12. (ut) dēderent: object of *postulārent*.

13. sē refers to the subject of *existimāret*, not to the speaker; so *sui*, l. 14.

14. cūr postulāret: mode? App. 268, III; 210, a.

sui . . . Rhēnum, "that anything across the Rhine belong to (lit. "be of") his authority or control."

17. obsidēs dederant: see II, 35, 5, note.

ōrābant, "kept begging." The envoys had been with him for some time, having come before the battle with the Germans; see 8, 7.

19. occupātiōnibus rei pūblicae, "affairs of state."

20. trānsportāret: in the same construction as *ferret*, l. 18.

21. reliquī temporis, "for the future."

futūrum: this and the following infinitives depend on a verb of saying implied in *ōrābant*.

Chap. 17. Description of Caesar's bridge across the Rhine.

2. tūtum: an enemy could more easily prevent a landing from boats, and in case of defeat boats would offer a dangerous means of retreat.

esse arbitrābātur, neque suae neque populī Rōmānī dignitātis esse statuēbat. Itaque, etāī summa difficultās faciendī pontis prōpōnēbātur propter lātitudinem, rapiditātem, altitudinemque flūminis, tamen id sibi contendendum aut aliter nōn tradūcendum exercitum existimābat. Ratiōnem pontis hanc instituit. Tigna bīna sēsquipedālīa paulum ab imō praeacūta dimēnsa ad altitudinem flūminis intervāllō pedum duōrum inter sē iungēbat. Haec cum māchinātiōnibus immissa in flūmen dēfixerat fistūcīsque adēgerat, nōn sublicae modo dērēctē ad perpendiculum, sed prōnē ac fastigātē ut secundum nātūram

5. rapiditās, -tātis, *f.* [rapidus, swift], swiftness. 1.

8. tignum, -ī, *n.*, log, timber, beam, pile. 2.

sēsquipedālīs, -e, *adj.* [sēsqui, one and a half + pēs, foot], a foot and a half thick. 1.

10. immittō, -mittere, -misi, -missum, *tr.* [in + mittō, send], send or let into, insert; send against, direct towards or against; trabibus immissis, beams being let in. 2.

11. dēfigō, -figere, -fixi, -fixum, *tr.*

[figō, fix], fix or fasten down, drive in, plant. 1.

fistūca, -ae, *f.*, pile-driver. 1.

sublica, -ae, *f.*, pile, stake. 2.

dērēctē, *adv.* [dērēctus, straight], straight. 1.

12. perpendiculum, -ī, *n.*, plummet, plumbline. 1.

prōnē, *adv.* [prōnus, inclined], sloping downwards. 1.

fastigātē, *adv.* [fastigātus, sloping], sloping. 1.

3. neque suae . . . statuēbat, "he considered it inconsistent with his own dignity, etc." *dignitatis* is a predicative possessive genitive. The construction of the bridge would impress the barbarians with a high sense of the power and skill of the Romans.

4. summa prōpōnēbātur, "presented itself as very great."

5. lātitudinem: the bridge was probably built near Bonn, where the river is a little more than a quarter of a mile wide.

6. id contendendum, "that he ought to make the effort."

8. bīna, "two." The distributive is used because there were many such timbers and they were handled two at a time. See plan, *a*, *a*.

dimēnsa ad, "measured according to"; i.e. they were made shorter or longer according to the depth of the river

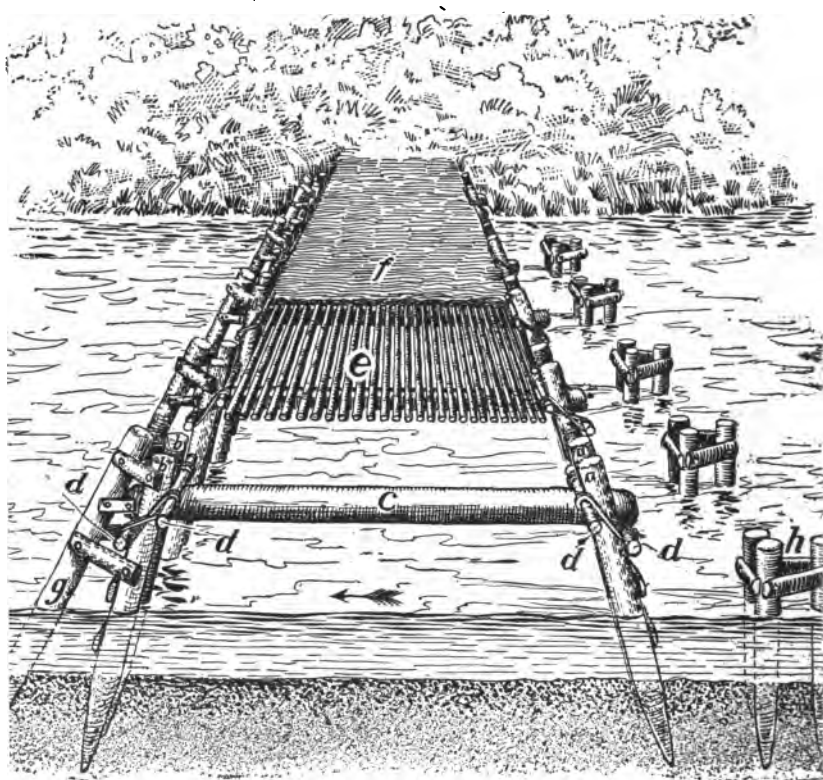
where they were driven into its bed.

9. intervāllō . . . iungēbat, "he joined together [by spiking wooden cross-pieces on them] with a space of two feet [between them]." See plan and the pile-driver, p. 273. *Intervāllō* is an ablative of attendant circumstance.

10. haec . . . dēfixerat, "when he had let them down into the river by machines and had secured them there." They were probably floated out to the raft on which the pile-driver (p. 273) stood, and were then handled by a derrick or some such simple machine. *dēfixerat*: model? App. 241, *b*: G.-L. 584: A. 548: B. 288, 3: H.-B. 579: H. 601, 4.

11. nōn . . . perpendiculum, "not vertically, like a pile"; i.e. as piles are usually driven.

12. ut . . . prōcumbent: i.e. sloping down-stream.



CAESAR'S BRIDGE

*a, a*, tigna bina, l. 8.

*b, b*, iis contraria duo (tigna), l. 13.

*c*, bipedâlis trabs, l. 16.

*d, d, d, d*, fibulae, l. 17.

*e*, dērēcta mātēria, l. 21.

*f*, longurii crātēsque, l. 22.

*g*, publica obliquē ācta, l. 23.

*h*, aliae (sublicae) suprā pontem, l. 25.

flūminis prōcumberent, iis item contrāria duo ad eundem modum iūncta intervāllō pedum quadrāgēnum ab inferiōre parte contrā vim atque impetum flūminis conversa statuēbat. 15 Haec utraque, insuper bipedālibus trabibus immissis, quantum eōrum tignōrum iūnctūra distābat, binis utrimque fibulis ab

14. quadrāgēni, -ae, -a, *dist. num.* *adj.* [quadrāgintā, forty], forty each. 1.

16. Insuper, *adv.* [super, above], above, on the top, from above. 1.

bipedālis, -e, *adj.* [bis, twice + pēs, foot], of two feet, two feet thick. 1.

17. iūnctūra, -ae, *f.* [iungō, join], joining. 1.

distō, -stāre, —, —, *intr.* [stā, stand], stand apart; be apart, removed or separated. 1.

utrimque, *adv.* [uterque, each 2]

13. iis . . . statuēbat: i.e. a similar pair of piles was driven into the river bed opposite to these, forty feet downstream (ab inferiōre parte), but sloping against the current. See plan, b, b.

duo: we should expect *duo*, as in l. 8.

14. quadrāgēnum: form? App. 16, e: G.-L. 33, 4: A. 49, d: B. 25, 6: H.-B. 71, 4: H. 84, 3.

The distance must have been measured on the surface of the water: the roadway was therefore a little less than forty feet.

16. haec utraque, "these two pairs," is the subject of *distinēbantur*.

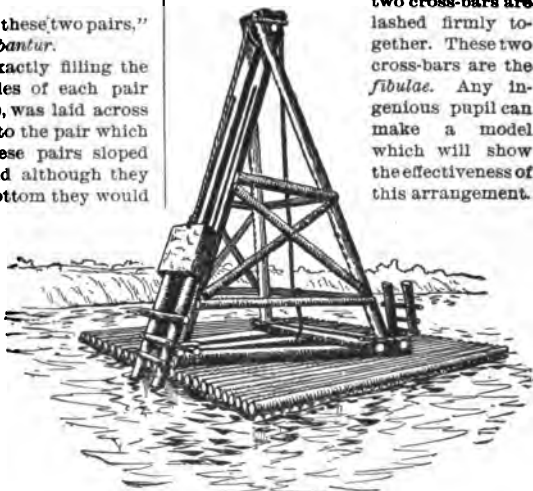
A two-foot beam, exactly filling the space between the piles of each pair (*quantum . . . distābat*), was laid across from one pair of piles to the pair which faced it (plan, c). These pairs sloped toward each other, and although they were driven into the bottom they would sway with the current and would tend to fall together when the cross-beam had to carry a weight. Therefore they were held at the proper distance apart (*distinēbantur*) by a pair of fastenings (*fibulae*) at each end of the two-foot cross beam.

quantum . . . distābat, lit. "as much as the joining of the

timbers stood apart." *quantum* is an accusative of extent of space and has *bipedālibus* as its antecedent.

17. fibullae: it is not certain what these "fastenings" were. Those shown in the plan (d, d) are simple and effective, and are occasionally used in modern engineering. The two-foot cross-beam rests on a cross-bar, which is spiked firmly to the outer sides of the piles. Another cross-bar is laid loosely in the opposite angle, and the outer ends of the

two cross-bars are lashed firmly together. These two cross-bars are the *fibulae*. Any ingenious pupil can make a model which will show the effectiveness of this arrangement.



PILE-DRIVER

extrēmā parte distinēbantur; quibus disclūsīs atque in contrā-  
 riam partem revinctīs tantā erat operis firmitūdō atque ea  
 20 rērum nātūra ut quō maior vis aquae sē incitāvisset hōc artius  
 illigāta tenērentur. Haec dērēctā materiā iniectā contexēban-  
 tur ac longuriis crātibusque cōsternēbantur; ac nihilō sētius  
 sublicae et ad inferiōrem partem flūminis obliquē agēbantur,  
 quae prō ariete subiectae et cum omnī opere coniūctae vim  
 25 flūminis exciperent, et aliae item suprā pontem mediocrī spa-  
 tiō, ut, sī arborum truncī sive nāvēs dēiciendī operis causā

*two*], on each side, on both sides. 2.

*fibula, -ae, f.*, clasp; brace, fasten-  
 ing. 1.

18. *disclūdō, -clūdere, -clūsi, -clūsum, tr.* [*claudō*, shut], shut off, hold or keep apart, separate. 1.

20. *aqua, -ae, f.*, water. 2.

*artē, adv.* [*artus*, close], closely, firmly. 1.

21. *illigō, 1, tr.* [*ligō*, bind], attach, hold or bind together. 1.

*dērēctus, -a, -um, adj.* [*dērigō*, put in line], straight. 1.

*iniciō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectum, tr.* [*iaciō*, hurl. App. 7], throw into or upon; put or place on; inspire, infuse. 3.

*contexō, -texere, -texui, -textum, tr.* [*texō*, weave], weave or bind together, connect. 1.

22. *crātēs, -is, f.*, wicker-work; fascine (*bundle of sticks for filling trenches, etc.*). 1.

*cōsternō, -sternere, -strāvi, -strātum, tr.* [*sternō*, strew], strew over, cover over. 2.

*sētius, adv.*, less, otherwise; *nihilō sētius*, none the less, nevertheless, likewise. 2.

23. *obliquē, adv.* [*obliquus*, slanting], obliquely, slantwise. 1.

26. *truncus, -i, m.*, trunk of trees. 1.

18. *quibus* refers to *fibulae*. It is in the ablative absolute with *disclūsīs* and *revinctīs*.

*disclūsīs*: by the cross-beam and the piles.

in . . . *revinctīs*, "bound together in the opposite direction"; i.e. opposite to the direction of their separation.

19. *ea rērum nātūra*, "such was the nature of the structure."

20. *incitāvisset* is subjunctive by attraction.

*hōc . . . tenērentur*, "the more firmly the parts of the structure were bound together."

21. *haec* refers to the part of the structure already described, for which Caesar has no name. In modern engineering it is called a trestle-bent. There were probably between fifty and sixty

such trestle-bents. They were connected by timbers laid from one cross-beam to the next, lengthwise of the bridge (*dērēctā materiā*). Plan, *e*.

22. *nihilō sētius*: i.e. although the bridge was already very strong.

23. *et* is correlative with *et* in l. 25.

*obliquē*: i.e. they were driven in with a greater slant than the double piles had. See plan, *g*.

24. *quae prō ariete subiectae exciperent*, "which, set below as a buttress, were to withstand, etc."

25. *aliae*: sc. *sublicae agēbantur*. There is nothing in the text to show the number of these piles, but the plan (*h*) suggests an effective defense.

*spatiō*: ablative of measure of difference with *suprā*.

essent à barbaris missae, his dēfēnsōribus eārum rērum vīs minuerētur, neu ponti nocērent.

18. Diēbus decem quibus māteria coepta erat comportāri omni opere effectō exercitus trādūcitur. Caesar ad utramque partem pontis firmō praesidiō relictō in finēs Sugambrōrum contendit. Interim à complūribus civitatibus ad eum lēgātī veniunt; quibus pācem atque amīcitiā petentibus liberāliter respondet obsidēsque ad sē addūci iubet. At Sugambrī ex eō tempore quō pōns institui coeptus est fugā comparātā, hortantibus iis quōs ex Tēncteris atque Usipetibus apud sē habēbant, finibus suis excesserant suaeque omnia exportāverant sēque in solitūdinem ac silvās abdiderant.

19. Caesar paucōs diēs in eōrum finibus morātus, omnibus vicis aedificiisque incēnsis frūmentisque succīs, sē in finē Ubiorum recēpit, atque his auxilium suum pollicitus, si à Suēbis premerentur, haec ab iis cognōvit: Suēbōs, posteaquam per explorātōrēs pontem fieri comperissent, mōre suō conciliq̃ habitō nūntiōs in omnēs partēs dīmisisse uti dē oppidīs dēmi-grārent, liberōs, uxōrēs, suaeque omnia in silvis dēpōnerent, atque omnēs qui arma ferre possent ūnum in locum convenirent; hunc esse dēlēctum medium ferē regiōnum eārum quā

9. exportō, 1, *tr* [portō, carry], carry out or away. 1.

10. solitūdō, -inis, *f.* [solus, alone], loneliness, solitude; a lonely place, wilderness. 1.

2. succidō, -cidere, -cidi, -cisum, *tr.* [sub+caedō, cut], cut from beneath, cut down, fell. 2.

4. posteaquam, *adv.* [postea, afterwards+quam, than], after. 4.

27. essent missae is subjunctive by implied indirect discourse, for a future perfect indicative.

28. neu: why not *neque*?

Chap. 18. Caesar crosses the river and marches into the country of the Sugambrī.

1. diēbus decem quibus, *lit.* "within ten days within which,"="within ten days after"; cf. *paucis diēbus quibus*, III. 23, 8.

coepta erat: why passive? App. 86, a.

5. quibus petentibus: translate by a clause, "and when they, etc."

7. hortantibus iis, *lit.* "those urging,"="on the advice of those."

8. quōs . . . habēbant: i.e. the cavalry, 16, 6, and probably other survivors of the massacre, 15, 5, note.

Chap. 19. Caesar ravages their country. As the Suebi have withdrawn, he returns to Gaul.

3. si premerentur: implied indirect discourse for the future.

6. nūntiōs dīmisisse uti, "had sent messengers (urging) that."

9. hunc . . . ferē, "that this place had been chosen almost in the middle."

10 Suēbī obtinērent; hīc Rōmānōrum adventum expectāre atque ibi dēcertāre cōstituissē. Quod ubi Caesar comperit, omnibus iis rēbus cōfectis quārum rērum causā trādūcere exercitum cōstituerat, ut Germānis metum iniceret, ut Sugambros ulciscerētur, ut Ubios obsidiōne liberāret, diēbus omninō  
 15 XVIII trāns Rhēnum cōsūmptis, satis et ad laudem et ad utilitatem profectum arbitrātus sē in Galliam recēpit pontemque rescidit.

20. Exiguā parte aestātis reliquā Caesar, etsi in his locis, quod omnis Gallia ad septentrionēs vergit, mātūrae sunt hiemēs, tamen in Britanniam proficisci contendit, quod omnibus ferē Gallicis bellis hostibus nostris inde subministrāta auxilia  
 s intellegēbat et, si tempus ad bellum gerendum dēficeret, tamen magnō sibi ūsuī fore arbitrābatur, si modo insulam adisset, genus hominum perspexisset, loca, portūs, aditūs cognōvisset; quae omnia ferē Gallis erant incognita. Neque enim temerē

10. hīc, *adv.*, here, in this place; (*of a place just mentioned*) there, in that place; (*of an incident just mentioned*) then, at this time. 1.

14. obsidiō, -ōnis, *f.* [obsideō, blockade], siege, investment, blockade; peril, oppression. 1.

liberō, 1, *tr.* [liber, free], make or set free, release, deliver. 2.

16. ūtilitās, -tātis, *f.* [ūtīlis, useful], usefulness, advantage, service. 1.

1. exiguus, -a, -um, *adj.*, scanty, short, small, meager, limited. 1.

8. incognitus, -a, -um, *adj.* [īn-+cognitus, known; cognōscō, learn], unknown. 2.

temerē, *adv.*, rashly, blindly, without good reason. 2.

10. hīc, ibi: both words refer to the same place.

12. iis rēbus: explained by the substantive volitive (*ut*) clauses which follow.

13. ut . . . iniceret: cf. note at the end of chap. 15.

16. profectum: notice the *ō*; from what present?

Chap. 20-22. Caesar makes preparations for an expedition to Britain.

Chap. 20. Caesar decides on the expedition. He can get no information from the Gauls.

1. exiguā . . . reliquā: the ablative absolute is adversative: "although only a small part . . . , (and) in spite of the fact that the winters are early."

4. hostibus nostris: indirect object of *subministrāta*.

subministrāta auxilia: for an instance see III, 9, 26. In II, 14, 8, we learn that Britain had afforded refuge to some of Caesar's enemies.

6. magnō . . . fore, "it would be of great advantage to him."

si adisset, etc.: for the future perfect of the direct form. These clauses give the real object of the expedition, which was only preparatory to that of the following year.

8. quae . . . incognita: the Gauls may have deceived Caesar; at any rate there are indications that some Gauls knew a good deal about Britain: in II, 4, 19, we learn that a king of the Sues-

praeter mercatōrēs illō adit quisquam, neque hīs ipsīs quicquam praeter ōram maritimam atque eās regiōnēs quae sunt contrā 10 Galliam nōtum est. Itaque vocātis ad sē undique mercatōribus neque quanta esset insulae magnitūdō, neque quae aut quantae nātiōnēs incolerent, neque quem ūsum bellī habērent aut quibus institūtis ūterentur, neque quī essent ad maiōrum nāvium multitudinem idōnei portūs reperire poterat. 15

21. Ad haec cognōscenda, priusquam periculum faceret, idōneum esse arbitrātus C. Volusēnum cum nāvī longā praemittit. Huic mandat ut explorātis omnibus rēbus ad sē quam primum revertātur. Ipse cum omnibus cōpiis in Morinōs proficiscitur, quod inde erat brevissimus in Britanniam trāiec- 5 tus. Hūc nāvēs undique ex finitimīs regiōnibus et quam superiōre aestāte ad Veneticum bellum fēcerat classem iubet convenire. Interim, cōnsiliō eius cognitō et per mercatōrēs perlātō ad Britannōs, ā complūribus insulae cīvitatibus ad eum lēgātī veniunt quī polliceantur obsidēs dare atque imperiō 10 populi Rōmānī obtemperāre. Quibus auditis liberaliter pollicitus hortātusque ut in eā sententiā permanērent eōs domum

5. trāiectus, -ūs, *m.* [trāiciō, hurl across], a hurling across; crossing, passage. 1.

9. Britannus, -a, -um, *adj.*, of Britain, British; *pl. as noun*, the Britanni

(brī-tān'i); *better*, the Britons. 1.

11. obtemperō, 1, *intr.* [temperō, rule], be subject to rule, comply with, obey. 1.

ones had been king of a part of Britain besides, and in VI, 13, we learn that Gallic Druids went to Britain to study.

9. illō: the adverb.

his ipsīs: the traders; dative with *nōtum*.

11. vocātis mercatōribus, "although he summoned, etc."

13. neque, etc.: a series of indirect questions, depending on *reperire*.

Chap. 21. Caesar sends men in advance to gain information and to advise submission.

2. Volusēnum: either the subject of *esse* or the object of *praemittit*; supply *eum* in one place or the other. See what Caesar says of Volusenus in III, 5, 7;

he is the only tribune whom Caesar mentions with honor.

nāvī longā: see Int. 64.

6. hūc: at a harbor among the Morini. This was probably Wissant, the point of France which is nearest to Britain: see map facing p. 254. The harbor is now filled with sand, but was in use during the middle ages.

10. quī polliceantur: a purpose clause, but best translated by a present participle.

dare, obtemperāre: verbs of promising are more often followed by the future infinitive with subject accusative, *sē datūrōs esse*.

remitter et cum iis ūnā Commium, quem ipse Atrebatibus  
superātis rēgem ibi cōstituerat, cuius et virtūtem et cōsiliū  
15 probābat et quem sibi fidēlem esse arbitrābatur, cuiusque auc-  
tōritās in his regiōnibus magnī habēbatur, mittit. Huic  
imperat quās possit adeat cīvitatēs, hortēturque ut populī  
Rōmānī fidem sequantur, sēque celeriter eō ventūrum nūntiet.  
Volusēnus perspectis regiōnibus, quantum eī facultātis dari  
20 potuit quī nāvī ēgredi ac sē barbaris committere nōn auderet,  
quintō diē ad Caesarem revertitur quaeque ibi perspexisset  
renūntiat.

22. Dum in his locis Caesar nāvium parandārum causā  
moratur, ex magnā parte Morinōrum ad eum lēgātī vērunt  
quī sē dē superiōris temporis cōsiliō excūsarent, quod ho-  
minēs barbari et nostrae cōsuētūdinis imperitī bellum populō  
5 Rōmānō fēcissent, sēque ea quae imperāset factūrōs pollicē-  
rentur. Hoc sibi Caesar satis opportūnē accidisse arbitrātus,  
quod neque post tergum hostem relinquere volēbat neque  
belli gerendī propter annī tempus facultātem habēbat ne-

13. *Commīus, -mī, m., Commius* (kōm'f-ūs), a chief of the Atrebatēs. 3.

15. *fidēlis, -e, adj. [fidēs, faith],* faithful, trustworthy, reliable. 1.

3. *excūsō, 1. tr. [causa, reason],* give reason for; excuse. 1.

4. *imperitus, -a, -um, adj. [in-+peritus, experienced],* inexperienced, unskilled, ignorant. 4.

6. *opportūnē, adv. [opportūnus, fit],* opportunely, seasonably. 1

13. *Atrebatibus superātis:* in the battle with the Nervii, II, 23.

14. *ibi:* i.e. among the Atrebatēs.

15. *sibi fidēlem:* but Commius became a leader in the general revolt against him three years later. This is why Caesar says *arbitrābatur*.

16. *in his regiōnibus:* i.e. in Belgium.

*magnī:* genitive of value.

18. *fidem sequantur,* lit. "follow the protection (of)," = "surrender (to)." *sē:* i.e. Caesar.

19. *quantum . . . potuit,* lit. "(as much) as of opportunity could be given to a man," = "as much as a man could."

20. *quī . . . auderet:* a clause of characteristic. Caesar cannot mean to

blame Volusenus. Both the difficulty which Caesar himself experienced in landing with his army and the imprisonment of Commius will show that Volusenus could not possibly have landed and returned.

Chap. 22. Caesar accepts the surrender of the Morini, and completes his preparations for sailing.

3. *cōsiliō,* "behavior"; see III, 28. *hominēs:* in apposition with the omitted subject; "being barbarians."

4. *cōsuētūdinis:* of sparing those who voluntarily surrendered.

5. *fēcissent, imperāset:* implied indirect discourse for the perfect indicative and the future perfect, respectively.

que hās tantulārūm rērum occupātiōnēs Britanniae antepōnendās iūdicābat, magnum iīs numerum obsidum imperat. Quibus adductis eōs in fidem recipit. Nāvibus circiter LXXX onerāriis coāctis contractisque, quot satis esse ad duās transportandās legiōnēs existimābat, quod praetereā nāvium longārū habēbat quaeſtōrī, lēgātīs, praefectisque distribuit. Hūc accēdēbant XVIII onerāriae nāvēs, quae ex eō locō ā milibus passuum octō ventō tenēbantur quōminus in eundem portum venīre possent; hās equitibus distribuit. Reliquum exercitum Titūriō Sabinō et Aurunculēiō Cottae lēgātīs in Menapiōs atque in eōs pāgōs Morinōrum ā quibus ad eum lēgātī nōn vēnerant dūcendum dedit; Sulpicium Rūfum lēgātum cum eō praesidiō quod satis esse arbitrābātur portum tenēre iussit.

**23.** Hīs cōstitutīs rēbus nactus idōneam ad nāvigandum tempestātem tertiā ferē vigiliā solvit equitēsque in ulteriōrem

9. antepōnō, -pōnere, -posui, -positum, *tr.* [pōnō, place], place before; prefer. 1.

12. onerārius, -a, -um, *adj.* [onus, burden], fitted for burdens; *with* nāvis, transport, freight ship. \*

contrahō, -trahere, -trāxi, -trac-tum, *tr.* [trahō, draw], draw or bring together, assemble, collect; draw into smaller compass, contract. 2.

16. quōminus, *conj.* [quō, so that+

minus, not], so that not, that not; from. 2.

20. Sulpicius, -ci, *m.*, Publius Sulpicius Rufus (pūb'li-ūs sūl-pi-sh'yūs ruf'ūs), one of Caesar's lieutenants. 1.

1. nanciscor, nancisci, nactus sum, *tr.*, get, obtain possession of; meet with, find. \*

2. solvō,olvere, solvi, solūtum, *tr.*, loosen, untie; *with* or *without* nāvēs, weigh anchor, set sail, put to sea. 3.

9. hās . . . occupātiōnēs, "engaging in such trivial matters."

12. coāctis contractisque, "having levied and brought together."

13. quod . . . habēbat, *lit.* "whatever of ships of war he had besides," = "the ships which he had."

15. hūc accēdēbant, *lit.* "there were added to this number," = "he had in addition."

ā . . . octō, "eight miles[away]." If the chief harbor was Wissant, the smaller was Sangatte, east of Wissant.

16. tenēbantur quōminus possent, "were kept from being able": App. 228, c.

18. exercitum dūcendum dedit: construction? App. 285, II, b: G.-L. 430: A. 500, 4: B. 337, 7, b, 2: H.-B. 612, III: H. 622.

Chap. 23-27. After a sharp contest Caesar effects a landing and accepts the surrender of the Britons.

Chap. 23. Caesar crosses to Britain and makes preparations for landing.

1. idōneam tempestātem: a gentle southerly wind and clear weather, with the moon nearly full.

2. tertiā vigiliā: just after midnight, the morning of August 27th. The first part of the night was spent in launching the ships, which had been

portum prōgredi et nāvēs cōnscendere et sē sequi iussit. A quibus cum paulō tardius esset administrātum, ipse hōrā diēi 5 circiter quārtā cum primīs nāvibus Britanniam attigit atque ibi in omnibus collibus expositās hostium cōpiās armātās cōspexit. Cuius loci haec erat nātūra atque ita montibus angustē mare continēbātur uti ex locis superiōribus in lītus tēlum adigī posset. Hunc ad ēgrediendum nēquāquam idōneum 10 locum arbitrātus, dum reliquae nāvēs eō convenirent, ad hōram nōnam in ancoris exspectāvit. Interim lēgātis tribūnisque militum convocātis, et quae ex Volusēnō cognōvisset et quae fieri vellet ostendit, monuitque, ut rei militāris ratiō, maximē ut maritimae rēs postulārent, ut quae celerem atque instabilem 15 mōtum habērent, ad nūtum et ad tempus omnēs rēs ab iis administrārentur. His dimissis et ventum et aestum ūnō

3. cōnscendō, -scendere, -scendi, -scēsum, *tr.* [scandō, climb], climb, mount; go on board, embark. 1.

4. tardē, *adv.* [tardus, slow], slowly; *comp.* tardius, too slowly. 1.

6. expōnō, -pōnere, -posui, -positum, *tr.* [pōnō, place], put or set out; set on shore, disembark; draw up; set forth, explain. 2.

7. angustē, *adv.* [angustus, narrow], narrowly; in close quarters. 1.

8. lītus, -oris, *n.*, seashore, beach, shore. 3.

9. nēquāquam, *adv.* [nē+quāquam, in any way], in no way, by no means, not at all. 1.

14. celer, -eris, -ere, *adj.*, swift, quick; precipitate. 1.

Instabilis, -e, *adj.* [in+stabilis, firm], not firm, unsteady. 1.

15. mōtus, -ūs, *m.* [moveō, move], movement, motion; political movement, uprising, disturbance. 3.

nūtus, -ūs, *m.* [nuō, nod], nod; sign, command; ad nūtum, at one's nod or command. 2.

drawn up on the sandy beach, and in embarking.

4. tardius, "too late." The wind changed and delayed them for three days.

hōra quārtā: about 9 A.M. At this time of year the fourth hour began about 8:30 and ended after 9:30.

5. Britanniam attigit: probably at or near Dover. The hills spoken of are the famous chalk cliffs.

7. haec, "such."

10. dum convenirent: mode? App. 235, b.

ad hōram nōnam: somewhere near 3 P.M.

11. in ancoris, "at anchor."

13. ut . . . postulārent, "as military science, and especially as seaman-ship requires"; the subjunctive is due to implied indirect discourse.

14. ut quae habērent, *lit.* "as (things) which have,"="since it has to do with"; a causal relative clause, App. 245: G.-L. 633: A. 535, e, n. 1: B. 283, 3: H.-B. 523, b: H. 592, 1.

15. (ut) administrārentur: the object of *monuit*.

ad tempus, "on the instant."

16. ventum et aestum secundum: on other grounds it is supposed that Caesar sailed northeast, to Deal; but it has been proved that at this time the tide was running southwest. Possibily

tempore nactus secundum, datō signō et sublātis ancoris, circiter milia passuum septem ab eō locō prōgressus apertō ac plānō litore nāvēs cōstituit.

24. At barbarī cōsiliō Rōmānōrum cognitō, praemissō equitātū et essedāriis, quō plērumque genere in proeliis ūtī cōsuērunt, reliquīs cōpiis subsecūtī nostrōs nāvibus ēgredi prohibēbant. Erat ob hās causās summa difficultās, quod nāvēs propter magnitudinem nisi in altō cōstitui nōn poterant, militibus autem ignōtis locis, impeditis manibus, magnō et gravi onere armōrum oppressis simul et dē nāvibus dēsiliendum et in fluctibus cōsistendum et cum hostibus erat pugnandum, cum illī aut ex āridō aut paulum in aquam prōgressi omnibus membrīs expeditis nōtissimis locis audācter tēla conicerent et equōs insuēfactōs incitārent. Quibus rēbus nostri perterriti atque huius omnīnō generis pugnae imperitī nōn eādē alacritāte ac studiō quō in pedestribus ūtī proeliis cōsuērunt ūtēbantur.

25. Quod ubi Caesar animadvertit, nāvēs longās, quārum et speciēs erat barbaris inūsitiōr et mōtus ad ūsum expeditior,

2. *essedārius*, -ri, *m.* [essedum, a war chariot], a soldier fighting from a war chariot, charioteer. 1.

6. *ignōtus*, -a, -um, *adj.* [in-+(g)nōtus, known; nōscō, know], unknown, unfamiliar. 1.

9. *āridus*, -a, -um, *adj.* [āreō, be dry], dry; *neut. as noun*, dry land. 3.

10. *membrum*, -i, *n.*, member of the body, limb. 1.

11. *insuēfactus*, -a, -um, *adj.* [suēs-cō, become accustomed + faciō, make] accustomed, trained. 1.

13. *alacritās*, -tātis, *f.* [alacer, lively], liveliness, ardor. 3.

Caesar means that the tide was decreasing and the wind was so favorable that he could sail against the slackening current.

Chap. 24. The Britons try to prevent the landing.

2. quō genere, "a kind of troops which."

5. nisi . . . pōterant, "could be stationed only in deep water."

6. militibus: dative of the agent with dēsiliendum, etc., erat.

ignōtis . . . manibus: ablatives absolute.

7. oppressis, "weighed down as they were"; in agreement with militibus.

8. cōsistendum, "keep their footing."

9. cum illi, "while the enemy."

12. nōn ūtēbantur, "did not display."

13. quō agrees with the nearer antecedent.

Chap. 25. Caesar brings his warships into action. A Roman standard bearer sets an example of bravery.

2. inūsitiōr, "less familiar" than that of the transports. The latter were

paulum removēri ab onerāriis nāvibus et rēmīs incitāri et ad  
 5 latum apertum hostium cōstitutū atque inde fundis, sagittis,  
 tormentis hostēs prōpelli ac submovēri iussit; quae rēs magnō  
 ūsuī nostris fuit. Nam et nāvium figurā et rēmōrum mōtū et  
 inūsitatō genere tormentōrum permōti barbari cōstitērunt ac  
 paulum etiam pedem rettulērunt. Atque nostris militibus  
 10 cūctantibus, maximē propter altitudinem maris, quī decimae  
 legiōnis aquilam ferēbat, obtestātus deōs ut ea rēs legiōni fēli-  
 citer ēvenīret, ‘Dēsilitē,’ inquit, ‘commilitōnēs, nisi vultis  
 aquilam hostibus prōdere; egō certē meum rei pūblīcae atque  
 imperātōri officium praestiterō.’ Hoc cum vōce magnā dixisset,  
 sē ex nāvī prōlēcit atque in hostēs aquilam ferre coepit. Tum  
 15 nostri, cohortāti inter sē nē tantum dēdecus admitterētur, ūni-  
 versi ex nāvī dēsiluērunt. Hōs item ex proximis nāvibus cum  
 cōspexissent, subsecūtī hostibus appropinquāvērunt.

26. Pugnātum est ab utrisque ācritē. Nostrī tamen, quod  
 neque ōrdinēs servāre neque firmiter insistere neque signa sub-

4. funda, -ae, *f.*, sling. 1.

sagitta, -ae, *f.*, arrow. 1.

6. figurā, -ae, *f.* [figūrō, form], form, shape, figure. 1.

10. aquila, -ae, *f.*, an eagle; a standard (as the aquila was the chief standard of the legion). 3.

obtestor, 1, *tr.* [testor, witness], call to witness; beseech, entreat. 1.

fēliciter, *adv.* [fēlix, happy], happily, fortunately. 1.

11. ēvenīō, -venīre, -venī. -ven-  
 tum, *intr.* [venīō, come], turn out, re-  
 sult. 1.

more like the trading vessels, with which the Britons were acquainted.

mōtus . . . expeditior, *lit.* “whose motion was freer for use,” = “which were more easily managed.”

4. latum apertum, “the right flank,” which was unprotected by shields.

9. qui, “the man who”

10. aquilam: see Int. 43, and Plate I, 6, facing p. 27.

13. praestiterō: note the force of

inquam, -is, -it, *def. verb. tr.*, used only with direct quotations and following one or more words of the quotation, say. 1.

commilitō, -ōnis, *m.* [miles, soldier], fellow soldier, comrade. 1.

12. certē, *adv.* [certus, certain], certainly; at least, at all events. 1.

meus, -a, -um, *poss. adj. pron.* [cf. oblique cases of ego], my, mine, my own. 1.

15. dēdecus, -oris, *n.* [decus, honor], dishonor, disgrace. 1.

2. firmiter, *adv.* [firmus, strong], firmly. 1

the tense. “(whatever the result shall be) I at least shall have done my duty.”

15. inter sē, “one another.”

16. ex proximis nāvibus, “those who were in the nearest ships.”

Chap. 26. After a fierce contest the Britons are put to flight.

2. firmiter insistere, “get a firm footing.”

signa subsequi: i.e. keep their formation by cohorts.

sequi poterant, atque alius aliā ex nāvi quibuscumque signis  
 occurrerat sē aggregābat, magnopere perturbābantur; hostēs  
 vērō, nōtis omnibus vadīs, ubi ex litore aliquōs singulārēs ex  
 nāvi ēgredientēs cōspexerant, incitātis equis impeditōs adori-  
 ēbantur, plūrēs paucōs circumstiebant, aliī ab latere apertō in  
 ūniversōs tēla coniciēbant. Quod cum animadvertisset Caesar,  
 scaphās longārum nāvium, item speculātōria nāvigia militibus  
 complērī iussit et, quōs labōrantēs cōspexerat, hīs subsidia 10  
 submittēbat. Nostri, simul in aridō cōstitērunt, suis omnibus  
 cōsecūtis in hostēs impetum fēcērunt atque eōs in fugam de-  
 dērunt, neque longius prōsequi potuerunt, quod equitēs cursum  
 tenēre atque insulam capere nōn potuerant. Hoc ūnum ad  
 pristinam fortūnam Caesarī dēfuit. 15

27. Hostēs proeliō superātī, simul atque sē ex fugā recēpē-  
 runt, statim ad Caesarem lēgātōs dē pāce mīserunt; obsidēs  
 datūrōs, quaeque imperāset factūrōs sēsē polliciti sunt. Ūnā  
 cum hīs lēgātis Commius Atrebās vēnit, quem suprà dēmōn-  
 strāveram ā Caesare in Britanniam praemisum. Hunc illi ē  
 nāvi ēgressum, cum ad eōs ōrātōris modō Caesaris mandāta

4. **aggregō**, 1, *tr.* [ad+grex, flock],  
*unite in a flock*; assemble; join, attach.  
 1.

9. **scapha**, -ae, *f.*, skiff, boat. 1.  
**speculātōrius**, -a, -um, *adj.* [specu-  
 lator, spy], of a spy, spying, scouting. 1.

3. **alius . . . nāvi**, "men from different ships."

**quibuscumque . . . aggregābat**, "gathered about whatever standards they chanced upon"; as in the battle with the Nervii, II, 21, 13.

5. **ubi cōspexerant**: the pluperfect instead of the usual perfect with *ubi*, expressing repeated action, just as the following imperfects do.

7. **plūrēs**, "several" of the enemy.  
**in ūniversōs**, "upon the main body."

9. **scaphās, speculātōria nāvigia**: these boats could be rowed into shallow water.

11. **simul** = *simul atque*.

10. **labōrō**, 1, *intr.* [labor, toil], toil, work hard; be anxious, troubled, or perplexed; labor, suffer, be hard pressed.  
 3.

6. **ōrātōr**, -ōris, *m.* [ōrō, speak], speaker; ambassador, envoy. 1.

13. **neque**, "but . . . not."

**longius**, "very far."

14. **capere**, "reach." See note on *tardius*, 23, 4.

**hoc ūnum**: the pursuit by the cavalry was an important part of every regular engagement.

Chap. 27. The Britons sue for peace.

3. **datūrōs, factūrōs sēsē**: the regular construction after verbs of promising; see note on *dare*, 21, 10.

4. **suprà**: see 21, 13.

6. **cum**, "although."

**modō**, "in the capacity of," "as."

dēferret, comprehenderant atque in vincula coniēcerant; tum proeliō factō remisērunt, et in petendā pāce eius rei culpam in multitudinem contulērunt et propter imprudentiam ut ignōs-  
 10 cerētur petivērunt. Caesar questus quod, cum ultrō in continentem lēgātis missis pācem ab sē petissent, bellum sine causā intulissent, ignōscere imprudentiae dixit obsidēsque imperāvit; quōrum illi partem statim dedērunt, partem ex longinquiōribus locis arcessitam paucis diēbus sēsē datūrōs dixerunt. Intereā  
 15 suōs remigrāre in agrōs iussērunt, principēsque undique convenire et sē civitatēsque suās Caesari commendāre coepērunt.

28. His rēbus pāce cōfirmatā, post diem quārtum quam est in Britanniam ventum nāvēs XVIII, dē quibus suprà dēmōnstrātum est, quae equitēs sustulerant, ex superiōre portū lēnī ventō solvērunt. Quae cum appropinquārent Britanniae et ex  
 5 castris vidērentur, tanta tempestās subitō coorta est ut nūlla eārum cursum tenēre posset, sed aliae eōdem unde erant profectione referrentur, aliae ad inferiōrem partem insulae, quae est

8. culpa, -ae, f., blame, fault, guilt.

1. 9. imprudentia, -ae, f. [imprudentia, imprudent], imprudence, want of foresight or forethought, ignorance, indiscretion. 2.

ignōscō, -nōscere, -nōvi, -nōtum, intr. [in-+(g)nōscōns, knowing; nōs-

cō], forgive, pardon. 3.

13. longinquus, -a, -um, adj. [longus, long], far off, distant, remote; long, long continued. 2.

16. commendō, 1, tr. [mandō, entrust], entrust; surrender. 1.

3. lēnis, -e, adj., gentle, mild, smooth. 1.

8. eius rei: the treatment of Com-mius.

9. ut ignōscerētur, "that they be pardoned." In what case would "they" be, if expressed? App. 115, d.

10. cum lēgātis missis petissent, "after they had sent hostages and begged"; see 21, 10.

14. arcessitam, "for whom they had sent."

15. in agrōs, "to their farms."

Chap. 28-31. A storm turns back Caesar's cavalry and wrecks his fleet. Although he partially repairs the fleet, the Britons are encouraged to attack him.

Chap. 28. The cavalry transports are driven back by a storm.

1. post . . . quam = *diē quārtō postquam*. When *postquam* is divided, *post* is usually an adverb, "afterwards . . . than." Here it is a preposition. The day was August 30th, the third day after his arrival, according to our reckoning.

2. suprà, see 22, 15 and 23, 4.

6. aliae, aliae: the wind must have come from the north or northeast. The ships that were farthest out at sea were driven back at once; the others got some shelter west of Dover, but as the storm proved too severe they preferred to return to Gaul rather than land on the hostile shore of Britain, miles from Caesar's camp.

propius sôlis occâsum, magnô suô cum periculô dêicerentur; quae tamen ancoris iactis, cum flûctibus complêrentur, neces-  
sariô adversâ nocte in altum prôvectae continentem petiêrunt. 10

29. Eâdem nocte accidit ut esset lûna plêna, quî diês mari-  
timôs aestûs maximôs in Ôceanô efficere cōsuêvit; nostrisque  
id erat incognitum. Ita ûnô tempore et longâs nâvês, quâs in  
âridum subdûxerat, aestus complêbat, et onerâriâs, quae ad  
ancorâs erant dêligâtæ, tempestâs afflictâbat, neque ûlla nos- 5  
tris facultâs aut administrandî aut auxiliandî dabâtur. Com-  
plûribus nâvibus frâctis, reliquae cum essent fûnibus, ancoris,  
reliquisque armâmentis âmissis ad nâvigandum inûtilês, magna,  
id quod necesse erat accidere, tôtius exercitûs perturbâtiô facta  
est. Neque enim nâvês erant aliae quibus reportâri possent, 10  
et omnia deerant quae ad reficiendâs nâvês erant ûsuî, et, quod

10. prôvehô, -vehere, -vexi, -vec-  
tum, *tr.* [vehô, carry], carry forward;  
*pass.*, be carried forward, sail. 1.

1. lûna, -ae, *f.*, the moon. 2.

5. dêligô, 1, *tr.* [ligô, bind], bind or  
tie down, fasten, moor. 2.

6. auxillor, 1, *intr.* [auxilium, aid],  
give aid, help, assist, render assistance.  
1.

7. frangô frangere, frêgi, frâc-  
tum, *tr.*, break, wreck; crush, discour-  
age. 2.

9. perturbâtiô, -ônis, *f.* [perturbô,  
disturb], disturbance, disorder, confu-  
sion. 1.

10. reportô, 1, *tr.* [re-+portô,  
carry], carry or bring back, convey.  
1.

8. occâsum: for construction see  
note on *propius* *et.* 9, 3.

9. cum complêrentur, "since they  
began to fill."

10. adversâ nocte, "in the face of  
the night."

Chap. 29. The storm and the tide  
wreck Caesar's fleet.

1. lûna plêna: there was a full moon  
on the night of August 30th. This is  
what enables us to calculate the day of  
Caesar's arrival in Britain.

2. aestûs maximôs: the "spring"  
tide. The average rise and fall of the  
tide at Deal is said to be 16 feet. This  
tide, helped by the wind, rose much  
higher.

nostris . . . incognitum: the Ro-  
mans were best acquainted with the

Mediterranean, where the tides rise only  
a few inches. Yet they had had some  
experience with the tides in the war with  
the Veneti.

4. quae . . . dêligâtæ, "which were  
riding at anchor." The transports were  
heavier than the war-ships and Caesar  
had not thought it worth the effort to  
beach them.

6. administrandî, "of managing  
them."

9. id quod or *quae rês* is commonly  
used instead of *quod* when the antece-  
dent is a clause.

10. quibus possent: a clause of  
characteristic.

11. omnia quae erant ûsuî, "all the  
things which were needed"; a determin-  
ing clause. App. 231.

omnibus cōstābat hiemārī in Galliā oportēre, frūmentum in his locis in hiemem prōvisum nōn erat.

30. Quibus rēbus cognitīs principēs Britanniae, quī post proelium ad Caesarem convēnerant, inter sē collocūtī, cum et equitēs et nāvēs et frūmentum Rōmānīs deesse intellexerent et paucitatem militum ex castrōrum exiguitate cognōscerent, quae hōc erant etiam angustiora, quod sine impedimentis Caesar legiōnēs trānsportāverat, optimum factū esse dūxerunt rebellione factā frūmentō commeātūque nostrōs prohibēre et rem in hiemem prōducere, quod his superātis aut reditū interclūsīs nēmīnem postea bellī inferendī causā in Britanniam trānsitūrum cōfidēbant. Itaque rūsus coniūrātiōne factā paulatim ex castris discēdere et suōs clam ex agris dēducere coeperunt.

31. At Caesar, etsī nōndum eōrum cōnsilia cognōverat, tamen et ex ēventū nāvium suārum et ex eō, quod obsidēs dare intermiserant, fore id quod accidit suspiciābatur. Itaque ad omnēs cāsūs subsidia comparābat. Nam et frūmentum ex agris cotidie in castra cōferēbat et quae gravissimē afflictāe erant nāvēs, eārum materiā atque aere ad reliquās reficiendās utēbatur et quae ad eas rēs erant ūsui ex continentī comparārī iubē-

8. *reditus*, -ūs, *m.* [*redeō*, return], returning, return. 1.

5. *affligō*, -figere, -fixi, -flictum, *tr.*, strike against; overthrow; damage,

injure. 1.

6. *aes*, *aeris*, *n.* copper; anything made of copper, coin, money; *aes alienum*, another's money, debt. 1.

12. *hiemārī oportēre*, "that they must pass the winter."

13. *in hiemem*, "for the winter."

Chap. 30. The Britons plan to renew hostilities.

1. *principēs*: subject of *dūxerunt*, l. 6.

5. *hōc*, "on this account."

*etiam*, "still."

6. *optimum*: predicate adjective with *esse*, the subject being *prohibēre* and *prōducere*.

*factū*: App. 296. It is not needed in translation.

7. *factā*: translate as an infinitive, coordinate with *prohibēre*.

*rem*, "operations."

8. *his superātis*, "if these (troops) were overpowered."

Chap. 31. Caesar repairs his fleet.

2. *ex . . . eō*, "from the disaster to his ships and from the fact."

3. *quod accidit*, "which really did happen."

4. *cāsūs*, "emergencies."

5. *quae nāvēs, eārum*, "of those ships which."

6. *aere*: iron was not much used in the construction of ships, because it rusts.

bat. Itaque cum summō studiō ā militibus administrārētur, duodecim nāvibus āmissis, reliquīs ut nāvigārī commodē posset effēcit.

**32.** Dum ea geruntur, legiōne ex cōnsuētūdine ūnā frūmentātum missā, quae appellābātur septima, neque ūllā ad id tempus bellī suspiciōne interpositā, cum pars hominum in agrīs remanēret, pars etiam in castra ventitāret, iī quī prō portīs castrōrum in stationē erant Caesarī nūntiāverunt pulverem maiōrem quam cōnsuētūdō ferret in eā parte vidērī quam in partem legiō iter fēcisset. Caesar id quod erat suspicātus, aliquid novī ā barbaris initum cōnsilī, cohortēs quae in stationibus erant sēcum in eam partem proficiscī, ex reliquīs duās in stationem succēdere, reliquās armārī et cōnfestim sēsē subsequī iussit. Cum paulō longius ā castrīs prōcessisset, suōs ab hostibus premī atque aegrē sustinēre et cōnfertā legiōne ex omnibus partibus tēla conici animadvertit. Nam quod, omnī ex reliquīs partibus dēmesso frūmentō, pars ūna erat reliqua, suspicātī hostēs hūc nostrōs esse ventūrōs noctū in silvis dēlītuerant; tum dispersōs dēpositis armīs in metendō occupātōs subitō adortī paucīs interfectīs reliquōs incertīs ordinibus perturbāverant, simul equitātū atque essedīs circumdederant.

5. pulvis, -eris, *m.*, dust. 1.

10. cōnfestim, *adv.*, hastily, at once, immediately. 1.

14. dēmētō, -metere, -messul, -messum, *tr.* [metō, reap], mow, reap. 1.

15. dēlītēscō, -lītēscere, -lītul,

8. summō studiō: the soldiers were as anxious to get away as Caesar was.

9. reliquīs . . . effēcit, *lit.* "made that it could be sailed by the rest," = "made the others fit to sail in."

Chap. 32-36. After repelling the Britons, who attack first one legion, then the camp, Caesar returns to Gaul.

Chap. 32. The Britons attack one legion while it is engaged in foraging.

1. frūmentātum: App. 295.

3. interpositā, "having arisen."

in agrīs remanēret: ostensibly en-

—, *intr.* [latēscō, *incept.* of lateō, lie hidden], hide one's self, lurk. 1.

16. metō, metere, messul, messum, *tr.*, mow, reap. 1.

18. essedum, -i, *n.*, a two-wheeled war chariot of the Britons. 2.

gaged in labor on the farms near the camp.

6. quam . . . ferret, "than usual."

7. id quod erat, "what was really the case"; explained by the clause *aliquid . . . cōnsilī*, "that some new plan had been entered upon."

8. cohortēs: probably four, one at each gate.

10. succēdere, "to take their places." armārī, "to arm themselves."

14. ūna, "only one."

17. incertīs ordinibus: owing to

**33.** Genus hoc est ex essedis pugnae. Primō per omnēs partēs perequitant et tēla coniciunt atque ipsō terrōre equōrum et strepitū rotārum ordinēs plērumque perturbant, et cum sē inter equitum turmās insinuāvērunt, ex essedis dēsiliunt et  
 5 pedibus proeliantur. Aurigae interim paulātim ex proeliō ex-  
 cēdunt atque ita currūs collocant ut, si illi ā multitudīne hos-  
 tium premantur, expeditum ad suōs receptum habeant. Ita mōbilitātem equitum, stabilitātem peditum in proeliis prae-  
 stant, ac tantum ūsū cotidiānō et exercitātiōne efficiunt utī in  
 10 declivī ac praecipiti locō incitātōs equōs sustinēre et brevī  
 moderārī ac flectere et per tēmōnem percurrere et in iugō insis-  
 tere et sē inde in currūs citissimē recipere cōsuērint.

**34.** Quibus rēbus perturbātis nostris novitāte pugnae tem-

circumdō, -dare, -dedi, -datum, *tr.* [dō, put], put around, encompass, surround. 3.

2. perequitō, 1, *intr.* [equitō, ride], ride about, ride through or around. 1.

3. rota, -ae, *f.*, wheel. 1.

4. turma, -ae, *f.*, troop or squadron of about thirty cavalrymen. 1.

insinuō, 1, *tr.* [sinuō, wind], wind into; make one's way into, penetrate. 1.

5. auriga, -ae, *m.*, charioteer. 1.

6. currus, -ūs, *m.*, chariot; wagon. 2.

7. receptus, -ūs, *m.* [recipiō, receive, retreat; refuge, shelter. 1.

8. stabilitās, -tātis, *f.* [stabilis, firm], firmness, steadiness. 1.

11. moderor, 1, *tr.* [modus, limit], manage, govern, control, guide. 1.

flectō, flectere, flexi, flexum, *tr.*, bend, turn, direct. 1.

tēmō, -ōnis, *m.*, pole (of a wagon). 1.

percurrō, -currere, -curri, -cursum, *intr.* [currō, run], run along or over. 1.

12. citō, *adv.*, quickly, speedily. *Comp.*, citius; *sup.*, citissimē. 1.

1. novitās, -tātis, *f.* [novus, new], newness; strangeness, novelty. 1.

the surprise the usual line of battle could not be formed.

Chap. 33. How the Britons use their war-chariots in battle.

2. equōrum, "caused by the horses."

4. equitum turmās: the cavalry of the enemy, whom they thus attacked. Caesar had no cavalry this year, but this is a general description; in the next expedition his cavalry were thus defeated.

6. illi: the warriors, who had alighted.

7. expeditum receptum, "a ready retreat."

8. praestant, "display."

10. ac, "and even."

incitātōs, "when at full speed."

sustinēre, "to check"; depending on cōsuērint.

brevī, "quickly."

11. per, "along."

iugō: the crossbar attached to the end of the pole and resting on the horses' necks.

Chap. 34. Caesar rescues the imperiled legion, and the Britons march against his camp.

1. rēbus: ablative of means.

nostris: indirect object of tulit. perturbātis agrees with it.

novitāte, "because of the strangeness."

pore opportunissimō Caesar auxilium tulit; namque eius adventū hostēs cōstitērunt, nostrī sē ex timōre recēpērunt. Quō factō ad lacesendum hostem et ad committendum proelium aliēnum esse tempus arbitrātus suō sē locō continuit et brevī tempore intermissō in castra legiōnēs redūxit. Dum haec geruntur, nostrīs omnibus occupātis, quī erant in agrīs reliquī discessērunt. Secūtāe sunt continuōs complūrēs diēs tempestātēs quāe et nostrōs in castris continērent et hostem ā pugnā prohibērent. Interim barbarī nūntiōs in omnēs partēs dimisērunt paucitātemque nostrōrum militum suis praedicāvērunt et quanta praedae faciendae atque in perpetuum suī liberandī facultās darētur, si Rōmānōs castris expulissent, dēmōstrāvērunt. His rēbus celeriter magnā multitudīne peditātūs equitātūsque coāctā, ad castra vērunt.

**35.** Caesar etsī idem quod superiōribus diēbus acciderat fore vidēbat, ut, si essent hostēs pulsī, celeritāte periculum effugerent, tamen nactus equitēs circiter xxx, quōs Commius Atrebās, dē quō ante dictum est, sēcum trāsportāverat, legiōnēs in aciē prō castris cōstituit. Commissō proeliō diūtius nostrōrum militum impetum hostēs ferre nōn potuērunt ac terga vertērunt. Quōs tantō spatiō secūtī quantum cursū et

8. **continuus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [con-tineō, hold together], holding together, unbroken, uninterrupted, continuous. 2.

11. **praedicō**, 1, *tr.* [dicō, proclaim], proclaim publicly or before others; declare, report, tell of. 3.

5. **aliēnum**, *lit.* "belonging to another," = "unfavorable." *suō*, "his own," almost illustrates the corresponding meaning, "favorable."

6. **dum haec geruntur**, "in the meantime."

7. **quī . . . reliquī**: mentioned in 32, 3.

9. **quāe continērent**: App. 230, a, examples.

12. **praedae faciendae**: they would have been disappointed, for the Romans

12. **praeda**, -ae, *f.*, booty, plunder, spoil. 2.

14. **peditātus**, -ūs, *m.* [pedes, foot soldier], foot soldiers, infantry 1.

3. **effugiō**, -fugere, -fūgi, —, *tr and intr.* [ex+fugiō, flee], flee from or away, escape. 1.

had left their baggage in Gaul: 30, 5. **sui liberandī**: see note on *sui pūrgandī*, 13, 14.

Chap. 35. The Britons are put to flight.

1. **idem fore, ut**, "that the same thing would occur . . . namely, that."

4. **ante**: in 21, 14 and 27, 4.

5. **diūtius**, "very long."

6. **ac**, "but"; for this translation see note on III, 19, 9.

7. **tantō spatiō quantum . . . po-**

vīribus efficere potuērunt, complūrēs ex iīs occidērunt, deinde omnibus longē lātēque aedificiis incēnsis sē in castra recēpērunt.

**36.** Eōdem diē lēgātī ab hostibus missī ad Caesarem dē pāce vērērunt. His Caesar numerum obsidum quem ante imperāverat duplicāvit eōsque in continentem addūcī iussit, quod propinquā diē aequinoctī infirmīs nāvibus hiemī nāvigātiōnem subiciendam nōn existimābat. Ipse idōneam tempestātem nactus paulō post mediam noctem nāvēs solvit; quae omnēs incolumēs ad continentem pervērērunt; sed ex iīs onerāriae duae eōsdem portūs quōs reliquae capere nōn potuērunt et paulō infā dēlātae sunt.

**37.** Quibus ex nāvibus cum essent expositī militēs circiter trecentī atque in castra contenderent, Morinī, quōs Caesar in Britanniam proficiscēns pācātōs reliquerat, spē praedae adductī primō nōn ita magnō suōrum numerō circumstetērunt ac, si sēsē interficī nōllent, arma pōnere iussērunt. Cum illī orbe

**3. duplicō,** 1, *tr.* [duplex, double], double, increase. 1.

**4. aequinoctium, -ti, n.** [aequus, equal + nox, night], the equinox. 1.

**9. infā,** *adv.* [inferus, below], below; *prep. with acc.*, below, smaller

than. 1.

**2. trecentī, -ae, -a** (CCC), *card. num. adj.* [trēs, three + centum, hundred], three hundred. 1.

**5. orbis, -is, m., orb,** ring, circle; **orbis terrārum,** the world. 1.

tuērunt, "over as great a distance as their speed and strength permitted." *spatiō* is an ablative of the way (App. 144), where an accusative of extent of space would seem more natural; see H.-B. 426, c.

Chap. 36. Caesar returns to Gaul.

**2. his:** dative of reference.

**3. eōs . . . iussit:** it is not surprising to learn later that most of the tribes failed to do this.

**4. propinquā diē:** ablative absolute. As Caesar reached Britain August 27th, and the equinox then fell on Sept. 24th, he must have remained in Britain about three weeks.

**hiemī . . . subiciendam,** "that his voyage should be exposed to wintry weather."

**8. quōs reliquae,** "as the rest." **capere,** "reach," "make." **et,** "but."

**9. infā:** to the south. They may have landed at Ambletuse.

Chap. 37-38. The Morini revolt and are conquered.

Chap. 37. The Morini attack the troops from the two transports, but are repulsed.

**1. quibus ex nāvibus:** i.e. the two transports.

**2. in castra:** at Wissant.

**3. pācātōs:** see 22, 1-11.

**4. primō:** the adverb.

**ita,** "so very," "very."

**5. pōnere,** "to lay down."

**orbe:** a formation like the modern hollow square, used when troops were attacked on all sides.

factō sēsē dēfenderent, celeriter ad clāmōrem hominum circiter milia sex convēnerunt. Quā rē nūntiātā Caesar omnem ex castris equitātum suis auxiliō misit. Interim nostrī milites impetum hostium sustinuērunt atque amplius hōris quattuor fortissimē pugnāvērunt et paucis vulneribus acceptis complūrēs 10 ex his occidērunt. Postea vērō quam equitātus noster in cōnspectum vēnit, hostēs abiectis armis terga vertērunt magnusque eōrum numerus est occisus.

**38.** Caesar posterō diē T. Labiēnum lēgātum cum iis legiōnibus quās ex Britannia redūxerat in Morinōs, quī rebellīōnem fēcerant, misit. Quī cum propter siccitātēs palūdum quō sē recipere nōn habērent, quō perfugiō superiōre annō erant ūsi, omnēs ferē in potestātem Labiēni vērunt. At Q. Titū- 5 rius et L. Cotta lēgātī, quī in Menapiōrum finēs legiōnēs dūxerant, omnibus eōrum agris vāstātis, frūmentis succisis, aedificiis incēnsis, quod Menapii sē omnēs in dēnsissimās silvās abdiderant, sē ad Caesarem recēpērunt. Caesar in Belgis omnium legiōnum hiberna cōstituit. Eō duae omninō civitātēs 10 ex Britannia obsidēs misērunt, reliquae neglēxērunt. His rēbus gestis ex litteris Caesaris diērum vīginti supplicātiō ā senātū dēcrēta est.

**3.** siccitās, -tātis, *f.* [siccus, dry], drought, dryness. 1.

**4.** perfugium, -gi, *n.* [perfugiō, flee for refuge], place of refuge, refuge. 1.

**6.** hominum: with *milia*.

Chap. 38. Labienus conquers the Morini. The army is quartered for the winter among the Belgae. A thanksgiving in Caesar's honor.

**3.** siccitātēs: translate by the singular.

quō . . . habērent, lit. "had not where they could retreat," = "had nowhere to retreat"; App. 230, c.

**4.** quō perfugiō erant ūsi, lit. "which refuge they had used," = "the

refuge [i.e. the swamps] which they had used." For the fact see III, 28, 8.

**6.** qui . . . dūxerant: see 22, 18.

**9.** in Belgis: in readiness for the next year's expedition to Britain.

**12.** diērum vīginti supplicātiō: see note on II, 35, 10, and notice the increased number of days. Caesar's two expeditions into lands where no Roman general had ever before set foot had made a wonderful impression at Rome.

## BOOK V. SECOND INVASION OF BRITAIN. REVOLT OF THE EBURONES, NERVII, AND TREVERI

If Cæsar accomplished nothing else by his first expedition to Britain, he at least learned that a large force would be needed for its subjugation. Therefore he quartered his army for the winter at suitable places for ship-building and gave orders for the construction of a large fleet. On returning from Cisalpine Gaul, early in June, 54 B.C., he found so many new ships constructed that his total fleet amounted to 800 vessels. Giving orders for the concentration of his forces at Port Itius, he hastened off to quiet the Treveri, who threatened to make trouble during his absence. This done, all was in readiness for the voyage; but a northwest wind delayed him twenty-five days.

At last, about July 20, with five legions and 2,000 cavalry, he set sail at sunset. About noon the next day he reached Deal, and landed without opposition. That same night, leaving a guard for the ships, he led his army twelve miles inland to a little stream, on whose farther bank the Britons were drawn up. Quickly driven from this position, the natives took refuge in a well-fortified stronghold near by, only to be routed once more. Here Caesar fortified a camp and spent the night. In the morning the troops had begun the pursuit of the enemy, when Caesar was recalled by the news of the partial destruction of the fleet by a storm during the night. Though time was precious, he decided to have the fleet drawn up on the shore and surrounded by a fortification, which was done in ten days. He then returned to the camp from which he had been recalled.

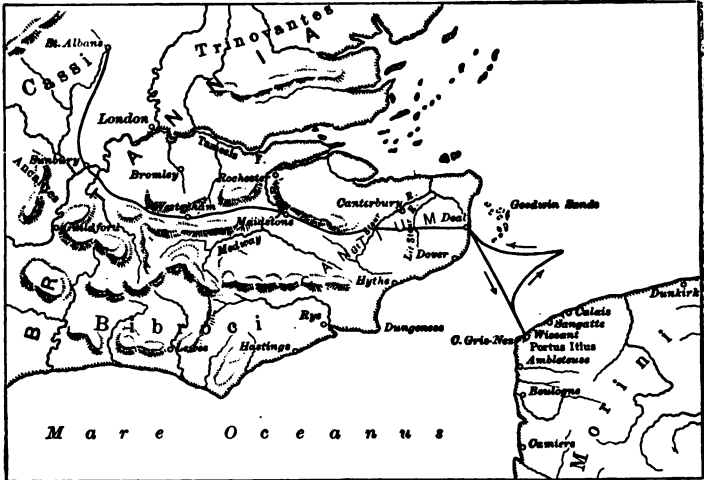
The Britons had made good use of the time. The several tribes had postponed their differences with one another, had united their forces and had given the command to the able and energetic Cassivellaunus. One attempt convinced this leader that no British army could stand against the Romans in regular battle. Henceforth he determined to fight no pitched battle, but to harass Caesar's march, to prevent his foraging, and thus to wear him out. Caesar, on the other hand, determined to put an end to the contest, and marched farther inland. At the Thames the enemy once more tried to make a stand, having obstructed the only ford with stakes; but the Romans would not be stopped. The principal tribes now submitted, and Caesar captured the stronghold of Cassivellaunus. The British leader made one more effort: he instigated an attack on the fleet, which resulted disastrously to the Britons. Then he made a nominal submission and Caesar returned to Gaul.

In the fall of this year a blow was struck by the Eburones which inflicted upon Caesar's army the most serious loss of its entire Gallic experience, and which so encouraged the other Gauls that it led to the great general revolt a year and a half later. Because of scanty harvests in Gaul, Caesar distributed his army for the winter more widely than usual, being careful, however, to keep the several detachments within what he thought easy reach of one another. One legion and a half were quartered among the Eburones, under Sabinus and Cotta. Fifty miles west of them, among the Nervii, Quintus Cicero commanded one legion. At a little greater distance, near the Treveri, lay another legion, commanded by Labienus. Other legions were in or near Samarobriua, two hundred miles to the west. In Samarobriua was Caesar, postponing his visit to Italy until he should hear that all the winter quarters were well established.

At the instigation of Indutiomarus, a chief of the Treveri whom Caesar had humbled before sailing to Britain, the Eburones made a sudden attack on Sabinus and Cotta. When they were repulsed, one of their leaders, Ambiorix, asked for an interview, and under pretense of friendship persuaded the Romans to abandon their camp and join either Cicero or Labienus. He promised under oath not to hinder their march. Scarcely had they gone two miles when they were attacked in a narrow defile. After a desperate conflict, prolonged from sunrise until the middle of the afternoon, the legion and a half were destroyed almost to a man.

Before this great disaster became known to the Romans, Ambiorix joined the Nervii and persuaded them to attack Cicero. As before, the Gauls were repulsed and Ambiorix advised the Romans to abandon their camp; but Cicero refused, and defended his post with the greatest heroism. Day after day messengers were sent to Caesar, only to be caught and tortured to death. At last one got through. Moving at once to the rescue Caesar raised the siege and defeated the Gauls. This success checked for a time the general revolt which had seemed imminent; but Gaul was so restless and ready for revolt that Caesar for once gave up his usual visit to Italy and remained with his army.

The chief inspirer of rebellion during the winter was Indutiomarus. At last he raised an army, with the intention of joining other states with whose chiefs he had been in correspondence. First, however, he wished to storm the camp of Labienus. By pretending fear the Romans lured him right under the walls of their camp, then charged out on him. In the panic-stricken flight that followed, Indutiomarus was killed. Then Caesar, as he remarks, "had a quieter Gaul."



### THE SECOND INVASION OF BRITAIN

The sailing and landing points are assumed to be the same as in the previous expedition (p. 254), although Caesar says only that he used the points which he had found most suitable in the previous summer. The sailing point of the previous expedition had been entirely satisfactory; and he had found no opportunity of exploring the coast of Britain for a better landing point, so that he must have landed at any rate very near his first landing point.

Caesar set sail with a wind blowing from the southwest (chap. 8), which was not the most suitable wind for a voyage to Deal with flat-bottomed ships; but the tide was running toward the southwest and served to keep his ships from drifting down the wind to the northeast. A gentle breeze which died out at midnight could not have carried him more than half way across. Then the tide changed and carried him to the northeast for five hours, probably from twelve to fifteen miles; and in the morning he saw that he had got farther away from Britain, which now lay at his left. The Goodwin Sands prevented his making directly for Deal, so that he had nearly twenty-five miles to row. The tide, which again changed to the southwest, helped him at first, but not in the latter part of his voyage, so that it was nearly midday before he reached Deal.

The route in Britain is that of Napoleon and Rüstow, but too few data are given by Caesar to make any part of it certain.

## LIBER QUINTUS.

1. L. Domitiō Ap. Claudiō cōsulibus discēdēns ab hiberniis Caesar in Italiā, ut quotannis facere cōsuērat, lēgātis imperat quōs legiōnibus praefēcerat utī quam plūrimās possent hieme nāvēs aedificandās veterēsque reficiendās cūrārent. Eārum modum fōrmaque dēmōnstrat. Ad celeritātem onerandī sub-  
ductionisque paulō facit humiliōrēs quam quibus in nostrō mari  
ūtī cōsuēvimus, atque id eō magis, quod propter crēbrās com-  
mūtatiōnēs aestuum minus magnōs ibi fluctūs fierī cognōverat,  
ad onera ac multitudinem iūmentōrum trānsportandam paulō  
lātiōrēs quam quibus in reliquīs ūtimur maribus. Hās omnēs 10  
āctuāriās imperat fierī, quam ad rem multum humilitās adiu-  
vat. Ea quae sunt ūsuī ad armandās nāvēs ex Hispaniā ap-  
portārī iubet. Ipse conventibus Galliae citeriōris peractīs in

Chap. 1-5. Caesar makes all preparations for a second invasion of Britain.

Chap. 1. Caesar gives orders for the construction of a fleet. He goes to Illyricum.

1. L. Domitiō . . . cōsulibus: in the year 54 B.C. The consuls took office on Jan. 1, and Caesar seems to have remained with the army till after that day, no doubt visiting the various winter quarters and seeing the work of ship-building well started.

4. aedificandās cūrārent: see App. 285, II, b. The ships were probably constructed at several points on the rivers of Belgium.

5. subductiōnis: the Romans regularly beached their ships for the winter. See also IV, 29, 4.

6. humiliōrēs: probably both less deep in the water and less high out of the water. They must have been nearly flat-bottomed.

quam quibus, "than those which."  
nostrō mari: the Mediterranean.

7. atque id, "and [he did] that."

propter . . . aestuum: an incorrect reason.

10. lātiōrēs: like humiliōrēs, a predicate adjective with facit.

reliquīs maribus: the various parts of the Mediterranean.

11. āctuāriās: i.e. they had both oars and sails. The transports used in the preceding expedition had no oars, though the galleys did have them.

imperat fierī: note the unusual infinitive with imperō, which usually takes ut or nē with the subjunctive. The passive infinitive only is thus used.

humilitās: if the sides had been high it would have been necessary to cut portholes for the oars.

12. ex Hispaniā: the Romans got their best ropes and much of their metal from Spain.

Illyricum proficiscitur, quod a Pirustis finitimam partem provinciae incursionibus vastari audiebat. Eo cum venisset, civitatibus milites imperat certumque in locum convenire iubet. Quam rem nuntiata Pirustae legatos ad eum mittunt qui doceant nihil earum rerum publico factum consilio, seseque paratos esse demonstrant omnibus rationibus de iniuriis satisfacere.

20 Percepta oratione eorum Caesar obsides imperat eosque ad certam diem adduci iubet; nisi ita fecerint, sese bello civitatem persecuturum demonstrat. Iis ad diem adductis ut imperaverat, arbitros inter civitates dat qui litem aestiment poenamque constituent.

2. His confectis rebus conventibusque peractis in citeriorem Galliam revertitur atque inde ad exercitum proficiscitur. Eo cum venisset, circumitis omnibus hibernis singulari militum studio in summam omnium rerum inopiam circiter sescentas eius generis cuius supra demonstravimus naves et longas xxviii invenit instructas, neque multum abesse ab eo, quin paucis diebus deduci possint. Collaudatis militibus atque iis qui negotio praefuerant, quid fieri velit ostendit atque omnes ad portum Itium convenire iubet, quo ex portu commodissimum in Britanniam traiectum esse cognoverat, circiter milium passuum xxx a continenti; huic rei quod satis esse visum est militum relin-

14. *Illyricum*: this was his second visit; see III, 7, 3.

18. *earum rerum*: i.e. the raids.

23. *dat*, "he appointed."

*poenam*, "compensation."

Chap. 2. Caesar inspects the fleet and leads a force against the Treveri.

1. *conventibus*: in Illyricum: he had already held court in Cisalpine Gaul; I, 13. Notice Caesar's unrelenting energy in the only vacation he had: between Jan. 1 and early summer he traveled from Belgium to northern Italy, held court there, went to Illyricum, cowed the Pirustae, held court in Illyricum, and traveled back to Belgium.

4. *in*, "in spite of."

5. *cuius*: attracted from the accusative into the case of its antecedent.

6. *neque . . . possint*, lit. "and that it was not far from this, that they could, etc." Make English of this.

8. *portum Itium*: see map, p. 294. This was Wissant, the harbor which he had used in the preceding year, and which he had found most suitable for his purpose (*quo . . . cognoverat*).

10. *milium passuum XXX*: a descriptive genitive, depending on *traiectum*. This is about the length of a direct voyage to his landing point, Deal.

11. *huic rei*: for completing and launching the ships, and for taking them to Wissant.

quit. Ipse cum legiōnibus expeditis IIII et equitibus DCCC in finēs Trēverōrum proficiscitur, quod hī neque ad concilia veniēbant, neque imperiō parēbant Germānōsque Trānsrhēnānōs sollicitāre dicēbantur.

15

3. Haec civitās longē plūrimū tōtius Galliae equitātū valet magnāsque habet cōpiās peditum, Rhēnumque, ut suprā dēmōstrāvimus, tangit. In eā civitatē duo dē principātū inter sē contendēbant, Indutiomārus et Cingetorix; ex quibus alter, simul atque dē Caesaris legiōnumque adventū cognitum<sup>5</sup> est, ad eum vēnit, sē suōsque omnēs in officiō futūrōs neque ab amicitia populī Rōmānī dēfectūrōs cōfirmāvit, quaeque in Trēveris gererentur ostendit. At Indutiomārus equitātum peditātumque cōgere, iisque quī per aetātem in armīs esse nōn poterant in silvam Arduennam abditis, quae ingentī magnitū-<sup>10</sup> dine per mediōs finēs Trēverōrum ā flūmine Rhēnō ad initium Rēmōrum pertinet, bellum parāre instituit. Sed posteāquam nōn nullī principēs ex eā civitatē et auctoritatē Cingetorigis adducti et adventū nostrī exercitūs perterriti ad Caesarem vē-  
nērunt et dē suis privātis rēbus ab eō petere coepērunt, quoniam<sup>15</sup> civitatī cōsulare nōn possent, veritus nē ab omnibus dēsererētur, lēgātōs ad Caesarem mittit: Sēsē idcirco ab suis discēdere atque ad eum venīre nōluisse, quō facilius civitātem in officiō

12. *expeditis*: i.e. without the heavy baggage.

13. *concilia*: Caesar had now begun to call regular meetings of representatives from the Gallic states. Attendance on them was a test of loyalty to Rome.

Chap. 3. Two rival chiefs of the Treveri seek Caesar's support.

1. *haec civitās*: the Treveri.

*plūrimū equitātū valet*: cf. II, 24, 11.

2. *suprā*: in III, 11, 1. Their proximity to the Germans made them more restless and dangerous.

3. *principātū*, "leadership."

4. *Indutiomārus* was the father-in-law of Cingetorix.

5. *alter*, "the latter."

6. *suōs*, "his party."

9. *cōgere*: with *instituit*.

10. *ingentī magnitūdine*: descriptive ablative with *quae*.

11. *initium*: i.e. their northeastern frontier.

13. *nōn nullī principēs*: who belonged to the faction of Indutiomarus.

15. *privātis rēbus*, "individual interests."

*quoniam* . . . *possent*: implied indirect discourse. They said, in effect, that they were not strong enough to settle the dispute between Indutiomarus and Cingetorix, and could only look out for themselves.

18. *quō*: see App. 225, a, 2.

continēret, nē omnis nōbilitātis discessū plēbs propter imprū-  
dentiam lāberētur; itaque cīvitātem in suā potestāte esse,  
sēque, sī Caesar permitteret, ad eum in castra ventūrum, et  
suās cīvitātisque fortūnās eius fidēi permissūrum.

4. Caesar, etsī intellegēbat quā dē causā ea dicerentur  
quaeque eum rēs ab institūtō cōnsiliō dēterrēret, tamen, nē  
aestātem in Trēverīs cōnsūmere cōgerētur, omnibus rēbus ad  
Britannicum bellum comparātis, Indutiomārum ad sē cum  
ducentis obsidibus venīre iussit. His adductis, in iis filiō pro-  
pinquisque eius omnibus, quōs nōminātīm ēvocāverat, cōsolā-  
tus Indutiomārum hortātusque est utī in officiō manēret; nihilō  
tamen sētius principibus Trēverōrum ad sē convocātis hōs sin-  
gillātīm Cingetorigī conciliāvit, quod cum meritō eius ab sē  
fieri intellegēbat, tum magnī interesse arbitrābātur eius auctōri-  
tātem inter suōs quam plūrimum valēre, cuius tam ēgregiam  
in sē voluntātem perspexisset. Id factum graviter tulit Indu-  
tiomārus, suam grātiām inter suōs minui, et quī iam ante ini-  
micō in nōs animō fuisset, multō gravius hōc dolōre exārsit.

5. His rēbus cōstitutis Caesar ad portum Itium cum legi-  
onibus pervenit. Ibi cognōscit LX nāvēs, quae in Meldis factae

19. nē, "for fear that."

omnis . . . discessū: i.e. if all the chiefs should go to Caesar.

20. itaque . . . esse, "therefore [because he had not come to Caesar] the whole state was in his power"; implying that he, and not Cingetorix, had the right to treat with Caesar.

Chap. 4. Caesar decides in favor of Cingetorix.

2. quae rēs: namely, the fear that all his followers would desert him.

cōnsiliō: of making war on Caesar.

3. aestātem: it was already June.

omnibus . . . comparātis, "after all preparations had been made, etc."

8. principibus: especially those belonging to the faction of Indutiomarus.

hōs . . . conciliāvit: thus using his

influence to make Cingetorix supreme in the state.

9. quod: subject of *fieri*; lit. "which he knew was done in accordance with, etc." Supplying "because" will help the translation; "because he knew that this was, etc."

cum . . . tum, "not only . . . but also."

10. magnī: genitive of value; "that it was of great importance."

11. cuius . . . perspexisset: a causal clause; "since, etc."

12. id factum: explained by its appositive, *suam . . . minui*.

13. quī . . . fuisset, "although he had, etc."; see App. 247: G.-L. 634: A. 535, c: B. 283, 3: H.-B. 523: H. 592.

14. hōc dolōre, "this grievance," "indignation at this treatment."

erant, tempestāte rēiectis cursum tenēre nōn potuisse atque eōdem unde erant proiec̄tae revertisse; reliquās parātās ad nāvigandum atque omnibus rēbus instrūctās invenit. Eōdem equitātus tōtius Galliae convenit numerō milia quattuor principēsque ex omnibus civitātibus; ex quibus perpaucōs, quōrum in sē fidem perspexerat, relinquere in Galliā, reliquōs obsidum locō sēcum dūcere dēcrēverat, quod cum ipse abesset mōtum Galliae verēbātur.

10

6. Erat unā cum cēteris Dumnorix Haeduns, dē quō ante ā nōbīs dictum est. Hunc sēcum habēre in primis cōstituerat, quod eum cupidum rērum novārum, cupidum imperī, magnī animī, magnae inter Gallōs auctōritātis cognōverat. Accēdēbat hūc quod in conciliō Haeduōrum Dumnorix dixerat sibi ā Caesare rēgnum civitātis dēferri; quod dictum Haedui graviter ferēbant, neque recūsandī aut dēprecandī causā lēgātōs ad Caesarem mittere audēbant. Id factum ex suis hospitibus Caesar cognōverat. Ille omnibus primō precibus petere contendit ut in Galliā relinquerētur, partim quod insuētus nāvigandī mare timēret, partim quod religiōnibus impediri sēsē

10

Chap. 5. The fleet, the legions, and the cavalry assemble at port Itius.

3. tempestāte rēiectās: probably while sailing from the mouth of the Sequana to Wissant.

4. eōdem unde, etc.: i.e. to the mouth of the Sequana.

6. milia: in apposition with equitātus.

9. locō, "as."

cum abesset, "while he should be absent"; implied indirect discourse.

Chap. 6-7. The treachery and death of Dumnorix.

Chap. 6. Dumnorix treacherously advises the Gallic Chiefs not to accompany Caesar.

1. ante: see especially I, 3, 13, and I, 13-20, where Dumnorix is fully described.

4. animī: descriptive genitive.

5. accēdēbat hūc quod, "and besides."

7. graviter ferēbant: because they had no king, and wanted none. They were prepared to believe the statement, because Caesar had set up kings in a few other states; see, for example, IV, 21, 13.

neque audēbant, "and yet did not dare"; probably because they feared Dumnorix.

9. petere contendit, "earnestly begged."

10. quod timēret: a quoted reason; "because, as he said, etc."

11. quod diceret: we should expect either the indicative, *dicebat*, since the verb of saying is not quoted, or simply *impediretur*, with no verb of saying. But a subjunctive verb of saying is often used in quoting a reason.

religiōnibus, "religious scruples." Perhaps he claimed to have religious duties which required his presence in Gaul, or that he had vowed never to leave the country.

diceret. Posteaquam id obstinātē sī i negārī vīdit, omni spē impetrandī adēptā principēs Galliae sollicitāre, sēvocāre singulōs hortārīque coepit utī in continentī remanērent, metū  
 15 territāre: Nōn sine causā fierī ut Gallia omni nōbilitāte spoliārētur; id esse cōsiliū Caesaris, ut quōs in cōspectū Galliae interficere verērētur, hōs omnēs in Britanniam trāductōs necāret: fidem reliquīs interpōnere, iūs iūrandum poscere ut quod esse ex ūsū Galliae intellēxissent commūnī cōsiliō administrārent.  
 20 Haec ā complūribus ad Caesarem dēferēbantur.

7. Quā rē cognitā Caesar, quod tantum cīvitātī Haeduae dignitātis tribuēbat, coērcendum atque dēterrendum quibuscumque rēbus posset Dumnorīgē statuēbat; quod longius eius āmentiam prōgredi vidēbat, prōspiciendum nē quid sibi ac  
 5 rei publicae nocēre posset. Itaque diēs circiter xxv in eō locō commorātus, quod Cōrus ventus nāvigationē impediēbat, quī magnam partem omnis temporis in hīs locīs fiāre cōsuēvit, dabat operam ut in officiō Dumnorīgē contineret, nihilō tamen sētius omnia eius cōnsilia cognōsceret; tandem idōneam nactus  
 10 tempestātem militēs equitēsque cōnscendere nāvēs iubet. At omnium impeditis animīs Dumnorīx cum equitibus Haeduōrum ā castrīs insciente Caesare domum discēdere coepit. Quā rē nūntiātā Caesar intermissā profectiōne atque omnibus rēbus postpositis magnam partem equitātūs ad eum insequendum  
 15 mittit retrahīque imperat; sī vim faciat neque pareat, interfici iubet, nihil hunc sē absente prō sānō factūrum arbitrātus, quī

15. fieri, esse: indirect discourse, depending on a verb of saying implied in *territāre*.

18. fidem interpōnere, "he pledged his word." *interpōnere* and *poscere* are in the same construction as *territāre*, depending on *coepit*.

19. intellēxissent: implied indirect discourse for the future perfect.

Chap. 7. Dumnorix flees, but is pursued and killed.

1. quod . . . tribuēbat: Caesar had found the Haedui at the head of a

powerful league and had increased their influence. It was a serious matter to have so strong a state discontented.

4. prōspiciendum (*esse*), "that he must see to it"; depending on *statuēbat*. sibi: i.e. Caesar.

18. omnibus rebus, "everything else."

15. retrahī imperat: cf. note on *imperat fieri*, I, 11.

16. prō sānō, "like a sane man." quī, "since he."

praesentis imperium neglēxisset. Ille autem revocātus resistere ac sē manū dēfendere suōrumque fidem implōrāre coepit saepe clāmitāns liberum sē liberaeque esse civitātis. Illi, ut erat imperātum, circumsistunt hominem atque interficiunt; at equitēs Haeduī ad Caesarem omnēs revertuntur.

8. His rēbus gestīs, Labiēnō in continentī cum tribus legiōnibus et equitum milibus duōbus relictō ut portūs tuērētur et rem frūmentāriam prōvidēret quaeque in Galliā gererentur cognōsceret cōsiliūque prō tempore et prō rē caperet, ipse, cum quīque legiōnibus et parī numerō equitum quem in continentī relinquēbat, ad sōlis occāsum nāvēs solvit, et lēnī Āfricō prōvectus mediā circiter nocte ventō intermissō cursum nōn tenuit, et longius dēlātus aestū ortā lūce sub sinistrā Britanniam relictam cōspexit. Tum rūsus aestūs commūtatiōnem secūtus rēmīs contendit ut eam partem insulae caperet quā optimum esse ēgressum superiōre aestāte cognōverat. Quā in rē admodum fuit militum virtūs laudanda, quī vectōriīs gravibusque nāvigiīs nōn intermissō rēmigandī labōre longārum nāvium cursum adaequārent. Accessum est ad Britanniam omnibus nāvibus merīdiānō ferē tempore, neque in eō locō hos-

18. **manū:** i.e. with the weapons in his hands.

20. **interficiunt:** this deed must have made a deep impression upon the Gallic nobles, who saw one of their order struck down for asserting his liberty of action. Without doubt it helped to bring on the great revolt described in Book VII.

Chap. 8-11. Though successful in landing and in routing the enemy, Caesar is so delayed by a disaster to his fleet that the enemy have time to unite against him.

Chap. 8. Caesar sails to Britain and lands without opposition.

1. **Labiēnō:** Caesar was leaving only half as many legions in Gaul as he had left there the year before; therefore he left his best lieutenant.

8. **quaeque . . . gererentur:** he

may have feared the effect of the death of Dumnorix.

4. **prō . . . rē,** "according to the occasion and circumstances."

5. **parī quem,** "equal (to that) which", "the same as."

6. **ad sōlis occāsum:** about 8 P.M.

It is supposed that the day was July 20. For the course of the voyage and an explanation of the details which follow in the text, see the map and explanation on p. 294.

8. **et,** "but."

**sub . . . relictam:** i.e. he had got farther away from Britain, and it lay on his left.

12. **virtūs,** "spirit."

**vectōriīs . . . nāvigiīs,** lit. "with ships built for carrying and heavy," = "though in heavily laden transports."

tis est visus; sed, ut postea Caesar ex captivis cognovit, cum magnae manus eo convenissent, multitudine navium perterritae, quae cum annōtinis privatisque, quas sui quisque commodi causā fecerat, amplius octingentae unō erant visae tempore, ā  
 20 litore discesserant ac se in superiora loca abdiderant.

9. Caesar expositō exercitū et locō castris idōneo captō, ubi ex captivis cognovit quō in locō hostium cōpiae cōsēdissent, cohortibus x ad mare relictis et equitibus ccc quī praesidiō nāvibus essent, dē tertiā vigiliā ad hostēs contendit, eo minus  
 5 veritus nāvibus, quod in litore mollī atque apertō dēligātās ad ancorās relinquebat. Eī praesidiō nāvibusque Q. Atrium praefecit. Ipse noctū prōgressus milia passuum circiter xii hostium cōpiās cōspicātus est. Illī equitātū atque essedis ad flūmen prōgressi ex locō superioriē nostrōs prohibēre et proelium committere coepērunt. Repulsi ab equitātū se in silvās  
 10 abdidērunt, locum nacti ēgregiē et nātūrā et opere mūnitum, quem domesticī bellī, ut vidēbātur, causā iam ante praeparaverant; nam crēbris arboribus succisis omnēs introitus erant praeclusi. Ipsi ex silvis rārī prōpugnābant nostrōsque intrā  
 15 mūnitiōnēs ingredi prohibēbant. At militēs legiōnis septimae testūdine factā et aggere ad mūnitiōnēs adiectō locum cēpērunt

18. quisque fecerat, "individuals had made." Some of his officers were wealthy, and no doubt some of the men who were "following Caesar for friendship's sake" (I, 39, 10, note) were well-to-do. And probably the slave dealers had ships of their own.

20. superiora loca: the higher ground some twelve miles inland, just across the Little Stour; see map.

Chap. 9. Caesar at once marches inland and scatters the enemy.

1. locō: near the sea-shore.

3. cohortibus X: two from each legion.

5. nāvibus: indirect object of *veritus*.

litore . . . apertō: i.e. the bottom was gravelly and there were no

rocky cliffs along the shore. Caesar seems to have thought that the ships might be blown on shore without much harm. It is strange that he did not take warning from his previous experience.

8. ad flūmen: the Little Stour.

11. opere, "by art."

13. arboribus succisis: they had probably felled the trees so that the tops lay outward. If piled thickly enough, with their branches shortened and sharpened, they would make an effective defense.

14. rārī, "in small bodies."

15. legiōnis septimae: this legion had met with a reverse on the preceding expedition (IV, 32), and was eager for revenge.

16. aggere . . . adiectō: they piled

eōsque ex silvis expulērunt paucis vulneribus acceptis. Sed eōs fugientēs longius Caesar prōsequi vetuit, et quod loci nātūram ignōrābat et quod magnā parte diēi cōsumptā mūnitiōni castrōrum tempus relinqui volēbat.

10. Postridiē eius diēi māne tripertitō militēs equitēsque in expeditiōnem mīsīt, ut eōs quī fūgerant persequerentur. His aliquantum itineris prōgressis, cum iam extrēmī essent in prōspectū, equitēs ā Q. Ātriō ad Caesarem vēnērunt quī nūntiārent superiōre nocte maximā coortā tempestāte prope omnēs nāvēs afflictās atque in litus ēiectās esse, quod neque ancorae fūnēsque subsisterent neque nautae gubernātōrēsque vim tempestātis pati possent; itaque ex eō concursū nāvium magnum esse incommodum acceptum.

11. His rēbus cognitīs Caesar legionēs equitātumque revocāri atque in itinere resistere iubet, ipse ad nāvēs revertitur; eadem ferē quae ex nūntiis cognōverat cōram perspicit, sic ut āmissis circiter XL nāvibus reliquae tamen reficī posse magnō negōtiō vidērentur. Itaque ex legiōnibus fabrōs dēligit et ex continentī aliōs arcessi iubet; Labiēnō scribit ut quam plūrimās possit iis legiōnibus quae sint apud eum nāvēs instituat. Ipse, etsi rēs erat multae operae ac labōris, tamen commodissimum esse statuit omnēs nāvēs subducī et cum castris unā mū-

earth and logs against and over the tops of the felled trees.

20. castrōrum: this camp was west of the Little Stour.

Chap. 10. Caesar is recalled by the news that his fleet is wrecked.

1. tripertitō: the enemy were scattered, so that it only remained to pursue small bodies and ravage the country.

3. extrēmī: only the rear guard of the Romans was now in sight of the camp.

4. Ātriō: he had been left in charge of the camp by the sea.

7. neque subsisterent, "did not hold."

8. concursū, "dashing together."

Chap. 11. The fleet is repaired and beached. In the meantime the Britons unite under Cassivellaunus.

3. cōram, "with his own eyes."

sic ut, "to such an extent that"; i.e. the report was true to this extent.

5. ex . . . dēligit: we must understand that Caesar sent for the legions from the camp at the Little Stour. The skilled workmen among the soldiers were detailed to repair the ships, while the rest beached them and built a wall around them.

8. multae . . . labōris: the 800 ships, even if drawn up in four lines, would occupy about a mile of the sea front. Merely building a wall around so great a space was no light task.

10 nitiōne coniungī. In hīs rēbus circiter diēs x cōnsūmit nē  
 nocturnis quidem temporibus ad labōrem militum intermissis.  
 Subductis nāvibus castrisque egregiē mūnītis eādem cōpiās  
 quās ante praesidiō nāvibus relinquit, ipse eōdem unde redierat  
 proficiscitur. Eō cum vēnisset, maiōres iam undique in eum  
 15 locum cōpiae Britannōrum convēnerant, summā imperī bellique  
 administrandī commūnī cōsiliō permissā Cassivellaunō; cuius  
 finēs ā maritimis civitātibus flūmen dīvidit, quod appellātur  
 Tamesis, ā marī circiter milia passuum LXXX. Huic superiōre  
 tempore cum reliquīs civitātibus continentia bella intercesse-  
 20 rant; sed nostrō adventū permōtī Britannī hunc tōtī bellō im-  
 periōque praefēcerant.

12. Britanniae pars interior ab iis incolitur quōs nātōs in  
 insulā ipsā memoriā prōditum dicunt, maritima pars ab iis quī  
 praedae ac bellī inferendī causā ex Belgiō trānsiērunt (quī om-  
 nēs ferē isdem nōminibus civitātum appellantur quibus ortī ex  
 5 civitātibus eō pervēnērunt) et bellō illātō ibi permānsērunt  
 atque agrōs colere coepērunt. Hominum est infīnita multi-  
 tūdō crēberrimaque aedificia ferē Gallicis cōnsimilia, pecoris  
 magnus numerus. Ūtuntur aut nummō aureō aut tāleīs ferreis  
 ad certum pondus exāminātis prō nummō. Nāscitur ibi plum-

13. quās ante: supply *reliquerat*.  
 eōdem: to the camp across the Little  
 Stour.

15. summā . . . administrandī,  
 "the chief command and the direction  
 of the war."

18. milia . . . LXXX: Caesar natu-  
 rally gives the distance by the route  
 which he followed from his landing  
 place to the ford by which he crossed  
 the Thames.

huic . . . intercesserant, "he had  
 carried on incessant wars, etc."

Chap. 12-14. A description of Brit-  
 ain and its inhabitants.

Chap. 12. The origin of the Britons.  
 The natural resources of the island.

1. quōs nātōs (*esse*): subject of *prō-  
 ditum (esse)*; "whose origin upon the  
 island itself is handed down, they say,

by tradition." The meaning is that  
 they were descended from ancestors  
 who sprang from the soil of Britain. A  
 similar belief about themselves was  
 held by other ancient races.

2. qui . . . trānsiērunt: this was  
 true. The Celtic invaders had passed  
 over to Britain and partly dispossessed  
 the earlier inhabitants, just as they had  
 in Gaul; see Int. 25.

4. quibus . . . pervēnērunt, "from  
 which they have descended and migra-  
 ted hither." The antecedent is repeated,  
 as often, and must be omitted in trans-  
 lation.

7. crēberrima: supply *sunt*.

9. plumbum album: the mines are  
 in Cornwall, the extreme southwestern  
 part of the island, so that Caesar is  
 mistaken as to their location. Centuries

bum album in mediterrâneis regiōnibus, in maritimis ferrum, 10  
sed eius exigua est cōpia; aere ūtuntur importātō. Māteria  
cuiusque generis ut in Galliā est praeter fāgum atque abietem.  
Leporem et gallinam et ānserem gustāre fās nōn putant; haec  
tamen alunt animi voluptātisque causā. Loca sunt temperā-  
tiōra quam in Galliā remissiōribus frīgōribus. 18

13. Insula nātūrā triquetra, cuius ūnum latus est contrā  
Galliam. Huius lateris alter angulus, quī est ad Cantium, quō  
ferē omnēs ex Galliā nāvēs appelluntur, ad orientem sōlem, in-  
ferior ad merīdiem spectat. Hoc latus pertinet circiter milia  
passuum quīngenta. Alterum vergit ad Hispāniam atque occi- 5  
dentem sōlem; quā ex parte est Hibernia insula, dimidiō minor,  
ut existimātur, quam Britannia, sed parī spatiō trānsmisissus  
atque ex Galliā est in Britanniam. In hōc mediō cursū est

before this time the Phoenicians had obtained tin which came from these mines.

11. *exigua cōpia*: this accounts for its use as money. It is now found in abundance.

12. *praeter . . . abietem*: a mistake. Both trees are native to Britain.

14. *animi . . . causā*, "for amusement"; i.e. as pets.

Chap. 13. The form and size of Britain.

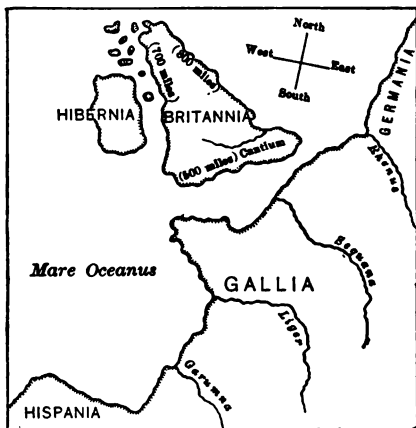
As no Roman had ever sailed around the island or traveled in it, it is not surprising that Caesar's description of it is inaccurate. He comes much nearer the truth than might have been expected.

2. *quō*: the adverb.

3. *inferior*: supply *angulus*.

5. *alterum*: supply *latus*.

*vergit ad Hispāniam*: this is a surprising mistake, but one that prevailed long after Caesar's time. The error was much worse than appears on the map, for Caesar thought that Spain extended farther north and nearer Britain. More than a hundred years later



CAESAR'S GEOGRAPHY

Tacitus says that Ireland lies between Britain and Spain.

6. *dimidiō minor*, "smaller by half", "half as large."

7. *parī . . . atque*, lit. "but with an equal length of passage across as." *spatiō* is a descriptive ablative.

8. *in . . . cursū*, "halfway across."

insula, quae appellatur Mona; complurēs praetereā minōrēs  
 10 obiectae insulae existimantur; dē quibus insulis nōn nullī scrip-  
 sērunt diēs continuōs xxx sub brūmam esse noctem. Nōs  
 nihil dē eō percontātiōnibus reperiēbāmus, nisi certis ex aquā  
 mēnsūrīs breviorēs esse quam in continentī noctēs vidēbāmus.  
 Huius est longitūdō lateris, ut fert illōrum opīniō, dcc milium.  
 15 Tertium est contrā septentriōnēs; cui partī nulla est obiecta  
 terra, sed eius angulus alter maximē ad Germāniam spectat.  
 Hoc milium passuum dccc in longitūdinem esse existimātur.  
 Ita omnis insula est in circuitū viciēs centum milium passuum.

14. Ex his omnibus longē sunt hūmānissimī quī Cantium  
 incolunt, quae regiō est maritima omnis, neque multum ā Gal-  
 licā differunt cōsuētūdine. Interiōrēs plērique frūmenta nōn  
 serunt, sed lacte et carne vivunt pellibusque sunt vestiti.  
 6 Omnēs vērō sē Britannī vitrō inficiunt, quod caeruleum efficit  
 colōrem, atque hōc horribiliōrēs sunt in pugnā aspectū; capil-  
 lōque sunt prōmissō atque omnī parte corporis rāsā praeter  
 caput et labrum superius.

15. Equitēs hostium essedāriique ācritē proeliō cum  
 equitātū nostrō in itinere cōnflīxērunt, ita tamen ut nostrī  
 omnibus partibus superiōrēs fuerint atque eōs in silvās col-

10. *Insulae*: probably the Hebrides and Orkney Islands.

12. *nisi*, "except that."

*certis . . . mēnsūrīs*, "by exact measurements by the water-clock." The Romans used instruments on the principle of the hour-glass, using water instead of sand; i.e. time was measured by the amount of water that dropped through a small hole in the bottom of a vessel.

13. *breviōrēs*: the longest day at Rome is 15 hours; at London, 16½; in the north of Scotland, 18¼ hours.

15. *cui . . . terra*: Caesar knows nothing of Scandinavia.

16. *angulus alter*: this is at Kent, the one first mentioned.

18. *viciēs . . . passuum*: this is too great, as Caesar has over-estimated

the length of each side.

Chap. 14. The customs of the Britons.

1. *his*: the tribes of Britain.

3. *interiōrēs*, "the inhabitants of the interior."

6. *aspectū*: ablative of specification.

*capillō, parte*: descriptive ablatives.

Chap. 15-17. After several skirmishes the Britons are decisively defeated, and they avoid further pitched battles.

Chap. 15. Skirmishes between the Britons and the Romans.

2. *in itinere*: i.e. on the march from the sea to the camp across the Little Stour. This chapter resumes the narrative which was broken off at the end of chap. 11.

3. *fuerint*: notice the exception to sequence; App. 204, a.

lēsque compulerint; sed complūribus interfectis cupidius inse-  
cūtī nōn nullōs ex suis āmisērunt. At illi intermissō spatiō, 5  
imprudentibus nostris atque occupātis in mūnitiōne castrōrum,  
subitō sē ex silvis ēiēcērunt impetūque in eōs factō quī erant  
in statiōne prō castris collocātī ācritēr pugnāvērunt; duābusque  
missis subsidiō cohortibus ā Caesare, atque hīs primis legiōnum  
duārum, cum eae perexiguō intermissō loci spatiō inter sē cōn- 10  
stitissent, novō genere pugnae perterritis nostris, per mediōs  
audācissimē perrūpērunt sēque inde incolumēs recēpērunt.  
Eō diē Q. Laberius Dūrus, tribūnus militum, interficitur. Illi  
plūribus submissis cohortibus repelluntur.

16. Tōtō hōc in genere pugnae, cum sub oculis omnium ac  
prō castris dīmīcārētur, intellēctum est nostrōs propter gravi-  
tātem armōrum, quod neque īnsequī cēdentēs possent neque  
ab signis discēdere audērent, minus aptōs esse ad huius generis  
hostem; equitēs autem magnō cum periculō proeliō dīmīcāre, 5  
propterea quod illi etiā cōsultō plērumque cēderent et, cum  
paulum ab legiōnibus nostrōs remōvissent, ex essedis dēsilirent  
et pedibus disparī proeliō contenderent. Accēdēbat hūc ut  
numquam cōnfertī, sed rārī magnisque intervāllis proeliāren-

6. *imprudentibus . . . occupātis*, "while our men were off their guard and engaged."

7. *quī . . . collocātī*: probably a single cohort, stationed just outside the praetorian gate; see the plan of a camp, Int. 51.

9. *atque hīs primis*, "and these the first (cohorts)"; which contained the best officers and men.

10. *perexiguō . . . sē*, "with a very little space between them." Apparently the two cohorts left the camp by the two side gates and got around in the rear of the enemy who were attacking in front of the camp, intending to cut off their retreat. But as the two cohorts did not quite meet, the enemy escaped between them.

11. *novō genere*: evidently these

cohorts had not taken part in the first invasion of Britain.

13. *illi . . . repelluntur*: when the enemy escaped from the position in which they were attacked both front and rear, they turned again and attacked the three cohorts. It then required several more cohorts to put them to flight.

Chap. 16. The tactics of the Britons put the Romans at a disadvantage.

2. *nostrōs*: the infantry.

4. *ab signis discēdere*, "to break ranks"; because they had been trained to fight only in regular formation.

6. *illi*: the Britons.

7. *nostrōs*: the cavalry.

*ex essedis*, etc.: on the tactics of the charioteers, see IV, 33, and especially the note on l. 4.

15 tur stationēsque dispositās habērent, atque aliōs alii deinceps exciperent integrīque et recentēs dēfatigātis succēderent.

17. Posterō diē procul ā castris hostēs in collibus cōstitērunt rārīque sē ostendere et lēnius quam pridīe nostrōs equitēs proeliō lacessere coepērunt. Sed merīdie cum Caesar pābulandī causā trēs legiōnēs atque omnem  
5 equitātum cum C. Trebōniō lēgātō mīsisset, repente ex omnibus partibus ad pābulātōrēs advolāvērunt, sic utī ab signis legiōnibusque nōn absisterent. Nostrī ācritē in eōs impetū factō reppulērunt neque finem sequendī fēcērunt quoad subsidiō cōnfisī equitēs, cum post sē legiōnēs vidērent, prae-  
10 cipitēs hostēs ēgērunt, magnōque eōrum numerō interfectō neque suī colligendī neque cōsistendī aut ex essedīs dēsiliendī facultātem dedērunt. Ex hāc fugā prōtinus quae undique convēnerant auxilia discessērunt, neque post id tempus umquam summīs nōbiscum cōpiis hostēs contendērunt.

18. Caesar cognitō cōnsiliō eōrum ad flūmen Tamesim in finēs Cassivellaunī exercitum dūxit; quod flūmen ūnō omnīnō locō pedibus, atque hōc aegrē, trānsiri potest. Eō cum vēnisset, animadvertit ad alteram flūminis ripam magnās esse  
5 cōpiās hostium instrūctās. Ripa autem erat acūtis sudibus

10. stationēs, "reserves."  
aliōs alii, "one another."

Chap. 17. The Britons attack three legions while foraging. After a decisive defeat they refuse any further pitched battle.

1. ā castris: Caesar is still in camp just west of the Little Stour.

4. trēs . . . equitātum: an unusually large foraging party. The novel tactics of the enemy inspired respect.

5. repente . . . advolāvērunt: just as they had done in the preceding year; IV, 32.

6. sic utī, "so fiercely that"; i.e. they even attacked the troops which had been kept under arms to protect the foragers.

8. sequendī: the enemy were not

yet routed, but were retreating slowly

12. ex, "after."

quae . . . auxilia: cf. 11, 15.

14. summīs cōpiis, "in full force."

Chap. 18-21. Caesar marches inland, receives the submission of several tribes, and takes the stronghold of Cassivellaunus.

Chap. 18. Caesar marches to the Thames and forces a passage in the face of the enemy.

1. cōnsiliō: i.e. not to fight pitched battles but to prolong the war and wear out the Romans.

2. dūxit: see map, p. 294.

ūnō locō: at present there are several fords, and it is uncertain which Caesar used.

3. atque hōc (locō) aegrē, "and even there with difficulty."

praefixis mūnita, eiusdemque generis sub aquā dēfixae sudēs flūmine tegēbantur. His rēbus cognitīs ā captivīs perfugisque Caesar praemissō equitātū cōfestim legiōnēs subsequi iussit. Sed eā celeritāte atque eō impetū militēs iērunť, cum capite sōlō ex aquā exstārent, ut hostēs impetum legiōnum atque equitum 10 sustinēre nōn possent ripāsque dīmitterent ac sē fugae mandārent.

19. Cassivellaunus, ut suprà dēmōstrāvimus, omni dēpositā spē contentiōnis, dīmissīs ampliōribus cōpiīs, milibus circiter quattuor essedāriōrum relictis, itinera nostra servābat paulumque ex viā excēdēbat locisque impeditis ac silvestribus sēsē occultābat, atque iīs regiōnibus quibus nōs iter factūrōs 5 cognōverat pecora atque hominēs ex agrīs in silvās compellēbat et, cum equitātus noster liberius praedandī vāstandique causā sē in agrōs ēiēcerat, omnibus viīs sēmitisque essedāriōs ex silvis ēmittēbat et magnō cum periculō nostrōrum equitum cum his cōnfligēbat, atque hōc metū lātius vagārī prohibēbat. Relinquē- 10 bātur ut neque longius ab agmine legiōnum discēdi Caesar paterētur, et tantum agrīs vāstandis incendiisque faciendis hostibus nocērētur quantum in labōre atque itinere legiōnārii militēs efficere poterant.

6. **praefixis**: i.e. projecting forward from the northern bank.

8. **praemissō equitātū**: they probably swam the stream above or below the ford and attacked the enemy's flank.

9. **iērunť**: how they passed the stakes is not said; but such obstacles could only delay, not stop, a charge. The Romans could not use hatchets under water, as has been supposed; but they could climb over the stakes or perhaps pull them up.

11. **dīmitterent**, "abandoned."

Chap. 19. Cassivellaunus adopts a plan of systematically harassing the Romans.

1. **suprà**: in 17, 13.

2. **contentiōnis**, "of winning pitched battles."

3. **itinera servābat**, "kept watching our movements."

4. **locis . . . silvestribus**: the chariots must have been narrow, to pass among the trees; and their wheels must have been high, to pass over rough ground.

7. **cum ēiēcerat**: for mode, see App. 241, b.

10. **hōc metū**, "by fear of this"; cf. *hōc dolōre*, 4, 14.

**relinquēbātur**, "the result was."

11. **discēdi (ab equitibus)**: impersonal; "the cavalry to diverge from."

12. **tantum hostibus nocērētur**, "that only so much damage was inflicted on the enemy."

13. **in . . . itinere**, lit. "in hard work and marching," = "in their toilsome marches." The whole sentence

**20.** Interim Trinovantēs, prope firmissima eārum regiōnum civitās, ex quā Mandubracius adulēscēns Caesaris fidem secūtus ad eum in continentem vēnerat, cuius pater in eā civitatē rēgnum obtinuerat interfectusque erat ā Cassivellaunō, ipse  
 5 fugā mortem vitāverat, lēgātōs ad Caesarem mittunt pollicenturque sēsē ei dēditūrōs atque imperāta factūrōs; petunt ut Mandubracium ab iniuriā Cassivellaunī dēfendat atque in civitatē mittat quī praesit imperiumque obtineat. His Caesar imperat obsidēs quadrāgintā frūmentumque exercitui,  
 10 Mandubraciumque ad eōs mittit. Illī imperāta celeriter fēcērunt, obsidēs ad numerum frūmentumque misērunt.

**21.** Trinovantibus dēfēnsis atque ab omni militum iniuriā prohibitīs, Cēnimagnī, Segontiāci, Ancalitēs, Bibroci, Cassī lēgatiōnibus missis sēsē Caesarī dēdunt. Ab his cognōscit nōn longē ex eō locō oppidum Cassivellaunī abesse silvis palūdi-  
 5 busque mūnitum, quō satis magnus hominum pecorisque numerus convēnerit. Oppidum autem Britannī vocant cum silvās impeditās vāllō atque fossā mūniērunt, quō incursiōnis hostium vitandae causā convenīre cōsuērunt. Eō proficisci-  
 10 mūnitum, tamen hunc duābus ex partibus oppugnāre contendit. Hostēs paulisper morātī militum nostrōrum impetum

means that the army could devastate only the narrow strip through which the infantry could march, whereas the cavalry ought to have laid waste the country for miles on each side of the way.

Chap. 20. The Trinovantes voluntarily offer submission.

1. Trinovantēs: in Essex; see map.

3. ad eum . . . vēnerat: probably among those mentioned in IV, 21, 10.

4. ipse, "(while) he himself"; i.e. Mandubracius.

8. mittat: the object is *Mandubracium*.

praesit: supply *ei*, referring to *civitatem*.

Chap. 21. Other tribes submit.

Caesar takes the stronghold of Cassivellaunus.

1. dēfēnsis: from Cassivellaunus.

militum (*nostrōrum*) iniuriā: this does not imply that Caesar had marched into their country. The other states saw that Caesar did not march against those who submitted.

4. eō locō: where the envoys had come to him apparently on the northern bank of the Thames.

oppidum Cassivellaunī: supposed to be St. Albans.

6. oppidum . . . vocant cum, "the Britons call it a town when." The *oppidum* was a place of refuge, not a town in our sense of the word.

nōn tulērunt sēsēque aliā ex parte oppidi ēiēcērunt. Magnus ibi numerus pecoris repertus multīque in fugā sunt comprehēnsī atque interfectī.

**22.** Dum haec in his locis geruntur, Cassivellaunus ad Cantium, quod esse ad mare suprā dēmōnstrāvimus, quibus regiōnibus quattuor rēgēs praeerant, Cingetorix, Carvilius, Taximagulus, Segovax, nūntiōs mittit atque his imperat uti coāctis omnibus cōpiis castra nāvālia dē imprōvisō adorian<sup>5</sup>tur atque oppugnent. Hi cum ad castra vēnissent, nostrī ēruptiōne factā, multis eōrum interfectis, captō etiam nōbili duce Lugotorige, suōs incolumēs redūxērunt. Cassivellaunus hōc proeliō nūntiātō, tot dētrīmentis acceptis, vāstātis finibus, maxime etiam permōtus dēfectiōne civitātum, lēgātōs per Atrebātem Commium dē dēditiōne ad Caesarem mittit. Caesar cum cōstituisset hiemāre in continentī propter repentinōs Galliae mōtūs neque multum aestātis superesset atque id facile extrahī posse intellexeret, obsidēs imperat et quid in annōs singulōs vectigālis populō Rōmānō Britannia penderet cōstituit; in<sup>15</sup>terdīcit atque imperat Cassivellaunō nē Mandubraciō neu Trinovantibus noceat.

**23.** Obsidibus acceptis exercitum redūcit ad mare, nāvēs invenit refectās. His dēductis, quod et captivōrum magnum numerum habēbat et nōn nullae tempestāte dēperierant nāvēs, duōbus commeātibus exercitum reportāre instituit. Ac sic acci-

Chap. 22-23. Cassivellaunus at last gives hostages, and Caesar returns to Gaul.

Chap. 22. Cassivellaunus instigates an attack on the Roman fleet. When this fails he offers hostages.

2. suprā: in 14, 2.

5. castra nāvālia: the camp by the sea, which enclosed the fleet.

10. dēfectiōne: cf. 21, 2.

11. Commium: cf. IV, 21, 13.

12. propter . . . mōtūs: there were none as yet, but he feared there would be if he kept so large a part of his army in Britain.

13. superesset: it was now late in

August or early in September.

id . . . posse, "that this time could easily be wasted"; i.e. if he tried to capture or thoroughly subdue Cassivellaunus.

14. quid . . . vectigālis, "how much tribute each year"; an empty form, since no troops were left to enforce payment. None was paid; nor did any Roman army return to Britain till 43 A.D., nearly a century later.

Chap. 23. Caesar returns to Gaul.

4. commeātibus, "voyages," "trips"; the original meaning of the word.

5 dit utī ex tantō nāvium numerō tot nāvigātiōnibus neque hōc  
neque superiōre annō ūlla omnīnō nāvis quae militēs portāret  
dēsiderārētur; at ex iīs quae inānēs ex continentī ad eum remiter-  
terentur priōris commeātūs expositis militibus et quās postea  
Labiēnus faciendās cūrāverat, numerō LX, perpaucae locum  
10 caperent, reliquae ferē omnēs rēicerentur. Quās cum aliquam-  
diū Caesar frūstrā exspectāset, nē annī tempore ā nāvigātiōne  
exclūderētur, quod aequinoctium suberat, necessariō angustius  
militēs collocāvit ac summā tranquillitāte cōsecūtā, secundā  
initā cum solvisset vigiliā, primā lūce terram attigit omnēsque  
15 incolumēs nāvēs perdūxit.

24. Subductis nāvibus conciliōque Gallōrum Samarobrīvae  
peractō, quod eō annō frūmentum in Galliā propter siccitatēs  
angustius prōvēnerat, coactus est aliter ac superiōribus annīs  
exercitum in hibernis collocāre legiōnēsque in plūrēs civitatēs  
5 distribuere. Ex quibus ūnam in Morinōs dūcendam C. Fabiō  
lēgātō dedit, alteram in Nervios Q. Cicerōnī, tertiam in Esu-  
viōs L. Rōsciō; quārtam in Rēmīs cum T. Labiēnō in cōfiniō  
Trēverōrum hiemāre iussit; trēs in Bellovacis collocāvit; his  
M. Crassum et L. Munātium Plancum et C. Trebōnium lēgā-  
10 tōs praefēcit. Ūnam legiōnem, quam proximē trāns Padum  
cōscripserat, et cohortēs quīnque in Eburōnēs, quōrum pars  
maxima est inter Mosam ac Rhēnum, quī sub imperiō Ambi-  
origis et Catuvolcī erant, mīsit. His militibus Q. Titūrium  
Sabīnum et L. Aurunculēium Cottam lēgātōs praeesse iussit.  
15 Ad hunc modum distribūtis legiōnibus facillimē inopiae rei  
frūmentāriae sēsē medēri posse existimāvit. Atque hārum

5. tot nāvigātiōnibus: ablative absolute.

8. priōris . . . militibus, "having landed the soldiers from the first trip."  
et quās: coördinate with *quae*; the antecedent is *ex iīs*.

9. faciendās cūrāverat: for construction, see App. 285, II, b; for the fact, see 11, 6.

locum, "destination."

10. caperent, rēicerentur: in the

same construction as *dēsiderārētur*.

12. quod . . . suberat: it was, therefore, somewhere near Sept. 20, and Caesar had been in Britain two months; see note on *ad solis occidēum*, 8, 6.

angustius . . . collocāvit, "crowded the soldiers rather closely."

13. secundā vigiliā, primā lūce: the voyage, therefore, occupied about nine hours.

tamen omnium legiōnum hiberna, praeter eam quam L. Rōsciō in pācātissimam et quiētissimam partem dūcendam dederat, milibus passuum centum continēbantur. Ipse interea, quoad legiōnēs collocātās mūnitaque hiberna cognōvisset, in Galliā morārī cōstituit.

**25.** Erat in Carnutibus summō locō nātus Tasgetius, cuius maiōrēs in suā civitāte rēgnū obtinuerant. Huic Caesar prō eius virtūte atque in sē benevolentia, quod in omnibus bellis singulārī eius operā fuerat ūsus, maiōrum locum restituerat. Tertium iam hunc annum rēgnantem inimici palam multis ex civitāte auctōribus interfēcērunt. Dēfertur ea rēs ad Caesarem. Ille veritus, quod ad plūrēs pertinēbat, nē civitās eōrum impulsū dēficeret, L. Plancum cum legiōne ex Belgiō celeriter in Carnutēs proficisci iubet ibique hiemāre, quōrumque operā cognōverit Tasgetium interfectum, hōs comprehēnsōs ad sē mittere. Interim ab omnibus quibus legiōnēs trādiderat certior factus est in hiberna perventum locumque hibernis esse munitum.

**26.** Diēbus circiter xv quibus in hiberna ventum est, initium repentinī tumultūs ac dēfectiōnis ortum est ab Ambiorige et Catuvolcō, quī, cum ad finēs rēgni sui Sabīnō Cottaeque praestō fuissent frūmentumque in hiberna comportāvissent, Indutiomārī Trēverī nūntiis impulsī suōs concitāvērunt subitoque oppressis lignātōribus magnā manū ad castra oppugnanda vēnērunt. Cum celeriter nostrī arma cēpissent vāllumque ascendissent atque, unā ex parte Hispānis equitibus ēmissis, equestri proeliō superiōrēs fuissent, dēspērātā rē hostēs suōs ab oppugnātiōne redūxērunt. Tum suō mōre conclāmāvērunt uti aliqui ex nostris ad colloquium prōdīret: Habēre sēsē quae dē rē commūni dicere vellent, quibus rēbus contrōversiās minui posse spērarent.

**27.** Mittitur ad eōs colloquendi causā C. Arpinēius, eques Rōmānus, familiāris Q. Titūrī, et Q. Iūnius ex Hispāniā quidam, quī iam ante missū Caesaris ad Ambiorigem ventitāre cōsuērat; apud quōs Ambiorix ad hunc modum locūtus est:

5 Sēsē prō Caesaris in sē beneficiis plūrimū eī cōnfiterī dēbere, quod eius operā stipendiō liberātus esset quod Atuatuēis, finitimis suis, pendere cōsuēsset, quodque eī et filius et frātris filius ā Caesare remissi essent, quōs Atuatuēi obsidum numerō missōs apud sē in servitūte et catēnis tenuissent; 10 neque id quod fēcerit dē oppugnātiōne castrōrum aut iūdiō aut voluntāte suā fēcisse, sed coāctū civitātis; suaeque esse eius modī imperia ut nōn minus habēret iūris in sē multitudō quam ipse in multitudinem. Civitātī porrō hanc fuisse bellī causam, quod repentināe Gallōrum coniūrātiōnī resistere nōn 15 potuerit. Id sē facile ex humilitāte suā probāre posse, quod nōn adeō sit imperitus rerū ut suis cōpiis populum Rōmānum superārī posse cōnfidat. Sed esse Galliae commūne cōnsilium; omnibus hibernis Caesaris oppugnandis hunc esse dictum diem, nē qua legiō alterī legiōnī subsidiō venīre posset. Nōn facile 20 Gallōs Gallis negāre potuisse, praesertim cum dē recuperandā commūnī libertāte cōnsilium initum vidērētur. Quibus quoniam prō pietāte satisfēcērit, habēre nunc sē ratiōnem officiī prō beneficiis Caesaris; monēre, orāre Titūrium prō hospitio ut suae ac militum salūtī cōnsulat. Magnam manum Germānōrum conductam Rhēnum trānsisse; hanc affore bīduō. Ipsōrum esse cōnsilium velintne, priusquam finitimī sentiant, ēductōs ex hibernis milites aut ad Cicerōnem aut ad Labiēnum dēducere, quōrum alter milia passuum circiter quīnquāgintā, alter paulō amplius ab iis absit. Illud sē pollicērī et iūre iūrandō cōfirmāre, tūtum sē iter per suōs finēs datūrum. Quod 30 cum faciat, et civitātī sēsē cōnsulere, quod hibernis levētur, et Caesarī prō eius meritis grātiā referre. Hāc orātiōne habitā discēdit Ambiorix.

28. Arpinēius et Iūnius quae audierant ad lēgātōs dēferunt. Illi repentinā rē perturbātī, etsī ab hoste ea dicēbantur, tamen nōn negligenda existimābant, maximēque hāc rē permovēbantur, quod civitātem ignōbilem atque humilem 5 Eburōnum suā sponte populō Rōmānō bellum facere ausam vix erat crēdendum. Itaque ad cōnsilium rem dēferunt,

magnaue inter eōs exsistit contrōversia. L. Aurunculēius complūrēsq̄ tribūnī militum et primōrum ōrdinum centuriōnēs nihil temerē agendum neque ex hibernīs iniussū Caesaris discēdendum existimābant; quantāsvīs cōpiās Germānōrum 10 sustinērī posse mūnitīs hibernīs docēbant; rem esse testimōniō, quod primum hostium impetum multīs ultrō vulneribus illātīs fortissimē sustinuerint; rē frūmentāriā nōn premī; intereā et ex proximīs hibernīs et ā Caesare conventūra subsidia; postrēmō quid esse levius aut turpius quam auctōre hoste dē sum- 15 mīs rēbus capere cōsiliū?

29. Contrā ea Titūrius sērō factūrōs clāmitābat, cum maiōrēs manūs hostium adiūctīs Germānīs convēnissent, aut cum aliquid calamitātis in proximīs hibernīs esset acceptum. Brevem cōsulendī esse occāsiōnem. Caesarem sē arbitrārī profectum in Italiam; neque aliter Carnutēs interficiendī Tas- 5 getī cōsiliū fuisse captūrōs, neque Eburōnēs, sī ille adesset, tantā contemptiōne nostrī ad castra ventūrōs. Sēsē nōn hostem auctōrem, sed rem spectāre; subesse Rhēnum; magnō esse Germānis dolōri Ariovistī mortem et superiōrēs nostrās victōriās; ardēre Galliam tot contumēliis acceptis sub populī Rōmānī 10 imperium redāctam, superiōre glōriā rei militāris exstinctā. Postrēmō quis hoc sibi persuādēret, sine certā spē Ambiorigem ad eius modī cōsiliū dēscendisse? Suam sententiam in utramque partem esse tūtā: sī nihil esset dūrius, nullō cum periculō ad proximam legiōnem perventūrōs; sī Gallia omnis 15 cum Germānīs cōsentīret, ūnam esse in celeritāte positam salūtem. Cottae quidem atque eōrum quī dissentīrent cōsiliū quem habēre exitum? in quō sī nōn praesēns periculum, at certē longinquā obsidiōne famēs esset timenda.

30. Hāc in utramque partem disputatiōne habitā, cum ā Cottā primisque ōrdinibus ācrit̄ resistērēt, 'Vincite,' inquit, 'sī ita vultis,' Sabīnus, et id clāriōre vōce, ut magna pars militum exaudīret; 'neque is sum,' inquit, 'quī gravissimē ex vōbīs mortis periculō terrear; hī sapient; sī gravius 5 quid acciderit, abs tē ratiōnem reposcent, quī, sī per tē liceat,

perendinō diē cum proximīs hibernīs coniūctī commūnem cum reliquīs bellī cāsum sustineant, nōn rēiectī et relēgātī longē ā cēterīs aut ferrō aut fame intereant.'

31. Cōnsurgitur ex cōnsiliō; comprehendunt utrumque et ōrant nē suā dissēnsiōne et pertināciā rem in summum periculum dēdūcant: Facilem esse rem, seu maneant, seu proficiscantur, sī modo ūnum omnēs sentiant ac probent; contrā in  
 5 dissēnsiōne nūllam sē salūtem perspicere. Rēs disputātiōne ad mediam noctem perdūcitur. Tandem dat Cotta permōtus manūs; superat sententia Sabinī. Prōnūntiātūr primā lūce itūrōs. Cōnsūmitur vigiliis reliqua pars noctis, cum sua quisque mīles circumspiceret, quid sēcum portāre posset, quid ex in-  
 10 strūmentō hibernōrum relinquere cōgerētur. Omnia excōgitantur quārē nec sine periculō maneātur et languōre militum et vigiliis periculum augeātur. Primā lūce sic ex castris proficiscuntur ut quibus esset persuāsum nōn ab hoste, sed ab homine amīcissimō cōnsilium datum, longissimō agmine maxi-  
 15 misque impedimentīs.

32. At hostēs, posteāquam ex nocturnō fremitū vigiliisque dē profectiōne eōrum sēnsērunt, collocātis insidiis bipertitō in silvis opportunō atque occultō locō ā milibus passuum circiter duōbus, Rōmānōrum adventum exspectābant, et, cum sē maior  
 5 pars agminis in magnam convallem dēmīssisset, ex utrāque parte eius vallis subitō sē ostendērunt novissimōsque premere et primōs prohibēre ascēnsū atque inīquissimō nostrīs locō proelium committere coepērunt.

33. Tum dēmum Titūrius, quī nihil ante prōvidisset, trepidāre et concursāre cohortēsque dispōnere, haec tamen ipsa timidē atque ut eum omnia dēficere vidērentur; quod plērumque iis accidere cōsuēvit quī in ipsō negōtiō cōnsilium capere  
 5 cōguntur. At Cotta, quī cōgitāssset haec posse in itinere accidere, atque ob eam causam profectiōnis auctor nōn fuisset, nūllā in rē commūni salūtī deerat; et in appellandīs cohortandisque militibus imperātōris et in pugnā militis officia praestābat. Cum propter longitūdinem agminis nōn facile omnia per

sē obīre et quid quōque locō faciendum esset prōvidēre possent, 10  
iussērunt prōnūtiārī ut impedimenta relinquerent atque in  
orbem cōsisterent. Quod cōnsilium etsī in eius modī cāsū  
reprehendendum nōn est, tamen incommodē accidit; nam et  
nostris militibus spem minuit et hostēs ad pugnam alacriōrēs  
effēcit, quod nōn sine summō timōre et dēspērātiōne id factum 15  
vidēbātur. Praetereā accidit, quod fierī necesse erat, ut vulgō  
militēs ab signis discēderent, quaeque quisque eōrum cārissima  
habēret ab impedimentis petere atque arripere properāret,  
clāmōre et flētū omnia complērentur.

**34.** At barbaris cōnsilium nōn dēfuit. Nam ducēs eōrum  
tōtā aciē prōnūtiārī iussērunt nē quis ab locō discēderet:  
Illōrum esse praedam atque illis reservārī quaecumque Rōmānī  
reliquissent; proinde omnia in victōriā posita existimārent.  
Nostri tametsī ab duce et ā fortūnā dēserēbantur, tamen 5  
omnem spem salūtis in virtūte pōnēbant, et quotiēns quaeque  
cohors prōcurrerat, ab eā parte magnus numerus hostium  
cadēbat. Quā rē animadversā Ambiorix prōnūtiārī iubet ut  
procul tēla coniciant neu propius accēdant et quam in partem  
Rōmānī impetum fēcērint cēdant (levitāte armōrum et coti- 10  
diānā exercitātiōne nihil iis nocērī posse), rūsus sē ad signa  
recipientēs insequantur.

**35.** Quō praeceptō ab iis diligentissimē observātō, cum  
quaopiam cohors ex orbe excesserat atque impetum fēcērat,  
hostēs vëlōcissimē refugiēbant. Interim eam partem nūdārī  
necesse erat et ab latere apertō tēla recipere. Rūsus, cum in  
eum locum unde erant ēgressi reverti coeperant, et ab iis qui 5  
cesserant et ab iis qui proximī steterant circumveniēbantur; sin  
autem locum tenēre vellent, nec virtūti locus relinquebātur  
neque ab tantā multitudīne coniecta tēla cōnfertī vitāre pote-  
rant. Tamen tot incommodis cōnflctāti, multis vulneribus  
acceptis resistēbant et magnā parte diēi cōsumptā, cum ā 10  
primā lūce ad hōram octāvam pugnārētur, nihil quod ipsis  
esset indignum committēbant. Tum T. Balventiō, qui superi-  
ōre annō primum pilum dūxerat, virō forti et magnae auctōri-

tātis, utrumque femur trāgulā trāicitur; Q. Lūcānius, eiusdem  
25 ordinis, fortissimē pugnāns, dum circumventō filiō subvenit,  
interficitur; L. Cotta lēgātus omnēs cohortēs ordinēsque ad-  
hortāns in adversum ōs fundā vulnerātur.

36. Hīs rēbus permōtus Q. Titūrius, cum procul Ambiorī-  
gem suōs cohortantem cōspexisset, interpretem suum, Cn.  
Pompēium, ad eum mittit rogātum ut sibi militibusque parcat.  
Ille appellātus respondet: Si velit sēcum colloquī, licēre;  
5 spērāre ā multitudīne impetrārī posse quod ad militum salūtem  
pertineat; ipsī vērō nihil nocitum irī, inque eam rem sē suam  
fidem interpōnere. Ille cum Cottā sauciō communicat, sī  
videātur, pugnā ut excēdant et cum Ambiorīge ūnā colloquan-  
tur: spērāre sē ab eō dē suā ac militum salūte impetrārī posse.  
10 Cotta sē ad armātum hostem itūrum negat atque in eō perse-  
vērāt.

37. Sabīnus quōs in praesentiā tribūnōs militum circum sē  
habēbat et primōrum ordinum centuriōnēs sē sequī iubet, et,  
cum propius Ambiorīgem accessisset, iussus arma abicere  
imperātum facit suisque ut idem faciant imperat. Interim,  
5 dum dē condiōnibus inter sē agunt longiorque cōsultō ab  
Ambiorīge instituitur sermō, paulātim circumventus interfici-  
tur. Tum vērō suō mōre victōriam conclāmant atque ululātum  
tollunt impetūque in nostrōs factō ordinēs perturbant. Ibi L.  
Cotta pugnāns interficitur cum maximā parte militum. Reliquī  
10 sē in castra recipiunt unde erant ēgressī. Ex quibus L. Petro-  
sidius aquilifer, cum magnā multitudīne hostium premerētur,  
aquilam intrā vāllum prōicit, ipse prō castris fortissimē pug-  
nāns occiditur. Illi aegrē ad noctem oppugnātiōnem susti-  
nent; nocte ad ūnum omnēs dēspērātā salūte sē ipsī interfici-  
15 unt. Paucī ex proeliō ēlapsī incertis itineribus per silvās ad  
T. Labiēnum lēgātum in hiberna perveniunt atque eum dē  
rēbus gestīs certiōrem faciunt.

38. Hāc victōriā sublātus Ambiorīx statim cum equitātū  
in Atuatucōs, quī erant eius rēgnō finitimī, proficiscitur;  
neque noctem neque diem intermittit, peditātumque sē subsequī

iubet. Rē dēmōnstrātā Atuatucisque concitātis, posterō diē in Nervios pervenit hortāturque nē suī in perpetuum liberandī 5 atque ulciscendī Rōmānōs prō iis quās accēperint iniuriis occāsiōnem dīmittant; interfectōs esse lēgātōs duōs magnamque partem exercitūs interisse dēmōnstrat: Nihil esse negōtī subitō oppressam legiōnem quae cum Cicerōne hiemet interficī; sē ad eam rem profitētur adiūtōrem. Facile hāc ōrātiōne 10 Nervii persuādet.

39. Itaque cōnfestim dīmissis nūntiis ad Ceutronēs, Grudiōs, Levācōs, Pleumoxiōs, Geidumnōs, quī omnēs sub eōrum imperiō sunt, quam maximās manūs possunt cōgunt et dē imprōvisō ad Cicerōnis hiberna advolant, nōndum ad eum fāmā dē Titūrī morte perlātā. Huic quoque accidit, quod 5 fuit necesse, ut nōn nullī militēs, quī lignātiōnis mūnitiōnisque causā in silvās discessissent, repentinō equitum adventū interciperentur. His circumventis magnā manū Eburōnēs, Nervii, Atuatuci atque hōrum omnium socii et clientēs legiōnem oppugnāre incipiunt. Nostri celeriter ad arma concurrunt, 10 vāllum cōnscendunt. Aegrē is diēs sustentātur, quod omnem spem hostēs in celeritāte pōnēbant atque hanc adeptōs victōriam in perpetuum sē fore victōrēs cōfidēbant.

40. Mittuntur ad Caesarem cōnfestim ā Cicerōne litterae magnīs prōpositis praemiis, si pertulissent; obsessis omnibus viis missi intercipiuntur. Noctū ex eā materiā quam mūnitiōnis causā comportāverant turrēs admodum cxx excitantur 5 incrēdibili celeritāte, quae deesse operi vidēbantur perficiuntur. Hostēs posterō diē multō maiōribus coāctis cōpiis castra oppugnant, fossam complent. Ā nostris eādē ratiōne quā pridīe resistitur. Hoc idem reliquīs deinceps fit diēbus. Nulla pars nocturni temporis ad labōrem intermittitur; nōn aegris, nōn vulnerātis facultās quietis datur. Quaecumque ad proximī 10 diēi oppugnātiōnem opus sunt noctū comparantur; multae praeustae sudēs, magnus mūrālium pilōrum numerus instituitur; turrēs contabulantur, pinnae lōricaeque ex crātibus attexuntur. Ipse Cicerō, cum tenuissimā valētūdine esset, nē

15 nocturnum quidem sibi tempus ad quietem relinqueret, ut ultrô militum concursû ac vocibus sibi parcere cogeretur.

41. Tum ducēs principēsque Nerviorum, quî aliquem sermonis aditum causamque amicitiae cum Cicerone habebant, colloquî sēsē velle dicunt. Factâ potestâte, eadem quae Ambiorix cum Tituriô egerat commemorant: Omnem esse in armis  
5 Galliam; Germanôs Rhenum trānsisse; Caesaris reliquorumque hiberna oppugnâri. Addunt etiam de Sabini morte; Ambiorigem ostentant fidei faciendae causâ. Errâre eôs dicunt, si quicquam ab iis praesidi sperent quî suis rebus diffidant; sēsē tamen hoc esse in Ciceronem populumque Rômanum animô,  
10 ut nihil nisi hiberna recûsent atque hanc inveterâscere consuetudinem nōlint; licere illis incolumibus per sē ex hibernis discēdere et quâscumque in partēs velint sine metû proficisci. Cicerô ad haec ūnum modo respondet: Nōn esse consuetudinem populî Rômanî accipere ab hoste armâtô condiçionem; si  
15 ab armis discēdere velint, sē adiūtore ūtantur lēgâtôsque ad Caesarem mittant; sperâre sē prô eius iustitiâ quae petierint impetrâtûrôs.

42. Ab hac spē repulsî Nervii vâllô pedum x et fossâ pedum xv hiberna cingunt. Haec et superiorum annorum consuetudine â nobis cognoverant et, quôsdam de exercitû nacti captivôs, ab his docēbantur; sed, nullâ ferramentorum  
5 cōpiâ quae essent ad hunc ūsum idōnea, gladiis caespitēs circumcidere, manibus sagulisque terram exhaurire cōgēbantur. Quâ quidem ex rē hominum multitudine cognoscî potuit; nam minus hōris tribus milium pedum xv in circuitû mūnitiōnem perfēcērunt. Reliquis diēbus turrēs ad altitudinem vâlli,  
10 falcēs testudinēsque, quâs idem captivî docuerant, parâre ac facere coepērunt.

43. Septimô oppugnatiōis diē maximô coortô ventô ferventēs fûsili ex argillâ glandēs fundis et fervefacta iacula in casâs, quae mōre Gallicô strâmentis erant tēctae, iacere coepērunt. Hae celeriter ignem comprehendērunt et ventî magnitudine in omnem locum castrorum distulērunt. Hostēs

maximō clāmōre, sicutī partā iam atque explorātā victōriā, turrēs testūdīnēsq̄e agere et scālis vāllum ascendere coepērunt. At tanta militum virtūs atque ea praesentia animī fuit ut, cum undique flammā torrērentur maximāque tēlōrum multītūdine premerentur suaeque omnia impedimenta atque 10 omnēs fortūnās cōnflagrāre intellexerent, nōn modo dē vāllō dēcēderet nēmō, sed paene nē respiceret quidem quisquam, ac tum omnēs ācerīmē fortissimēque pugnārent. Hīc diēs nostrīs longē gravissimus fuit; sed tamen hunc habuit ēventum, ut eō diē maximus numerus hostium vulnerārētur atque inter- 15 ficerētur, ut sē sub ipsō vāllō cōnstipāverant recessumque primīs ultimī nōn dabant. Paulum quidem intermissā flammā et quōdam locō turri adāctā et contingente vāllum, tertiāe cohortis centuriōnēs ex eō quō stābant locō recessērunt suōsq̄e omnēs remōvērunt, nūtū vōcibusque hostēs, sī introīre vellent, 20 vocāre coepērunt; quōrum prōgredi ausus est nēmō. Tum ex omni parte lapidibus coniectis dēturbātī, turrisque succēnsa est.

44. Erant in eā legiōne fortissimī virī, centuriōnēs, quī iam primīs ordinibus appropinquārent, T. Pullō et L. Vorēnus. Hī perpetuās inter sē contrōversiās habēbant quīnam antefērētur, omnibusque annīs dē locō summīs simultātibus contendēbant. Ex his Pullō, cum ācerīmē ad mūnitiōnēs pugnārētur, 5 ‘Quid dubitās,’ inquit, ‘Vorēne? aut quem locum tuae probandae virtūtis exspectās? Hīc diēs dē nostrīs contrōversiis iūdicābit.’ Haec cum dīxisset, prōcēdit extrā mūnitiōnēs, quaeque pars hostium cōnfertissima est visa irrumpit. Nē Vorēnus quidem sēsē tum vāllō continet, sed omnium veritus 10 existimātiōnem subsequitur. Mediocrī spatiō relicto Pullō pīlum in hostēs immittit atque ūnum ex multītūdine prōcurrentem trāicit; quō percussō et exanimātō, hunc scūtīs prōte- gunt hostēs, in illum ūniversī tēla coniciunt neque dant prōgrediendī facultātem. Trānsfigitur scūtum Pullōnī et verūtum 15 in balteō dēfigitur. Avertit hīc cāsus vāgīnam et gladium ēducere cōnantī dextram morātur manum, impeditumque

hostēs circumstant. Succurrit inimicus illi Vorēnus et labōrantī subvenit. Ad hunc sē cōfestim ā Pullōne omnis  
20 multitūdō convertit; illum verūtō trānsfixum arbitrantur. Gladiō comminus rem gerit Vorēnus atque unō interfectō reliquōs paulum prōpellit; dum cupidius instat, in locum delātus inferiōrem concidit. Huic rūsus circumventō fert subsidium Pullō, atque ambō incolumēs complūribus interfectis summā  
25 cum laude sēsē intrā mūnitiōnēs recipiunt. Sic fortūna in contentiōne et certāmine utrumque versāvit ut alter alterī inimicus auxiliō salūtique esset, neque dīiudicārī posset uter utri virtūte antefendus vidērētur.

45. Quantō erat in diēs gravior atque asperior oppugnātiō, et maximē quod magnā parte militum cōfectā vulneribus rēs ad paucitatem dēfēnsōrum pervēnerat, tantō crēbriōres litterae nūntiique ad Caesarem mittēbantur; quōrum pars dēprehēnsa  
5 in cōspectū nostrōrum militum cum cruciātū necābatur. Erat unus intus Nervius, nōmine Verticō, locō nātus honestō, quī ā primā obsidiōne ad Cicerōnem perfūgerat summamque eī fidem praestiterat. Hic servō spē libertātis magnisque persuādet praemiis ut litterās ad Caesarem dēferat. Hās ille in iaculō  
10 illigātās effert et Gallus inter Gallōs sine ullā suspiciōne versātus ad Caesarem pervenit. Ab eō dē periculis Cicerōnis legiōnisque cognōscitur.

46. Caesar, acceptis litteris hōrā circiter undecimā diēi, statim nūntium in Bellovacōs ad M. Crassum mittit, cuius hiberna aberant ab eō milia passuum xxv; iubet mediā nocte legiōnem proficisci celeriterque ad sē venīre. Exit cum nūntiō  
5 Crassus. Alterum ad C. Fabium lēgātum mittit ut in Atrebatium finēs legiōnem adducat, quā sibi iter faciendum sciēbat. Scribit Labiēnō, sī rei publicae commodō facere possit, cum legiōne ad finēs Nerviorum veniat. Reliquam partem exercitūs, quod paulō aberat longius, nōn putat expectandam; equitēs  
10 circiter quadringentōs ex proximis hibernis cōgit.

47. Hōrā circiter tertiā ab antecursōribus dē Crassī adventū certior factus eō diē milia passuum xx prōcēdit. Crassum

Samarobrivæ præficit legiōnemque eī attribuit, quod ibi impedimenta exercitūs, obsidēs civitātum, litterās publicās, frumentumque omne quod eō tolerandæ hiemis causā dēvexerat <sup>5</sup> relinquēbat. Fabius, ut imperātum erat, nōn ita multum morātus in itinere cum legiōne occurrit. Labiēnus interitū Sabīnī et caede cohortium cognitā, cum omnēs ad eum Trēverōrum cōpiæ vēnissent, veritus nē, sī ex hibernīs fugæ similem profectiōnem fēcisset, hostium impetum sustinēre nōn posset, <sup>10</sup> praesertim quōs recentī victoriā efferri scīret, litterās Caesarī remittit quantō cum periculō legiōnem ex hibernīs ēductūrus esset; rem gestam in Eburōnibus perscribit; docet omnēs equitātūs peditātūsque cōpias Trēverōrum tria milia passuum longē ab suis castris cōnsēdisse. 15

**48.** Caesar cōnsiliō eius probātō, etsī opīniōne trium legiōnum dēiectus ad duās reciderat, tamen ūnum commūnis salutis auxilium in celeritatē pōnēbat. Venit magnīs itineribus in Nerviorum finēs. Ibi ex captivīs cognōscit quæ apud Cicerōnem gerantur quantōque in periculō rēs sit. Tum <sup>5</sup> cuidam ex equitibus Gallis magnīs præmiīs persuādet utī ad Cicerōnem epistulam dēferat. Hanc Graecis cōscriptam litteris mittit, ne interceptā epistulā nostra ab hostibus cōsilia cognōscentur. Sī adire nōn possit, monet ut trāgulam cum epistulā ad āmentum dēligatā intrā mūnitiōnēs castrōrum <sup>10</sup> abiciat. In litteris scribit sē cum legiōnibus profectum celeriter affore; hortātur ut pristinam virtutem retineat. Gallus periculum veritus, ut erat præceptum, trāgulam mittit. Haec cāsū ad turrim adhaesit neque ā nostris bīduō animadversa tertiō diē ā quōdam milite cōspicitur, dēmpla ad Cicerōnem <sup>15</sup> dēfertur. Ille perlēctam in conventū militum recitat maximāque omnēs laetitīā afficit. Tum fūmī incendiōrum procul vidēbantur: quæ rēs omnem dubitātiōnem adventūs legiōnum expulit.

**49.** Gallī rē cognitā per explōrātōrēs obsidiōnem relinquunt, ad Caesarem omnibus cōpiīs contendunt. Haec erant armāta circiter milia LX. Cicerō datā facultate Gallum ab

eōdem Verticōne quem suprā dēmōnstrāvimus repetit qui  
5 litterās ad Caesarem dēferat; hunc admonet iter cautē diligen-  
terque faciat; perscribit in litteris hostēs ab sē discessisse  
omnemque ad eum multitūdinem convertisse. Quibus litteris  
circiter mediā nocte Caesar allātis suōs facit certiōrēs eōsque  
ad dīmīcandum animō cōfirmat. Posterō diē lūce primā  
10 movet castra et circiter milia passuum quattuor prōgressus  
trāns vallem et rīvum multitūdinem hostium cōspiciātur.  
Erat magni periculī rēs cum tantis cōpiis iniquō locō dīmīcāre;  
tum, quoniam obsidiōne liberātum Cicerōnem sciēbat, aequō  
animō remittendum dē celeritāte exīstimābat. Cōnsidit et  
15 quam aequissimō locō potest castra commūnit atque haec, etsi  
erant exigua per sē, vix hominum milium septem, praesertim  
nullis cum impedimentis, tamen angustiis viarū quam  
maximē potest contrahit, eō cōnsiliō, ut in summam contemp-  
tione hostibus veniat. Interim speculātōribus in omnēs  
20 partēs dīmīssis explōrat quō commodissimē itinere vallem  
trānsire possit.

50. Eō diē parvulis equestribus proeliis ad aquam factis  
utrique sēsē suō locō continent: Galli, quod ampliōrēs cōpiās,  
quae nōndum convēnerant, exspectābant; Caesar, si forte  
timōris simulatiōne hostēs in suum locum ēlicere posset, ut citrā  
5 vallem prō castris proeliō contenderet; si id efficere nōn posset,  
ut explōrātis itineribus minōre cum periculō vallem rīvumque  
trānsiret. Primā lūce hostium equitātus ad castra accēdit  
proeliumque cum nostris equitibus committit. Caesar cōnsultō  
equitēs cēdere sēque in castra recipere iubet; simul ex omnibus  
10 partibus castra altiōre vāllō mūniri portāsque obstruī atque in  
his administrandis rēbus quam maximē concursārī et cum  
simulatiōne agī timōris iubet.

51. Quibus omnibus rēbus hostēs invitāti cōpiās trādūcunt  
aciemque iniquō locō cōstituunt, nostris vērō etiam dē vāllō  
dēductis propius accēdunt et tēla intrā mūnitiōnem ex omni-  
bus partibus coniciunt praecōnibusque circummissis prōnūn-  
6 tiārī iubent, seu quis Gallus seu Rōmānus velit ante hōram

tertiam ad sē trānsīre, sine periculō licēre; post id tempus nōn fore potestātem. Ac sic nostrōs contempsērunt, ut, obstructis in speciem portis singulis ordinibus caespitem, quod eā nōn posse intrōrumpere vidēbantur, aliī vāllum manū scindere, aliī fossās complēre inciperent. Tum Caesar omnibus portis 10 ēruptiōne factā equitatūque ēmissō celeriter hostēs in fugam dat, sic utī omnīnō pugnandī causā resisteret nēmō, magnumque ex iis numerum occidit atque omnēs armīs exuit.

52. Longius prōsequī veritus, quod silvae palūdēsque intercēdebant, omnibus suis incolumibus eōdem diē ad Cicerōnem pervenit. Institūtās turrēs, testudinēs mūnitiōnēsque hostium admirātur; legiōne prōductā cognōscit nōn decimum quemque esse reliquum militem sine vulnere; ex hīs omnibus 5 iūdicat rēbus quantō cum periculō et quantā cum virtūte rēs sint administrātae. Cicerōnem prō eius meritō legiōnemque collaudat; centuriōnēs singillatim tribūnōsque militum appellat, quōrum egregiam fuisse virtūtem testimoniō Cicerōnis cognōverat. Dē cāsū Sabīnī et Cottae certius ex captivīs 10 cognōscit. Posterō diē cōntiōne habitā rem gestam prōpōnit, milites cōsōlātur et cōnfirmat; quod dētrimentum culpā et temeritāte lēgātī sit acceptum, hōc aequiōre animō ferendum docet, quod beneficiō deōrum immortalium et virtūte eōrum expiātō incommodō neque hostibus diūtina laetitia neque ipsis 15 longior dolor relinquātur.

53. Interim ad Labiēnum per Rēmōs incrēdibili celeritāte dē victoriā Caesaris fāma perfertur, ut, cum ab hibernīs Cicerōnis milia passuum abesset circiter LX eoque post hōram nōnam diēi Caesar pervēnisset, ante mediam noctem ad portās castrōrum clāmor orerētur, quō clāmōre significātiō victōriae 5 grātulātiōque ab Rēmīs Labiēnō fieret. Hāc fāmā ad Trēverōs perlātā Indutiomārus, qui posterō diē castra Labiēni oppugnāre dēcrēverat, noctū prōfugit cōpiāsque omnēs in Trēverōs reducit. Caesar Fabium cum suā legiōne remittit in hiberna, ipse cum tribus legiōnibus circum Samarobrīvā trīnīs hibernīs 10 hiemāre cōstituit et, quod tantī mōtūs Galliae exstiterant,

tôtam hiemem ipse ad exercitum manēre dēcrēvit. Nam illō incommodō de Sabīnī morte perlātō omnēs ferē Galliae civitātēs dē bellō cōsultābant, nūntiōs legātiōnēsque in omnēs  
 15 partēs dīmittēbant, et quid reliquī cōsiliī caperent atque unde initium bellī fieret explōrābant, nocturnaque in locis dēserti concilia habēbant. Neque ūllum ferē tōtius hiemis tempus sine sollicitūdine Caesaris intercessit, quā aliquem dē cōsiliis ac mōtū Gallōrum nūntium acciperet. In his ab L. Rōsciō,  
 20 quem legiōnī tertiāe decimāe praefēcerat, certior factus est magnās cōpiās eārum civitātum quae Aremoricae appellantur oppugnandī suī causā convēnisse neque longius milia passuum octō ab hibernis suis āfuisse, sed nūntiō allātō dē victoriā Caesaris discessisse, adeō ut fugae similis discessus vidērētur.

54. At Caesar principibus cuiusque civitatis ad sē ēvocātis aliās territandō, cum sē scire quae fierent dēnūntiāret, aliās cohortandō magnam partem Galliae in officiō tenuit. Tamen Senonēs, quae est civitās in primis firma et magnae inter  
 5 Gallōs auctoritātis, Cavarinum, quem Caesar apud eōs rēgem cōstituerat, cuius frāter Moritasgus adventū in Galliam Caesaris cuiusque maiōrēs rēgnum obtinuerant, interficere publicō cōsiliō cōnātī, cum ille praesēnsisset ac profūgisset, usque ad finēs insecūtī rēgnō domōque expulērunt, et, missis  
 10 ad Caesarem satisfaciendī causā lēgātis, cum is omnem ad sē senātum venīre iussisset, dictō audientēs nōn fuērunt. Ac tantum apud hominēs barbarōs valuit esse aliquōs repertōs principēs bellī inferendī, tantamque omnibus voluntātum commūtātiōnem attulit, ut praeter Haeduōs et Rēmōs, quōs  
 15 praecipuō semper honōre Caesar habuit, alterōs prō vetere ac perpetuā ergā populum Rōmānum fidē, alterōs prō recentibus Gallicī bellī officiis, nūlla ferē civitās fuerit nōn suspecta nobīs. Idque adeō haud sciō mīrandumne sit, cum complūribus aliis dē causis, tum maximē quod iī quī virtūte bellī omnibus genti-  
 20 bus praeferēbantur, tantum sē eius opiniōnis dēperdidisse ut populī Rōmānī imperia perferrent, gravissimē dolēbant.

55. Trēverī vērō atque Indutiomārus tōtius hiemis nūllum

tempus intermiserunt quin trans Rhenum legatos mitterent, civitates sollicitarent, pecunias pollicerentur, magnā parte exercitus nostri interfectā multo minorem superesse dicerent partem. Neque tamen ulli civitati Germanorum persuaderi potuit ut Rhenum transiret, cum se bis expertos dicerent, Ariovisti bello et Tenceterorum transitu; non esse amplius fortunam temptaturos. Hanc spe lapsus Indutiomarus nihil minus copias cogere, exercere, a finitimis equos parare, exules damnatosque totā Galliā magnis praemiis ad se allicere coepit. Ac tantam sibi iam his rebus in Galliā auctoritatem comparaverat ut undique ad eum legatiōnes concurrerent, gratiam atque amicitiam publicē privātimque peterent.

56. Ubi intellēxit ultrō ad se veniri, alterā ex parte Senones Carnutesque conscientiā facinoris instigare, alterā Nervios Atuaticosque bellum Romanis parare, neque sibi voluntariorum copias defore, si ex finibus suis progredi coepisset, armatum concilium indicit. Hoc more Gallorum est initium belli; quō lege communi omnes puberes armati convenire coguntur; quī ex iis novissimus venit in conspectū multitudinis omnibus cruciātibus affectus necatur. In eō conciliō Cingetorigem, alterius principem factionis, generum suum, quem suprà demonstrāvimus Caesaris secutum fidem ab eō non discessisse, hostem iudicat bonaque eius publicat. His rebus confectis in conciliō pronūtiat arcessitum se a Senonibus et Carnutibus aliisque compluribus Galliae civitatibus; hūc iturum per fines Remorum eorumque agros populaturum ac, priusquam id faciat, castra Labieni oppugnaturum. Quae fieri velit praecipit.

57. Labienus, cum et loci naturā et manū munitissimis castris sese teneret, de suo ac legionis periculō nihil timebat; ne quam occasionem rei bene gerendae dimitteret cogitabat. Itaque, a Cingetorige atque eius propinquis oratione Indutiomari cognitā quam in conciliō habuerat, nuntios mittit ad finitimas civitates equitesque undique evocat; his certam diem conveniendi dicit. Interim prope cotidie cum omni equitatu

Indutiomārus sub castris eius vagābātur, aliās ut situm castrōrum cognōsceret, aliās colloquendī aut territandī causā;  
10 equitēs plērumque omnēs tēla intrā vāllum coniciēbant. Labiēnus suōs intrā mūnitiōnem continēbat timōrisque opiniōnem quibuscumque poterat rēbus augēbat.

58. Cum maiōre in diēs contemptiōne Indutiomārus ad castra accēderet, nocte ūnā intrōmissis equitibus omnium finitimārum cīvitātum, quōs arcessendōs cūrāverat, tantā diligentīā omnēs suōs custōdiīs intrā castra continuit ut nullā ratiōne  
5 ea rēs ēnūtiārī aut ad Trēverōs perferri posset. Interim ex cōnsuetūdine cotidiānā Indutiomārus ad castra accēdit atque ibi magnam partem diēi cōnsūmit; equitēs tēla coniciunt et magnā cum contumēliā verbōrum nostrōs ad pugnam ēvocant. Nullō ab nostris datō respōnsō, ubi vīsum est, sub vesperum  
10 dispersi ac dissipātī discēdunt. Subitō Labiēnus duābus portīs omnem equitātum ēmittit; praecipit atque interdicit, perterritis hostibus atque in fugam coniectis (quod fore, sicut accidit, vidēbat), ūnum omnēs petant Indutiomārum, neu quis quem prius vulneret quam illum interfectum viderit, quod morā  
15 reliquōrum spatium nactum illum effugere nōlēbat; magna prōpōnit iis qui occiderint praemia; submittit cohortēs equitibus subsidiō. Comprobat hominis cōsiliū fortuna, et, cum ūnum omnēs peterent, in ipsō flūminis vadō dēprehēnsus Indutiomārus interficitur caputque eius refertur in castra; redeuntēs  
• 20 equitēs quōs possunt cōnsectantur atque occidunt. Hāc rē cognitā omnēs Eburōnum et Nerviorū quae convēnerant cōpiae discēdunt, paulōque habuit post id factum Caesar quiētiōrem Galliam.

## BOOK VI. PUNISHMENT OF REBEL STATES. DESCRIPTION OF GAULS AND GERMANS

The enforced leisure of the winter was improved by Caesar in making preparations for the coming struggle with the insurgents. Two legions were levied in Cisalpine Gaul, and a third was borrowed from Pompey, making ten legions now under Caesar's command. Before the arrival of spring he surprised the Nervii with four legions and ravaged their country with fire and sword. Returning to winter quarters he called an assembly of the Gauls, to which all sent representatives except the Senones, the Carnutes, and the Treveri. He overawed the first two of these tribes by a prompt advance against them, and received hostages from them.

Caesar's chief purpose for the year was the punishment of Ambiorix and the Eburones for the slaughter of Sabinus and Cotta with their men. He set about the task methodically, first stripping them of allies and possible places of refuge. To their north lay the Menapii, the only state which had never submitted to Caesar. Hastening thither he burned villages, carried off cattle and men, and received the submission of the state. Then he marched south to the support of Labienus, who was in pursuit of the Treveri; but before his arrival Labienus had drawn them into an engagement in which they were defeated with great loss. In order to overawe the Suebi, who had intended to join the Treveri on this occasion, and who might help Ambiorix, Caesar built another bridge across the Rhine, some distance above the place where he had made the first, and crossed in force. He fought no battle there, because the Suebi withdrew far into the interior and it was no part of his plan to subjugate Germany. Having accomplished his purpose of intimidating the Germans, he withdrew, leaving enough of the bridge standing to suggest to them that he might return.

Caesar had now thoroughly cowed the states all about the Eburones, and was ready to take his vengeance. He marched through the Ardennes into their country, sending cavalry ahead to surprise Ambiorix if possible; but the wily chief eluded his pursuers and disbanded his army. The rest was a man-hunt. Caesar divided his army into three bodies, in order to cover the territory more thoroughly. Even so he could not destroy everything, and he sent out a general invitation to the neighbor-

ing Gauls to come and share in the plunder of the wretched Eburones. A body of German horsemen who had heard of this invitation came over to share in the pillaging. Hearing, however, that Caesar had left all his baggage in charge of Cicero with a weak garrison, they surprised and nearly captured the camp. In spite of all Caesar's efforts, Ambiorix never was caught; but such of his people as escaped death were left without houses or cattle or crops.

Caesar then returned to the Senones and Carnutes and instituted an investigation of their revolt, which resulted in the condemnation to death of Acco, a chief of the Senones. Making such a disposition of his forces for the winter as gave them control of the area of the revolt, Caesar went to Italy, where matters of great moment awaited his attention.

Caesar was a keen observer of manners and customs and wished, in some part of his work, to describe those of the Gauls and the Germans. This description might equally well have been given in any other book, since it was necessarily a digression from his narrative. But as there was only a short story to tell in the sixth book, he took the opportunity offered by the uneventful expedition to Germany, and there inserted his interesting and valuable account of the peoples with whom he was fighting.

## LIBER SEXTUS.

1. Multis de causis Caesar maiorem Galliae motum expectans per M. Silanum, C. Antistium Reginum, T. Sextium legatos dilectum habere instituit; simul ab Cn. Pompeio proconsule petiit, quoniam ipse ad urbem cum imperio rei publicae causam remaneret, quos ex Cisalpinâ Galliâ consul sacramentis rogavisset ad signa convenire et ad se proficisci iuberet, magni interesse etiam in reliquum tempus ad opinionem Galliae existimans tantas videre Italiae facultates ut, si quid esset in bello detrimenti acceptum, non modo id brevi tempore sarciri, sed etiam maioribus augeri copiis posset. Quod cum Pompeius et rei publicae et amicitiae tribuisset, celeriter confectio per suos dilectum, tribus ante exactam hiemem et constitutis et adductis legionibus duplicatioque earum cohortium numero quas cum Q. Titurio amiserat, et celeritate et copiis docuit quid populi Romani disciplina atque opes possent.

2. Interfectio Indutiomaro, ut docuimus, ad eius propinquos a Treveris imperium deferitur. Illi finitimis Germanos sollicitare et pecuniam polliceri non desistunt. Cum a proximis impetrare non possent, ulteriores temptant. Inventis nonnullis civitatibus iure iurando inter se confirmant obsidibusque de pecunia cavent; Ambiorigem sibi societate et foedere adiungunt. Quibus rebus cognitis Caesar, cum undique bellum parari videret, Nervios, Atuaticos, Menapios, adiunctis Cisterhnanis omnibus Germanis, esse in armis, Senones ad imperatum non venire et cum Carnutibus finitimisque civitatibus consilia communicare, a Treveris Germanos crebris legationibus sollicitari, maturius sibi de bello cogitandum putavit.

3. Itaque nondum hieme confecta proximis quattuor coactis legionibus de improvisio in fines Nerviorum contendit et, prius-

quam illi aut convenire aut profugere possent, magnō pecoris atque hominum numerō captō atque eā praedā militibus concessā  
5 vāstātisque agrīs, in dēditionem venīre atque obsidēs sibi dare coēgit. Eō celeriter cōfectō negōtiō rūsus in hiberna legiōnēs redūxit. Conciliō Galliae primō v̄re, ut instituerat, indictō, cum reliquī praeter Senonēs, Carnutēs, Trēverōsque v̄nissent, initium belli ac dēfectiōnis hoc esse arbitrātus, ut  
10 omnia postpōnere vidērētur, concilium Lutetiam Parīsiōrum trānsfert. Cōfinēs erant hī Senonibus civitātemque patrum memoriā coniūnxerant, sed ab hōc cōsiliō āfuisse existimābantur. Hāc rē prō suggestū prōnūtiātā eōdem diē cum legiōnibus in Senonēs proficīscitur magnisque itineribus eō per-  
15 venit.

4. Cognitō eius adventū Accō, quī princeps eius cōsiliī fuerat, iubet in oppida multitudinem convenire. Cōnantibus, priusquam id effici posset, adesse Rōmānōs nūntiātur. Necessariō sententiā dēsistunt lēgātōsque dēprecandī causā ad  
5 Caesarem mittunt; adeunt per Haeduōs, quōrum antiquitus erat in fidē civitās. Libenter Caesar petentibus Haeduīs dat veniam excūsatiōnemque accipit, quod aestivum tempus instantis bellī, nōn quaestiōnis esse arbitrātur. Obsidibus imperātis centum, hōs Haeduīs custodiendōs trādit. Eōdem Carnutēs  
10 lēgātōs obsidēsque mittunt, ūsī dēprecātōribus Rēmīs, quōrum erant in clientelā; eadem ferunt respōnsa. Peragit concilium Caesar equitēsque imperat civitatibus.

5. Hāc parte Galliae pācātā, tōtus et mente et animō in bellum Trēverōrum et Ambiorigis insistit. Cavarīnum cum equitātū Senonum sēcum proficīscī iubet, nē quis aut ex huius irācundiā aut ex eō quod meruerat odiō civitātis mōtus existat.  
5 Hīs rēbus cōstitutīs, quod prō explorātō habēbat Ambiorigem proeliō nōn esse contentūrum, reliqua eius cōnsilia animō circumspiciēbat. Erant Menapii propinquī Eburōnum finibus, perpetuīs palūdibus silvisque mūnītī, quī ūnī ex Galliā dē pāce ad Caesarem lēgātōs numquam miserant. Cum hīs esse hos-  
10 pitium Ambiorigī sciēbat; item per Trēverōs v̄nisse Germānis

in amicitiam cognoverat. Haec prius illi detrahenda auxilia existimabat quam ipsum bellō lacesseret, nē dēspērātā salūte aut sē in Menapiōs abderet aut cum Trānsrhēnānis congregi cōgeretur. Hōc initō cōsiliō tōtius exercitūs impedimenta ad Labiēnum in Trēverōs mittit duāsque legiōnēs ad eum proficisci iubet; ipse cum legiōnibus expeditis quinque in Menapiōs proficiscitur. Illi nullā coāctā manū loci praesidiō frēti in silvās palūdēsque cōfugiunt suaeque eōdem cōferunt.

6. Caesar partitīs cōpiīs cum C. Fabiō lēgātō et M. Crassō quaestōre celeriterque effectis pontibus adit tripertitō, aedificia vicōsque incendit, magnō pecoris atque hominum numerō potitur. Quibus rēbus coāctī Menapii lēgātōs ad eum pācis petendae causā mittunt. Ille obsidibus acceptis hostium sē habitūrum numerō cōfirmat, sī aut Ambiorigem aut eius lēgātōs finibus suis recēpissent. His cōfirmātis rēbus Commium Atrebātem cum equitatū custōdis locō in Menapiis relinquit; ipse in Trēverōs proficiscitur.

7. Dum haec ā Caesare geruntur, Trēverī magnis coāctis peditātūs equitatūsque cōpiīs Labiēnum cum unā legiōne, quae in eōrum finibus hiemābat, adoriri parābant, iamque ab eō nōn longius bidui viā aberant, cum duās vēnisse legiōnēs missū Caesaris cognōscunt. Positis castris ā milibus passuum xv auxilia Germānōrum exspectāre cōstituunt. Labiēnus hostium cognitō cōsiliō spērāns temeritate eōrum fore aliquam dimicandī facultātem, praesidiō quinque cohortium impedimentis relictō, cum viginti quinque cohortibus magnōque equitatū contrā hostem proficiscitur et mille passuum intermissō spatiō castra commūnit. Erat inter Labiēnum atque hostem difficilī trānsitū flūmen ripisque praeuptis. Hoc neque ipse trānsire habēbat in animō neque hostēs trānsitūrōs existimābat. Augēbātur auxiliōrum cotidie spēs. Loquitur cōsultō palam, quoniam Germāni appropinquāre dicantur, sēsē suās exercitūsque fortunās in dubium nōn dēvocātūrum et posterō diē primā luce castra mōtūrum. Celeriter haec ad hostēs dēferuntur, ut ex magnō Gallōrum equitum numerō nōn nullōs Gallicis rēbus

favere nātūra cōgēbat. Labiēnus, nocte tribūnis militum prī-  
 20 misque ōrdinibus convocātis, quid suī sit cōsiliī prōpōnit et,  
 quō facilius hostibus timōris det suspiciōnem, maiōre strepitū  
 et tumultū quam populī Rōmānī fert cōnsuētūdō castra movērī  
 iubet. His rēbus fugae similem profectiōnem efficit. Haec  
 quoque per explōrātōrēs ante lūcem in tantā propinquitāte cas-  
 25 trōrum ad hostēs dēferuntur.

8. Vix agmen novissimum extrā mūnitiōnēs prōcesserat,  
 cum Gallī cohortātī inter sē nē spērātam praedam ex manibus  
 dimitterent: Longum esse, perterritis Rōmānis, Germānōrum  
 auxilium exspectāre, neque suam pati dignitatem ut tantis  
 6 cōpiis tam exiguam manum, praesertim fugientem atque impe-  
 ditam, adoriri nōn audeant, flūmen trānsire et iniquō locō  
 committere proelium nōn dubitant. Quae fore suspicātus Labi-  
 ēnus, ut omnēs citrā flūmen ēliceret, eādē ūsus simulātiōne  
 itineris placidē prōgrediēbātur. Tum praemissis paulum im-  
 10 pedimentis atque in tumultō quōdam collocātis, 'Habētis,'  
 inquit, 'militēs, quam petistis facultatem; hostem impeditō  
 atque iniquō locō tenētis; praestāte eandem nōbis ducibus vir-  
 tūtem quam saepe numerō imperātōrī praestitistis, atque illum  
 adesse et haec cōram cernere existimāte.' Simul signa ad hos-  
 15 tem convertī aciemque dērigī iubet et, paucis turmis praesidiō  
 ad impedimenta dīmissis, reliquōs equitēs ad latera dispōnit.  
 Celeriter nostrī clāmōre sublātō pīla in hostēs immittunt. Illi,  
 ubi praeter spem quōs fugere crēdebant infestis signis ad sē  
 ire vīdērunt, impetum ferre nōn potuerunt ac primō concursū  
 20 in fugam coniectī proximās silvās petiērunt. Quōs Labiēnus  
 equitātū cōsectātus, magnō numerō interfectō, complūribus  
 captis paucis post diēbus civitatem recēpit. Nam Germānī  
 quī auxiliō veniēbant perceptā Trēverōrum fugā sēsē domum  
 recēpērunt. Cum his propinquī Indutiomārī, quī dēfectiōnis  
 25 auctōrēs fuerant, comitātī eōs ex civitāte excessērunt. Cin-  
 getorīgī, quem ab initio permānsisse in officiō dēmōstrāvimus,  
 prīncipātus atque imperium est trāditum.

9. Caesar, postquam ex Menapiis in Trēverōs vēnit, duābus

dē causis Rhēnum trānsire cōstituit; quārum ūna erat quod Germānī auxilia contrā sē Trēveris miserant, altera, nē ad eōs Ambiorix receptum habēret. His cōstitutis rēbus, paulō suprà eum locum quō ante exercitum trādūxerat facere pontem 5 instituit. Nōtā atque institūtā ratiōne magnō militum studiō paucis diēbus opus efficitur. Firmō in Trēveris ad pontem praesidiō relictō, nē quis ab his subitō mōtus orerētur, reliquās cōpiās equitātumque trādūcit. Ubiī, quī ante obsidēs dederant atque in dēditionem vēnerant, pūrgandī suī causā ad eum 10 lēgātōs mittunt quī doceant neque auxilia ex suā civitāte in Trēverōs missa neque ab sē fidem laesam; petunt atque ōrant ut sibi parcat, nē commūnī odiō, Germānōrum innocentēs prō nocentibus poenās pendant; si amplius obsidum velit dari, pollicentur. Cognitā Caesar causā reperit ab Suēbīs auxilia missa 15 esse; Ubiōrum satisfactiōnem accipit, aditūs viāsque in Suēbōs perquirit.

10. Interim paucis post diēbus fit ab Ubiīs certior Suēbōs omnēs in ūnum locum cōpiās cōgere atque iīs nātiōnibus quae sub eōrum sint imperiō dēnūntiāre ut auxilia peditātūs equitātūsque mittant. His cognitis rēbus rem frūmentāriam prōvidet, castris idōneum locum dēligit; Ubiīs imperat ut pecora 5 dēdūcant suaeque omnia ex agris in oppida cōferant, spērāns barbarōs atque imperitōs hominēs inopiā cibāriōrum adductōs ad iniquam pugnandī condiçiōnem posse dēdūci; mandat ut crēbrōs explōrātōrēs in Suēbōs mittant quaeque apud eōs gerantur cognōscant. Illi imperāta faciunt et paucis diēbus inter- 10 missis referunt: Suēbōs omnēs, posteāquam certiōrēs nūntiī dē exercitū Rōmānōrum vēnerint, cum omnibus suis sociōrumque cōpiīs quās coēgissent, penitus ad extrēmōs finēs sē recēpisse. Silvam esse ibi infinītā magnitudīne, quae appellētur Bacēnis; hanc longē intrōrsus pertinēre et prō 15 nātivō mūrō obiectam Chēruscōs ab Suēbōrum Suēbōsque ab Chēruscōrum iniūriis incursiōnibusque prohibēre; ad eius silvae initium Suēbōs adventum Rōmānōrum exspectāre cōstituisse.

11. Quoniam ad hunc locum perventum est, nō aliēnum esse vidētur dē Galliae Germāniaeque mōribus et quō differant hae nātiōnēs inter sēsē prōpōnere. In Galliā nō solum in omnibus cīvitātibus atque in omnibus pāgis partibusque, sed  
 5 paene etiam in singulis domibus factiōnēs sunt, eārumque factiōnum principēs sunt quī summam auctōritātem eōrum iūdicio habere existimantur, quōrum ad arbitrium iūdiciumque summa omnium rērum cōsiliōrumque redeat. Idque eius rei causā antiq̄uitus institūtum vidētur, nē quis ex plēbe contrā potenti-  
 10 ōrem auxili egēret; suōs enim quisque opprimī et circumveniri nō patitur, neque, aliter sī faciat, ūllam inter suōs habeat auctōritātem. Haec eadem ratiō est in summā tōtius Galliae; namque omnēs civitatēs divīsae sunt in duās partēs.

12. Cum Caesar in Galliam vēnit, alterius factiōnis principēs erant Haeduī, alterius Sēquanī. Hī cum per sē minus

Chap. 11-28. The customs and manners of the Gauls and the Germans.

Chap. 11-20. The customs and manners of the Gauls.

Chap. 11. Party spirit and party leaders in Gaul.

1. *locum*, "point," in the narrative. Caesar has been describing his second invasion of Germany.

2. *quō*, "in what (respects)"; an ablative of specification.

4. *partibus*, "districts."

5. *singulis domibus*: an example has been seen in the case of the brothers, Dumnorix and Diviciacus, Book I. It is evident that these *factiōnēs* are not unlike our political parties.

*eārum . . . redeat*, "of these factions, those who are thought to have . . . are chiefs to whose decision, etc."

6. *quī*: supply *ū* as the antecedent, and as the subject of *sunt*.

*eōrum*: i.e. the members of the party.

7. *quōrum . . . redeat*: i.e. these *principēs* are not state magistrates, but "chiefs of such sort that to their decision all their partisans' private affairs and plans are referred."

8. *eius rei*: explained by the clause *nē . . . egēret*.

10. *auxili*: verbs meaning to be without usually govern the ablative, but *egēō* governs either the genitive or the ablative.

*quisque*: i.e. each chief. The whole description of these chiefs applies fairly well to some of our political bosses.

12. *haec . . . Galliae*, "this same system is followed in general by Gaul as a whole."

*Galliae* is a predicate genitive with *ratiō est*.

13. *duās partēs*: i.e. those described in the following chapter.

Chap. 12. The states which play the same part among other states as the chiefs among their fellow citizens.

1. *cum . . . vēnit*: in 58 B.C. For mode see App. 241, a: G.-L. 580: A. 545: B. 288, 1, A: H.-B. 550, a: H. 600, I.

2. *alterius Sēquanī*: but in I, 31, 10, Diviciacus tells Caesar that the Arverni are the head of this faction. The Arverni had long been the head, and nominally may have been still in that

valērent, quod summa auctōritās antiquitus erat in Haeduīs magnaeque eōrum erant clientēlae, Germānōs atque Ariovistum sibi adiūnxerant eōsque ad sē magnīs iactūrīs pollicitātiōnibusque perdūxerant. Proeliis vērō complūribus factis secundis atque omni nōbilitate Haeduōrum interfectā, tantum potentiā antecesserant ut magnam partem clientium ab Haeduīs ad sē trādūcerent obsidēsque ab hīs principum filiōs acciperent, et publicē iūrāre cōgerent nihil sē contrā Sēquanōs cōnsilī initūrōs, et partem finitimī agrī per vim occupātam possidērent Galliaeque tōtius principātum obtinērent. Quā necessitate adductus Diviciācus auxili petendī causā Rōmam ad senātum profectus infectā rē redierat. Adventū Caesaris factā commutātiōne rērum, obsidibus Haeduīs redditīs, veteribus clientēlis restitūtīs, novīs per Caesarem comparātīs, quod iī quī sē ad eōrum amicitiam aggregāverant meliōre condiciōne atque aequiōre imperiō sē ūtī vidēbant, reliquīs rēbus eōrum grātiā dignitateque amplificātā, Sēquanī principātum dimiserant. In eōrum locum Rēmī successerant; quōs quod adaequāre apud Caesarem grātiā intellegēbātur, iī quī propter veterēs inimici-tiās nūllō modō cum Haeduīs coniungī poterant sē Rēmīs in clientēlam dicābant. Hōs illī diligenter tuēbantur; ita et novam et repente collēctam auctōritatem tenēbant. Eō tamen statū rēs erat, ut longē principēs habērentur Haeduī, secundum locum dignitātis Rēmī obtinērent.

position; but in fact the Sequani, helped by Ariovistus, had displaced them.

hi, "the latter."

4. Germānōs, etc.: in the next few lines Caesar repeats in brief what Diviciācus told him in I, 31.

10. iūrāre: supply *principēs* as subject.

13. Rōmam profectus: cf. I, 31, 29, and note.

14. infectā rē, "without accomplishing anything."

commutātiōne: resulting from Caesar's defeat of Ariovistus. The ablatives absolute may be translated by either principal or causal clauses.

16. quod . . . vidēbant gives the reason for *novīs . . . comparātīs*.

17. eōrum = *Haeduōrum*.

18. sē ūtī, "that they enjoyed."

reliquīs rēbus, "by all other means."

20. Rēmī: Caesar favored them because of their assistance in his first campaign against the Belgae; see especially II, 3 and 4.

quōs . . . intellegēbātur, "because it was understood that they [the Remi] were equal to the Haeduī in Caesar's favor."

23. dicābant: not *dicēbant*.

24. collēctam, "acquired."

13. In omni Galliā eōrum hominum quī aliquō sunt numero atque honōre genera sunt duo; nam plēbēs paene servōrum habētur locō, quae nihil audet per sē, nullī adhibētur cōnsiliō. Plērīque, cum aut aere aliēnō aut magnitūdine tribūtōrum aut iniūriā potentiōrum premuntur, sēsē in servitūtem dicant nōbilibus; quibus in hōs eadem omnia sunt iūra quae dominis in servōs. Sed dē hīs duōbus generibus alterum est druidum, alterum equitum. Illi rēbus dīvinīs intersunt, sacrificia pūblica ac prīvāta prōcūrant, religiōnēs interpretantur; ad  
 10 eōs magnus adulēscentium numerus disciplīnae causā concurrit, magnōque hī sunt apud eōs honōre. Nam ferē dē omnibus contrōversiis pūblicis prīvātisque cōstituunt, et, si quod est admissum facinus, si caedēs facta, si dē hēreditāte, dē finibus contrōversia est, idem dēcernunt, praemia poenāsque cōstitu-  
 15 unt; si quī aut prīvātus aut populus eōrum dēcrētō nōn stetit, sacrificiis interdīcunt. Haec poena apud eōs est gravissima. Quibus ita est interdictum, hī numero impiōrum ac scelerātōrum habentur, hīs omnēs dēcēdunt, aditum eōrum sermōnemque dēfugiunt, nē quid ex contāgiōne incommodī accipiant,  
 20 neque iis petentibus iūs redditur neque honōs ūllus comunicātur. Hīs autem omnibus druidibus praeest ūnus, quī summam inter eōs habet auctōritātem. Hōc mortuō aut, si quī ex reliquīs excellit dignitāte, succēdit, aut, si sunt plūrēs parēs,

Chap. 13. The two higher classes. The position of the common people. The power of the Druids.

1. aliquō numero, "of any account."

4. cum premuntur: for mode see App. 240.

6. quae . . . servōs, "as masters have over their slaves."

7. est druidum, "is that of the Druids." Very little is known of Druidism beyond what Caesar tells us here, though much has been guessed and written about it. Caesar may have got his information from Diviciacus, who was a Druid. If the Druids had the strength which Caesar describes, it is

surprising that they did not do more to unify Gaul.

8. intersunt, "have charge of."

11. hī: the Druids.

eōs: the rest of the people.

12. cōstituunt, "render decisions." est admissum, "has been committed."

15. dēcrētō nōn stetit, "does not abide by the decision."

16. sacrificiis interdīcunt: i.e. they excommunicate the offender.

18. hīs dēcēdunt, "avoid them."

20. neque . . . redditur: i.e. they cannot appeal to courts of justice if any wrong is done them.

suffrāgiō druidum, nōn numquam etiam armis dē principātū contendunt. Hī certō annī tempore in finibus Carnutum, quae regio tōtius Galliae media habētur, cōsidunt in locō cōse-crātō. Hūc omnēs undique quī contrōversiās habent conveniunt eōrumque dēcrētis iūdicisq̄ parent. Disciplina in Britannā reperta atque inde in Galliam trāslāta esse existimā-tur, et nunc quī diligentius eam rem cognōscere volunt plē-rumque illō discendi causā proficiscuntur.

14. Druidēs ā bellō abesse cōsuērunt neque tribūta ūnā cum reliquīs pendunt. Tantīs excitāti praemiis et suā sponte multī in disciplinam conveniunt et ā parentibus propinquisq̄ mittuntur. Magnum ibi numerum versuum ēdiscere dicuntur. Itaque annōs nōn nullī vicēnōs in disciplinā permanent. Neque fās esse existimant ea litteris mandāre, cum in reliquīs rerē rēbus, publicis privātisque ratiōnibus, Graecis litteris ūtantur. Id mihi duābus dē causis instituisse videntur, quod neque in vulgus disciplinam efferri velint, neque eōs quī dis-cant litteris cōfisōs minus memoriae studēre; quod ferē plē-risque accidit, ut praesidiō litterārum diligētiā in perdiscendō ac memoriā remittant. In primis hoc volunt persuādēre,

28. dēcrētis: for case see App. 115.  
disciplina, "the system."

in Britannā reperta: it is more likely that it originally passed from Gaul to Britain, outgrew some of its barbarism in Gaul, but retained its original features in the less civilized Britain.

Chap. 14. The doctrines of the Druids.

1. ā bellō: the fact that the Druid Diviciacus once commanded some of Caesar's auxiliaries (II, 5, 4-9) shows that they might be warriors if they liked.

4. versuum: primitive laws, maxims, and religious formulas are usually found to be in verse, because verse is more easily committed to memory than prose.

6. ea: i.e. their teachings.

cum, "although."

7. ratiōnibus, "accounts," "records."

Graecis litteris: i.e. the Gallic language written in Greek characters.

8. id: i.e. neque . . . mandāre.

9. disciplinam: including the sacred chants and formulas by which men could approach and communicate with the gods. So long as the Druids kept this knowledge to themselves, they could control the people.

10. minus studēre, "to pay less attention to."

quod: subject of *accidit*, and explained by the appositive, *ut . . . remittant*.

11. praesidiō, lit. "because of the protection of" = "depending on."

12. hoc persuādēre, "to convince men of this"; *hoc* is explained by the infinitive clauses in apposition.

nōn interīre animās, sed ab aliīs post mortem trānsire ad aliōs; atque hōc maximē ad virtutem excitārī putant, metū mortis  
 15 neglēctō. Multa praetereā dē sīderibus atque eōrum mōtū, dē mundi ac terrārum magnitudine, dē rērum nātūrā, dē deōrum immortalīum vī ac potestāte disputant et iuventūti trādunt.

15. Alterum genus est equitum. Hi, cum est ūsus atque aliquod bellum incidit (quod ferē ante Caesaris adventum quotannis accidere solēbat, utī aut ipsī iniuriās inferrent aut illātās prōpulsārent), omnēs in bellō versantur, atque eōrum ut quisque est genere cōpiisque amplissimus, ita plūrimōs circum sē  
 5 ambactōs clientēsq̄ue habet. Hanc ūnam grātiā potentiāque nōvērunt.

16. Nātiō est omnis Gallōrum admodum dēdita religiōnibus, atque ob eam causam quī sunt affectī graviōribus morbis quīque in proeliis periculisque versantur aut prō victimis hominēs immolant aut sē immolātūrōs vovent, administrisque ad  
 5 ea sacrificia druidibus ūtuntur, quod, prō vitā hominis nisi hominis vitā reddātur, nōn posse deōrum immortalīum nūmen placārī arbitrantur; publicēque eiusdem generis habent institūta sacrificia. Aliī immānī magnitudine simulācra habent, quōrum contexta vīminibus membra vīvis hominibus complent;  
 20 quibus succēnsis circumventī flammā exanimantur hominēs.

13. ab aliīs . . . ad aliōs: the doctrine of the transmigration of souls, which was held by many of the ancients, and which still exists in some eastern nations.

14. excitārī, "that men are incited."

Chap. 15. The Knights.

1. alterum genus: cf. 13, 7.

cum est: for mode see App. 240.

2. quod: subject of solēbat, and explained by utī . . . prōpulsārent.

4. ut quisque est amplissimus, ita plūrimōs, "the more distinguished one of them is, the more, etc." The most striking example is that of Orgetorix, I, 4, 5.

6. hanc ūnam . . . nōvērunt, "this

is the only . . . which they know."

Chap. 16. Human sacrifices.

3. hominēs: object of both immolant and immolātūrōs. Although Caesar does not say that he saw an instance of human sacrifice, there is no good reason to doubt the truth of his statement. The practice seems to have ceased after the Roman conquest.

7. publicē, "on behalf of the state." habent institūta, lit. "they have . . . established," = "they regularly perform."

8. simulācra: colossal statues in form of men.

9. contexta vīminibus, "made of woven osiers." "wickerwork."

Supplicia eorum qui in furtō aut in latrōciniō aut in aliquā noxiā sint comprehēnsi grātiōra dis immortalibus esse arbitrantur; sed, cum eius generis cōpia dēficit, etiam ad innocentium supplicia dēscendunt.

17. Deōrum maximē Mercurium colunt; huius sunt plūrima simulācra; hunc omnium inventōrem artium ferunt, hunc viārum atque itinerum ducem, hunc ad quaestūs pecūniao mercātūrāsque habēre vim maximam arbitrantur. Post hunc Apollinem et Mārtē et Iovem et Minervam. Dē his eandem s ferē quam reliquae gentēs habent opiniōnem: Apollinem morbōs dēpellere, Minervam operum atque artificiōrum initia trādere, Iovem imperium caelestium tenēre, Mārtē bella regere. Huic, cum proeliō dīmīcāre cōstituērunt, ea quae bellō cēperint plērumque dēvoent; cum superāvērunt, animālia capta im- 10 molant reliquāsque rēs in ūnum locum cōferunt. Multis in civitatibus hārum rērum exstrūctōs tumulōs locis cōsecrātis cōspicārī licet; neque saepe accidit ut neglēctā quispiam religiōne aut capta apud sē occultāre aut posita tollere auderet, gravissimumque eī rei supplicium cum cruciātū cōstitutū- 15 tum est.

18. Galli sē omnēs ab Dīte patre prōgnātōs praedicant idque ab druidibus prōditum dicunt. Ob eam causam spatia

12. sint comprehēnsi: the mode is due to indirect discourse.

14. dēscendunt, "they resort."

Chap. 17. The Gallic gods and their powers.

1. Mercurium: the Gallic gods were not the same as the Roman. From what Caesar could learn of the Gallic gods he thought that they corresponded to certain Roman gods, and he gives the Roman names. In the same way the Romans identified their gods with those of the Greeks, though they were not really the same.

2. ferunt, "they call."

hunc . . . ducem: i.e. he points out the way (*viārum*) and accompanies them on their journeys (*itinerum*).

7. trādere, "teaches."

9. cēperint: perfect subjunctive by implied indirect discourse, for the future perfect.

14. capta . . . occultāre: compare the crime of Achan and its punishment, Josh. 7.

posita, "what has been deposited" in the sacred spots.

Chap. 18. The supposed origin of the Gauls. Their treatment of children.

1. ab Dīte prōgnātōs: apparently meaning that they sprang from the soil. See note on V, 12, 1.

patre, "as their father."

2. ob eam causam: i.e. being children of the god who ruled in darkness.

omnis temporis nōn numerō diērum, sed noctium finiunt; diēs nātālēs et mēnsium et annōrum initia sic observant ut noctem diēs subsequātur. In reliquīs vitāe institūtis hōc ferē ab reliquīs differunt, quod suōs liberōs, nisi cum adolēvērunt ut mūnus militiae sustinēre possint, palam ad sē adire nōn patiuntur, filiumque puerilī aetāte in publicō in cōspectū patris assistere turpe dūcunt.

19. Virī, quantās pecūniās ab uxōribus dōtis nōmine acēpērunt, tantās ex suis bonīs aestimātiōne factā cum dōtibus communicant. Huius omnis pecūniae coniūctim ratiō habetur fructūsque servantur; uter eōrum vitā superāvit, ad eum pars utriusque cum fructibus superiōrum temporum pervenit. Virī in uxōrēs, sicutī in liberōs, vitāe necisque habent potestātem; et cum pater familiae illūstriōre locō nātus dēcessit, eius propinquī conveniunt et, dē morte sī rēs in suspiciōnem vēnit, dē uxōribus in servilem modum quaestiōnem habent et, si compertum est, ignī atque omnibus tormentis excruciatās interficiunt. Fūnera sunt prō cultū Gallōrum magnifica et sūmptuōsa; omniaque quae vivīs cordī fuisse arbitrantur in ignem inferunt, etiam animālia, ac paulō suprà hanc memoriā servi et clientēs quōs ab iīs dilēctōs esse cōstābat, iūstis fūnebris cōfectis, unā cremābantur.

3. nōn numerō . . . finiunt: so we speak of a fortnight (fourteen nights).

diēs . . . subsequātur: i.e. each day began at sunset and lasted till the following sunset. So each month began with the night when the new moon was first visible.

5. ferē ab reliquīs, "from almost all other peoples."

7. palam . . . adire, "to approach them in public."

Chap. 19. The relations of husband and wife. Funeral customs.

1. virī, quantās pecūniās acēpērunt, tantās cum dōtibus communicant, "husbands add to the dowry as much property as they have received."

3. ratiō habētur, "an account is

kept."

4. fructūs, "the profits."

8. dē morte . . . vēnit: i.e. if his wives are suspected of murdering him.

9. uxōribus: evidently the Gallic nobles practiced polygamy.

in servilem modum: i.e. by torture, which was the Roman method of examining slaves.

si compertum est, "if proof is found."

12. vivīs cordī fuisse, "were dear to them when alive." The burning of the dead was not the only method used by the Gauls. Tombs have been opened which contained vases, rings, armor, and the bones of horses and dogs.

13. suprà hanc memoriā, "before our time."

**20.** Quae civitatēs commodius suam rem pūblicam administrāre existimantur habent lēgibus sānctum, sī quis quid dē rē pūblicā ā finitimis rūmōre ac fāmā accēperit, utī ad magistrātum dēferat nēve cum quō aliō commūnicet, quod saepe hominēs temerāriōs atque imperitōs falsis rūmōribus terrēri et ad facinus impelli et dē summīs rēbus cōnsilium capere cognitum est. Magistrātūs quae vīsa sunt occultant, quae esse ex ūsū iudicāverunt multitudinī prōdunt. Dē rē pūblicā nisi per concilium loquī nōn concēditur.

**21.** Germānī multum ab hāc cōnsuētūdine differunt. Nam neque druidēs habent quī rēbus divinis praesint, neque sacrificiis student. Deōrum numerō eōs sōlōs dūcunt quōs cernunt et quōrum apertē opibus iuvantur, Sōlem et Vulcānum et Lūnam; reliquōs ne fāmā quidem accēpērunt. Vīta omnis in vēnātiōnibus atque in studiis rei militāris cōnsistit; ā parvis labōri ac dūritiae student.

**22.** Agricultūrae nōn student, maiorque pars eōrum victūs in lacte, cāseō, carne cōnsistit. Neque quisquam agrī modum certum aut finēs habet propriōs; sed magistrātūs ac principēs

Chap. 20. How the magistrates control mischievous rumors.

1. *quae civitatēs*, "the states which."

*commodius*, "best."

2. *habent . . . sānctum utī*, "have it established by law that."

4. *nēve*: the regular word for "and not" in substantive volitive clauses.

*quō*: the proper indefinite after *nēve*, just as after *nē*.

6. *cognitum est*, "it has been found." In IV, 5, Caesar has told us how eager the Gauls were for gossip, and how ready to act hastily on unfounded rumors.

7. *quae vīsa sunt*, "what seems best."

8. *per concilium*: i.e. in a formal meeting of the tribe.

Chap. 21-28. The manners and customs of the Germans.

Chap. 21. The Germans differ from

the Gauls in religion and in mode of life.

2. *druidēs*: they had priests, but not organized as the Druids were.

3. *student*, "pay much attention to"; but they did offer sacrifices at times.

5. *reliquōs . . . accēpērunt*: but Tacitus names Mereury, Mars, and Hercules as their principal deities. Caesar's account does not elsewhere contradict that of Tacitus, though he spent very little time in Germany. Perhaps the worship of these gods was introduced after Caesar's time.

6. *cōnsistit*, "is spent."

Chap. 22. There is no private ownership of land.

1. *nōn student*: yet they did practice agriculture. Tacitus says that the cultivation of the soil was left to women and old men; but compare IV, 1, 9-12.

3. *propriōs*, "of his own"; cf. IV, 1, 12.

in annōs singulōs gentibus cognātiōibusque hominum, quīque  
 5 ūnā coiērunť, quantum et quō locō visum est agrī attribuunt  
 atque annō post aliō trānsire cōgunt. Eius rei multās afferunt  
 causās: nē assiduā cōnsuētūdine captī studium bellī gerendi  
 agricultūrā commūtent; nē lātōs finēs parāre studeant poten-  
 tiōrēs atque humiliōrēs possessionibus expellant; nē accūrātius  
 10 ad frīgora atque aestūs vitandōs aedificent; nē qua oriātur  
 pecūniae cupiditās, quā ex rē factiōnēs dissensiōnēsque nās-  
 cuntur; ut animī aequitāte plēbem contineant, cum suās quis-  
 que opēs cum potentissimīs aequārī videat.

**23.** Cīvitātibus maxima laus est quam lātissimē circum sē  
 vāstātis finibus sōlitūdinēs habēre. Hoc proprium virtūtis ex-  
 istimant, expulsōs agrīs finitimōs cēdere, neque quemquam  
 prope sē audēre cōsistere; simul hōc sē fore tūtiōrēs arbi-  
 5 trantur, repentināe incursiōnis timōre sublātō. Cum bellum  
 cīvitās aut illātum dēfendit aut infert, magistrātūs quī eī bellō  
 praesint et vitāe necisque habeant potestātem dēliguntur. In  
 pāce nūllus est commūnis magistrātus, sed principēs regiōnum  
 atque pāgōrum inter suōs iūs dicunt contrōversiāsque minuunt.  
 10 Latrōcinia nūllam habent infāmiā quae extrā finēs cuiusque  
 cīvitātis fiunt, atque ea iuventūtis exercendae ac dēsidiāe minu-  
 endae causā fierī praedicant. Atque ubi quis ex principibus  
 in conciliō dixit sē ducem fore, quī sequī velint profiteantur,

4. in annōs singulōs, "every year."  
 gentibus . . . coiērunť, "to families  
 or groups of kinsmen, or to men who  
 have banded together."

5. quantum . . . agrī, "as much  
 land as they see fit, and in whatever  
 locality they see fit."

6. aliō: the adverb.  
 multās causās: given in the follow-  
 ing *nē* and *ut* clauses.

8. agricultūrā, "for agriculture";  
 App. 147.

12. animī aequitāte, "in a con-  
 tented frame of mind."

Chap. 23. The relations existing  
 between states. The form of govern-  
 ment. Hospitality.

1. maxima laus: cf. IV, 3, 1.

2. finibus, "their border lands."  
 hoc: explained by the infinitive  
 clauses.

propriū virtūtis, "a mark of  
 valor."

4. hōc: explained by *timōre sublātō*.

6. quī . . . habeant: a purpose  
 clause.

9. minuunt, "settle."

10. latrōcinia . . . fiunt: a general  
 opinion among primitive peoples.

13. sē ducem fore: of some pillaging  
 expedition.

quī . . . profiteantur, "let any who  
 wish to follow volunteer"; an indirect  
 quotation of the leader's invitation

cōnsurgunt iī quī et causam et hominem probant, suumque auxilium pollicentur, atque ā multitudīne collaudantur; quī ex 15 hīs secūti nōn sunt in dēsertōrum ac prōditōrum numerō dūcuntur, omniumque hīs rērum postea fidēs dērogātur. Hospitem violāre fās nōn putant; quī quācumque dē causā ad eōs vērunt ab iniuriā prohibent sāctōsque habent, hīsque omnium domūs patent victusque commūnicātur. 20

**24.** Ac fuit antea tempus cum Germānōs Gallī virtūte superārent, ultrō bella inferrent, propter hominū multitudīnem agrīque inopiam trāns Rhēnum colōniās mitterent. Itaque ea quae fertilissima Germāniae sunt loca, circum Hercyniam silvam, quam Eratosthenī et quibusdam Graecīs fāmā nōtam esse 5 videō, quam illi Orcyniam appellant, Volcae Tectosagēs occupāverant atque ibi cōnsēderunt; quae gēns ad hoc tempus hīs sēdibus sēsē continet summamque habet iūstitiae et bellicae laudis opīniōnem. Nunc, quod in eādē inopiā, egestāte, patientiā quā ante Germānī permanent, eōdem victū et cultū 10 corporis ūtuntur, Gallis autem prōvinciārum propinquitās et trāsmarinārum rērum nōtitia multa ad cōpiam atque ūsūs largitur, paulātim assuēfactī superārī multisque victī proeliis nē sē quidem ipsī cum illis virtūte comparant.

**25.** Huius Hercyniae silvae, quae suprā dēmōstrāta est, lātitudō novem diērum iter expeditō patet; nōn enim aliter

15. *ex his*: i.e. of those who have volunteered.

17. *omnium rērum fidēs*, "all confidence."

Chap. 24. The Gauls, once superior to the Germans in war, are now inferior.

3. *trāns . . . mitterent*: Caesar did not understand the facts. The Gauls originally came from east of the Rhine. The Gallic tribes in Germany were not colonies sent from Gaul, but people who had been left behind.

5. *quibusdam*, "some other."

6. *illis*: the Greeks.

*Volcae Tectosagēs*: the map shows these people in the Province. That

means that the majority of them had long ago crossed into Gaul. The remnant, of whom Caesar is speaking, cannot be located exactly.

10. *quā ante*, "as before."

11. *prōvinciārum*: Transalpine and Cisalpine Gaul.

12. *trāsmarinārum rērum*: imported goods came into Gaul very largely by way of Massilia (Marseilles).

*multa . . . largitur*, "supply many things for their possession and use."

14. *ipsi*: the Gauls.

*illis*: the Germans.

Chap. 25. Description of the Hercynian forest.

2. *lātitudō*: from north to south.

finiri potest, neque mēnsūrās itinerum nōvērunt. Oritur ab Helvētiōrum et Nemetum et Rauracōrum finibus rēctāque flūminis Dānuvī regiōne pertinet ad finēs Dācōrum et Anartium; hinc sē flectit sinistrōrsus diversis ā flūmine regiōnibus multārumque gentium finēs propter magnitudinem attingit; neque quisquam est huius Germāniae quī sē aut adisse ad initium eius silvae dicat, cum diērum iter LX prōcesserit, aut quō ex locō oriātur accēperit; multaque in eā genera ferārū nāscī cōstat quae reliquīs in locis vīsa nōn sint; ex quibus quae maximē differant ā cēteris et memoriae prōdenda videantur haec sunt.

26. Est bōs cervī figurā, cuius ā mediā fronte inter aurēs unum cornū existit, excelsius magisque dērectum hīs quae nobīs nōta sunt cornibus; ab eius summō sicut palmae rāmīque latē diffunduntur. Eadem est fēminae marisque nātūra, eadem fōrma magnitudōque cornuum.

27. Sunt item quae appellantur alcēs.. Hārum est cōsimilis capris figurā et varietās pellium, sed magnitudīne paulō antecēdunt mutilaeque sunt cornibus et crūra sine nōdis arti-

**expeditō**, "for an unencumbered traveler."

3. **mēnsūrās itinerum**: such as paces or miles; therefore they could not tell how far such a traveler could walk in a day.

4. **rēctā . . . regiōne**, "in a course parallel with the river Danube."

5. **Dācōrum et Anartium**: these peoples lived beyond the great southward bend of the Danube, too far east to be shown on the maps in this book.

6. **diversis . . . regiōnibus**, lit. "in a direction turned from the river" = "leaving the river."

8. **huius Germāniae**, "of this part of Germany"; i.e. the western part, near Gaul.

**initium**: the eastern end.

9. **cum**, "although."

12. **memoriae prōdenda**, "worth mentioning."

13. **haec**, "the following."

**Chap. 26. The reindeer.**

1. **bōs**: the Romans gave this name to any large horned animal with which they were not familiar. Here Caesar seems to mean the reindeer. But the Germans seem to have amused themselves by trying to find out how much they could make Caesar believe about the animals "which are seen nowhere else." Of course the reindeer has a pair of horns.

3. **sicut**, "as it were," "a kind of." **palmae**: i.e. antlers like the palm of the hand, flat and with projecting points.

4. **eadem**, etc.: the female reindeer has smaller horns than those of the male; but female deer of other kinds have no horns at all.

**Chap. 27. Description of the elk.**

2. **capris**, "(that of) goats."

**varietās**, "varied color."

3. **mutilae . . . cornibus**, "they

culisque habent, neque quiētis causā prōcumbunt neque, si quō afflictæ cāsū conciderunt, ērigere sēsē ac sublevāre possunt. His sunt arborēs prō cubilibus; ad eas sē applicant atque ita paulum modo reclinatæ quiētem capiunt. Quārum ex vēstigiis cum est animadversum ā vēnātōribus quō sē recipere cōnsuerint, omnēs eō locō aut ab rādīcibus subruunt aut accidunt arborēs, tantum ut summa speciēs eārum stantium relinquatur. Hūc cum sē cōnsuetūdine reclināverunt, infirmās arborēs pondere affligunt atque unā ipsae concidunt.

**28.** Tertium est genus eōrum quī ūrī appellantur. Hi sunt magnitudine paulō infā elephantōs, speciēs et colōre et figurā taurī. Magna vis eōrum est et magna velōcitās, neque hominī neque ferae quam cōspexerunt parcut. Hōs studiōsē foveis captōs interficiunt; hōc sē labōre dūrant adulescentēs atque hōc genere vēnatiōnis exercent, et quī plūrimōs ex his interfecērunt, relātis in pūblicum cornibus quae sint testimoniō, magnam ferunt laudem. Sed assuēscere ad hominēs et mānsuēfieri nē parvulī quidem exceptī possunt. Amplitūdō cornuum et figurā et speciēs multum ā nostrōrum boum cornibus differt. Haec studiōsē conquisita ab labris argentō circumclūdunt atque in amplissimis epulis prō pōculis ūtuntur.

**29.** Caesar, postquam per Ubios explorātōrēs comperit Suēbōs sēsē in silvās recēpisse, inopiam frūmentī veritus, quod, ut suprā dēmōstrāvimus, minimē hominēs Germānī agricultūrae student, cōstituit nōn prōgredi longius; sed nē omninō metum reditūs suī barbaris tolleret atque ut eōrum auxilia tardāret, reductō exercitū, partem ultimam pontis quae ripās Ubi-

have mutilated horns"; i.e. their horns are short and irregular, appearing to be mutilated.

5. *afflictæ*, "thrown down."

9. *ab*, "at."

10. *tantum . . . relinquatur*, lit. "so far that the complete appearance of them standing is left" = "but only so far that a complete resemblance to standing trees is left."

11. *hūc*, "against them."

Chap. 28. Description of the wild ox.

1. *est eōrum*, "consists of those."

2. *speciēs*, etc.: descriptive ablatives modified by the genitive, *taurī*, instead of the more usual adjective.

7. *quae sint*: a purpose clause; "to serve as proof."

9. *nē . . . exceptī*, "not even if caught while very young."

11. *ab labris*, "at the rim."

ōrum contingēbat in longitūdinem pedum ducentōrum rescindit,  
 atque in extrēmō ponte turrim tabulātōrum quattuor cōstituit  
 praesidiumque cohortium duodecim pontis tuendī causā pōnit  
 10 magnisque eum locum mūnitiōnibus firmat. Eī locō praesidi-  
 ōque C. Volcācium Tullum adulēscētem praeficit. Ipse,  
 cum mātūrēscere frūmenta inciperent, ad bellum Ambiorīgis  
 profectus per Arduennam silvam, quae est tōtius Galliae max-  
 ima atque ab ripīs Rhēnī finibusque Trēverōrum ad Nerviōs  
 15 pertinet milibusque amplius quīgentis in longitūdinem patet,  
 L. Minucium Basilum cum omnī equitātū praemittit, si quid  
 celeritātē itineris atque opportunitātē temporis prōficere possit;  
 monet ut ignēs in castris fieri prohibeat, nē qua eius adventūs  
 procul significātiō fiat; sēsē cōfestim subsequi dicit.

30. Basilus ut imperātum est facit. Celeriter contrāque  
 omnium opīniōnem cōfectō itinere multōs in agris inopinantēs  
 dēprehendit; eōrum indiciō ad ipsum Ambiorīgem contendit,  
 quō in locō cum paucis equitibus esse dicēbātur. Multum cum  
 5 in omnibus rēbus, tum in rē militārī potest fortūna. Nam ut  
 magnō accidit cāsū ut in ipsum incautum etiam atque imparā-  
 tum incideret, priusque eius adventus ab hominibus vidērētur  
 quam fāma ac nūntius afferrētur, sic magnae fuit fortūnae,  
 omnī militārī instrūmentō quod circum sē habēbat ēreptō,  
 10 raedis equisque comprēhēnsis, ipsum effugere mortem. Sed  
 hōc factum est, quod aedificiō circumdatō silvā, ut sunt ferē  
 domicilia Gallōrum, quī vitandī aestūs causā plērumque silvā-  
 rum ac flūminum petunt propinquitātēs, comitēs familiārēsque  
 eius angustō in locō paulisper equitum nostrōrum vim sustinu-  
 15 ērunt. His pignantibus illum in equum quīdam ex suis intu-  
 lit; fugientem silvae tēxērunt. Sic et ad subeundum periculum  
 et ad vitandum multum fortūna valuit.

31. Ambiorix cōpiās suās iūdicione nōn condūxerit, quod  
 proeliō dīmicanđum nōn exīstimāret, an tempore exclūsus et  
 repentinō equitum adventū prohibitus, cum reliquum exercitum  
 subsequi crēderet, dubium est; sed certē dīmīssis per agrōs  
 5 nūntiis sibi quemque cōnsulere iussit. Quōrum pars in Ardu-

ennam silvam, pars in continentēs palūdēs profūgit; quī proximī Ōceanō fuērunt, hī insulis sēsē occultāvērunt quās aestūs efficere cōsuērunt; multī ex suis finibus ēgressī sē suaque omnia aliēnissimis crēdidērunt. Catuvoleus, rēx dīmidiae partis Eburōnum, quī unā cum Ambiorige cōnsilium inierat, 10 aetate iam cōfectus, cum labōrem bellī aut fugae ferre nōn posset, omnibus precibus dētestātus Ambiorigem, quī eius cōnsilī auctor fuisset, taxō, cuius magna in Galliā Germāniāque cōpia est, sē exanimāvit.

**32.** Segnī Condrūsique ex gente et numerō Germānōrum, quī sunt inter Eburōnēs Trēverōsque, lēgātōs ad Caesarem misērunt orātum nē sē in hostium numerō dūceret nēve omnium Germānōrum quī essent citrā Rhēnum unam esse causam iūdicāret: Nihil sē dē bellō cōgitāvisse, nūlla Ambiorigī aux- 5 ilia mīsisse. Caesar explorātā rē quaestiōne captivōrum, sī quī ad eōs Eburōnēs ex fugā convēnissent, ad sē ut redūcerentur imperāvit; sī ita fēcissent, finēs eōrum sē violātūrum negāvit. Tum cōpiis in trēs partēs distribūtis impedimenta omnium legiōnum Atuatncam contulit. Id castellī nōmen est. Hoc 10 ferē est in mediis Eburōnum finibus, ubi Titūrius atque Aurunculēius hiemandī causā cōsēderant. Hunc cum reliquis rēbus locum probābat, tum quod superiōris annī mūnitiōnēs integrae manēbant, ut militum labōrem sublevāret. Praesidiō impedimentis legiōnem quārtam decimam reliquit, unam ex 15 his tribus quās proximē cōscriptās ex Italiā trādūxerat. Eī legiōnī castrisque Q. Tullium Cicerōnem praefēcit ducentōsque equitēs eī attribuit.

**33.** Partitō exercitū T. Labiēnum cum legiōnibus tribus ad Ōceanum versus in eas partēs quae Menapiōs attingunt proficisci iubet; C. Trebōnium cum parī legiōnum numerō ad eam regiōnem quae Atuatucis adiacet dēpopulandam mittit; ipse cum reliquis tribus ad flūmen Sabim, quod influit in Mosam, 5 extrēmāsque Arduennae partēs ire cōstituit, quō cum paucis equitibus profectum Ambiorigem audiēbat. Discēdēns post diem septimum sēsē reversūrum cōnfirmat, quam ad diem eī

legiōnī quae in praesidiō relinquēbātur dēbēri frūmentum  
10 sciēbat. Labiēnum Trebōniumque hortātur, sī rei pūblicae  
commodō facere possint, ad eam diem revertantur, ut rūsus  
commūnicātō cōnsiliō explorātisque hostium ratiōnibus aliud  
initium bellī capere possint.

34. Erat, ut suprà dēmōstrāvimus, manus certa nūlla,  
nōn oppidum, nōn praesidium quod sē armīs dēfenderet, sed in  
omnēs partēs dispersa multitūdō. Ubi cuique aut vallēs ab-  
dita aut locus silvestris aut palūs impedita spem praesidi aut  
5 salūtis aliquam offerēbat cōnsēderat. Haec loca vicinītatibus  
erant nōta; magnamque rēs diligentiam requirēbat, nōn in  
summā exercitūs tuendā (nūllum enim poterat ūniversis ā per-  
territis ac dispersis periculum accidere), sed in singulis militi-  
bus cōservandis; quae tamen ex parte rēs ad salūtē exercitūs  
10 pertinēbat. Nam et praedae cupiditās multōs longius sēvocā-  
bat, et silvae incertis occultisque itineribus cōnfertōs adire  
prohibēbant. Sī negōtium cōnfici stirpemque hominum scelerā-  
tōrum interfici vellet, dimittendae plūrēs manūs dīdūcendique  
erant milites; sī continēre ad signa manipulos vellet, ut insti-  
15 tūta ratiō et cōnsuetūdō exercitūs Rōmānī postulābat, locus  
ipse erat praesidiō barbaris, neque ex occultō insidiandī et dis-  
persōs circumveniendī singulis deerat audācia. Ut in eius  
modi difficultātibus, quantum diligentīā prōvidēri poterat,  
prōvidēbātur ut potius in nocendō aliquid praetermitterētur,  
20 etsi omnium animi ad ulciscendum ardēbant, quam cum aliquō  
militum dētrimentō nocērētur. Dimittit ad finitimās civitatēs  
nūntiōs Caesar; omnēs ēvocat spē praedae ad diripiendōs Ebu-  
rōnēs, ut potius in silvis Gallōrum vīta quam legiōnārius miles  
periclitētur, simul ut magnā multitūdine circumfūsā prō tālī  
25 facinore stirps ac nōmen civitātis tollātur. Magnus undique  
numerus celeriter convenit.

35. Haec in omnibus Eburōnum partibus gerēbantur, diēs-  
que appetēbat septimus, quem ad diem Caesar ad impedimenta  
legiōnemque reverti cōstituerat. Hic quantum in bellō for-  
tūna possit et quantōs afferat cāsūs cognōscī potuit. Dissipātis

ac perterritis hostibus, ut dēmōstrāvimus, manus erat nūlla 5  
 quae parvam modo causam timōris afferret. Trāns Rhēnum ad  
 Germānōs pervenit fāma diripī Eburōnēs atque ultrō omnēs ad  
 praedam ēvocārī. Cōgunt equitum duo mīlia Sugambri, quī  
 sunt proximī Rhēnō, ā quibus receptōs ex fugā Tēncterōs atque  
 Usipetēs suprà docuimus. Trānseunt Rhēnum nāvibus rati- 10  
 busque trīgintā milibus passuum infrā eum locum ubi pōns  
 erat perfectus praesidiumque ā Caesare relictum; primōs Ebu-  
 rōnum finēs adeunt; multōs ex fugā dispersōs excipiunt,  
 magnō pecoris numerō, cuius sunt cupidissimī barbarī, potiun-  
 tur. Invitātī praedā longius prōcēdunt. Nōn hōs palūdēs 15  
 bellō latrōciniisque nātōs, nōn silvae morantur. Quibus in  
 locis sit Caesar ex captivis quaerunt; profectum longius repe-  
 riunt omnemque exercitum discessisse cognōscunt. Atque  
 ūnus ex captivis, 'Quid vōs,' inquit, 'hanc miseram ac tenuem  
 sectāmini praedam, quibus licet iam esse fortunātissimōs? 20  
 Tribus hōris Atuatucam venīre potestis; hūc omnēs suās for-  
 tūnās exercitus Rōmānōrum contulit; praesidī tantum est ut  
 nē mūrus quidem cingī possit neque quisquam ēgredi extrā  
 mūnitiōnēs audeat.' Hāc oblātā spē Germānī quam nactī erant  
 praedam in occultō relinquunt; ipsī Atuatucam contendunt 25  
 ūsī eōdem duce cuius haec indicio cognōverant.

**36.** Cicerō, quī omnēs superiōrēs diēs praeceptis Caesaris  
 summā diligentīā militēs in castris continuisset ac nē cālōnem  
 quidem quemquam extrā mūnitiōnem ēgredi passus esset, sep-  
 timō diē diffidēs dē numerō diērum Caesarem fidem servātū- 5  
 rum, quod longius prōgressum audiēbat neque ūlla dē reditū  
 eius fāma afferēbātur, simul eōrum permōtus vōcibus quī illius  
 patientiam paene obsessiōnem appellābant, sī quidem ex castris  
 ēgredi nōn liceret, nūllum eius modī cāsum exspectāns quō,  
 novem oppositis legiōnibus maximōque equitātū, dispersis ac  
 paene dēlētis hostibus, in milibus passuum tribus offendi pos- 10  
 set, quīnque cohortēs frūmentātum in proximās segetēs mittit,  
 quās inter et castra ūnus omnīnō collis intererat. Complūrēs  
 erant in castris ex legiōnibus aegrī relictī; ex quibus quī hōe

spatiō diērum convaluerant, circiter CCC, sub vexillō ūnā mit-  
 5 tuntur; magna praetereā multitūdō cālōnum, magna vīs iūmen-  
 tōrum, quae in castris subsēderat, factā potestāte sequitur.

37. Hōc ipsō tempore cāsū Germānī equitēs interveniunt  
 prōtinusque eōdem illō quō vēnerant cursū ab decumānā portā  
 in castra irrumpere cōnantur, nec prius sunt visī, obiectis ab  
 eā parte silvis, quam castris appropinquārent, usque eō ut quī  
 5 sub vāllō tenderent mercātōrēs recipiendī suī facultātem nōn  
 habērent. Inopināntēs nostrī rē novā perturbantur, ac vix  
 primum impetum cohors in statīōne sustinet. Circumfundun-  
 tur hostēs ex reliquīs partibus, sī quem aditum reperire possint.  
 Aegrē portās nostrī tuentur, reliquōs aditūs locus ipse per sē  
 10 mūnitiōque dēfendit. Tōtis trepidātur castris, atque alius ex  
 aliō causam tumultūs quaerit; neque quō signa ferantur neque  
 quam in partem quisque conveniat prōvident. Alius castra  
 iam capta prōnūntiat, alius dēlētō exercitū atque imperātōre  
 victōrēs barbarōs vēnisse contendit; plērique novās sibi ex locō  
 15 religiōnēs fingunt Cottaeque et Titūrī calamitātem, quī in  
 eōdem occiderint castellō, ante oculōs pōnunt. Tali timōre  
 omnibus perterritis cōfirmātur opiniō barbaris, ut ex captivō  
 audierant; nūllum esse intus praesidium. Perrumpere nītun-  
 tur sēque ipsī adhortantur nē tantam fortūnam ex manibus  
 20 dīmittant.

38. Erat aeger in praesidiō relictus P. Sextius Baculus,  
 quī primum pilum apud Caesarem dūxerat, cuius mentiōnem  
 superiōribus proeliis fēcimus, ac diem iam quīntum cibō caru-  
 erat. Hic diffisus suae atque omnium salūtī inermis ex taber-  
 5 nāculō prōdit; videt imminēre hostēs atque in summō esse rem  
 discrimine; capit arma ā proximis atque in portā cōsistit.  
 Cōsequuntur hunc centuriōnēs eius cohortis quae in statīōne  
 erat; paulisper ūnā proelium sustinent. Relinquit animus  
 Sextium gravibus acceptis vulneribus; aegrē per manūs trāditus  
 10 servātur. Hōc spatiō interpositō reliquī sēsē cōfirmant tan-  
 tum ut in mūnitiōnibus cōsistere audeant speciemque dēfēn-  
 sōrum praebeant.

**39.** Interim cōfectā frūmentātiōne militēs nostri clāmō-  
fem exaudiunt; praecurrunt equitēs, quantō rēs sit in periculō  
cognōscunt. Hic vērō nūlla mūnitiō est quae perterritōs  
recipiat; modo cōscripti atque ūsus militāris imperiti ad tri-  
būnum militum centuriōnēsque ōra convertunt; quid ab his 5  
praecipiātur expectant. Nēmō est tam fortis quā rei novitāte  
perturbētur. Barbari signa procul cōspicāti oppugnātiōne  
dēsistunt; redisse primō legiōnēs crēdunt, quās longius disces-  
sisse ex captivis cognōverant; postea dēspectā paucitāte ex  
omnibus partibus impetum faciunt. 10

**40.** Cālōnēs in proximum tumultum prōcurrunt. Hinc  
celeriter dēiecti sē in signa manipulōsque coniciunt; eō magis  
timidōs perterrent militēs. Alii cuneō factō ut celeriter per-  
rumpant cēsent: Quoniam tam propinqua sint castra, etsi pars  
aliqua circumventa ceciderit, at reliquōs servārī posse; alii ut 5  
in iugō cōsistant atque eundem omnēs ferant cāsum. Hoc  
veterēs nōn probant militēs, quōs sub vexillō ūnā profectōs  
docuimus. Itaque inter sē cohortāti, duce C. Trebōniō, equite  
Rōmānō, quī iis erat praepositus, per mediōs hostēs perrum-  
punt incolumēsque ad ūnum omnēs in castra perveniunt. Hōs 10  
subsecūti cālōnēs equitēsque eōdem impetū militum virtūte  
servantur. At ii quī in iugō cōstiterant, nullō etiam nunc  
ūsū rei militāris perceptō, neque in eō quod probāverant cōn-  
siliō permanēre, ut sē locō superiōre dēfenderent, neque eam  
quam prōfuisse aliis vim celeritātemque viderant imitārī potu- 15  
ērunt, sed sē in castra recipere cōnāti iniquum in locum dēmī-  
sērunt. Centuriōnēs, quōrum nōn nulli ex inferiōribus ōrdinibus  
reliquārum legiōnum virtūtis causā in superiōres erant ōrdinēs  
huius legiōnis trāducti, nē ante partem rei militāris laudem  
āmitterent, fortissimē pignantēs concidērunt. Militum pars, 20  
hōrum virtūte submōtis hostibus, praeter spem incolumis in  
castra pervēnit, pars ā barbaris circumventa periit.

**41.** Germāni dēsperātā expugnātiōne castrōrum, quod nos-  
trōs iam cōstitisse in mūnitiōnibus vidēbant, cum eā praedā  
quam in silvis dēposuerant trāns Rhēnum sēsē recēpērunt. Ac

tantus fuit etiam post discessum hostium terror ut eā nocte,  
5 cum C. Volusēnus missus cum equitātū in castra vēnisset, fidem  
nōn faceret adesse cum incolumī Caesarem exercitū. Sic om-  
nium animōs timor praeoccupāverat ut, paene aliēnātā mente,  
dēlētis omnibus cōpiis equitātum sē ex fugā recēpisse dicerent  
neque incolumī exercitū Germānōs castra oppugnātūrōs fuissē  
10 contenderent. Quem timōrem Caesaris adventus sustulit.

42. Reversus ille, ēventūs bellī nōn ignōrāns, ūnum, quod  
cohortēs ex statīōne et praesidiō essent ēmissae, questus—nē  
minimum quidem cāsui locum relinqui dēbuisse—multum for-  
tūnam in repentinō hostium adventū potuisse iūdicāvit, multō  
5 etiam amplius, quod paene ab ipsō vāllō portisque castrōrum  
barbarōs āvertisset. Quārum omnium rērum maximē admī-  
randum vidēbātur quod Germānī, quī eō cōnsiliō Rhēnum  
trānsierant, ut Ambiorīgis finēs dēpopulārentur, ad castra  
Rōmānōrum dēlātī optātissimum Ambiorīgī beneficium obtu-  
10 lerant.

43. Caesar rūrsus ad vexandōs hostēs profectus, magnō  
equitum coāctō numerō ex finitimis civitātibus, in omnēs  
partēs dīmittit. Omnēs vicī atque omnia aedificia quae quis-  
que cōspexerat incendēbantur; praeda ex omnibus locis agē-  
5 bātur; frūmenta nōn solum ā tantā multitudine iūmentōrum  
atque hominum cōsūmēbantur, sed etiam anni tempore atque  
imbribus prōcubuerant, ut, sī quī etiam in praesentiā sē oc-  
cultāssent, tamen his dēductō exercitū rērum omnium inopiā  
pereundum vidērētur. Ac saepe in eum locum ventum est,  
10 tantō in omnēs partēs dīmissō equitātū, ut modo vīsum ab sē  
Ambiorīgem in fugā circumspicerent captīvī nec plānē etiam  
abisse ex cōspectū contenderent, ut spē cōsequendī illātā  
atque infīnitō labōre susceptō, quī sē summam ā Caesare grā-  
tiam initūrōs putārent, paene nātūram studiō vincerent, sem-  
15 perque paulum ad summam felicitātem dēfuisse vidērētur,  
atque ille latebris aut saltibus sē ēriperet et noctū occultātus  
aliās regiōnēs partēsque peteret nōn maiōre equitum praesidiō  
quam quattuor, quibus sōlis vitam suam committere audēbat.

**44.** Tālī modō vāstātis regiōnibus exercitum Caesar duārum cohortium damnō Dūrocortorum Rēmōrum dēdūcit, conciliō-que in eum locum Galliae indictō dē coniūrātiōne Senonum et Carnutum quaestiōnem habēre instituit; et dē Accōne, quī princeps eius cōnsilī fuerat, graviōre sententiā prōnūtiātā 5 mōre maiōrum supplicium sūmpsit. Nōn nūllī iūdicium veritī profūgērunt. Quibus cum aquā atque ignī interdixisset, duās legiōnēs ad finēs Trēverōrum, duās in Lingonibus, sex reliquās in Senonum finibus Agedincī in hibernis collocāvit, frumentō-que exercitū prōvisō, ut instituerat, in Italiam ad conventūs 10 agendōs profectus est.

## BOOK VII. VERCINGETORIX AND THE GENERAL REVOLT OF GAUL

For more than a year Gaul had been ready for revolt: it lacked only an opportunity and a leader. Early in 52 B.C. the opportunity came, and with it the leader appeared. For the first time Caesar had to meet a man who could unite all Gaul against him. In the previous books Caesar has been the hero of the story; in the seventh he shares the honor with Vercingetorix.

In the fall Caesar had quartered his army in the northern half of Gaul, chiefly at Agedincum, and had gone to upper Italy. In the winter the Gauls learned of serious disturbances in Rome, which seemed sure to keep Caesar in Italy. This was their opportunity, for they believed they could cope with the legions if Caesar were absent. The Carnutes struck the first blow by killing some Romans who were at Cenabum. The news reached Vercingetorix at his home in Gergovia, among the Arverni. Since his state would not rise at once, he collected troops, made himself king of the Arverni, and began stirring up revolt in other states. In a short time he was the recognized head of a confederacy which included almost every state north, west, and southwest of the Haedui.

It was still winter when Caesar, summoned by this news, returned to the Province. His army was 200 miles away; the Haedui, who lay between, were suspected; Vercingetorix was in a position which threatened Caesar if he tried to join the army. By skillful maneuvering he drew Vercingetorix out of the way, then with a few horsemen rode night and day to join his legions at Agedincum. Vercingetorix at once attacked a town of the Boii. Although it was too early to move an army comfortably, Caesar had either to relieve the Boii or let his other allies see that he could not protect them. As usual, Caesar chose to act. Marching by a circuit he had taken two towns and was laying siege to a third before Vercingetorix would raise the siege and march to meet him. The Gallic leader arrived just in time to be defeated in a cavalry battle and to witness the surrender of the town. Caesar then marched to Avaricum.

Vercingetorix now showed his mastery over his followers by persuading them to adopt a desperate plan. Caesar had been getting his

supplies from the houses and towns along his line of march. The Gauls decided to burn every house and every town, except those which seemed impregnable, along Caesar's route. Vercingetorix wished to burn Avaricum, but the Bituriges believed that it could not be taken, and he allowed it to stand. Caesar laid siege to it, while Vercingetorix confined himself to cutting off Caesar's supplies. For twenty-five days the defense was stubborn, but at last the town was taken and nearly 40,000 men, women, and children were slaughtered.

Judging by his past experience with the Gauls Caesar believed that this disaster would break up the coalition against him and that he would now have to deal only with single states. Accordingly he divided his army, sending Labienus with four legions north, against the Senones and the Parisii, while he himself marched south with the remaining six, against the Arverni. But Caesar had made a mistake. Vercingetorix reminded his followers that he had never wished Avaricum to be defended, promised to extend the revolt, and demanded better discipline in the future. He held the states he already had and won over new ones, so that Caesar with his six legions had to face a more formidable enemy than before, when he had ten.

But Caesar marched to Gergovia, as he had planned, and camped before it in perplexity. The town was situated on a high hill. Vercingetorix had arrived before him and was encamped on the upper part of the hill, under the walls of the town. Against such a position aggers and towers were useless. With so small an army the town could not be invested and starved into submission. Caesar saw that he must withdraw, but he felt certain that if he did not first win some success the Haedui would rise against him. One day he learned that the Gauls had left their camp in order to fortify a weak spot in their lines. Determining to sack the camp, he sent a part of his legions up the hill, under orders not to attempt to take the town. But the soldiers pushed on. Already a few had mounted the walls of the town, when the Gauls hastened up and drove them down the hill with heavy loss. The necessary retreat followed defeat instead of success.

Instantly the Haedui rose: they plundered one of their own towns, in which Caesar had great stores of provisions; there they got possession of Caesar's hostages, his one means of holding the states which had not yet revolted; and they posted guards along the Liger, which they believed unfordable. Nevertheless, with the speed which so often disconcerted his enemies, Caesar marched to the river, found a ford, got supplies from the Haeduan fields, and marched on among the Senones. There he was joined by Labienus, who had extricated himself from a most perilous position by winning a great victory at Lutetia (Paris).

The revolt of the Haedui and their capture of Caesar's hostages was the signal for the revolt of almost all Gaul. Only the Remi and the Lingones remained faithful to Caesar. By the unanimous vote of a council Vercingetorix was made commander-in-chief of the whole country. With 80,000 infantry and 15,000 cavalry he renewed his wise policy of cutting off Caesar's supplies and refusing battle. At the same time he sent an army to invade the Province. So serious was the situation that Caesar decided to march to the Province, partly to defend it, partly to get reinforcements.

Then Vercingetorix made his first mistake. He decided to attack the retreating Romans, hoping either to cut them off or at least to strip them of their baggage. But his own army was defeated and fled for refuge to Alesia, closely pursued by the Romans. There Caesar determined to end the war. The town lay on a hill, as impregnable as Gergovia; but Caesar now had his entire army, and he began a ring of fortifications, within which the Gauls were to be starved into surrender. Before the investment was complete, Vercingetorix sent out all his cavalry with orders to bring every fighting man in Gaul to the rescue. He himself chose to stay with his 80,000 infantry, to hold the town till relief should come. The result shows that this was his second and last mistake, since his leadership was more needed outside than within. Caesar had now to prepare for a double attack, from without and from within. The inner line of works was made eleven miles in circumference, the outer fourteen. These lines were strengthened by every cunning device his ingenuity could suggest.

At last, when the supplies of the besieged were almost exhausted, the great relieving army came into view, 250,000 infantry and 8,000 cavalry. But this great host was crippled by the lack of a capable leader. The supreme command lay in a council of delegates from the several states, under which four generals acted. On the day after their arrival the Gallic cavalry attacked the Romans, while the besieged sallied out to attack the inner line. The cavalry was defeated, and the besieged returned to the town. Then a night attack was directed, both from within and from without, against the works in the plain west of the town. This too proved fruitless.

The third and last attack was almost successful. Sixty thousand picked men attacked the weakest point in the outer line of defense, and the besieged displayed desperate courage at several points in the inner line. If the rest of the relieving army had attacked several parts of the outer line at the same time, the Gauls would surely have won the victory; for the soldiers posted at the points of attack were not sufficient to defend them. But, lacking unity of purpose, the great Gallic army did

nothing, and Caesar was able to send to the rescue troops from other parts of the line. The 60,000 were almost all killed, and the rest of the relieving army dispersed to their homes that night.

The end had come. The besieged were starving and hopeless. Vercingetorix told them that all was lost and they might hand him over, living or dead, to Caesar. They accepted the offer and sent word to Caesar. Vercingetorix rode out from the town alone and bowed himself at Caesar's feet. We are told, though not by Caesar, that six years later he appeared in Caesar's triumphal procession and was then executed.

Caesar's narrative concludes with the submission of the Haedui and the Arverni, which immediately followed the fall of Alesia. In his winter quarters at Bibracte he wrote the seven books of his *Commentaries*, in which the breaking of the great rebellion forms a fitting climax for his story. But his work was not yet complete. Though concerted resistance was at an end, he spent two years more in quelling smaller revolts here and there, and in conciliating the states which had been conquered. The events of these years are contained in an eighth book, written by Hirtius, one of his officers. Then came the civil war with Pompey, and Caesar left his work so well done that Gaul never revolted, even during the years when Caesar could have spared neither time nor men to subdue her.

## LIBER SEPTIMUS.

1. Quiētā Galliā Caesar, ut cōstituerat, in Italiam ad conventūs agendōs proficiscitur. Ibi cognōscit dē P. Clōdī caede, dē senātūque cōsultō certior factus, ut omnēs iūniōrēs Italiae coniūrarent, dilēctum tōtā prōvinciā habēre instituit. Eae  
3 rēs in Galliam Trānsalpīnam celeriter perferuntur. Addunt ipsi et affingunt rūmōribus Galli, quod rēs poscere vidēbātur, retinēri urbānō mōtū Caesarem neque in tantis dissēnsiōnibus ad exercitum venīre posse. Hāc impulsī occāsiōne, qui iam ante sē populi Rōmānī imperiō subiectōs dolērent, liberius  
10 atque audācius dē bellō cōsilia inīre incipiunt. Indictis inter sē principēs Galliae conciliis silvestribus ac remōtis locis queruntur dē Accōnis mortē; posse hunc cāsum ad ipsōs recidere dēmōstrant; miserantur commūnem Galliae fortūnam; omnibus pollicitātiōnibus ac praemiis dēposcunt quī belli initium  
15 faciant et suī capitis periculō Galliam in libertātem vindicent. In primis ratiōnem esse habendam dicunt, priusquam eōrum clandestina cōsilia efferantur, ut Caesar ab exercitū intercludātur. Id esse facile, quod neque legiōnēs audeant absente imperātōre ex hibernis ēgredi, neque imperātor sine  
20 praesidiō ad legiōnēs pervenire possit. Postrēmō, in aciē praestāre interficī quam nōn veterem bellī glōriam libertātemque quam ā maiōribus accēperint recuperāre.

2. His rēbus agitātis profitentur Carnutēs sē nūllum periculum commūnis salūtis causā recūsāre, principēsque ex omnibus bellum factūrōs pollicentur, et, quoniam in praesentiā obsidibus cavēre inter sē nōn possint, nē rēs efferātur, ut  
5 iūre iūrاندō ac fidē sanciatūr petunt, collātis militāribus signis, quō mōre eōrum gravissimā caerimōnia continētur, nē factō initio bellī ab reliquis dēserantur. Tum collaudātis

Carnutibus, datō iūre iurandō ab omnibus quī aderant, tempore eius rei cōstitutō ā conciliō discēditur.

3. Ubi ea diēs vēnit, Carnutēs Cotuātō et Conconnetodumnō ducibus, dēspērātis hominibus, Cēnabum signō datō concurrunt cīvēsque Rōmānōs, quī negōtiandī causā ibi cōstitērant, in hīs C. Fūfium Citam, honestum equitem Rōmānum, quī rei frūmentāriæ iussū Caesaris praeerat, interficiunt 5 bonaque eōrum diripiunt. Celeriter ad omnēs Galliae civitātēs fama perfertur. Nam ubi quae maior atque illūstrior incidit rēs, clāmōre per agrōs regiōnēsque significant; hunc aliī deinceps excipiunt et proximīs trādunt, ut tum accidit. Nam quae Cēnabī oriēte sōle gesta essent ante primam cōfectam 10 vigiliam in finibus Arvernōrum audita sunt, quod spatium est milium passuum circiter CLX.

4. Similī ratiōne ibi Vercingetorīx, Celtillī filius, Arvernus, summae potentiae adulēscēns, cuius pater principātum tōtius Galliae obtinuerat et ob eam causam, quod rēgnum appetēbat, ā civitāte erat interfectus, convocātis suis clientibus facile incendit. Cognitō eius cōsiliō ad arma concurritur. 5 Prohibētur ab Gobannitiōne, patruō suō, reliquīsque principibus, quī hanc temptandam fortūnam nōn existimābant; expellitur ex oppidō Gergoviā; nōn dēsistit tamen atque in agrīs habet dilēctum egentium ac perditōrum. Hāc coāctā manū, quōscumque adit ex civitāte ad suam sententiam perdūcit; 10 hortātur ut commūnis libertātis causā arma capiant, magnisque coāctis cōpiis adversāriōs suōs, ā quibus paulō ante erat ēiectus, expellit ex civitāte. Rēx ab suis appellātur. Dimittit quōqueversus lēgatiōnēs; obtestātur ut in fidē maneant. Celeriter sibi Senonēs, Parisiōs, Pictonēs, Cadūrcōs, Turonōs, 15 Aulercōs, Lemovicēs, Andōs reliquōsque omnēs quī Ōceanum attingunt adiungit; omnium cōsēnsū ad eum dēfertur imperium. Quā oblātā potestāte omnibus hīs civitātibus obsidēs imperat, certam numerum militum ad sē celeriter addūci iubet, armōrum quantum quaeque civitās domī quodque ante 20 tempus efficiat cōstituit; in primis equitātūi studet. Sum-

mae diligentiae summam imperi severitatem addit; magnitudine supplicii dubitantes cogit. Nam maiore commissio delictorum igni atque omnibus tormentis necat, levius de causam auribus  
35 desectis aut singulis effossis oculis domum remittit, ut sint reliquis documento et magnitudine poenae perterreant alios.

5. His suppliciis celeriter coactum exercitum, Lucterium Cadurcum, summae hominem audaciae, cum parte copiarum in Rutenos mittit; ipse in Biturigibus proficiscitur. Eius adventum Biturigibus ad Haeduos, quorum erant in fide, legatos mittunt  
5 subsidium rogatum, quo facilius hostium copias sustinere possint. Haeduus de consilio legatorum quos Caesar ad exercitum reliquerat copias equitatus peditatusque subsidio Biturigibus mittunt. Qui cum ad flumen Ligerim venissent, quod Biturigibus ab Haeduus dividit, paucos dies ibi morati neque flumen transire ausi, domum revertuntur legatisque nostris renuntiant se  
10 Biturigum perfidiam veritos revertisse, quibus id consili fuisse cognoverint, ut, si flumen transissent, una ex parte ipsi, alteram Arverni se circumstarent. Id eane de causam quam legatis pronuntiaverint, an perfidia adducti fecerint, quod nihil nobis  
15 constat, non videtur pro certo esse ponendum. Biturigibus eorum discessum statim se cum Arvernus coniungunt.

6. His rebus in Italiam Caesari nuntiatis, cum iam ille urbanas res virtute Cn. Pompei commodiorem in statum pervenisse intellexeret, in Transalpinam Galliam profectus est. Eo cum venisset, magna difficultate afficiebatur quam ratione ad  
5 exercitum pervenire posset. Nam si legiones in provinciam arcesseret, se absente in itinere proelio dimicaturas intellegebat; si ipse ad exercitum contenderet, ne iis quidem qui eo tempore quieti viderentur suam salutem recte committi videbat.

7. Interim Lucterius Cadureus in Rutenos missus eam civitatem Arvernus conciliat. Progressus in Nitiobriges et Gabalos ab utrisque obsides accipit et magna coacta manu in provinciam Narbonem versus irruptionem facere contendit.  
8 Quam re nuntiata Caesar omnibus consiliis antevertendum existi-

māvit ut Narbōnem proficīscerētur. Eō cum vēnisset, timentēs cōnfirmat, praesidia in Rutēnis prōvinciālibus, Volcīs Are-comicīs, Tolōsātibus circumque Narbōnem, quae loca hostibus erant finitima, cōstituit; partem cōpiārum ex prōvinciā supplēmentumque quod ex Italiā addūxerat in Helviōs, quī finēs 10 Arvernōrum contingunt, convenire iubet.

8. His rēbus comparātis, repressō iam Lucteriō et remōtō, quod intrāre intrā praesidia periculōsum putābat, in Helviōs proficiscitur. Etsī mōns Cebenna, quī Arvernōs ab Helviīs disclūdīt, dūriissimō tempore annī altissimā nive iter impediēbat, tamen discussā nive in altitudinem pedum sex 5 atque ita viīs patefactis summō militum labōre ad finēs Arvernōrum pervēnit. Quibus oppressis inopināntibus, quod sē Cebennā ut mūrō mūnitōs existimābant, ac nē singulārī quidem umquam hominī eō tempore annī sēmitae patuerant, equitibus imperat ut quam lātissimē possint vagentur et quam 10 maximum hostibus terrōrem inferant. Celeriter haec fāma ac nūntiī ad Vercingetorīgē perferuntur; quem perterriti omnēs Arvernī circumsistunt atque obsecrant ut suis fortūnis cōnsulat, nē ab hostibus diripiantur, praesertim cum videat omne ad sē bellum trānslātum. Quōrum ille precibus permōtus castra 15 ex Biturigibus movet in Arvernōs versus.

9. At Caesar bīduum in his locis morātus, quod haec dē Vercingetorīgē ūsū ventūra opiniōne praecēperat, per causam supplēmentī equitātūsque cōgendi ab exercitū discēdit, Brūtum adulēscētem his cōpiīs praeficit; hunc monet ut in omnēs partēs equitēs quam lātissimē pervagentur: Datūrum sē ope- 5 ram nē longius trīduō ā castris absit. His cōstitutis rēbus, suis inopināntibus, quam maximis potest itineribus Viennam pervēnit. Ibi nactus recentem equitātum, quem multis ante diēbus eō praemiserat, neque diurnō neque nocturnō itinere intermissō, per finēs Haeduōrum in Lingonēs contendit, ubi 10 duae legiōnēs hiernābant, ut, sī quid etiam dē suā salūte ab Haeduis inirētur cōnsili, celeritāte praecurreret. Eō cum pervēnisset, ad reliquās legiōnēs mittit priusque omnēs in unum

locum cōgit quam dē eius adventū Arvernīs nūntiārī posset.  
 25 Hāc rē cognitā Vercingetorix rūsus in Biturīgēs exercitum  
 reducit atque inde profectus Gorgobinam, Bōiōrum oppidum,  
 quōs ibi Helveticō proeliō victōs Caesar collocāverat Haeduīs-  
 que attribuerat, oppugnāre instituit.

10. Magnam haec rēs Caesarī difficultātem ad cōsiliū  
 capiendum afferēbat: sī reliquam partem hiemis ūnō locō  
 legiōnēs continēret, nē stipendiāriīs Haeduōrum expugnātis  
 cūncta Gallia dēficeret, quod nūllum amicis in eō praesidium  
 5 positum vidēret; sī mātūrius ex hibernīs edūceret, nē ab rē  
 frūmentāriā dūris subvectiōnibus labōrāret. Praestāre vīsum  
 est tamen omnēs difficultātēs perpeti quam tantā contumeliā  
 acceptā omnium suōrum voluntātēs aliēnāre. Itaque cohortā-  
 tus Haeduōs dē supportandō commeātū praemittit ad Bōiōs  
 10 quī dē suō adventū doceant hortenturque ut in fidē maneant  
 atque hostium impetum magnō animō sustineant. Duābus  
 Agedincī legiōnibus atque impedimentis tōtius exercitūs relic-  
 tis ad Bōiōs proficiscitur.

11. Alterō diē cum ad oppidum Senonum Vellaunodānum  
 vēnisset, nē quem post sē hostem relinqueret, et quō expediti-  
 ōre rē frūmentāriā ūteretur, oppugnāre instituit eōque biduō  
 circumvallāvit; tertiō diē missis ex oppidō lēgātis dē dēditione,  
 5 arma cōferri, iūmenta prōdūci, sescentōs obsidēs dari iubet.  
 Ea quī cōnficeret, C. Trebōnium lēgātum relinquit; ipse, ut  
 quam primum iter cōnficeret, Cēnabum Carnutum proficiscitur;  
 quī tum primum allātō nūntiō dē oppugnātiōne Vellaunodūni,  
 cum longius eam rem ductum iri exīstimārent, praesidium  
 10 Cēnabi tuendī causā, quod eō mitterent, comparābant. Hūc  
 biduō pervenit. Castris ante oppidum positīs diēi tempore ex-  
 clūsus in posterum oppugnātiōnem differt quaeque ad eam rem  
 ūsuī sint militibus imperat et, quod oppidum Cēnabum pōns  
 flūminis Ligeris contingēbat, veritus nē noctū ex oppidō pro-  
 15 fugerent, duās legiōnēs in armīs excubāre iubet. Cēnabēnsēs  
 paulō ante mediam noctem silentiō ex oppidō ēgressi flūmen  
 trānsire coepērunt. Quā rē per explorātōrēs nūntiātā Caesar

legiōnēs quās expeditās esse iusserat, portis incēnsis, intrōmittit atque oppidō potitur, perpaucis ex hostium numerō dēsiderātis quā cūcti caperentur, quod pontis atque itinerum angustiae multitudinī fugam interclūserant. Oppidum diripit atque incendit, praedam militibus dōnat, exercitum Ligerim trādūcit atque in Biturigum finēs pervenit.

12. Vercingetorix, ubi dē Caesaris adventū cognōvit, oppugnātiōne dēsistit atque obviam Caesari proficiscitur. Ille oppidum Biturigum positum in viā Noviodūnum oppugnāre instituerat. Quō ex oppidō cum lēgātī ad eum vēnissent orātum ut sibi ignōsceret suaeque vitae cōsuleret, ut celeritāte reliquās rēs cōnficeret quā plēraque erat cōsecūtus, arma cōnferri, equōs prōdūci, obsidēs dari iubet. Parte iam obsidum trādītā, cum reliqua administrārentur, centuriōnibus et paucis militibus intrōmissis quī arma iūmentaue conquīrent, equitātus hostium procul vīsus est, quī agmen Vercingetorigis antecesserat. Quem simul atque oppidānī cōspexērunt atque in spem auxili vērunt, clāmōre sublātō arma capere, portās claudere, mūrum complēre coepērunt. Centuriōnēs in oppidō, cum ex significātiōne Gallōrum novī aliquid ab iis inīrī cōnsili intellēxissent, gladiis dēstrictis portās occupāvērunt suosque omnēs incolumēs recēpērunt.

13. Caesar ex castris equitātum ēdūci iubet proeliumque equestre committit; labōrantibus iam suis Germānōs equitēs circiter cccc submittit, quōs ab initio sēcum habēre instituerat. Eōrum impetum Galli sustinēre nōn potuērunt atque in fugam coniecti multis āmissis sē ad agmen recēpērunt. Quibus profligātis rūsus oppidānī perterriti comprehēnsōs eōs quōrum operā plēbem concitātā existimābant ad Caesarem perdūxērunt sēsēque ei dēdidērunt. Quibus rēbus cōnfectis Caesar ad oppidum Avaricum, quod erat maximum mūnitissimumque in finibus Biturigum atque agrī fertilissimā regiōne, profectus est, quod eō oppidō receptō civitatem Biturigum sē in potestatem redāctūrum cōnfidēbat.

14. Vercingetorix, tot continuīs incommodis Vellaunodūni,

Cēnabī, Noviodūnī acceptis, suōs ad concilium convocat. Docet longē aliā ratiōne esse bellum gerendum atque antea gestum sit. Omnibus modis huic rei studendum, ut pābulatiōne et commeātū Rōmānī prohibeantur. Id esse facile, quod equitatū ipsī abundant et quod annī tempore sublevantur. Pābulum secārī nōn posse; necessariō dispersōs hostēs ex aedificiis petere; hōs omnēs cotidiē ab equitibus dēlērī posse. Praetereā commūnis salūtis causā rei familiāris commoda negotienda; vicōs atque aedificia incendiī oportēre hōc spatiō quoqueversus quō pābulandī causā adire posse videantur. Hārum ipsis rerum cōpiam suppetere, quod, quōrum in finibus bellum geratur, eōrum opibus sublevantur; Rōmānōs aut inopiam nōn lātūrōs aut magnō cum periculō longius ā castris prōcessūrōs; neque interesse ipsōsne interficiant an impedimentis exuant, quibus āmissis bellum gerī nōn possit. Praetereā oppida incendiī oportēre quae nōn mūnitiōne et locī nātūrā ab omnī sint periculō tūta, nē suis sint ad dētrectandam militiam receptācula neu Rōmānis prōposita ad cōpiam commeātūs praedamque tollendam. Haec sī gravia aut acerba videantur, multō illa gravius aestimārī dēbere, liberōs, coniugēs in servitūtem abstrahī, ipsōs interficī; quae sit necesse accidere victis.

15. Omnium cōsēnsū hāc sententiā probātā, ūnō diē amplius xx urbēs Biturigum incenduntur. Hoc idem fit in reliquis civitatibus; in omnibus partibus incendia cōspiciuntur; quae etsī magnō cum dolore omnēs ferēbant, tamen hoc sibi sōlaci prōpōnēbant, quod sē prope explōrātā victōriā celeriter āmissa recuperātūrōs cōfidēbant. Dēliberatur dē Avaricō in commūnī conciliō, incendiī placeat an dēfendī. Prōcumbunt omnibus Gallis ad pedēs Biturigēs, nē pulcherrimam prope tōtius Galliae urbem, quae et praesidiō et ōrnāmētō sit civitātī, suis manibus succendere cōgantur; facile sē locī nātūrā dēfēnsūrōs dīcunt, quod prope ex omnibus partibus flūmine et palūde circumdatā ūnum habeat et perangustum aditum. Datur petentibus venia, dissuādente primō Vercingetorige, post

concédente et precibus ipsōrum et misericordiā vulgī. Dēfēn-  
sōrēs oppidō idōneī dēliguntur. 15

16. Vercingetorix minōribus Caesarem itineribus subse-  
quitur et locum castris dēligit palūdbus silvisque mūnitum, ab  
Avaricō longē milia passuum XVI. Ibi per certōs explōrātōrēs  
in singula diēi tempora quae ad Avaricum agerentur cognōs-  
cēbat, et quid fieri vellet imperābat. Omnēs nostrās pābulāti- 5  
ōnēs frūmentātiōnēsque observābat dispersōsque, cum longius  
necessariō prōcēderent, adoriēbātur magnōque incommodō affi-  
ciēbat, etsī quantum ratiōne prōvidērī poterat ab nostris occur-  
rēbātur, ut incertis temporibus diversisque itineribus irētur.

17. Castris ad eam partem oppidī positīs Caesar quae inter-  
missa flūmine et palūde aditum, ut suprā diximus, angustum  
habēbat, aggerem apparāre, vineās agere, turrēs duās cōstitu-  
ere coepit; nam circumvallāre locī nātūra prohibēbat. Dē rē  
frūmentāriā Bōiōs atque Haeduōs adhortārī nōn dēstitit: quō- 5  
rum alterī, quod nūllō studiō agēbant, nōn multum adiuvā-  
bant; alterī nōn magnīs facultātibus, quod civitās erat exigua  
et infirma, celeriter quod habuērunt cōsūmpsērunt. Summā  
difficultāte rei frūmentāriae affectō exercitū tenuitāte Bōiō- 10  
rum, indiligentiā Haeduōrum, incendiis aedificiōrum, usque eō  
ut complūrēs diēs frūmentō militēs caruerint et pecore ex lon-  
ginquiōribus vicīs adāctō extrēmam famem sustentārint, nūlla  
tamen vōx est ab iis audīta populī Rōmānī maiestāte et superi-  
ōribus victōriis indigna. Quin etiam Caesar cum in opere sin-  
gulās legiōnēs appellāret et, sī acerbius inopiam ferrent, sē 15  
dīmissūrum oppugnātiōnem dīceret, ūniversī ab eō nē id faceret  
petēbant: Sic sē complūrēs annōs illō imperante meruisse ut  
nūllam ignōminiam acciperent, numquam infectā rē discēde-  
rent; hoc sē ignōminiae lātūrōs locō, sī inceptam oppugnāti-  
ōnem reliquissent; praestāre omnēs perferre acerbitatēs quam 20  
nōn cīvibus Rōmānis quī Cēnabī perfidiā Gallōrum interissent  
parentārent. Haec eadem centuriōnibus tribūnisque militum  
mandābant, ut per eōs ad Caesarem dēferrentur.

18. Cum iam mūrō turrēs appropinquāssent, ex captivis

Caesar cognōvit Vercingetorigem cōsumptō pābulō castra mō-  
visse propius Avaricum, atque ipsum cum equitātū expeditis-  
que quī inter equitēs proeliārī cōsuēssent insidiandī causā eō  
5 profectum quō nostrōs posterō diē pābulātum ventūrōs arbi-  
trārētur. Quibus rēbus cognitīs, mediā nocte silentiō profectus  
ad hostium castra māne pervēnit. Illī celeriter per explōrā-  
tōrēs adventū Caesaris cognitō carrōs impedimentaue sua in  
artiōrēs silvās abdidērunt, cōpiās omnēs in locō ēditō atque  
10 apertō instrūxērunt. Quā rē nūntiātā Caesar celeriter sarcinās  
cōferri, arma expediti iussit.

19. Collis erat lēniter ab infimō acclivis. Hunc ex omni-  
bus ferē partibus palūs difficilis atque impedita cingēbat nōn  
lātior pedibus quinquāgintā. Hōc sē colle interruptīs ponti-  
bus Gallī fiduciā locī continēbant generātimque distribūtī om-  
5 nia vada eius palūdis obtinēbant, sic animō parātī ut, sī eam  
palūdem Rōmānī perrumpere cōnārentur, haesitantēs preme-  
rent ex locō superiōre; ut quī propinquitatem locī vidēret parā-  
tōs prope aequō Mārte ad dīmicandum existimāret, quī  
iniquitatem condiciōnis perspiceret inānī simulātiōne sēsē os-  
10 tentāre cognōsceret. Indignantēs milites Caesar, quod cōn-  
spectum suum hostēs ferre possent tantulō spatiō interiectō, et  
signum proeli exposcentēs ēdocet quantō dētrimentō et quot  
virōrum fortium morte necesse sit cōstāre victōriam: Quōs  
cum sic animō parātōs videat ut nūllum prō suā laude pericu-  
15 lum recūsant, summae sē iniquitātis condemnārī dēbere, nisi  
eōrum vitam laude suā habeat cāriōrem. Sic milites cōsōlā-  
tus eōdem diē reducit in castra reliquaue quae ad oppugnā-  
tiōnem oppidi pertinēbant administrāre instituit.

20. Vercingetorix, cum ad suōs redisset, prōditiōnis insim-  
ulātus, quod castra propius Rōmānōs mōvisset, quod cum omni  
equitātū discessisset, quod sine imperiō tantās cōpiās relīquis-  
set, quod eius discessū Rōmānī tantā opportunitate et celeritate  
5 vēnissent: Nōn haec omnia fortuitō aut sine cōsiliō accidere  
potuisse; rēgnū illum Galliae malle Caesaris concessū quam  
ipsōrum habēre beneficiō—tālī modō accūsātus ad haec respon-

dit: Quod castra mōvisset, factum inopiā pābuli etiam ipsis hortantibus; quod propius Rōmānōs accessisset, persuāsum loci opportunitate, quī sē ipse sine mūnitiōne dēfenderet; equitum 10 vērō operam neque in locō palūstri dēsiderārī dēbuisse et illic fuisse ūtilem quō sint profectī. Summam imperi sē cōsultō nulli discēdentem trādidisse, nē is multitudinis studiō ad dīmīcandum impellerētur, cui rei propter animi mollietiem studere omnēs vidēret, quod diūtius labōrem ferre nōn possent. Rō- 15 mānī sī cāsū intervēnerint, fortunae, sī alicuius indicio vocātī, huic habendam grātiam, quod et paucitatem eōrum ex locō superiōre cognōscere et virtutem dēspicere potuerint, quī dīmīcāre nōn ausi turpiter sē in castra recēperint. Imperium sē ā Caesare per prōditiōnem nullum dēsiderāre, quod habere 20 victoriā posset, quae iam esset sibi atque omnibus Gallis explōrāta; quā etiam ipsis remittere, sī sibi magis honōrem tribuere quam ab sē salutem accipere videantur. ‘Haec ut intellegātis,’ inquit, ‘ā mē sincērē prōnūntiārī, audite Rōmānōs militēs.’ Prōdūcit servōs, quōs in pābulātiōne paucis ante 25 diēbus excēperat et fame vinculisque excruciaēverat. Hī, iam ante ēdoctī quae interrogātī prōnūntiārent, militēs sē esse legiōnariōs dicunt; fame et inopiā adductōs clam ex castris exisse, sī quid frūmenti aut pecoris in agris reperire possent; simili omnem exercitum inopiā premī, nec iam virēs sufficere 30 cuiusquam nec ferre operis labōrem posse; itaque statuisse imperātōrem, sī nihil in oppugnātiōne oppidī prōfēcisset, trīduō exercitum dēducere. ‘Haec,’ inquit, ‘ā mē beneficia habētis, quem prōditiōnis insimulātis; cuius operā sine vestrō sanguine tantum exercitum victōrem fame paene cōsumptum vidētis; 35 quem turpiter sē ex hāc fugā recipientem nē qua civitās suis finibus recipiat ā mē prōvisum est.’

**21.** Conclāmat omnis multitūdō et suō mōre armis concrepat, quod facere in eō cōsuērunt cuius orātiōnem approbant: Summum esse Vercingetorigem ducem nec dē eius fidē dubitandum, nec maiōre ratiōne bellum administrārī posse. Statuunt ut decem milia hominum dēlēcta ex omnibus cōpiis 5

in oppidum submittantur, nec sōlis Biturīgibus commūnem salūtem committendam cēsent, quod paene in eō, sī id oppidum retinuissent, summam victōriae cōnstāre intellegēbant.

22. Singulārī militum nostrōrum virtūtī cōnsilia cuiusque modī Gallōrum occurrēbant, ut est summae genus sollertiae atque ad omnia imitanda et efficienda quae ā quōque trāduntur aptissimum. Nam et laqueis falcēs āvertēbant, quās, cum  
5 dēstināverant, tormentis intrōrsus reducēbant, et aggerem cuniculīs subtrahēbant, eō scientius, quod apud eōs magnae sunt ferrāriae atque omne genus cuniculōrum nōtum atque ūsitātum est. Tōtum autem mūrum ex omnī parte turribus contabulāverant atque hās coriis intēxerant. Tum crēbris di-  
10 urnis nocturnisque ēruptiōnibus aut aggerī ignem inferēbant aut milītēs occupātōs in opere adoriēbantur, et nostrārum turrium altitūdinem, quantum hās cotidiānus agger expresserat, commissis suārum turrium mālīs adaequābant, et apertōs cuniculōs praeustā et praeacūtā materiā et pice fervefactā et  
15 maximī ponderis saxīs morābantur moenibusque appropinquāre prohibēbant.

23. Mūrī autem omnēs Gallicī hāc ferē fōrmā sunt. Trabēs dērēctae, perpetuae in longitudinem paribus intervāllis, distantēs inter sē binōs pedēs, in solō collocantur. Hae revinciuntur intrōrsus et multō aggere vestiuntur; ea autem quae  
5 diximus intervālla grandibus in fronte saxīs effercuntur. His collocātis et coagmentātis alius insuper ōrdō additur, ut idem illud intervāllum servētur neque inter sē contingant trabēs, sed paribus intermissis spatiis singulae singulis saxīs interiectis artē contineantur. Sic deinceps omne opus contextitur, dum  
10 iūsta mūrī altitūdō expleātur. Hoc cum in speciem varietatemque opus dēfōrme nōn est, alternis trabibus ac saxīs, quae rēctis lineis suōs ordinēs servant, tum ad utilitātem et dēfēnsiōnem urbium summam habet opportunitātem, quod et ab incendiō lapis et ab ariete materiā dēfendit, quae perpetuis  
15 trabibus pedum quadrāgēnum plērumque intrōrsus revincta neque perrumpī neque distrahī potest.

**24.** His tot rēbus impeditā oppugnātionē, militēs, cum tōtō tempore frigore et assiduīs imbribus tardārentur, tamen continentī labōre omnia haec superāvērunt et diēbus xxv aggerem lātum pedēs cccxxx, altum pedēs lxxx extrūxērunt. Cum is mūrū hostium paene contingeret, et Caesar ad opus 5 cōnsuētūdine excubāret militēsque hortārētur nē quod omnīnō tempus ab opere intermitterētur, paulō ante tertiam vigiliam est animadversum fūmāre aggerem, quem cuniculō hostēs succenderant, eōdemque tempore tōtō mūrō clāmōre sublātō, duābus portis ab utrōque latere turrium ēruptiō fiēbat; alii facēs 10 atque āridam māteriam dē mūrō in aggerem ēminus iaciēbant, picem reliquāsque rēs quibus ignis excitārī potest fundēbant, ut quō primum occurrerētur aut cui rei ferrētur auxilium vix ratiō inīrī posset. Tamen, quod institūtō Caesaris semper duae legiōnēs prō castris excubābant plūrēsque partītis tem- 15 poribus erant in opere, celeriter factum est ut alii ēruptiōnibus resisterent, alii turrēs redūcerent aggeremque interseinderent, omnis vērō ex castris multitūdō ad restinguendum concurreret.

**25.** Cum in omnibus locis, cōsumptā iam reliquā parte noctis, pugnārētur, semperque hostibus spēs victōriae redintegrārētur, eō magis, quod deustōs pluteōs turrium vidēbant nec facile adīre apertōs ad auxiliandum animadvertēbant, semperque ipsi recentēs dēfessīs succēderent omnemque Galliae 5 salutē in illō vēstigiō temporis positam arbitrārentur, accidit inspectantibus nobīs quod dignum memoriā vīsum praeter-eundum nōn existimāvimus. Quīdam ante portam oppidī Gallus per manūs sēbī ac picis trāditās glēbās in ignem ē regiōne turris prōiciēbat; scorpiōne ab latere dextrō trāiectus exanimā- 10 tusque concidit. Hunc ex proximis ūnus iacentem trāsgressus eōdem illō mūnere fungēbātur; eādē ratione ictū scorpiōnis exanimātō alterī successit tertius et tertiō quārtus, nec prius ille est ā prōpugnātōribus vacuus relictus locus quam restinctō aggere atque omnī parte submōtis hostibus finis est pug- 15 nandi factus.

26. Omnia experti Galli, quod res nulla successerat, posterō diē cōsiliū cēpērunt ex oppidō profugere, hortante et iubente Vercingetorige. Id silentiō noctis cōnāti nōn magnā iactūrā suōrum sēsē effectūrōs spērābant, proptereā quod neque  
5 longē ab oppidō castra Vercingetorigis aberant, et palūs perpetua, quae intercēdebāt, Rōmānōs ad insequendum tardābat. Iamque hoc facere noctū apparābant, cum matrēs familiae repente in publicum prōcurrērunt flentēsque prōiectae ad pedēs suōrum omnibus precibus petiērunt nē sē et commūnēs libe-  
10 rōs hostibus ad supplicium dēderent, quōs ad capiendam fugam nātūrae et viriū infirmitās impediret. Ubi eōs in sententiā perstāre vidērunt, quod plērumque in summō periculō timor misericordiam nōn recipit, conclāmāre et significāre dē fugā Rōmānīs coepērunt. Quō timōre perterriti Galli, nē ab equi-  
tātū Rōmānōrum viae praeoccupārentur, cōsiliō dēstitērunt.

27. Posterō diē Caesar, prōmōtā turri dērēctisque operibus quae facere instituerat, magnō coortō imbrī, nōn inūtilem hanc ad capiendum cōsiliū tempestātem arbitrātus, quod paulō incautius custōdiās in mūrō dispositās vidēbat, suōs  
5 quoque languidiūs in opere versārī iussit et quid fierī vellet ostendit; legiōnibusque in occultō expeditis, cohortātus ut aliquandō prō tantis labōribus fructum victōriae perciperent, iis quī primī mūrū ascendissent praemia prōposuit militibusque signum dedit. Illi subitō ex omnibus partibus ēvolāvērunt  
10 mūrūque celeriter complēvērunt.

28. Hostēs rē novā perterriti, mūrō turribusque dēiecti, in forō ac locis patentiōribus cuneātim cōstitērunt, hōc animō, ut, si quā ex parte obviam venirētur, aciē instrūctā dēpugnārent. Ubi nēminem in aequū locum sēsē dēmittere,  
5 sed tōtō undique mūrō circumfundī vidērunt, veriti nē omninō spēs fugae tollerētur, abiectis armis ultimās oppidī partēs continenti impetū petivērunt, parsque ibi, cum angustō exitū portārum sē ipsī premerent, ā militibus, pars iam ēgressa portis ab equitibus est interfecta. Nec fuit quisquam quī praedae  
10 studēret. Sic et Cēnabēnsi caede et labōre operis incitāti nōn

aetate cōfectis, nōn mulieribus, nōn infantibus pepercērunt. Dēnique ex omni numerō, quī fuit circiter milium XL, vi DCCC, quī primō clamōre auditō sē ex oppidō eiēcerant, incolūmēs ad Vercingetorigem pervēnērunt. Quōs ille multā iam nocte silentiō ex fugā excēpit, et veritus nē qua in castris ex 15 eōrum concursū et misericordiā vulgī sēditiō orerētur, procul in viā dispositis familiāribus suis principibusque cīvitātum disparandōs dēdūcendōsque ad suōs cūravit, quae cuique cīvitāti pars castrōrum ab initiō obvenerat.

29. Posterō diē conciliō convocātō cōsōlātus cohortātusque est nē sē admodum animō dēmitterent nēve perturbārentur incommodō. Nōn virtūte neque in aciē vīcissee Rōmānōs, sed artificiō quōdam et scientiā oppugnātiōnis, cuius rei fuerint ipsī imperitī. Errāre, sī quī in bellō omnēs secundōs rērum 5 prōventūs exspectent. Sibi numquam placuisse Avaricum dēfendi, cuius rei testēs ipsōs habēret; sed factum imprudentiā Biturigum et nimīā obsequentiā reliquōrum uti hoc incommodum acciperētur. Id tamen sē celeriter maiōribus commodis sātātūrum. Nam quae ab reliquis Gallis cīvitātēs dissentī- 10 rent, hās suā diligentīā adiūctūrum atque ūnum cōsiliūm tōtius Galliae effectūrum, cuius cōsēnsui nē orbis quidem terrārum possit obsistere; idque sē prope iam effectum habēre. Intereā aequum esse ab iīs commūnis salūtis causā impetrārī ut castra mūnīre instituerent, quō facilius repentinōs hostium 15 impetūs sustinēre possent.

30. Fuit haec ōrātiō nōn ingrāta Gallis, et maximē quod ipse animō nōn dēfēcerat tantō acceptō incommodō neque sē in occultum abdiderat et cōspectum multitudinis fūgerat; plūsque animō prōvidēre et praesentire existimābātur, quod rē integrā primō incendendum Avaricum, post dēserendum cēn- 5 suera. Itaque ut reliquōrum imperātōrum rēs adversae auctoritātem minuunt, sic huius ex contrāriō dignitās incommodō acceptō in diēs augēbātur. Simul in spem veniēbant eius affirmātiōne dē reliquis adiungendis cīvitātibus; primumque eō tempore Galli castra mūnīre instituērunt; et sic erant 10

animō cōfirmātī hominēs insuētī labōris, ut omnia quae imperārentur sibi patiēda exīstimārent.

31. Nec minus quam est pollicitus Vercingetorix animō labōrābat ut reliquās civitātēs adiungeret, atque eārum principēs dōnīs pollicitātiōnibusque alliciēbat. Huic rei idōneōs hominēs dēligēbat, quōrum quisque aut orātiōne subdolā aut  
5 amicitīā facillimē capere posset. Quī Avaricō expugnātō refūgerant armandōs vestiendōsque cūrāt; simul, ut dēminūtae cōpiae redintegrārentur, imperat certum numerum militum civitātibus, quem et quam ante diem in castra addūcī velit, sagittariōsque omnēs, quōrum erat permagnus numerus in  
10 Galliā, conquīrī et ad sē mittī iubet. Hīs rēbus celeriter id quod Avaricī dēperierat explētur. Interim Teutomatus, Ollovicōnis filius, rēx Nitiobrogum, cuius pater ab senātū nostrō amicus erat appellātus, cum magnō numerō equitum suōrum et quōs ex Aquitāniā condūxerat ad eum pervenit.

32. Caesar Avaricī complūrēs diēs commorātus summamque ibi cōpiam frūmentī et reliquī commeātūs nactus exercitum ex labōre atque inopiā reficit. Iam prope hieme cōfectā, cum ipsō annī tempore ad gerendum bellum vocārētur et ad  
5 hostem proficisci cōstituisset, sive eum ex palūdibus silvisque ēlicere sive obsidiōne premere posset, lēgātī ad eum principēs Haeduōrum veniunt orātum ut maximē necessariō tempore civitāti subveniat: Summō esse in periculō rem, quod, cum singulī magistrātūs antiquitus creārī atque rēgiā potestātem  
10 annum obtinēre cōsuēssent, duo magistrātum gerant et sē uterque eōrum lēgibus creatum esse dicāt. Hōrum esse alterum Convictolitavem, flōrentem et illūstrem adulēscētem, alterum Cotum, antiquissimā familiā nātum atque ipsum hominem summae potentiae et magnae cognātiōnis, cuius frāter  
15 Valetīacus proximō annō eundem magistrātum gesserit. Civitātē esse omnem in armīs; dīvisum senātum, dīvisum populum, suās cuiusque eōrum clientēlās. Quod sī diūtius alātur contrōversia, fore utī pars cum parte civitātis cōfligat. Id nē accidat positum in eius diligentiā atque auctōritāte.

**33.** Caesar, etsi à bellō atque hoste discēdere dētrimentōsum esse existimābat, tamen nōn ignōrāns quanta ex dissēsiōnibus incommoda oriri cōsuēssent, nē tanta et tam coniūncta populō Rōmānō civitās, quam ipse semper aluisset omnibusque rēbus ōrnāssent, ad vim atque arma dēscenderet, atque ea pars quae minus sibi cōfideret auxilia à Vercingetorige arcesseret, huic rei praevertendum existimāvit, et, quod lēgibus Haedūōrum iis quī summum magistrātum obtinērent excēdere ex finibus nōn liceret, nē quid dē iūre aut dē lēgibus eōrum dēminuisse vidērētur, ipse in Haedūōs proficisci statuit senātumque omnem et quōs inter contrōversia esset ad sē Decetiam ēvocāvit. Cum prope omnis civitās eō convēnisset docērēturque, paucis clam convocātis aliō locō, aliō tempore atque oportuerit, frātrem à frātre renūntiātum, cum lēgēs duo ex ūnā familiā vivō utrōque nōn solum magistrātūs creārī vetārent, sed etiam in senātū esse prohibērent, Cōtum imperium dēpōnere coēgit, Convictolitāvem, quī per sacerdōtēs mōre civitātis intermissis magistrātibus esset creātus, potestātem obtinēre iussit.

**34.** Hōc dēcrētō interpositō, cohortātus Haedūōs ut contrōversiārum ac dissēsiōnis obliviscerentur atque omnibus omissis rēbus huic bellō servīrent eaque quae meruissent praemia ab sē, dēvictā Galliā, expectārent equitātumque omnem et peditum milia decem sibi celeriter mitterent quae in praesidiis rei frūmentāriae causā dispōneret, exercitum in duās partēs dīvisit: quattuor legiōnēs in Senonēs Parisiōsque Labiēnō dūcendās dedit, sex ipse in Arvernōs ad oppidum Gergoviam secundum flūmen Elaver dūxit; equitātūs partem illi attribuit, partem sibi reliquit. Quā rē cognitā Vercingetorix, omnibus interruptis eius flūminis pontibus, ab alterā flūminis parte iter facere coepit.

**35.** Cum uterque utrimque exisset exercitus, in cōspectū ferēque ē regiōne Caesaris castra pōnēbat, dispositis explorātōribus, nēcubi effectō ponte Rōmānī cōpiās trādūcerent. Erat in magnis Caesarī difficultātibus rēs, nē maiōrem aestātis partem flūmine impedirētur, quod nōn ferē ante autumnum

Elaver vadō trānsīrī sōlet. Itaque, nē id accideret, silvestri locō castris positīs ē regiōne ūnīus eōrum pontium quōs Vercingetorix rescindendōs cūrāverat, posterō diē cum duābus legiōnibus in occultō restitit; reliquās cōpiās cum omnibus im-  
10 pedimentis, ut cōsuērat, misit, distractis quibusdam cohortibus, ut numerus legiōnum cōstāre vidērētur. Hīs quam longissimē possent prōgredi iussis, cum iam ex diēi tempore coniecturam caperet in castra perventum, isdem sublicis, quārum pars inferior integra remanēbat, pontem reficere coepit.  
15 Celeriter effectō opere legiōnibusque trāductis et locō castris idōneō dēlectō reliquās cōpiās revocāvit. Vercingetorix rē cognitā, nē contrā suam voluntātem dimicāre cōgerētur, magnis itineribus antecessit.

36. Caesar ex eō locō quintis castris Gergoviam pervēnit equestrique eō diē proeliō levī factō, perspectō urbis sitū, quae posita in altissimō monte omnēs aditūs difficilēs habēbat, dē oppugnātiōne dēspērāvit, dē obsessiōne nōn prius agendum  
5 cōstituit quam rem frūmentāriam expēdisset. At Vercingetorix, castris prope oppidum in monte positīs, mediocribus circum sē intervallis sēparatim singulārum civitātum cōpiās collocāverat, atque, omnibus eius iugī collibus occupātis quā dēspiciī poterat, horribilem speciem praebēbat, principēsque eārum  
10 civitātum quōs sibi ad cōsiliū capiendum dēlēgerat primā lūce cotidiē ad sē convenīre iubēbat, seu quid communicandum seu quid administrandum vidērētur, neque ūllum ferē diem intermittēbat quīn equestri proeliō, interiectis sagittariis, quid in quōque esset animī ac virtūtis suōrum periclitārētur. Erat  
15 ē regiōne oppidī collis sub ipsis rādīcibus montis ēgregiē mūnītus atque ex omnī parte circumcīsus; quem sī tenērent nostri, et aquā magnā partem et pābulātiōne liberā prohibētūrī hostēs vidēbantur. Sed is locus praesidiō ab his nōn infirmō tenēbātur. Tamen silentiō noctis Caesar ex castris ēgressus,  
20 priusquam subsidiō ex oppidō venīrī posset, dēiectō praesidiō, potitus locō, duās ibi legiōnēs collocāvit fossamque duplicem duodēnum pedum ā maiōribus castris ad minōra perdūxit, ut

tūtō ab repentinō hostium incursū etiam singulī commeāre possent.

**37.** Dum haec ad Gergoviam geruntur, Convictolitāvis Haeduus, cui magistrātum adiūdicātum ā Caesare dēmōnstrāvimus, sollicitātus ab Arvernīs pecūniā cum quibusdā adulēscētibz colloquitur, quōrum erat princeps Litaviccus atque eius frātrēs, amplissimā familiā nātī adulēscēntēs. Cum his <sup>5</sup> praemium commūnicat hortāturque ut sē liberōs et imperiō nātōs meminerint: Ūnam esse Haeduōrum civitātem quae certissimā Galliae victōriam dētineat; eius auctōritāte reliquās continēri; quā trāductā locum cōsistendī Rōmānis in Galliā nōn fore. Esse nōn nullō sē Caesaris beneficiō affectum, sic <sup>10</sup> tamen ut iūstissimā apud eum causam obtinuerit; sed plūs commūni libertāti tribuere. Cūr enim potius Haedui dē suō iūre et dē lēgibus ad Caesarem disceptātōrem quam Rōmāni ad Haeduōs veniant? Celeriter adulēscētibz et ōrātiōne magistrātū et praemiō dēductis, cum sē vel principēs eius cōnsili <sup>15</sup> fore profitērentur, ratiō perficiendī quaerēbātur, quod civitātem temerē ad suscipiendum bellum addūci posse nōn cōfidēbant. Placuit ut Litaviccus decem illis milibus quae Caesari ad bellum mitterentur praeficerētur atque ea dūcenda cūrāret, frātrēsque eius ad Caesarem praecurrerent. Reliqua quā rati- <sup>20</sup> ōne agī placeat cōstituunt.

**38.** Litaviccus acceptō exercitū, cum milia passuum circiter xxx ā Gergoviā abesset, convocātis subitō militibus lacrimāns, ‘Quō proficiscimur,’ inquit, ‘militēs? Omnis noster equitātus, omnis nōbilitās interiit; principēs civitātis, Eporedorix et Viridomārus, insimulātī prōditiōnis ab Rōmānis indictā <sup>5</sup> causā interfecti sunt. Haec ab his cognōscite, qui ex ipsā caede effūgērunt; nam ego, frātribz atque omnibus meis propinquis interfectis, dolore prohibeor quae gesta sunt prōnūntiāre.’ Prōducuntur ii quōs ille ēdocuerat quae dīci vellet, atque eadem quae Litaviccus prōnūntiāverat multitudinī expō- <sup>10</sup> nunt: Omnēs equitēs Haeduōrum interfectōs, quod collocūti cum Arvernīs dicerentur; ipsōs sē inter multitudinem militum

occultāsse atque ex mediā caede effūgisſe. Conclāmant Haedui et Litavicum obsecrant ut ſibi cōſulat. 'Quaſi vērō,' inquit  
 15 ille, 'cōſilī ſit rēs, ac nōn recesse ſit nōbīs Gergoviam contendere et cum Arvernīs nōsmet coniungere. An dubitāmus quā nefāriō facinore admiſſō Rōmānī iam ad nōs interficiendōs concurrant? Proinde, ſi quid in nōbīs animī eſt, persequāmur eōrum mortem quī indigniſſimē interiērunt, atque hōs  
 20 latrōnēs interficiāmus.' Ostendit cīvēs Rōmānōs, quī eius praesidī fidūciā ūnā erant; continuō magnum numerum frūmenti commeātūsque diripit, ipſōs crudēliter excruciatōs interficit. Nūntiōs tōtā civitāte Haeduōrum dimittit, eōdem mendaciō dē caede equitum et principum permovet; hortātur  
 25 ut ſimili ratiōne atque ipse fēcerit ſuās iniuriās persequantur.

39. Eporēdorix Haednus, summō locō nātus adulēscēns et summae domī potentiae, et ūnā Viridomārus, parī aetate et grātiā, sed genere disparī, quem Caesar ab Diviciācō ſibi trāditum ex humili locō ad summam dignitatem perdūxerat, in  
 5 equitum numerō convēnerant nōminatim ab eō ēvocātī. Hīs erat inter sē dē principātū contentiō, et in illā magistrātuum contrōverſiā alter prō Convictolitāve, alter pro Cotō summīs opibus pugnāverant. Ex hīs Eporēdorix cognitō Litaviccī cōſiliō mediā ferē nocte rem ad Caesarem dēfert; orat nē  
 10 patiātur civitatem prāvis adulēſcentium cōſiliis ab amicitia populi Rōmānī dēficere; quod futurum prōvideat, ſi sē tot hominum milia cum hostibus coniūnxerint, quōrum salutem neque propinquī neglegere neque civitās levī mōmentō aestimāre possit.

40. Magnā affectus sollicitūdine hōc nūntiō Caesar, quod semper Haeduōrum civitātī praecipuē indulserat, nullā interpositā dubitātiōne legiōnēs expeditās quattuor equitātumque omnem ex castris ēducit, nec fuit spatium tālī tempore ad  
 5 contrahenda castra, quod rēs posita in celeritate vidēbātur; C. Fabium lēgātum cum legiōnibus duābus castris praesidiō relinquit. Frātrēs Litaviccī cum comprehendī iussisset, paulō ante

reperit ad hostēs profūgisſe. Adhortātus militēs nē neceſſariō tempore itineris labōre permoveantur, cupidiffimīs omnibus, prōgreſſus milia paſſuum xxv agmen Haeduōrum cōſpiciātur; 10 immiſſō equitatū iter eōrum morātur atque impedit interdicitque omnibus nē quemquam interficiant. Eporēdorigem et Viridomārum, quōs illi interfectōs exiſtimābant, inter equitēs verſārī ſuōſque appellāre iubet. Hiſ cognitiſ et Litaviciī fraude perſpectā Haeduī manū tendere, dēditionem ſignificāre 15 et prōiectiſ armiſ mortem dēprecārī incipiunt. Litaviceuſ cum ſuiſ clientibuſ, quibuſ mōre Gallōrum nefāſ eſt etiam in extrēmā fortunā dēſerere patrōnōſ, Gergoviam profūgit.

41. Caſar nūntiſ ad civitātem Haeduōrum miſſiſ qui ſuō beneficiō cōſervātōſ docērent, quōſ iūre belli interficere potuiſſet, tribuſque hōriſ exercituī ad quietem datiſ caſtra ad Gergoviam movet. Mediō ferē itinere equitēſ ā Fabiō miſſi quantō rēſ in periculō fuerit expōnunt. Summiſ cōpiiſ caſtra 5 oppugnāta dēmōnſtrant, cum crēbrō integrī dēfeſſiſ ſuccēderent noſtrōſque aſſiduō labōre dēfatigārent, quibuſ propter magnitudinem caſtrōrum perpetuō eſſet iſdem in vāllō permanendum. Multitudīne ſagittārum atque omnī genere tēlōrum multōſ vulnerātōſ; ad haec ſuſtinenda magnō uſuī fuiſſe 10 tormenta. Fabiuſ diſceſſū eōrum duābuſ relictīſ portīſ obſtruere cēterāſ pluteōſque vāllō addere et ſē in poſterum diem ſimilemque cāſum apparāre. Hiſ rēbuſ cognitiſ Caſar ſummō ſtudiō militum ante ortum ſōliſ in caſtra pervēnit.

42. Dum haec ad Gergoviam geruntur, Haeduī primīſ nūntiſ ab Litaviccō acceptīſ nūllum ſibi ad cognōſcendum ſpatium relinquunt. Impellit aliōſ avāritia, aliōſ irācundia et temeritāſ, quae maximē illi hominum generī eſt innāta, ut levem auditiōnem habeant prō rē compertā. Bona civiuſ 5 Rōmānōrum diripiunt, caedēſ faciunt, in ſervitūtem abſtrahunt. Adiuvat rem prōclīnātā Convictolitāviſ plēbemque ad furōrem impellit, ut facinore admiſſō ad ſanitātem revertī pudeat. M. Ariſtium, tribūnum militum, iter ad legiōnēſ facientem fidē datā ex oppidō Cavillōnō educunt; idem facere 10

cōgunt eōs quī negōtiandī causā ibi cōstitērant. Hōs continuō in itinere adortī omnibus impedimentīs exuunt; repugnantēs diem noctemque obsident; multis utrimque interfectīs maiōrem multitudinem ad arma concitant.

**43.** Interim nūtiō allātō omnēs eōrum militēs in potestāte Caesaris tenērī, concurrunt ad Aristium, nihil publicō factum cōsiliō dēmōstrant; quaestiōnem dē bonīs direptīs dēcernant, Litaviceī frātrumque bona publicant, lēgātōs ad Caesarem suū  
 5 pūrgandī grātiā mittunt. Haec faciunt recuperandōrum suōrum causā; sed contāminātī facinore et captī compendiō ex direptīs bonīs, quod ea rēs ad multōs pertinēbat, et timōre poenae exterritī cōsilia clam dē bellō inīre incipiunt cīvitatēsque reliquās lēgātiōnibus sollicitant. Quae tametsī Caesar  
 10 intellegēbat, tamen quam mitissimē potest lēgātōs appellat: Nihil sē propter inscientiam levitātemque vulgī gravius dē cīvitate iudicāre neque dē suā in Haeduōs benevolentīā dēminuere. Ipse maiōrem Galliae mōtum exspectāns, nē ab omnibus cīvitatibus circumsisterētur, cōsilia inibat quem ad modum ā  
 15 Gergoviā discēderet ac rūsus omnem exercitum contraheret, nē profectiō nāta ā timōre dēfectiōnis similisque fugae vidērētur.

**44.** Haec cōgitantī accidere vīsa est facultās bene gerendae rei. Nam cum in minōra castra operis perspiciendī causā vēnisset, animadvertit collem quī ab hostibus tenēbātur nūdātum hominibus, quī superiōribus diēbus vix prae multitudine  
 5 cernī poterat. Mirātus quaerit ex perfugīs causam, quōrum magnus ad eum cotidiē numerus cōfluēbat. Cōstābat inter omnēs, quod iam ipse Caesar per explorātōrēs cognōverat, dorsum esse eius iugī prope aequum, sed silvestre et angustum, quā esset aditus ad alteram partem oppidi; vehementer huic  
 10 illōs locō timēre nec iam aliter sentire, unō collē ab Rōmānis occupātō, sī alterum amīsissent, quīn paene circumvallātī atque omni exitū et pābulatiōne interclūsī vidērentur; ad hunc mūniendum locum omnēs ā Vercingetorige ēvocātōs.

**45.** Hāc rē cognitā Caesar mittit complūrēs equitum tur-

mās eō dē mediā nocte; imperat ut paulō tumultuōsius omnibus locis pervagentur. Primā lūce magnum numerum impedimentōrum ex castris mūlōrumque prōdūci dēque hīs strāmenta dētrahī mūliōnēsque cum cassidibus equitum speciē ac simulatiōne collibus circumvehī iubet. His paucōs addit equitēs, quī lātius ostentātiōnis causā vagentur. Longō circuitū eāsdem omnēs iubet petere regiōnēs. Haec procul ex oppidō vidēbantur, ut erat ā Gergoviā dēspectus in castra, neque tantō spatiō certī quid esset explōrārī poterat. Legiōnem decimam eōdem lūce mittit et paulum prōgressam inferiōre cōstituit locō silvisque occultat. Augētur Gallis suspiciō, atque omnēs illō ad mūnitiōnem cōpiae trādūcuntur. Vacua castra hostium Caesar cōspiciātus, tēctis insignibus suōrum occultātisque signis militāribus, rārōs militēs, nē ex oppidō animadverterentur, ex maiōribus castris in minōra trādūcit lēgātisque, quōs singulis legiōnibus praefēcerat, quid fierī velit ostendit; in primis monet ut contineant militēs, nē studiō pugnandī aut spē praedae longius prōgrediantur; quid inīquitās locī habeat incommodī prōpōnit: Hoc unā celeritāte posse vitārī; occasiōnis esse rem, nōn proeli. His rēbus expositis signum dat et ab dextrā parte aliō ascēnsū eōdem tempore Haeduōs mittit.

**46.** Oppidī mūrus ā plānitie atque initiō ascēnsūs rēctā regiōne, sī nūllus ānfractus intercēderet, MCC passūs aberat; quicquid hūc circuitūs ad molliendum clivum accesserat, id spatium itineris augēbat. Ā mediō ferē colle in longitudinem, ut nātūra montis ferēbat, ex grandibus saxīs sex pedum mūrum, quī nostrōrum impetum tardāret, praedūxerant Galli atque inferiōre omni spatiō vacuō relictō superiōrem partem collis usque ad mūrum oppidī dēnsissimis castris complēverant. Militēs datō signō celeriter ad mūnitiōnem perveniunt eamque trāsgressī trinīs castris potiuntur; ac tanta fuit in castris capiendis celeritās ut Tentomatus, rēx Nitobrogum, subitō in tabernaculō oppressus, ut merīdiē conquiēverat, superiōre corporis parte nūdā, vulnerātō equō, vix sē ex manibus praedantium militum ēriperet.

47. Cōsecūtus id quod animō prōposuerat, Caesar receptū canī iussit, legiōnisque decimae, quācum erat, continuō signa cōstitērunt. At reliquārum legiōnum militēs nōn auditō sonō tubae, quod satis magna vallēs intercēdēbat, tamen  
 5 ā tribūnīs militum lēgātisque, ut erat ā Caesare praeceptum, retinēbantur. Sed ēlātī spē celeris victōriāe et hostium fugā et superiōrum temporum secundis proeliis nihil adeō arduum sibi esse existimābant quod nōn virtūte cōsequī possent, neque finem prius sequendī fēcērunt quam mūrō oppidī portisque  
 10 appropinquārent. Tum vērō, ex omnibus urbis partibus ortō clāmōre, quī longius aberant repentinō tumultū perterriti, cum hostem intrā portās esse existimārent, sē ex oppidō ēiēcērunt. Matrēs familiae dē mūrō vestem argentumque iactābant et pectore nūdō prōminentēs passis manibus obtestābantur Rō-  
 15 mānōs ut sibi parcerent neu, sicut Avaricī fēcissent, nē ā mulieribus quidem atque infantibus abstinērent; nōn nullae dē mūrō per manūs dēmissae sēsē militibus trādēbant. L. Fabius, centuriō legiōnis octāvae, quem inter suōs eō diē dixisse cōstābat excitārī sē Avaricēnsibus praemiis neque commissūrum  
 20 ut prius quisquam mūrum ascenderet, trēs suōs nactus manipulārēs atque ab iis sublevātus mūrum ascendit; hōs ipse rūsus singulōs exceptāns in mūrum extulit.

48. Interim iī quī ad alteram partem oppidī, ut suprā dēmōnstrāvimus, mūnitiōnis causā convēnerant, primō exauditō clāmōre, inde etiam crēbris nūntiis incitātī oppidum ā Rōmānis tenērī, praemissis equitibus magnō cursū eō contendērunt.  
 5 Eōrum ut quisque primus vēnerat, sub mūrō cōsistēbat suorumque pugnantium numerum augēbat. Quōrum cum magna multitūdō convēnisset, matrēs familiae, quae paulō ante Rōmānis dē mūrō manūs tendēbant, suōs obtestārī et mōre Gallicō passum capillum ostentāre liberōsque in cōspectum  
 10 prōferre coepērunt. Erat Rōmānis nec locō nec numerō aequa contentiō; simul et cursū et spatiō pugnae dēfatigātī nōn facile recentēs atque integrōs sustinēbant.

49. Caesar cum iniquō locō pugnārī hostiumque cōpiās

augēri vidēret, praemetuēns suis ad T. Sextium lēgātum, quem minōribus castris praesidiō reliquerat, misit ut cohortēs ex castris celeriter ēdūceret et sub infimō colle ā dextrō latere hostium cōstitueret, ut, si nostrōs locō depulsōs vīdisset, quō-  
minus liberē hostēs insequerentur terrēret. Ipse paulum ex  
eō locō cum legiōne prōgressus ubi cōstitērat ēventum pugnae  
exspectābat.

**50.** Cum ācerimē comminus pugnārētur, hostēs locō et  
numerō, nostrī virtūte cōfiderent, subitō sunt Haedui visī ab  
latere nostris apertō, quōs Caesar ab dextrā parte aliō ascēnsū  
manūs distinendae causā mīserat. Hī similitūdine armōrum  
vehementer nostrōs perterruērunt, ac tametsī dextris umeris  
exsertis animadvertēbantur, quod insigne pācātorum esse cōn-  
suērat, tamen id ipsum suī fallendī causā militēs ab hostibus fac-  
tum existimābant. Eōdem tempore L. Fabius centuriō quique  
ūnā mūrū ascenderant circumventī atque interfectī dē mūrō  
praecipitābantur. M. Petrōnius, eiusdem legiōnis centuriō,  
cum portās exīdēre cōnātus esset, ā multitudīne oppressus ac  
sibi dēspērāns, multis iam vulneribus acceptis, manipulāribus  
suis quī illum secūtī erant, ‘Quoniam,’ inquit, ‘mē ūnā vōbīs-  
cum servāre nōn possum, vestrae quidem certē vitae prōspiciam,  
quōs cupiditāte glōriae adductus in perīculum dēdūxī. Vōs  
datā facultāte vōbīs cōsulite.’ Simul in mediōs hostēs irrūpit  
duōbusque interfectis reliquōs ā portā paulum submōvit.  
Cōnantibus auxiliārī suis, ‘Frūstrā,’ inquit, ‘meae vitae sub-  
venīre cōnāminī, quem iam sanguis virēsque dēficiunt. Proinde  
abīte, dum est facultās, vōsque ad legiōnem recipite.’ Ita  
pugnāns post paulum concidit ac suis salūtī fuit.

**51.** Nostrī, cum undique premerentur, XLVI centuriōnibus  
āmissis dēiectī sunt locō. Sed intolerantius Gallōs insequen-  
tēs legiō decima tardāvit, quae prō subsidiō paulō aequiōre locō  
cōstitērat. Hanc rūsus tertiae decimae legiōnis cohortēs  
excēpērunt, quae ex castris minōribus ēductae cum T. Sextiō  
lēgātō cēperant locum superiōrem. Legiōnēs, ubi primum  
plānitiam attigērunt, infestis contrā hostēs signis cōstitērunt.

Vercingetorix ab radicibus collis suos intrā mūnitiōnēs redūxit. Eō diē militēs sunt paulō minus septingenti dēsiderāti.

52. Posterō diē Caesar cōntiōne advocātā temeritatem cupiditatemque militum reprehendit, quod sibi ipsi iudicāvissent quō prōcēdendum aut quid agendum vidērētur neque signō recipiendī datō cōstitissent neque ā tribūnīs militum  
lēgātisque retinērī potuissent. Exposuit quid inīquitās locī posset, quod ipse ad Avaricum sēnsisset, cum sine duce et sine equitātū dēprehēnsīs hostibus explōrātā victōriam dīmīssisset, nē parvum modo dētrimentum in contentiōne propter inīquitatem locī accideret. Quantopere eōrum animī  
10 magnitudinem admirārētur, quōs nōn castrōrum mūnitiōnēs, nōn altitūdō montis, nōn mūrus oppidī tardāre potuisset, tantopere licentiam arrogantiamque reprehendere, quod plūs sē quam imperātorem dē victōriā atque exitū rerum sentire exīstimārent; nec minus sē ā milite modestiam et continēntiam quā virtutem atque animī magnitudinem dēsiderāre.

53. Hāc habitā cōntiōne et ad extrēmum cōfirmātis militibus, nē ob hanc causam animō permovērentur neu, quod inīquitās locī attulisset, id virtūtī hostium tribuerent, eadem dē profectiōne cōgitāns quae ante sēnserat, legiōnēs ex castrīs  
5 ēdūxit aciemque idōneō locō cōstituit. Cum Vercingetorix nihilō magis in aequum locum dēscenderet, levī factō equestri proeliō, atque eō secūdō, in castra exercitum redūxit. Cum hoc idem posterō diē fēcisset, satis ad Gallicam ostentātiōnem minuendam militumque animōs cōfirmandōs factum exīsti-  
10 māns in Haeduōs mōvit castra. Nē tum quidem insecūtīs hostibus, tertiō diē ad flūmen Elaver vēnit; pontem refēcit exercitumque trādūxit.

54. Ibi ā Viridomārō atque Eporēdōrige Haeduīs appellātus discit cum omni equitātū Litaviccum ad sollicitandōs Haeduōs profectum: Opus esse ipsōs antecēdere ad cōfirmandam civitatem. Et si multīs iam rēbus perfīdiam Haeduōrum per-  
5 spectam habēbat atque hōrum discessū mātūrārī dēfectiōnem

civitātis existimābat, tamen eōs retinendōs nōn cēnsuit, nē aut inferre iniūriam vidērētur aut daret timōris aliquam suspiciōnem. Discēdentibus iis breviter sua in Haeduōs merita exposuit, quōs et quam humilēs accēpisset, compulsōs in oppida, multātōs agris, omnibus ēreptis sociis impositō stipendiō, ob-  
sidibus summā cum contumeliā extortis, et quam in fortūnam  
quamque in amplitūdinem dūxisset, ut nōn solum in pristinum  
statum redissent, sed omnium temporum dignitatem et grā-  
tiam antecessisse vidērentur. His datis mandātis eōs ab sē  
dimisit.

**55.** Noviodūnum erat oppidum Haeduōrum ad ripās Li-  
geris opportunō locō positum. Hūc Caesar omnēs obsidēs  
Galliae, frūmentum, pecūniam publicam, suōrum atque exerci-  
tūs impedimentōrum magnam partem contulerat; hūc magnum  
numerus equōrum huius bellī causā in Italiā atque Hispaniā  
coēptum miserat. Eō cum Eporēdorix Viridomārusque vē-  
nissent et dē statū civitātis cognovissent, Litavicum Bibracte  
ab Haeduis receptum, quod est oppidum apud eōs maximae  
auctoritātis, Convictolitāvem magistrātum magnamque partem  
senātūs ad eum convēnisse, lēgātōs ad Vercingetorigem dē  
pāce et amicitia conciliandā publicē missōs, nōn praetermitten-  
dum tantum commodum existimāvērunt. Itaque interfectis  
Noviodūni custōdibus quique eō negotiandī causā convēnerant,  
pecūniam atque equōs inter sē partitī sunt; obsidēs civitātum  
Bibracte ad magistrātum dēdūcendōs cūrāvērunt; oppidum,  
quod ā sē tenēri nōn posse iudicābant, nē cui esset ūsuī Rō-  
mānis, incendērunt; frūmentī quod subito potuērunt nāvibus  
āvexērunt, reliquum flūmine atque incendiō corrūpērunt. Ipsī  
ex finitimis regiōnibus cōpiās cōgere, praesidia custodiāsque  
ad ripās Ligeris dispōnere, equitātumque omnibus locis inici-  
endī timōris causā ostentāre coepērunt, sī ab rē frumentariā  
Rōmānōs exclūdere possent. Quam ad spem multum eōs ad-  
iuvābat, quod Liger ex nivibus crēverat, ut omninō vadō nōn  
posse trānsiri vidērētur.

**56.** Quibus rēbus cognitis Caesar mātūrandum sibi cēn-

suit, si esset in perficiendis pontibus periclitandum, ut priusquam essent maiōres eō coāctae cōpiae dīmicāret. Nam nē commūtātō cōnsiliō iter in prōvinciam converteret, ut nōn  
 5 nēmō tum quidem necessariō faciendum existimābat, cum infāmia atque indignitās rei et oppositus mōns Cebenna viārumque difficultās impediēbat, tum maximē quod abiūctō Labiēnō atque iis legiōnibus quās ūnā miserat vehementer timēbat. Itaque admodum magnīs diurnīs nocturnisque itineribus cōn-  
 10 fectīs contrā omnium opīniōnem ad Ligerim vēnit vadōque per equitēs inventō prō rei necessitatē opportūnō, ut brachia modo atque umeri ad sustinenda arma liberī ab aquā esse possent, dispositō equitātū quī vim flūminis refringeret atque hostibus primō aspectū perturbātis, incolumem exercitum trādūxit frū-  
 15 mentumque in agrīs et pecoris cōpiam nactus replētō his rēbus exercitū iter in Senonēs facere instituit.

**57.** Dum haec apud Caesarem geruntur, Labiēnus, eō sup-  
 plēmentō quod nūper ex Italiā vēnerat relictō Agedincī, ut  
 esset impedimentis praesidiō, cum quattuor legiōnibus Lutetiam  
 proficiscitur. Id est oppidum Parisiōrum, positum in insulā  
 5 flūminis Sēquanae. Cuius adventū ab hostibus cognitō mag-  
 nae ex finitimis civitatibus cōpiae convēnerunt. Summa im-  
 perī trāditur Camulogenō Aulercō, quī prope cōfectus aetate  
 tamen propter singulārem scientiam rei militāris ad eum est  
 honōrem ēvocātus. Is cum animadvertisset perpetuam esse  
 10 palūdem quae influeret in Sēquanam atque illum omnem locum  
 magnopere impediret, hic cōnsēdit nostrōsque trāsitū prohi-  
 bēre instituit.

**58.** Labiēnus primō vineās agere, crātibus atque aggere  
 palūdem explēre atque iter mūnire cōnābātur. Postquam id  
 difficilius fieri animadvertit, silentiō ē castris tertiā vigiliā  
 ēgressus, eōdem quō vēnerat itinere Metiosēdum pervēnit. Id  
 5 est oppidum Senonum in insulā Sēquanae positum, ut paulō  
 ante dē Lutetiā diximus. Dēprehēnsīs nāvibus circiter quīn-  
 quāgintā celeriterque coniūctis atque eō militibus impositis  
 et rei novitate perterritis oppidānis, quōrum magna pars erat

ad bellum évocāta, sine contentiōne oppidō potitur. Refectō  
 ponte, quem superiōribus diēbus hostēs resciderant, exercitum 10  
 trādūcit et secundō flūmine ad Lutetiam iter facere coepit.  
 Hostēs, rē cognitā ab iis quī Metiosēdō fūgerant, Lutetiam in-  
 cendī pontēsque eius oppidī rescindī iubent; ipsī profecti ā  
 palūde in ripā Sēquanāe ē regiōne Lutetiae contrā Labiēni  
 castra cōsidunt. 15

59. Iam Caesar ā Gergoviā discessisse audiēbātur, iam dē  
 Haeduōrum dēfectiōne et secundō Galliae mōtū rūmōrēs afferē-  
 bantur, Gallique in colloquiis interclūsum itinere et Ligerī  
 Caesarem inopiā frūmentī coāctum in prōvinciam contendisse  
 cōfirmābant. Bellovacī autem dēfectiōne Haeduōrum cognitā, 5  
 quī iam ante erant per sē infidēlēs, manūs cōgere atque apertē  
 bellum parāre coepērunt. Tum Labiēnus tantā rērum com-  
 mūtātiōne longē aliud sibi capiendum cōsiliū atque antea  
 sēnserat intellegēbat, neque iam ut aliquid acquireret proeliō-  
 que hostēs lacesseret, sed ut incolumem exercitum Agedincum 10  
 redūceret cōgitābat. Namque alterā ex parte Bellovacī, quae  
 civitās in Galliā maximam habet opiniōnem virtūtis, instābant,  
 alteram Camulogenus parātō atque instrūctō exercitū tenēbat;  
 tum legiōnēs ā praesidiō atque impedimentis interclūsās maxi-  
 mum flūmen distinēbat. Tantīs subitō difficultātibus obiectis 15  
 ab animī virtūte auxilium petendum vidēbat.

60. Itaque sub vespere cōsiliō convocātō, cohortātus ut  
 ea quae imperāset diligenter industriēque administrārent,  
 nāvēs, quās Metiosēdō dēdūxerat, singulās equitibus Rōmānīs  
 attribuit et primā cōfectā vigiliā quattuor milia passuum  
 secundō flūmine silentiō prōgredi ibique sē exspectāre iubet. 5  
 Quīnque cohortēs, quās minimē firmās ad dimicandum esse ex-  
 istimābat, castris praesidiō relinquit; quīnque eiusdem legiōnis  
 reliquās dē mediā nocte cum omnibus impedimentis adversō  
 flūmine magnō tumultū proficisci imperat. Conquirit etiam  
 lintrēs; hās magnō sonitū rēmōrum incitātās in eandem partem 10  
 mittit. Ipse post paulō silentiō ēgressus cum tribus legiōnibus  
 eum locum petit quō nāvēs appellī iusserat.

**61.** Eō cum esset ventum, explorātōrēs hostium, ut omni flūminis parte erant dispositi, inopinantēs, quod magna subitō erat coorta tempestās, ā nostris opprimuntur; exercitus equitatusque equitibus Rōmānīs administrantibus, quōs ei negotiō  
5 praefēcerat, celeriter trāsmittitur. Ūnō ferē tempore sub lūcem hostibus nūntiātur in castris Rōmānōrum praeter cōnsuetūdinem tumultuārī, et magnum ire agmen adversō flūmine sonitumque rēmōrum in eādē parte exaudiri, et paulō infā militēs nāvibus trānsportārī. Quibus rēbus auditis, quod  
10 existimābant tribus locis trānsire legiōnēs atque omnēs perturbātōs defectiōne Haeduōrum fugam parāre, suās quoque cōpiās in trēs partēs distribuērunt. Nam praesidiō ē regiōne castrōrum relictō, et parvā manū Metiosēdum versus missā quae tantum prōgrederētur quantum nāvēs prōcessissent, reliquās  
15 cōpiās contrā Labiēnum dūxērunt.

**62.** Primā lūce et nostri omnēs erant trānsportāti et hostium aciēs cernēbātur. Labiēnus, militēs cohortātus ut suae pristinae virtūtis et secundissimōrum proeliōrum retinērent memoriam atque ipsum Caesarem, cuius ductū saepe  
5 numerō hostēs superāssent, praesentem adesse existimārent, dat signum proeli. Primō concursū ab dextrō cornū, ubi septima legiō cōstitērat, hostēs pelluntur atque in fugam coniciuntur; ab sinistrō, quem locum duodecima legiō tenēbat, cum primī ordinēs hostium trānsfixi pilis concidissent, tamen  
10 ācerrimē reliquī resistēbant, nec dabat suspiciōnem fugae quisquam. Ipse dux hostium Camulogenus suis aderat atque eōs cohortābātur. Incertō etiam nunc exitū victōriae, cum septimae legiōnis tribūnis esset nūntiatum quae in sinistrō cornū gererentur, post tergum hostium legiōnem ostendērunt signaque  
15 intulērunt. Nē eō quidem tempore quisquam locō cessit, sed circumventi omnēs interfectique sunt. Eandem fortunam tulit Camulogenus. At ii quī in praesidiō contrā castra Labiēni erant relictī, cum proelium commissum audīssent, subsidiō suis iērunt collemque cēpērunt, neque nostrōrum militum  
20 victōrum impetum sustinēre potuērunt. Sic cum suis fugien-

tibus permixti, quōs nōn silvae montēque tēxerunt, ab equitatū sunt interfecti. Hōc negōtiō cōfectō Labiēnus revertitur Agedincum, ubi impedimenta tōtius exercitūs relicta erant; inde cum omnibus cōpiis ad Caesarem pervēnit.

**63.** Dēfectiōne Haeduōrum cognitā bellum augētur. Lēgatiōnēs in omnēs partēs circummittuntur; quantum grātiā, auctōritātē, pecūniā valent, ad sollicitandās civitatēs nituntur; nacti obsidēs quōs Caesar apud eōs dēposuerat, hōrum suppliciō dubitantēs territant. Petunt ā Vercingetorige 5 Haeduī ut ad sē veniat ratiōnēsque bellī gerendī commūnicet. Rē impetratā contendunt ut ipsīs summa imperī trādatur, et rē in contrōversiam dēductā tōtius Galliae concilium Bibracte indicitur. Conveniunt undique frequentēs. Multitudinis suffragiis rēs permittitur; ad ūnum omnēs Vercingetorigem 10 probant imperatōrem. Ab hōc conciliō Rēmī, Lingonēs, Trēverī affuerunt: illi, quod amicitiam Rōmānōrum sequēbantur; Trēverī, quod aberant longius et ā Germānis premēbantur, quae fuit causa quārē tōtō abessent bellō et neutrīs auxilia mitterent. Magnō dolōre Haeduī ferunt sē dēiectōs principatū, 15 queruntur fortunae commutātiōnem et Caesaris indulgentiam in sē requirunt, neque tamen susceptō bellō suum cōsiliū ab reliquis sēparāre audent. Inviti summae spei adulescentēs, Eporedorix et Viridomārus, Vercingetorigi parent.

**64.** Ille imperat reliquis civitatibus obsidēs diēque ei rei cōstituit. Omnēs equitēs, quindecim milia numerō, celeriter convenire iubet; peditatū quem antea habuerit sē fore contentum dicit, neque fortunam temptatūrum aut aciē dimicatūrum; sed, quoniam abundet equitatū, perfacile esse factū frumentātiōnibus pabulātiōnibusque Rōmānōs prohibere; aequō modo animō sua ipsi frumenta corrumpant aedificiaque incendant, quā rei familiāris iactūrā perpetuum imperium libertatēque sē cōsequi videant. His cōstitutis rēbus Haeduīs Segusiavisque, qui sunt finitimi prōvinciae, decem milia peditum 10 imperat; hūc addit equitēs octingentōs. His praeficit frātre Eporedorigis bellumque inferre Allobrogibus iubet. Alterā

parte Gabalōs proximōsque pāgōs Arvernōrum in Helviōs, item Rutēnōs Cadūrcōsque ad finēs Volcārum Arecomicōrum dē-  
15 populandōs mittit. Nihilō minus clandestinīs nūntiis lēgātiō-  
nibusque Allobrogēs sollicitat, quōrum mentēs nōndum ab  
superiōre bellō resēdisse spērābat. Hōrum principibus pecū-  
niās, civitatī autem imperium tōtius prōvinciae pollicētur.

65. Ad hōs omnēs cāsūs prōvīsa erant praesidia cohortium  
duārum et vigintī, quae ex ipsā coācta prōvinciā ab L. Caesare  
lēgātō ad omnēs partēs oppōnēbantur. Helviī suā sponte cum  
finitimis proeliō congressī pelluntur et C. Valeriō Domnotaurō,  
5 Cabūrī filiō, principiē civitatīs, complūribusque aliis interfectīs  
intrā oppida mūrōsque compelluntur. Allobrogēs crēbris ad  
Rhodanum dispositis praesidiis magnā cum cūrā et diligentiā  
suōs finēs tuentur. Caesar, quod hostēs equitatū superiōrēs  
esse intellegēbat et interclūsīs omnibus itineribus nullā rē ex  
10 prōvinciā atque Italiā sublevārī poterat, trāns Rhēnum in  
Germāniam mittit ad eās civitatēs quās superiōribus annis  
pācāverat, equitēsque ab hīs arcessit et levis armātūrae peditēs  
quī inter eōs proeliārī cōsuērant. Eōrum adventū, quod minus  
idōneis equis ūtēbantur, ā tribūnis militum reliquisque equiti-  
15 bus Rōmānis atque ēvocātīs equōs sūmit Germānisque distribuit.

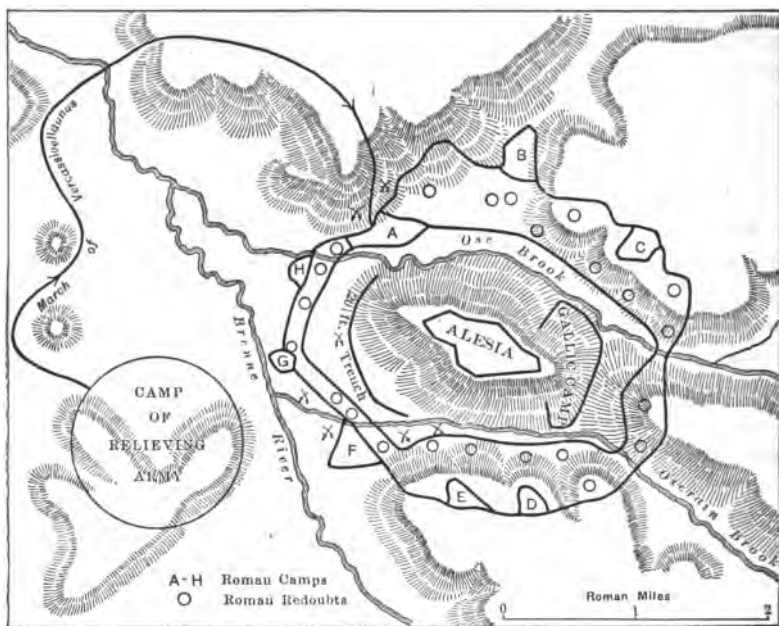
66. Intereā, dum haec geruntur, hostium cōpiae ex Arvernīs  
equitēsque quī tōtī Galliae erant imperātī conveniunt. Magnō  
hōrum coāctō numerō, cum Caesar in Sēquanōs per extrēmōs  
Lingonum finēs iter faceret quō facilius subsidium prōvinciae  
ferre posset, circiter milia passuum decem ab Rōmānis trīnis  
castris Vercingetorix cōnsēdit convocātisque ad cōsiliū  
praeffectis equitum vēnisse tempus victōriae dēmōnstrat: Fugere  
in prōvinciam Rōmānōs Galliāque excēdere. Id sibi ad prae-  
sentem obtinendam libertātem satis esse; ad reliquū temporis  
10 pācem atque ōtium parum prōfici; maiōribus enim coāctīs  
cōpiis reversūrōs neque finem bellandī factūrōs. Proinde in  
agmine impeditōs adorianatur. Si peditēs suīs auxilium ferant  
atque in eō morentur, iter facere nōn posse; si, id quod magic  
futūrum cōfidat, relictīs impedimentis suae salūtī cōnsulant,

et ūsū rērum necessāriūrum et dignitatē spoliātum irī; nam 15  
 dē equitibus hostium, quā nēmō eōrum prōgredi modo extrā  
 agmen audeat, nē ipsōs quidem dēbere dubitāre. Id quō  
 maiōre faciant animō, cōpiās sē omnēs prō castris habitūrum  
 et terrōri hostibus futūrum. Conclāmant equitēs, sānctissimō  
 iūre iūrandō cōfirmārī oportēre nē tēctō recipiātur, nē ad 20  
 liberōs, nē ad parentēs, nē ad uxōrem aditum habeat quī nōn  
 bis per agmen hostium perequitārit.

67. Probātā rē atque omnibus ad iūs iūrandum adāctīs,  
 posterō diē in trēs partēs distribūtō equitātū duae sē aciēs ab  
 duōbus lateribus ostendunt, ūna ā primō agmine iter impedire  
 coepit. Quā rē nūntiātā Caesar suum quoque equitātum  
 tripartitō divīsum contrā hostem ire iubet. Pugnātur unā 5  
 omnibus in partibus. Cōsistit agmen; impedimenta intrā  
 legiōnēs recipiuntur. Sī quā in parte nostrī labōrāre aut  
 gravius premi vidēbantur, eō signa inferri Caesar aciemque  
 converti iubēbat; quae rēs et hostēs ad īnsequendum tardābat  
 et nostrōs spē auxili cōfirmābat. Tandem Germānī ab dextrō 10  
 latere summum iugum nactī hostēs locō dēpellunt; fugientēs  
 usque ad flūmen, ubi Vercingetorix cum pedestribus cōpiīs  
 cōnsēderat, persequuntur complūrēsque interficiunt. Quā rē  
 animadversā reliquī, nē circumvenirentur veritī, sē fugae man-  
 dant. Omnibus locīs fit caedēs. Trēs nōbilissimī Haedui 15  
 captī ad Caesarem perdūcuntur; Cotus, praefectus equitum,  
 quī contrōversiam cum Convictolitāve proximīs comitiīs habu-  
 erat, et Cavarillus, quī post dēfectiōnem Litaviccī pedestribus  
 cōpiīs praefuerat, et Eporēdorix, quō duce ante adventum  
 Caesaris Haedui cum Sēquanīs bellō contenderant. 20

The siege of Alesia was the climax of the war, and the greatest of Caesar's military operations against the Gauls. The position was one of remarkable strength, and the number of the enemy was enormous.

The location of the town at Alise Ste. Reine was made entirely certain by Colonel Stoffel, who, acting under the orders of the Emperor Napoleon III, spent three years in excavating the works described by Caesar. At the present time further excavations are going on at the same place. The town occupied the summit of a hill whose base is six miles in circumference. The slopes rise gradually to a wall of rock which is broken in a few places, especially at the

**68.** *Fugātō omnī equitātū Vercingetorix cōpiās suās, ut***CAESAR'S LINES AROUND ALESIA**

A simplified form of plans which are based on the actual results of excavation.

eastern end. Above this wall, 500 feet above the plain, is a flat summit, one and a quarter miles long and a half mile wide. Springs and wells furnished abundant water. On the north, east, and south other hills of equal height surround this one, but on the west is an open plain.

Caesar had ten legions, containing perhaps 40,000 men, and some cavalry. As only two Gallic states now remained faithful to him, his Gallic cavalry were few. He had therefore hired some German cavalry, who were superior to the Gallic in fighting ability, though far inferior in number. He must also have had some auxiliary infantry. Vercingetorix had 80,000 infantry and 15,000 cavalry. After the siege began, more than 250,000 Gauls came to help Vercingetorix.

**Chap. 68-74.** Caesar pursues Vercingetorix to Alesia and lays siege to the town. Knowing that an army will come to relieve the town, he constructs a double line of works about it.

**Chap. 68.** Vercingetorix retreats to Alesia, pursued by Caesar.

1. *fugātō . . . equitātū*: as Caesar was marching toward the province, Vercingetorix attacked him with his cavalry, while his infantry stood in battle array before their camp, taking no part in the fight. Vercingetorix was

prō castris collocāverat, redūxit prōtinusque Alesiam, quod est oppidum Mandubiōrum, iter facere coepit celeriterque impedimenta ex castris ēdūcī et sē subsequī iussit. Caesar, impedimentis in proximum collem ductis, duābus legiōnibus praesidiō relictis, secūtus hostēs quantum diēi tempus est passum, circiter tribus milibus ex novissimō agmine interfectis, alterō diē ad Alesiam castra fēcit. Perspectō urbis sitū perterritisque hostibus, quod equitātū, quā maximē parte exercitūs cōfidēbant, erant pulsī, adhortātus ad labōrem milites Alesiam circumvallāre instituit.

69. Ipsum erat oppidum in colle summō admodum editō locō, ut nisi obsidiōne expugnārī nōn posse vidērētur; cuius collis radicēs duo duābus ex partibus flūmina subluēbant. Ante oppidum plānitēs circiter milia passuum tria in longitudinem patēbat; reliquis ex omnibus partibus collēs mediocrī interiectō spatiō parī altitudinis fastigiō oppidum cingēbant. Sub mūrō quae pars collis ad orientem sōlem spectābat, hunc omnem locum cōpiae Gallōrum complēverant fossamque et māceriam in altitudinem sex pedum praedūxerant. Eius mūnitiōnis quae ab Rōmānis instituēbātur circuitus XI milia passuum tenēbat. Castra opportūnis locis erant posita VIII castellaque

defeated chiefly by Caesar's German cavalry.

ut . . . collocāverat: i.e. without returning to camp for the baggage.

7. alterō diē, "on the next day."

9. equitātū: ablative of specification.

Chap. 69. The situation of Alesia, and Caesar's fortifications around it.

2. locō: ablative of place. On the whole description, see the plan, p. 392, and the long note on p. 391.

3. duo flūmina: the Ose and the Oserain.

4. ante oppidum: i.e. on the west.

in longitudinem: this is the greatest length of the plain, measuring south from the hill northwest of the town to a point not shown on the plan.

6. parī fastigiō: descriptive ablative.

7. mūrō: the wall of the town.

quae pars, hunc omnem locum, "all that part which."

8. māceriam: traces of this wall may still be seen. The camp protected the low ridge which connects the hill of Alesia with the one to its east,—the only point at which the town could possibly have been stormed.

9. eius mūnitiōnis: this probably refers only to the ring of camps and redoubts; but he may have already traced out and begun the inner wall and ditch, represented on the plan as completely encircling the town. This line is somewhat less than eleven Roman miles in circumference.

11. tenēbat, "extended"; so that

XXIII facta; quibus in castellis interdiū stationēs pōnēbantur, nē qua subitō ēruptiō fieret; haec eadem noctū excubitōribus ac firmis praesidiis tenēbantur.

70. Opere institūtō fit equestre proelium in eā plānitie quam intermissam collibus tria mīlia passuum in longitudinem patēre suprā dēmōstrāvimus. Summā vī ab utrisque contenditur. Labōrantibus nostris Caesar Germānōs submittit  
5 legiōnēque prō castris cōstituit, nē qua subitō irruptiō ab hostium peditātū fiat. Praesidiō legiōnum additō nostris animus augētur; hostēs in fugam coniecti sē ipsi multitudine impediunt atque angustioribus portis relictis coartantur. Germāni ācrius usque ad mūnitiōnēs sequuntur. Fit magna  
10 caedēs; nōn nulli relictis equis fossam trānsire et māceriam trāscendere cōnantur. Paulum legiōnēs Caesar quās prō vāllō cōstituerat prōmovēri iubet. Nōn minus qui intrā mūnitiōnēs erant Galli perturbantur; veniri ad sē cōnfestim existimantēs ad arma conclāmant; nōn nulli perterriti in op-  
15 pidum irrumpunt. Vercingetorix iubet portās claudī, nē castra nūdentur. Multis interfectis, complūribus equis captis, Germāni sēsē recipiunt.

71. Vercingetorix, priusquam mūnitiōnēs ab Rōmānis perficiantur, cōnsilium capit omnem ab sē equitātum noctū dimittere. Discēdentibus mandat ut suam quisque eōrum

*mīlia* is an accusative of extent of space.

**castra VIII:** traces of all these have been discovered.

**castella XXIII:** traces of five have been discovered; the rest are located on the plan only by conjecture.

Chap. 70. The Gauls are defeated in a cavalry battle.

1. **opere:** the building of redoubts and camps.

2. **intermissam collibus,** "unbroken by hills."

4. **Germānōs:** the German cavalry.

5. **prō castris:** those near the plain.

6. **praesidiō,** "support."

8. **angustioribus . . . relictis,** "in

the gates, which had been made too narrow." The cavalry fled up the Ose and the Oserain to the western walls of the Gallic camp.

11. **prō vāllō** = *prō castris*, l. 5.

12. **nōn minus:** than the horsemen, who had just been routed.

**qui . . . Galli:** the Gallic infantry, who had been in the camp all the time.

15. **portās:** of the town.

Chap. 71. Vercingetorix sends out all his cavalry to appeal for help.

1. **perficiantur:** App. 236, b.

2. **equitātum dimittere:** they were useless in the city, and would only help to consume the limited supply of provisions.

civitatem adeat omnesque qui per aetatem arma ferre possint ad bellum cogant. Sua in illos merita proponit obtestaturque 5 ut suae salutis rationem habeant neu se optimè de communi libertate meritum hostibus in cruciatum dedant. Quod si indiligentiores fuerint, milia hominum delicta LXXX una saecum interitura demonstrat. Ratione inita frumentum se exigue dierum xxx habere sed paulo etiam longius tolerari 10 posse parcendo. His datis mandatis, qua erat nostrum opus intermissum, secunda vigilia silentio equitatum dimittit. Frumentum omne ad se referri iubet; capitis poenam iis qui non paruerint constituit; pecus, cuius magna erat copia a Mandubiis compulsa, viritum distribuit; frumentum parce et paulatim 15 metiri instituit; copias omnes quas pro oppido collocaverat in oppidum recipit. His rationibus auxilia Galliae expectare et bellum administrare parat.

72. Quibus rebus cognitis ex perfugis et captivis, Caesar haec genera munitionis instituit. Fossam pedum viginti derectis lateribus duxit, ut eius fossae solum tantundem pateret quantum summa labra distarent; reliquas omnes munitiones ab ea fossa passus cccc reduxit hoc consilio, quoniam 5

5. *cogant*: plural because all the cavalry are thought of as a subject; *omnes* is the object.

6. *se . . . meritum*, "him, the man who had done most for the liberty of all."

9. *ratione inita*, "according to his calculations."

10. *tolerari posse*: impersonal; "they could hold out."

12. *dimittit*: they probably escaped up the valleys of the Ose and the Oserain.

15. *viritim distribuit*: in order that they might be eaten first, since there was nothing to feed them on.

Chap. 72. Caesar's works of investment.

2. *haec genera*: excavations show that the complete works, as described

in this and the following chapter, were constructed only in the plain west of the town. When the line ran over hills it did not need so much artificial protection.

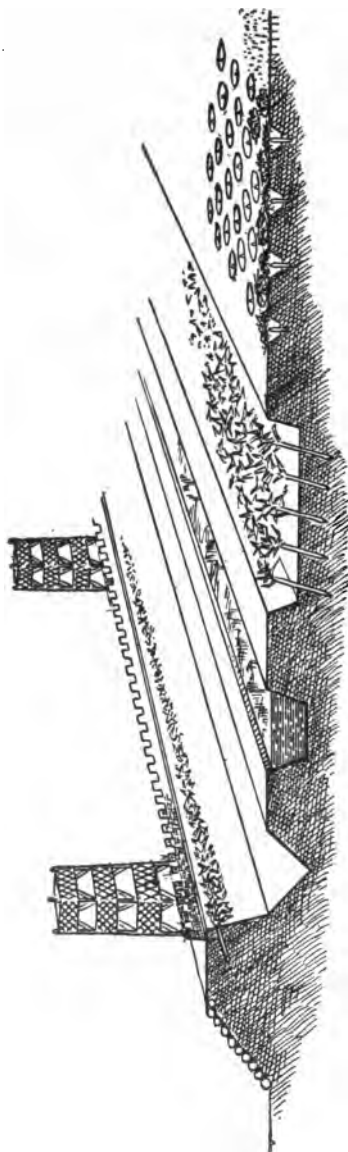
*pedum viginti*: in width; the depth was eight or nine feet. This trench was dug only in the plain, and was no part of the real line of investment. As Caesar says later, it merely protected the men while they were working back of it.

3. *derectis lateribus*, "with perpendicular sides."

*solum*: not *solum*.

5. *passus cccc*: this is about the real distance at the ends: see plan, p. 392.

*hoc consilio*: explained by the clauses *ne . . . aduolaret aut . . . possent*.



DETAILS OF FORTIFICATIONS AROUND ALESIA

tantum esset necessariō spatium complexus nec facile tōtum opus corōnā militum cingeretur, nē dē imprōvisō aut noctū ad mūnitiōnēs multitudō hostium advolāret, aut interdiū tēla in nostrōs operi dēstinātōs conicere possent. Hōc intermissō spatiō duās fossās xv pedēs lātās eādem altitūdine 15 perdūxit; quārum interiōrem campestribus ac dēmissis locīs aquā ex flūmine dērivātā complēvit. Post eas aggerem ac vāllum XII pedum exstrūxit; 20 huic lōricam pinnāsque adiē-

6. *tantum spatium*: the distance around the hill of Alesia.

7. *nec . . . cingeretur*: i.e. Caesar could not spare men enough to form a line of protection for those who were working.

15. *eādem altitūdine*: i.e. the two trenches were of the same depth, which the excavations show was eight or nine feet.

16. *interiōrem*: the one nearer the town.

18. *ex flūmine*: chiefly the Oserain. The gravel washed into the trench was traced for some distance by the excavators.

19. *post eas*: Caesar describes the works from the point of view of Alesia.

20. *XII pedum*: this was the combined height of the earthwork (*aggerem*) and the palisades (*vāllum*).

21. *lōricam pinnāsque*: these were made of interwoven osiers, and were used as a facing for the palisades. The *lōrica* was continuous, furnishing some protection, but low enough to allow the Romans to throw missiles over it; the

cit, grandibus cervīs ēminentibus ad commissūrās pluteōrum atque aggeris quī ascēsum hostium tardārent, et turrēs tōtō opere circumdedit quae pedēs LXXX inter sē distārent.

73. Erat eōdem tempore et māteriārī et frūmentārī et tantās mūnitiōnēs fierī necesse dēminūtīs nostrīs cōpiīs, quae longius ā castrīs prōgrediēbantur; ac nōn numquam opera nostra Galli temptāre atque ēruptiōnem ex oppidō plūribus portīs summā vī facere cōnābantur. Quārē ad haec rūsus opera addendum Caesar putāvit, quō minōre numerō militum mūnitiōnēs dēfendī possent. Itaque truncis arborum aut admodum firmīs rāmīs abscīsīs atque hōrum dēlibrātīs ac praeacūtīs cacūminibus perpetuae fossae quīnōs pedēs altae dūcēbantur. Hūc illi stīpitēs dēmissi et ab infimō revincti, nē revelli possent, ab illis rāmīs ēminēbant. Quīnī erant ordinēs, coniūctī inter sē atque implicātī; quō quī intrāverant sē ipsī acūtissimīs vāllīs induēbant. Hōs cippōs appellābant. Ante hōs obliquīs or-

*pinnae* were battlements, high enough to shield the whole person.

22. *cervīs*: tree tops, with the branches sharpened. They projected horizontally, and were held in place by the lower ends of the palisades.

*pluteōrum*: here referring to the entire parapet, including *vāllum*, *lōrica*, and *pinnae*.

23. *tōtō opere*: ablative of place.

24. *quae distārent*: a clause of characteristic; "so that they were, etc."

Chap. 73. The devices by which Caesar strengthened his lines of investment.

1. *erat . . . prōgrediēbantur*, lit. "to get timber and provisions and for . . . to be made was necessary for our diminished troops, which, etc." = "our troops, reduced in number by having to go farther and farther from the camp, had to, etc." *fieri* is best translated by the active. The soldiers had to go farther and farther from the camp as they exhausted the supplies near at hand; this reduced the number of men actually at work at any one time.

5. *rūsus addendum*, "that he must still add."

6. *quō*, "in order that."

7. *truncis*, etc.: a tree top or a great limb with many branches was lopped off, and each branch was peeled and sharpened. Five rows of these were set upright in a trench which ran parallel with the trenches described in 72, 10. Apparently there were several of these trenches, although the illustration, p. 396, shows but one.

9. *hūc* = *in hās fossās*.

10. *ab rāmīs*, "with their branches only."

11. *quīnī*: five rows in each trench. *coniūctī . . . implicātī*: the rows were set so closely together that their projecting branches interlaced.

12. *quō quī intrāverant*, "whoever got among them."

*vāllīs*: the sharpened branches, which were like palisades.

13. *ante hōs*: i.e. on the side toward Alesia.

*obliquīs . . . dispositīs*: i.e. as checkers are arranged on a board.

dinibus in quīncuncem dispositis scrobēs in altitudinem trium  
 15 pedum fodiebantur paulatim angustiore ad infimum fastigiō.  
 Hūc teretēs stīpitēs feminis crassitudine ab summō praeacūtī et  
 praeustī dēmittēbantur ita ut nōn amplius digitis quattuor ex  
 terrā ēminērent; simul cōfirmandī et stabiliendī causā singulī  
 ab infimō solō pedēs terrā exculcābantur, reliqua pars scrobis  
 20 ad occultandās insidiās vīminibus ac virgultis integēbātur.  
 Huius generis octōnī ordinēs ductī ternōs inter sē pedēs distā-  
 bant. Id ex similitūdine flōris lilium appellābant. Ante haec  
 tāleae pedem longae ferreis hāmīs infixis tōtae in terram info-  
 diēbantur mediocribusque intermissis spātiis omnibus locis dis-  
 25 serēbantur; quōs stimulōs nōminābant.

74. His rēbus perfectis, regiōnēs secūtus quam potuit  
 aequissimās prō loci nātūrā, XIII milia passuum complexus  
 parēs eiusdem generis mūnitiōnēs, diversās ab his, contrā ex-  
 teriōrem hostem perfēcit, ut nē magnā quidem multitūdine  
 5 mūnitiōnum praesidia circumfundī possent; nē autem cum  
 periculō ex castris ēgredi cōgātur, diērum xxx pābulum frū-  
 mentumque habēre omnēs convectum iubet.

15. paulatim fastigiō: i.e. the pits were funnel-shaped. They were about six feet in diameter at the top. Many of them have been found.

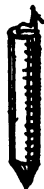
16. crassitudine: descriptive ablative.

17. praeustī: to harden the point.

18. singulī . . . exculcābantur, "each stake was trodden in at the bottom with earth a foot deep."

22. haec: i.e. the lilia.

23. tāleae: wooden stakes with barbed hooks of iron set in their tops. The hooks were so short that they would not be seen among the grass. Several of them have been



STIMULUS

Chap. 74. Caesar constructs a similar line of works as a defense against attacks from without.

1. regiōnēs . . . aequissimās, "keeping on as level ground as possible." This outer line ran over the tops of the hills (see plan, p. 392); but Caesar avoided, as far as he could, places where an outside enemy could charge downhill on the works.

2. XIII . . . passuum: the line included all of Caesar's camps and redoubts, and of course was longer than the inner line; but it was somewhat less than fourteen miles in length.

3. diversās ab his, "facing in the opposite direction."

4. ut . . . possent: i.e. that the garrisons of single camps might not be surrounded and cut off from the others. Between the two lines troops could move back and forth so as to concentrate at points of danger.

7. habēre convectum, "bring in and keep."

**75.** Dum haec ad Alesiam geruntur, Gallī conciliō principum indictō nōn omnēs quī arma ferre possent, ut cēnsuit Vercingetorix, convocandōs statuunt, sed certum numerum cuique civitatī imperandum, nē tantā multitudīne cōnfusā nec moderārī nec discernere suōs nec frūmentandī ratiōnem habēre 5 possent. Imperant Haeduīs atque eōrum clientibus, Segusiavis, Ambivaretis, Aulercis Brannovicibus, milia xxxv; parem numerum Arvernīs, adiūctis Eleutetis, Cadūrcis, Gabalis, Velāvīs, quī sub imperiō Arvernōrum esse cōnsuērunt; Sēquanīs, Senonibus, Biturigibus, Santonis, Rutēnis, Carnutibus duodēna milia; Bellovacis x; totidem Lemovicibus; octōna Pictonibus et Turonis et Parisiis et Helvētiis; sēna Andibus, Ambianīs, Mediomatricis, Petrocoriis, Nervii, Morinis, Nitibrogibus; v milia Aulercis Cēnomanis; totidem Atrebatibus; iiii Velicasibus; Aulercis Eburovicibus iii; Rauracis et Bōiis bina; 15 x universis civitatibus quae Oceanum attingunt quaeque eōrum cōnsuetūdine Aremoricae appellantur, quō sunt in numerō Coriosolitēs, Redonēs, Ambibarii, Caletēs, Osismī, Venetī, Lexovii, Venellī. Ex his Bellovaci suum numerum nōn contulerunt, quod sē suō nōmine atque arbitriō cum Rōmānis bellum 20 gestūrōs dicerent neque cuiusquam imperiō obtemperātūrōs; rogātī tamen ab Commiō prō eius hospitio duo milia misērunt.

Chap. 75-79. A great Gallic army arrives at Alesia just when the supplies of the town are exhausted.

Chap. 75. The Gallic states raise a great army.

2. ut cēnsuit Vercingetorix: cf. 71, 4. The decision to send a fixed quota from each state, instead of all the fighting men, was wise. The total of the quotas given in this chapter is 259,000. If that army could not conquer Caesar, no army of Gauls could.

5. ratiōnem habēre, "have any means."

6. imperant, etc.: forty-two states are named in the following list. No Aquitanian state is mentioned; the Remi and the Lingones were faithful

to Caesar; the Treveri were threatened by the Germans. With these exceptions the list includes all the important states of Gaul.

10. duodēna milia, "twelve thousand each"; translate the following distributives similarly.

19. suum numerum, "their full quota."

20. quod dicerent: cf. note on *quod diceret*, V, 6, 11.

suō . . . arbitriō, "on their own account and according to their own ideas." The Bellovaci were strong and proud (II, 4, 12-15), and they kept their promise by taking up arms against Caesar the following year.

22. prō, "in consideration of."

**76.** Huius operā Commī, ut antea dēmōnstrāvimus, fidēli atque ūtili superiōribus annis erat ūsus in Britannia Caesar; prō quibus meritis civitatem eius immūnem esse iusserat, iura lēgēsque reddiderat atque ipsi Morinōs attribuerat. Tanta  
 5 tamen ūniversae Galliae cōsēnsiō fuit libertātis vindicandae et pristinae bellī laudis recuperandae, ut neque beneficiis neque amicitiae memoriā movērētur, omnēsque et animō et opibus in id bellum incumberent. Coāctis equitum milibus VIII et peditum circiter CCL, haec in Haeduōrum finibus recēnsēbantur, nu-  
 10 merusque inibātur, praefecti cōstituēbantur: Commiō Atrebatī, Viridomārō et Eporēdorīgī Haeduis, Vercassivellaunō Arvernō, cōsobrinō Vercingetorigis, summa imperi trāditur. His dēlēcti ex civitatibus attribuuntur quōrum cōsiliō bellum administrārētur. Omnēs alacrēs et fidūciae plēni ad Alesiam  
 15 proficiscuntur, neque erat omnium quisquam quī aspectum modo tantae multitudinis sustinēri posse arbitrārētur, praesertim ancipiti proeliō, cum ex oppidō ēruptione pugnārētur, foris tantae cōpiae equitātūs peditātūsque cernerentur.

**77.** At ii quī Alesiae obsidēbantur, praeteritā diē quā

Chap. 76. The Gallic army marches to Alesia under divided leadership.

1. *anteā*: cf. IV, 21, 13; V, 22, 11.

3. *civitatem eius*: the Atrebrates.

*immūnem*, "free from tribute." This implies that the other conquered states paid tribute, though Caesar has not said so.

*iura . . . reddiderat*: i.e. had allowed the state to live under its old form of government, instead of appointing a governor to rule it.

4. *ipsi*: i.e. Commius. As a punishment for their obstinate resistance, the Morini had been deprived of their *iura lēgēsque* and were governed by Commius.

5. *cōsēnsiō libertātis vindicandae*, "unanimity in demanding liberty."

7. *movērētur*: the subject is *Gallia*.

13. *dēlēcti ex civitatibus*, "representatives of the several states." The fatal weakness of the Gauls was their inability to unite effectively. The

states were so jealous of one another that they could not agree on a single commander, now that Vercingetorix was out of the question. It was bad enough to have four commanders-in-chief; but it was worse to hamper them with a council of representatives,

14. *ad*: cf. App. 131, a.

15. *aspectum modo*, "the mere sight."

17. *ancipiti proeliō*, "in a battle with double front"; explained by the following clauses.

*pugnārētur, cernerentur*: indirect discourse for the future indicative.

Chap. 77. The besieged are in such distress that desperate measures are proposed in a council.

1. *diē quā exspectāverant*: Vercingetorix had told the cavalry that he had supplies for thirty days; at the end of that time he expected relief. For the gender of *diē* see App. 30, a.

auxilia suorum expectāverant, cōsūptō omni frūmentō, insciī quid in Haeduīs gereretur, conciliō coactō dē exitū suarum fortūnarum cōsultābant. Ac variis dictis sententiis, quarum pars dēditionem, pars, dum virēs suppeterent, eruptionem cēnsēbat, nōn praetereunda orātiō Critognāti videtur propter eius singulārem et nefariam crudelitatem. Hic summō in Arvernīs ortus locō et magnae habitus auctoritātis, ‘Nihil,’ inquit, ‘dē eōrum sententiā dicturus sum quī turpissimam servitūtem dēditionis nōmine appellant, neque hōs habendōs cīvium locō neque ad concilium adhibendōs cēnsēō. Cum hīs mihi rēs est quī eruptionem probant; quōrum in cōsiliō omnium vestrum cōsēnsū pristinae residere virtutis memoria videtur. Animi est ista mollitia, nōn virtūs, paulisper inopiam ferre nōn posse. Quī sē ultrō mortī offerant facilius reperiuntur quam quī dolōrem patienter ferant. Atque ego hanc sententiam probārem (tantum apud mē dignitās potest), sī nūllam praeterquam vitae nostrae iacturam fieri vidērem; sed in cōsiliō capiendō omnem Galliam respiciāmus, quam ad nostrum auxilium concitāvimus. Quid hominum milibus LXXX ūnō locō interfectis propinquis cōsanguineisque nostris animi fore existimātis, sī paene in ipsis cadāveribus proeliō decertāre cōgentur? Nōlite hōs vestrō auxiliō exspoliāre, quī vestrae salutis causā suum periculum neglēxerunt, nec stultitiā ac temeritatē vestrā aut animi imbēcillitatē omnem Galliam prōsternere et perpetuae servitūtī subicere. An, quod

3. in Haeduīs: where the army of relief had gathered.

5. suppeterent: implied indirect discourse for the present indicative.

6. nōn praetereunda, “to deserve not to be passed over.”

12. cum hīs . . . est, “I am concerned with those.”

14. ista is the subject, and is explained by the infinitives which follow. It is attracted from the neuter into the gender of the predicate noun, *mollitia*.

15. quī . . . ferant, “men are more easily found to offer . . . than to, etc.”

17. probārem sī vidērem: App. 254. tantum potest, “has so much weight.”

dignitās, “the authority,” of those who wished to make a sally.

18. nūllam . . . iacturam, “no loss except (that) of our lives.”

19. respiciāmus: App. 217.

20. quid propinquis nostris animi fore existimātis, lit. “what of courage do you think there will be to our relatives?”

23. nōlite exspoliāre, prōsternere, subicere: App. 219.

ad diem nōn vēnerunt, dē eōrum fidē cōstantiāque dubitātis? Quid ergō? Rōmānōs in illis ulteriōribus mūnitiōnibus animine causā cotidiē exercēri putātis? Sī illōrum nūntiis  
 30 cōfirmārī nōn potestis, omni aditū praesaep̄tō, hīs ūtimini testibus appropinquāre eōrum adventum; cuius rei timōre exterritī diem noctemque in opere versantur. Quid ergō mei cōnsilī est? Facere quod nostrī maiōrēs nēquāquam pari bellō Cimbrōrum Teutonumque fēcērunt; quī in oppida compulsi  
 35 ac simili inopiā subāctī eōrum corporibus quī aetate ad bellum inūtilēs vidēbantur vītā tolerāverunt neque sē hostibus trādidērunt. Cuius rei sī exemplum nōn habērēmus; tamen libertātis causā institui et posteris prōdī pulcherrimum iudicārem. Nam quid illī simile bellō fuit? Dēpopulātā Galliā  
 40 Cimbrī magnāque illātā calamitāte finibus quidem nostris aliquandō excessērunt atque aliās terrās petiērunt; iūra, lēgēs, agrōs, libertātem nobis reliquērunt. Rōmānī vērō quid petunt aliud aut quid volunt, nisi invidiā adductī, quōs fāmā nōbilēs potentēsque bellō cognōverunt, hōrum in agrīs civitātibusque  
 45 cōsidere atque hīs aeternam iniungere servitūtem? Neque enim umquam aliā condiciōne bella gessērunt. Quod sī ea quae in longinquīs nātiōnibus geruntur ignōrātis, respicite finitimam Galliam, quae in prōvinciam redācta, iūre et lēgibus commūtātis, secūribus subiecta perpetuā premitur  
 50 servitūte.'

28. *ulteriōribus mūnitiōnibus*: the outer line of works, which showed that the Romans expected an attack from that side.

29. *illōrum*: the Gauls outside.

30. *hīs*: the Romans.

31. *testibus*, "as witnesses."

32. *quid . . . est*, "what, then, is my advice?"; lit. "belongs to my advice."

33. *parī*: i.e. equal to the present war.

34. *Cimbrōrum Teutonumque*: see Int. 27.

38. *pulcherrimum*: prēdicate ad-

jective with *esse* understood; "I should think it most glorious for this precedent to be established."

39. *quid . . . fuit*, "what likeness had that war (to this one)?" ; *illī bellō* is a dative of possessor.

*dēpopulātā*: passive in meaning, though the verb is deponent.

41. *aliās . . . petiērunt*: after ravaging Gaul, instead of settling there they marched into Spain.

43. *quōs*: the antecedent is *hōrum*.

48. *finitimam Galliam*: i.e. the Province.

**78.** Sententiis dictis cōstituunt ut ii quī valētūdine aut aetāte inūtīlēs sint bellō oppidō excēdant, atque omnia prius experiantur quam ad Critognāti sententiam dēscendant; illō tamen potius ūtendum cōsiliō, sī rēs cōgat atque auxilia morerentur, quam aut dēditionis aut pācis subeundam condiciōnem. <sup>5</sup> Mandubiī, quī eōs oppidō recēperant, cum liberis atque uxōribus exīre cōguntur. Hī, cum ad mūnitiōnēs Rōmānōrum accessissent, flentēs omnibus precibus ōrābant ut sē in servitūtem receptōs cibō iuvārent. At Caesar dispositis in vāllō custōdiīs recipī prohibēbat. 10

**79.** Intereā Commius reliquīque ducēs quibus summa imperi permissa erat cum omnibus cōpiis ad Alesiam perveniunt et colle exteriōre occupātō nōn longius mille passibus ā nostris mūnitiōnibus cōsidunt. Posterō diē equitātū ex castris ēductō omnem eam plānitiam quam in longitudinem milia passuum tria patēre dēmōstrāvimus complent pedestrēsque cōpiās paulum ab eō locō abductās in locis superiōribus cōstituunt. Erat ex oppidō Alesiā dēspectus in campum. Concurrunt hīs auxiliis visis; fit grātulātiō inter eōs, atque omnium animi ad laetitiam excitantur. Itaque prōductis cōpiis ante oppidum <sup>10</sup> cōsistunt et proximam fossam crātibus integunt atque aggere explent sēque ad ēruptiōnem atque omnēs cāsūs comparant.

Chap. 78. The non-combatants vainly endeavor to leave Alesia.

2. oppidō excēdant: although Caesar tells us (77, 2) that the grain was already eaten up, there must have been some scanty supply of food left. None of this could be spared for the non-combatants.

3. experiantur: the subject is the same as that of *cōstituunt*, not that of *excēdant*.

4. ūtendum, "that they must adopt."

10. recipī prohibēbat: this was not purposeless cruelty, but an attempt to force the Gauls to use up their supplies. According to another writer, the non-combatants perished of hunger be-

tween the Roman lines and the town.

Chap. 79. The Gallic army arrives and encamps outside Caesar's lines.

1. quibus . . . permissa erat: cf. 76, 10.

3. colle . . . occupātō: see plan p. 392.

7. ab eō locō: i.e. from the plain. They expected to support the cavalry if it became necessary.

9. fit . . . eōs, "they congratulated one another."

10. ante oppidum: on the west.

11. proximam fossam: the twenty-foot trench.

crātibus: here apparently a kind of bridge, made of interwoven boughs.

aggere, "earth."

**80.** Caesar, omnī exercitū ad utramque partem mūnitiōnum dispositō, ut, sī ūsus veniat, suum quisque locum teneat et nōverit, equitātum ex castris ēdūci et proelium committi iubet. Erat ex omnibus castris quae summum undique iugum tenēbant dēspectus, atque omnēs militēs intentī pugnae prōventum exspectābant. Galli inter equitēs rārōs sagittāriōs expeditōsque levis armātūrae interiēcerant quī suis cēdentibus auxiliō succurrerent et nostrōrum equitum impetūs sustinērent. Ab his complūrēs dē imprōvisō vulnerātī proeliō excēdēbant.

**10** Cum suōs pugnā superiōrēs esse Galli cōfiderent et nostrōs multitudīne premī vidērent, ex omnibus partibus et iī quī mūnitiōnibus continēbantur et iī quī ad auxilium convēnerant clāmōre et ululātū suōrum animōs cōfirmābant. Quod in cōspectū omnium rēs gerēbātur neque rēctē ac turpiter factum cēlārī poterat, utrōsque et laudis cupiditās et timor ignōminiae ad virtutē excitābat. Cum ā meridiē prope ad sōlis occāsum dubiā victōriā pugnārētur, Germānī ūnā in parte cōnferlis turmīs in hostēs impetum fēcērunt eōsque prōpulērunt; quibus in fugam coniectis sagittārii circumventi interfecitque sunt.

**20** Item ex reliquis partibus nostri cēdentēs usque ad castra insecūti suī colligendī facultātem nōn dedērunt. At iī quī Alesiā prōcesserant, maestī, prope victōriā dēspērātā, sē in oppidum recēpērunt.

**81.** Unō diē intermissō, Galli, atque hōc spatiō magnō

Chap. 80-82. The Gauls are defeated in two battles.

Chap. 80. The Gallic cavalry is defeated.

1. *exercitū*: i.e. the infantry.

*utramque . . . mūnitiōnum*: the two lines of defense, the one facing the town and the other the relieving army.

2. *sī ūsus veniat*, "if there should be need."

6. *rārōs . . . armātūrae*: an imitation of the German arrangement; see I, 48, 11-19.

9. *complūrēs*: of Caesar's cavalry.

10. *Galli*: the spectators.

14. *neque . . . factum*, "and no brave or cowardly act"; *factum* is used as a noun, but is modified by adverbs because it is really a participle.

16. *cum pugnārētur*, "when the battle had been going on."

17. *dubiā victōriā*, "without decisive result."

*Germānī*: they had saved the day for Caesar in former battles; see 70, 4.

20. *cēdentēs*: accusative.

Chap. 81. A night attack is made on both the Roman lines.

1. *Galli*: the relieving army.

crātium, scālārum, harpagōnum numerō effectō, mediā nocte silentiō ex castris ēgressī ad campestrēs mūnitiōnēs accēdunt. Subitō clāmōre sublātō, quā significātiōne quī in oppidō obsidēbantur dē suō adventū cognōscere possent, crātēs prōicere, fundis, sagittis, lapidibus nostrōs dē vāllō prōturbāre reliqua-  
que quae ad oppugnātiōnem pertinent parant administrāre. Eōdem tempore clāmōre exaudītō dat tubā signum suis Vercingetorix atque ex oppidō ēdūcit. Nostri, ut superiōribus diēbus suis cuique erat locus attribūtus, ad mūnitiōnēs accēdunt; fundis librilibus sudibusque, quās in opere disposuerant, ac glandibus Gallōs prōterrent. Prōspectū tenebris adēptō multa utrimque vulnera accipiuntur. Complūra tormentis tēla coniciuntur. At M. Antōnius et C. Trebōnius lēgātī, quibus hae partēs ad dēfendendum obvenerant, quā ex parte nostrōs premī intellēxerant, hīs auxiliō ex ulteriōribus castellis dēductōs submittēbant.

**82.** Dum longius ā mūnitiōne aberant Galli, plūs multitudīne tēlōrum prōficiēbant; posteāquam propius successērunt, aut sē stimulis inopinantēs induēbant aut in scrobēs dēlātī trāsfodiēbantur aut ex vāllō ac turribus trāiectī pilis mūrālibus interibant. Multis undique vulneribus acceptis, nullā mūnitiōne perruptā, cum lūx appeteret, veritī nē ab latere apertō ex superiōribus castris ēruptiōne circumvenirentur, sē ad suōs recēperunt. At interiōrēs, dum ea quae ā Vercinget.

**2. harpagōnum:** hooks fastened to long poles, with which they intended to pull down the breastworks on the Roman ramparts.

**3. campestrēs:** in the plain west of the town.

**4. quā . . . possent:** a purpose clause.

**9. ut . . . attribūtus:** cf. 80, 1.

**11. sudibus:** stakes with sharpened points hardened by fire, used as javelins.

**12. glandibus:** for throwing in slings.

**14. Antōnius:** Mark Antony, after-

wards triumvir.

**15. hae partēs:** the defenses in the plain.

**16. ex . . . dēductōs,** "troops brought from, etc."

Chap. 82. The night attack is repelled.

**1. dum aberant:** for tense see App 234, b.

**longius,** "at a considerable distance."

**3. stimulis:** see 73, 22-25.

**scrobēs:** see 73, 18-22.

**7. ex . . . castris:** especially the ones marked D and E on the plan

**8. interiōrēs:** the besieged.

orīge ad ēruptiōnem praeparāta erant prōferunt, priōrēs fossās  
 10 explent, diūtius in his rēbus administrandis morātī prius suōs  
 discessisse cognōvērunt quam mūnitiōnibus appropinquārent.  
 Ita rē infectā in oppidum revertērunt.

83. Bis magnō cum dētrimentō repulsi Gallī quid agant  
 cōsulunt; locōrum peritōs adhibent; ex his superiōrum castrō-  
 rum sitūs mūnitiōnēsque cognōscunt. Erat ā septentriōnibus  
 collis, quem propter magnitudinem circuitūs opere circumplectī  
 5 nōn potuerant nostrī, necessariōque paene iniquō locō et lēniter  
 dēclivī castra fēcerant. Haec C. Antistius Rēginus et C. Ca-  
 ninus Rebilus lēgātī cum duābus legiōnibus obtinēbant.  
 Cognitis per explorātōrēs regiōnibus ducēs hostium LX milia  
 ex omni numerō dēligunt eārum civitātum quae maximam  
 10 virtūtis opiniōnem habēbant; quid quōque pactō agī placeat  
 occultē inter sē cōstituunt; adeundī tempus dēfiniunt, cum  
 meridiēs esse videātur. His cōpiis Vercassivellaunum Arver-  
 num, ūnum ex quattuor ducibus, propinquum Vercingetorigis,  
 praeficiunt. Ille ex castris primā vigiliā ēgressus, prope cōn-  
 15 fectō sub lūcem itinere, post montem sē occultāvit militēsque  
 ex nocturnō labōre sēsē reficere iussit. Cum iam meridiēs  
 appropinquāre vidērētur, ad ea castra quae suprā dēmōstrā-  
 vimus contendit; eōdemque tempore equitātus ad campestrēs  
 mūnitiōnēs accēdere et reliquae cōpiaē prō castris sēsē osten-  
 20 dere coepērunt.

9. *priōrēs fossās*: probably the twenty-foot trench and the trenches in which the *cippi* were placed.

Chap. 83-88. The relieving army makes a final and desperate attack, and then disappears.

Chap. 83. The relieving army finds a weak point and attacks it.

1. *quid agant*: this question would require the subjunctive in the direct form; App. 210.

4. *opere*: the outer line of defense.

5. *locō iniquō*: explained by *lēniter dēclivī*. The camp is marked A on the plan. Because the ground sloped down

to its outer wall, missiles could easily be thrown into it, and a sloping mound of earth could be built up to its rampart.

7. *duābus legiōnibus*: a strong garrison, to compensate for the weakness of the position.

10. *quid quōque pactō*: English cannot well compress the two questions into one, as the Latin does; "what they want done, and in what way."

12. *videātur*: implied indirect discourse for the future; they said in effect, "we will attack when it shall seem, etc."

19. *reliquae cōpiaē*: they amounted

**84.** Vercingetorix ex arce Alesiae suos cōspicātus ex oppidō ēgreditur; crātēs, longuriōs, mūrālēs falcēs, reliquaque quae ēruptionis causā parāverat prōfert. Pugnātur ūnō tempore omnibus locīs, atque omnia temptantur; quae minimē vīsa pars firma est, hūc concurritur. Rōmānōrum manus 5 tantīs mūnitiōnibus distīnētur nec facile plūribus locīs occurrit. Multum ad terrendōs nostrōs valet clāmor quī post tergum pugnantibus exsistit, quod suum periculum in aliēnā vident virtūte cōstāre; omnia enim plērumque quae absunt vehementius hominum mentēs perturbant. 16

**85.** Caesar idōneum locum nactus, quid quāque in parte gerātur cognōscit; labōrantibus subsidium submittit. Utrisque ad animum occurrit ūnum esse illud tempus quō maximē contendī conveniat: Gallī, nisi perfrēgerint mūnitiōnēs, dē omnī salūte dēspērānt; Rōmānī, sī rem obtinuerint, finem labōrum 5 omnium exspectant. Maximē ad superiōrēs mūnitiōnēs labōrātur, quō Vercassivellaunum missum dēmōstrāvimus. Inīquum locī ad dēclivitātem fastigium magnum habet mōmentum.

to 190,000 men, less those who may have been killed in battle; but they were so poorly commanded that Caesar says nothing more of them. They probably made a feeble attack in the plain. If they had made vigorous attacks at several other points, Caesar could not have sent reinforcements to camp A. Their bad generalship saved Caesar.

Chap. 84. Vercingetorix attacks the inner line.

2. *longuriōs*: for bridging the trenches.

3. *prōfert*: his first attack was somewhere in the plain, perhaps near camp A.

7. *post tergum*: as the Romans formed two lines placed back to back, each line had the enemy behind it.

8. *pugnantibus*, "as they fought"; App. 120.

*suum . . . cōstāre*: their own peril (we should say "safety") depended on the line behind them.

Chap. 85. Both sides fight desperately, the Gauls gaining some advantage.

1. *idōneum locum*: supposed to have been on the hill-side, a little west of camp E.

*quāque in parte*, "everywhere"; i.e. wherever there was fighting. He could not see all parts of his lines.

2. *utrisque . . . occurrit*, "both sides realized."

5. *si rem obtinuerint*, "if they won the victory."

6. *maximē . . . labōrātur*: at this point hundreds of Gallic coins were found. Millstones, broken water jars, and similar things found in the trenches seem to show that the Romans were forced to use as missiles whatever they could lay their hands on.

7. *inīquum . . . fastigium*, "the unfavorable downward slope of the ground."

Alii tēla coniciunt, alii testūdine factā subeunt; dēfatigātis in  
 10 vicem integrī succēdunt. Agger ab ūniversis in mūnitiōnem  
 coniectus et ascēsum dat Gallis et ea quae in terrā occultā-  
 verant Rōmānī contegit; nec iam arma nostris nec virēs  
 suppetunt.

86. His rēbus cognitīs Caesar Labiēnum cum cohortibus  
 sex subsidiō labōrantibus mittit; imperat, sī sustinēre nōn  
 possit, dēductīs cohortibus ēruptiōne pugnet; id nisi neces-  
 sariō nē faciat. Ipse adit reliquōs; cohortātur nē labōrī  
 5 succumbant; omnium superiōrum dimicātiōnum frūctum in eō  
 diē atque hōrā docet cōsistere. Interiōrēs dēspērātis cam-  
 pestribus locis propter magnitudinem mūnitiōnum loca prae-  
 rupta ascēnsū temptant; hūc ea quae parāverant cōferunt.  
 Multitudīne tēlōrum ex turribus prōpugnantēs dēturbant,  
 10 aggere et crātibus fossās explent, falcibus vāllum ac lōricam  
 rescindunt.

87. Mittit primum Brūtum adulēscentem cum cohortibus  
 Caesar, post cum aliis C. Fabium lēgātum; postrēmō ipse,  
 cum vehementius pugnārētur, integrōs subsidiō addūcit.  
 Restitūtō proeliō ac repulsis hostibus, eō quō Labiēnum  
 5 miserat contendit; cohortēs quattuor ex proximō castellō  
 dēdūcit, equitum partem sē sequi, partem circumīre exteriōrēs  
 mūnitiōnēs et ā tergō hostēs adoriri iubet. Labiēnus, post-

10. *agger*, etc.: earth was thrown over the *stimuli*, *scrobēs*, etc.; and a sloping mound of earth was thrown against the rampart of the camp.

Chap. 86. Caesar sends re-enforcements to the camp and encourages those fighting in the plain.

3. *dēductis*: from the rampart.

*ēruptiōne*: this plan had once saved Galba under similar circumstances; III, 5 and 6.

1d: i.e. make a sally.

4. *reliquōs*: those defending the works in the plain. Caesar galloped down from his position on the hill.

7. *loca praerupta*: near the bottom of the hill on which camp E lay. The

fortifications were less formidable here because of the nature of the ground. There were no *cippi* to cross.

Chap. 87. Labienus decides on a sally and Caesar hastens to take part in it.

1. *mittit*: to the *loca praerupta*, where the besieged were trying to break through.

4. *eō . . . contendit*: he rode across the plain, between his lines, to camp A.

6. *equitum*: cavalry followed him from camps F, G, and H. He sent a mounted aide to camp B, ordering the cavalry stationed there to ride around outside his outer line and take the Gauls in the rear.

quam neque aggerēs neque fossae vim hostium sustinere poterant, coactis **XI** cohortibus, quās ex proximis praesidiis deductas fors obtulit, Caesarem per nuntios facit certiores. quid facendum existimet. Accelerat Caesar, ut proelio intersit.

**88.** Eius adventū ex colore vestitus cognitō, turmisque equitum et cohortibus visis quās se sequi iusserat, ut de locis superioribus haec declivia et dēvexa cernebantur, hostes proelium committunt. Utrunque clamore sublato excipit rursus ex vāllō atque omnibus munitiōibus clamor. Nostri emissis pilis gladiis rem gerunt. Repente post tergum equitatus cernitur; cohortes aliae appropinquant. Hostes terga vertunt; fugientibus equites occurrunt. Fit magna caedes. Sedulius, dux et princeps Lemovicum, occiditur; Vercassivellaunus Arvernus vivus in fugā comprehenditur; signa militaria **LXXIV** ad Caesarem referuntur; pauci ex tantō numero se incolumēs in castra recipiunt. Cōspicātī ex oppidō caedem et fugam suorum desperatā salutē cōpiās ā munitiōibus reducunt. Fit prōtinus hāc rē audītā ex castris Gallōrum fuga. Quod nisi crebris subsidiis ac tōtius diēi labōre militēs essent defessi, omnes hostium

**9. XI cohortibus:** originally two legions defended the camp; Labienus had brought six cohorts; Caesar was bringing four; Labienus now secures eleven more: more than two-fifths of the whole army were concentrated at this one point. This was the opportunity for the rest of the Gallic army, if it had been capably led.

**10. quid . . . existimet:** i.e. a sally.

**Chap. 88.** The sixty thousand are slain, and the rest of the relieving army disperses.

**1. vestitus:** a scarlet cloak.

**2. de locis superioribus:** the hill above camp A.

**3. haec . . . dēvexa:** the slopes below camp E, from which Caesar started.

**hostes . . . committunt:** apparently the Romans have sallied out and the Gauls have withdrawn a little in sur-

prise; now the Gauls attack with greater vigor, hoping to win the victory before Caesar can arrive.

**4. excipit . . . clamor:** everyone who has seen a football game will understand how the soldiers at other parts of the line watched and cheered on their men.

**6. post tergum:** of the Romans who have sallied out. The *equitatus* and *cohortes* are those who have followed Caesar.

**8. equites occurrunt:** these are the cavalry from camp B.

**12. ex oppidō,** "the Gauls from the town."

**14. ex castris:** the camp of the relieving army. The Gauls feared an immediate attack.

**quod nisi,** "and unless."

**subsidiis:** their marches back and forth to relieve points of danger.

cōpiae dēlērī potuissent. Dē mediā nocte missus equitātus novissimum agmen cōnsequitur: magnus numerus capitur atque interficitur; reliquī ex fugā in civitatēs discēdunt.

**89.** Posterō diē Vercingetorix conciliō convocātō id bellum sē suscepisse nōn suārum necessitātum, sed commūnis libertātis causā dēmōnstrat, et quoniam sit fortunae cēdendum, ad utramque rem sē illis offerre, seu morte suā Rōmānis satisfacere seu vivum trādere velint. Mittuntur dē hīs rēbus ad Caesarem lēgātī. Iubet arma trādī, principēs prōdūcī. Ipse in mūnitiōne prō castris cōnsidit; eō ducēs prōdūcuntur; Vercingetorix dēditur, arma prōiciuntur. Reservātis Haeduīs atque Arvernīs, sī per eōs civitatēs recuperāre posset, ex reliquis  
10 captivīs tōtī exercituī capita singula praedae nōmine distribuit.

**90.** His rēbus cōfectis in Haeduōs proficiscitur; cīvitātem recipit. Eō lēgātī ab Arvernīs missī quae imperāret sē factūrōs pollicentur. Imperat magnum numerum obsidum. Legiōnēs in hiberna mittit. Captivōrum circiter xx milia Haeduīs  
5 Arvernisque reddit. T. Labiēnum cum duābus legiōnibus et equitātū in Sēquanōs proficisci iubet; huic M. Semprōnium Rutilum attribuit. C. Fabium lēgātum et L. Minucium Basilum cum legiōnibus duābus in Rēmīs collocat, nē quam ā finitimis Bellovacīs calamitātem accipiant. C. Antistium Rēgī-  
10 num in Ambivaretōs, T. Sextium in Biturigēs, C. Caninium

Chap. 89-90. Vercingetorix surrenders, and the Gallic league is broken up.

Chap. 89. Vercingetorix and the besieged army surrender.

3. ad utramque rem, "for either purpose"; explained by the following clauses. The conduct of Vercingetorix in defeat shows that he was of the true heroic mould.

7. Vercingetorix dēditur: he was kept a prisoner till the year 46, that he might appear in Caesar's triumphal procession in Rome; then he was executed.

8. Haeduīs atque Arvernīs: since

these were the leading states of Gaul, their submission would effectually break up all concerted rebellion.

9. sī posset, "to see whether."

10. capita singula, "a man apiece."

Chap. 90. The Haedui and the Arverni submit. The army goes into winter quarters.

6. huic . . . attribuit: i.e. Rutilus was placed under the orders of Labienus.

8. nē . . . accipiant: the Remi had remained faithful to Caesar, while the Bellovaci had announced their intention of fighting him.

Rebilum in Rutēnōs cum singulīs legiōnibus mittit. Q. Tullium Cicerōnem et P. Sulpicium Cavillōnī et Maticōne in Haeduīs ad Ararim rei frūmentāriae causā collocat. Ipse Bibracte hiemāre cōstituit. His rēbus ex Caesaris litteris cognitīs, Rōmae diērum vīgintī supplicātiō redditur.

15

15. *supplicātiō*: cf. IV, 38, 12. One might have expected that the number of days would be increased, since this

was by far the greatest of Caesar's campaigns in Gaul.

## THE DIRECT FORM OF THE INDIRECT DISCOURSE IN BOOKS I AND II

I, 13, 7-19. Si pacem populus Rōmānus cum Helvētiis faciet, in eam partem *ibunt* atque ibi *erunt* *Helvētiī* ubi eōs *tū cōstitueris* atque esse *volueris*; sin bellō persequi *perseverābis*, *remi-niscere* et veteris incommodi populi Rōmāni et pristinae virtutis Helvētiōrum. Quod imprōvisō ūnum pāgum adortus *es*, cum ii qui flūmen *trānsierant* suis auxilium ferre nōn possent, *nōlī* ob eam rem aut  *tuae* magnopere virtūti *tribuere* aut *nōs dēspicere*; *nōs* ita ā patribus maiōribusque *nostris didicimus* ut magis virtūte *contendāmus* quam dolō aut insidiis *nītāmur*. Quārē *nōlī* committere ut *hic* locus ubi *cōstitimus* ex calamitāte populi Rōmāni et interneciōne exercitūs nōmen *capiat* aut memoriam *prōdat*.

I, 14, 1-20. Eō *mihi* minus dubitātiōnis *datur*, quod eās rēs quās *vōs commemorāvistis* memoriā *teneō*, atque eō gravius *ferō* quō minus meritō populi Rōmāni *accidērunt*; qui sī alicuius iniūriæ sibi cōsciūs fuisset, nōn *fuit* difficile cavēre; sed eō *dēceptus est*, quod neque commissum ā sē *intellegēbat* quārē timēret, neque sine causā timendum *putābat*. Quod sī veteris contumēliae obliviscī *velit*, num etiam recentium iniūriarum, quod eō invitō iter per prōvinciam per vim *templāvistis*, quod Haeduōs, quod Ambarrōs, quod Allobrogēs *vexāvistis*, memoriam dēpōnere *potest*? Quod *vestrā* victōriā tam insolenter *glōriāminī*, quodque tam diū *vōs* impūne iniūriās intulisse *admīrāminī*, eōdem *pertinent*. *Cōnsuevērunt* enim *dī immortalēs*, quō gravius hominēs ex commūtātiōne rerum doleant, quōs prō scelere eōrum ulciscī *volunt*, his secundiōrēs interdum rēs et diūturniōrem impūnitātem concēdere. Cum *haec* ita sint, tamen, sī obsidēs ā *vōbīs mihi dabuntur*, uti ea quae *pollicēminī vōs* factūrōs *intellegam*, et sī Haeduīs dē iniūriis quās ipsis

sociisque *intulistis*, item si Allobrogibus *satisfaciētis*, *vōbiscum* pācem *faciam*.

20-23. Ita *Helvētiū* ā maiōribus suis *institūtī sunt* uti obsidēs accipere, nōn dare, cōsuērint; *huius rei populus Rōmānus est testis*.

I, 17, 2-13. *Sunt* nōn *nullī* quōrum auctōritās apud plēbem plūrimum valeat, quī privātīm plūs possint quam ipsī magistrātūs. *Hī* sēditiōsā atque improbā ōrātiōne multitudinem *dēterrent* nē frūmentum cōferant quod *dēbent*: [these men say] “Praestat, si (Haeduī) iam principātum Galliae obtinēre nōn *possunt*, Gallōrum quam Rōmānōrum imperia perferre; neque *dubitāmus* quīn, si Helvētiōs superāverint Rōmānī, unā cum reliquā Galliā Haeduīs libertātem sint ereptūrī.” Ab isdem *vestra* cōnsilia quaeque in castris *geruntur* hostibus *ēnūntiantur*. *Hī ā mē* coērcērī nōn *possunt*; quīn etiam, quod necessariō rem coactus *tibi ēnūntiāvi*, *intellegō* quantō id cum periculō *fēcerim*, et ob eam causam quam diū *potui tacui*.

I, 18, 6-24. *Ipse est Dumnorix*, summā audaciā, magnā apud plēbem propter liberālītātem grātiā, *cupidus* rerū novārum. Complūrēs annōs portōria reliquaue omnia Haeduōrum vectīgālia parvō pretiō redēpta *habet*, proptereā quod illō licente contrā licērī *audet* nēmō. His rēbus et suam rem familiārem *auxit* et facultātēs ad largiendum magnās *comparāvit*; magnum numerum equitātūs suō sūmptū semper *alit* et circum sē *habet*; neque solum domī, sed etiam apud finitimās civitātēs largiter *potest*, atque huius potentiae causā mātrem in Biturigibus hominī illīc nobilissimō ac potentissimō *collocāvit*, ipse ex Helvētiīs uxōrem *habet*, sorōrem ex mātre et propinquās suās nūptum in aliās civitātēs *collocāvit*. *Favet* et *cupit* Helvētiīs propter eam affinitātem, *ōdit* etiam suō nōmine Caesarem et Rōmānōs, quod eōrum adventū potentia eius dēminūta et Diviciācus frāter in antiquum locum grātiaē atque honoris *est* restitūtus. Si quid accidat Rōmānīs, summam in spem per Helvētiōs rēgnī obtinendī *venit*; imperiō populī Rōmānī nōn modo dē rēgnō, sed etiam dē eā quam *habet* grātiā *dēspērat*.

I, 20, 2-12. *Sciō ista esse vĕra, nec quisquam ex eō plūs quam ego dolōris capit, proptereā quod, cum ego grātiā plūrimum domī atque in reliquā Galliā possem, ille minimum propter adulēscēntiam posset, per mē crēvit; quibus opibus ac nervīs nōn solum ad minuendam grātiā, sed paene ad perniciem meam ūtitur. Ego tamen et amōre frāternō et exīstimātiōne vulgī commoveor. Quod sī quid ei ā tē gravius acciderit, cum ego hunc locum amicitiae apud tē teneam, nēmō exīstimābit nōn meā voluntāte factum; quā ex rē tōtius Galliae animī ā mē āvertentur.*

I, 30, 3-10. *Intellegimus, tametsi prō veteribus Helvētiōrum iniūriis populī Rōmānī ab hīs poenās bellō repetieris, tamen eam rem nōn minus ex ūsū Galliae quam populī Rōmānī accidisse, proptereā quod eō cōnsiliō flōrentissimis rēbus domōs suās Helvētiī reliquērunt, uti . . . habērent.*

I, 31, 5-8. *Nōn minus id contendimus et labōrāmus, nē ea quae dixerimus ēnūntientur quam uti ea quae volumus impetrēmus, proptereā quod, sī ēnūntiatum erit, summum in cruciatum nōs ventūrōs vidēmus.*

8-56. Galliae tōtius factiōnēs sunt duae: hārum alterius principātum tenent Haeduī, alterius Arvernī. Hī cum tantopere dē potentātū inter sē multōs annōs contenderent, factum est uti ab Arvernīs Sēquanīsque Germānī mercēde arcesserentur. Hōrum primō circiter milia xv Rhēnum trānsiērunt; posteaquam agrōs et cultum et cōpiās Gallōrum hominēs feri ac barbarī adamārunt, trāductī sunt plūrēs. Nunc sunt in Galliā ad centum et vīgintī milium numerum. Cum hīs Haeduī eōrumque clientēs semel atque iterum armīs contendērunt; magnam calamitātem pulsī accēpērunt, omnem nōbilitātem, omnem senātum, omnem equitātum amīsērunt. Quibus proeliis calamitātibusque frāctī, quī et suā virtūte et populī Rōmānī hospitio atque amicitia plūrimum ante in Galliā potuerant, coactī sunt Sēquanīs obsidēs dare . . . imperiō essent. Ūnus ego sum ex omnī civitāte Haeduōrum quī addūci nōn potuerim ut iūrārem aut liberōs meōs

obsidēs darem. Ob eam rem ex civitate *profūgi* et Rōmam ad senātum *vēni* auxilium postulātum, quod sōlus neque iūre iūrando neque obsidibus *tenēbar*. Sed peius victōribus Sēquanīs quam Haeduīs victīs *accidit*, proptereā quod Ariovistus, rēx Germānōrum, in eōrum finibus *cōnsēdit* tertiamque partem agrī Sēquanī, quī *est* optimus tōtīus Galliae, *occupāvit* et nunc dē alterā parte tertiā Sēquanōs *dēcēdere iubet*, proptereā quod paucīs mēnsibus ante Harūdum milia hominum xxiv ad eum *vēnērunt*, quibus locus ac sēdēs *parantur*. Paucīs annīs omnēs ex Galliae finibus *pellentur* atque omnēs Germānī Rhēnum *trānsībunt*; neque enim *cōnferendus est Gallicus* cum Germānōrum agrō, neque *haec cōnsuētūdō* victūs cum illā *comparanda*. Ariovistus autem, ut semel Gallōrum cōpiās proeliō *vicit*, quod proelium factum est ad Magetobrigam, superbē et crudēliter *imperat*, obsidēs nōbilissimī cuiusque liberōs *poscit* et in eōs omnia exempla cruciātūsque *ēdit*, sī quā rēs nōn ad nūtum aut ad voluntatem eius facta est. *Homō est barbarus, irācundus, temerārius*; nōn *possunt* eius imperia diūtius sustinērī. Nisi quid in tē populōque Rōmānō *erit* auxiliī, omnibus Gallīs idem *est* faciendum quod Helvētiī *fēcērunt*, ut domō . . . experiantur. Haec sī ēnūntiāta Ariovistō *erunt*, nōn *dubitō* quīn dē omnibus obsidibus quī apud eum *sunt* gravissimum supplicium sūmat. Tū vel auctōritāte *tuā* atque exercitūs vel recentī victōriā vel nōmine populī Rōmānī dētērrere *potes* nē maior multitudō Germānōrum Rhēnum trādūcātur, Galliamque omnem ab Ariovistī iniūriā *potes* dēfendere.

I, 32, 8-15. Hōc *est* miserior et gravior *fortūna* Sēquanōrum quam reliquōrum, quod sōlī nē in occultō quidem queri neque auxilium implōrāre *audent* absentisque Ariovistī crudelitātē, velut sī cōram *adsit*, *horrent*, proptereā quod reliquīs tamen fugae facultās *datur*, Sēquanīs vērō, quī intrā finēs suōs Ariovistum *recēpērunt*, quōrum oppida omnia in potestāte eius *sunt*, omnēs cruciātūs *sunt* perferendī.

I, 34, 5-12. Sī quid *mihī* ā Caesare opus esset, *ego* ad eum *vēnissem*; sī quid ille *mē vult*, illum ad *mē* venīre *oportet*.

Praetereā neque sine exercitū in eās partēs Galliae venīre *audeō* quās Caesar *possidet*, neque exercitum sine magnō commeātū atque mōlimentō in ūnum locum contrahere *possum*. *Mihi* autem mirum *vidētur* quid in *meā* Galliā, quam bellō *vīcī*, aut Caesarī aut omnīnō populō Rōmānō negōtī *sit*.

I, 35, 2-18. Quoniam tantō *meō* populique Rōmānī beneficiō affectus, cum in cōsulātū *meō* rēx atque amicus ā senātū appellātus *est*, hanc *mihi* populōque Rōmānō grātiā *refert*, ut in colloquium venīre invitātus *gravētur* neque dē commūnī rē dicendum sibi et cognōscendum *putet*, haec *sunt* quae ab eō *postulō*: primum, nē quam multitudinem hominum amplius trāns Rhēnum in Galliam *trādūcat*; deinde, obsidēs quōs *habet* ab Haeduīs *reddat* Sēquanīsque *permittat* ut quōs ipsī *habent* voluntāte eius reddere illīs *liceat*; nēve Haeduōs iniūriā *lacestat*, nēve hīs sociīsque eōrum bellum *īferat*. Sī ita *fēcerit*, *mihi* populōque Rōmānō *perpetua grātia* atque *amicitia* cum eō *erit*; sī nōn *impetrābō*, quoniam M. Messālā M. Pisōne cōsulibus senātus *cēnsuit* utī quicumque Galliam prōvinciam obtinēret, quod commodō rei pūblicae facere posset, Haeduōs cēterōsque amicōs *populī Rōmānī dēfenderet*, Haeduōrum iniūriās nōn *neglegam*.

I, 36. Iūs *est* bellī ut quī *vīcerint* iīs quōs *vīcerint* quem ad modum *velint imperent*; item *populus Rōmānus* victīs nōn ad alterius praescriptum, sed ad suum arbitrium imperāre *cōnsuevit*. Sī ego populō Rōmānō nōn *praescribō* quem ad modum suō iūre *ūtātur*, nōn *oportet* *mē* ā populō Rōmānō in *meō* iūre impediri. *Haeduī mihi*, quoniam bellī fortūnam *temptāvērunt* et armīs congressī ac superātī *sunt*, *stipendiārīi sunt facti*. Magnam Caesar iniūriam *facit*, quī suō adventū vectigālia *mihi dēteriōra facit*. Haeduīs obsidēs nōn *reddam*, neque hīs neque eōrum sociīs iniūriā bellum *īferam*, sī in eō *manēbunt* quod *convēnit* stipendiumque quotannis *pendent*; sī id nōn *fēcerint*, longē iīs frāternum nōmen populī Rōmānī *aberit*. Quod *mihi Caesar dēnūntiat* sē Haeduōrum iniūriās nōn *neglētūrum*, *nēmō nēcūm* sine suā perniciē *contendit*. Cum *volet*, *congre-*

*diatur: intellet* quid invicti Germāni, exercitātissimī in armīs, quī inter annōs XIV tēctum nōn *subiērunt*, virtūte possint.

I, 40, 3-47. Primum (*vōs incūsō*) quod aut quam in partem aut quō cōsiliō dūcāminī vōbīs quaerendum aut cōgitandum putātis. Ariovistus mē cōsule cupidissimē populī Rōmānī amicitiam *appetiit*; cūr hunc tam temerē quisquam ab officiō discessūrum iūdicet? Mihi quidem *persuādētur*, cognātis mēis postulātis atque aequitāte condiciōnum perspectā, eum neque meam neque populī Rōmānī grātiā repudiātūrum. Quod sī furōre atque āmentīā impulsus bellum *intulerit*, quid tandem vereāminī? aut cūr dē *vestrā* virtūte aut dē *meā* diligentiā dēspērētis? Factum est eius hostis periculum patrum nostrōrum memoriā, cum Cimbris et Teutonīs ā C. Mariō pulsīs nōn minōrem laudem exercitus quam ipse imperātor meritis vidēbātur; factum est etiam nūper in Italiā servilī tumultū, quōs tamen aliquid ūsus ac disciplīna quam ā nobīs accēperant sublevābant. Ex quō iūdicārī potest quantum habeat in sē bonī cōstantia, proptereā quod, quōs aliquamdiū inermēs sine causā timuistis, hōs postea armātōs ac victōrēs superāvistis. Dēnique hī sunt idem Germānī quibuscum saepe numerō Helvētiī congressī nōn solum in suis, sed etiam in illōrum finibus, plērumque superāvērunt, quī tamen parēs esse nostrō exercitūi nōn potuērunt. Sī quōs adversum proelium et fuga Gallōrum commovet, hī, sī quaerent, reperire possunt . . . vicisse. Cui ratiōnī contrā hominēs barbarōs atque imperitōs locus fuit, hāc nē ipse quidem spērat nostrōs exercitūs capī posse. Quī suum timōrem in rei frūmentāriæ simulatiōnem angustiasque itineris cōferunt faciunt arroganter, cum aut dē officiō imperātōris dēspērāre aut praescribere videantur. Haec mihi sunt cūrae: frūmentum Sēquanī, Leucī, Lingonēs subministrant, iamque sunt in agris frūmenta mātūra; dē itinere ipsī brevī tempore iūdicābitis. Quod nōn fore dictō audientēs neque signa lātūri dicimini, nihil eā rē commoveor; sciō enim, quibuscumque exercitus dictō audiens nōn fuerit, aut male rē

gestā fortunam dēfuisse aut aliquō facinore compertō avāritiam esse convictam; *mea innocentia* perpetuā vitā, *fēlicitās* Helvētiōrum bellō *est perspecta*. Itaque quod in longiorem diem collātūrus fuī *repraesentābō* et hāc nocte dē quārtā vigiliā castra *movēbō*, ut quam primum intellegere *possim* utrum apud vōs pudor atque officium an timor plūs *valeat*. Quod sī praetereā nēmō *sequētur*, tamen *ego* cum sōlā decimā legiōne *ibō*, dē quā nōn *dubitō*, *mihique ea praetōria cohors erit*.

I, 44. *Trānsiī Rhēnum nōn meā* sponte, sed *rogātus* et *arcessītus* ā Gallīs; nōn sine magnā spē magnisque praemiīs domum propinquōsque *reliquī*; sēdēs *habēō* in Galliā ab ipsīs concessās, obsidēs ipsōrum voluntāte datōs; stipendium *capiō* iūre bellī quod victōrēs victīs impōnere *cōsueērunt*. Nōn *ego* Gallīs, sed *Gallī mihi* bellum *intulērunt*; omnēs Galliae civitātēs ad mē oppugnandum *vēnērunt* ac contrā mē castra *habuerunt*; eae omnēs cōpiae ā mē ūnō proeliō *pulsae* ac *superatae sunt*. Sī iterum experiri *volunt*, iterum *parātus sum* dēcertāre; sī pāce ūti *volunt*, inīquum *est* dē stipendiō recūsāre, quod suā voluntāte ad hoc tempus *pependērunt*. Amicitiam populī Rōmānī *mihī* ōrnāmētō et praesidiō, nōn dētrīmentō esse *oportet*, atque hāc spē *petiī*. Sī per populum Rōmānum stipendium *remittētur* et dēditiciī *subtrahentur*, nov minus libenter *recūsābō* populī Rōmānī amicitiam quam *appetiī*. Quod multitudinem Germānōrum in Galliam *trādūcō*, id meī mūniendī nōn Galliae impugnandae causā *faciō*; eius rei testimoniū *est* quod nisi rogātus nōn *vēnī* et quod bellum nōn *intulī*, sed *dēfendī*. *Ego* prius in Galliam *vēnī* quam *populus Rōmānus*. Numquam ante hoc tempus *exercitus* populī Rōmānī Galliae prōvinciae finibus *ēgressus est*. Quid tibi *vīs*? Cūr in *meās* possessiōnēs *venīs*? Prōvincia *mea haec est Gallia*, sicut *illa vestra*. Ut *mihī* concēdī nōn *oporteāt*, sī in *vestrōs* finēs impetum *faciam*, sic item vōs *estis inīquī*, quod in *meō* iūre *mē interpellātis*. Quod frātres ā senātū Haeduōs appellātōs *dīcis*, nōn tam *barbarus* neque tam *imperītus sum* rērum ut nōn *sciam* neque bellō Allobrogum proximō Haeduōs Rōmānīs

auxilium tulisse neque ipsōs in hīs contentiōnibus quās Haedui *mēcum* et cum Sēquanīs *habuērunt* auxiliō populī Rōmānī ūsōs esse. *Dēbeō* suspicārī simulatā *tē* amīcitiā, quod exercitum in Galliā *habēs*, *meī* opprimendī causā habēre. Nisi *dēcēdēs* atque exercitum *dēdūcēs* ex hīs regiōnibus, *tē* nōn prō amīcō, sed prō hoste *habēbō*. Quod sī *tē interfecerō*, multis nōbilibus principibusque populī Rōmānī grātum *faciam*; id ab ipsis per eōrum nūntiōs compertum *habeō*, quōrum omnium grātiā atque amicitiam *tuā* morte redimere *possum*. Quod sī *dēcesseris* et liberam possessionem Galliae *mihi tradideris*, magnō *tē* prae-miō *remūnerābō* et quaecumque bella gerī *volēs* sine ūllō *tuō* labōre et periculō *cōnficiam*.

I, 45, 2-11. Neque *mea* neque populī Rōmānī *cōnsuētūdō* patitur utī optimē meritōs sociōs *dēseram*, neque ego iūdicō Galliam potius esse *tuam* quam populī Rōmānī. Bellō *superātī* sunt Arvernī et Rutēnī ā Q. Fabiō Maximō, quibus populus Rōmānus *ignōvit* neque in prōvinciam *redēgit* neque stipendium *imposuit*. Quod sī antiquissimum quodque tempus spectārī *oportet*, populī Rōmānī iūstissimum *est* in Galliā imperium; sī iūdicium senātūs observārī *oportet*, *libera dēbet* esse Gallia, quam bellō victā suis lēgibus ūtī *voluit*.

II, 3, 4-14. *Nōs nostraque* omnia in fidem atque potestātem populī Rōmānī *permittimus*. Neque (*nōs*) cum reliquīs Belgīs *cōnsēnsimus*, neque contrā populum Rōmānum *coniūrāvimus*, *parātique* sumus et obsidēs dare et imperāta facere et oppidīs recipere et frūmentō cēterisque rēbus iuvāre. *Reliquī* omnēs *Belgae* in armīs sunt, *Germānique* quī cis Rhēnum *incolunt* sēsē cum hīs *coniūnxērunt*; *tantusque* est eōrum omnium furor ut nē Suessiōnēs quidem, frātrēs cōsanguineōsque *nostrōs*, quī eōdem iūre et isdem lēgibus *ūtuntur*, ūnum imperium ūnumque magistrātum *nobiscum habent*, dēterrere *potuerimus* quā cum hīs consentirent.

II, 4, 2-28. *Plērique* *Belgae* sunt *ortī* ā Germānīs, Rhēnumque antiquitus *trāductī* propter locī fertilitātem ibi *cōnsēdērunt*, Gallōsque quī ea loca *incolēbant* *expulērunt*, *sōlique*

*sunt* quī patrum nostrōrum memoriā, omnī Galliā vexatā, Teutonōs Cimbrōsque intrā suōs finēs ingredi prohibuerint; quā ex rē *fit* utī eārum rērum memoriā magnam sibi auctōritatem magnōsque spīritūs in rē militārī sūmant. Dē numerō eōrum omnia (nōs) *habēmus* explorāta, proptereā quod propinquitatibus affinitatibusque coniūctī, quantam quisque multitudinem in commūnī Belgārum conciliō ad id bellum pollicitus sit *cognōvimus*. Plūrimum inter eōs *Bellovacī* et virtūte et auctōritāte et hominum numerō *valent*; *hī possunt* cōficere armāta milia centum; *polliciti sunt* ex eō numerō ēlēcta milia sexāgintā, tōtiusque belli imperium sibi *postulant*. Suessiōnēs *nostrī sunt finitimī*; finēs lātissimōs ferācissimōsque agrōs *possident*. Apud eōs *fuit* rēx *nostrā* etiam memoriā *Diviciacus*, tōtius Galliae *potentissimus*, quī cum magnae partis hārum regiōnum tum etiam Britanniae imperium *obtenuit*; nunc est *rēx Galba*; ad hunc propter iūstitiam prūdētiāque *summa* tōtius belli omnium voluntāte dēfertur; oppida *habent* numerō XII; *pollicentur* milia armāta quinquāgintā; totidem *Nervī*, quī maximē ferī inter ipsōs *habentur* longissimēque *absunt*; quīdecim milia *Atrebātēs*, *Ambiānī* decem milia, *Morinī* XXV milia, *Menapiī* VII milia, *Caletī* X milia, *Velocassēs* et *Viromandui* totidem, *Atuatuci* XIX milia; *Condrūsī*, *Eburōnēs*, *Cae-rōsī*, *Caemānī*, quī ūnō nōmine Germānī appellantur, *arbitrāmur* ad XL milia.

II, 14, 2-13. *Bellovacī* omnī tempore in fidē atque amicitīā cīvitātis Haeduae *fuērunt*; *impulsī* ab suis principibus, quī *dicēbant* Haeduōs ā tē in servitūtem redāctōs omnēs indignitātēs contumēliāsque perferre, et ab Haeduis *dēfēcērunt* et populō Rōmānō bellum *intulērunt*. Quī eius consilī principēs *fuerant*, quod *intelligēbant* quantam calamitātem cīvitātī intulissent, in Britanniam *profūgērunt*. *Petunt* non solum *Bellovacī* sed etiam prō his *Haeduī* ut tuā clēmētiā ac mānsuētūdine in eōs *ūtāris*. Quod sī *fēceris*, Haeduōrum auctōritātem apud omnēs Belgās *amplificābis*; quōrum auxiliis atque opibus, sī qua bella *incidērunt*, sustentāre *cōnsuērunt*.

II, 15, 8-15. *Nūllus aditus est ad eōs mercātōribus; nihil patiuntur vinī reliquārumque rērum ad lūxuriā pertinentium inferri, quod hīs rēbus relanguēscere animōs et remitti virtutem existimant. Sunt hominēs ferī magnaeque virtūtis; increpitant atque incūsant reliquōs Belgās, quī sē populō Rōmānō dēdiderint patriamque virtutem prōiēcērint; cōnfirmant sēsē neque lēgātōs missūrōs neque ūllam condiōnem pācis acceptūrōs.*

II, 16, 2-9. *Sabis flūmen ā castrīs tuīs nōn amplius milia passuum x abest; trāns id flūmen omnēs Nervii cōnsēdērunt adventumque ibi Rōmānōrum expectant ūnā cum Atrebātibus et Viromanduis, finitimīs suis; expectantur etiam ab iīs Atuatu-cōrum cōpia atque sunt in itinere; muliērēs quīque per aetātem ad pugnam inūtīlēs vidēbantur in eum locum coniēcērunt quō propter palūdēs exercitūi aditus nōn esset.*

II, 31, 3-13. *Nōn existimāmus Rōmānōs sine ope deōrum bellum gerere, quī tantae altitudinis māchinātiōnēs tantā celeritate prōmovēre possint. Nōs nostraque omnia eōrum potestātī permittimus. Ūnum petimus ac dēprecāmur: sī forte prō tuā clēmētiā ac mānsuētūdine, quam nōs ab aliīs audīmus, statueris nōs esse cōservandōs, nōlī nōs armīs dēspoliāre. Nōbīs omnēs ferē finitimī sunt inimicī ac nostrae virtūtī invident; ā quibus nōs dēfendere trāditis armīs nōn possumus. Nōbīs praestat, sī in eum cāsum dēducēmur, quamvis fortūnam ā populō Rōmānō patī quam ab hīs per cruciātum interfici, inter quōs dominārī cōnsuēvimus.*

II, 32, 1-6. *Magis cōnsuētūdine meā quam meritō vestrō civitātem cōservābō, sī priusquam mūrū ariēs attigerit vōs dēdideritis; sed dēditiōnis nūlla est condiō nisi armīs trāditis. Id quod in Nervii fēcī faciam finitimisque imperābō nē quam dēditiciis populī Rōmānī iniūriam inferant.*



# APPENDIX

---

## INTRODUCTION

---

The Appendix was originally prepared for use in the revision of *Bel-lum Helveticum* (1900). It has now received a thorough revision, but the numbering has been left unchanged, except at a very few points. It is intended to include all the grammatical material which need be put into the hands of a class for second year work. The regular paradigms are given in full, with only such exceptional forms as are needed for the reading of Caesar and Cicero. Rules of syntax are almost invariably stated in full, so that when the student takes up a more complete grammar he will have to master only the exceptions, not the principles.

The examples are drawn chiefly from Caesar, especially the first half of the first book. Some are made up, for the sake of brevity and clearness, and a few are taken from Cicero. References like I; 14, 3 indicate the book, chapter, and line of Caesar.

The writer has consulted the usual authorities, and is under special obligations, as regards the treatment of the verb, to the writings and personal instruction of Professor William Gardner Hale. He has received much assistance in revising the work from the thoughtful and practical suggestions of Messrs. Janes and Jenks of the Boys' High School, Brooklyn, N. Y.

# PRONUNCIATION

## QUANTITY OF VOWELS

1. A vowel is usually short:
  - a. Before another vowel, or *h*; as *eō*, *nihil*.
  - b. Before *nd* and *nt*; as *laudandus*, *laudant*.
  - c. In words of more than one syllable, before any other final consonant than *s*; as *laudem*, *laudat*.
2. A vowel is long:
  - a. Before *nf*, *ns*, *nx*, and *nct*; as *Inferō*, *cōsul*, *iūnxī*, *iūnctum*.
  - b. When it results from contraction; as *iisset*, for *iisset*.
3. A vowel is usually long:
  - a. In monosyllables not ending in *b*, *d*, *l*, *m*, or *t*; as *mē*, *hic*, but *ab*, *ad*.

## SOUNDS OF VOWELS

4. Long vowels, whether accented or not, should be given twice the time given to short vowels. This is the chief difficulty in the Roman pronunciation, because in English only accented syllables are commonly given more time than others.

<i>a</i> = <i>a</i> in <i>Cuba</i>	<i>ā</i> = <i>ah!</i>
<i>e</i> = <i>e</i> in <i>net</i>	<i>ē</i> = <i>e</i> in <i>they</i>
<i>i</i> = <i>i</i> in <i>pin</i>	<i>ī</i> = <i>i</i> in <i>machine</i>
<i>o</i> = <i>o</i> in <i>for</i> (not as in <i>got</i> )	<i>ō</i> = <i>oh!</i>
<i>u</i> = <i>oo</i> in <i>foot</i>	<i>ū</i> = <i>oo</i> in <i>boot</i>
<i>y</i> = French <i>u</i> or German <i>ü</i> ; it rarely occurs.	

## SOUNDS OF DIPHTHONGS

5. The following are the commonly recognized diphthongs which appear in classical Latin:

<i>ae</i> = <i>ai</i> in <i>aisle</i>
<i>oe</i> = <i>oi</i> in <i>oil</i>
<i>au</i> = <i>ow</i> in <i>how</i>

**eu** has no English equivalent. Run together in one syllable the sounds *eh'-oo*.

**ui** has no English equivalent. Run together in one syllable the sounds *oo'-es*. The diphthong appears in *cui*, *huic*, *cuius*, and *huius*.

a. When the consonant **i** (= **j**) stands between two vowels, as in *maior*, *eius*, *Troia*, and *cuius*, though **i** was written only once it was pronounced twice, as if the spelling were, *maior*, *eius*, *Troila*, and *cuius*. The second **i** is the consonant, pronounced like *y* in *yet*.

The first **i** makes a diphthong with the preceding vowel. In such cases,

**ai** = *ai* in *aisle*

**ei** = *ey* in *they*

**oi** = *oi* in *oil*

**ui** as indicated above.

### SOUNDS OF CONSONANTS

6. The consonants are, in general, pronounced as in English; but the following points should be noted:

**c** and **g** are always hard, as in *can*, *go*

**i** (consonant, sometimes printed **j**) = *y* in *yet*

**n** before **c**, **g**, **q**, and **x** = *ng* in *sing*

**r** pronounced distinctly

**s** as in *this*, never as in *these*

**t** as in *tin*, never as in *nation*

**v** = *w*

**x** = *ks*

**ch**, **ph**, **th** = *c*, *p*, *t*

**bs**, **bt** = *ps*, *pt*

**qu** = *qu* in *quart*

**ngu** = *ngu* in *anguish*

**su** = *sw* in *suādeo*, *suāvis*, *suēscō*, and their compounds.

a. When consonants are doubled, as in *mittō*, *annus*, both consonants should be sounded, as they are in *out-talk*, *pen-knife*. We sound only one consonant in *ditty*, *penny*.

7. **i** is generally a consonant between vowels, and at the beginning of a word before a vowel. In compounds of *iaciō*, the form *iciō* was written. It is commonly believed that in these words consonant **i** was pronounced, though not written, before vowel **i**; as *dēiciō*, pronounced as if *dēiiciō*; *abiciō*, as if *abiiciō*.

## SYLLABLES

8. Every Latin word has as many syllables as it has vowels or diphthongs.

a. A single consonant between two vowels is pronounced with the second vowel; as *fe-rō*, *a-gō*, *mo-nē*.

b. The combination of a mute and a liquid (*b, c, d, g, p, t, ch, ph*, or *th*, followed by *l* or *r*) is pronounced together so easily that it goes with the second vowel like a single consonant; as *pa-tris*, *a-grī*. But in poetry such a combination was often divided; as *pat-ris*, *ag-rī*.

c. Any other combination of two or more consonants is divided before the last consonant, or before the combination of a mute and a liquid; as *mit-tō*, *dic-tus*, *magis-ter*, *magis-trī*.

## QUANTITY OF SYLLABLES

9. A syllable is long:

a. If it contains a long vowel or diphthong; as both syllables of *laudō*, and the first syllable of *eius* (5, *a*).

b. If its vowel is followed by any two consonants except a mute and a liquid, or by one of the double consonants *x* and *z*. The quantity of a short vowel is not changed by this position: *est* is *est*, not *ēst*. The time taken in pronouncing a consonant at the end of the syllable before the consonant at the beginning of the next syllable (8, *c*), lengthens the syllable. This will be felt if the consonants are pronounced distinctly in *mit-tō* (6, *a*), *an-nus*, *dic-tus*, *par-tēs*, *nos-ter*.

c. Often in poetry when a short vowel is followed by a mute and a liquid. The pronunciation is then *pat-ris*, *ag-rī* (8, *b*). In prose such a syllable is always considered short.

## ACCENT

10. Words of two syllables are accented on the first syllable; as *om'nīs*.

11. Words of more than two syllables are accented on the penult if it is long, otherwise on the antepenult; as *divī' sa*, *appel' lō*, *in' colunt*.

12. When an enclitic is joined to another word, the accent falls on the syllable immediately preceding the enclitic; as *Gallia'que*.

## INFLECTIONS

## NOUNS

## GENERAL RULES OF GENDER

13. The gender of most nouns is determined by the nominative

ending or must be learned for the individual words; but the following rules will prove helpful.

a. The names of male beings, rivers, winds, and months are *masculine*.

b. The names of female beings, countries, towns, islands, plants, trees, and of most abstract qualities are *feminine*.

c. Indeclinable nouns, and infinitives, phrases, and clauses used as nouns are *neuter*.

## DECLENSIONS

14. There are five declensions of Latin nouns, distinguished from each other by the final letter of the stem, and the ending of the genitive singular.

DECLENSION	FINAL LETTER OF STEM	ENDING OF GEN. SING.
I.	ā	-ae
II.	o	-i
III.	{ consonant i	-is
IV.	u	-ūs
V.	ē	-ēi or -ei

a. Strictly speaking, the cases are usually formed by adding case-endings to the stem. But when the stem ends in a vowel, that vowel is often modified in some way, or is so combined with the true case-ending that neither the stem-vowel nor the true case-ending can be seen. Therefore it is more convenient to apply the name case-ending to the combined stem-vowel and true case-ending, and to say that the cases are formed by adding case-endings to the base. The base of a noun is found by dropping the ending of the genitive singular.

## FIRST DECLENSION

15. The stem ends in -ā; the nominative in -a. The gender is usually feminine.

*lingua, f., tongue, language*

	SINGULAR	ENDINGS
<i>Nominative</i>	lingua	a language (as subject) -a
<i>Genitive</i>	linguae	of a language, language's -ae
<i>Dative</i>	linguae	to or for a language -ae
<i>Accusative</i>	linguam	a language (as object) -am
<i>Vocative</i>	lingua	O (or thou) language -a
<i>Ablative</i>	linguā by, from, in, or with a language	-ā

## PLURAL

<i>Nominative</i>	linguae	languages ( <i>as subject</i> )	-ae
<i>Genitive</i>	linguārum	of languages, languages'	-ārum
<i>Dative</i>	linguis	to or for languages	-is
<i>Accusative</i>	linguās	languages ( <i>as object</i> )	-ās
<i>Vocative</i>	linguae	O ( <i>or ye</i> ) languages	-ae
<i>Ablative</i>	linguis	by, from, in, or with languages	-is

a. Exceptions in gender are shown by meanings (13); as *Belgae*, *m.*, the *Belgae*; *Matrona*, *m.*, the (river) *Marne*.

b. The locative singular ends in -ae; as *Samarobrivae*, at *Samarobriva*.

## SECOND DECLENSION

16. The stem ends in -o; the nominative masculine in -us, -er, -ir; the nominative neuter in -um.

<i>animus</i> , <i>m.</i> , <i>mind</i>	<i>puer</i> , <i>m.</i> , <i>boy</i>	<i>ager</i> , <i>m.</i> , <i>field</i>	<i>vir</i> , <i>m.</i> , <i>man</i>	<i>bellum</i> , <i>n.</i> , <i>war</i>
--	---	---	--	---

## SINGULAR

<i>N. animus</i>	<i>puer</i>	<i>ager</i>	<i>vir</i>	<i>bellum</i>
<i>G. animi</i>	<i>pueri</i>	<i>agri</i>	<i>virī</i>	<i>belli</i>
<i>D. animō</i>	<i>puerō</i>	<i>agrō</i>	<i>virō</i>	<i>bellō</i>
<i>A. animum</i>	<i>puerum</i>	<i>agrum</i>	<i>virum</i>	<i>bellum</i>
<i>V. anime</i>	<i>puer</i>	<i>ager</i>	<i>vir</i>	<i>bellum</i>
<i>A. animō</i>	<i>puerō</i>	<i>agrō</i>	<i>virō</i>	<i>bellō</i>

## PLURAL

<i>N. animi</i>	<i>pueri</i>	<i>agri</i>	<i>virī</i>	<i>bella</i>
<i>G. animōrum</i>	<i>puerōrum</i>	<i>agrōrum</i>	<i>virōrum</i>	<i>bellōrum</i>
<i>D. animīs</i>	<i>puerīs</i>	<i>agrīs</i>	<i>virīs</i>	<i>bellīs</i>
<i>A. animōs</i>	<i>puerōs</i>	<i>agrōs</i>	<i>virōs</i>	<i>bella</i>
<i>V. animi</i>	<i>pueri</i>	<i>agri</i>	<i>virī</i>	<i>bella</i>
<i>A. animīs</i>	<i>puerīs</i>	<i>agrīs</i>	<i>virīs</i>	<i>bellīs</i>

<i>filius</i> , <i>m.</i> , <i>son</i>	<i>Gaius</i> , <i>m.</i> , <i>Gaius</i>	<i>Bōi</i> , <i>m.</i> , <i>the Boii</i>	<i>deus</i> , <i>m.</i> , <i>god</i>	
SING.	SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.
<i>N. filius</i>	<i>Gaius</i>	<i>Bōi</i>	<i>deus</i>	<i>diī, dī</i>
<i>G. fili</i>	<i>Gai</i>	<i>Bōiōrum</i>	<i>dei</i>	<i>deōrum</i>
<i>D. filiō</i>	<i>Gaiō</i>	<i>Bōis</i>	<i>deō</i>	<i>diīs, diīs</i>
<i>A. filium</i>	<i>Gaium</i>	<i>Bōiōs</i>	<i>deum</i>	<i>deōs</i>
<i>V. fili</i>	<i>Gai</i>	<i>Bōi</i>	<i>deus</i>	<i>diī, dī</i>
<i>A. filiō</i>	<i>Gaiō</i>	<i>Bōis</i>	<i>deō</i>	<i>diīs, diīs</i>

a. Exceptions in gender are usually shown by the meanings (13). *Vulgus*, *crowd*, is usually neuter. *Locus*, *m.*, *place*, has plural *loca*, *n.*, *places*.

b. The locative singular ends in -I; as *AgedincI*, at *Agedincum*.

c. Nouns in -ius regularly form the genitive and vocative singular in -I, instead of -II and -ie, and nouns in -ium form the genitive in -I. The words are accented as if the longer form were used; *cōnsi'II*, of a *plan*; *ini'tI*, of a *beginning*.

d. Proper names ending in -āius, -ēius, and -ōius are declined like *Gāius* and *BōI*.

e. A few words have -um instead of -ōrum in the genitive plural; *socium* (or *sociōrum*), of *allies*.

### THIRD DECLENSION

17. Third declension stems end in a consonant or in -i. Nominative case-ending for masculines and feminines, -s or none; for neuters, none.

#### A. CONSONANT STEMS

18. Stems ending in a labial mute, b or p. The nominative ending is -s.

*princeps*, *m.*, *chief*  
Stem *princip-*

	SING.	PLUR.
N.	<i>princeps</i>	<i>principēs</i>
G.	<i>principis</i>	<i>principum</i>
D.	<i>principi</i>	<i>principibus</i>
A.	<i>principem</i>	<i>principēs</i>
V.	<i>princeps</i>	<i>principēs</i>
A.	<i>principe</i>	<i>principibus</i>

19. Stems ending in a dental mute, d or t. The nominative ending for masculines and feminines is -s, and the final d or t of the stem is dropped before it.

<i>laus</i> , <i>f.</i> , <i>praise</i> Stem <i>laud-</i>		<i>miles</i> , <i>m.</i> , <i>soldier</i> Stem <i>milit-</i>		<i>caput</i> , <i>n.</i> , <i>head</i> Stem <i>capit-</i>	
SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.
N. <i>laus</i>	<i>laudēs</i>	<i>miles</i>	<i>militēs</i>	<i>caput</i>	<i>capita</i>
G. <i>laudis</i>	<i>laudum</i>	<i>militis</i>	<i>militum</i>	<i>capitis</i>	<i>capitum</i>
D. <i>laudi</i>	<i>laudibus</i>	<i>militi</i>	<i>militibus</i>	<i>capiti</i>	<i>capitibus</i>
A. <i>laudem</i>	<i>laudēs</i>	<i>militem</i>	<i>militēs</i>	<i>caput</i>	<i>capita</i>
V. <i>laus</i>	<i>laudēs</i>	<i>miles</i>	<i>militēs</i>	<i>caput</i>	<i>capita</i>
A. <i>laude</i>	<i>laudibus</i>	<i>militē</i>	<i>militibus</i>	<i>capite</i>	<i>capitibus</i>

20. Stems ending in a guttural mute, *g* or *c*. The nominative ending is *-s*, which unites with the final *g* or *c* of the stem to form *x*.

lēx, F., <i>law</i> Stem lēg-		dux, M., <i>leader</i> Stem duc-	
SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.
N. lēx	lēgēs	dux	ducēs
G. lēgis	lēgum	ducis	ducum
D. lēgī	lēgibus	duci	ducibus
A. lēgem	lēgēs	ducem	ducēs
V. lēx	lēgēs	dux	ducēs
A. lēge	lēgibus	duce	ducibus

21. Stems ending in a liquid, *l* or *r*. There is no nominative case-ending.

cōsul, M., <i>consul</i> Stem cōnsul-		pater, M., <i>father</i> Stem patr-		aequor, N., <i>sea</i> Stem aequor-	
SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.
N. cōsul	cōnsulēs	pater	patrēs	aequor	aequora ,
G. cōsulis	cōnsulum	patris	patrum	aequoris	aequorum
D. cōsulī	cōnsulibus	patrī	patribus	aequorī	aequoribus
A. cōnsulem	cōnsulēs	patrem	patrēs	aequor	aequora
V. cōsul	cōnsulēs	pater	patrēs	aequor	aequora
A. cōnsule	cōnsulibus	patre	patribus	aequore	aequoribus

22. Stems ending in a nasal, *m* or *n*. There is no nominative case-ending, except in *hiems*, the only stem in *-m*. The nominative of masculines and feminines usually drops the final *n* and changes the preceding vowel to *ō*.

homō, M., F., <i>human being</i> Stem homin-		ratiō, F., <i>reason</i> Stem ratiōn-		flūmen, N., <i>river</i> Stem flūmin-	
SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.
N. homō	hominēs	ratiō	ratiōnēs	flūmen	flūmina
G. hominis	hominum	ratiōnis	ratiōnum	flūminis	flūminum
D. hominī	hominibus	ratiōnī	ratiōnibus	flūminī	flūminibus
A. hominem	hominēs	ratiōnem	ratiōnēs	flūmen	flūmina
V. homō	hominēs	ratiō	ratiōnēs	flūmen	flūmina
A. homine	hominibus	ratiōne	ratiōnibus	flūmine	flūminibus

23. Stems ending in *s* (apparently *r*, because *s* changes to *r* between two vowels). The nominative has no case-ending, but usually ends in *s*, sometimes in *r*.

<i>mōs</i> , M., <i>custom</i>		<i>honor</i> , M., <i>honor</i>		<i>tempus</i> , N., <i>time</i>	
Stem <i>mōs-</i>		Stem <i>honōs-</i>		Stem <i>tempos-</i>	
SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.
N. <i>mōs</i>	<i>mōrēs</i>	<i>honor</i>	<i>honōrēs</i>	<i>tempus</i>	<i>tempora</i>
G. <i>mōris</i>	<i>mōrum</i>	<i>honōris</i>	<i>honōrum</i>	<i>temporis</i>	<i>temporum</i>
D. <i>mōri</i>	<i>mōribus</i>	<i>honōri</i>	<i>honōribus</i>	<i>tempori</i>	<i>temporibus</i>
A. <i>mōrem</i>	<i>mōrēs</i>	<i>honōrem</i>	<i>honōrēs</i>	<i>tempus</i>	<i>tempora</i>
V. <i>mōs</i>	<i>mōrēs</i>	<i>honor</i>	<i>honōrēs</i>	<i>tempus</i>	<i>tempora</i>
A. <i>mōre</i>	<i>mōribus</i>	<i>honore</i>	<i>honōribus</i>	<i>tempore</i>	<i>temporibus</i>

### B. i-STEMS

24. Here belong (1) masculine and feminine nouns ending in *-is* or *-ēs* if they have the same number of syllables in the genitive as in the nominative, and (2) neuters in *-e*, *-al*, *-ar*.

25. Theoretically the *i* should appear in all cases except the nominative and vocative plural of masculines and feminines, and the nominative, accusative, and vocative singular of some neuters; but this declension became confused with that of consonant stems, and no absolute rule can be given for the endings. Masculine and feminine nouns usually have acc., *-em*, abl., *-e*, acc. plural either *-ēs* or *-is*. Neuters have abl. *-i*.

<i>turris</i> , F., <i>tower</i>	<i>hostis</i> , M., F., <i>enemy</i>	<i>caedēs</i> , F., <i>slaughter</i>
Stem <i>turri-</i>	Stem <i>hosti-</i>	Stem <i>caedi-</i>
SINGULAR		
N. <i>turris</i>	<i>hostis</i>	<i>caedēs</i>
G. <i>turris</i>	<i>hostis</i>	<i>caedis</i>
D. <i>turri</i>	<i>hosti</i>	<i>caedi</i>
A. <i>turrim</i> or <i>-em</i>	<i>hostem</i>	<i>caedem</i>
V. <i>turris</i>	<i>hostis</i>	<i>caedēs</i>
A. <i>turri</i> or <i>-e</i>	<i>hoste</i>	<i>caede</i>
PLURAL		
N. <i>turrēs</i>	<i>hostēs</i>	<i>caedēs</i>
G. <i>turrium</i>	<i>hostium</i>	<i>caedium</i>
D. <i>turribus</i>	<i>hostibus</i>	<i>caedibus</i>
A. <i>turris</i> or <i>-ēs</i>	<i>hostēs</i> or <i>-is</i>	<i>caedēs</i> or <i>-is</i>
V. <i>turrēs</i>	<i>hostēs</i>	<i>caedēs</i>
A. <i>turribus</i>	<i>hostibus</i>	<i>caedibus</i>

**cubīle**, N., *couch*Stem **cubīli-****vectīgal**, N., *tax*Stem **vectīgāli-**

## SINGULAR

N. **cubīle****vectīgal**G. **cubīlis****vectīgālis**D. **cubīli****vectīgāli**A. **cubīle****vectīgal**V. **cubīle****vectīgal**A. **cubīli****vectīgāli**

## PLURAL

N. **cubīlia****vectīgālia**G. **cubīlium****vectīgālium**D. **cubīlibus****vectīgālibus**A. **cubīlia****vectīgālia**V. **cubīlia****vectīgālia**A. **cubīlibus****vectīgālibus**

a. Most nouns in **-is** are declined like **hostis**. **Arar** (for **Araris**), **m.**, *the Saone*, and **Liger** (for **Ligeris**), **m.**, *the Loire*, are declined in the singular like **turris**. **Ignis**, **m.**, *fire*, and **nāvis**, **f.**, *ship*, often have **abl.-l**. **Mare**, **N.**, *sea*, is declined like **cubīle**, but commonly has no other plural cases than nominative and accusative.

## C. MIXED STEMS

26. Some consonant stems have borrowed from **-i** stems the genitive plural in **-ium** and the accusative plural in **-is**. Here belong most monosyllables in **-s** and **-x** preceded by a consonant; most nouns in **-ns** and **-rs**; and a few nouns in **-tās**, **-tātis**.

**cliēns**, **m.**, *retainer*Stem **client-****urbs**, **f.**, *city*Stem **urb-**

SINGULAR PLURAL

N. **cliēns****clientēs**G. **clientis****clientium**D. **clienti****clientibus**A. **clientem****clientēs or -is**V. **cliēns****clientēs**A. **cliente****clientibus**

SINGULAR PLURAL

**urbs****urbēs****urbis****urbium****urbi****urbibus****urbem****urbēs or -is****urbs****urbēs****urbe****urbibus**

## D. IRREGULAR NOUNS

27. The following nouns present peculiarities of inflection:

senex, M., old man	os, N., bone	vis, F., force	bōs, M., F., ox, cow	Iuppiter, M., Jupiter
SINGULAR				
N. senex	os	vis	bōs	Iuppiter
G. senis	ossis	vis	bovis	Iovis
D. senī	ossi	vi	bovī	Iovī
A. senem	os	vim	bovem	Iovem
V. senex	os	vis	bōs	Iuppiter
A. sene	osse	vi	bove	Iove
PLURAL				
N. senēs	ossa	virēs	bovēs	
G. senum	ossium	virium	bovum or boum	
D. senibus	ossibus	viribus	bōbus or būbus	
A. senēs	ossa	virēs	bovēs	
V. senēs	ossa	virēs	bovēs	
A. senibus	ossibus	viribus	bōbus or būbus	

28. The gender of many nouns is shown by the meaning (13). There are numerous exceptions to the following rules.

- Masculine* are nouns in *ō* (except those in *-dō, -gō, -iō*) *-or, -ōs, -er, -es*.
- Feminine* are nouns in *-dō, -gō, -iō, -ās, -ēs, -is, -ūs, -ys, -x*, and in *-s* when preceded by a consonant.
- Neuter* are all others; namely, nouns in *-a, -e, -i, -y, -c, -l, -n, -t, -ar, -ur, -us*.

## FOURTH DECLENSION

29. Stem ends in *-u*; nominative masculine in *-us*, nominative neuter in *-ū*.

passus, M., pace		cornū, N., horn	
SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.
N. passus	passūs	cornū	cornua
G. passūs	passuum	cornūs	cornuum
D. passui	passibus	cornū	cornibus
A. passum	passūs	cornū	cornua
V. passus	passūs	cornū	cornua
A. passū	passibus	cornū	cornibus

- Domus, house, manus, hand, īdūs, Ides*, are feminine.
- The dative singular of nouns in *-us* sometimes ends in *-ū*.
- The dative and ablative plural of a few nouns sometimes end in *-ubus*.

d. **Domus**, *F.*, *house*, has some second declension forms. The forms in common use are:

	SING.	PLUR.
<i>Nom.</i>	domus	domūs
<i>Gen.</i>	domūs	domuum
<i>Dat.</i>	domui or domō	domibus
<i>Acc.</i>	domum	domōs
<i>Voc.</i>	domus	domūs
<i>Abl.</i>	domō or domū	domibus
<i>Loc.</i>	domi (at home)	

### FIFTH DECLENSION

30. Stem ends in **-ē**; nominative in **-ēs**. Usually feminine.  
*diēs, M., day* *rēs, F., thing*

	SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.
<i>N.</i>	diēs	diēs	rēs	rēs
<i>G.</i>	diēi	diērum	rei	rērum
<i>D.</i>	diēi	diēbus	rei	rēbus
<i>A.</i>	diem	diēs	rem	rēs
<i>V.</i>	diēs	diēs	rēs	rēs
<i>A.</i>	diē	diēbus	rē	rēbus

a. **Diēs** in the singular is either masculine or feminine (feminine usually in the sense of an appointed day or a long space of time); in the plural it is masculine. Its compounds are masculine.

b. The ending of the genitive and dative singular is **-ēi** after a vowel, **-ei** after a consonant. **-ē** is sometimes used instead of either.

c. **Diēs** and **rēs** are the only nouns of this declension that are declined throughout the plural. **Aciēs**, **spēs**, and a few others have nominative and accusative plural forms.

### ADJECTIVES

#### 31. ADJECTIVES OF THE FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS

*magnus, large*

SINGULAR			PLURAL		
<i>Mas.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Mas.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>N.</i>	magnus	magna	magnū	magnae	magna
<i>G.</i>	magnī	magnae	magnōrum	magnārum	magnōrum
<i>D.</i>	magnō	magnae	magnīs	magnīs	magnīs
<i>A.</i>	magnū	magnam	magnōs	magnās	magna
<i>V.</i>	magne	magna	magnī	magnae	magna
<i>A.</i>	magnō	magnā	magnīs	magnīs	magnīs

**liber, free**

SINGULAR			PLURAL		
Mas.	Fem.	Neut.	Mas.	Fem.	Neut.
N. liber	libera	liberum	liberī	liberae	libera
G. liberī	liberae	liberī	liberōrum	liberārum	liberōrum
D. liberō	liberae	liberō	liberīs	liberīs	liberīs
A. liberum	liberam	liberum	liberōs	liberās	libera
V. liber	libera	liberum	liberī	liberae	libera
A. liberō	liberā	liberō	liberīs	liberīs	liberīs

**noster, our**

SINGULAR			PLURAL		
Mas.	Fem.	Neut.	Mas.	Fem.	Neut.
N. noster	nostra	nostrum	nostrī	nostrae	nostra
G. nostrī	nostrae	nostrī	nostrōrum	nostrārum	nostrōrum
D. nostrō	nostrae	nostrō	nostrīs	nostrīs	nostrīs
A. nostrum	nostram	nostrum	nostrōs	nostrās	nostra
V. noster	nostra	nostrum	nostrī	nostrae	nostra
A. nostrō	nostrā	nostrō	nostrīs	nostrīs	nostrīs

**ADJECTIVES WITH GENITIVE IN -ius.**

32. Nine adjectives of the first and second declensions have the genitive singular in **-ius** (in **alter** usually **-ius**) and the dative singular in **-ī** in all genders. These are **alius**, *another*, **sōlus**, *only*, **tōtus**, *whole*, **ūllus**, *any*, **nūllus**, *no*, **ūnus**, *one*, **alter**, *the other*, **uter**, *which* (of two), **neuter**, *neither*. In the plural the case-endings of these adjectives are exactly the same as in **magnus**. Note the ending **-ud** in the neuter of **alius**.

**SINGULAR**

Mas.	Fem.	Neut.	Mas.	Fem.	Neut.
N. ūnus	ūna	ūnum	tōtus	tōta	tōtum
G. ūnius	ūnius	ūnius	tōtius	tōtius	tōtius
D. ūnī	ūnī	ūnī	tōtī	tōtī	tōtī
A. ūnum	ūnam	ūnum	tōtum	tōtam	tōtum
A. ūnō	ūnā	ūnō	tōtō	tōtā	tōtō
N. alius	alia	aliud	alter	altera	alterum
G. alius	alius	alius	alterius	alterius	alterius
D. aliī	aliī	aliī	alterī	alterī	alterī
A. alium	aliām	aliud	alterum	alteram	alterum
A. aliō	aliā	aliō	alterō	alterā	alterō

## ADJECTIVES OF THE THIRD DECLENSION

33. There are both consonant stems and *i*-stems. Adjectives of *three terminations* have a special form in the nominative singular for each gender; adjectives of *two terminations* have one form in the nominative singular for the masculine and feminine, another for the neuter; adjectives of *one termination* have the same form in the nominative singular for all genders. Except comparatives, all adjectives of two or three terminations have only *-i* in the ablative singular.

## A. CONSONANT STEMS

## 34. Two Terminations.

fortior, *braver*

SING.		PLUR.	
Mas. and Fem.	Neuter	Mas. and Fem.	Neuter
N. fortior	fortius	fortiōrēs	fortiōra
G. fortiōris	fortiōris	fortiōrum	fortiōrum
D. fortiōri	fortiōri	fortiōribus	fortiōribus
A. fortiōrem	fortius	fortiōrēs	fortiōra
V. fortior	fortius	fortiōrēs	fortiōra
A. fortiōre	fortiōre	fortiōribus	fortiōribus

a. Here belong all comparatives; but *plūs*, *more*, is irregular and defective. In the singular it is used only as a noun.

SING.		PLUR.	
Neuter	Mas. and Fem.	Neuter	
N. plūs	plūrēs	plūra	
G. plūris	plūrium	plūrium	
D. ....	plūribus	plūribus	
A. plūs	plūrēs or -is	plūra	
A. plūre	plūribus	plūribus	

## 35. One termination.

vetus, *old*

SING.		PLUR.	
Mas. and Fem.	Neut.	Mas. and Fem.	Neut.
N. vetus	vetus	veterēs	vetera
G. veteris	veteris	veterum	veterum
D. veteri	veteri	veteribus	veteribus
A. veterem	vetus	veterēs	vetera
V. vetus	vetus	veterēs	vetera
A. vetera	vetera	veteribus	veteribus

a. Here belongs *princeps*, *chief*. *Dives*, *rich*, also belongs here, but has *dītia* for the nominative, accusative, and vocative neuter plural.

## B. i-STEMS

## 36. Three terminations.

*acer*, sharp

SING.			PLUR.		
Mas.	Fem.	Neut.	Mas.	Fem.	Neut.
N. <i>acer</i>	<i>ācris</i>	<i>ācre</i>	<i>ācrēs</i>	<i>ācrēs</i>	<i>ācria</i>
G. <i>ācris</i>	<i>ācris</i>	<i>ācris</i>	<i>ācrium</i>	<i>ācrium</i>	<i>ācrium</i>
D. <i>ācrī</i>	<i>ācrī</i>	<i>ācrī</i>	<i>ācribus</i>	<i>ācribus</i>	<i>ācribus</i>
A. <i>ācrem</i>	<i>ācrem</i>	<i>ācre</i>	<i>ācrēs or -is</i>	<i>ācrēs or -is</i>	<i>ācria</i>
V. <i>acer</i>	<i>ācris</i>	<i>ācre</i>	<i>ācrēs</i>	<i>ācrēs</i>	<i>ācria</i>
A. <i>ācrī</i>	<i>ācrī</i>	<i>ācrī</i>	<i>ācribus</i>	<i>ācribus</i>	<i>ācribus</i>

a. Here belong *celeber*, *famous*, *equester*, *equestrian*, *pedester*, *pedestrian*; names of months in *-ber*; and a few others.

## 37. Two terminations.

*omnis*, all

SING.		PLUR.	
Mas. and Fem.	Neut.	Mas. and Fem.	Neut.
N. <i>omnis</i>	<i>omne</i>	<i>omnēs</i>	<i>omnia</i>
G. <i>omnis</i>	<i>omnis</i>	<i>omnium</i>	<i>omnium</i>
D. <i>omnī</i>	<i>omnī</i>	<i>omnibus</i>	<i>omnibus</i>
A. <i>omnem</i>	<i>omne</i>	<i>omnēs or -is</i>	<i>omnia</i>
V. <i>omnis</i>	<i>omne</i>	<i>omnēs</i>	<i>omnia</i>
A. <i>omnī</i>	<i>omnī</i>	<i>omnibus</i>	<i>omnibus</i>

a. Here belong all adjectives in *-is*, *-e*.

## 38. One termination.

*audāx*, bold

SING.		PLUR.	
Mas. and Fem.	Neut.	Mas. and Fem.	Neut.
N. <i>audāx</i>	<i>audāx</i>	<i>audācēs</i>	<i>audācia</i>
G. <i>audācis</i>	<i>audācis</i>	<i>audācium</i>	<i>audācium</i>
D. <i>audācī</i>	<i>audācī</i>	<i>audācibus</i>	<i>audācibus</i>
A. <i>audācem</i>	<i>audāx</i>	<i>audācēs or -is</i>	<i>audācia</i>
V. <i>audāx</i>	<i>audāx</i>	<i>audācēs</i>	<i>audācia</i>
A. <i>audācī</i>	<i>audācī</i>	<i>audācibus</i>	<i>audācibus</i>

*oriēns, rising*

SING.		PLUR.	
<i>Mas. and Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Mas. and Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>N.</i> oriēns	oriēns	orientēs	orientia
<i>G.</i> orientis	orientis	orientium	orientium
<i>D.</i> orientī	orientī	orientibus	orientibus
<i>A.</i> orientem	oriēns	orientēs or -is	orientia
<i>V.</i> oriēns	oriēns	orientēs	orientia
<i>A.</i> oriente or -ī	oriente or -ī	orientibus	orientibus

a. Here belong most adjectives of one termination, and all participles in *-āns* and *-ēns*. Participles usually have the ablative singular in *-ī* only when used as adjectives, in *-ē* when used as participles or nouns.

## COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES

39. The regular comparative endings are *-ior, -ius*; superlative, *-issimus, -a, -um*. They are added to the base of the positive (found by removing the case-ending from the genitive singular). Examples: *altus, high; altior, -ius, higher; altissimus, -a, -um, highest; fortis, brave; fortior, braver; fortissimus, bravest.*

40. Adjectives in *-er* form the comparative regularly, but form the superlative by adding *-rimus* to the *nominative* of the positive. Example: *ācer, sharp* (base, *ācr-*), *ācrior, ācerrimus.*

41. Most adjectives in *-ilis* are compared regularly. Six, while forming the comparative regularly, form the superlative by adding *-limus* to the base of the positive. They are *facilis, easy; difficilis, difficult; similis, like; dissimilis, unlike; humilis, low; gracilis, slender.* Example: *facilis, faciliior, facillimus.*

42.

## IRREGULAR COMPARISON

*bonus, melior, optimus, good, better, best.*

*malus, peior, pessimus, bad, worse, worst.*

*magnus, maior, maximus, great, greater, greatest.*

*parvus, minor, minimus, small, less, least.*

*multus, plūs, plūrimus, much, more, most.*

*dexter, dexterior, dextimus, on the right. dexterous, etc.*

## DEFECTIVE COMPARISON

43. The following comparatives and superlatives appear without a positive because formed from stems not used as adjectives:

(*citrā*, adv., *on this side*) *citerior*, *citimus*, *hither*, *hithermost*.

(*dē*, prep., *down*) *dēterior*, *dēterrīmus*, *worse*, *worst*.

(*intrā*, prep., *in, within*) *interior*, *intimus*, *inner*, *inmost*.

(*prae*, prep., *before*) *prior*, *prīmus*, *former*, *first*.

(*prope*, adv., *near*) *propior*, *proximus*, *nearer*, *next*.

(*ultrā*, adv., *beyond*) *ulterior*, *ultimus*, *farther*, *farthest*.

44. Of the following the positive forms are rare, except when used as nouns (generally in the plural):

*exterus*, *exterior*, *extrēmus* (*extimus*), *outer*, *outmost*.

*inferus*, *inferior*, *infīmus* (*īmus*), *lower*, *lowest*.

*posterus*, *posterior*, *postrēmus* (*postumus*), *latter*, *last*.

*superus*, *superior*, *suprēmus* (*summus*), *higher*, *highest*.

## COMPARISON BY ADVERBS

45. Most adjectives in *-us* preceded by a vowel, and many others, form the comparative and superlative by using the adverbs *magis*, *more*, and *maximē*, *most*. Example: *idōneus*, *suitable*; *magis idōneus*, *more suitable*; *maximē idōneus*, *most suitable*.

## COMPARISON OF ADVERBS

46. Most adverbs are formed from adjectives in all the degrees of comparison.

a. The *positive* is formed from adjectives of the first and second declensions by adding *-ē* to the base; as *lātus*, *wide*, *lātē*, *widely*: from adjectives of the third declension by adding *-ter* or *-iter* to the base, except that adjectives whose base ends in *nt* add only *-er*; as *audāx*, *audācis*, *bold*, *audācter*, *boldly*; *fortis*, *brave*, *fortiter*, *bravely*; *prūdēns*, *prūdētis*, *prudent*, *prūdentē*, *prudently*. But the neuter accusative singular of adjectives of all declensions may be used adverbially; as *multum*, *much*, *facile*, *easily*.

b. The *comparative* is the accusative singular neuter of the comparative of the adjective; as *lātius*, *more widely*, *audācius*, *more boldly*, *fortius*, *more bravely*, *prūdentius*, *more prudently*, *plūs*, *more*, *facilius*, *more easily*.

c. The *superlative* is formed by adding *-ē* to the base of the superlative of the adjective; or, less often, is its accusative singular neuter; as *lātissimē*, *most widely*, *audācissimē*, *most boldly*, *fortissimē*, *most bravely*, *prudentissimē*, *most prudently*, *plūrimum*, *most*, *facillimē*, *most easily*.

### NUMERALS

47. Numeral adjectives are of three classes: *cardinals*, answering the question *how many?* as *one, two*, etc.; *ordinals*, answering the question *which in order?* as, *first, second*, etc.; and *distributives*, answering the question *how many each?* as, *one each, two each*, etc.

<i>Roman Numerals</i>	<i>Cardinal</i>	<i>Ordinal</i>	<i>Distributive</i>
I.	ūnus, -a, -um	prīmus, -a, -um	singulī, -ae, -a
II.	duo, -ae, -o	secundus or alter	bīnī
III.	trēs, tria	tertius	ternī or trīnī
IV.	quattuor	quārtus	quaternī
V.	quīnque	quīntus	quīnī
VI.	sex	sextus	sēnī
VII.	septem	septimus	septēnī
VIII.	octō	octāvus	octōnī
IX.	novem	nōnus	novēnī
X.	decem	decimus	dēnī
XI.	ūndecim	ūndecimus	ūndēnī
XII.	duodecim	duodecimus	duodēnī
XIII.	tredecim	tertius decimus	ternī dēnī
XIV.	quattuordecim	quārtus decimus	quaternī dēnī
XV.	quīndecim	quīntus decimus	quīnī dēnī
XVI.	sēdecim	sextus decimus	sēnī dēnī
XVII.	septendecim	septimus decimus	septēnī dēnī
XVIII.	duodēvigintī	duodēvicēsīmus	duodēvicēnī
XIX.	ūndēvigintī	ūndēvicēsīmus	ūndēvicēnī
XX.	vigintī	vicēsīmus	vicēnī
XXI.	ūnus et vigintī (vigintī ūnus)	vicēsīmus prīmus	vicēnī singulī
XXVIII.	duodētrīgintā	duodētricēsīmus	duodētricēnī
XXIX.	ūndētrīgintā	ūndētricēsīmus	ūndētricēnī
XXX.	trīgintā	tricēsīmus	tricēnī
XL.	quadrāgintā	quadrāgēsīmus	quadrāgēnī
L.	quīnquāgintā	quīnquāgēsīmus	quīnquāgēnī
LX.	sexāgintā	sexāgēsīmus	sexāgēnī

LXX. septuāgintā	septuāgēsīmus	septuāgēnī
LXXX. octōgintā	octōgēsīmus	octōgēnī
XC. nōnāgintā	nōnāgēsīmus	nōnāgēnī
C. centum	centēsīmus	centēnī
CI. centum (et)	centēsīmus (et)	centēnī (et)
ūnus	prīmus	singulī
CC. ducentī, -ae, -a	ducentēsīmus	ducēnī
CCC. trecentī	trecentēsīmus	trecēnī
CCCC. quadringentī	quadringentēsīmus	quadringēnī
D. quīngentī	quīngentēsīmus	quīngēnī
DC. sescentī	sescentēsīmus	sescēnī
DCC. septingentī	septingentēsīmus	septingēnī
DCCC. octingentī	octingentēsīmus	octingēnī
DCCCC. nōngentī	nōngentēsīmus	nōngēnī
M. mille	millēsīmus	singula mīlia
MM. duo mīlia	bis millēsīmus	bīna mīlia

a. The ending *-ēnsīmus* is often used for *-ēsīmus*.

48. Of the cardinals, *ūnus*, *duo*, and *trēs* are declined; *quattuor* to *centum*, inclusive, are indeclinable; *ducentī* to *nōngentī*, inclusive, are declined like the plural of *magnus* (31); *mīlle* as an adjective is indeclinable, as a substantive is declined like the plural of *cubīle* (25) and generally spelled *mīlia*. Ordinals are declined like *magnus*, distributives like the plural of *magnus*.

49. For the declension of *ūnus* see 32. Its plural usually means *only* or *alone*, but is used in the sense of *one* with nouns used only in the plural; as, *ūna castra*, *one camp*. *Duo* and *trēs* are declined as follows:

duo, two			trēs, three	
Mas.	Fem.	Neut.	M. and F.	Neut.
N. duo	duae	duo	trēs	tria
G. duōrum	duārum	duōrum	trium	trium
D. duōbus	duābus	duōbus	tribus	tribus
A. duōs, duo	duās	duo	trēs, trīs	tria
A. duōbus	duābus	duōbus	tribus	tribus

50. The numbers intermediate between those given in the table are expressed as follows: In a combination of tens and units the units may precede, followed by *et*; as *trēs et quadrāgintā*, *three and forty*; or the tens may precede without an *et*; as *quadrāgintā trēs*, *forty three*. In other combinations of two numerals the higher precedes, with or without *et*; as *ducentī (et) vīgintī*, *two hundred and twenty*. In com-

binations of three or more numerals, the order is as in English, without *et*; as *duo milia sescenti viginti sex*, *two thousand six hundred and twenty six*.

## PRONOUNS

### 51. PERSONAL PRONOUNS

First person, <i>ego, I</i>		Second person, <i>tū, you (thou)</i>	
SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.
<i>N. ego</i>	<i>nōs</i>	<i>tū</i>	<i>vōs</i>
<i>G. mei</i>	{ <i>nostrum</i> <i>nostrī</i>	<i>tui</i>	{ <i>vestrum</i> <i>vestrī</i>
<i>D. mihi</i>	<i>nōbīs</i>	<i>tibi</i>	<i>vōbīs</i>
<i>A. mē</i>	<i>nōs</i>	<i>tē</i>	<i>vōs</i>
<i>A. mē</i>	<i>nōbīs</i>	<i>tē</i>	<i>vōbīs</i>

a. There is no personal pronoun of the third person. Its place is taken either by a demonstrative pronoun, usually *is, he, ea, she, id, it, 57*; or, when *him, them, etc.*, refer to the subject (163), by the reflexive pronouns.

b. *nostrum* and *vestrum* are the forms used as partitive genitives (101); *nostrī* and *vestrī*, as objective genitives (98).

c. The preposition *cum* is enclitic with personal pronouns; as, *nobiscum, with us*.

### REFLEXIVE PRONOUNS

52. A reflexive pronoun can neither be the subject of a finite verb nor agree with such a subject: therefore there can be no nominative. For the first and second persons the personal pronouns are used as reflexives. For the third person there is a special pronoun.

First person, <i>meī, of myself</i>		Second person, <i>tui, of yourself</i>		Third person, <i>sui, of himself, etc.</i>	
SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.
<i>G. mei</i>	{ <i>nostrum</i> <i>nostrī</i>	<i>tui</i>	{ <i>vestrum</i> <i>vestrī</i>	<i>sui</i>	<i>sui</i>
<i>D. mihi</i>	<i>nōbīs</i>	<i>tibi</i>	<i>vōbīs</i>	<i>sibi</i>	<i>sibi</i>
<i>A. mē</i>	<i>nōs</i>	<i>tē</i>	<i>vōs</i>	<i>sē</i>	<i>sē</i>
<i>A. mē</i>	<i>nōbīs</i>	<i>tē</i>	<i>vōbīs</i>	<i>sē</i>	<i>sē</i>

a. The preposition *cum* is enclitic with reflexive pronouns; as, *sēcum, with himself*.

## 53.

## POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS

1st pers. **meus, -a, -um, my**2d pers. **tuus, -a, -um, your (of one)****noster, -tra, -trum, our****vester, -tra, -trum, your (of more than one)**

3d pers.	{	<b>suus, -a, -um, his, her, its (when referring to the subject)</b>	<b>suus, -a, -um, their (when referring to the subject)</b>
		<b>eius (gen. sing. of is) his, her, its (when not referring to the subject)</b>	<b>eōrum, eārum, eōrum (gen. plur. of is) their (when not referring to the subject)</b>

## DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS

## 54.

**hic, this (near the speaker)**

SING.			PLUR.		
Mas.	Fem.	Neut.	Mas.	Fem.	Neut.
N. <b>hic</b>	<b>haec</b>	<b>hoc</b>	<b>hī</b>	<b>hae</b>	<b>haec</b>
G. <b>huius</b>	<b>huius</b>	<b>huius</b>	<b>hōrum</b>	<b>hārum</b>	<b>hōrum</b>
D. <b>huic</b>	<b>huic</b>	<b>huic</b>	<b>hīs</b>	<b>hīs</b>	<b>hīs</b>
A. <b>hunc</b>	<b>hanc</b>	<b>hoc</b>	<b>hōs</b>	<b>hās</b>	<b>haec</b>
A. <b>hōc</b>	<b>hāc</b>	<b>hōc</b>	<b>hīs</b>	<b>hīs</b>	<b>hīs</b>

a. The nominative and accusative neuter, **hoc**, is pronounced **hocc** when the next word begins with a vowel. The syllable is therefore long. See 6, a.

## 55.

**iste, that (near the person spoken to)**

SING.			PLUR.		
Mas.	Fem.	Neut.	Mas.	Fem.	Neut.
N. <b>iste</b>	<b>ista</b>	<b>istud</b>	<b>istī</b>	<b>istae</b>	<b>ista</b>
G. <b>istius</b>	<b>istius</b>	<b>istius</b>	<b>istōrum</b>	<b>istārum</b>	<b>istōrum</b>
D. <b>istī</b>	<b>istī</b>	<b>istī</b>	<b>istīs</b>	<b>istīs</b>	<b>istīs</b>
A. <b>istum</b>	<b>istam</b>	<b>istud</b>	<b>istōs</b>	<b>istās</b>	<b>ista</b>
A. <b>istō</b>	<b>istā</b>	<b>istō</b>	<b>istīs</b>	<b>istīs</b>	<b>istīs</b>

56. **Ille, that (something more remote)** is declined like **iste**.

## 57.

**is, this, that, he, she, it (unemphatic)**

SING.			PLUR.		
Mas.	Fem.	Neut.	Mas.	Fem.	Neut.
N. <b>is</b>	<b>ea</b>	<b>id</b>	<b>īi, eī</b>	<b>eae</b>	<b>ea</b>
G. <b>eius</b>	<b>eius</b>	<b>eius</b>	<b>eōrum</b>	<b>eārum</b>	<b>eōrum</b>
D. <b>eī</b>	<b>eī</b>	<b>eī</b>	<b>īis, eīs</b>	<b>īis eīs</b>	<b>īis, eīs</b>
A. <b>eum</b>	<b>eam</b>	<b>id</b>	<b>eōs</b>	<b>eās</b>	<b>ea</b>
I. <b>eō</b>	<b>eā</b>	<b>eō</b>	<b>īis, eīs</b>	<b>īis, eīs</b>	<b>īis eīs</b>

## 58.

*Idem, the same*

	SING.			PLUR.		
	<i>Mas.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Mas.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>N. Idem</i>		<i>eadem</i>	<i>idem</i>	<i>Idem or eidem</i>	<i>eadem</i>	<i>eadem</i>
<i>G. eiusdem</i>		<i>eiusdem</i>	<i>eiusdem</i>	<i>eōrundem</i>	<i>eārundem</i>	<i>eōrundem</i>
<i>D. eidem</i>		<i>eidem</i>	<i>eidem</i>	<i>Isdem or eisdem</i>	<i>Isdem or eisdem</i>	<i>Isdem or eisdem</i>
<i>A. eundem</i>		<i>eandem</i>	<i>idem</i>	<i>eōsdem</i>	<i>eāsdem</i>	<i>eadem</i>
<i>A. eōdem</i>		<i>eādem</i>	<i>eōdem</i>	<i>Isdem or eisdem</i>	<i>Isdem or eisdem</i>	<i>Isdem or eisdem</i>

## 59.

## THE INTENSIVE PRONOUN

*ipse, self*

	SING.			PLUR.		
	<i>Mas.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Mas.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>N. ipse</i>		<i>ipsa</i>	<i>ipsum</i>	<i>ipsi</i>	<i>ipsae</i>	<i>ipsa</i>
<i>G. ipsius</i>		<i>ipsius</i>	<i>ipsius</i>	<i>ipsōrum</i>	<i>ipsārum</i>	<i>ipsōrum</i>
<i>D. ipsi</i>		<i>ipsi</i>	<i>ipsi</i>	<i>ipsis</i>	<i>ipsis</i>	<i>ipsis</i>
<i>A. ipsum</i>		<i>ipsam</i>	<i>ipsum</i>	<i>ipsōs</i>	<i>ipsās</i>	<i>ipsa</i>
<i>A. ipsō</i>		<i>ipsā</i>	<i>ipsō</i>	<i>ipsis</i>	<i>ipsis</i>	<i>ipsis</i>

## 60.

## THE RELATIVE PRONOUN

*qui, who*

	SING.			PLUR.		
	<i>Mas.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Mas.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>N. qui</i>		<i>quae</i>	<i>quod</i>	<i>qui</i>	<i>quae</i>	<i>quae</i>
<i>G. cuius</i>		<i>cuius</i>	<i>cuius</i>	<i>quōrum</i>	<i>quārum</i>	<i>quōrum</i>
<i>D. cui</i>		<i>cui</i>	<i>cui</i>	<i>quibus</i>	<i>quibus</i>	<i>quibus</i>
<i>A. quem</i>		<i>quam</i>	<i>quod</i>	<i>quōs</i>	<i>quās</i>	<i>quae</i>
<i>A. quō</i>		<i>quā</i>	<i>quō</i>	<i>quibus</i>	<i>quibus</i>	<i>quibus</i>

a. *Quicumque* and *quisquis*, *whoever*, are generalizing relatives. The *qui* of *quicumque* is declined regularly. *Quisquis*, *quicquid* (*quidquid*), and *quōquō* are the only common forms of *quisquis*.

b. The preposition *cum* is usually enclitic with the relative pronoun, as *quibuscum*, *with whom*.

## 61.

## INTERROGATIVE PRONOUNS

*Qui*, *quae*, *quod*, the adjective *what?* is declined like the relative. *Quis*, *quid*, the substantive *who? what?* is used in the singular.

quis, *who?*

SING.

*Mas. and Fem.**Neut.*

N. quis

quid

G. cuius

cuius

D. cui

cui

A. quem

quid

A. quō

quō

a. The enclitic **-nam** is sometimes added to an interrogative to strengthen it; **quisnam**, *who, pray?*

b. **Cum** is usually enclitic with the interrogative pronoun.

## 62.

## INDEFINITE PRONOUNS

The indefinite pronouns are **quis**, **qui**, and their compounds. **Quis** and **qui** in this sense are in general declined like the interrogatives.

## SUBSTANTIVE

**quis**, **quid**, *any one***aliquis**, **aliquid**, *some one***quispiam**, **quidpiam**, *some one*

**quisquam**, **quicquam** (**quidquam**),  
*any one* (abl. sing. and entire  
 plural supplied by **ullus**, **-a**, **-um**)

**quīvis**, **quaevis**, **quidvis** }  
**quīlibet**, **quaelibet**, **quidlibet** }  
*any one etc., you like*

**quidam**, **quaedam**, **quiddam**, *a cer-  
 tain man*

**quisque**, **quidque**, *each*

## ADJECTIVE

**qui**, **quae** (**qua**), **quod**, *any*  
**aliqui**, **aliqua**, **aliquod**, *some*  
**quispiam**, **quaequam**, **quodpiam**,  
*some*

(adjective supplied by **ullus**)

**quīvis**, **quaevis**, **quodvis** }  
**quīlibet**, **quaelibet**, **quodlibet** }  
*any you like*

**quidam**, **quaedam**, **quoddam**, *a  
 certain*

**quisque**, **quaeque**, **quodque**, *each*

a. In **qui** and **aliqui** the nominative and accusative plural neuter are **qua** (or **quae**) and **aliqua**.

b. In the declension of **quidam**, **m** becomes **n** before **d**; as **quendam**.

## VERBS

63. There are four conjugations of Latin verbs, distinguished from one another by the final vowel of the stem, best seen in the present infinitive.

CONJUGATION	FINAL VOWEL OF STEM	PRESENT INFINITIVE
I.	ā	-āre
II.	ē	-ēre
III.	e (i, u)	-ere
IV.	i	-īre

64. All forms of a verb are formed on one or another of three stems,—the present stem, the perfect stem, and the supine stem. In regular verbs the perfect and supine stems are based on the present stem, but in some irregular verbs they are formed on distinct roots.

a. On the present stem are formed: *active and passive*,—present, imperfect, and future indicative; present and imperfect subjunctive; imperative; present infinitive: *active*,—present participle; gerund: *passive*,—gerundive.

b. On the perfect stem are formed: *active*,—perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect indicative; perfect and pluperfect subjunctive; perfect infinitive.

c. On the supine stem are formed: *active and passive*,—future infinitive; *active*,—future participle; supine: *passive*,—perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect indicative; perfect and pluperfect subjunctive; perfect infinitive; perfect participle.

65. The principal parts are forms which show to which conjugation a verb belongs and what each of its stems is. They are, in the active, (1) the first person singular present indicative (as the first form of the verb), (2) the present infinitive (to indicate the conjugation and give the present stem), (3) the first person singular perfect indicative (to give the perfect stem), (4) the supine (to give the supine stem).

For example, the principal parts of *laudō* are :

*laudō, laudāre* (present stem, *laudā*).  
*laudāvī* (perfect stem, *laudāv*).  
*laudātum* (supine stem, *laudāt*).

The supine of the majority of verbs is not found in Latin literature so that other forms of the verb are often given instead of the supine. But no one form is found for every verb, and it is simpler to give the supine always.

In the passive the principal parts are (1) the first person singular present indicative, (2) the present infinitive, (3) the first person singular perfect indicative.

# 66. CONJUGATION OF *SUM* (irregular verb)

Principal parts: *sum, esse, fui*

## INDICATIVE

### *Present*

SING.	PLUR.
<i>sum</i>	<i>sumus</i>
<i>es</i>	<i>estis</i>
<i>est</i>	<i>sunt</i>

### *Imperfect*

<i>eram</i>	<i>erāmus</i>
<i>erās</i>	<i>erātis</i>
<i>erat</i>	<i>erant</i>

### *Future*

<i>erō</i>	<i>erimus</i>
<i>eris</i>	<i>eritis</i>
<i>erit</i>	<i>erunt</i>

### *Perfect*

<i>fui</i>	<i>fuiinus</i>
<i>fuiſti</i>	<i>fuiſtis</i>
<i>fuit</i>	<i>fuerunt or -ēre</i>

### *Pluperfect*

<i>fueram</i>	<i>fuerāmus</i>
<i>fuerās</i>	<i>fuerātis</i>
<i>fuerat</i>	<i>fuerant</i>

### *Future Perfect*

<i>fuerō</i>	<i>fuerimus</i>
<i>fueris</i>	<i>fueritis</i>
<i>fuerit</i>	<i>fuerint</i>

## SUBJUNCTIVE

### *Present*

SING.	PLUR.
<i>ſim</i>	<i>ſimus</i>
<i>ſis</i>	<i>ſitis</i>
<i>ſit</i>	<i>ſint</i>

### *Imperfect*

<i>eſſem (or forem)</i>	<i>eſſēmus (or forēmus)</i>
<i>eſſēs (or forēs)</i>	<i>eſſētis (or forētis)</i>
<i>eſſet (or foret)</i>	<i>eſſent (or forent)</i>

### *Perfect*

<i>fuerim</i>	<i>fuerimus</i>
<i>fueris</i>	<i>fueritis</i>
<i>fuerit</i>	<i>fuerint</i>

### *Pluperfect*

<i>ſuiſſem</i>	<i>ſuiſſēmus</i>
<i>ſuiſſēs</i>	<i>ſuiſſētis</i>
<i>ſuiſſet</i>	<i>ſuiſſent</i>

## IMPERATIVE

*Present*

2d pers. es este

*Future*

2d pers. estō estōte

3d pers. estō suntō

## PARTICIPLE

*Fut. futūrus*

## INFINITIVE

*Pres. esse**Perf. fuisse**Fut. futūrus (esse) or fore*

## 67.

## FIRST CONJUGATION

## ACTIVE VOICE

Principal parts: laudō, laudāre, laudāvī, laudātum

## INDICATIVE

*Present*

SING.	PLUR.
laudō	laudāmus
laudās	laudātis
laudat	laudant

*Imperfect*

laudābam	laudābāmus
laudābās	laudābātis
laudābat	laudābant

*Future*

laudābō	laudābimus
laudābis	laudābitis
laudābit	laudābunt

*Perfect*

laudāvī	laudāvimus
laudāvistī	laudāvistis
laudāvit	laudāverunt

or -ēre

*Pluperfect*

laudāveram	laudāverāmus
laudāverās	laudāverātis
laudāverat	laudāverant

*Future Perfect*

laudāverō	laudāverimus
laudāveris	laudāveritis
laudāverit	laudāverint

## SUBJUNCTIVE

*Present*

SING.	PLUR.
laudem	laudēmus
laudēs	laudētis
laudet	laudent

*Imperfect*

laudārem	laudārēmus
laudārēs	laudārētis
laudāret	laudārent

*Perfect*

laudāverim	laudāverimus
laudāveris	laudāveritis
laudāverit	laudāverint

*Pluperfect*

laudāvissem	laudāvissēmus
laudāvissēs	laudāvissētis
laudāvisset	laudāvissent

## IMPERATIVE

*Present*

*pres* 2d pers. laudā laudāte

*Future*

2d pers. laudātō laudātōte

3d pers. laudātō laudantō

## PARTICIPLE

*pres* — *Pres.* laudāns

— *Fut.* laudātūrus

## INFINITIVE

*Pres.* laudāre

*Perf.* laudāvisse *pres*

*Fut.* laudātūrus (esse)

## SUPINE

*Acc.* laudātum

*Abl.* laudatū

## GERUND

*Gen.* laudandi

*Dat.* laudandō

*Acc.* laudandum

*Abl.* laudandō

## FIRST CONJUGATION

## PASSIVE VOICE

Principal parts: laudor, laudārī, laudātus sum

## INDICATIVE

*Present*

## SING.

laudor

## PLUR.

laudāmur

laudāris or -re

laudāmini

laudātur

laudantur

*Imperfect*

laudābar

laudābāmur

laudābaris or -re

laudābāmini

laudābātur

laudābantur

*Future*

laudābor

laudābimur

laudāberis or -re

laudābimini

laudābitur

laudābuntur

*Perfect*

laudātus sum

laudātī sumus

laudātus es

laudātī estis

laudātus est

laudātī sunt

## SUBJUNCTIVE

*Present*

## SING.

lauder

laudēris or -re

laudētur

## PLUR.

laudēmur

laudēmini

laudentur

*Imperfect*

laudārer

laudārēris or -re

laudārētur

laudārēmur

laudārēmini

laudārentur

*Perfect*

laudātus sim

laudātī simus

laudātus sis

laudātī sitis

laudātus sit

laudātī sint

*Pluperfect*

laudātus eram	laudāti erāmus
laudātus erās	laudāti erātis
laudātus erat	laudāti erant

*Pluperfect*

laudātus essem	laudāti essēmus
laudātus essēs	laudāti essētis
laudātus esset	laudāti essent

*Future Perfect*

laudātus erō	laudāti erimus
laudātus eris	laudāti eritis
laudātus erit	laudāti erunt

## IMPERATIVE

*Present*

2d pers. laudāre	laudāmini
------------------	-----------

*Future*

2d pers. laudātor	
3d pers. laudātor	laudantor

## INFINITIVE

Pres. laudārī — *pres*

Perf. laudātus esse

Fut. laudātum iri

## PARTICIPLE

— Perf. laudātus

*pres* — Fut. laudandus

## 68.

## SECOND CONJUGATION

## ACTIVE VOICE

Principal parts: moneō, monēre, monui, monitum

## INDICATIVE

*Present*

SING.	PLUR.
moneō	monēmus
monēs	monētis
monet	monent

*Imperfect*

monēbam	monēbāmus
monēbās	monēbātis
monēbat	monēbant

*Future*

monēbō	monēbimus
monēbis	monēbitis
monēbit	monēbunt

## SUBJUNCTIVE

*Present*

SING.	PLUR.
moneam	monēāmus
moneās	monēātis
moneat	monēant

*Imperfect*

monērem	monērēmus
monērēs	monērētis
monēret	monērent

*Perfect*

monui	monuimus
monuisti	monuistis
monuit	monuērunt or -ēre

*Perfect*

monuerim	monuerimus
monueris	monueritis
monuerit	monuerint

*Pluperfect*

monueram	monuerāmus
monuerās	monuerātis
monuerat	monuerant

*Pluperfect*

monuissem	monuissēmus
monuissēs	monuissētis
monuisset	monuissent

*Future Perfect*

monuerō	monuerimus
monueris	monueritis
monuerit	monuerint

## IMPERATIVE

*Present*

2d pers. monē monēte

*Future*

2d pers. monētō monētōte  
3d pers. monētō monentō

## INFINITIVE

Pres. monēre ✓

Perf. monuisse

Fut. monitūrus (esse) ✓

## PARTICIPLE

✓ Pres. monēns Fut. monitūrus ✓

## SUPINE

Acc. monitum Abl. monitū ✓

## GERUND

Gen. monendi

Dat. monendō

Acc. monendum

Abl. monendō

## SECOND CONJUGATION

## PASSIVE VOICE

Principal parts: moneor, monēri, monitus sum

## INDICATIVE

*Present*

SING.	PLUR.
moneor	monēmur
monēris or -re	monēmini
monētur	monentur

## SUBJUNCTIVE

*Present*

SING.	PLUR.
monear	moneāmur
moneāris or -re	moneāmini
moneātur	moneantur

*Imperfect*

monēbar	monēbāmur
monēbāris or -re	monēbāminī
monēbātur	monēbantur

*Future*

monēbor	monēbimur
monēberis or -re	monēbiminī
monēbitur	monēbuntur

*Perfect*

monitus sum	monitī sumus
monitus es	monitī estis
monitus est	monitī sunt

*Pluperfect*

monitus eram	monitī erāmus
monitus erās	monitī erātis
monitus erat	monitī erant

*Future Perfect*

monitus erō	monitī erimus
monitus eris	monitī eritis
monitus erit	monitī erunt

## IMPERATIVE

*Present*

2d pers. monēre	monēminī
-----------------	----------

*Future*

2d pers. monētor	
3d pers. monētor	monentor

*Imperfect*

monērer	monērēmur
monērēris or -re	monērēminī
monērētur	monērentur

*Perfect*

monitus sim	monitī sīmus
monitus sis	monitī sītis
monitus sit	monitī sint

*Pluperfect*

monitus essem	monitī essēmus
monitus essēs	monitī essētis
monitus esset	monitī essent

## INFINITIVE

*Pres. monēri*✓ *Perf. monitus esse*✓ *Fut. monitum iri*

## PARTICIPLE

✓ *Perf. monitus*✓ *Fut. monendus*

69.

## THIRD CONJUGATION

## ACTIVE VOICE

Principal parts: dūcō, dūcere, dūxī, ductum

## INDICATIVE

*Present*

SING.	PLUR.
dūcō	dūcimus
dūcis	dūcitis
dūcit	dūcunt

## SUBJUNCTIVE

*Present*

SING.	PLUR.
dūcam	dūcāmus
dūcās	dūcātis
dūcat	dūcant

*Imperfect*

dūcēbam	dūcēbāmus
dūcēbās	dūcēbātis
dūcēbat	dūcēbant

*Future*

dūcam	dūcēmus
dūcēs	dūcētis
dūcet	dūcent

*Perfect*

dūxī	dūximus
dūxistī	dūxistis
dūxit	dūxērunt or -ēre

*Pluperfect*

dūxeram	dūxerāmus
dūxerās	dūxerātis
dūxerat	dūxerant

*Future Perfect*

dūxerō	dūxerimus
dūxeris	dūxeritis
dūxerit	dūxerint

## IMPERATIVE

*Present*

2d pers. dūc*	dūcite
---------------	--------

*Future*

2d pers. dūcitō	dūcitōte
3d pers. dūcitō	dūcuntō

## PARTICIPLE

✓ Pres.	dūcēns
✓ Fut.	ductūrus

*Imperfect*

dūcerem	dūcerēmus
dūcerēs	dūcerētis
dūceret	dūcerent

*Perfect*

dūxerim	dūxerimus
dūxeris	dūxeritis
dūxerit	dūxerint

*Pluperfect*

dūxissem	dūxissēmus
dūxissēs	dūxissētis
dūxisset	dūxissent

## INFINITIVE

Pres. dūcere ✓

Perf. dūxisse ✓

Fut. ductūrus (esse)

## SUPINE

Acc. ductum

Abl. ductū

## GERUND

Gen.	dūcendī
Dat.	dūcendō
Acc.	dūcendum
Abl.	dūcendō

\* Irregular for dūce.

## THIRD CONJUGATION

## PASSIVE VOICE

Principal parts: dūcor, dūcl, ductus sum

## INDICATIVE

<i>Present</i>	
SING.	PLUR.
dūcor	dūcimur
dūceris or -re	dūcimini
dūcitur	dūcuntur

<i>Imperfect</i>	
dūcēbar	dūcēbāmur
dūcēbāris or -re	dūcēbāmini
dūcēbātur	dūcēbantur

<i>Future</i>	
dūcar	dūcēmur
dūcēris or -re	dūcēmini
dūcētur	dūcentur

<i>Perfect</i>	
ductus sum	ducti sumus
ductus es	ducti estis
ductus est	ducti sunt

<i>Pluperfect</i>	
ductus eram	ducti erāmus
ductus erās	ducti erātis
ductus erat	ducti erant

<i>Future Perfect</i>	
ductus erō	ducti erimus
ductus eris	ducti eritis
ductus erit	ducti erunt

## IMPERATIVE

<i>Present</i>	
2d pers. dūcere	dūcimini

<i>Future</i>	
2d pers. dūcitor	
3d pers. dūcitor	dūcuntor

## SUBJUNCTIVE

<i>Present</i>	
SING.	PLUR.
dūcar	dūcāmur
dūcāris or -re	dūcāmini
dūcātur	dūcantur

<i>Imperfect</i>	
dūcerer	dūcerēmur
dūcerēris or re	dūcerēmini
dūcerētur	dūcerentur

<i>Perfect</i>	
ductus sim	ducti simus
ductus sis	ducti sitis
ductus sit	ducti sint

<i>Pluperfect</i>	
ductus essem	ducti essemus
ductus essēs	ducti essētis
ductus esset	ducti essent

## INFINITIVE

Pres. dūcl
Perf. ductus esse
Fut. ductum iri

## PARTICIPLE

Perf. ductus
Fut. dūcendus

## 70.

## FOURTH CONJUGATION

## ACTIVE VOICE

Principal parts: **audiō, audīre, audīvī, audītum**

## INDICATIVE

*Present*

SING.	PLUR.
audiō	audīmus
audīs	audītis
audit	audiunt

*Imperfect*

audiēbam	audiēbāmus
audiēbās	audiēbātis
audiēbat	audiēbant

*Future*

audiam	audiēmus
audiēs	audiētis
audiet	audient

*Perfect*

audīvī	audīvimus
audīvistī	audīvistis
audīvit	audīvērunt or -ēre

*Pluperfect*

audiveram	audiverāmus
audiverās	audiverātis
audiverat	audiverant

*Future Perfect*

audiverō	audiverimus
audiveris	audiveritis
audiverit	audiverint

## IMPERATIVE

*Present*

2d pers. audi	audīte
---------------	--------

*Future*

2d pers. audītō	audītōte
3d pers. audītō	audiuntō

## SUBJUNCTIVE

*Present*

SING.	PLUR.
audiam	audiāmus
audiās	audiātis
audiat	audiant

*Imperfect*

audīrem	audīrēmus
audīrēs	audīrētis
audīret	audīrent

*Perfect*

audiverim	audiverīmus
audiveris	audiveritis
audiverit	audiverint

*Pluperfect*

audivissem	audivissēmus
audivissēs	audivissētis
audivisset	audivissent

## INFINITIVE

✓ Pres. audīre

Perf. audīvisse

Fut. audītūrus (esse)

## PARTICIPLE

✓ *Pres.* audiēns      *Fut.* auditūrus ✓

## SUPINE

✓ *Acc.* auditum      *Abl.* auditū ✓

## GERUND

*Gen.* audiendī  
*Dat.* audiendō  
*Acc.* audiendum  
*Abl.* audiendō

## FOURTH CONJUGATION

## PASSIVE VOICE

Principal parts: audior, audiri, auditus sum

## INDICATIVE

*Present*

SING.	PLUR.
audior	audīmur
audiris or -re	audīmini
auditur	audiuntur

*Imperfect*

audiēbar	audiēbāmur
audiēbaris or -re	audiēbāmini
audiēbatur	audiēbantur

*Future*

audiar	audiēmur
audiēris or -re	audiēmini
audiētur	audiēntur

*Perfect*

auditus sum	audītī sumus
auditus es	audītī estis
auditus est	audītī sunt

*Pluperfect*

auditus eram	audītī erāmus
auditus erās	audītī erātis
auditus erat	audītī erant

*Future Perfect*

auditus erō	audītī erimus
auditus eris	audītī eritis
auditus erit	audītī erunt

## SUBJUNCTIVE

*Present*

SING.	PLUR.
audiar	audiāmur
audiāris or -re	audiāmini
audiātur	audiāntur

*Imperfect*

audīrer	audīrēmur
audīrēris or -re	audīrēmini
audīrētur	audīrentur

*Perfect*

auditus sim	audītī sīmus
auditus sis	audītī sītis
auditus sit	audītī sint

*Pluperfect*

auditus essem	audītī essēmus
auditus essēs	audītī essētis
auditus esset	audītī essent

## IMPERATIVE

*Present*

2d pers. audire      audimini

*Future*

2d pers. auditor

3d pers. auditor      audiuntor

## INFINITIVE

✓ *Pres.* audiri

*Perf.* auditus esse

✓ *Fut.* auditum iri

## PARTICIPLE

✓ *Perf.* auditus

✓ *Fut.* audiendus

## 71.

THIRD CONJUGATION IN *Ī*

## ACTIVE VOICE

Principal parts: *capiō, capere, cēpi, captum*

## INDICATIVE

*Present*

SING.		PLUR.
capiō	<i>711</i>	capimus
capis		capitis
capit		capiunt

*Imperfect*

capiebam	capiebāmus
capiebās	capiebātis
capiebat	capiebant

*Future*

capiam	capiemus
capies	capietis
capiet	capient

*Perfect*

cēpi	cēpimus
cēpisti	cēpistis
cēpit	cēperunt
	or -ēre

## SUBJUNCTIVE

*Present*

SING.		PLUR.
capiam		capiamus
capias		capiatīs
capiat		capiant

*Imperfect*

caperem	caperēmus
caperēs	caperētis
caperet	caperent

*Perfect*

cēperim	cēperimus
cēperis	cēperitis
cēperit	cēperint

*Pluperfect*

cēperam	cēperāmus
cēperās	cēperātis
cēperat	cēperant

*Future Perfect*

cēperō	cēperimus
cēperis	cēperitis
cēperit	cēperint

## IMPERATIVE

*Present*

2d pers. cape	capite
---------------	--------

*Future*

2d pers. capitō	capitōte
3d pers. capitō	capiuntō

## PARTICIPLE

✓ Pres. capiēns	Fut. captūrus ✓
-----------------	-----------------

## SUPINE

✓ Acc. captum	-	Abl. captū
---------------	---	------------

*Pluperfect*

cēpissem	cēpissēmus
cēpissēs	cēpissētis
cēpisset	cēpissent

## INFINITIVE

✓ Pres. capere

Perf. cēpisse

✓ Fut. captūrus (esse)

## GERUND

Gen. capiendī

Dat. capiendō

Acc. capiendum

Abl. capiendō

THIRD CONJUGATION IN *iō*

## PASSIVE VOICE

Principal parts: capior, capī, captus sum

## INDICATIVE

*Present*

SING.	PLUR.
capior	capimur
caperis or -re	capimini
capitur	capiuntur

*Imperfect*

capiebar	capiebāmur
capiebāris or -re	capiebāmini
capiebātur	capiebantur

*Future*

capiar	capiemur
capieris or -re	capiemini
capietur	capientur

## SUBJUNCTIVE

*Present*

SING.	PLUR.
capiar	capiamur
capiaris or -re	capiamini
capiaur	capiantur

*Imperfect*

caperer	caperēmur
caperēris or -re	caperēmini
caperētur	caperentur

*Perfect*

captus sum	capti sumus
captus es	capti estis
captus est	capti sunt

*Pluperfect*

captus eram	capti erāmus
captus erās	capti erātis
captus erat	capti erant

*Future Perfect*

captus erō	capti erimus
captus eris	capti eritis
captus erit	capti erunt

## IMPERATIVE

*Present*

2d pers. capere	capimini
-----------------	----------

*Future*

2d pers. capitor	
3d pers. capitor	capiuntor

*Perfect*

captus sim	capti simus
captus sis	capti sitis
captus sit	capti sint

*Pluperfect*

captus essem	capti essēmus
captus essēs	capti essētis
captus esset	capti essent

## INFINITIVE

- ✓ *Pres.* capi
- Perf.* captus esse
- ✓ *Fut.* captum iri

## PARTICIPLE

- ✓ *Perf.* captus
- ✓ *Fut.* capiendus

## CONTRACTED FORMS

72. When the perfect stem ends in *v*, the *v* is sometimes dropped, and usually the two vowels thus brought together contract into one.  
*a.* Perfects in *-āvī*, *-ēvī*, and *-ōvī*, and the other tenses based on the same stem, sometimes (apparently) drop *ve*, *vē*, or *vi* before *r* or *s*.

Examples: *laudāstī* for *laudāvistī*; *laudāsse* for *laudāvisse*; *dēlērunt* for *dēlēvērunt*; *nōrim* for *nōverim*.

*b.* Perfects in *-ivī*, and the other tenses based on the same stem, sometimes drop *v* in all forms. When the resulting combination is *is* it usually contracts to *is*.

Examples: *audī* for *audīvī*; *audieram* for *audīveram*; *audisse* for *audīvisse*.

## DEPONENT VERBS

73. Deponent verbs have passive forms with active meanings. But the future passive participle is passive in sense, and the perfect participle is sometimes so. On the other hand they have the following active forms: future infinitive, present and future participles, gerund, supine.

Of the following verbs the principal parts, indicative, subjunctive, and imperative are precisely the same as those for the passive voice of the verbs already given for the corresponding conjugations.

*hortor, urge      vereor, fear      sequor, follow      partior, share*

## INFINITIVE

<i>Pres. hortārī</i>	<i>verērī</i>	<i>sequī</i>	<i>partīrī</i>
<i>Perf. hortātus esse</i>	<i>veritus esse</i>	<i>secūtus esse</i>	<i>partītus esse</i>
<i>Fut. hortātūrus (esse)</i>	<i>veritūrus (esse)</i>	<i>secūtūrus (esse)</i>	<i>partītūrus (esse)</i>

## PARTICIPLE

<i>Pres. hortāns</i>	<i>verēns</i>	<i>sequēns</i>	<i>partiēns</i>
<i>Perf. hortātus</i>	<i>veritus</i>	<i>secūtus</i>	<i>partītus</i>
<i>Fut. hortātūrus</i>	<i>veritūrus</i>	<i>secūtūrus</i>	<i>partītūrus</i>
<i>Fut. Pass. hortandus</i>	<i>verendus</i>	<i>sequendus</i>	<i>partiendus</i>

## GERUND

*hortandī, -ō, etc.      verendī, etc.      sequendī, etc.      partiendī, etc.*

## SUPINE

*hortātum, -tū      veritum, -tū      secūtum, -tū      partītum, -tū*

74.

## SEMI-DEPONENT VERBS

Semi-deponent verbs have active forms for the tenses based on the present stem, passive forms for those based on the perfect stem.

They are:

*audeō, audēre, ausus sum, dare*  
*gaudeō, gaudēre, gāvīsus sum, rejoice*  
*soleō, solēre, solitus sum, be accustomed*  
*fidēs, fidere, fīsus sum, trust*

## PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATION

75. The active periphrastic conjugation expresses *future* or *intended action*. It is formed by combining the future active participle with the verb *sum*: thus,

*Pres. laudātūrus sum, I am about to praise, I intend to praise,*

*Imp. laudātūrus eram, I was about to praise, I intended to praise, etc.*

76. The passive periphrastic conjugation expresses *obligation* or *necessity*. It is formed by combining the future passive participle with the verb *sum*: thus,

*Pres. laudandus sum, I am to be (must be) praised, I have to be praised.*

*Imp. laudandus eram, I was to be praised, I had to be praised, etc.*

## IRREGULAR VERBS

## SUM AND ITS COMPOUNDS

77. For the conjugation of *sum* see 66. *Sum* is inflected in the same way when compounded with the prepositions *ad, dē, in, inter, ob, prae, sub, super*. *Praesum* has a present participle, *praesēns*.

78. In *absum*, *sum* is inflected in the same way, but *a* is used for *ab* before *f*, giving *āful, āfutūrus*, etc. There is a present participle *absēns*.

79. In *prōsum*, *sum* is inflected in the same way, but the preposition *prō* has its original form *prōd* before all forms of *sum* beginning with *e*; as, *prōdesse, prōderam*. The present tense is, *prōsum, prōdes, prōdest, prōsumus, prōdestis, prōsunt*.

80. *Possum*, *be able, can*, is a compound of *pot-* and *sum*.

Principal parts: *possum, posse, potui*

	INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE
<i>Pres.</i>	<i>possum, potes, potest</i> <i>possumus, potestis, possunt</i>	<i>possim</i>
<i>Imp.</i>	<i>poteram</i>	<i>possem</i>
<i>Fut.</i>	<i>poterō</i>	
<i>Perf.</i>	<i>potui</i>	<i>potuerim</i>
<i>Plup.</i>	<i>potueram</i>	<i>potuissem</i>
<i>Fut. Perf.</i>	<i>potuerō</i>	

INFINITIVE		PARTICIPLE
<i>Pres.</i>	posse	<i>Pres.</i> potēns
<i>Perf.</i>	potuisse	

81. . ferō, ferre, tulī, lātum, bear

## ACTIVE VOICE

INDICATIVE		SUBJUNCTIVE
<i>Pres.</i>	ferō, fers, fert, ferimus, fertis, ferunt	feram
<i>Imp.</i>	ferēbam	ferrem
<i>Fut.</i>	feram	
<i>Perf.</i>	tulī	tulerim
<i>Plup.</i>	tuleram	tulissem
<i>Fut. Perf.</i>	tulerō	

IMPERATIVE		INFINITIVE	PARTICIPLE
<i>Pres.</i>	fer ferte	<i>Pres.</i> ferre	<i>Pres.</i> ferēns
<i>Fut.</i>	fertō fertōte fertō feruntō	<i>Perf.</i> tulisse <i>Fut.</i> lātūrus (esse)	<i>Fut.</i> lātūrus

GERUND  
ferendī, etc.

SUPINE  
lātum, -tū

## PASSIVE VOICE

INDICATIVE		SUBJUNCTIVE
<i>Pres.</i>	feror, ferris, fertur ferimur, ferimini, feruntur	ferar
<i>Imp.</i>	ferēbar	ferrer
<i>Fut.</i>	ferar	
<i>Perf.</i>	lātus sum	lātus sim
<i>Plup.</i>	lātus eram	lātus essem
<i>Fut. Perf.</i>	lātus erō	

IMPERATIVE		INFINITIVE	PARTICIPLE
<i>Pres.</i>	ferre, ferimini	<i>Pres.</i> ferri	<i>Perf.</i> lātus
<i>Fut.</i>	fertor fertor, feruntor	<i>Perf.</i> lātus esse <i>Fut.</i> lātum iri	<i>Fut.</i> ferendus

82. . volō, velle, volui, *be willing*  
nōlō, nōlle, nōlui, *be unwilling*  
mālō, malle, mālui, *prefer*

## INDICATIVE

<i>Pres.</i>	volō	nōlō	mālō
	vīs	nōn vīs	māvīs
	vult	nōn vult	māvult
	volumus	nolumus	mālumus
	vultis	nōn vultis	māvultis
	volunt	nōlunt	mālunt
<i>Imp.</i>	volēbam	nōlēbam	mālēbam
<i>Fut.</i>	volam	nōlam	mālam
<i>Perf.</i>	volui	nōlui	mālui
<i>Plup.</i>	volueram	nōlueram	mālueram
<i>Fut. Perf.</i>	voluerō	nōluerō	māluerō

## SUBJUNCTIVE

<i>Pres.</i>	velim	nōlim	mālim
<i>Imp.</i>	vellem	nōllem	māllem
<i>Perf.</i>	voluerim	nōluerim	māluerim
<i>Plup.</i>	voluissem	nōluissem	māluissem

## IMPERATIVE

<i>Pres.</i>	nōli	nōlite
<i>Fut.</i>	nōlitō	nōlitōte
	nōlitō	nōluntō

## INFINITIVE

<i>Pres. velle</i>	nōlle	mālle
<i>Perf. voluisse</i>	nōluisse	māluisse

## PARTICIPLE

<i>Pres. volēns</i>	nōlēns
---------------------	--------

83. **FĪŌ**, *be made, be done, become, happen*, is the irregular passive of **faciō**, *make*. Note the **i** before all vowels, except before **e** in the combination **-er**.

Principal parts: **fĪŌ**, **fieri**, **factus sum**

## INDICATIVE

<i>Pres.</i>	fĪŌ, fīs, fit
	fīmus, fītis, fiunt
<i>Imp.</i>	fīēbam
<i>Fut.</i>	fīam
<i>Perf.</i>	factus sum
<i>Plup.</i>	factus eram
<i>Fut. Perf.</i>	factus erō

## SUBJUNCTIVE

fīam
fīerem
factus sim
factus essem

## IMPERATIVE

*Pres.* fi, fite

## INFINITIVE

*Pres.* fieri*Perf.* factus esse*Fut.* factum iri

## PARTICIPLE

*Perf.* factus*Fut.* faciendus

84.

eō, Ire, ii, itum, go

## INDICATIVE

*Pres.* eō, Is, it,  
imus, Itis, eunt  
*Imp.* ibam  
*Fut.* ibō  
*Perf.* ii for ivi  
*Plup.* ieram  
*Fut. Per.* ierō

## SUBJUNCTIVE

eam  
irem  
ierim  
iissem or Issem

## IMPERATIVE

*Pres.* I, ite  
*Fut.* Itō, Itōte  
Itō, euntō

## INFINITIVE

*Pres.* Ire  
*Perf.* iisse or Isse  
*Fut.* itūrus (esse)

## PARTICIPLE

*Pres.* iēns (*Gen.* euntis)  
*Fut.* itūrus

## GERUND

eundi, etc.

## SUPINE

itum, -tū

a. In the tenses based on the perfect stem, ii usually contracts to I before s.

85. **Dō, dare, dedi, datum, give**, is conjugated like a verb of the first conjugation, except that the stem-vowel is regularly short a. **ā** appears only in the following active forms,—**dās, dā, dāns**.

86.

## DEFECTIVE VERBS

The most important of these are the perfects **memini, I remember**; **ōdi, I hate**; and **coepi, I have begun**. Notice that **memini** and **ōdi** have the meanings of presents. Their pluperfects and future perfects have the meanings of imperfects and futures.

## INDICATIVE

<i>Perf.</i>	memini	ōdi	coepi
<i>Plup.</i>	memineram	ōderam	coeperam
<i>Fut. Perf.</i>	meminerō	ōderō	coeperō

## SUBJUNCTIVE

<i>Perf.</i>	meminerim	öderim	coeperim
<i>Plup.</i>	meminissem	ōdissem	coepissem

## IMPERATIVE

<i>Sing.</i>	mementō
<i>Plur.</i>	mementōte

## INFINITIVE

<i>Perf.</i>	meminisse	ōdisse	coepisse
<i>Fut.</i>		ōsūrus (esse)	coeptūrus (esse)

## PARTICIPLE

<i>Perf.</i>	ōsus	coeptus
<i>Fut.</i>	ōsūrus	coeptūrus

a. Instead of **coepi** the passive form **coeptus sum** is regularly used when a passive infinitive depends on it. Example: **laudārī coeptus est**, *he began to be praised*.

## 87.

## IMPERSONAL VERBS

Impersonal verbs correspond to English impersonals with *it*. They have no personal subject, but most of them take as subject a substantive clause or sometimes a neuter pronoun. They appear only in the third person singular of the indicative and subjunctive tenses, the present and perfect infinitives, and occasionally in the participles and gerund. They are:—

a. Most verbs expressing actions of nature; as **pluit**, *it rains*.

b. The following, which are exclusively impersonal: **decet**, *it becomes*; **libet**, *it pleases*; **licet**, *it is permitted*; **miseret**, *it causes pity*; **oportet**, *it is right*; **paenitet**, *it repents*; **piget**, *it displeases*; **pudet**, *it shames*; **rēfert**, *it concerns*; **taedet**, *it wearies*. All of these except **rēfert** belong to the second conjugation.

c. Personal verbs used impersonally with a special meaning; as **accedit**, *it is added*, from **accēdō**, *I approach*.

d. The passives of most intransitive verbs; as **pugnātur**, *it is fought*.

## SYNTAX

## SENTENCES

**88.** A sentence is a group of words so related as to express a complete thought. It consists of at least two parts — the *subject* (that of which something is said), and the *predicate* (that which is said about the subject). These two essential parts may be modified in various ways. A sentence may consist of a single verb, because the subject is implied in its ending.

Sentences are declarative, interrogative, imperative, or exclamatory as in English.

**89.** A Simple Sentence has one subject and one predicate. Example: *Caesar vēnit, Caesar came.*

**90.** A Compound Sentence consists of two or more simple sentences of equal value. These sentences are called *coordinate clauses*, and are connected by *coordinating conjunctions*; i. e., by conjunctions with such meanings as *and, but, for, or*. Example: *Caesar vēnit et Galli fugērunt, Caesar came and the Gauls fled.*

**91.** A Complex Sentence consists of a simple sentence (called a *principal clause*), modified by one or more dependent sentences (called *subordinate or dependent clauses*). The clauses are connected by relative pronouns or by *subordinating conjunctions*; i. e., by conjunctions with such meanings as *in order that, so that, if, because, although, when, after, before*. Example: *ubi Caesar vēnit, Galli fugērunt, when Caesar came, the Gauls fled.*

## THE FUNCTION OF CASES

**92.** The cases help to show in what relation to the rest of a sentence any given substantive stands. This is shown in English almost entirely by the order of words or by the use of prepositions; yet the so-called possessive case illustrates the use of the Latin cases, for the ending *'s* in the *soldier's arms* indicates that *soldier* modifies *arms* and that the soldier is the possessor of the arms. But in the English sentences *the soldier* (subject)  *fights, he kills the soldier* (direct object), *he gives the soldier* (indirect object) *a sword*, only the order of words shows the relation of the word to the rest of the sentence; while in Latin *miles* would be used in the first sentence, *militem* in the second, and *militi* in the third.

93. But each of the cases, except the nominative and the vocative, expresses more than one thing. Consequently one must know just what uses each case can have, and must then determine which one of these uses it has in the sentence in which it occurs. This can be determined sometimes by the meaning of the word itself, sometimes by the obvious meaning of the sentence, sometimes by the fact that another word needs a certain case to satisfy its meaning and that case appears but once in the sentence. Examples: the accusative may express duration of time, but *mīlitem*, *a soldier*, could not be used in this sense, while *multōs annōs*, *many years*, is quite probably so used. *Dicit plūm mīlitem vulnerāvisse* might mean either *he says that a javelin wounded the soldier*, or *a soldier wounded the javelin*, but the latter makes no sense. *Persuāsīt*, *he persuaded*, needs a dative to express the person persuaded, and if there is but one dative in the sentence its use is evident.

94. For further clearness many relations are expressed in Latin by prepositions, though not so many as in English. Examples: *a mīlite interfectus est*, *he was killed by a soldier*; *cum mīlite vēnit*, *he came in company with a soldier*.

## 95. AGREEMENT OF SUBSTANTIVES

**RULE:** *A noun which explains another noun and means the same person or thing is put in the same case.*

Compare 97. Such a noun may be either a predicate noun or an appositive.

**a. RULE:** *A predicate noun is connected with the subject by sum or a verb of similar meaning.*

Such verbs are those meaning *appear, become, seem, be called, be chosen, be regarded*, and the like. Examples: *Pisō fuit cōsul*, *Piso was consul*; *Pisō factus est cōsul*, *Piso became consul*; *Pisō appellātus est cōsul*, *Piso was called consul*. For the predicate accusative with verbs of *calling*, etc., see 126.

**b. RULE:** *An appositive is set beside the noun which it explains, without a connecting verb.*

EXAMPLES: *Pisō, cōsul, mīlitī Pisōnī gladium dedit*. *Piso, the consul, gave a sword to Piso, the soldier.*

## 96.

## NOMINATIVE

**RULE:** *The nominative is used as the subject of a finite verb (i. e. the indicative, subjunctive, and imperative modes).*

**EXAMPLE:** *Gallia est divisa* (I, 1, 1), *Gaul is divided.*

## GENITIVE

## A. GENITIVE WITH NOUNS

**97. GENERAL RULE:** *A noun which explains or limits another noun and does not mean the same person or thing (compare 95) is put in the genitive.*

The relation between the two nouns is usually expressed in English by *of*, but often by *for* or by other prepositions. These combinations of nouns are divided, according to their meanings into the groups given in 98-105.

A genitive may be either (a) *attributive*, depending directly upon another noun; as *domus Caesaris*, *Caesar's house*; or (b) *predicative*, connected by *sum* or a verb of similar meaning; as *domus est Caesaris*, *the house is Caesar's*.

a. **Appositional Genitive.** But the genitive is sometimes used instead of an appositive; i. e., it sometimes means the same person or thing as the noun on which it depends. Example: *tuorum comitum sentina* (Cic. Cat. I, 12), *that refuse, your comrades*.

## ATTRIBUTIVE

**98. Subjective and Objective Genitives.** These depend on nouns which have corresponding verbal ideas, as *amor*, *love*, *amō*, *I love*. The thought expressed by the noun and limiting genitive can be expanded into a sentence. If the genitive then becomes the subject it is a subjective genitive; if it becomes the object it is an objective genitive. Examples: *amor patris*, *the love of the father*, may imply that *the father loves*, (subjective), or that *some one loves his father* (objective); *occāsum sōlis* (I, 1, 22), *the setting of the sun* (subjective); *rēgni cupiditāte* (I, 2, 2), *by desire for power* (objective).

**99. Possessive Genitive.**

**RULE:** *The genitive may express the possessor.*

The possessive pronouns are regularly used instead of the possessive genitive of personal pronouns. Examples: *finibus Belgārum* (I, 1, 16), *by the territory of the Belgae*; *finibus vestris*, *by your territory*.

a. A genitive or possessive pronoun must precede *causā* or *grātiā*, for the sake of. Examples: *huius potentiae causā* (I, 18, 14), *for the sake of this power*; *meā causā*, *for my sake*.

### 100. Descriptive Genitive.

**RULE:** *The genitive modified by an adjective may describe a person or thing by naming some quality.*

Compare the descriptive ablative (141). This genitive is regularly used to express measure. Examples: *huiusce modi senātūs cōsultum* (Cic. Cat. I, 4), *a decree of this kind*; *trium mēnsium molita cibaria* (I, 5, 7), *provisions for three months*.

### 101. Partitive Genitive (Genitive of the Whole).

**RULE:** *The genitive may express the whole of which a part is mentioned.*

This genitive may depend on any substantive, adjective, pronoun, or adverb which implies a part of a whole. Examples: *eōrum ūna pars* (I, 1, 15), *one part of them*; *hōrum omnium fortissimī* (I, 1, 6), *the bravest of all these*; *ubinam gentium sumus* (Cic. Cat. I, 9), *where in (not of) the world are we?*

a. Note especially the genitive of a noun, or of the neuter singular of a second declension adjective used substantively, depending on a neuter singular adjective or pronoun or on *satis* used substantively. Examples: *quantum bonī* (I, 40, 17), *how much (of) good*; *satis causae* (I, 19, 6), *sufficient (of) reason*.

b. In place of this genitive the ablative with *dē* or *ex* is often used, especially with cardinal numerals and with *quidam*. Example: *ūnus ē filiis captus est* (I, 26, 12), *one of his sons was captured*.

c. English often uses *of* in apparently similar phrases when there is really no partitive idea. Latin does not then use the genitive. Example: *hī omnēs* (I, 1, 3), *all of these*.

### 102. Genitive of Material.

**RULE:** *The genitive may express the material of which a thing is composed.*

Example: *aciem legiōnum quattuor* (I, 24, 3), *a battle line (consisting) of four legions*.

## PREDICATIVE

**103. Possessive Genitive.** The possessive genitive (99) is often used predicatively. Note especially such phrases as *est hominis*, *it is the part (duty, characteristic) of a man*. Example: *est hoc Gallicae consuetudinis* (IV, 5, 4), *this is a characteristic of the Gallic customs*.

**104. Descriptive Genitive.** The descriptive genitive (100) is often used predicatively. Example: *senatus consultum est huiusce modi*, *the decree is of this kind*.

**105. The Genitive of Value.** With *sum* and verbs of similar meaning, and with verbs of *valuing*, indefinite value is expressed by the genitive. Compare the ablative of price (147). The words commonly so used are *magni*, *parvi*, *tanti*, *quantum*, *pluris*, *minoris*. Example: *tanti eius gratiam esse ostendit* (I, 20, 14), *he assured him that his friendship was of such value*.

## B. GENITIVE WITH ADJECTIVES

**106. RULE:** *Many adjectives take a genitive to complete their meaning. They are:*

a. Regularly, adjectives with such meanings as *conscious (of)*, *desirous (of)*, *mindful (of)*, *sharing (in)*, *skilled (in)*, and their opposites, and *plenus*, *full (of)*. Examples: *bellandi cupidi* (I, 2, 13), *desirous of fighting*; *rei militaris peritissimus* (I, 21, 9), *most skilled in military science*.

b. Sometimes with the genitive, sometimes with the dative (122), *similis*, *like*; *dissimilis*, *unlike*. The genitive is more common of living objects, and regular of personal pronouns. Example: *tui similis* (Cic. Cat. I, 5), *like you*; *veri simile* (III, 13, 11), *probable (like the truth)*.

c. Occasionally other adjectives. Example: *locum medium utriusque* (I, 34, 2), *a place midway between them*.

## C. GENITIVE WITH VERBS

**107. Verbs of Remembering and Forgetting.**

**RULE:** *Memini, bear in mind, reminiscor, remember, and obliviscor, forget, govern either the genitive or the accusative.*

The genitive is regular of persons, the accusative of neuter pronouns. Examples: *reminisceretur veteris incommodi* (I, 13, 11), *he should remember the former disaster*; *veteris contumeliae oblivisci* (I, 14, 7), *to forget the former insult*.

## 108. Verbs of Judicial Action.

**RULE:** *Verbs of accusing, acquitting, convicting, and condemning take a genitive of the charge.*

The penalty is expressed by the ablative. Example: *mē inertiae condemnō* (Cic. Cat. I, 4), *I pronounce myself guilty of inactivity.*

## 109. Verbs of Emotion.

**RULE:** *The impersonal verbs miseret, pity, paenitet, repent, piget, dislike, pudet, be ashamed, taedet, be disgusted, take the genitive of the person or thing which causes the feeling, and the accusative of the person who has the feeling.*

The personal verb misereor, *pity*, also takes the genitive. Examples: *mē meōrum factorum numquam paenitēbit* (Cic. Cat. IV, 20), *I shall never repent of my deeds; mē eius miseret or eius misereor, I pity him.*

## 110. Interest and Rēfert.

**RULE:** *The impersonal verbs interest and rēfert, it concerns, it is to the interest of, take the genitive of the person concerned.*

But if the person is expressed in English by a personal pronoun, interest is used with the ablative singular feminine of a possessive pronoun. Examples: *rei publicae intersit* (II, 5, 5), *it is to the interest of the state; meā interest, it is to my interest.*

111. **RULE:** Potior occasionally governs the genitive.

For potior with the ablative see 145. Example: *Galliae potiri* (I, 3, 22), *to become masters of Gaul.*

## THE DATIVE

112. The dative expresses that *to* or *for* which anything is or is done. It may depend on a verb or an adjective or, very rarely, a noun; or it may modify a whole sentence without depending on any one word.

## 113. Indirect Object.

**GENERAL RULE:** *The dative denotes the person or thing indirectly affected by the action of a verb.*

The indirect object depends closely on the verb, while the dative of reference (120) modifies the whole clause.

## 114. Indirect Object with Transitive Verbs.

**RULE:** *Many verbs govern an indirect object in addition to a direct object.*

These are especially verbs of *giving* and *saying*. The dative is usually translated by *to*, less often by *for*. For the indirect object with transitive verbs compounded with a preposition see 116. Example: *ei filiam dat* (I, 3, 15), *he gives (to) him his daughter*.

a. *Dōnō*, *give*, *present*, and a few other verbs take either the dative of the person and the accusative of the thing, or the accusative of the person and the ablative of the thing. Examples: *ei librum dōnō*, *I give (to) him a book*; *eum librō dōnō*, *I present him with a book*.

b. Some verbs, instead of admitting both the accusative and the dative, admit either, but with a different meaning. Especially *cōsulō*, *consult* or *consult for*, and *metuō*, *fear* or *fear for*. Examples: *sī mē cōsulis* (Cic. Cat. I, 13), *if you consult me (ask my advice)*; *cōsultite vōbīs* (Cic. Cat. IV, 3), *consult for yourselves (for your own interests)*.

c. This dative is retained with the passive voice. Example: *ei filia datur*, *his daughter is given to him*.

**115. Indirect Object with Intransitive Verbs.** The dative is used with all intransitive verbs whose meaning permits. Many of these verbs seem to be transitive in English, so that the indirect object must be translated by the English direct object.

**RULE:** *The dative (usually of the person) is used with many verbs meaning benefit or injure, command or obey, please or displease, serve or resist, trust or distrust, believe, envy, favor, pardon, persuade, spare, threaten, and the like.*

EXAMPLES: *civitātī persuāsit* (I, 2, 3), *he persuaded the state*; *novīs rēbus studēbat* (I, 9, 8), *he was anxious for a revolution*; *Allobrogibus imperāvit* (I, 28, 7), *he commanded the Allobroges*.

a. The dative is used with some phrases of similar meanings, as *audiēns sum*, *obey*, and *fidem habēre*, *trust*. Example: *cui fidem habēbat* (I, 19, 15), *whom he trusted*.

b. Many of these verbs which are ordinarily intransitive occasionally take an accusative of the thing, usually a neuter pronoun. Examples: *prōvinciāe mīlitum numerum imperat* (I, 7, 4), *he levies a number of soldiers on the province*; *id illīs persuāsit* (I, 2, 6), *he persuaded them to this (literally, he persuaded this to them)*.

c. Not all verbs with the meanings given above are intransitive. The most important exceptions are the verbs *dēlectō*, *delight*, *iubeō*

*command, iuvō, please, vetō, forbid, which are transitive and therefore take the accusative (124). Example: Labiēnum iubet (I, 21, 5), he commands Labienus.*

d. Since only the direct object of the active voice becomes the subject of the passive (124, b), no intransitive verb can have a personal subject in the passive. The verbs of 115 can be used in the passive only impersonally, and the dative is retained, though it is usually translated as a subject. Examples: *Caesari persuādeō, I persuade Caesar, becomes Caesari à mē persuādētur, Caesar is persuaded by me (literally, it is persuaded to Caesar).*

116. The Indirect Object with Compound Verbs. I. Certain prepositions usually give to verbs with which they are compounded a meaning which, in Latin idiom, requires the dative. If the simple verb is transitive the compound governs a direct object in addition to the indirect. The dative is variously translated with these verbs: when it is translated by *from*, it is sometimes called the *dative of separation*.

**RULE:** *The dative is required with many compounds of ad, ante, con, dē, in, inter, ob, post, prae, prō, sub, super; and with some compounds of ab, circum, and ex.*

**EXAMPLES:** *cum omnibus praestārent (I, 2, 5), since they excelled all; finitimis bellum inferre (I, 2, 12), to make war upon their neighbors; mūnitiōni Labiēnum praeficit (I, 10, 7), he puts Labienus in command of the works; scūtō militi detractō (II, 25, 13), having snatched a shield from a soldier.*

**II. RULE:** *The dative is used with compounds of satis and bene.*

**EXAMPLE:** *sī Haedui satisfaciant (I, 14, 19), if they should make restitution to the Haedui.*

a. The meaning of the compound does not always permit the dative. Among the most important exceptions are the transitive verbs, *aggredior, attack; incendō, burn; interficiō, kill; oppugnō, assault; but there are many others. Example: eōs aggressus (I, 12, 9), having attacked (or attacking) them.*

b. Very often with these compounds the preposition is repeated, or some other preposition is used, governing its proper case, instead of the dative. So especially if place is designated, or if motion is expressed. Example: *illum in equum intulit (VI, 30, 15), he put him on a horse.*

c. The dative is retained with the passive. Example: *mūnitiōni Labiēnus praeficitur, Labienus is put in command of the works.*

## 117. Dative of Possessor.

**RULE:** *The dative is used in the predicate with sum to denote the possessor.*

It may be translated as a nominative with the verb *have*. Examples: *mihi est liber*, *I have a book* (literally *a book is to me*); *demonstrant sibi nihil esse* (I, 11, 12), *they declared that they had nothing* (lit. *there was nothing to them*).

## 118. Dative of the Agent.

**RULE:** *The dative is used with the passive periphrastic conjugation (76) to express the agent.*

Compare the ablative of the agent (137), which is used with the other forms of the passive. Example: *nōn expectandum sibi statuit* (Caes. I, 11, 13), *he decided that he must not wait* (lit. *that it must not be waited by him*).

a. The ablative of the agent (137) is often used with the passive periphrastic, especially if the dative would be ambiguous. Example: *civitātī ā tē persuādendum est*, *the state must be persuaded by you*.

## 119. Dative of Purpose.

**RULE:** *The dative may express purpose or tendency.*

This dative is especially common with *sum*. It is often found in connection with another dative (indirect object, dative of reference, dative of the possessor). Examples: *quem auxiliō Caesarī miserant* (I, 18, 27), *whom they had sent to aid Caesar*, lit. *whom they had sent for an aid to Caesar*; *qui novissimis praesidiō erant* (I, 25, 14), *who were guarding the rear*, lit. *who were for a guard to the rear*.

## 120. Dative of Reference.

**RULE:** *The dative may name the person with reference to whom the statement is made.*

This dative does not depend on any one word (compare 113) but loosely modifies the whole predicate. It often takes the place of a genitive modifying a noun. Examples: *cibāria sibi quemque efferre iubent* (I, 5, 8), *they order each one to carry food for himself*; *sēsē Caesarī ad pedēs prōiēcērunt* (I, 31, 4), *they cast themselves at Caesar's feet*.

**121. Ethical Dative.** The ethical dative is a dative of reference with so weak a meaning as to be unnecessary to the sense. It designates the person to whom the thought is of interest, and usually shows some emotion. Its use is confined to the personal pronouns. Example: *Tongilium mihi eduxit* (Cic. Cat. II, 4), *he took me out Tongilius, he took out my Tongilius*, or simply *he took out Tongilius*.

## 122. Dative with Adjectives.

**RULE:** *Adjectives meaning friendly or unfriendly, like or unlike, useful or useless, equal, fit, near, suitable, govern the dative.*

Examples: *plēbī acceptus* (I, 3, 14), *acceptable (pleasing) to the people*; *proximī sunt Germānīs* (I, 1, 9), *they are nearest to the Germans*; *castrīs idōneum locum* (VI, 10, 5), *a place suitable for a camp*.

a. With some of these adjectives a preposition with its proper case is often used instead of a dative. Example: *ad amicitiam idōneus*, *suitable for friendship*.

b. The adjectives *propior* and *proximus* and the adverbs *propius* and *proximē* sometimes govern the accusative, like the preposition *prope*. Example: *proximī Rhēnum* (I, 54, 3), *nearest the Rhine*.

c. For *similis* and *dissimilis* see 106, b.

## ACCUSATIVE

### 123. Subject of Infinitive.

**RULE:** *The accusative is used as the subject of the infinitive.*

Example: *certior factus est Helvētiōs trādūxisse* (I, 12, 5), *he was informed that the Helvetii had led across*.

### 124. Direct Object.

**RULE:** *The accusative is used with transitive verbs to express the direct object.*

The direct object may be either (a) the person or thing directly affected by the action of the verb, as *puerum laudat*, *he praises the boy*; or (b) the thing produced by the action of the verb, as *coniūratiōnem fēcit*, *he made a conspiracy*.

a. The direct object may be a substantive clause (228, 229, 262, 277).

b. The direct object of the active voice becomes the subject of the passive. Examples: *puer laudātur*, *the boy is praised*; *coniūratiō facta est*, *a conspiracy was made*.

c. Many compounds of intransitive verbs with prepositions, especially **ad, circum, in, per, praeter, sub, trāns**, have transitive meanings. Example: **ire, to go**, intransitive; but **flūmen trānsire, to cross (go across) the river**.

d. Many verbs which are transitive in English are intransitive in Latin; see especially 115.

### THREE CLASSES OF VERBS GOVERNING TWO ACCUSATIVES (125-127).

**125. Two Objects.** A few verbs take two objects, one of the person, one of the thing.

a. **RULE:** *Verbs of asking, demanding, and teaching, (also cēlō, I conceal) have a direct object of the thing, and may have another of the person.*

But with verbs of asking and demanding the person is usually expressed by the ablative with **ab**. Examples: **Haeduōs frūmentum flāgitāre** (I, 16, 1), *he kept asking the Haedui for the grain*; **eadem ab aliis quaerit** (I, 18, 5), *he asked the same question of others*.

b. **RULE:** *Moneō, I warn, advise, and a few other verbs may take an accusative of the person and the neuter accusative of a pronoun or adjective of the thing.*

The pronoun is an *inner accusative* (128, a). Examples: **eōs hoc moneō** (Cic. Cat. II, 20), *I give them this advice*; **sī quid ille sē velit** (I, 34, 6), *if he wanted anything of him*.

c. With the passive of these verbs the accusative of the person becomes the subject, and the accusative of the thing is retained. Example: **Haedui frūmentum flāgitābantur**, *the Haedui were asked for the grain*; **(iī) hoc monentur**, *they are given this advice*.

### 126. Object and Predicate Accusative.

**RULE:** *Verbs of making, choosing, calling, regarding, showing, and the like, take a direct object and a predicate accusative, both referring to the same person or thing.*

The predicate accusative may be either a noun or an adjective. Examples: **quem rēgem cōstituerat** (IV, 21, 14), *whom he had appointed king*; **Caesarem certiōrem fēcit**, *he informed Caesar (made Caesar more certain)*.

a. With the passive of these verbs the direct object becomes the subject, and the predicate accusative becomes the predicate nominative (95, a). Examples: *qui rēx cōstitūtus erat*, *who had been appointed king*; *Caesar certior factus est* (I, 12, 5), *Caesar was informed (made more certain)*.

## 127. Two Objects with Compounds.

**RULE:** *Transitive verbs compounded with trāns may take one object depending on the verb, another depending on the preposition.*

Example: *trēs partēs flūmen trādūxērunt* (cf. I, 12, 6), *they led three parts across the river*.

a. With the passive of these verbs the object of the verb becomes the subject, the object of the preposition is retained. Example: *trēs partēs flūmen trāductae sunt*, *three parts were led across the river*.

## 128. Cognate Accusative.

**RULE:** *An intransitive verb may take an accusative of a noun of kindred meaning, usually modified by an adjective or genitive.*

Examples: *eam vitam vivere*, *to live that life*; *trīdūl viam prōcēdere* (I, 38), *to advance a three days' march*.

a. A neuter accusative of a pronoun or adjective is often used in a similar way. This is sometimes called an *inner accusative*. Examples: *id iis persuāsit* (I, 2, 3), *he persuaded them of this* (lit. *he persuaded this to them*); *multum posse*, *to have much power*.

b. **Adverbial Accusative.** A few accusatives are used adverbially. In some cases it is impossible to decide whether an accusative should be classed here or under a. The most common adverbial accusatives are *multum*, *much*, *plūs*, *more*, *plūrimum*, *most*, *plērumque*, *for the most part*, and *nihil*, *not at all*. Here belong also *id temporis* (Cic. Cat. I, 10), *at that time*, and *maximam partem* (IV, 1, 14), *for the most part*. Example: *multum sunt in venātiōne* (IV, 1, 15), *they engage much in hunting*.

## 129. Accusative in Exclamations.

**RULE:** *An accusative is sometimes used as an exclamation.*

Example: *O fortunātam rem publicam* (Cic. Cat. II, 7), *Oh, fortunate state!* The nominative and vocative are less often used in the same way.

## 130. Accusative of Time and Space.

**RULE:** *The accusative is used to express duration of time and extent of space.*

The noun must be one meaning time or distance, as, *diēs, day; pēs, foot*. Compare 152 and 148. Examples: *rēgnū multōs annōs obtinuerat* (I, 3, 10), *he had held the royal power many years*; *mīlia passuum ducenta quadrāgintā patēbant* (I, 2, 16), *extended two hundred and forty miles*.

## 131. Place to Which.

**RULE:** *Place to which is regularly expressed by the accusative with ad or in, but names of towns and domus and rūs omit the preposition.*

Compare 134, a, and 151. Examples: *ad iudiciū cōgīt* (I, 4, 14), *he brought to the trial*; *in agrum Nōricū trāsierant* (I, 5, 11), *they had crossed over into the Noreian territory*; *sē Massiliā cōferet* (Cic. Cat. II, 14), *he will go to Marseilles*; *domū reditiōis* (I, 5, 6), of a return home.

a. *Ad* is, however, sometimes used in the sense of *towards* (not *to*), or *in the neighborhood of*. Example: *ad Genavā pervenit* (I, 7, 4), *he reached the neighborhood of Geneva*.

## 132.

## VOCATIVE

The name of the person addressed is put in the vocative. Example: *dēsillite, commilitōnēs* (IV, 25, 11), *jump down, comrades*.

## 133.

## ABLATIVE

The language from which Latin developed had two more cases than Latin has,—the instrumental and the locative. The *original ablative* meant separation (*from*), the *instrumental* meant association or instrument (*with* or *by*), and the *locative* meant place where (*in*). The forms of these three cases united in the Latin ablative; so that this one case has meanings which belonged to three separate cases. This fact accounts for the many and widely differing uses which the case has.

## 134. Ablative of Separation.

**RULE:** *Separation is usually expressed by the ablative, with or without ab, dē, or ex.*

With some verbs both constructions are used; the individual usage of others must be noted. For the so-called dative of separation see 116, I. Examples: *suis finibus eōs prohibent* (I, 1, 13), *they repel them from their own territory*; *quae hostem ā pugnā prohibērent* (IV, 34, 9), *which kept the enemy from battle*; *ā Bibracte aberat* (I, 23, 2), *he was distant from Bibracte*.

a. *Place from which*: with verbs expressing motion:—

**RULE:** *Place from which is expressed by the ablative with ab, dē, or ex, but names of towns and domus and rūs omit the preposition.*

Compare 131 and 151. Examples: *ut dē finibus suis exirent* (I, 2, 4), *to go out from their territory*; *qui ex provinciā convēnerant* (I, 8, 2), *who had gathered from the province*; *Rōmā profugerunt* (Cic. Cat. I, 7), *they fled from Rome*; *domō exire* (I, 6, 1), *to go out from home*.

Ab is, however, used with names of towns to express *from the neighborhood of*.

b. **RULE:** *With verbs and adjectives of depriving, freeing, being without, and the like, the ablative without a preposition is generally used.*

Examples: *magnō mē metū liberābis* (Cic. Cat. I, 10), *you will free me of great fear*; *proeliō abstinēbat* (I, 22, 11), *refused battle* (literally *refrained from battle*).

### 135. Ablative of Source.

**RULE:** *The ablative, usually without a preposition, is used with the participles nātus and ortus, to express parentage or rank.*

Examples: *amplissimō genere nātus* (IV, 12, 13), *born of the highest rank*; *sorōrem ex matrē (nātam)* (I, 18, 16), *his sister on his mother's side*.

### 136. Ablative of Material.

**RULE:** *The material of which anything is made is expressed by the ablative with ex, less often dē.*

Example: *nāvēs factae ex rōbore* (III, 13, 5), *the ships were made of oak*.

### 137. Ablative of Agent.

**RULE:** *The agent of the passive voice is expressed by the ablative with ab.*

The agent is the *person* who performs the act. Compare the ablative of means (143), and the dative of agent (118). Example: *exercitum ab Helvëtiis pulsum* (I, 7, 13), *that his army had been routed by the Helvetii*.

### 138. Ablative of Cause.

**RULE:** *Cause is expressed by the ablative, generally without a preposition.*

Examples: *gratiâ et largitiône* (I, 9, 5), *because of his popularity and lavish giving*; *quod suâ victoriâ gloriarentur* (I, 14, 11), *that they boasted (because) of their victory*.

a. Cause is more frequently expressed by *causâ* and the genitive (99, a); by the accusative with *ob*, *per*, or *propter*; and by *dē* or *ex* with the ablative. Examples: *propter angustias* (I, 9, 2), *because of its narrowness*; *quâ dē causâ*, (I, 1, 11), *and for this reason*.

### 139. Ablative of Comparison.

**RULE:** *With comparatives, "than" may be expressed by the ablative.*

Examples: *lūce sunt clariōra tua cōsilia* (Cic. Cat. I, 6), *your plans are clearer than day*; *nōn amplius quinīs aut sēnīs milibus passuum* (I, 15, 14), *not more than five or six miles* (compare b).

This is not to be confused with the ablative of measure of difference (148).

a. When *quam* is used for *than*, the two nouns compared are in the same case. The ablative is generally used only when the first noun is nominative or accusative, and when the sentence is negated.

b. *Plūs*, *minus*, *amplius*, and *longius* are often used instead of *plūs quam*, etc. Example: *quae amplius octingentae ūnō erant visae tempore* (V, 8, 19), *of which more than 800 had been in sight at one time*.

### 140. Ablative of Accompaniment.

**RULE:** *Accompaniment is expressed by the ablative with cum.*

Example: *ut cum omnibus cōpīs exirent* (I, 2, 4), *to go out with all their troops*.

In military phrases *cum* is sometimes omitted.

Example: *Caesar subsequēbātur omnibus cōpīs* (II, 19, 1), *Caesar followed with all his troops*.

## 141. Descriptive Ablative.

**RULE:** *The ablative modified by an adjective may describe a person or thing by naming some quality.*

It may be used either attributively or predicatively. Compare the descriptive genitive (100). Examples: *hominēs inimicō animō* (I, 7, 15), *men of unfriendly disposition*; *nōndum bonō animō vidērentur* (I, 6, 11), *they did not yet seem (to be) well disposed (of a good spirit)*.

## 142. Ablative of Manner.

**RULE:** *Manner is expressed by the ablative, usually with either cum or a modifying adjective, rarely with both.*

Examples: *pars cum cruciātū necābātur* (V, 45, 5), *some were killed with torture*; *magnis itineribus* (I, 10, 8), *by forced marches*

## a. Ablative of Accordance.

**RULE:** *In some common phrases the ablative means in accordance with.*

These are especially the following nouns, modified by either an adjective or a genitive,—*cōsuetūdine, iūre, iussū (iniussū), lēge, mōribus, sententiā, sponte, voluntāte*. Examples: *iniussū suō* (I, 19, 4), *without his orders*; *mōribus suis* (I, 4, 1), *in accordance with their customs*; *suā voluntāte* (I, 20, 11), *in accordance with his wish*.

## b. Ablative of Attendant Circumstance.

**RULE:** *Sometimes the ablative expresses situation or an attendant circumstance.*

Usually it is impossible to distinguish clearly such an ablative from the ordinary ablative of manner. Examples: *imperio populi Rōmāni* (I, 18, 22), *under the sovereignty of the Roman people*; *intervallō pedum duōrum iungēbat* (IV, 17, 9), *he joined at a distance apart of two feet*.

## 143. Ablative of Means.

**RULE:** *The means or instrument by which a thing is done is expressed by the ablative without a preposition.*

Compare the ablative of the agent (137). Example: *rēgni cupiditāte inductus* (I, 2, 2), *influenced by the desire for royal power*.

a. Notice the ablative with the following words,—verbs and adjectives of *filling* (except *plenus*, 106); *fidō*, *cōfidō*, *trust in*; *nitor*, *rely upon*; *laccessō* (*proeliō*), *provoke (to battle)*; *assuēfactus*, *assuētus*, *accustomed to*; *frētus*, *relying upon*. Examples: *nātūrā loci cōfidēbant* (III, 9, 12), *they trusted in the nature of the country*; *nūllō officiō assuēfacti* (IV, 1, 17), *accustomed to no obedience*.

#### 144. Ablative of the Way.

**RULE:** *The road or way by which a person or thing goes is expressed by the ablative of means.*

Examples: *frūmentō quod flūmine Ararī nāvibus subvexerat* (I, 16, 5), *the grain which he had brought up (by way of) the Saone*; *eōdem itinere contendit* (I, 21, 8), *he advanced by the same road*.

145. Ablative with Special Deponent Verbs. The ablative is used with *utor*, *use*, *fruor*, *enjoy*, *fungor*, *perform*, *fulfill*, *potior*, *get possession of*, *vāscor*, *eat*, and their compounds.

This is an ablative of means, but is to be translated by a direct object. Examples: *eōdem ūsī cōnsiliō* (I, 5, 9), *adopting (having used) the same plan*; *imperio potiri* (I, 2, 6), *to get possession of the government*.

#### 146. Ablative with opus est.

**RULE:** *The ablative of means is used with opus est and ūsus est, meaning there is need of.*

Example: *Cæsari multis auxiliis opus est*, *Caesar needs many auxiliaries*.

a. But if the thing needed is expressed by a neuter pronoun or adjective it may be used as the subject, with *opus* as predicate noun. Example: *sī quid opus esset* (I, 34, 5), *if he needed anything*.

b. Sometimes the ablative neuter of the perfect passive participle is used with *opus est*. Example: *sī opus factō esset* (I, 42, 19), *if there should be need of action*.

#### 147. Ablative of Price.

**RULE:** *With verbs of buying, selling, and the like, price is expressed by the ablative.*

Compare the genitive of value, 105. Example: *parvō pretiō redēpta* (I, 18, 9), *bought up at a low price*.

## 148. Ablative of Degree of Difference.

**RULE:** *The ablative is used with comparatives and words of similar meaning to express the degree of difference.*

Compare 139. Examples: *nihilō minus* (I, 5, 1), *lit. less by nothing, = nevertheless*; *paucis ante diēbus*, (I, 18, 25), *a few days before* (*lit. before by a few days*).

*a. Eō . . . quō*, in this construction, may be translated *the . . . the*. Example: *eō gravius ferre quō minus meritō accidissent* (I, 14, 3), *lit. he endured them with more anger by that amount by which they had happened less deservedly, = he was the more angry the less deservedly they had happened.*

## 149. Ablative of Specification.

**RULE:** *The ablative is used to express that in respect to which a statement is true.*

Examples: *linguā inter sē differunt* (I, 1, 3), *they differ in language*; *maior nātō*, *older* (*greater in birth*).

*a.* The ablative is used with *dignus*, *worthy*, and *indignus*, *unworthy*. Example: *ipsis indignum* (V, 35, 11), *unworthy of themselves*.

## 150. Ablative Absolute.

**RULE:** *A noun and a participle in the ablative may modify a sentence as a subordinate clause would.*

**RULE:** *Two nouns, or a noun and an adjective, may stand in the ablative absolute when the English would connect them by the word "being."*

The construction is called *absolute* because it does not depend syntactically on anything in the sentence. It is used much more frequently than the nominative absolute in English; hence it should be translated in some other way. It is always possible to translate by a subordinate clause, but sometimes other translations are more convenient. Notice the translations of the following examples: (translated by active past participle) *remōtis equis proelium commisit* (I, 25, 2), *having sent the horses away, he began the battle*; (translated by prepositional phrase) *M Messālā M. Pisōne cōsulibus* (I, 2, 2), *in the consulship of, etc.*; *eō dēprecātore* (I, 9, 4), *by his mediation*; (translated by subordinate clause) *omnibus rēbus comparātis diem dicunt* (I, 6, 13),

when everything was ready they set a day; *Séquanis invitīs ire nōn poterant* (I, 9, 1), if the *Sequani* should refuse they could not go; *monte occupātō nostrōs expectābat* (I, 22, 11), though he had occupied the mountain he waited for our men; (translated by coordinate clause) *locīs superiōribus occupātīs . . . conantur* (I, 10, 12), they occupied advantageous positions and tried, etc.

### 151. Place in Which.

**RULE:** Place in which is regularly expressed by the ablative with *in*.

Compare 131 and 134, a. Example: *in eōrum finibus bellum gerunt* (I, 1, 13), they fight in their territory.

a. **RULE:** Names of towns and small islands stand in the locative (15, b; 16, b) if they are singular nouns of the first and second declensions; otherwise in the ablative without a preposition.

The locatives *domi*, at home, and *rūri*, in the country, are also in regular use. Examples: *Samarobrivae* (V, 24, 1), at *Samarobriva*; *domi largiter posse* (I, 18, 13), he had great influence at home.

b. **RULE:** No preposition is regularly used with *locō*, *locīs*, *parte*, *partibus* when accompanied by an adjective or an equivalent genitive; or with any noun modified by *tōtus*.

Examples: *nōn nullīs locīs transitur* (I, 6, 8), is crossed in several places; *vulgō tōtīs castris* (I, 39, 17), everywhere throughout the entire camp.

c. Latin often uses some other construction where the English would lead one to expect the construction of place in which. So *ab* and *ex* are used to express position; and the ablative of means is often used instead of the ablative with *in* if the construction is at all appropriate. Examples: *unā ex parte* (I, 2, 7), on one side; *cotidianīs proeliīs contendunt* (I, 1, 12), they contend in (by means of) daily battles; *memoriā tenēbat* (I, 7, 12), he held in (by means of) memory.

### 152. Ablative of Time.

**RULE:** Time at or within which is expressed by the ablative without a preposition.

Compare the accusative of time (130). Examples: *eō tempore* (I, 3, 14), at that time; *id quod ipsi diēbus viginti aegerrimē cōfēcerant* (I, 13, 4), a thing which they had barely accomplished in (within) twenty days.

a. The ablative rarely denotes duration of time. Example: *eā tōtā nocte ierunt* (I, 26, 13), they marched during that whole night.

## CASES WITH PREPOSITIONS

**153. Ablative.** The following prepositions govern the ablative: **ab**, **absque**, **cōram**, **cum**, **dē**, **ex**, **prae**, **prō**, **sine**, **tenus**.

*a.* The forms **ab** and **ex** must be used before words beginning with a vowel or *h*. It is always safe to use **ā** and **ē** before words beginning with a consonant, though **ab** and **ex** are often found.

*b.* **Cum** is enclitic with the personal and reflexive pronouns, and usually with the relative and interrogative.

**154. Accusative or Ablative.** In and *sub* with the accusative imply motion from outside *into* and *under*, respectively. **Subter** and **super** sometimes govern the ablative.

**155. Accusative.** All other prepositions govern the accusative.

**156. PREDICATE AND ATTRIBUTIVE ADJECTIVES**

A *predicate* adjective is connected with its noun by some part of the verb **sum** or a verb of similar meaning (see 95, *a*); as, **flūmen est lātum**, *the river is wide*. An *attributive* adjective modifies its noun without such a connecting verb; as, **flūmen lātum**, *the wide river*.

**157. AGREEMENT OF ADJECTIVES**

**RULE:** *Adjectives (including participles and adjective pronouns) agree with their nouns in gender, number, and case.*

Examples: **homō bonus**, *a good man*; **mulierī bonae**, *to a good woman*; **bellōrum magnōrum**, *of great wars*.

*a.* An adjective which belongs in sense to two or more nouns,—

1. If attributive, regularly agrees with the nearest noun. Examples: **vir bonus et mulier**, *a good man and woman*; **bella et victōriae magnae**, *great wars and victories*.

2. If predicative, regularly agrees with all the nouns, and must, therefore, be plural. If the nouns are of the same gender the adjective usually takes that gender; otherwise it is neuter unless one or more of the nouns denote things with life, when the adjective is usually masculine rather than feminine, feminine rather than neuter. But the adjective may be neuter under almost any circumstances. Examples: **hominēs et mōrēs sunt bonī**, *the men and their characters are good*; **hominēs et arma sunt magnī**, *the men and their arms are large*; **montēs et flūmina sunt magna**, *the mountains and rivers are large*.

## 158. ADJECTIVES USED SUBSTANTIVELY

Adjectives are rarely used as substantives in the singular, more commonly in the plural. The masculine is used in all cases in the sense of *man* or *men*, and the feminine in the sense of *woman* or *women*. The neuter is used in the sense of *thing* or *things*, and commonly only in the nominative and accusative because they are the only cases in which masculine and neuter forms can be distinguished. But the genitive singular neuter is common as the partitive genitive (101, a). Examples: *multi*, *many men*; *multorum*, *of many men*; *multae*, *many women*; *multarum*, *of many women*; *multa*, *many things*; *multarum rerum*, *of many things*.

## 159. ADJECTIVES FOR ADVERBS

Some adjectives are commonly used where the English idiom suggests the use of adverbs, chiefly when they modify the subject or object. Examples: *invitus venit*, lit. *he came unwilling*, = *he came unwillingly* or *he was unwilling to come*; *primus venit*, lit. *he the first came*, = *he came first*, or *he was the first to come*.

## 160. ADJECTIVES WITH PARTITIVE MEANING

Some adjectives mean only a part of an object. The most common of these are, *imus*, *infimus*, *the bottom of*; *medius*, *the middle of*; *summus*, *the top of*; *primus*, *the first part of*; *extrēmus*, *the last part of*; *reliquus*, *the rest of*. Examples: *in colle mediō* (I, 24, 3), *on the middle of (half way up) the slope*; *summus mōns* (I, 22, 1), *the top of the mountain*; *primā nocte* (I, 27, 12), *in the first part of the night*; *multō diū*, *late in the day*.

## 161. COMPARATIVES AND SUPERLATIVES

Comparatives and superlatives of both adjectives and adverbs are usually to be translated by the corresponding English forms; but the comparative is sometimes to be translated by *quite*, *rather*, *somewhat*, or *too*, the superlative by *very*. Examples: *diuturniorem impunitatem* (I, 14, 15), *quite long immunity*; *cupidius insecuti* (I, 15, 5), *following too eagerly*; *monte Iurā altissimō* (I, 2, 9), *by the very high mountain Jura*.

a. The superlative is often strengthened by *quam*, with or without a form of *possum*. Examples: *quam maximum numerum* (I, 3, 3), *quam maximum potest numerum* (I, 7, 4), *as great a number as possible*, or *the greatest possible number*.

## 162.

## PERSONAL PRONOUNS

A personal pronoun (51) is rarely used as the subject of a finite verb except for emphasis or contrast. Example: *ego maneō, tū abis, I remain, you go.*

a. The plural of the first person is more often used for the singular than in English. The plural of the second person is not used for the singular, as is done in English. Example: *utī suprà dēmōnstrāvimus* (II, 1, 1), *as I (lit. we) have said before.*

## REFLEXIVE PRONOUNS

**163. GENERAL RULE:** *Reflexive pronouns refer to the subject of the clause or sentence in which they stand.*

They correspond to *myself, himself, etc.*, in such sentences as *I praise myself, he praises himself.* This use of *myself, etc.*, must not be confused with the use in such sentences as *I myself praise him*, where *myself* emphasizes *I* and is in apposition with it. The latter use corresponds to the Latin intensive pronoun (172). The reflexive of the third person has two uses.

**164. The Direct Reflexive.**

**RULE:** *Sui and suus are used in every kind of sentence or clause to refer to the subject of the clause in which they stand.*

Example: *eum vidēō qui sē laudat, I see the man who praises himself.*

**165. The Indirect Reflexive.**

**RULE:** *In a subordinate clause which expresses the thought of the principal subject sui and suus are also used to refer to the principal subject instead of the subject of the clause in which they stand.*

This is especially important in indirect discourse (271) where the whole indirect discourse expresses the thought of the speaker, and consequently every pronoun referring to the speaker is regularly some form of *sui* or *suus*. Example: *Caesar dicit mē sē laudāvisse, Caesar says that I praised him (Caesar).*

**166. The Reciprocal Expression.** The reflexive pronouns are used with *inter* to express the reciprocal idea, *one another, each other.* Examples: *inter nōs laudāmus, we praise one another or each other; obsidēs utī inter sēsē dent* (I, 9, 10), *that they give hostages to each other.*

## APPENDIX

### POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS

**167.** The possessive pronouns (or adjectives) are rarely expressed except for clearness or contrast. Example: *Caesar exercitum dūxit, Caesar led (his) army.*

*a.* *Suus* is the adjective of the reflexive pronoun *sui*, and is used in the same way. See 164 and 165.

### DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS

**168.** *Hic* refers to something near the speaker, and is sometimes called the demonstrative of the first person. Example: *hic liber, this book (near me).*

**169.** *Iste* refers to something near the person spoken to, and is sometimes called the demonstrative of the second person. Example: *iste liber, that book (near you).* When used of an opponent it often implies contempt.

**170.** *Ille* refers to something more remote from the speaker or person spoken to, and is often called the demonstrative of the third person. Example: *ille liber, that book (yonder).*

*a.* *Ille* and *hic* are often used in the sense of *the former, the latter*. *Hic* is usually *the latter*, as referring to the nearer of two things mentioned; but it may be *the former* if the former object is more important and therefore nearer in thought.

**171.** *Is* is the weakest of the demonstratives and the one most used as the personal pronoun of the third person, or to refer without emphasis to something just mentioned, or as the antecedent of a relative.

*a.* When *is* is used substantively it is translated by a personal pronoun; when used as an adjective, by *this* or *that*; when used as the antecedent of a relative it is translated in various ways,—*the man, a man, such a man, that, etc.*

### THE INTENSIVE PRONOUN

**172.** *Ipsē* emphasizes the noun with which it agrees. It is usually translated by *self*, and is not to be confused with the reflexive pronouns. Examples: *ipse Caesar eum laudat, Caesar himself praises him; ipse Caesar sē laudat, Caesar himself praises himself.*

*a. Ipse* is often used to strengthen a possessive pronoun. It then stands in the genitive to agree with the genitive implied in the possessive. Examples: *meus ipsius liber*, *my own book (the book of me myself)*; *vester ipsorum liber*, *your own book (the book of you yourselves)*.

### THE RELATIVE PRONOUN

**173. RULE:** *A relative pronoun agrees with its antecedent in gender and number, but its case depends on its construction in its own clause.*

If it is used as subject the verb agrees in person with the antecedent. If the relative has two or more antecedents it follows the same rules of agreement as predicate adjectives (157, *a*, 2). The relative is never omitted. Examples: *Caesar, quem laudō*, *Caesar, whom I praise*; *ego, qui eum laudō*, *I, who praise him*; *Caesar et Cicerō, qui mē laudant*, *Caesar and Cicero, who praise me*.

*a. Coordinate Relative.* It is often necessary to translate a relative by a coordinating conjunction (*and, but, etc.*) and a personal or demonstrative pronoun. Example: *relinquēbātur ūna via, quā ire nōn poterant* (I, 9, 1), *there was left only one way, and by it they could not go*. Latin is fond of letting a relative stand at the beginning of an entirely new sentence, with its antecedent in the preceding sentence. It is then usually best translated by a personal or demonstrative pronoun. Example: *qui* (I, 15, 5), *they*.

### INDEFINITE PRONOUNS

**174. RULE:** *Quis, anyone, is the indefinite commonly used after si, nisi, nē, and num.*

Example: *si quis laudat*, *if anyone praises*.

**175. RULE:** *Aliquis (aliqui) is the indefinite commonly used in affirmative sentences to mean some one, some, etc.*

Example: *aliquis dicat*, *some one may say*.

**176.** *Quispiam* has almost exactly the same meaning as *aliquis*, but is rare. Example: *quispiam dicat*, *some one may say*.

**177. RULE:** *Quisquam and ūllus are the indefinites commonly used in negative sentences (except with nē), and in questions implying a negative, to mean any, anyone, etc.*

Examples: *neque quemquam laudō*, *nor do I praise anyone*; *cur quisquam iudicaret* (I, 40, 6), *why should anyone suppose?*

178. *Nesciō quis* (*nesciō quī*), originally meaning *I know not who*, is often used in a sense very much like that of *aliquis*, but with even more indefiniteness. Example: *nesciō quis laudat*, *some one or other praises*.

### AGREEMENT OF VERB AND SUBJECT

179. **RULE:** *A finite verb agrees with its subject in person and number.*

In the compound tenses the participle agrees with the subject in gender. Examples: *Caesar laudatus est*, *Caesar was praised*; *mulierēs laudatae sunt*, *the women were praised*.

a. But the verb sometimes agrees with the meaning of the subject rather than its grammatical form. Thus a singular collective noun sometimes has a plural verb, and a neuter noun a masculine participle in agreement. Examples: *multitūdō vēnerunt*, *a great number came*; *duo milia occisi sunt*, *two thousand were killed*.

180. If there are two or more subjects, the verb is usually plural. In the compound tenses of the passive the participle follows the rule given for predicate adjectives (157, a, 2). If the subjects differ in person the first person is preferred to the second and the second to the third. Examples: *homō et mulier occisi sunt*, *the man and the woman were killed*; *ego et tū vēnimus*, *you and I came*.

a. The verb may agree with the nearest subject, especially if the verb stands first or after the first subject. It regularly does so if the subjects are connected by conjunctions meaning *or* or *nor*. Example: *Caesar vēnit et Labiēnus*, *Caesar and Labienus came*; *neque Cacsar neque Labiēnus vēnit*, *neither Caesar nor Labienus came*; *filia atque unus ē filiis captus est* (I, 26, 11), *his daughter and one of his sons were taken*.

b. If the two or more subjects are thought of as forming a single whole, the verb is singular. Example: *Matrona et Sēquana dividit* (I, 1, 5), *the Marne and Seine separate* (they make one boundary line).

### THE VOICES

181. The voices have the same meanings and uses as in English. An intransitive verb can not be used in the passive except impersonally. Examples: *laudat*, *he praises*; *laudatur*, *he is praised*; *ei crēditur* (115, d) lit. *it is believed to him* = *he is believed*.

## THE MODES

**182.** The Latin verb has three modes,—the indicative, the subjunctive and the imperative. The name *mode* is applied to them because they indicate the manner in which the action of the verb is spoken of; for example, as a fact, as wished, as willed.

**183.** The Indicative speaks of the action as a fact, either stating a fact or asking a question about a fact. Examples: *laudat, he praises; nōn laudat, he does not praise; laudatne? does he praise?*

**184.** The Subjunctive has three classes of meanings, some of which may be further subdivided.

*a. The Subjunctive of Desire.* Both in independent sentences and in dependent clauses the subjunctive may express will (then called *volitive*) or wish (then called *optative*). Examples: *laudet, let him praise or may he praise; imperō ut laudet, I command that he praise, i. e., I give the command "let him praise."*

*b. The Subjunctive of Contingent Futurity.* Both in independent sentences and in dependent clauses the subjunctive may express what would take place under some condition, either expressed or implied, or, very seldom, it may express what may possibly take place. The latter use is the *potential*. Examples: *laudet, he would praise (if there should be reason); is est qui laudet, he is a man who would praise.*

*c. The Subjunctive of Fact.* Only in dependent clauses the subjunctive may express certainty and be translated like the indicative.

Example: *laudātur cum laudet, he is praised because he praises.* Compare *laudātur quod laudat, he is praised because he praises.*

**185.** The Imperative is used only in independent sentences. It expresses a command. Example: *laudā, praise (thou); dēsilitē (IV, 25, 11), jump down.*

## OTHER VERBAL FORMS

**186.** The Infinitive is not, strictly speaking, a mode, but a verbal noun. It is, however, used as a mode in certain kinds of dependent clauses. Example: *dicit Caesarem laudārī, he says that Caesar is praised.*

**187. Verbal Nouns and Adjectives.** The gerund and the supine are verbal nouns; the gerundive and the participles are verbal adjectives. None of these can form clauses in Latin, though they are often best translated into English by clauses.

### THE NEGATIVES

**188.** There are two kinds of negatives in Latin.

**a. RULE:** *Nōn, not, and neque, and not, nor, are used to negative statements and questions.*

That is, they are used with the indicative, the subjunctive of contingent futurity (184, b), the subjunctive of fact (184, c), and the infinitive. Examples: *nōn laudat, he does not praise; nōn laudet, he would not praise; nōnne laudat? does he not praise?*

**b. RULE:** *Nē, not, and nēve, and not, nor, are used to negative the subjunctive of desire (184, a).*

But *nē . . . quidem, not even*, is used in statements. Examples: *nē laudet, let him not praise, or may he not praise; nē laudat quidem, he does not even praise.*

### THE TENSES

**189.** The tense of a verb tells either one or both of two things: (1) the time of the action, whether past, present, or future; and (2) the stage of progress of the action at that time, whether already completed, still going on, or about to take place. For example, the following forms are all past, and yet express different things: *laudāvit, he praised*, simply puts the action in the past; *laudāverat, he had praised*, means that the action was already completed in the past time; *laudābat, he was praising*, means that the action was going on in the past time; and *laudātūrus erat, he was going to praise*, means that in the past time the action was on the point of taking place. Latin is much more accurate in its use of tenses than English is.

### THE TENSES OF THE INDICATIVE

**190.** The Present regularly puts the action in the present time and corresponds to all the forms of the English present. Example: *laudat, he praises* (simple), *he is praising* (progressive), *he does praise* (emphatic).

a. The historical present speaks of a past fact as if it were present, in order to put it vividly before the mind. It is much more common in Latin than in English, and therefore should usually be translated by a past. Example: *oppida sua omnia incendunt* (I, 5, 3), *they burned (burn) all their towns.*

b. With such expressions as *iam diū, iam pridem, for a long time, multōs annōs, for many years*, the Latin present is to be translated by the English present perfect. Example: *multōs annōs tē moneō*, *I have been warning you for many years.* There are really two ideas, "I have been in the past" and "I still am." English expresses one of them; Latin, like French and German, expresses the other.

c. For the present with *dum*, etc., see 234, a.

**191. The Imperfect** puts the action in the past and represents it as going on at that time. See 189. Example: *laudābat*, *he was praising.*

a. The imperfect is often used of repeated past action; as *laudābat*, *he used to praise*, or *he kept praising.* It is less often used of attempted past action; as *laudābat*, *he tried to praise.*

b. With the expressions mentioned in 190, b, the imperfect is to be translated by the English past perfect. Example: *multōs annōs tē monēbam*, *I had been warning you for many years.*

**192. The Future** puts the action in the future time and corresponds to the English future. See 199. Example: *laudābō*, *I shall or will praise, or be praising.*

**193. The Perfect** has two uses.

I. The present (or definite) perfect corresponds to the English present perfect with *have*. It represents the action as completed at the present time. Example: *laudāvī*, *I have praised.*

a. This perfect is often nearly equivalent to a present. For example, *vēnī*, *I have come*, is nearly equivalent to *I am here.* A few perfects are regularly translated by presents; especially *nōvī*, *cognōvī*, *I know* (literally *I have found out*), and *cōnsuēvī*, *I am accustomed* (literally *I have become accustomed*). Cf. the English, "I've got it," for "I have it."

II. The historical (or indefinite) perfect simply puts the action in the past, without telling anything about the stage of progress (189) at that time. It corresponds to the English past tense. Example: *laudāvi, I praised.*

194. The Pluperfect describes the action as already completed in the past, or puts it at a time before another past point of time. See 189. Example: *laudāveram, I had praised.*

a. The pluperfect of the verbs mentioned in 193, I, a, are nearly equivalent to imperfects. Examples: *vēneram, I had come, i. e., I was there; nōveram, I knew; cōsuēveram, I was accustomed.*

195. The Future Perfect represents the action as completed in future time, or as to take place before some future point of time. See 199. Example: *laudāverō, I shall or will have praised.*

a. The future perfects of the verbs mentioned in 193, I, a, are nearly equivalent to futures. Examples: *vēnerō, I shall have come, i. e., I shall be there; nōverō, I shall know; cōsuēverō, I shall be accustomed.*

196. The Active Periphrastic (75) Tenses represent the action as about to take place in a time future to the time of the tense of *sum*. Examples: *laudātūrus est, he is about to praise; laudātūrus erat, he was about to praise; laudātūrus erit, he will be about to praise.*

## INDICATIVE TENSES IN NARRATION

197. In telling of past events the indicative tenses used are the historical perfect (or the equivalent historical present), the imperfect, the pluperfect, and occasionally the imperfect periphrastic. The perfect is the narrating tense in which the successive main events of the story are told. The other tenses are the descriptive tenses in which the details which surround the main events are told. See 189.

For example, suppose one wished to begin a story with the following points. "The Helvetii lived in a small country; they planned to leave; Caesar went to Gaul." Told in that way all the verbs would be perfects; but the story is badly told. One would certainly pick out some chief event or events and group the others about them; and whatever events he so picked out would be expressed by the perfect, while the rest would be imperfect and pluperfect. He might begin in this way, "The Helvetii, who lived....., planned..... But Caesar went....." Then *planned* and *went* are perfects, each being

thought of as a separate step in the story; but *lived* is thought of as subordinate detail, telling something that was going on at the time of the main event, *planned*, and must be imperfect in Latin, though English uses the simple past tense. Or he might prefer to begin in this way, "The Helvetii, who lived . . . . ., had planned . . . . . But Caesar went." Then *went* is thought of as the first main event, and is the only perfect; *lived* is still imperfect; but *had planned* is thought of as a subordinate detail, giving something which had happened before the *went* and which led up to it, and is, therefore, a pluperfect.

**198.** The chief events, thus expressed by perfects, are usually made the principal, or independent clauses; and the subordinate details, thus expressed in imperfects and pluperfects, are usually made the subordinate, or dependent clauses. Therefore the following principle is a good one to follow unless there appears a clear reason for violating it:

**RULE:** *In a narrative of past events the independent clauses generally use the perfect, the dependent clauses generally use the imperfect and pluperfect.*

a. But there are dependent indicative clauses in which this principle does not hold. The following are the most important.

1. After *postquam*, *ubi*, etc. (see 237), the perfect or historical present is regularly used. See also 235, a, and 236, a.

2. After *dum*, *while* (see 234, a) the present is regularly used.

## THE FUTURE AND FUTURE PERFECT

**199.** Latin is very accurate in the use of the future and future perfect, while English is very inaccurate. In many subordinate clauses English uses the present for the future or the future perfect, while Latin uses the tenses required by the meanings. For an example see 256.

## THE TENSES OF THE SUBJUNCTIVE

**200.** The tenses of the subjunctive have two sets of meanings.

a. When the subjunctive has the same meaning as the indicative (184, c), the tenses of the subjunctive mean the same as the corresponding indicative tenses.

b. When the subjunctive has one of its other meanings (184, a, b), the time denoted by the tenses is future to that denoted by the corresponding indicative tenses. Examples: *laudet*, *let him praise*, is a command to praise in the future; *imperāvit ut laudāret*, *he commanded that he praise*, is a past command, to be carried into effect after the time of commanding.

**201.** The following table shows the meanings of the subjunctive tenses.

Present	= present or future
Imperfect	= imperfect or future to a past
Perfect	= perfect or future perfect
Pluperfect	= pluperfect or future perfect to a past

a. Some tenses have developed special meanings in certain constructions. See 221, 226, 254.

b. Any tense of the subjunctive may thus refer to the future. But where the meaning would be doubtful and it is necessary to express the future clearly, the periphrastic tenses are used. So *rogō quid faciās* regularly means *I ask what you are doing*, and would not be understood to mean *I ask what you will do*. Therefore the latter meaning must be expressed by *rogō quid factūrus sis*.

## THE SUBJUNCTIVE TENSES IN DEPENDENCE

**202.** When a subjunctive clause depends on some other clause, a little knowledge of the real meaning of the English will enable one to use the right tense, just as in the indicative. When the tenses mean the same as those of the indicative they will be used in the same way (197, 198). When they have the future set of meanings, it will be found that a present or perfect is usually required after a tense of present or future meaning, and the imperfect and pluperfect after one of past meaning. For example: *I come*, or *I shall come*, *that I may praise*, *laudem*; *I came* *that I might praise*, *laudārem*. In the subjunctive the usage is more regular than in the indicative, so that the convenient but not very accurate rule, called the *rule of sequence of tenses*, can be followed.

**RULE:** *In dependent subjunctive clauses principal tenses follow principal, and historical follow historical.*

**203.** Principal tenses are those which have to do with the present and future, historical are those which have to do with the past. The following table of examples shows which are the principal and which the historical tenses of both indicative and subjunctive.

## Principal Tenses

INDICATIVE		SUBJUNCTIVE	
Present	<b>rogō,</b> <i>I ask</i>	Present	<b>quid faciat,</b> <i>what he is doing</i>
Future	<b>rogābō,</b> <i>I shall ask</i>	Perfect	<b>quid fecerit,</b> <i>what he has done (or did)</i>
Present perfect	<b>rogāvi,</b> <i>I have asked</i>		
Future perfect	<b>rogāverō,</b> <i>I shall have asked</i>		
Historical Tenses			
Imperfect	<b>rogābam,</b> <i>I was asking</i>	Imperfect	<b>quid faceret,</b> <i>what he was doing</i>
Historical perf.	<b>rogāvi,</b> <i>I asked</i>	Pluperfect	<b>quid fecisset,</b> <i>what he had done</i>
Pluperfect	<b>rogāveram,</b> <i>I had asked,</i>		

*a.* Notice that the perfect subjunctive, even when it means past time, is called a principal tense.

**204. Exceptions to Rule of Sequence.** Two special points must be mentioned, not hard to understand if one remembers that this rule tells only how the natural meanings of the tenses make them depend on each other.

*a.* An exception may occur whenever the meaning of the sentence makes it natural. Still, Latin is not fond of these exceptions, and if exceptional tenses must be used it is better to use an indicative construction instead of a subjunctive, when there is a choice. For example, if the sentence, *he marched around because the mountains are high*, is to be put into Latin, *cum sint* would be an exception to sequence and it is better to use the indicative construction *quod sunt*.

The most common exceptions are in result clauses, where a perfect subjunctive sometimes follows a perfect indicative. Example: *temporis tanta fuit exiguitas, ut tempus defuerit* (II, 21, 9), *so short was the time that there was no opportunity*.

b. A subjunctive following an historical present may be either principal or historical, for it may either keep up the liveliness of the present or behave as if the perfect had been used. Examples: *diem dicunt quā diē conveniant* (I, 6, 14), *they appoint a day on which they are to assemble*; *omne frumentum combūrunt ut paratiōrēs ad pericula subeunda essent* (I, 5, 5), *they burned all the grain that they might be more ready to undergo danger*.

## TENSES OF INFINITIVES AND PARTICIPLES

**205. RULE:** *The time denoted by infinitives and participles is relative to the tenses of the verbs on which they depend.*

That is, a present infinitive or participle expresses action as going on at the time of the main verb, whether that is present, future, or past; a future expresses action as future to the time of the main verb; and a perfect expresses action as completed at the time of the main verb. The following table gives examples of the infinitive. The tense meanings of the participles are the same.

<b>dicō eum</b>	<b>laudāre</b>	<b>laudātūrum esse</b>	<b>laudāvisse</b>
lit. <i>him</i>	<i>to be praising</i>	<i>to be about to praise</i>	<i>to have praised</i>
<i>I say that he</i>	<i>is praising</i>	<i>will praise</i>	<i>has praised, or</i> <i>praised</i>
<b>dicam eum,</b>			
<i>I shall say that he is praising</i>		<i>will praise</i>	<i>has praised, or</i> <i>praised</i>
<b>dixi eum,</b>			
<i>I said that he</i>	<i>was praising</i>	<i>would praise</i>	<i>had praised</i>

a. With such perfects as *dēbui*, *licuit*, *oportuit*, *potui*, Latin correctly uses the present infinitive, though English illogically says *ought to have*, etc. Example: *laudāre potui* lit. *I was able to praise*, = *I could have praised*.

b. Some verbs lack the supine stem and therefore have no future active infinitive. The future passive infinitive which is given in the paradigms is rarely used. In both cases the place of the future infinitive is taken by *fore* (*futūrum esse*) *ut*, *it will (would) be that*, with the present or imperfect subjunctive. Examples: *dicīt fore ut timeat*, lit. *he says that it will be that he fears*, = *he says that he will fear*; *dixit fore ut laudārētur*, lit. *he said that it would be that he was praised*, = *he said that he would be praised*.

## STATEMENTS

**206.** The Indicative is used to state facts. Examples: *Caesar vēnit, Caesar came; Caesar nōn veniet, Caesar will not come.*

**207.** The Subjunctive of Contingent Futurity (184, b) is used to state what *would* take place under some condition. The condition is usually, but not always, expressed. This kind of statement is the conclusion of the conditional sentences in 254 and 257. For the peculiar use of tenses see those paragraphs. In many grammars this use of the subjunctive is called *potential*. Examples: *Caesar veniat, Caesar would come; Caesar nōn vēnissēt, Caesar would not have come; velim, I should like.*

**208.** The Potential Subjunctive (184, b) is sometimes used to state what *may* or *can* happen. It is very rarely used except where a negative is expressed or implied and in the phrase *aliquis dicat, some one may say*. In an independent sentence the student should always express *may, might, can, could*, by such words as *possum* and *licet*. Example: *nēmō dubitet, but usually nēmō dubitare potest, no one can doubt.*

## QUESTIONS

## USE OF MODES

**209.** The indicative, the subjunctive of contingent futurity, and, rarely, the potential subjunctive, are used in questions with precisely the same meanings as in statements (206-208). Examples: *quis veniet? who will come? quis veniat? who would come? quis dubitet? who can doubt (implying that no one can)?*

**210.** A Deliberative Question is one that asks for an expression of some one's will. The answer, if any, is a command. This kind of question is asked by the subjunctive. Example: *quid faciam? what shall I do? what am I to do?*

*a.* Under deliberative questions are usually classed those subjunctive questions which ask why one should do something or what one should do. Example: *cūr dubitem? why should I doubt?*

**211.** A rhetorical question is one which is used for rhetorical effect and which expects no answer. Any of the above questions may be either rhetorical or real. The rhetorical character of the question has no effect on the mode.

## INTRODUCTORY WORDS

**212.** Questions which can not be answered by *yes* or *no* are introduced in Latin, as in English, by an interrogative pronoun, adjective, or adverb. Examples: *quis vēnit?* *who came?* *quālis est?* *what sort of man is he?* *ubi est?* *where is he?*

**213. RULE:** Questions which can be answered by *yes* or *no* are usually, but not always, introduced by an interrogative particle.

In written English the interrogation point and usually the order of words show that a sentence is a question. The Romans had no interrogation point, and the order of words was free, so that an introductory particle was usually necessary.

**a. RULE:** When the question asks for information, without suggesting the answer, the enclitic *-ne* is added to the first word.

The first word is regularly the verb, unless some other word is put first for emphasis. Examples: *scrībitne epistulam?* *is he writing a letter?* *epistulamne scrībit?* *is it a letter that he is writing?*

**b. RULE:** When the form of the question suggests the answer *yes*, the interrogative particle is *nōnne*.

Example: *nōnne epistulam scrībit?* *is he not writing a letter?*

**c. RULE:** When the form of the question suggests the answer *no*, the interrogative particle is *num*.

Example: *num epistulam scrībit?* *he is not writing a letter, is he?*

## DOUBLE QUESTIONS

**214.** Double questions ask which of two or more possibilities is true. *Utrum* may stand at the beginning not to be translated, but as a mere warning that a double question is to follow; or *-ne* may be added to the first word; or no introductory word may be used, as always in English. The *or* is expressed by *an*; *or not* is *annōn*. Examples: *utrum pugnāvit an fūgit?* *pugnāvitne an fūgit?* *pugnāvit an fūgit?* *did he fight or run away?* *pugnāvit annōn?* *did he fight or not?*

## ANSWERS

**215.** Latin has no words answering exactly to *yes* and *no*. It often replies by repeating the verb as a statement; or it may use *ita*, *sānē*, etc., for *yes*, *nōn*, *minimē*, etc., for *no*. Example: *epistulamne scrībit?* *scrībit*, *yes*; *nōn scrībit*, *no*.

## COMMANDS AND PROHIBITIONS

216. These are expressions of will, for which the appropriate modes are the subjunctive of desire (184, a) and the imperative (185). The negative with the subjunctive is *nē* (188, b).

217. *RULE: An Exhortation is a command or prohibition in the first person plural of the present subjunctive.*

Examples: *laudēmus, let us praise; nē eāmus, let us not go.*

218. *RULE: A Command in the second person is expressed by the imperative.*

The future imperative is seldom used unless the verb used has no present. Examples: *venīte, come (ye); mementō, remember.*

219. *RULE: A Prohibition (Negative Command) in the second person is usually expressed by nōll, nōllite, be unwilling, and the present infinitive.*

A prohibition is less often expressed by *cavē* (with or without *nē*), *take care*, and the present subjunctive; or by *nē* and the perfect subjunctive. Examples: *nōll dubitāre, do not doubt; less often cavē (nē) dubitēs, or nē dubitāveris.*

220. *RULE: A Command or Prohibition in the third person is regularly expressed by the third person of the present subjunctive.*

Examples: *eat, let him go; nē veniant, let them not come.*

## WISHES

221. Wishes are regularly expressed by the subjunctive of desire (184, a) and are usually introduced by *utinam* (not to be translated).

a. *RULE: A wish for something in the future is expressed by the present subjunctive, with or without utinam.*

Example: *(utinam) adsit, may he be here!*

b. *RULE: A wish for something at the present time is expressed by the imperfect subjunctive with utinam.*

c. *RULE: A wish for something in the past is expressed by the plus-perfect subjunctive with utinam.*

Both of these express a wish, or rather a regret, for something unattainable. Examples: *utinam adesset, would that he were here! utinam affuisset, would that he had been here!*

### COORDINATE CLAUSES

**222.** A coordinate clause is connected with another clause by means of a *coordinating conjunction*. The coordinating conjunctions are such as mean *and, but, or, for*, and the like. They are used exactly as in English.

### DEPENDENT CLAUSES

**223.** Dependent clauses are those which are attached to other clauses by a relative or interrogative pronoun or adverb, or by a subordinating conjunction. Subordinating conjunctions are such as mean *if, because, although, when, after, before, in order that, so that*, and the like.

Neither the relatives nor any of the conjunctions have in themselves any effect on the mode of the verb in the dependent clause; but that clause may contain the indicative or the subjunctive with any of its meanings (184, a-c).

Dependent clauses are classified according to their meaning and use in the following groups: purpose clauses (225), result clauses (226), substantive clauses of desire (substantive purpose) (228), substantive clauses of result or fact (229), relative clauses of characteristic (230), determining relative clauses (231), parenthetical relative clauses (232), temporal clauses (233-242), causal clauses (243-245), adversative (concessive) clauses (246, 247), substantive quod clauses (248), conditional clauses (249-259), clauses of proviso (260), clauses of comparison (261), indirect questions (262-264), indirect discourse (265-273), attracted clauses (274), infinitive clauses (277-280).

### PURPOSE AND RESULT CLAUSES

**224.** The subjunctive of desire (184, a) is used in purpose clauses, the subjunctive of fact (184, c) in result clauses. This explains the difference in negatives (188), and on the other hand the presence of a negative determines the kind of clause. In the *ut* clauses, or when an English clause is to be translated into Latin, the only test is the meaning: if any feeling of will or intention is implied, the clause is one of purpose; otherwise, of result.

### PURPOSE CLAUSES

**225. RULE:** *Purpose may be expressed by the subjunctive with ut, nē, quō, or a relative.*

The infinitive, common in English, is never to be used. For the so-called substantive clause of purpose, see 228. The connecting words are used as follows:

*a.* In affirmative clauses:

1. If the principal clause contains a noun which can conveniently be used as an antecedent, a relative pronoun or adverb is commonly used. Example: *hominēs misit qui vidērent*, *he sent men to see*, lit. *who were to see*.

2. If the purpose clause contains an adjective or adverb in the comparative degree, *quō* is used. Example: *vēnit quō facilius vidēret*, *he came that he might see more easily*, lit. *by which the more easily he might see*.

3. Otherwise, and most commonly, the conjunction *ut* is used. Example: *vēnit ut vidēret*, *he came to see*, *that he might see*, or *in order to see*; *venit ut videat*, *he comes to see*.

*b.* In negative clauses the conjunction *nō* is always used. Example: *hoc fēcit nō quis (not ut nēmō) vidēret*, *he did this that no one might see*, or *to keep anyone from seeing*.

## RESULT CLAUSES

**226. RULE:** *Result is expressed by the subjunctive with ut or ut nōn.*

For the so-called relative clause of result see 230, *a*. For the substantive clause of result see 229. Examples: *mōns impendēbat, ut perpauci prohibere possent* (I, 6, 4), *a mountain overhung, so that a very few could easily check*; *incrēdibili lēnitāte, ita ut iūdicārī nōn possit* (I, 12, 2), *of extraordinary sluggishness, so that it can not be determined*; *tam fortis est ut pugnet*, *he is so brave that he would fight*, or *as to fight*, or *that he fights*.

## SUBSTANTIVE CLAUSES OF DESIRE (PURPOSE) AND OF RESULT

**227.** These clauses differ from clauses of purpose and result in that they are used like nouns, either as the object of a transitive verb, or as the subject of the passive, or in apposition with a noun or neuter pronoun.

They are also called *complementary clauses*, because they serve to complement (complete) the meaning of such expressions as *I command*, *I hinder*, *the result is*.

There is the same difference between substantive clauses of desire (purpose) and substantive clauses of result as between purpose clauses and result clauses, and they are to be distinguished in the same way (224).

### SUBSTANTIVE CLAUSES OF DESIRE (PURPOSE)

228. These clauses all consist of the subjunctive of desire (184, a) introduced by a conjunction. As the subjunctive of desire is divided into the *volitive* (expressing will) and the *optative* (expressing wish), some grammars divide these clauses into *substantive volitive clauses* and *substantive optative clauses*. The older name, *substantive purpose clauses*, is not good, because they do not really express purpose. For example: *imperō ut eās*, *I command you to go*, does not mean *I command in order that you may go*, but rather *I give the command "go"*.

a. **RULE:** *Most verbs expressing any form of desire, or of attempt to carry out a desire, may take the subjunctive with ut or nē.*

Such are verbs meaning *accomplish* (when the subject is a conscious agent), *command*, *permit*, *persuade*, *request*, *resolve*, *strive*, *urge*, *wish*, and the like.

But after most of these verbs the infinitive may be used instead, and it always is used after *iubeō*, *command*, *cōnor*, *attempt*, *patior*, *sinō*, *permit*. See 280, a. *Ut* is often omitted after verbs of *asking*, *commanding*, and *wishing*, especially after *volō*. The subjunctive, usually without *ut*, is often used with *oportet*, *it is right*, and *licet*, *it is permitted*; but see 276. Examples: *civitatī persuāsit ut exirent* (I, 2, 3), *he persuaded the citizens to leave*; *civitatī persuāsit nē exirent*, *he persuaded the citizens not to leave*; *oportet eat*, *he ought to go*; *ei licet eat*, *he may go*; *obsidēs utī dent perficit* (I, 9, 11), *he causes them to give hostages*.

b. **RULE:** *Verbs expressing fear take the subjunctive with nē meaning that, or ut meaning that not.*

But *nē nōn*, *that not*, is often used instead of *ut*. Examples: *timeō nē veniat*, *I fear that he will come* (originally *timeō: nē veniat*, *I am afraid: let him, or may he, not come*); *timeō ut* (or *nē nōn*) *veniat*, *I fear that he will not come* (originally *timeō: veniat*, *I am afraid: let him or may he, come*; *ut* or *nē nōn* was then used as the opposite of *nē*).

c. **RULE:** *Verbs meaning avoid, hinder, prevent, and refuse may take the subjunctive with nē, quā, or quōminus.*

But the infinitive may be used instead. *Nē* is used after an *affirmative principal clause*, *quān* after a *negative*, *quōminus* after *either* positive or negative. Examples: *eum impediō nē*, or *quōminus*, *veniat*, *I hinder him from coming*; *eum nōn impediō quān*, or *quōminus*, *veniat*, *I do not hinder him from coming*; *neque recūsātūrōs quōminus esset* (I, 31, 24), *and that they would not refuse to be*.

### SUBSTANTIVE *UT* CLAUSES OF RESULT OR FACT

229. These clauses are all usually called substantive result clauses, but most of them are better called *ut* clauses of fact, since they do not express result. They usually contain the subjunctive of fact (184, c) and are to be translated by the indicative.

a. **RULE:** *Verbs meaning accomplish take the subjunctive with ut or ut nōn when the subject is not a conscious agent.*

Compare 228, a. Example: *montēs efficiunt ut nōn exire possint*, *the mountains make (that they can not) it impossible for them to leave*.

b. **RULE:** *Impersonal verbs meaning the result is, it happens, it remains, there is added, and the like, may take the subjunctive with ut or ut nōn.*

The clause is the subject of the verb. But with some of these verbs an indicative *quod* clause of fact may be used with the same meaning. See 248. Example: *his rēbus fiēbat ut vagārentur* (I, 2, 11), *the result was that they wandered*.

c. **RULE:** *Such phrases as mōs est, cōsuētūdō est (it is the custom), may take the subjunctive with ut or ut nōn.*

The clause is a predicate nominative. But a substantive clause of desire (with *ut* or *nē*) may be used with such phrases, especially with *iūs est*, *lēs est*. Example: *mōs est ut ex equis pugnent*, *it is their custom to fight on horseback*.

d. **RULE:** *Negated verbs and phrases meaning doubt take the subjunctive with quān.*

After an affirmative expression of doubting an indirect question with *num*, *an*, or *si* is used, as *whether* is in English. *Dubitō* with the infinitive means *hesitate*. Example: *nōn est dubium quān hoc fēcerit*, *there is no doubt that he did this*.

## RELATIVE CLAUSES OF CHARACTERISTIC

**230. GENERAL RULE:** *The subjunctive is used in certain kinds of relative clauses which describe an indefinite antecedent.*

The subjunctive is not used in *all* relative clauses which describe an antecedent. If the antecedent is definite, the clause is parenthetical (232). If the clause is used chiefly to tell who or what the antecedent is, it is a determining clause (231). If the clause can be turned into a condition without changing the meaning of the sentence, it is a conditional clause (250). Clauses of characteristic are of the following kinds.

**a. RULE:** *The subjunctive is used in relative clauses which are equivalent in meaning to ut clauses of result.*

These clauses complete the meaning of an expressed or implied antecedent like *is = (such) a man* (171, a), *eius modi, such*, or an adjective modified by *tam*. Certain grammars call some of these clauses *relative result clauses*. Usually the subjunctive is to be translated as if it were indicative.

Examples: *is est qui pugnet, he is a man who fights; secūtae sunt tempestates quae nostrōs in castris continērent* (IV, 34, 8), *storms followed which kept our men in camp (= such storms . . . . . that they kept); tam improbus qui nōn fateātur* (Cic. Cat. I, 5), *so villainous as not to admit.*

**b. RULE:** *The subjunctive is used in relative clauses which complete statements and questions of existence and non-existence.*

So after *est qui*, *there is a man who*; *nōn* or *nēmō* or *nūllus est qui*, *there is no one who*; *quis est qui?* *who is there who?* *sōlus* or *ūnus est qui* *he is the only man who*; etc. Usually the subjunctive is to be translated as if it were indicative.

Examples: *nūlli sunt qui putent, there are none who think; erant omnīnō itinera duo quibus exire possent* (I, 6, 1), *there were only two ways by which they could leave.*

**c.** In some relative clauses of characteristic the subjunctive is to be translated by *can*, *could*, or by *should*, *ought*. Examples: *ūnum (iter) vix quā singuli carri dūcerentur* (I, 6, 4), *one road by which wagons could be moved; neque commissum intellegeret quārē timēret* (I, 14, 6), *he did not know that anything had been done on account of which he should be afraid.*

## DETERMINING RELATIVE CLAUSES

**231. RULE:** *Relative clauses which are used for the purpose of telling what person or thing is meant by an indefinite antecedent, employ the indicative.*

Example: *ad eam partem Ōceanī quae est ad Hispāniam* (I, 1, 21), *to that part of the ocean which is near Spain.*

## PARENTHETICAL RELATIVE CLAUSES

**232. RULE:** *A relative clause for which a parenthetical statement may be substituted usually employs the indicative.*

The antecedent of a parenthetical clause must always be definite, so that the relative clause may be entirely removed without destroying the meaning of the rest of the sentence. When the antecedent is indefinite the clause is either characterizing (230), determining (231), or conditional (250). Example: *Dumnorigi, qui principātum obtinēbat, persuādet* (I, 3, 14), *he persuaded Dumnorix, who held the chief power*; the same meaning could be expressed by *Dumnorigi (is principātum obtinēbat) persuādet*.

## TEMPORAL CLAUSES

**233.** There are many conjunctions denoting time relations. The most common is *cum* which must be treated by itself, but the others may be classified according to their meanings.

*While, as long as*

**234.** Conjunctions with these meanings show that one act was going on at the same time as another. *Cum* with the imperfect subjunctive does the same.

**a. RULE:** *Dum meaning while (i. e., at some time during the time that) is used with the present indicative, even in speaking of past time.*

See 198, a, 2. Example: *dum haec geruntur, Caesarī nūntiātum est* (I, 46, 1), *while these things were going on, it was reported to Caesar.*

**b. RULE:** *Dum, dōnec, quoad, and quam diū, as long as, while (i. e., during the entire time that) are used with the indicative, which is usually in the same tense as the main verb.*

Example: *quoad potuit, restitit* (IV, 12, 16), *he resisted as long as he could.*

*Until*

235. Conjunctions meaning *until* show that the action of the principal clause lasted up to that of the subordinate clause. Sometimes the actor in the principal clause foresees the second act and intends to bring it about, or prepares for it, and sometimes he does not. This is the basis for the distinction in the use of modes.

a. **RULE:** *Dum, dōnec, and quoad meaning until are used with the indicative when the subordinate act is not represented as foreseen.*

The perfect is regularly used for past time. Example: *Galli fuērunt liberi dum Caesar vēnit, the Gauls were free until Caesar came.*

b. **RULE:** *Dum, dōnec, and quoad meaning until are used with the subjunctive when the subordinate act is represented as foreseen.*

Examples: *Galli expectāvērunt dum Caesar venīret, the Gauls waited until Caesar should come, or for Caesar to come, or until Caesar came.*

*Before*

236. Conjunctions meaning *before* also represent the action of the subordinate clause as subsequent to that of the principal clause, and the principle on which the choice of modes is based is the same as that given in 235.

a. **RULE:** *Priusquam and antequam are used with the indicative when the subordinate act is not represented as foreseen.*

The perfect is regularly used for past time. Example: *Galli inter sē pugnāvērunt priusquam Caesar vēnit, the Gauls fought with one another before Caesar came.*

b. **RULE:** *Priusquam and antequam are used with the subjunctive when the subordinate act is represented as foreseen.*

Example: *Galli magnās cōpiās comparāre cōnāti sunt priusquam Caesar venīret, the Gauls tried to prepare large forces before Caesar should arrive, or arrived, or in view of Caesar's arrival.*

c. These conjunctions are often written as two words, the *prius* or *ante* standing in the principal clause, and the *quam* at the beginning of the subordinate clause. Translate as if the complete word stood where *quam* does. Example: *Galli prius inter sē pugnāvērunt quam Caesar vēnit, translated as in a.*

*After*

**237. RULE:** *Postquam, after, ut, ubi, when (after, not while), simul ac, cum primum, as soon as (immediately after), are used with the indicative, generally the perfect or the historical present.*

Example: *ubi certiōrēs facti sunt, lēgātōs mittunt (I, 7, 6), when they were informed of it they sent envoys.*

*Cum*

**238. Cum** has three chief uses:—

temporal, *when, after*;  
causal, *since, because*;  
adversative (concessive), *although*.

It is in reality an undeclined relative, whose antecedent is something like *at the time* or *at a time*, sometimes expressed, more often only implied. The use of modes with *cum* is much the same as with the declined relative (230-232, 245, 247, 250).

**239. Causal and Adversative Cum.**

**RULE:** *Cum meaning since or although is used with all tenses of the subjunctive.*

Compare the causal relative (245) and the adversative relative (247). Examples: *quae cum ita sint, perge (Cic. Cat. I, 10), since this is so, go on; his cum persuādēre nōn possent, lēgātōs mittunt (I, 9, 2), since they could not persuade them, they sent envoys; cum ad vesperum pugnātum sit (I, 26, 4), although they fought till evening.*

**240. Temporal cum.** Inaccurate but convenient rules are:—

**RULE:** *Cum meaning when is always used with the indicative when the principal verb is present or future.*

**RULE:** *Cum meaning when is generally followed by the imperfect or pluperfect subjunctive when the principal verb is past.*

See examples under 241 and 242, which give more accurate rules for the same clauses.

**241. Temporal Cum with the Indicative.**

a. **Clauses of Date.**

**RULE:** *Cum* meaning *when* is followed by the indicative when the clause merely dates the action of the principal clause.

These clauses are in reality determining clauses (231), and are especially common when an antecedent like *tum* or *eō tempore* is expressed in the principal clause. But a subjunctive is often found where an indicative might be expected. Examples: *tum cum ex urbe Catilinam ciciēbam* (Cic. Cat. III, 3), *at the time when I was trying to drive Catiline from the city*; *cum Caesar in Galliam vēnit, principes erant Haedui* (VI, 12, 1), *at the time when Caesar came to Gaul the Haedui were the leaders.*

#### b. Clauses of Repeated Action.

**RULE:** *Cum* meaning *whenever* is usually followed by the indicative.

These clauses correspond exactly to conditional relative clauses (150). It is necessary only that *whenever* be a possible translation of *cum*; *when* is usually a better translation. For the occasional subjunctive in such clauses see 242, b.

Example: *haec cum dēfixerat, contrāria duo statuēbat* (IV, 17, 10), *when he had set them firmly (in each of several cases) he put two others opposite.*

#### c. Inverted Cum Clauses.

**RULE:** *Cum* meaning *when* is followed by the indicative when the principal action is stated in the *cum* clause.

In the most common type of *cum* clauses (242, a) the principal action is stated in the principal clause, and the *cum* clause describes the situation under which it happened. In the inverted clause this relation is reversed.

Example: *vix agmen prōcesserat, cum Galli cohortātī (sunt) inter sē* (VI, 8, 1), *hardly had the line advanced, when the Gauls encouraged one another (for cum . . . . . prōcessisset, . . . . . cohortātī sunt, when the line had advanced the Gauls encouraged, etc.).*

### 242. Temporal Cum with the Subjunctive.

#### a. Situation and Narrative Clauses.

**RULE:** *Cum* meaning *when* is followed by the subjunctive when the clause describes the situation under which the principal action took place.

**RULE:** *Cum* meaning when is followed by the subjunctive when the clause states a new point in the story. (Unless the clause is inverted, 241, c.)

These rules are given together because most subjunctive clauses are both situation and narrative clauses. Sometimes, however, one rule seems to apply better than the other. The situation clause corresponds to the relative clause of characteristic (230). Examples: *cum esset Caesar in citeriōre Galliā, crēbrī ad eum rūmōrēs afferēbantur* (II, 1, 1), when Caesar was in Cisalpine Gaul, frequent rumors came to him (mainly situation, for the fact that Caesar was in Cisalpine Gaul has been stated before, so that it is no new point in the story); *cum cīvītās iūs suum exsequi cōnārētur, Orgetorix mortuus est* (I, 4, 2), while the state was trying to enforce its laws, Orgetorix died (both situation and narrative, for the fact that the state tried to enforce its laws is told only in this *cum* clause).

#### b. Clauses of Repeated Action.

**RULE:** *Cum* meaning whenever is sometimes followed by the subjunctive.

Compare 241, b. Example: *cum ferrum sē inflexisset, neque ēvelle-re poterant* (I, 25, 7), when the iron had bent (in each of many cases), they could neither draw it out, etc.

### CAUSAL CLAUSES

243. Dependent causal clauses are introduced by the conjunctions *cum*, *quod*, *quia*, *quoniam*, and *quandō*, or by the relative. The conjunctions *nam*, *enim*, *etenim*, *for*, introduce coordinate clauses.

244. **RULE:** *Quod*, *quia*, *quoniam*, and *quandō*, because, since, are used with the indicative unless the reason is quoted.

When the writer wishes to imply because (as he said), (as he thought), (as I said), (as I thought), the subjunctive is used. See 273. Examples: (with the indicative) *reliquōs Gallōs praecedunt, quod contendunt* (I, 1, 11), they surpass the other Gauls because they fight; (with the subjunctive) *quod sit dēstitūtus queritur* (I, 16, 18), he complained because (as he said) he had been deserted.

245. **RULE:** *Cum*, since, because, and often *qui*, since he, etc., are used with the subjunctive.

But the indicative is often used with *qui*, where the causal idea is perfectly clear. If *praesertim*, *especially*, stands in a subjunctive *qui* or *cum* clause, the clause is probably causal. Examples: (with the subjunctive) *illi autem, qui omnia praeclara sentirent, negotium suscepērunt* (Cic. Cat. III, 5), *and they, since they had none but patriotic thoughts, undertook the matter*; (with the indicative) *fuit militum virtus laudanda, qui adaequārunt* (V, 8, 12), *the energy of the soldiers deserved praise, who (= since they) kept up with, etc.* For example with *cum*, see 239.

### ADVERSATIVE (CONCESSIVE) CLAUSES

**246. RULE:** *Quamquam*, *although*, and *etsi*, *tametsi*, *even if*, *although*, are used with the indicative.

Example: *etsi nondum eorum consilia cognoverant, tamen suspicabatur* (IV, 31, 1), *although he did not yet know their plans, nevertheless he suspected*. But *quamquam* sometimes introduces an independent sentence, and is then best translated by *and yet*.

**247. RULE:** *Cum*, *although*, and less commonly *quamvis* (*in Cicero*), *however much*, *however*, *although*, *qui*, *although he*, etc., *ut*, *although*, are used with the subjunctive.

Examples: (for *cum* see 239) *quamvis senex sit, fortis est*, *however old he may be, he is brave*; *ut omnia contra opinionem acciderent* (Caes. III, 9, 17), *though everything should turn out contrary to their expectations*. But the indicative is sometimes used with *qui* when the adversative idea is clear.

### SUBSTANTIVE QUOD CLAUSES

**248. RULE:** *Substantive clauses with quod, that, employ the indicative.*

This clause is most commonly used as the appositive of a neuter pronoun. Example: *illa praeterea, quod Maelium occidit* (Cic. Cat. I, 3), *I pass over this, that he slew Maelius*.

a. Sometimes the *quod* clause, standing at the beginning of its sentence, is used in the sense of *as to the fact that, whereas*. Example: *quod unum pagum adortus es, noli ob eam rem despicere* (compare I, 13, 12), *as to your having attacked one canton, do not despise us on that account*.

## CONDITIONAL SENTENCES

**249.** A conditional sentence has two essential clauses, a condition and a conclusion. The condition is the dependent clause, and is so called because it states the condition on which the truth of the principal clause depends; the conclusion is the principal clause. Example: *if he comes* (condition) *I shall see him* (conclusion).

## CONNECTIVES IN CONDITIONAL SENTENCES.

**250.** The connectives are the conjunctions *si, if, si nōn, if not, nisi, if not or unless, sin, but if*, and relative pronouns and adverbs used in a conditional sense.

Whenever a relative has for its antecedent, either expressed or implied, a word like *anyone, everyone, always, everywhere* (any word that includes all of a class of objects), it is a conditional relative, and the clause is a condition. For example, *anyone who thinks will see*, means *if anyone thinks he will see*; *whenever I saw him he used to say*, means *if at any time I saw him he used to say*. Compare this use of the relative with those given in 230-232.

## CLASSES OF CONDITIONAL SENTENCES

**251.** There are four classes of conditional sentences, two for those dealing with present or past time, two for those dealing with future time:

a. **Undetermined Present or Past (253).** *si pugnāt, vincit, if he fights he conquers; si pugnāvit, vicit, if he fought he conquered.*

b. **Present or Past Contrary to Fact (254).** *si pugnāret, vinceret, if he were fighting he would be conquering; si pugnāvisset, viciisset, if he had fought he would have conquered.*

c. **More Vivid (Confident) Future (256).** *si pugnābit, vincet, if he fights (shall fight) he will conquer.*

d. **Less Vivid (Confident) Future (257).** *si pugnet, vincat, if he should fight he would conquer.*

## A. Present or Past

**252.** In present or past time a conditional sentence may either express no opinion as the truth or falsity of a statement, simply saying

that one thing is true if another is; or it may imply that a condition is not fulfilled, and that in consequence the conclusion is not fulfilled. There is no form of condition which affirms the truth of a statement. The speaker or hearer may know it to be true, but the sentence does not say so.

**253. Undetermined Present or Past. RULE:** *A present or past conditional sentence whose form affirms nothing as to its fulfillment employs the present or past tenses of the indicative.*

Examples: *sī fortis est eum laudō, if he is brave I praise him; qui fortis est pro patriā pugnat, whoever is brave fights for his country; nisi pro patriā pugnavit nōn fortis fuit, unless he fought for his country he was not brave.*

**254. Present or Past Contrary to Fact. RULE:** *A present or past conditional sentence whose form implies that the condition is not or was not fulfilled employs the imperfect or pluperfect subjunctive.*

The imperfect subjunctive is used to express present time, the pluperfect to express past time. Examples: *sī fortis esset eum laudārem, if he were brave I should praise, or be praising, him (implying but he is not, and I do not); nisi pro patriā pugnavisset eum nōn laudāvisssem, unless he had (if he had not) fought for his country I should not have praised him (implying but he did, and I do; the contrary of the negative supposition); sī pugnavisset eum laudārem, if he had fought I should praise, or be praising, him (implying but he did not, and I do not; notice the change of tense).*

a. When the conclusion of such conditions contains a verb meaning *could* or *ought*, or such expressions as *it would be hard*, or *just*, the verb of the conclusion is usually in the indicative, the imperfect for present time, the perfect or pluperfect for past time. The condition requires the subjunctive, like any other condition contrary to fact.

This is because the conclusion is not usually really contrary to fact, though the English idiom makes it seem so. When the conclusion is really contrary to fact, the subjunctive is used. Examples: *sī fortis esset pugnare poterat, if he were brave he could fight (he has the power in any case; hence the indicative); sī fortis fuisset pugnare debuit or debu- erat, if he had been brave he ought to have fought (the duty rested upon him in any case; hence the indicative).*

*B. Future*

**255.** There are two forms of future conditions, one expressing less confidence in the fulfillment of the condition than the other. There is no form to express nonfulfillment, since one can not be sure of the nonfulfillment of a future condition.

**256. More Vivid (Confident) Future. RULE:** *A future conditional sentence whose translation contains shall or will employs the future or future perfect indicative.*

The English commonly uses the present with a future meaning in the condition. *If I see him I shall tell him*, means *if I shall see him I shall tell him*, and the Latin is precise in using the future. Moreover, if the condition must be fulfilled before the conclusion can take place, the Latin uses the future perfect, while the English commonly uses the present. *If he arrives first he will tell him*, means *if he shall have arrived first*, and the Latin is precise in using the future perfect. Examples: *sī pugnābit eum laudābō*, *if he fights or is fighting (shall fight or shall be fighting) I shall praise him*; *quī pugnāverit laudābitur*, *whoever fights or has fought (shall have fought) will be praised*.

**257. Less Vivid (Confident) Future. RULE:** *A future conditional sentence whose translation contains should or would employs the present or perfect subjunctive*

The difference between the present and perfect is the same as that between the future and future perfect indicative in 256. Examples: *sī pugnet vincat*, *if he should fight, or were to fight, he would conquer*; *quī pugnet laudētur*, *whoever should fight, or should be fighting, would be praised*; *sī nōn pugnāverit eum nōn laudem*, *if he should not fight, or should not have fought, I should not praise him*.

## MIXED CONDITIONS

**258.** In Latin, as in English, the condition and the conclusion are usually of the same form. But sometimes, in both languages, one may wish to use a condition of one form, a conclusion of another. Example: *sī veniat hic adsumus*, *if he should come we are here*.

## CONDITION OMITTED OR IMPLIED

**259.** Instead of being expressed by a clause as in the examples given above, the condition may be implied in a phrase or even in a single

word. Sometimes it is omitted altogether, but is supplied in thought. Examples: *damnātum poenam sequi oportēbat* (I, 4, 3), (*if*) *condemned, it was necessary that punishment be inflicted on him*; *dicat*, he would say (*if* he should be asked); *velim*, *I should like*. The last two are simply the independent subjunctive of contingent futurity (207).

### CLAUSES OF PROVISO

**260. RULE:** *Dum, modo, and dummodo in the sense of if only, provided that, are used with the subjunctive.*

Notice that although these seem like conditions the construction is not the same, for the subjunctive is always used, and the negative is often *nē*. This is because the construction originally meant *only let* (*him come: I will*, etc), and the mode is the subjunctive of desire (184, a). Examples: *magnō mē metū liberābis dummodo mūrus intersit* (Cic. Cat. I, 10), *you will rid me of much fear if only there be (only let there be) a wall between us*; *modo nē (or nōn) discēdat eum vidēbō*, *if only he do not leave I shall see him*.

### CLAUSES OF COMPARISON

**261. RULE:** *The subjunctive is used with ac si, quam si, quasi, ut si, tamquam, tamquam si, velut, velut si, as if, just as if.*

The tenses follow the rule of sequence although the English translation might lead one to expect always the imperfect and pluperfect subjunctive. Examples: *currit quasi timeat*, *he runs as if he were afraid*; *cucurrit quasi timēret*, *he ran as if he were afraid*.

### INDIRECT QUOTATION

#### A. INDIRECT QUESTIONS

**262. GENERAL RULE:** *The subjunctive is employed in all indirect questions.*

\* An indirect question is a substantive clause introduced by an interrogative word. A direct question may be quoted in the exact words in which it was asked, as *he asked "where are you going?"*; or it may be quoted indirectly; that is, with such changes as make it a dependent clause, as *he asked where I (or he) was going*. In the latter form it is an indirect question.

**263. RULE:** *Subjunctive questions (209, 210) retain the subjunctive in the indirect form.*

The modal meaning is unchanged. Examples: (direct) *quis veniat?* *who would come?* (indirect) *rogō quis veniat*, *I ask who would come*; (direct) *quid faciam?* *what am I to do?* (indirect) *rogāvi quid facerem*, *I asked what I was to do.*

**264. RULE:** *All indicative questions change to the subjunctive in the indirect form.*

a. When the direct question is introduced by an interrogative pronoun, adjective, or adverb (212), the same word serves to introduce the indirect form. Examples: (direct) *quis vēnit?* *who came?* (indirect) *rogō quis vēnerit*, *I ask who came*; (direct) *ubi est?* *where is he?* (indirect) *mihi dixit ubi esset*, *he told me where he was.*

b. When the direct question can be answered by *yes* or *no* (213) the indirect form is introduced by *num* or *-ne*, *whether* (no difference in meaning). *SI* is also used in the sense of *to see whether* or *whether*; Examples: (direct) *venitne?* *is he coming?* (indirect) *rogō num veniat*, or *rogō veniatne*, *I ask whether he is coming*; *expectāvit si venirent*, *he waited to see whether they would come.*

c. Indirect double questions are introduced by the same particles as direct double questions (214), but *or not* is expressed by *necne*, instead of *annōn*. Examples: *rogāvi utrum pugnāvisset, an fugisset*, *I asked whether he had fought or run away*; *rogāvi utrum pugnāvisset necne*, *I asked whether he had fought or not.*

## B. INDIRECT DISCOURSE

**265.** *Direct discourse* repeats the *exact words of a remark* or a thought. Example: *he said, "the soldiers are brave."* *Indirect discourse* repeats a remark or thought with such changes in the words as to make of it a dependent construction. Example: *he said that the soldiers were brave.*

Indirect discourse may quote a long speech consisting of separate sentences, and periods may be used between these sentences; but, none the less, each sentence is to be thought of as depending on a verb of *saying* or *thinking*, which may be either expressed or implied at the beginning. When one speaks of a principal clause in indirect discourse one means a clause that was principal in the direct form.

*Principal Clauses*

**266. Declarative Sentences. RULE:** Every principal clause containing a statement requires the infinitive with subject accusative in indirect discourse (279).

But the subject is not always expressed. Example: *miles est fortis, the soldier is brave*, becomes *dixit militem esse fortem, he said that the soldier was brave*.

a. For the meanings of the infinitive tenses see 205. It follows from the statements there made that the present infinitive must be used for an original present indicative, the future for the future indicative, and the perfect for the imperfect, perfect, and pluperfect indicative.

**267. Imperative Sentences. RULE:** Every sentence, containing a command or prohibition requires the subjunctive in indirect discourse.

This is a use of the subjunctive of desire; the negative is *nē*. Examples: *ad 1d. Apr. revertimini, return about the thirteenth of April*, becomes *respondit: . . . ad 1d. Apr. reverterentur* (I, 7, 19), *he replied . . . : (that) they should return*, etc.; *is ita ēgit: . . . nē . . . dēspiceret* (I, 13, 14), *he should not despise* (from an original *nōli dēspicere* (219), *do not despise*).

**268. Interrogative Sentences. I. RULE:** An indicative question (209), if real (211), changes to the subjunctive in indirect discourse.

Example: *respondit: . . . quid sibi vellet* (I, 44, 24), *what did he want* (for an original *quid tibi vis, what do you want?*)?

II. **RULE.** An indicative question (209), if rhetorical (211), changes to the infinitive in indirect discourse.

This is because a rhetorical question is equivalent to a declarative sentence, which would require the infinitive (266). Example: *respondit: . . . num memoriam dēponere posse* (I, 14, 8), *could he forget* (for an original *I can not forget [can I?]*)?

**III. RULE.** A subjunctive question (209, 210), whether real or rhetorical, retains the subjunctive in indirect discourse.

Example: *incūsavit: . . . cūr quisquam iūdicāret* (I, 40, 6), *why should anyone suppose* (for an original *iūdicet*. See 210. a)?

**269. Subordinate Clause. RULE:** Every subordinate indicative or subjunctive clause of the direct form requires the subjunctive in indirect discourse.

Infinitives remain unchanged. Example: *incūsāvit: . . . ex quō iūdicārī posse quantum haberet in sē boni cōstantia, propterea quod . . . superāssent* (I, 40, 17), *from which it could be seen what an advantage courage had, since they had conquered* (for original *iūdicārī, potest, habeat, superāvistis*).

a. But a coordinate relative clause (173, a), being equivalent to a clause connected by *et*, or some other coordinating conjunction, sometimes has the infinitive in indirect discourse. See example under 269: since *quō* connects with the preceding sentence *posse* might have been a subjunctive.

### *Tenses of the Subjunctive*

**270.** The tenses of the subjunctive regularly follow the rule of sequence, taking their time from the verb of saying or thinking.

a. *Repraesentātiō.* But after a past verb of saying or thinking the person who quotes very often drops the secondary sequence and uses the tenses of the original speaker, for the sake of vividness. It is best to use past tenses in translating. Example: *respondit: . . . cum ea ita sint . . . sēsē pācem esse factūrum* (I, 14, 16), *he replied . . . that although these things were so he would make peace.*

b. After a perfect infinitive the secondary sequence must be used even if the infinitive depends on a primary verb of saying or thinking; for the perfect infinitive is past, even though it depends on a present. Example: *dicit Caesarem laudātum esse quod fortis esset*, *he says that Caesar was praised because he was brave.*

c. In changing from the direct form to a subjunctive of the indirect the following rule is helpful: *keep the stem of the original and follow the sequence*. So for example a present or future indicative becomes present subjunctive after *dicit*, imperfect after *dixit*, in either case retaining the present stem; a perfect or future perfect indicative becomes perfect subjunctive after *dicit*, pluperfect after *dixit*, in either case retaining the perfect stem. ✓

### *Other Changes*

**271.** If a pronoun of the first person changes to one of the third person it must be to some form of *sui* or *suus* (rarely of *ipse*). See 165.

All other changes of person or pronouns are the same as in English. Example: *hunc mīlitem laudō, I praise this soldier*, may become *dicō mē hunc mīlitem laudāre, I say that I praise this soldier*, or *dicīt sē illum mīlitem laudāre, he says that he praises that soldier*. Adverbs will be changed in the same way, *now to then, here to there*, etc. Vocatives will become nominatives or disappear.

### *Conditions in Indirect Discourse*

272. I. The condition, since it is the dependent clause, must have its verb in the subjunctive. The tense follows the rule of sequence except that the imperfect and pluperfect subjunctive of conditions contrary to fact never change, even after a primary tense.

II. The conclusion, since it is the principal clause, must have its verb in the infinitive. Indicative tenses change to infinitive tenses according to 266, a. The present and perfect subjunctive of less vivid (confident) future conclusions become the future infinitive, in *-ūrus esse*. The imperfect and pluperfect of conclusions contrary to fact become an infinitive not elsewhere used, in *-ūrus fuisse*.

Examples are needed for only the conditions contrary to fact, since all others follow the regular rules of sequence and indirect discourse. *Sī pugnāret eum laudārem, if he were fighting I should praise him*, becomes, after either *dicīt* or *dixit*, *sī pugnāret sē eum laudātūrum fuisse*; *sī pugnāvisset eum laudāvissem, if he had fought I should have praised him*, becomes, after either *dicīt* or *dixit*, *sī pugnāvisset sē eum laudātūrum fuisse*.

### C. IMPLIED INDIRECT DISCOURSE

273. *RULE: The subjunctive may be used in any subordinate clause to imply that it is a quotation.*

This is the reason for the subjunctive in causal clauses with *quod*, etc. (244) It is also especially common in clauses depending on purpose clauses and substantive clauses of desire (purpose). Examples: *Caesar frumentum quod essent polliciti flāgitāre* (I, 16, 1), *Caesar kept demanding the grain which (as he said) they had promised*; *erat ei praeceptum nē proelium committeret nisi ipsius cōpiae visae essent* (I, 23, 8), *he had been commanded not to give battle unless Caesar's forces should be seen* (Caesar had said *nisi meae copiae visae erunt, unless my forces shall be seen*).

## SUBJUNCTIVE BY ATTRACTION

**274. RULE:** Sometimes a verb that would otherwise stand in the indicative is put in the subjunctive only because it depends on another subjunctive or on an infinitive.

Example: *cum certissimae res accēderent, quod Helvētiōs trādūxisset* (I, 19, 1), *since the most clearly proven facts were added (namely) that he had led the Helvetii.*

## THE INFINITIVE

For the tenses of the infinitive see 205.

## A. WITHOUT SUBJECT ACCUSATIVE

## COMPLEMENTARY INFINITIVE

**275. RULE:** Many verbs which imply another action of the same subject take a present infinitive to complete their meaning.

Such are verbs meaning *be able, be accustomed, attempt, begin, cease, dare, determine, ought, wish*, and the like. But with some of these verbs a substantive clause of desire (purpose) is often used. See 228, a. Examples: *ire potest, he can go; ire potuit, he could have gone, literally he was able to go; ire debet, he ought to go; cōstituērunt comparāre* (I, 3, 2), *they determined to prepare.*

a. As these verbs have no subject accusative, either expressed or understood, a predicate noun or adjective must agree with the nominative subject of the principal verb. Example: *fortis esse cōnātur, he tries to be brave.*

## INFINITIVE AS SUBJECT

**276.** The present infinitive (rarely the perfect) without an expressed subject accusative may be used as the subject of the verbs mentioned in 278. With *licet, it is permitted*, the dative is commonly used instead of a subject accusative. Examples: *ire oportet, one must go, literally to go is right; ire oportuit, one ought to have gone* (205, a), *literally to go was right; ei ire licuit, he might have gone, literally to go was permitted to him; ire necesse est, one must go.*

a. Since a subject accusative is easily supplied in thought with these infinitives, a predicate noun or adjective is regularly in the accu-

sative. But with *licet* a predicate is commonly dative. Examples: *fortem esse oportet*, *one ought to be brave*; *virō licet esse fortī* (*fortem*), *a man may be brave*, lit. *it is permitted to a man to be brave*.

## B. WITH SUBJECT ACCUSATIVE

**277.** The infinitive with a subject accusative (123) forms an infinitive clause (186).

### INFINITIVE CLAUSE AS SUBJECT

**278. RULE:** *The present infinitive (rarely the perfect) with subject accusative may be used as the subject of such impersonal verbs as decet, libet, oportet, placet, praestat, visum est, and of est with a predicate noun or adjective.*

But with some of these verbs the subjunctive is also used. See 228, *a*, and 229, *c*. As stated in 276, the subject accusative is not always expressed with these verbs, and with *licet* the dative is much more common. Examples: *mē ire oportet*, *I ought to go*; *Caesarem ire oportuit*, *Caesar ought to have gone* (205, *a*); *mē ire necesse est*, *I must go*.

### INFINITIVE CLAUSE AS OBJECT

**279. RULE:** *The infinitive in all its tenses, with subject accusative, is used as the object of verbs of knowing, learning, and telling.*

This is indirect discourse. For examples see 205 and 266.

*a.* When these verbs are made passive either the personal construction or the impersonal is possible; but the personal is the more common in the uncompounded tenses. Examples: (personal) *Caesar vēnisse fertur*, *Caesar is said to have come*; (impersonal) *Caesarem vēnisse dictum est*, *it has been said that Caesar came*.

**280.** Note the use of the accusative and infinitive with the following verbs.

*a.* Regularly with *iubeō*, *order*, *vetō*, *forbid*, *patior*, *sinō*, *permit*, which might be expected to take the substantive clause of desire (228, *a*). Example: *mīlitēs pugnāre iussit*, *he ordered the soldiers to fight*.

*b.* With *volō*, *nōlō*, *mālō*, *cupiō*, regularly when the subject of the infinitive is not the same as that of the principal verb, sometimes when it is the same (compare 275). Examples: *volō eum ire*, *I wish him to go*; *cupiō mē esse clēmētem* (Cic. Cat. I, 4), *I desire to be merciful*.

c. Regularly the accusative and future infinitive with verbs of *hoping* and *promising*. But *posse* may be used instead of a future infinitive, after verbs of *hoping*, because *possum* implies futurity. Examples: *id sēsē effectūrōs spērābant* (VII, 26, 4), lit. *they hoped that they could accomplish this*, = *they hoped to accomplish this*; *sēsē potiri posse spērānt* (I, 3, 22), *they hoped that they could get possession*.

### C. WITH SUBJECT NOMINATIVE

**281. Historical Infinitives. RULE:** *The infinitive is sometimes used with a nominative subject, as an equivalent for an independent past indicative.*

Example: *cotidiē Caesar frūmentum flāgitāre* (I, 16, 1), *Caesar daily demanded the grain*.

### PARTICIPLES

**282.** Participles are verbal adjectives and are used either attributively or predicatively (157). Like other adjectives they may be used substantively (158). They may govern cases just as the finite verb does. For the meanings of their tenses see 205.

**283.** Participles are often used in Latin where English uses a coordinate or a subordinate clause. Only the meaning of the sentence shows what conjunction to use in translating. Examples: *victus fūgit* may mean *he was conquered and fled*, when he had been conquered he fled, or because he had been conquered he fled; *victus fugiet* may be translated by similar clauses, or by *if he is conquered he will flee*. See also the examples under 150.

### PRESENT PARTICIPLE

**284.** The present active participle corresponds in meaning to the English present participle, but is much less frequently used. There is no present passive participle.

a. Therefore such forms as *seeing*, usually, and such forms as *being seen*, always, must be translated into Latin otherwise than by a present participle.

1. Present participles are often used in English where the action is really completed before the action of the verb: Latin then uses the perfect participle. For example, *seeing this he fled*, means *having seen*, etc., and may be translated *hōc visō* (150) *fūgit*, lit. *this having been seen*.

2. Present participles are very often used in English where Latin uses *dum* with the present indicative (234, a,) or *cum* with the imperfect (or pluperfect) subjunctive (242, a). Examples: *he was killed (while) fighting*, sometimes *pugnans occisus est*, usually either *dum pugnatus occisus est*, or *cum pugnaret, occisus est*; *seeing this he fled*, *cum hoc vidisset fugit*.

b. Remember that *he is running* is always *currit*, never *est currēns*.

## 285.

## FUTURE PARTICIPLES

I. The future active participle is used by Caesar and Cicero only with some form of *sum*, making either the active periphrastic conjugation (75 and 196) or the future active infinitive. Example: *praeter quod secum portatūri erant* (I, 5, 5), lit. *except what they were about to take with them*, = *except what they intended*, etc.

II. The future passive participle has the same form as the gerundive (288), but in usage is quite distinct. It has two uses.

a. The future passive participle is used with the verb *sum* to form the passive periphrastic conjugation (76). This denotes duty or necessity; as *laudandus est*, *he is to be praised*, *he must (ought, deserves to) be praised*. The English form is usually active: remember that the Latin is passive. The agent is regularly dative (118). Intransitive verbs must be used impersonally. Examples: *Caesar est mihi laudandus*, lit. *Caesar must be praised by me*, = *I must praise Caesar*; *mihi pugnandum fuit* (impersonal), lit. *it had to be fought by me*, = *I had to fight*.

b. The future passive participle is sometimes used, to denote purpose, in agreement with the objects of verbs meaning *to have* (a thing done) or *to undertake* (to do a thing); especially *cūrō*, *cause, have* (literally *take care*), *dō*, *give over*, *suscipio*, *undertake*. Examples: *pontem faciendum cūrat* (I, 13, 2), *he had a bridge made*; *cōsulibus senātus rem publicam dēfendendam dedit*, *the senate entrusted the defense of the state to the consuls*.

## PERFECT PARTICIPLE

286. Latin has a perfect passive participle, corresponding to such English forms as *seen* or *having been seen*, but no perfect active participle (but see a), corresponding to such English forms as *having seen*. The English perfect active participle with a direct object can usually

be translated into Latin by putting the English object in the ablative and using the passive participle in agreement with it (ablative absolute, 150). Examples: **visus fūgit**, *having been seen he fled*; **Caesare visō fūgit**, *having seen Caesar he fled*; literally, *Caesar having been seen he fled*. See also 150.

a. But the perfect passive form of deponent verbs usually (not always) has an active meaning, so that with these verbs the change described in 286 is not to be made. Example: **Caesarem cōspicātus fūgit**, *having seen Caesar he fled*.

b. The perfect passive participle is sometimes used in agreement with the object of **habēō**. The meaning is nearly the same as that of the past active tenses of the simple verb; but the resulting fact is emphasized, rather than the past act. Example: **magnās cōpiās coāctās habet**, *he has great forces (which he has) collected*, or *he has collected great forces* (and still has them); while **magnās cōpiās coēgit**, *he (has) collected great forces*, leaves it uncertain whether he still has them.

c. Note the translation of such phrases as **post urbem conditam**, *after the founding of the city*; literally, *after the city founded*.

### GERUND

287. The gerund is an active verbal noun and corresponds to the English verbal nouns in *-ing*. It governs the case that is governed by the finite forms of the verb; but see 289, II. Examples: **fugiendī causā** (99, a), *for the sake of fleeing*; **ad persuādendum ei** (115), *for persuading him*; **urbem videndī causā**, *for the sake of seeing the city*.

### GERUNDIVE

288. The gerundive is a passive verbal adjective, and must agree with its noun in gender, number, and case. For the same form used as a future passive participle, see 285, II.

The gerundive construction is commonly used in place of the gerund with a direct object. In this construction the English direct object takes the Latin case which the gerund would have, and the gerundive agrees with it. There is no exact English equivalent; the translation is the same as for a gerund with a direct object. For example, in the gerund construction **urbem videndī causā**, **videndī** is the genitive modifying **causā**, and **urbem** is the direct object of **videndī**. In the gerundive construction **urbis videndae causā**, **urbis** is the genitive mod-

ifying *causā* and *videndae* agrees with *urbis*, literally *for the sake of the city to be seen*. Both alike must be translated *for the sake of seeing the city*.

### CHOICE OF CONSTRUCTION

**289. I. RULE:** *If the verb is intransitive the gerund must be used.*

The gerundive is passive, and intransitive verbs can be used in the passive only impersonally. Example: *ei crēdendī causā*, *for the sake of believing him* (115).

a. But the gerundive of *ūtor*, *fruor*, *fungor*, *potior*, and *vāscor* (145) is used. Example: *spēs potiundī oppidī* (II, 7, 5), *hope of taking the town*.

**II. RULE:** *If the verb is used transitively the gerundive construction is more common, and must always be used after a preposition.*

A direct object is sometimes used with a gerund in the genitive or the ablative without a preposition. Examples: (always) *ad effēmīnandōs animōs* (I, 1, 8), *to weakening the courage*; (usually) *urbis videndae causā*, *for the sake of seeing the city*; sometimes *urbem videndī causā*, *for the sake of seeing the city*.

### USE OF CASES

**290.** Neither the gerund nor the gerundive is used as the subject or direct object of verbs.

**291. The Genitive** is used with nouns and adjectives. With *causā* and *grātiā* it forms a common expression of purpose. Examples: *bellandī cupiditās*, *a desire of fighting*; *Caesaris* (or *Caesarem*) *videndī cupidus*, *desirous of seeing Caesar*; *bellandī causā vēnit*, *he came to fight (for the sake of fighting)*.

a. If the substantive is a personal or reflexive pronoun, an irregular construction is used,—*meī, tuī, suī, nostrī*, or *vestrī* with a genitive in -*ī* (sometimes called gerund, sometimes gerundive), regardless of gender and number. Example: *suī cōnservandī causā*, *for the sake of saving themselves*. The usual gerund would be *sē cōnservandī*; the gerundive *suī cōnservandōrum*.

**292. The Dative** is very rare.

**293. The Accusative** is used with a few prepositions, especially *ad* expressing purpose. Examples: *parātus ad proficiscendum*, *ready to set*

out; *ad Caesarem videndum* (gerundive, see 289, II), *venit, he came to see Caesar.*

294. The Ablative is used, with the prepositions *ab, dē, ex, in,* and as the ablative of means or cause. Examples: *in quaerendō reperiēbat, in questioning (them) he learned; lapidibus subministrandis* (III, 25, 4), *by furnishing stones.*

### THE SUPINE

295. **RULE:** *The Accusative of the supine is used after verbs of motion to express purpose.*

It may govern a direct object. Examples: *gratulātum vēnerunt* (I, 30, 2), *they came to offer congratulations; lēgātōs mittunt rogātum auxilium* (I, 11, 4), *they sent envoys to ask aid.*

296. **RULE:** *The Ablative of the supine is used as an ablative of specification (149).*

It does not take a direct object. The supine of the verbs *audiō, cognōscō, dicō, faciō, vidēō,* is most commonly found; and with the adjectives *facilis, difficilis, crēdibilis, incrēdibilis, iūcundus, iniūcundus, optimus, mirābilis,* and the expressions *fās est, nefās est, opus est.* Example: *perfacile factū* (I, 3, 16) lit. *very easy as to the doing, = very easy to do.*

### THE ROMAN CALENDAR

297. **The Months.** The Latin names of months are adjectives, not nouns as are ours. In the times of Caesar and Cicero the names of the months were *Iānuārius* (-a, -um), *Februārius, Mārtius, Aprīlis* (-e), *Maius, Iūnius, Quīntilis, Sextilis, September* (-bris, -bre), *Octōber, November, and December.* Later *Quīntilis* was changed to *Iūlius*, in honor of Julius Caesar, and *Sextilis* to *Augustus*, in honor of the emperor Augustus.

Before 46 B. C., that is till near the death of Caesar and Cicero, March, May, July, and October had 31 days, February had 28, and each of the others had 29. In 46 B. C. Caesar reformed the calendar and gave the months their present number of days.

298. **Calends, Nones, and Ides.** The Romans counted the days backwards from three points in each month, the Calends, the Nones, and the Ides, instead of forward from the first as we do; that is, they called

the days "the third before the Ides", "the fourth before the Calends," etc.

The *Calends* (*Kalendae*,—*arum*, *f. pl.*) were always the first of the month. The *Nones* (*Nōnae*,—*arum*, *f. pl.*) were the seventh, the *Ides* (*Idūs*,—*uum*, *f. pl.*) the fifteenth of March, May, July, and October. In all other months they were the fifth and thirteenth.

**299. Method of Reckoning.** In reckoning dates they counted both the first day and the last day; for example, while we should speak of Monday as the second day before Wednesday, a Roman would have counted Wednesday as one, Tuesday as two, and Monday as three, and would thus have called Monday the third day before Wednesday.

In counting back from the Calends, remember that the Calends do not belong to the month in which the required day is. Add one to the number of days in the preceding month, then reckon backwards, counting both ends as usual.

**300. Method of Expressing Dates.** An idiomatic formula is commonly used, which can neither be parsed nor translated literally; for example a. d. IV. *Id. Ian.* = *ante diem quārtum Idūs Iānuāriās*. The logical, but less usual form is *diē quārtō ante Idūs Iānuāriās*, on the fourth day before the Ides of January. For examples take the dates:

(LATIN-ENGLISH)

(ENGLISH-LATIN)

Jan. 1 = *Kal. Ian.*

( $13 + 1 - 4 = 10$ ) Jan. 10 = a. d. iv. *Id. Ian.* ( $13 + 1 - 10 = 4$ ).

( $28 + 2 - 8 = 22$ ) Feb. 22 = a. d. viii. *Kal. Mār.* ( $28 + 2 - 22 = 8$ ).

( $7 + 1 - 4 = 4$ ) July 4 = a. d. iv. *Nōn. Iūl.* ( $7 + 1 - 4 = 4$ ).

## VOCABULARY

## VOCABULARY

In this vocabulary the figures 1, 2, and 4, following verbs, mean that the principal parts are formed like those of *laudō*, *moneō*, and *audiō*, respectively; or, if the verb is deponent, like those of *hortor*, *vereor*, and *partior* (App. 73).

To all words occurring in the first four books of the text, numbers are affixed, showing the book and chapter of first occurrence. If the word occurs first in chapters 30-54 of Book I, the place of its second occurrence is also given. Words unaccompanied by reference numbers do not occur in the first four books.

Words in *Italics* are purely explanatory, and are never intended as definitions for translation purposes.

After geographical names letters are given, enclosed in parentheses. They correspond to letters on the margin of the general map, and thus serve as an index to the position of the names on the map.

**Pronunciation of Proper Names.** It is generally agreed that the English pronunciation of proper names should be used in translation; but as no modern grammar gives the rules for the English pronunciation, the greatest confusion exists in practice. Therefore the pronunciation of all proper names is indicated in parentheses. To indicate the sounds of vowels, diacritical marks are used with the following values:

ă = a in <i>mat</i> .	ē = e in <i>mē</i> .	ō = o in <i>note</i> .
ā = a in <i>māte</i> .	ē = e in <i>fern</i> .	ô = o in <i>or</i> .
â = a in <i>arm</i> .	î = i in <i>is</i> .	û = u in <i>up</i> .
ą = a in <i>Cubā</i> .	ĩ = i in <i>ice</i> .	ũ = u in <i>use</i> .
ē = e in <i>met</i> .	ō = o in <i>not</i> .	ų = u in <i>rude</i> .

y has the sounds of i, and is used in indicating pronunciation only as the consonant (= y in *youth*), or to indicate an i sound so rapidly uttered that it is barely distinguishable from the consonant y, as in *Lūcius* = lū'shyūs.

It must be understood, however, that unaccented syllables are so hastily pronounced that their vowel sounds are usually somewhat indistinct.

The main accent is indicated by a single mark ( ' ), the lighter, secondary accent by a double mark ( " ).

In giving tribe names it is best to use always the Latin forms of the names (*Nervii*, *Helvetii*, etc.), rather than the anglicized forms (*Nervians*, *Helvetians*, etc.). Most of these anglicized forms have no warrant in good English usage, none has much warrant. The few that are possible are given in the vocabulary, but are not recommended for use. Modern geographical names may well be used, so far as they are familiar.

## VOCABULARY

**A.**, *abbr. for Aulus* (aw'lūs), a Roman praenomen. I, 6.

**a.**, *abbr. for ante*. I, 6.

**ā** (*before consonants*), **ab** (*before vowels and some consonants*), **abs** (*before tē, and in some compounds*), *prep. with abl., originally denoting separation; (1) of place, persons, time, etc., from, away from, from the vicinity of: (2) denoting position, in some phrases, at, in, on, on the side of; ā tergō, in the rear: (3) with expressions of measure, away, off; ab milibus passuum duōbus, two miles away: (4) with the pass. voice often denoting the agent, as the person from whom the action comes, by: (5) variously translated in other relations, from, by, in respect to, after.* I, 1.

**abdō**, -dere, -didi, -ditum, *tr.* [dō, put], put away, remove, withdraw, hide, conceal. I, 12.

**abdūcō**, -dūcere, -dūxi, -ductum, *tr.* [dūcō, lead], lead away, draw or carry off, withdraw. I, 11.

**abēō**, -īre, -īi, -itum, *intr.* [eō, go. App. 84], go away, depart.

**abiciō**, -icere, -iēcī, -iectum, *tr.* [iaciō, throw. App. 7], throw away or down; hurl. IV, 15.

**abiēs**, -ietis, *f.*, fir tree.

**abjungō**, -ungere, -iūxi, -iunctum, *tr.* [iungō, join], disjoin, detach.

**abs**, *see ā*.

**abscidō**, -cidere, -cidi, -cisum, *tr.* [caedō, cut], cut or lop off, tear off or away. III, 14.

**absēns**, -entis, *adj.* [*pres. part.* of *absum*, be absent], absent, at a distance. I, 32; III, 17.

**absimilis**, -e, *adj.* [similis, like], unlike. III, 14.

**absistō**, -sistere, -stiti, —, *intr.* [sistō, stand], keep away from.

**abstineō**, -tinēre, -tinui, -tentum, *intr.* [teneō, hold], keep aloof from, refrain; spare. I, 22.

**abstrahō**, -trahere, -trāxi, -tractum, *tr.* [trahō, draw], to drag away, carry away by force. III, 2.

**absum**, abesse, āful, *intr.* [sum, be. App. 78], be away from, be absent or distant, be wanting or free from. I, 1.

**abundō**, *i.*, *intr.* [unda, wave], overflow; abound.

**ac**, *see atque*.

**accēdō**, -cēdere, -cessi, -cessum, *intr.* [ad+cēdō, go], approach, draw near to, arrive at, come to; to be added; **accēdēbat**, it was added. I, 19.

**accelerō**, *i.*, *intr.* [ad+celerō, hasten], hasten.

**acceptus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [*pf. part.* of *accipiō*, accept], acceptable, beloved by (*with dative*). I, 3.

**accidō**, -cidere, -cidi, —, *intr.* [ad+cadō, fall], fall to or upon; befall, happen, fall to the lot of, occur; **accidit**, it happens. I, 14.

**accidō**, -cidere, -cidi, -cisum, *tr.* [ad+caedō, cut], cut into.

**accipiō**, -cipere, -cēpi, -ceptum, *tr.* [ad+capiō, take], take or receive to one's self, accept; experience, suffer; learn, hear, take. I, 14.

**acclivis**, -e, *adj.* [ad+clivus, a slope], sloping upward, rising, ascending. II, 29.

**acclivitās**, -tātis, *f.* [acclivis, ascending], ascent, slope. II, 18.

**Accō**, -ōnis, *m.*, Acco (āk'ō), a chief of the Senones.

**accommodātus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [*pf. part.* of *accommodō*, adapt], fit, adapted, appropriate. III, 13.

**accommodō**, *i.*, *tr.*, adjust or adapt to one's self, fit or put on. II, 21.

**accūrātō**, *adv.*, carefully.

**accurrō, -currere, -curri or -cucurri, -cursum, intr.** [ad+currō, run], run or hasten to. I, 22.  
**accūsō, 1, tr.** [ad+causa, cause, case], bring a case or charge against; blame, censure, accuse. I, 16.  
**acerbō, adv.** [acerbus, harsh], harshly, with pain.  
**-cerbitās, -tātis, f.** [acerbus, harsh], harshness, rigor.  
**acerbus, -a, -um, adj.,** harsh, biting, severe.  
**ācerimō, see ācriter.**  
**acervus, -ī, m.,** a heap, mass. II, 32.  
**aciēs, -ēī (old gen., aciēs), f.,** sharp point or edge of a weapon; sharp or keen sight, glance; a line (as forming an edge), battle line; **prima**, the van; **media**, the centre; **novissima**, the rear. I, 22.  
**acquirō, -quirere, -quisivi, -quisitum, tr.** [ad+quaerō, seek], seek or gain in addition, win, acquire.  
**ācriter, adv.** [ācer, sharp], sharply, keenly, fiercely, vigorously. *Comp.*  
**ācrius; sup. ācerimō** (App. 40). I, 26.  
**actūārius, -a, -um, adj.** [agō, move, drive], fitted with oars.  
**actus, see agō.**  
**acūtus, -a, -um, adj.** [*pf. part.* of acuō, sharpen], sharpened, pointed.  
**ad, prep. with acc.,** originally denoting motion toward: (1) denoting motion, to, toward, against, to the vicinity of; (2) denoting position, at, by, near; (3) denoting purpose, with gerund and gerundive, to, for; (4) with numerals, up to, about; (5) of time, up to, until; at, on; (6) variously translated in other relations, at, after, for, to, according to, in the eyes of, among. I, 1.  
**adāctus, see adigō.**  
**adaequō, 1, tr.** [aequō, make equal], make level with or equal to, equal; keep up with. I, 48; II, 32.  
**adamō, 1, tr.** [amō, love], love strongly, covet. I, 31.  
**addō, -dere, -didi, -ditum, tr.** [dō, put], place on; add.  
**adducō, -ducere, -dūxi, -ductum, tr.** [ducō, lead], lead or draw to, bring to; induce, influence. I, 3.

**adēptus, see adimō.**  
**adeō, adv.** [eō, thither], to such an extent, so much, so very, so; in fact.  
**adeō, -ire, -ii, -itum, tr. and intr.** [eō, go. App. 84], go to, approach, visit; assail, attack. II, 7.  
**adeptus, see adiplscor.**  
**adequitō, 1, intr.** [equitō, ride; equus, horse], ride up. I, 46.  
**adhaereō, -haerēre, -haesi, -haesum, intr.** [haereō, stick], cling or stick to.  
**adhibeō, 2, tr.** [habeō, have], bring to, bring in, summon; employ, use. I, 20.  
**adhortor, 1, tr.** [hortor, encourage], encourage, incite.  
**adhūc, adv.** [hūc, hither], hitherto, as yet. III, 22.  
**adiaceō, -iacēre, -iacui, —, intr.** [iaceō, lie], lie near or close to, adjoin.  
**Adiatunnus, -ī, m.,** Adiatunnus (ā'di-a-tūn'ūs), *the leader of the Sotiates*. III, 22.  
**adiciō, -icere, -iēci, -iectum, tr.** [iaciō, throw. App. 7], throw to, throw up, hurl; add. III, 1.  
**adigō, -igere, -ēgi, -actum, tr.** [agō, move], drive or bring by force, move; thrust, plunge, hurl (of weapons); bind (by an oath). II, 21.  
**adimō, -imere, -ēmi, -ēptum, tr.** [emō, take], take away, remove.  
**adiplscor, -ipisci, -eptus sum, tr.,** attain to, gain.  
**aditus, -ūs, m.** [adeō, go to], approach, means of approach, right of approach, access. I, 43; II, 15.  
**adiudicō, 1, tr.** [iudicō, judge], adjudge, assign.  
**adiungō, -iungere, -iūxī, -iunctum, tr.** [iungō, join], join to, attach, unite; add. III, 2.  
**adiutor, -ōris, m.** [adiuvō, aid], helper, abettor, assistant.  
**adiuvō, -iuvāre, -iūvi, -iūtum, tr.** [iuvō, aid], aid, help, assist; contribute to, support. II, 17.  
**administer, -trī, m.** [minister, servant], attendant; priest.  
**administrō, 1, tr.** [minister, servant],

serve, attend, wait upon; manage, guide. II, 20.

**admiror**, 1, *tr.* [miror, wonder at], wonder at, be surprised at, admire. I, 14.

**admittō**, -mittere, -misi, -missum, *tr.* [mittō, send], admit; commit; incur; let go; give reins to (*a horse*). I, 22.

**admodum**, *adv.* [modus, measure], *wp to the measure*; very much, very; *with num.*, fully; *with neg.*, at all. III, 13.

**admoneō**, 2, *tr.* [moneō, warn], warn.

**adolēscō**, -olēscere, -olēvi, -ultum, *intr.*, grow up.

**adorior**, -oriri, -ortus sum, *tr.* [orior, arise], rise against, assail, attack. I, 13.

**adsum**, adesse, affui, *intr.* [sum, be. App. 77], be near or present, be at hand, appear. I, 16.

**adolēscēns**, -entis, *m.* [*pres. part. of* adolēscō, grow up], youth, young man. I, 47; III, 7.

**adolēscēntia**, -ae, *f.* [adolēscēns, youth], youthfulness, youth. I, 20.

**adolēscēntulus**, -i, *m.* [*dim. of* adolēscēns, youth], a very young man. III, 21.

**adventus**, -ūs, *m.* [veniō, come], coming, arrival, approach. I, 7.

**adversarius**, -ri, *m.* [adversus, turned against], antagonist, foe.

**adversus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [*pf. part. of* advertō, turn to], turned to or against; opposite, fronting; adverse, unfavorable; unsuccessful; adversō flūmine, up the river; in adversum ōs, full in the face. I, 18.

**adversus**, *prep. w. acc.* [adversus, turned against], opposite to, against. IV, 14.

**advocō**, 1, *tr.* [vocō, call], call to, summon.

**advolō**, 1, *intr.* [volō, fly], fly to or against, rush on or at.

**aedificium**, -ci, *n.* [aedificō, build], building, house. I, 5.

**aedificō**, 1, *tr.* [aedēs, house + faciō, make], build, construct. III, 9.

**aeger**, -gra, -grum, *adj.*, ill, sick.

**aegrō**, *adv.* [aeger, ill], hardly, with difficulty, scarcely. *Comp.*, aegrius; *sup.*, aegerrimō (App. 40). I, 13.

**Aemilius**, -ii, *m.*, Aemilius (ē-mil'i-ūs), I, 23.

**aequāliter**, *adv.* [aequālis, equal; aequus, equal], equally, evenly. II, 18.

**aequinoctium**, -ti, *n.* [aequus, equal + nox, night], the equinox. IV, 36.

**aequitās**, -tātis, *f.* [aequus, equal], equality; fairness, equity; animi aequitās, contentment. I, 40.

**aequō**, 1, *tr.* [aequus, equal], make even or equal, equalize. I, 25.

**aequus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, even, level, equal; equitable, impartial, just; aequus animus, equanimity, composure. I, 43; III, 17.

**aerāria**, -ae, *f.* [aes, copper], copper mine. III, 21.

**aes**, aeris, *n.* copper; anything made of copper, coin, money; aes aliēnum, another's money, debt. IV, 31.

**aestās**, -tātis, *f.*, summer. I, 54; II, 2.

**aestimatiō**, -ōnis, *f.* [aestimō, value], valuation.

**aestimō**, 1, value, reckon, estimate, regard, consider. III, 20.

**aestivus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [aestus, heat; aestās, summer], of summer, summer.

**aestuārium**, -ri, *n.* [aestus, tide], low marsh-land, tidal inlet, estuary, marsh. II, 28.

**aestus**, -ūs, *m.*, heat; boiling, surging; tide; minuenta aestu, at ebb tide. III, 12.

**aetās**, aetātis, *f.*, period of life, age. II, 16.

**aeternus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, everlasting.

**aferō**, afferre, attuli, allātum, *tr.* [ad + ferō, carry. App. 81], bring, take or carry to, present; occasion, cause; bring forward, allege; report. I, 43; II, 1.

**afficiō**, -ficere, -feci, -fectum, *tr.* [ad + faciō, do], do to, treat, affect; magnō dolore afficere, to annoy greatly. I, 2.

**affigō**, -figere, -fixi, -fixum, *tr.* [ad + figō, fix], fasten to. III, 14.

**affingō, -fingere, -finxi, -fictum, tr.** [ad + **finġō**, invent], invent in addition.

**affinitās, -tātis, f.**, alliance by marriage, relationship. I, 18.

**affirmātiō, -ōnis, f.** [affirmō, affirm; ad + **firmus**, strong], declaration, assertion.

**affixus, see affigō.**

**afflictō, 1, tr.** [freq. of **affligō**, strike against, damage], damage greatly, shatter, injure; harass, distress. III, 12.

**affligō, -fligere, -flixī, -flictum, tr.**, strike against; overthrow; damage, injure. IV, 81.

**affore, fut. inf. of adsum.**

**Āfricus, -ī, m.**, Africus (ā' rī-kūs), the southwest wind.

**āful, see absum.**

**Agedincum, -ī, n.** (Be), Agedincum (ā' ġē-dīng' kūm), now Sens.

**ager, agrī, m.**, field, land; district, territory. I, 2.

**agger, aggeris, m.**, material for earth-works, earth; embankment, mound; rampart. II, 12.

**aggredior, -gredi, -gressus sum, tr.** [ad + **gradior**, step], advance to or against; attack. I, 12.

**aggregō, 1, tr.** [ad + **grex**, flock], unite in a flock; assemble; join, attach. IV, 26.

**agitō, 1, tr.** [freq. of **agō**, move; discuss], discuss.

**agmen, -inis, n.** [agō, move], a moving body; a marching column; army; in agmine, on the march; **primum agmen**, the van; **novissimum** or **extrēmum agmen**, the rear. I, 15.

**agō, agere, ēgi, āctum, tr.**, set in motion; drive (of animals); move forward, advance (of military works); do, transact, carry on (of business); discuss, speak; hold (conventum); give, render (grātiās); plead (causam or rem); quod agitur, the matter in hand; rēs agitur, something is at stake. I, 13.

**agricultūra, -ae, f.** [ager, land + colō, cultivate], cultivation of the land, agriculture. III, 17.

**alacer, -cris, -ore, adj.**, lively, eager, active, ready, joyous. III, 19.

**alacritās, -tātis, f.** [alacer, lively], liveliness, ardor. I, 41; IV, 24.

**ālārīus, -a, -um, adj.** (āla, wing), on the wing; pl. as noun, auxiliaries. I, 51.

**albus, -a, -um, adj.**, white.

**alcōs, -is, f.**, elk.

**Alesia, -ae, f.** (Of), Alesia (a-lē' zhyā), now Alise Ste. Reine.

**aliās, adv.** [alius, another], at another place, elsewhere; at another time;

**aliās . . . aliās**, at one time . . . at another. II, 29.

**aliēnō, 1, tr.** [aliēnus, of another], make another's or foreign; estrange, alienate; **aliēnātā mente**, maddened.

**aliēnus, -a, -um, adj.** [alius, other], of or belonging to another, another's; strange, alien, unfamiliar; unfavorable; foreign to the purpose; **aes aliēnum**, debt; **aliēnissimi**, entire strangers. I, 15.

**aliō, adv.** [alius, other], to another place, person or thing, elsewhere.

**aliquamdiū, adv.** [aliquis, some + diū, long], for some time. I, 40.

**aliquandō, adv.** [aliquis, some], at some time, at length, finally.

**aliquantō, adv.** [aliquantus, some], somewhat, a little. III, 13.

**aliquantus, -a, -um, adj.**, some, considerable; neut. as noun with partitive gen., a good deal, not a little.

**aliquis, -quid, and aliqui, -qua, -quod, indef. pron.** [quis, who. App. 62, a], some one, something; anyone, anything, any. I, 14.

**aliquot, indecl. num. adj.** [quot, how many], some, a few, several. III, 1.

**aliter, adv.** [alius, other], otherwise; **aliter . . . ac, otherwise . . . than**. II, 19.

**alius, -a, -ud, gen. alius** (App. 32), another, other; **alius . . . alius**, one . . . another; in pl., some . . . others. I, 1.

**allātus, see afferō.**

**alliciō, -licere, -lexi, -lectum, tr.**, attract, allure, entice.

**Allobrogēs, -um, m.** (Dfg), the Allo-

broges (ä-löb'rö-jéz), a powerful Gallic people in the Province. I, 6.

**alö, alere, alui, altum, tr.**, nourish, feed, support; promote, foster, encourage. I, 18.

**Alpēs, -ium, f. pl.** (Cghí), the Alps (äl'pēz), *better*, the Alps. I, 10.

**alter, -era, -erum, gen. alterius** (App. 32), the other (*of two*); second; the one; **alter . . . alter**, the one . . . the other; **alteri . . . alteri**, the one party . . . the other. I, 2.

**alternus, -a, -um, adj.** [**alter**, the other], one after another, in turn.

**altitüdö, -inis, f.** [altus, high, deep], height; depth; thickness (*of timber*). I, 8.

**altus, -a, -um, adj.**, high, lofty; deep; *neut. as noun*, the deep, the sea. I, 2.

**alüta, -ae, f.**, soft leather. III, 13.

**ambactus, -i, m.**, vassal.

**Ambarri, -örum, m.** (Cf), the Ambarri (äm-bär'i), *clients of the Haedui*. I, 11.

**Ambiāni, -örum, m.** (ABde), the Ambiani (äm'bi-ā'ni). II, 4.

**Ambibarii, -örum, m.** (Bbc), the Ambibarii (äm'bi-bä'ri-i).

**Ambiliati, -örum, m.**, the Ambiliati (äm'bi-li'i-a-ti), III, 9.

**Ambiorix, -igis, m.**, Ambiorix (äm-bi'-ō-riks), *king of the Eburones*.

**Ambivareti, -örum, m.** (Ce), the Ambivareti (äm'bi-vär'ē-ti), *clients of the Haedui*.

**Ambivariti, -örum, m.** (Af), the Ambivariti (äm'bi-vär'i-ti). IV, 9.

**ambö, -ae, -ö, both.**

**amentia, -ae, f.** [mēns, mind], bewilderment of mind, folly, insanity. I, 40.

**amentum, -i, n.**, strap or thong, fastened to the shaft of a javelin to aid its propulsion.

**amicitia, -ae, f.** [amicus, friend], friendship. I, 3.

**amicus, -a, -um, adj.** [amö, love], friendly, well disposed; devoted; *as noun*, m., a friend, an ally. I, 3.

**amittö, -mittere, -misi, -missum, tr.** [mittö, send], send away, dismiss; let go; lose. I, 28.

**amor, -öris, m.** [amö, love], love. I, 20.

**amplä, adv.** [amplus, large], largely;

*comp.*, **amplius**, more, farther. I, 35; II, 16.

**amplificö, i, tr.** [amplus, large+faciö, make], extend, enlarge, increase, expand. II, 14.

**amplitüdö, -inis, f.** [amplus, large], wide extent, size; importance, consequence, dignity. IV, 3.

**amplius, see ampliö and amplus.**

**amplus, -a, -um, adj.**, of large extent, spacious, large; illustrious, splendid, noble; generous, magnificent; **amplius, comp. as noun**, more, a greater number, a greater distance. I, 15.

**an, conj.**, used to introduce the second member of alternative questions, or, or rather. I, 40; IV, 14.

**Anartēs, -ium, m.**, the Anartes (a-när'-tēz), a German tribe near the Hercynian forest.

**Ancalitēs, -um, m.** (Ac), the Ancalites (än-käl'i-tēz).

**anceps, ancepitis, adj.** [ambö, both+caput, head], two headed, with two sides or fronts, double. I, 26.

**ancora, -ae, f.**, anchor; in **ancoris**, at anchor. III, 13.

**Andebrogius, -gi, m.**, Andebrogius (än'dē-brö'jyüs). II, 3.

**Andēs, -ium, or Andī, -örum, m.** (Cc), the Andes (än'dēz) or Andi (än'di). II, 35.

**änfractus, -üs, m.**, circuitous route.

**angulus, -i, m.**, corner.

**angustö, adv.** [angustus, narrow], narrowly; in close quarters. IV, 23.

**angustiae, -ärum, f. pl.** [angustus, narrow], narrowness; a narrow place or pass, strait, defile; straits, difficulties, perplexity. I, 9.

**angustus, -a, -um, adj.** [angö, squeeze], compressed, confined, straitened, narrow; in **angustö**, in a critical condition. I, 2.

**anima, -ae, f.**, breath, life, soul.

**animadvertö, -vertere, -verti, -versum, tr. and intr.** [animus, mind+ad+vertö, turn], turn the mind to; notice; **animadvertere in**, punish. I, 19.

**animal, -älis, n.** [anima, breath of life], a living creature, animal.

**animus**, -i, *m.*, soul, spirit; mind, intellect; feelings; character; resolution, courage; **animi causâ**, for amusement; in **animô habere**, intend. I, 1.

**annôtinus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [annus, year], of last year.

**annus**, -i, *m.*, year. I, 3.

**annuus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [annus, year], yearly. I, 16.

**anser**, -eris, *m.*, goose.

**ante** (1) *adv.*, before, above, previously; (2) *prep. w. acc.*, before, in advance of. I, 3.

**antê**, *adv.* [ante, before+ê, this], formerly, before, previously, once; *always with a verb.* I, 17.

**antecedô**, -cêdere, -cessi, -cessum, *tr. and intr.* [cêdô, go], go before, precede, excel, surpass. III, 8.

**antecursor**, -ôris, *m.* [currô, run], fore-runner; *pl.*, vanguard.

**anteferô**, -ferre, -tuli, -lâtum, *tr.* [ferô, bear. App. 81], bear or carry before; prefer.

**antemna**, -ae, *f.*, sail-yard. III, 14.

**antepônô**, -pônere, -posui, -positum, *tr.* [pônô, place], place before; prefer. IV, 22.

**antevertô**, -vertere, -verti, -versum, *tr.* [vertô, turn], put before, prefer.

**antiquitus**, *adv.* [antiquus, ancient], from early or ancient times; long ago, anciently. II, 4.

**antiquus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [ante, before], former, old, ancient. I, 18.

**Antistius**, -ti, *m.*, Gaius Antistius Reginus (gâ'yûs ân-tis'ti-ûs rê-jî'nûs), one of Caesar's lieutenants.

**Antônus**, -ni, *m.*, Marcus Antonius (mâr'kûs ân-tô'ni-ûs), one of Caesar's lieutenants, afterward triumvir.

**Ap.**, *abbr. for* Apullus (âp'ul-ûs), a Roman praenomen.

**aperiô**, -perire, -perui, -pertum, *tr.*, open, expose.

**apertê**, *adv.* [apertus, open], openly, manifestly.

**apertus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [*pf. part. of* aperiô], open, exposed; **ab latere apertô**, on the unprotected flank. I, 25.

**Apollô**, -inis, *m.*, Apollo (â-pôl'i'ô),

**apparô**, 1, *tr.* [ad+parô, prepare], prepare, make ready.

**appellô**, 1, *tr.*, accost, address, call by name, name, call. I, 1.

**appellô**, -pellere, -puli, -pulsum, *tr.* [ad+pellô, drive], bring to land; bring together. III, 12.

**appetô**, -petere, -petivi (-petii), -itum, *tr. and intr.* [ad+petô, seek], seek for, aim at; encroach upon; approach, be near. I, 40.

**applicô**, 1, *tr.* [ad+plicô, fold], apply; **sê applicâre**, lean.

**apportô**, 1, *tr.* [ad+portô, carry], bring. **approbô**, 1, *tr.* [ad+probô, approve], favor, approve.

**appropinquô**, 1, *intr.* [ad+propinquus, near], come near or close, approach. II, 10.

**appulsus**, *see* appellô.

**April.**, *abbr. for* Aprilis, -e, *adj.*, of April, April. I, 6.

**aptus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, fitted, suited, adapted. III, 13.

**apud**, *prep. with acc.*, at, among, near, with; (*with persons*) at the house of, in the presence of. I, 2.

**aqua**, -ae, *f.*, water. IV, 17.

**aquâtio**, -ônis, *f.* [aqua, water], getting water. IV, 11.

**aquila**, -ae, *f.*, an eagle; a standard, (*as the aquila was the chief standard of the legion*). IV, 25.

**Aquilêia**, -ae, *f.*, Aquileia (âk'wi-lê-ya), a city of Cisalpine Gaul. I, 10.

**aquilifer**, -eri, *m.* [aquila, eagle+ferô, bear], standard-bearer.

**Aquitânia**, -ae, *f.* (DEcd), Aquitania (âk'wi-tâ'ni-a), Southwestern Gaul between the Garonne and the Pyrenees. I, 1.

**Aquitânus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, of Aquitania, Aquitanian; *pl. as noun*, the Aquitani (âk'wi-tâ'ni), possibly Aquitanians, inhabiting southwestern Gaul. I, 1.

**Arar**, **Araris** (*acc. -im*), *m.* (CDfg), the Arar (â'râr), the modern Saône. I, 12.

**arbitër**, -tri, *m.*, umpire, arbitrator.

**arbitrium**, -ri, *n.* [arbitër, umpire], decision or judgment (*of the arbitër*); opinion, discretion, pleasure. I, 36.

**arbitror**, 1, *tr. and intr.* [arbitēr, umpire], decide; think, believe. I, 2.

**arbor**, -oris, *f.*, tree. II, 17.

**arcessō**, -ere, -ivi, -itum, summon, send for, invite. I, 31; II, 20.

**ārdeō**, ārdere, ārsi, ārsim, *intr.*, burn, blaze; be inflamed, be eager.

**Arduenna**, -ae, *f.* (ABig), Arduenna (ār'dū-ēn'a), better the Ardennes, a vast forest of northeast Gaul.

**arduus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, high, steep; difficult. II, 33.

**Arecomici**, Arecomici (ār'ē-kōm'i-si), see Volcae.

**Aremoricae**, -arum, *f.* (Bbod), *adj.*, maritime, Aremorian.

**argentum**, -i, *n.*, silver; silver plate or coin.

**argilla**, -ae, *f.*, white clay.

**āridus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [āreō, be dry], dry; *neut. as noun*, dry land. IV, 24.

**ariēs**, arietis, *m.*, a ram; battering-ram, a long beam for demolishing walls; one end of it was capped with iron in the form of a ram's head; brace, buttress. II, 32.

**Arlovistus**, -i, *m.*, Arlovistus (ār'ri-ō-vis'tūs), a king of the Germans. I, 31; IV, 16.

**Aristius**, -ti, *m.*, Marcus Aristius (mār'-kūs a-ris'ti-ūs), a military tribune.

**arma**, -ōrum, *n. pl.*, arms; equipment; by metonymy, battle, war. I, 4.

**armāmenta**, -ōrum, *n.* [armō, arm], implements, gear; tackle or rigging of a ship. III, 14.

**armātūra**, -ae, *f.* [armō, arm], armor, equipment; levis armātūrae, light-armed. II, 10.

**armō**, 1, *tr.* [arma, arms], arm, equip; *pass.*, arm one's self; armātus, *pf. part.*, as *adj.*, armed; armāti, as *noun*, armed men. I, 40; II, 4.

**Arpinēus**, -i, *m.*, Gaius Arpinēus (gā'-yūs ār'pi-nē'yūs), a knight in Caesar's army.

**arripō**, -ripere, -ripui, -reptum, *tr.* [ad+ripō, seize] take or seize hurriedly.

**arroganter**, *adv.* [arrogāns, arrogant], arrogantly, presumptuously. I, 40.

**arrogantia**, -ae, *f.* [arrogāns, arro-

gant], arrogance, haughtiness, presumption, insolence. I, 33.

**ars**, artis, *f.*, skill, art; *pl.*, the arts.

**artē**, artus, [artus, close], closely, firmly. IV, 17.

**articulus**, -i, *m.*, joint.

**artificium**, -ci, *n.* [ars, art + faciō, make], a trade, handicraft; artifice, trick.

**artus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, close, dense, thick.

**Arvernus**, -i, *m.* (CDe), an Arvernian; *pl.*, the Arverni (ār-vēr'ni), possibly the Arvernians. I, 31.

**arx**, arcis, *f.*, citadel, fortress, stronghold. I, 38.

**ascendō**, -scendere, -scendi, -scēsum, *tr. and intr.* [ad+scandō, climb], climb up, ascend, mount, climb. I, 21.

**ascēsus**, -ūs, *m.* [ascendō, climb up], a climbing up, ascending; approach, ascent. I, 21.

**asciscō**, -sciscere, -scivi, -scitum, *tr.* [ad+sciscō, approve], approve; admit or receive (as allies). I, 5.

**aspectus**, -ūs, *m.* [aspiciō, look at], look; appearance, mien, aspect.

**asper**, -era, -erum, *adj.*, rough, violent.

**assiduus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [ad+sedeō, sit], close at hand, ever present; continual, incessant, constant.

**assistō**, -sistere, -stiti, —, *intr.* [ad+sistō, stand], stand by or near.

**assuēfaciō**, -facere, -feci, -factum, *tr.*, accustom, train. IV, 1.

**assuēscō**, -suēscere, -suēvi, -suētum, *intr.* [suēscō, become accustomed], become accustomed.

**at**, conj., but, at least. I, 43; II, 23.

**atque**, ac, (ac only before consonants, atque before vowels and consonants), conj., usually adds something especially important, while et usually associates objects of equal importance; and also, and even, and; after words denoting a comparison or difference, than, as, from. I, 1.

**Atrebās**, -bātis, *m.*, (Ae), an Atrebatian; *pl.*, the Atrebates (āt'rē-bā'tēz). II, 4.

**Ātrius**, -ri, *m.*, Quintus Atrius (kwīn'tūs ā'tri-ūs), one of Caesar's officers.

**attexō, -texere, -texui, -textum, tr.** [ad+texō, weave], weave on.  
**attīgō, -tingere, -tīgī, -tāctum, tr.** [ad+tangō, touch], touch or border on, reach, extend to, arrive at, attain. I, 1.

**attribuō, -tribuere, -tribui, -tributum, tr.** [ad+tribuō, assign], assign, allot. III, 1.

**atulli, see afferō.**

**Atuatua, -ae, f. (Af), Atuatua** (āv'ū-āv'ū-ka), a stronghold of the Eburones.

**Atuatuci, -ōrum, m. (Af), the Atuatuci** (āv'ū-āv'ū-si). II, 4.

**auctor, -ōris, m. [augeō, increase], one who produces, creates, or originates; promoter, instigator, adviser, author; auctor esse, advise. III, 17.**

**auctoritās, -tātis, f. [auctor, producer], influence, character, authority, reputation. I, 3.**

**auctus, -a, -um, adj. [pf. part. of augeō, increase], increased, advanced. I, 43.**

**audācia, -ae, f. [audāx, bold], boldness, daring, courage; presumption, effrontery. I, 18.**

**audācter, adv. [audāx, bold], boldly, fearlessly, daringly. Comp., audācius; sup., audācissimē. I, 15.**

**audeō, audēre, ausus sum (App 74), intr., dare, risk, venture. I, 18.**

**audiō, 4, tr., hear, hear of; dictō audiēns, obedient. I, 39; II, 12.**

**auditō, -ōnis, f. [audiō, hear], hearing, hearsay, report. IV, 5.**

**augeō, augēre, auxi, auctum, tr., increase, augment, enhance, add to. I, 18.**

**Aulerci, -ōrum, m., the Aulerci (aw-lēr'si), a Gallic people divided into four branches. (1) Aulerci Ebuovices (ēb'ū-rō-vi'sēz), (Bd), III, 17; (2) Aulerci Cenomani (sē-nōm'a-ni), (Bd); (3) Aulerci Brannovices (brān'ō-vi'sēz), location unknown; (4) Aulerci Diablintes (dī'ā-blīn'tēz), (Bc), II, 34.**

**aureus, -a, -um, adj. [aurum, gold], of gold, gold.**

**auriga, -ae, m., charioteer. IV, 33.**

**auris, -is, f., ear.**

**Aurunouliūsi, -i, m., Lucius Aurunculeius Cotta (lū'shyūs aw-rūng'kū-lē'yūs cōt'a), one of Cæsar's lieutenants. II, 11.**

**Ausci, -ōrum, m. (Ed), the Ausci (aw'si). III, 27.**

**ausus, see audeō.**

**aut, conj., used where the difference is important or exclusive, or; aut ... aut, either ... or. I, 1.**

**autem, conj., but [a weak adverbative]; however, on the other hand; now; moreover. I, 2.**

**autumnus, -i, m., autumn.**

**auxi, see augeō.**

**auxiliāris, -e adj. [auxilium, aid], auxiliary; m. pl. as noun, auxiliary troops. III, 25.**

**auxilior, i, intr. [auxilium, aid], give aid, help, assist, render assistance. IV, 29.**

**auxilium, -ii, n. [augeō, increase], help, assistance, aid; pl., auxiliary troops; reinforcements. I, 11.**

**Avaricēnsis, -e, adj., of Avaricum.**

**Avaricum, -i, n. (Ce), Avaricum (ā-vār'i-kūm), the stronghold of the Bituriges, now Bourges.**

**avaritia, -ae, f. [avārus, greedy], greed, covetousness. I, 40.**

**āvehō, -vehere, -vexi, -vectum, tr. [vehō, carry], carry away, take away.**

**āvertō, -vertere, -verti, -versum, tr. [vertō, turn], turn away from or away, turn aside; turn back, repulse; pf. part. as adj., with back turned. I, 16.**

**avis, -is, f., bird. IV, 10.**

**avus, -i, m., grandfather. I, 12.**

**Axona, -ae, m. (Bf), the Axona (āk'sō-na), a river, now the Aisne. II, 5.**

## B.

**Bacēnis, -is, f. (Ah), Bacenis (ba-sē-nis), the forest Bacenis, between the Cherusci and the Suebi.**

**Baculus, -i, m., Publius Sextius Baculus (pūb'li-ūs seks'ti-ūs bāk'ū-lūs). II, 25.**

**Ballāris, -e, adj., Balearic (bāl'ā-rik), (i.e., coming from the islands Majorca and Minorca). II, 7.**

**balteus, -i, m., sword belt.**

**Balventius**, -ti, *m.*, Titus Balventius (tī tūs bāl-vén'shyūs), *one of Caesar's centurions.*

**barbarus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, foreign (*to Greeks and Romans*), uncivilized, barbarous; *pl. as noun*, savages, barbarians. I, 31; II, 35.

**Basilus**, -i, *m.*, Lucius Minucius Basilus (lū'shyūs ml-nū'shyūs bās'i-lūs), *one of Caesar's lieutenants.*

**Batāvi**, -ōrum, *m.* (Af), the Batavi (bā-tā'vi). IV, 10.

**Belgae**, -ārum, *m.* (ABdefg), the Belgae (bēl'jē), or Belgians. I, 1.

**Belgium**, -gi, *n.* (ABdefg), Belgium (bēl'jyūm), the country of the Belgae.

**bellicōsus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [bellum, war], of or full of war, warlike. I, 10.

**bellicus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [bellum, war], of or in war, military.

**bellō**, 1, *intr.* [bellum, war], make or carry on war, wage war. I, 2.

**Bellovacī**, -ōrum, *m.* (Bde), the Bellovacī (bē-lōv'ā-sī). II, 4.

**bellum**, -i, *n.*, war. I, 1.

**bene**, *adv.* [bonus, good], well, rightly, successfully. *Comp.*, 'melius; *sup.*, optimē. I, 45; III, 18.

**beneficium**, -ci, *n.* [bene, well+faciō, do], well-doing, benefit, favor, kindness. I, 9.

**benevolentia**, -ae, *f.* [bene, well+volō, wish], good-will, kindness.

**Bibracte**, -is, *n.* (Cef), Bibracte (bī-brāk'-tē), *the chief town of the Haedui.* I, 23.

**Bibrax**, -ctis, *f.* (Be), Bibrax (bī-brāks), *a town of the Remi.* II, 6.

**Bibroci**, -ōrum, *m.* (Ac), the Bibroci (bīb'rō-sī).

**biduum**, -i, *n.* [bis, twice+diēs, day], space or period of two days, two days. I, 23.

**biennium**, -ni, *n.* [bis, twice+annus, year], two years. I, 3.

**Bigerriōnēs**, -um, *m.* (Ecd), the Bigerriōnes (bī-jēr'i-ō'nēs or bī'jē-rī-ō'nēs). III, 27.

**bini**, -ae, -a, *distrib. num. adj.* [bis, twice], two each, two apiece, by twos. III, 15.

**bipedālis**, -e, *adj.* [bis, twice+pēs, foot], of two feet, two feet thick. IV, 17.

**bipertitō**, *adv.* [bis, twice+partior, divide], in two parts or divisions, in two ways. I, 25.

**bis**, *num. adv.* [for duis, from duo, two], twice. III, 12.

**Biturigēs**, -um, *m.* (Cde), the Bituriges (bīt'ū-rī'jēs). I, 18.

**Boduognātus**, -i, *m.*, Boduognatus (bōd'ū-ōg-nā'tūs). II, 23.

**Bōii**, -ōrum, *m.* (Ce), the Bōii (bō'yi), *a Celtic tribe once very powerful in southern Germany and Cisalpine Gaul. Those who joined the Helvetii were afterwards settled by Caesar as indicated on the map.* I, 5.

**bonitās**, -tātis, *f.* [bonus, good], goodness; fertility. I, 28.

**bonus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, good, beneficial, profitable, well-disposed; (*with animō*) friendly; *as noun*, bonum, -i, profit, advantage; bona, -ōrum, goods, property, estate; boni, -ōrum, the good, good men or citizens. *Comp.*, melior; *sup.*, optimus (App. 42). I, 6.

**bōs**, bovis, *m. f.*, ox; cow; *pl.*, cattle.

**bracchium**, -chī, *n.*, the arm, forearm. I, 25.

**Brannovicēs**, *see* Aulerci.

**Bratuspantium**, -ti, *n.* (Be), Bratuspantium (brāt'ūs-pān'shyūm). II, 13.

**brevis**, -e, *adj.*, short, brief, transitory; brevi, in a short time. I, 40; III, 4.

**brevitās**, -tātis, *f.* [brevis, short], shortness; brevity. II, 20.

**breviter**, *adv.* [brevis, short], briefly.

**Britannia**, -ae, *f.* (Aabcd), Britannia (brī-tān'i-ā), *better Britain, Great Britain (England and Scotland), never Britany.* II, 4.

**Britannicus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [Britannia, Britain], of Britain, British.

**Britannus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, of Britain, British; *pl. as noun*, the Britanni (brī-tān'i), *better, the Britons.* IV, 21.

**brūma**, -ae, *f.*, the winter solstice.

**Brūtus**, -i, *m.*, Decimus Junius Brutus (dēs'i-mūs jū'nī-ūs brū'tūs), *one of Caesar's lieutenants in the Gallic war, and in the war with Pompey. He took part in the conspiracy against Caesar, and was killed by order of Antony.* III, 11.

## C.

**C.**, *abbr. for praenomen Gālus* (gā'yūs). I, 40; III, 6.

**C.**, *sign for centum, a hundred.*

**Cabārus**, -i, *m.*, Gaius Valerius Caburus (gā'yūs vā-lē'rī-ūs kə-bū'rūs), a Gaul who possessed Roman citizenship; father of C. Valerius Proculus and C. Valerius Domnotaurus. I, 47.

**caetumen**, -inis, *n.*, top.

**cadāver**, -eris, *n.* [cadō, fall], a fallen or dead body, corpse. II, 27.

**cadō**, **cadere**, **cecidī**, **cāsum**, *intr.*, fall; fall in battle, be slain, die. I, 15.

**Cadūrcus**, -a, -um, *adj.* (Dd), Cadurcan; *pl. as noun*, the Cadurci (kə-dēr'sī).

**caedēs**, -is, *f.* [caedō, cut], a cutting; (of persons) slaughter, massacre, murder.

**caedō**, **caedere**, **cecidī**, **caesum**, *tr.*, cut, kill, slay. III, 29.

**caelestis**, -e, *adj.* [caelum, heaven], heavenly; *pl. as noun*, the gods.

**Caemānī**, -ōrum, *m.* (Af), the Caemani (sē-mā'-nī). II, 4.

**caerimōnia**, -ae, *f.*, a sacred rite.

**Caerōsī**, -ōrum, *m.* (Ag), the Caerosi (sē-rō'sī). II, 4.

**caeruleus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, dark blue.

**Caesar**, -aris, *m.*, (1), Gaius Julius Caesar (gā'yūs jū'lī-ūs sē'zar), *conqueror of Gaul and author of the Commentaries*. I, 7. (2), Lucius Julius Caesar (lū'shyūs jū'lī-ūs sē'zar), *a kinsman and lieutenant of the former*.

**caespes**, -itis, *m.*, a sod, turf. III, 25.

**caesus**, *see caedō*.

**calamitās**, -tātis, *f.*, misfortune, disaster, defeat. I, 12.

**Caletī**, -ōrum (or -ēs, -um), *m.* (Bd), the Caleti (kāl'ē-tī). II, 4.

**callidus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, shrewd. III, 18.

**cālō**, -ōnis, *m.*, a soldier's servant, camp porter or follower. II, 24.

**campester**, -tris, -tre, *adj.* [campus, a plain], of a plain, flat, level; loca, level country.

**campus**, -i, *m.*, plain, open space or country. III, 26.

**Camulogenus**, -i, *m.*, Camulogenus (kām'ū-lōj'ē-nūs), *a chief of the Aulerici*.

**Caninius**, -nī, *m.*, Gaius Caninius Rebillus (gā'yūs kə-nīn'i-ūs rēb'i-lūs), *one of Caesar's lieutenants*.

**canō**, **canere**, **cecini**, **cantum**, *intr.*, sing; sound.

**Cantabri**, -ōrum, *m.* (Eab), the Cantabri (kān'tə-bri). III, 26.

**Cantium**, -tī, *n.* (Ad), Cantium (kān'shyūm), or Kent.

**capillus**, -i, *m.*, the hair.

**caplō**, **capere**, **cēpl**, **captum**, *tr.*, take, capture, seize, catch; take in, beguile, induce; take up (*arms*); choose, select (*a place*); form, adopt (*a plan*); reach, arrive at (*a place*); make (*a beginning*); **collem capere**, take position on a hill; **fugam capere**, take to flight. I, 1.

**capra**, -ae, *f.*, goat.

**captivus**, -i, *m.* [caplō, take], captive, prisoner. I, 22.

**captus**, -ūs, *m.* [caplō, take], comprehension, ideas. IV, 3.

**captus**, *see caplō*.

**caput**, **capitis**, *n.*, the head (*of men and animals*); person, individual; mouth (*of a river*); **capitis pōena**, capital punishment. I, 29.

**Carcasō**, -ōnis, *f.* (Ee), Carcaso (kār'kə-sō). III, 20.

**careō**, 2, *intr.*, be without, be free from; miss, want.

**carīna**, -ae, *f.*, keel. III, 13.

**Carnutēs**, -um, *m.* (BCde), the Carnutes (kār'nū-tēz). II, 35.

**carō**, **carnis**, *f.*, flesh, meat.

**carpō**, **carpere**, **carpsi**, **carptum**, *tr.*, pluck; censure, jeer at. III, 17.

**carrus**, -i, *m.*, cart. I, 3.

**cārus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, dear, valuable.

**Carvilius**, -ii, *m.*, Carvilius (kār-vī'lī-ūs), *a British king*.

**casa**, -ae, *f.*, cottage, hut.

**cāseus**, -i, *m.*, cheese.

**Cassī**, -ōrum, *m.* (Ac), the Cassi (kās'i).

**Cassiānus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, of Cassius, *see Cassius*. I, 13.

**cassis**, -idis, *f.*, a metal helmet.

**Cassius**, -ii, *m.*, Lucius Cassius Longinus (lū'shyūs kās'h'yūs lōn-g'i'nūs),

*consul* 107 B. C., slain in battle by the *Tigurini*. I, 7.

**Cassivellaunus**, -i, *m.*, Cassivellaunus (*kās/vē-law/nūs*), the commander-in-chief of the Britons against Caesar.

**castellum**, -i, *n.* [castrum, fort], fortress, redoubt. I, 8.

**Casticus**, -i, *m.*, Casticus (*kās/tī-kūs*). I, 3.

**castrum**, -i, *n.*, fort; *pl.*, castra, castrorum, fortified camp, camp; castra facere or pōnere, pitch camp; castra movēre, break up camp. I, 12.

**cāsus**, -ūs, *m.* [*cadō*, fall], what befalls; accident, chance; misfortune, fate; crisis; cāsū, by chance. I, 12.

**Catamantaloedis**, -is, *m.*, Catamantaloedis (*kāt/a-mān/ta-lō/dis*). I, 3.

**catēna**, -ae, *f.*, chain; fetter. I, 47; III, 13.

**Caturigēs**, -um, *m.* (Dg), the Caturiges (*kāt/ū-rī/jēs*). I, 10.

**Catuvolcus**, -i, *m.*, Catuvolcus (*kāt/ū-vōl/kūs*), a chief of the Eburones.

**causa**, -ae, *f.*, cause, reason, grounds, motive; situation, condition; a (legal) case, cause; causam dicere, to plead a case; causā, following a gen., for the sake of, for the purpose of, for. I, 1.

**cautō**, *adv.* [cautus, from caveō, be cautious], cautiously.

**cautēs**, -is, *f.*, reef. III, 13.

**Cavarillus**, -i, *m.*, Cavarillus (*kāv/a-ril/ūs*), a Haeduan noble.

**Cavarinus**, -i, *m.*, Cavarinus (*kāv/a-rī/nūs*), a king of the Senones.

**caveō**, cavēre, cāvī, cautum, *intr.*, be cautious, be on one's guard; obsidibus cavēre, exchange hostages as security. I, 14.

**Cavillonum**, -i, *n.* (Cf), Cavillonum (*kāv/vī-lō/nūm*).

**Cebenna**, -ae, *f.* (De), the Cebenna (*sē-bēn/a*), or the Cevennes mountains.

**cēdō**, cēdere, cessī, cessum, *intr.*, go; go away; give way, yield, retreat. II, 19.

**celer**, -eris, -ere, *adj.*, swift, quick; precipitata. IV, 23.

**celeritās**, -tātis, *f.* [celer, swift], swiftness, quickness, speed. I, 48; II, 12.

**celeriter**, *adv.* [celer, swift], quickly, rapidly, speedily. *Comp.*, celerius; *sup.*, celerrimē (App. 40). I, 18.

**cēlō**, *i, tr.*, keep covered or hidden, secrete, conceal; *in pass.*, escape observation, be unnoticed. II, 32.

**Celtae**, -ārum, *m.*, the Celtae (*sēl/tē*), better the Celts. I, 1.

**Celtillus**, -i, *m.*, Celtillus (*sēl-tīl/ūs*), an Arvernian chief, father of Vercingetorix.

**Cēnabēnsis**, -e, *adj.* [Cēnabum], of Cenabum; *pl. as noun*, the people of Cenabum.

**Cēnabum**, -i, *n.* (Cd), Cenabum (*sēn/a-būm*), now Orleans.

**Cēnimagnī**, -ōrum, *m.* (Ad), the Cenimagni (*sēn/ī-māg/nī*).

**Cēnomani**, see Aulercl.

**cēnsēō**, cēnsēre, cēnsul, cēnsus, *tr.*, think, decide (*acc. and inf.*); propose, advise, vote (*ut and subj.*); propose, vote for (*acc.*). I, 35.

**cēnsus**, -ūs, *m.*, enumeration. I, 29.

**centum**, (C), *indecl. card. num.*, a hundred. I, 2.

**centuriō**, -ōnis, *m.* [centum, a hundred], centurion, the commander of the century, the sixtieth part of a legion. I, 39; II, 17.

**cēpl**, see capiō.

**cernō**, cernere, crēvī, crētum, *tr.*, separate; see, perceive.

**certāmen**, -inis, *n.* [certō, strive], strife, struggle, contest, combat. III, 14.

**certō**, *adv.* [certus, certain], certainly; at least, at all events. IV, 25.

**certus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [for crētus, *pf. part. of cernō*], decided; certain, sure, fixed; certiorē facere, to inform (*acc. and inf.*); order (*ut or nē and subj.*); certior fieri, be informed. I, 7.

**cervus**, -i, *m.*, stag.

**cēterī**, -ae, -a, *adj.*, the rest of, the remainder; *as noun*, the rest, remaining, others. I, 32; II, 3.

**Centronēs**, -um, *m.*, the Ceutrones (*sū/trō-nēs*); (1), (Dg), I, 10. (2), (Af).

**Chērusci**, -ōrum, *m.* (Ahl), the Cherusci (kē-rūs/i), a German tribe.

**cibārius**, -a, -um, *adj.* [cibus, food], pertaining to food; *n. pl. as noun*, provisions; *molita cibāria*, meal, flour. I, 5.

**cibus**, -i, *m.*, food. IV, 1.

**Cicerō**, -ōnis, *m.*, Quintus Tullius Cicero (kwīn'tūs tūl'i-ūs sls'ē-rō), brother of the famous orator, one of Caesar's legates.

**Cimberius**, -ri, *m.*, Cimperius (sīm-bē-ri ūs). I, 37.

**Cimbri**, -ōrum, *m.*, the Cimbri (sīm-brī). I, 33; II, 4.

**Cingetorix**, -igis, *m.*, Cingetorix (sīn-jēt'ō-rīks), (1) a chief of the Treveri; (2) a British king.

**cingō**, **cingere**, **cīnxi**, **cinctum**, *tr.*, encircle, surround, invest, encompass; *man (a wall)*. I, 38.

**cippus**, -i, *m.*, palisade, stockade.

**circinus**, -i, *m.* [circus, circle], a pair of compasses. I, 38.

**circiter**, *adv.* [circus, circle], about, near. I, 15.

**circuitus**, -ūs, *m.* [circumeō, go around], a going around; a winding path; circumference, circuit. I, 21.

**circum**, *prep. with acc.* [circus, a circle], around, about, near. I, 10.

**circumcidō**, -cidere, -cīdī, -cīsum, *tr.* [caedō, cut], cut around or off, cut; isolate.

**circumcludō**, -cludere, -clūsi, -clūsum, *tr.* [claudō, shut], encircle.

**circumdō**, -dare, -dedī, -datum, *tr.* [dō, put], put around, encompass, surround. I, 38; IV, 32.

**circumdūcō**, -ducere, -dūxi, -ductum, *tr.* [dūcō, lead], lead or draw around. I, 38; III, 26.

**circumeō**, -ire, -ii, -itum, *tr.* [eō, go. App. 84], go or march around, traverse, visit. III, 25.

**circumfundō**, -fundere, -fūdī, -fūsum, *tr.* [fundō, pour], surround; *pass.*, gather round.

**circumiciō**, -icere, -iēcī, -iectum, *tr.* [iaciō, throw. App. 7], throw, set or place around. II, 6.

**circummittō**, -mittere, -misi, -missum, *tr.* [mittō, send], send around.

**circumunio**, 4, *tr.* [māniō, fortify], wall around; fortify, protect. II, 30.

**circumplector**, -plecti, -plexus sum, *tr.* [plectō, fold], enfold, enclose.

**circumsistō**, -sistere, -stiti, —, *tr.* [sistō, stand], stand, flock or rally around, surround, hem in. I, 48; III, 15.

**circumspiciō**, -spicere, -spexi, -spec-tum, *tr.* [speciō, look], look (around) for or at, consider, examine.

**circumvallō**, 1, *tr.* [vāllum, rampart], surround with a rampart, beleaguer, invest.

**circumvehō**, -vehere, -vexi, -vectum, *tr.* [vehō, carry], carry around; *pass.*, ride around.

**circumveniō**, -venire, -vēni, -ventum, *tr.* [veniō, come], come or get around, surround, cut off, beset; betray, defraud. I, 25.

**cis**, *prep. with acc.*, on this side of. II, 3.

**Cisalpinus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [Alpēs, Cisalpine, lying on the south side of the Alps].

**Cisrhēnānus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [Rhēnus], on this (the western) side of the Rhine.

**Cita**, -ae, *m.*, Gaius Fufius Cita (gā'yūs fū'i-ūs sī'ta), a Roman knight.

**citātus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [*pf. part. of citō* put in motion], swift. IV, 10.

**citerior**, -ius, *comp. adj.* (App. 43), nearer, hither; Gallia Citerior (= Cisalpina), Cisalpine Gaul, on the nearer (Italian) side of the Alps. I, 10.

**citō**, *adv.*, quickly, speedily. *Comp.*, citius; *sup.*, citissimē. IV, 33.

**citrā**, *prep. with acc.*, on this side of. I, 12.

**citrō**, *adv.*, hither; **ultrō** **citrōque**, back and forth. I, 42.

**civis**, -is, *m. f.*, citizen.

**civitas**, -tātis, *f.* [civis, citizen], citizenship; the citizens (as forming a community), state, city. I, 2.

**clam**, *adv.*, secretly. III, 18.

**clāmitō**, 1, *tr.* [*freq. of clāmō*, cry out], cry out repeatedly, exclaim.

**clāmor**, -ōris, *m.* [clāmō, cry out], outcry, noise, din, clamor. II, 11.

**clandestinus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [*clam*, secretly], hidden, secret.

**clārus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, clear, loud.

**classis**, -is, *f.*, fleet. III, 11.

**Claudius**, -di, *m.*, Appius Claudius Pulcher (āp'i-ūs klaw'di-ūs pūl'kēr), consul 54 B.C.

**claudō**, **claudere**, **clausi**, **clausum**, *tr.*, shut, close; **agmen claudere**, close the line, bring up the rear. I, 25.

**clāvus**, -i, *m.*, nail, spike. III, 13.

**clēmētia**, -ae, *f.* [*clēmēns*, gentle], gentleness, kindness, mercy, clemency. II, 14.

**cliēns**, -entis, *m.*, *f.* [*clueō*, hear, obey], client, vassal, dependent, retainer. I, 4.

**clientēla**, -ae, *f.* [*cliēns*, a client], the relation of client and patron; patronage, vassalage; clients.

**clivus**, -i, *m.*, slope, ascent.

**Clōdius**, -di, *m.*, Publius Clodius Pulcher (pūb'li-ūs klō'di-ūs pūl'kēr), murdered by Milo in 52 B.C.

**Cn.**, *abbr.* for Gnaeus (nō'ūs), a Roman praenomen. IV, 1.

**co-**, *see* **con-**.

**coacervō**, 1, *tr.* [*acervō*, heap up; *acervus*, heap], heap or mass together, pile one upon another. II, 27.

**coāctus**, *see* **cōgō**.

**coāctus**, -ūs, *m.* [*cōgō*, compel], compulsion.

**coagmentō**, 1, *tr.*, join, connect.

**coartō**, 1, *tr.*, crowd together.

**Cocosātēs**, -um, *m.* (Dc), the Cocosates (kōk'ō-sā'tēz). III, 27.

**coēgi**, *see* **cōgō**.

**coēmō**, -emere, -ēmi, -ēmtum, *tr.* [*emō*, buy], buy, buy up. I, 3.

**coēō**, -ire, -ii, —, *intr.* [*eō*, go. App. 84], assemble.

**coepi**, **coepisse** (App. 86 and a), *tr.*, began, commenced, undertook; **coepus**, *pf. part.*, begun, commenced. I, 15.

**coērcēō**, 2, *tr.* [*arceō*, shut up], shut up completely, restrain, check. I, 17.

**cōgitō**, 1, *tr. and intr.* [*co+agitō*, consider], consider thoroughly or carefully, ponder, reflect; think, purpose, plan. I, 33; III, 24.

**cognātiō**, -ōnis, *f.* [*co+(g)nātus*, born], blood relationship; family, clan.

**cognōscō**, -nōscere, -nōvi, -nitum, *tr.* [*co+(g)nōscō*, learn], learn, ascertain; study, investigate; *pf*, I have learned, I know (App. 193, i, a). I, 19.

**cōgō**, **cōgere**, **coēgi**, **coāctum**, *tr.* [*co+agō*, lead], lead or bring together, collect, draw together, assemble; force, compel, constrain. I, 4.

**cohors**, -tis, *f.*, cohort. I, 40; II, 5.

**cohortātiō**, -ōnis, *f.* [*cohortor*, encourage], encouragement, cheering. II, 25.

**cohortor**, 1, *tr.* [*co+hortor*, encourage], encourage greatly, cheer, animate. I, 25.

**collātus**, *see* **cōnferō**.

**collaudō**, 1, *tr.* [*con+laudō*, praise], praise highly.

**colligō**, 1, *tr.* [*con+ligō*, bind], bind or fasten together. I, 25.

**colligō**, -ligere, -lēgi, -lēctum, *tr.* [*con+legō*, gather], gather together, collect; acquire; *sē colligere*, collect one's self, rally. III, 6.

**collis**, -is, *m.*, hill. I, 22.

**collocō**, 1, *tr.* [*con+locō*, place], place, set, station; arrange; **nūptum collocāre**, to give in marriage. I, 18.

**colloquium**, -qui, *n.* [*colloquor*, talk together], talking together; conference, parley, interview. I, 34.

**colloquor**, -loqui, -locūtus sum, *intr.* [*con+loquor*, speak], speak with, converse, confer, have a conference. I, 19.

**colō**, **colere**, **colui**, **cultum**, *tr.*, cultivate, dwell in; honor, worship. IV, 1.

**colōnia**, -ae, *f.*, colony, settlement.

**color**, -ōris, *m.*, color.

**com-**, *see* **con-**.

**combūrō**, -ūrere, -ussi, -ustum, *tr.* [*com(b)+ūrō*, burn], burn up. I, 5.

**comes**, -itis, *m.*, *f.*, companion.

**comitium**, -ti, *n.* [*com+eō*, go], place of assembly or meeting; *pl.*, an election.

**comitor**, 1, *tr.* [*comes*, companion], accompany, follow.

**commeatus**, -ūs, *m.* [commeō, go back and forth], trip, voyage; supplies, provisions. I, 34; II, 5.

**commemorō**, 1, *tr.* [memorō, call to mind], remind one of; state, mention. I, 14.

**commendō**, 1, *tr.* [mandō, entrust], entrust; surrender. IV, 27.

**commeō**, 1, *intr.* [meō, go], go back and forth; *with ad.* resort to, visit. I, 1.

**commilitō**, -ōnis, *m.* [miles, soldier], fellow soldier, comrade. IV, 25.

**comminus**, *adv.* [manus, hand], hand to hand, in close contest. I, 52.

**commisura**, -ae, *f.* [committō, join], uniting, joint, juncture.

**committō**, -mittere, -misi, -missum, *tr.* [mittō, send], join, splice; commit (*a crime*), do; allow, permit; entrust; *proelium committere*, join or begin battle. I, 13.

**Commius**, -mi, *m.*, Commius (kōm'i-ūs), a chief of the *Atrebates*. IV, 21.

**commodē**, *adv.* [commodus, convenient], conveniently; readily, easily, fitly; *satis commodē*, to much advantage, very easily. I, 25.

**commodum**, -i, *n.* [commodus, convenient], convenience, interest, advantage. I, 35; III, 22.

**commodus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [modus, measure], *in full measure*: convenient, suitable, satisfactory. I, 42.

**commonefaciō**, -facere, -feci, -factum, *tr.* [moneō, remind+faciō, make], remind forcibly. I, 19.

**commoror**, 1, *intr.* [moror, tarry], wait, stop.

**commoveō**, -movēre, -mōvi, -mōtum, *tr.* [moveō, move], move or excite thoroughly, rouse, agitate alarm. I, 13.

**communiciō**, 1, *tr.* [communis, common], make common, communicate, impart, share. IV, 13.

**communiō**, 4, *tr.* [munio, fortify], fortify strongly, intrench. I, 8.

**communis**, -e, *adj.* common, general; *rēs communis*, the common interest. I, 30; II, 4.

**commutatio**, -ōnis, *f.* [commutō, change], a changing, change. I, 14.

**commutō**, 1, *tr.* [mutō, change], change or alter completely, change, exchange. I, 23.

**comparō**, 1, *tr.* [parō, prepare], prepare, get ready; acquire, gain, secure prepare for. I, 3.

**comparō**, 1, *tr.* [pār, equal], place in comparison, compare. I, 31.

**compellō**, -pellere, -pulli, -pulsum, *tr.* [pellō, drive], drive together, assemble, collect; force, compel. II, 23.

**compendium**, -di, *n.*, gain, profit.

**comperiō**, -perire, -peri, -pertum, *tr.* [pariō, procure], find out with certainty, discover, ascertain. I, 22.

**complector**, -plecti, -plexus sum, *tr.* [plectō, fold], embrace, clasp, enclose. I, 20.

**compleō**, -plēre, -plēvi, -plētum, *tr.* [obolete, plēō, fill], fill up or completely; complete; cover. I, 24.

**complexus**, *see* complector.

**complūrēs**, -a, *adj.* [plūs, more], several, many; a great many. I, 8.

**comportō**, 1, *tr.* [portō, carry], carry together, collect, bring. I, 16.

**comprehendō**, -prehendere, -prehendi, -prehensum, *tr.* [prehendō, (=prēndō), seize], grasp or lay hold of, seize, catch, arrest; take, catch (*fire*). III, 14.

**comprobō**, 1, *tr.* [probō, approve], approve, sanction, justify.

**compulsus**, *see* compello.

**con-**, **com-**, **co-** [*the forms taken by cum in composition*], together; completely; or mere emphasis.

**cōnātum**, -i, *n.* [cōnor, try], attempt, undertaking. I, 3.

**cōnātus**, -ūs, *m.* [conor, try], attempt, undertaking. I, 3.

**cōnātus**, *see* cōnor.

**concedō**, -cēdere -cessi, -cessum, *tr. and intr.* [cēdō, go], go away, depart, withdraw; grant, yield; allow, permit. I, 7.

**concessus**, -ūs, *m.* [concedō, permit], concession, permission.

**concido**, -cidere -cidi, -cisum, *tr.* [caedō, cut], cut down, slay, kill; cut off. I, 12.

**concidō, -cidere, -cidi, —, intr.** [**cadō, fall**], fall down, fall. III, 14.  
**conciō, 1, tr.** [**concilium, assembly**], bring together; gain or win over, secure; reconcile, conciliate. I, 3.  
**concilium, -ii, n.**, gathering, assembly, council. I, 18.  
**conclisus, see concidō.**  
**concitō, 1, tr.** [**citō, put in motion**], stir up, rouse, instigate, incite.  
**conclāmō, 1, intr.** [**clāmō, cry out**], shout or cry out, call aloud. I, 47; III, 18.  
**conclūdō, -clūdere, -clūsi, -clūsum, tr.** [**claudō, close**], shut up; **conclūsum mare**, an inland sea. III, 9.  
**Conconnetodumnus, -i, m.**, Conconnetodumnus (**kōn-kōn'ō-tō-dūm'nūs**), a chief of the Carnutes.  
**concrepō, -crepāre, -crepui, -crepitum, intr.**, clash.  
**concurrō, -currere, -curri, -cursum, intr.** [**currō, run**], run or rush together; hurry, run, rush; run to the rescue; come, gather. I, 48; II, 20.  
**conkursō, 1, intr.** [**freq. of concurrō, run**], run about.  
**toncursus, -ūs, m.** [**concurrō, run**], a running together, attack, onset; collision. I, 8.  
**conkursus, see concurrō.**  
**condemnō, 1, tr.** [**damnō, condemn**], convict.  
**condiciō, -ōnis, f.**, condition, state; agreement, stipulation, terms. I, 28.  
**condōnō, 1, tr.** [**dōnō, give**], give up; pardon, forgive. I, 20.  
**Condrusi, -drum, m. (Af)**, the Condrusi (**kōn-dru'si**). II, 4.  
**conductō, -ducere, -dūxi, -ductum, tr.** [**dūcō, lead**], lead or bring together, assemble; conduct; hire. I, 4.  
**confectus, see conciciō.**  
**conferō, conferre, contuli, collātum, tr.** [**ferō, bring. App. 81**], bring or get together, collect, gather, carry, bring; crowd together; ascribe to; put off, defer; compare; **sē conferre**, betake one's self, take refuge. I, 16.  
**confertus, -a, -um, adj.** [**pf. part. of conferciō, crowd together**], dense, thick, compact. I, 24.

**confestim, adv.**, hastily, at once, immediately. IV, 32.  
**conficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum, tr.** [**faciō, make**], make or do thoroughly, complete, accomplish, finish; finish up, exhaust, weaken; furnish; dress (*leather*). I, 3.  
**confidō, -fidere, -fisis sum, intr.** [**fidō, trust. App. 74**], trust completely, rely on, feel confident, hope; **cōnfisus, pf. part. with present meaning**, relying on. I, 23.  
**configō, -figere, -fixi, -fixum, tr.** [**figō, fix**], fasten. III, 13.  
**confinis, -e, adj.** [**finis, boundary**], adjoining, contiguous.  
**confinium, -ni, n.** [**finis, boundary**], common boundary, neighborhood.  
**confirmātiō, -ōnis, f.** [**cōnfirmō, assert**], assurance. III, 18.  
**confirmō, 1, tr.** [**fīrmō, strengthen**], establish, strengthen, encourage, console; declare, assert. I, 3.  
**confisus, see confidō.**  
**confiteor, -fiteri, -fessus sum, tr.** [**fateor, confess**], acknowledge, confess.  
**confixus, see configō.**  
**confiagrō, 1, intr.** [**flagrō, burn**], burn, be on fire.  
**conflictō, 1, tr.** [**freq. of cōnfigō**], strike together; *pass.*, be distressed.  
**configō, -figere, -fixi, -fictum, intr.** [**figō, strike**], strike against; contend, fight. II, 5.  
**confuēns, -entis, f.** [**cōnfuō, flow together**], a flowing together, confluence. IV, 15.  
**confuō, -fuere, -fuxi, —, intr.** [**fluō, flow**], flow together.  
**confugiō, -fugere, -fugī, —, intr.** [**fugīō, flee**], flee, take refuge.  
**confundō, -fundere, -fudi, -fūsum, tr.** [**fundō, pour**], pour together, bring together.  
**congregior, -gredi, -gressus sum, intr.** [**gradior, step**], meet, encounter, meet in battle; join (*peacefully*). I, 36; II, 23.  
**congressus, -ūs, m.** [**congregior, meet**], meeting, engagement, conflict. III, 13.  
**coniciō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectum, tr.** [**iaciō, throw. App. 7**], hurl, throw, cast;

put; put together *logically*, conjecture; in *fugam conicere*, put to flight. I, 26.

**coniectūra, -ae, f.** [**coniciō**, conjecture], inference, conjecture.

**coniectus, see coniciō.**

**coniunctim, adv.** [**coniungō**, join], jointly.

**coniungō, -iungere, -iūnxī, -iūnc-tum, tr.** [**iungō**, join], join with or together, connect, unite, bind. I, 37; II, 3.

**coniūnx, -iugis, f.** [**coniungō**, join], wife.

**conīrātīō, -ōnis, f.** [**conīrārē**, swear together], a swearing together; plot, conspiracy; secret league, confederacy. I, 2.

**conīrārē, 1, intr.** [**īrārē**, swear], swear or take an oath together, league together, conspire. II, 1.

**cōnor, 1, intr., attempt, endeavor, try.** I, 3.

**conquiescō, -quiescere, -quiescī, -quiescētum, intr.** [**quiescō**, to rest, **quies**, rest], lie down to rest.

**conquirō, -quirere, -quisivī, -quisitum, tr.** [**quaerō**, search], seek for carefully, search for, hunt up. I, 27.

**cōnsanguineus, -a, -um, adj.** [**sanguis**, blood], of the same blood; as *noun*, kinsman, relative. I, 11.

**cōnscendō, -scendere, -scendi, -scēnsum, tr.** [**scandō**, climb], climb, mount; go on board, embark. IV, 23.

**cōnscientia, -ae, f.** [**cōnsciūs**, conscious], consciousness, knowledge, sense.

**cōnsciscō, -sciscere, -scivī, -scitum, tr.** [**sciscō**, resolve], resolve upon; **sibi mortem cōnsciscere**, commit suicide. I, 4.

**cōnsciūs, -a, -um, adj.** [**sciō**, know], conscious; aware. I, 14.

**cōnscrībō, -scribere, -scripsī, -scriptum, tr.** [**scribō**, write], write together in a list; levy, enroll, enlist; write. I, 10.

**cōnsecrō, 1, tr.** [**sacrō**, dedicate], dedicate, consecrate.

**cōnsector, 1, tr.** [**sector, freq. of se-**

**quor**, follow], follow eagerly, pursue, chase. III, 15.

**cōnsecūtus, see cōnsequor.**

**cōnsēnsiō, -ōnis, f.** [**cōnsentiō**, agree], agreement.

**cōnsēnsus, -ūs, m.** [**cōnsentiō**, agree], united opinion, agreement, consent; coalition. I, 30; II, 28.

**cōnsentiō, -sentire, -sēnsī, -sēnsum, intr.** [**sentīō**, feel], think together; agree, combine. II, 3.

**cōnsequor, -sequi, -secūtus sum, tr.** [**sequor**, follow], follow up; go after, pursue; reach, overtake; gain, attain, accomplish; ensue, succeed. I, 13.

**cōnservō, 1, tr.** [**servō**, save], save, spare, protect; observe, maintain. II, 12.

**Cōnsidius, -di, m., Publius Considius** (**pūb/īl-ūs kōn-sid'ī-ūs**), one of Caesar's officers. I, 21.

**cōnsidō, -sidere, -sēdī, -sessum, intr.** [**sīdō**, sit down], sit down together, settle; take a position, halt, encamp. I, 21.

**cōnsiliū, -ii, n., consultation, deliberation; counsel, advice; plan, design; measure, course of action; judgment; prudence, wisdom; an assembly for deliberation, council, council of war; common cōnsiliō, by, or in accordance with, general action; public cōnsiliō, by action of the state; cōnsiliū capere or inire, form or adopt a plan; cōnsiliū habere, think, consider. I, 5.**

**cōnsimilis, -e, adj.** [**similis**, like], very like, similar. II, 11.

**cōnsistō, -sistere, -stitī, —, intr.** [**sistō**, stand], take a stand or position, keep one's position, stand, form (of soldiers); stop, halt, remain, stay; (of ships) ride at anchor; consist in, depend or rest on. I, 13.

**cōnsobrinus, -i, m., cousin.**

**cōnsōlor, 1, tr.** [**sōlor**, comfort], cheer, comfort. I, 20.

**cōnspectus, -ūs, m.** [**cōnspiciō**, look at], sight, view; presence. I, 11.

**cōnspiciō, -spicere, -spexī, -spēctum, tr.** [**speciō**, look], look at, observe, descry, perceive. I, 47; II, 21.

**cōnspicor**, 1, *tr.* [speciō, look], observe, descry, perceive. I, 25.

**cōnspirō**, 1, *intr.* [spirō, breathe], combine, conspire. III, 10.

**cōnstanter**, *adv.* [cōnstō, stand firm], uniformly, consistently; resolutely. II, 2.

**cōnstantia**, -ae, *f.* [cōnstō, stand firm], firmness, steadfastness. I, 40.

**cōnsternō**, -sternere, -strāvi, -strātum, *tr.* [sternō, strew], strew over, cover over. IV, 17.

**cōnsternō**, 1, *tr.* [cōnsternō, -ere, strew over], confound, perplex, dismay.

**cōnstipō**, 1, *tr.*, press or crowd closely.

**cōnstituō**, -stituere, -stitui, -stitutum, *tr.* [statuō, set up], set up, erect, construct; appoint decide, decree, determine, establish, set, settle; (*of troops*) draw up, station; (*of ships*) anchor, station; raise (*a legion*). I, 3.

**cōnstō**, -stāre, -stiti, -stātum, *intr.* [stō, stand], stand firm; depend on; be complete; cost; *impersonal*, it is agreed, certain, evident, known. III, 6.

**cōnstrātus**, *see* cōnsternō.

**cōnsuēscō**, -suēscere, -suēvi, -suētum, *intr.* [suēscō, become used], become accustomed; *pf.* (App. 193, I, a), be accustomed, be wont; **cōnsuētus**, *pf. part. as adj.*, accustomed, usual, wonted. I, 14.

**cōnsuētūdō**, -inis, *f.* [cōnsuēscō, become accustomed], habit, custom, practice; mode of life. I, 31; II, 17.

**cōnsuētus**, *see* cōnsuēscō.

**cōnsul**, -ulis, *m.*, a consul, one of the two chief magistrates elected annually by the Roman people. I, 2.

**cōnsulātus**, -ūs, *m.* [cōnsul, consul], consulship. I, 35.

**cōnsulō**, -ere, -ui, -tum, *tr. and intr.*; *tr.*, take counsel, consult, consider; *intr. with dat.*, take counsel for, study the interests of, take care of; spare. I, 53.

**cōnsultō**, 1, *intr.* [*freq. of* cōnsulō, take counsel], reflect, consider, take counsel.

**cōnsultō**, *adv.* [cōnsulō, take counsel], deliberately, designedly, on purpose.

**cōnsultum**, -i, *n.* [cōnsulō, take counsel], *result of deliberation*; decree, enactment, decision. I, 43.

**cōnsūmō**, -sūmere, -sūmpi, -sūptum, *tr.* [sūmō, take], *take together or all at once*; devour, consume, destroy; use up, waste, pass. I, 11.

**cōnsurgō**, -surgere, -surrēxi, -surrectum, *intr.* [surgō, rise], arise together or in a body; arise.

**contabulō**, 1, *tr.* [tabula, board], floor over, build in stories, build up.

**contāgiō**, -ōnis, *f.* [contingō, touch], contact.

**contāminō**, 1, *tr.*, corrupt, contaminate.

**contegō**, -tegere, -tēxi, -tēctum, *tr.* [tegō, cover], cover up.

**contemnō**, -temnere, -tempai, -temptum, *tr.* [temnō, scorn], despise, disdain.

**contemptiō**, -ōnis, *f.* [contemnō, despise], disdain, contempt. III, 17.

**contemptus**, -ūs, *m.* [contemnō, despise], contempt; an object of contempt. II, 30.

**contendō**, -tendere, -tendi, -tentum, *tr. and intr.* [tendō, stretch], push forward, hasten; march; strive, contend, fight; be anxious for; maintain, insist. I, 1.

**contentiō**, -ōnis, *f.* [contendō, strive], striving, struggle, contest, dispute. I, 44.

**contentus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [*pf. part. of* contineō, restrain], satisfied, contented.

**contexō**, -texere, -texui, -textum, *tr.* [texō, weave], weave or bind together, connect. IV, 17.

**contigi**, *see* contingō.

**continēns**, -entis, *adj.* [*pres. part. of* contineō, hold together], *holding together*; continuous, unbroken; neighboring; *as noun*, mainland, continent. III, 28.

**continenter**, *adv.* [continēns, continuous], without interruption, continually, continuously. I, 1.

**continentia**, -ae, *f.* [contineō, hold], self-restraint, moderation.

**contineō**, -tinēre, -tinui, -tentum, *tr.* [teneō, hold], hold together; hold, keep, restrain; bound, shut in; contain; *sē* continēre, *with abl.*, remain in, on or within. I, 1.

**contingō**, -tingere, -tigi, -tāctum, *tr. and intr.* [tangō, touch], touch, reach; extend to; befall, happen to. I, 38.

**continuātiō**, -ōnis, *f.* [continuus, continuous], continuance, succession. III, 29.

**continuō**, *adv.* [continuus, continuous], immediately, forthwith.

**continuus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [contineō, hold together], holding together, unbroken, uninterrupted, continuous. I, 48; IV, 34.

**cōntiō**, -ōnis, *f.* [for conventiō; conveniō, come together], assembly, mass-meeting; address (*before such a meeting*).

**contrā**, *adv. and prep. with acc.*: (1) *as adv.*, against him or them; on the other hand; **contrā atque**, contrary to what; (2) *as prep.*, against, contrary to; opposite, facing. I, 18.

**contrahō**, -trahere, -trāxi, -tractum, *tr.* [trahō, draw], draw or bring together, assemble, collect; draw into smaller compass, contract. I, 34; IV, 22.

**contrārius**, -a, -um, *adj.* [contrā, against], lying over against, opposite, facing; **ex contrāriō**, on the contrary. II, 18.

**contrōversia**, -ae, *f.* [contrā, against + versus, turned], dispute, quarrel, controversy.

**contuli**, *see* cōnferō.

**contumēlia**, -ae, *f.*, affront, indignity, insult; injury, violence. I, 14.

**convalēscō**, -valēscere, -valui, —, *intr.* [valēscō, *incept. of* valeō, be well], gain health or strength, recover.

**convallis**, -is, *f.* [vallis, valley], enclosed valley, defile. III, 20.

**convehō**, -vehere, -vexi, -vectum, *tr.* [vehō, carry], carry or bring together, collect.

**conveniō**, -venire, -veni, -ventum, *tr. and intr.* [veniō, come], come together, assemble; convene, meet; come to, arrive; to be agreed upon; *impersonal*, be convenient, suitable, necessary. I, 6.

**conventus**, -ūs, *m.* [conveniō, come together], a coming together, meeting, assembly; court. I, 18.

**convertō**, -vertere, -verti, -versum, *tr. and intr.* [vertō, turn], turn completely, turn or wheel around; turn, change; **signa convertere**, face about. I, 23.

**Convictolitāvis**, -is, *m.*, Convictolitavis (kōn-vīk'tō-lī-tā'vis), a *Hæduan chief*.

**convincō**, -vincere, -vici, -victum, *tr.* [vincō, conquer], conquer completely; prove. I, 40.

**convocō**, *1. tr.* [vocō, call], call together, summon, assemble. I, 16.

**coorior**, -oriri, -ortus sum, *intr.* [co + orior, rise], arise, spring up, break out. III, 7.

**cōpia**, -ae, *f.*, supply, plenty, abundance, number; *pl.*, resources; forces, troops. I, 2.

**cōpiōsus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [cōpia, plenty], well supplied, wealthy. I, 23.

**cōpula**, -ae, *f.*, grappling-hook. III, 13.

**cor**, cordis, *n.*, heart; cordi esse, *be* dear.

**cōram**, *adv.*, face to face, in person. I, 32.

**Coriosolitēs**, -um, *m.* (Bb), the Coriosolites (kō'ri-ō-sōl'i-tēz). II, 34.

**corium**, -ri, *n.*, skin, hide, leather.

**cornū**, -ūs, *n.*, horn; (*of an army*) flank, wing. I, 52; II, 23.

**corōna**, -ae, *f.*, wreath, chaplet; ring, circle; **sub corōnā vēdere**, sell at auction. III, 16.

**corpus**, -oris, *n.*, body; person; a (*dead*) body. I, 25.

**corrumpō**, -rumpere, -rūpi, -ruptum, *tr.* [con + rumpō, break], destroy, ruin.

**cortex**, -icis, *m., f.*, bark. II, 33.

**Cōrus**, -i, *m.*, the northwest wind.

**cotidiānus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [cotidiō,

daily], every day, daily; usual, customary. I, 1.

**cotidiē**, *adv.* [quot, how many+**diēs**, day], daily, every day. I, 16.

**Cotta**, *see* **Aurunculeius**.

**Cotuātus**, -i, *m.*, **Cotuatus** (kōt'ū-ā-tūs), a chief of the Carnutes.

**Cotus**, -i, *m.*, **Cotus** (kō'tūs), a *Haeduan* noble.

**crassitūdō**, -inis, *f.* [**crassus**, thick], thickness. III, 13.

**Crassus**, -i, *m.* (1) **Marcus Licinius Crassus** (mār'kūs lī-sīn'i-ūs krās'ūs), *triumvir with Caesar and Pompey*, I, 21; (2) *his son*, **Marcus Licinius Crassus**, one of *Caesar's quaestors*; (3) a second son, **Publius Licinius Crassus**, one of *Caesar's lieutenants*. I, 52; II, 34.

**crātēs**, -is, *f.*, wicker-work; fascine (bundle of sticks for filling trenches, etc.) IV, 17.

**crēber**, -bra, -brum, *adj.*, thick, close, repeated, numerous, frequent, at short intervals. *Comp.* **crēbrior**; *sup.*, **crēberrimus** (App. 40). II, 1.

**crēbrō**, *adv.* [**crēber**, repeated], repeatedly, often.

**crēdō**, -dere, -didī, -ditum, *tr.*, believe, suppose; entrust. II, 33.

**cremō**, 1, *tr.*, burn. I, 4.

**creō**, 1, *tr.*, create; elect, choose, appoint. I, 16.

**crēscō**, **crēscere**, **crēvi**, **crētum**, *intr.*, grow or increase (in size, power, age, etc.), swell. I, 20.

**Crētēs**, -um, *m.*, the *Cretes* (krē'tēz), better, *Cretans, natives of the island of Crete*. II, 7.

**Critognātus**, -i, *m.*, **Critognatus** (krīt'ōg-nā'tūs), a chief of the *Arverni*.

**cruciātus**, -ūs, *m.* [**cruciō**, torture; **crux**, cross], torture, torment. I, 31; II, 31.

**crūdēlītās**, -tātis, *f.* [**crūdēlis**, cruel], cruelty, harshness. I, 32.

**crūdēlīter**, *adv.* [**crūdēlis**, cruel], cruelly. I, 31.

**crūs**, **crūris**, *n.*, leg.

**cubile**, -is, *n.* [**cubō**, lie down], bed, resting-place.

**culmen**, -inis, *n.*, top, ridge. III, 2.

**culpa**, -ae, *f.*, blame, fault, guilt. IV, 27.

**cultus**, -ūs, *m.* [**colō**, cultivate], cultivation; civilization; mode of life; dress. I, 1.

**cum**, *conj.*, when, as, while; after, as soon as; whenever; since, because, although; **cum . . . tum**, not only . . . but also, both . . . and; **cum primum**, as soon as. *See* App. 238-242. I, 1.

**cum**, *prep. with abl.*, with, along with, together with. I, 1.

**cūctātīō**, -ōnis, *f.* [**cūctor**, delay], delaying, delay, hesitation, reluctance. III, 18.

**cūctor**, 1, *intr.*, delay, hesitate, be reluctant. III, 23.

**cūctus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [*for* **coniūctus**, joined together], all together, all. II, 29.

**cuneātim**, *adv.* [**cuneus**, wedge], in wedge-shaped masses.

**cuneus**, -i, *m.*, wedge, wedge-shaped mass.

**cuniculus**, -i, *m.*, burrow; tunnel, mine. III, 21.

**cupidē**, *adv.* [**cupidus**, desirous], desirously, eagerly. I, 15.

**cupidītās**, -tātis, *f.* [**cupidus**, eager], eagerness, desire, greed, avarice. I, 2.

**cupidus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [**cupiō**, desire], eager, desirous, zealous, fond. I, 2.

**cupiō**, **cupere**, **cupivi**, **cupitum**, *tr.* and *intr.*, long or be eager for, desire; wish well to, favor. I, 18.

**cūr**, *interrog. and rel. adv.*, why, for what reason; for which reason, wherefore. I, 40; IV, 16.

**cūra**, -ae, *f.*, care, attention. I, 33.

**cūrō**, 1, *tr.* [**cūra**, care], care for, take care of, provide for; *with gerundive* (App. 285, II, b), have, order. I, 13.

**currus**, -ūs, *m.*, chariot; wagon. IV, 33.

**cursus**, -ūs, *m.* [**currō**, run], running, speed; course, career; passage, voyage. I, 48; II, 23.

**custōdia**, -ae, *f.* [**custōs**, guard], custody, guard (*state of being guarded*); *pl.*, guards, keepers. II, 29.

**custōdiō**, 4, *tr.* [**custōs**, guard], guard. **custōs**, -ōdis, *m.*, guard, watchman, spy. I, 20.

## D.

**D.**, *abbr. for praenomen Decimus* (dēs'-l-mūs). III, 11.

**D.**, *sign for quingenti*, five hundred. III, 22.

**d.** = *diem*. I, 6.

**Dāci**, -ōrum, *m.*, the Daci (dā'si) or Dacians, the inhabitants of Dacia, on the Danube.

**damnō**, 1, *tr.* [damnum, damage], declare guilty, sentence, condemn. I, 4.

**damnum**, -i, *n.*, loss.

**Dānuvius**, -vī, *m.* (Bhi), the Danuvius (dā-nū'vī-ūs), better, the Danube.

**dē**, *prep. with abl., originally denoting motion from; (1) of place, from, down from, away from, out of; (2) of time, just after, about; (3) variously translated in other relations, about, concerning, of, from, in accordance with, for*. I, 1.

**dēbeō**, 2, *tr.* [dē+habeō, have], have, or keep from some one; owe; with *inf.*, ought, must; *pass.*, be due. I, 11.

**dēcēdō**, -cēdere, -cessi, -cessum, *intr.* [cēdō, go], go from or away, depart, withdraw, leave, forsake; die. I, 31.

**decem** (X), *indecl. card. num.*, ten. I, 4.

**dēcernō**, -cernere, -crēvi, -crētum, *tr.* [cernō, separate; decide], decide; vote, decree. II, 35.

**dēcērtō**, 1, *intr.* [cērtō, contend], fight to the end, fight out, struggle fiercely or earnestly, vie, contend. I, 44; II, 10.

**dēcēssus**, -ūs, *m.* [dēcēdō, depart], departure; ebb, fall (of the tide). III, 13.

**Decetia**, -ae, *f.*, (Ce), Decetia (dē-sē'shya), a town of the Haedui, now Decize.

**dēcīdō**, -cidere, -cidi, —, *intr.* [cadō, fall], fall from or off. I, 48.

**decimus**, -a, -um, *ord. num. adj.* [decem, ten], tenth. I, 40; II, 21.

**dēcīptō**, -cipere, -cēpi, -ceptum, *tr.* [capiō, take], entrap; deceive. I, 14.

**dēcīlārō**, 1, *tr.* [clārus, clear], make plain, declare. I, 50.

**dēcīllivis**, -e, *adj.* [clivus, a slope], sloping downward, declining; *n. pl. as noun*, slopes. II, 18.

**dēcīllivās**, -tātis, *f.* [dēcīllivis, sloping downward], descent.

**dēcērtum**, -i, *n.* [dēcernō, decide], decision, decree, order.

**dēcērtus**, *see* dēcernō.

**decumānus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [decimus, tenth], of or belonging to the tenth; decuman; **decumāna porta**, the rear gate (of the camp). II, 24.

**decuriō**, -ōnis, *m.* [decem, ten], decurion, a cavalry officer in charge of a decuria, a squad of ten. I, 23.

**dēcūrrō**, -currere, -cucurri, -cursum, *intr.* [currō, run], run down hurry down. II, 19.

**dēdecus**, -oris, *n.* [decus, honor], dishonor, disgrace. IV, 25.

**dēdi**, *see* dō.

**dēdidi**, *see* dēdō.

**dēditicius**, -a, -um, *adj.* [dēdō, surrender], surrendered; *as noun*, one surrendered, prisoner, subject. I, 27.

**dēditō**, -ōnis, *f.* [dēdō, surrender], surrender, capitulation. I, 27.

**dēditus**, *see* dēdō.

**dēdō**, -dere, -didi, -ditum, *tr.* [dō, give], give up or over, yield, surrender; devote; **sē dēdere**, submit, surrender. II, 15.

**dēdūcō**, -ducere, -dūxi, -ductum, *tr.* [dūcō, lead], lead down or away, withdraw; bring, conduct, lead; influence; launch (ships); give in marriage. I, 44; II, 2.

**dēfatigātō**, -ōnis, *f.* [dēfatigō, weary], fatigue, weariness. III, 19.

**dēfatigō**, 1, *tr.* [fatigō, weary], completely weary, fatigue, tire out, exhaust. I, 40.

**dēfectiō**, -ōnis, *f.* [dēficiō, fall], falling away, desertion, revolt. III, 10.

**dēfendō**, -fendere, -fendi, -fēnsum, *tr.* [fendō, strike], keep or ward off, repel; defend, protect. I, 11.

**dēfēnsiō**, -ōnis, *f.* [dēfendō, defend], a defending, defence. II, 7.

**dēfēnsor**, -ōris, *m.* [dēfendō, defend], defender, protector; (means of) defence. II, 6.

**dēferō**, -ferre, -tuli, -lātum, *tr.* [ferō, carry. App. 81], bring from or down, carry, take; report, disclose; bring be-

fore, refer; bestow, confer; *dēlātus* (sometimes), falling; coming by chance. II, 4.

*dēfessus*, -a, -um, *adj.* [*pf. part. of dēfetiscor*, grow weary], wearied, exhausted, faint. I, 25.

*dēficiō*, -ficere, -fēci, -fectum, *tr. and intr.* [*faciō*, make], fail, desert, fall away, revolt. II, 10.

*dēfigō*, -figere, -fixi, -fixum, *tr.* [*figō*, fix], fix or fasten down, drive in, plant. IV, 17.

*dēfiniō*, 4, *tr.* [*finiō*, limit], mark off; define, determine.

*dēfixus*, *see dēfigō*.

*dēfore*, *fut. inf. of dēsum*.

*dēformis*, -e, *adj.* [*fōrma*, form], misshapen, deformed, unsightly. IV, 2.

*dēfugiō*, -fugere, -fugi, -fugitum, *tr.* [*fugiō*, flee], flee from, shun.

*tēful*, *see dēsum*.

*dēiciō*, -icere, -lēci, -iectum, *tr.* [*iaciō*, throw. App. 7], hurl or cast down; dislodge; kill; foil, disappoint. I, 8.

*dēlectus*, -ūs, *m.* [*dēiciō*, cast down], declivity, slope, descent. II, 8.

*dēinceps*, *adv.*, one after the other, in turn, successively. III, 29.

*dēinde*, *adv.* [*dē+inde*, thence], thereupon, then, next. I, 25.

*dēlātus*, *see dēferō*.

*dēlectō*, 1, *tr.*, delight; *pass.*, delight in, take pleasure in. IV, 2.

*dēlēctus*, *see dēligō*.

*dēlēō*, *dēlēre*, *dēlēvi*, *dēlētum*, *tr.*, rub out, efface, destroy, annihilate. II, 27.

*dēliberō*, 1, *tr.* [*libra*, balance], weigh well; consider, deliberate. I, 7.

*dēlibrō*, 1, *tr.* [*liber*, bark], peel.

*dēlictum*, -i, *n.*, fault, offence.

*dēligō*, 1, *tr.* [*ligō*, bind], bind or tie down, fasten, moor. I, 53; IV, 29.

*dēligō*, -ligere, -lēgi, -lēctum, *tr.* [*legō*, choose], pick out, select, choose. I, 3.

*dēlitescō*, -litescere, -litul, —, *intr.* [*latescō*, *incept. of lateō*, lie hidden], hide one's self, lurk. IV, 32.

*dēmentia*, -ae, *f.* [*mēns*, mind], madness, folly. IV, 13.

*dēmetō*, -metere, -messui, -messum, *tr.* [*metō*, reap], mow, reap. IV, 32.

*dēmigrō*, 1, *intr.* [*migrō*, move, migrate], move from or away, emigrate, remove. IV, 4.

*dēminuō*, -minuere, -minui, -minutum, *tr.* [*minuō*, lessen], lessen, diminish, impair. I, 18.

*dēmittō*, -mittere, -misi, -missum, *tr.* [*mittō*, send], send, thrust or let down; sink; bow; *sē dēmittere*, come or get down, descend; *sē animō dēmittere*, lose courage; *dēmissus*, *pf. part. as adj.*, low. I, 32.

*dēmō*, *dēmere*, *dēmpsi*, *dēemptum*, *tr.* [*dē+emō*, take], take down, remove.

*dēmōnstrō*, 1, *tr.* [*mōnstrō*, show], point out, show, explain, describe; declare, state, say. I, 11.

*dēmoror*, 1, *tr.* [*moror*, delay], hinder, delay. III, 6.

*dēmum*, *adv.*, at length, at last, finally. I, 17.

*dēnegō*, 1, *tr.* [*negō*, deny], refuse. I, 42.

*dēni*, -ae, -a, *distr. num. adj.* [*decem*, ten], ten each, ten at a time, by tens. I, 43.

*dēnique*, *adv.*, and then, thereupon, finally, at last; at least. I, 22.

*dēnsus*, -a, -um, *adj.*, closely set or packed, thick, dense. II, 22.

*dēnūntiō*, 1, *tr.* [*nūntiō*, announce], announce, give or send notice, declare, threaten. I, 36.

*dēpellō*, -pellere, -pulli, -pulsum, *tr.* [*pellō*, drive], drive from or away, ward off. III, 25.

*dēperdō*, -perdere, -perdidī, -perditum, *tr.* [*perdō*, destroy], destroy utterly; forfeit, lose. I, 43; III, 28.

*dēpereō*, -ire, -ii, -itum, *intr.* [*perēō*, perish; *eō*, App. 84], go to ruin, perish; be lost or undone.

*dēponō*, -ponere, -posui, -positum, *tr.* [*ponō*, place], lay down or aside, put away, give up; place, station, deposit. I, 14.

*dēpopulor*, 1, *tr.* [*populor*, lay waste], lay waste, ravage. I, 11.

*dēportō*, 1, *tr.* [*portō*, carry], carry off or away. III, 12.

**dēposcō, -poscere, -poposci, —, tr.** [poscō, demand], demand; call for.

**dēpositus, see dēpōnō.**

**dēprecātor, m.** [dēprecor, plead for], mediator, intercessor. I, 9.

**dēprecor, 1, tr. and intr.** [precor, pray], pray for deliverance from; beg off; implore, plead for. II, 31.

**dēprehendō, -prehendere, -prehendi, -prehensum, tr.** [prehendō (=prēndō), seize], seize, capture, catch.

**dēpugnō, 1, intr.** [pugnō, fight], fight decisively; contend.

**dēpulsus, see dēpellō.**

**dērēctē, adv.** [dērēctus, straight], straight. IV, 17.

**dērēctus, -a, -um, adj.** [dērigō, put in line], straight. IV, 17.

**dērigō, -rigere, -rēxi, -rēctum, tr.** [regō, direct], put in line; arrange, draw up, put in order.

**dērivō, 1, tr.** [rivus, stream], draw off.

**dērogō, 1, tr.** [rogō, ask], take away, withdraw.

**dēscendō, -scendere, -scendi, -scēsum, intr.** [scandō, climb], climb or go down, descend; have recourse (to), resort.

**dēsecō, -secāre, -secui, -sectum, tr.** [secō, cut], cut away or off.

**dēserō, -serere, -serui, -sertum, tr.** [serō, entwine, join], disjoin; abandon, desert, forsake; **dēsertus, pf. part. as adj.**, deserted, solitary. I, 45; II, 25.

**dēsertor, -ōris, m.** [dēserō, desert], deserter.

**dēsiderō, 1, tr.,** feel the lack of, miss, lose; desire, wish, wish for. IV, 2.

**dēsidiā, -ae, f.**, inactivity, idleness.

**dēsīgnō, 1, tr.** [signō, mark], mark out; mean, indicate. I, 18.

**dēsiliō, -siliire, -silui, -sultum, intr.** [salīō, leap], leap from or down, alight, dismount. IV, 2.

**dēsistō, -sistere, -stiti, -stitum, intr.** [sistō, stand], abandon, cease, give up. I, 8.

**dēspectus, see dēspiciō.**

**dēspectus, -ūs, m.** [dēspiciō, look down upon], a looking down, view. III, 14.

**dēspērātiō, -ōnis, f.** [dēspērō, despair], despair, hopelessness.

**dēspērō, 1, intr.** [spērō, hope], despair, be hopeless, lack confidence; **dēspērātus, as part., from transitive meaning**, despaired of; **as adj.**, desperate. I, 18.

**dēspiciō, -spicere, -spexi, -spectum, tr.** [speciō, look], look down; look down upon, scorn, despise. I, 13.

**dēspoliō, 1, tr.** [spoliō, strip], deprive. II, 31.

**dēstinō, 1, tr.,** fasten, secure; catch firmly; appoint, choose. III, 14.

**dēstiti, see dēsistō.**

**dēstituō, -stituere, -stitui, -stitutum, tr.** [statuō, set up], set or place aside, forsake, desert. I, 16.

**dēstringō, -stringere, -strinxī, -strictum, tr.** [stringō, bind tight], unbind, unsheathe, draw (gladium). I, 25.

**dēsum, deesse, dēfui, —, intr.** [sum, be. App. 66], be wanting, be absent from, fail. I, 40; II, 21.

**dēsuper, adv.** [super, above], from above. I, 52.

**dēterior, -ius, comp. adj.** (App. 43), worse, less. I, 36.

**dēterreō, 2, tr.** [terreō, frighten], frighten away or off, hinder, deter, prevent. I, 17.

**dētestor, 1, tr.,** execrate, curse.

**dētineō, -tinēre, -tinui, -tentum, tr.** [teneō, hold], hold off or back; hinder, detain. III, 12.

**dētrahō, -trahere, -trāxi, -tractum, tr.** [trahō, draw], draw off or away, withdraw, take off, remove. I, 42; II, 21.

**dētrectō, 1, tr.,** refuse, avoid.

**dētrimentōsus, -a, -um, adj.** [dētrimentum, harm], hurtful, harmful.

**dētrimentum, -i, n.** (dē+terō, rub or wear out), harm, loss, injury; disaster, defeat. I, 44.

**dētuli, see dēferō.**

**dēturbō, 1, tr.** [turbō, disturb], drive off, dislodge.

**dēūrō, -ūrere, -ussi, -ustum, tr.** [ūrō, burn], burn up, destroy.

**deus**, -i (*nom. pl., dii; dat. pl., dis*), *m.*, god, deity. I, 12.

**deustus**, *see* **deurō**.

**dēvehō**, -vehere, -vexi, -vectum, *tr.* [vehō, carry], carry away, bring.

**dēveniō**, -venire, -veni, -ventum, *intr.* [veniō, come], come down, go, come. II, 21.

**dēvexus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [dēvehō, carry away or down], sloping; *neut. pl. as noun*, slopes, hill-sides.

**dēvincō**, -vincere, -vici, -victum, *tr.* [vincō, conquer], conquer completely, subdue.

**dēvocō**, 1, *tr.* [vocō, call], call off or away; bring.

**dēvoveō**, -vovēre, -vovi, -votum, *tr.* [voveō, vow], vow away, consecrate, devote; **dēvōtus**, *pf. part. as noun*, a sworn follower. III, 22.

**dexter**, -tra, -trum, *adj.*, on the right, right. I, 52; II, 23.

**dextra**, -ae, *f.* [dexter, right; *sc. manus*], the righthand. I, 20.

**di-**, *see* **dis-**.

**Diablintēs**, -um, *m.* (Be), the Diablintes (dī'ā-blīn'tēz). III, 9.

**dicō**, -ōnis, *f.*, dominion, authority, rule, sway. I, 31; II, 34.

**dicō**, 1, *tr.* [dicō, say], proclaim; give over, surrender.

**dicō**, dicere, dixi, dictum, *tr.*, say, tell, speak, express, mention; name, appoint; **causam dicere**, plead a case; **iūs dicere**, administer justice. I, 1.

**dictiō**, -ōnis, *f.* [dicō, say], speaking, pleading. I, 4.

**dictum**, -i, *n.* [*pf. part. of* dicō, say], saying, remark; command; **dictō audiēns**, obedient. I, 39.

**diducō**, -ducere, -duxi, -ductum, *tr.* [ducō, lead], lead or draw apart; separate, divide. III, 23.

**diēs**, -ei, *m. and f.*, day; time; **in diēs**, from day to day; **diem ex diē**, day after day. I, 4.

**dis-**, *see* **dis-**.

**disserō**, disferre, distuli, dilatum, *tr. and intr.* [ferō, carry. App. 81], scatter, spread; put off, defer; be different, differ. I, 1.

**difficilis**, -e, *adj.* [facilis, easy], not easy, hard, troublesome, difficult. I, 6.

**difficultās**, -tātis, *f.* [difficilis, difficult], difficulty, trouble, embarrassment. II, 20.

**difficulter**, *adv.*, with difficulty. *Comp.*, **difficilius**.

**diffidō**, -fidere, -fisis sum, *intr.* [fidō, trust. App. 74], distrust; lack confidence, despair.

**diffuō**, -fuere, -fuxi, —, *intr.* [fluō, flow], flow in different directions, divide. IV, 10. |

**diffundō**, -fundere, -fudi, -fusum, *tr.* [fundō, pour], pour or spread out.

**digitus**, -i, *m.*, finger; *as measure of length*, a finger's breadth, the 16th part of a Roman foot; **digitus pollex**, the thumb. III, 13.

**dignitās**, -tātis, *f.* [dignus, worthy], worthiness, dignity, merit, rank. I, 43; III, 16.

**dignus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, worthy, deserving.

**dii**, *see* **deus**.

**diūdicō**, 1, *tr.* [iūdicō, judge], decide.

**dilēctus**, *see* **diligō**.

**dilēctus**, -ūs, *m.* [diligō, choose], choice; levy.

**diligenter**, *adv.* [diligēns, careful], carefully; with exactness, pains or care. II, 5.

**diligentia**, -ae, *f.* [diligēns, careful], carefulness, heedfulness, painstaking, care. I, 40; III, 20.

**diligō**, -ligere, -lēxi, -lēctum, *tr.* [legō, choose], single or choose out, esteem highly, love.

**dimētiōr**, -mētiri, -mēnsus sum, *tr.* [mētiōr, measure], measure out or off. II, 19.

**dimicātiō**, -ōnis, *f.* [dimicō, fight], fight, contest.

**dimicō**, 1, *intr.* [micō, brandish], fight, struggle, contend. II, 21.

**dimidiūs**, -a, -um, *adj.* [medius, middle], divided in the middle, half; *neut. as noun*, a half.

**dimittō**, -mittere, -misi, -missum, *tr.* [mittō, send], send in different directions, send away or off, dismiss;

break up; let go, let slip, let pass, give up, lose. I, 18.

**dir-**, *see* **dis-**.

**dirimō**, -imere, -ēmī, -ēptum, *tr.* [emō, take], take apart, interrupt, break off. I, 46.

**diripiō**, -ripere, -ripui, -reptum, *tr.* [rapiō, seize], rend or tear asunder; plunder, pillage. II, 17.

**Dis**, **Ditis**, *m.*, **Dis** (**dis**), **Pluto** (plū'tō), *the god of the lower world.*

**dis**, *see* **deus**.

**dis-** (**dī-**, **dif-**, **dir-**), *insep. prefix*, apart, asunder, in different directions; *negative*, = *Eng.* **un-**, **not**.

**discēdō**, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessum, *intr.* [cēdō, go], go away, depart, retire; leave (*especially with ab or ex*). I, 14.

**discēptātor**, -ōris, *m.*, judge, umpire.

**discernō**, -cernere, -crēvi, -crētum, *tr.* [cernō, separate], separate, keep apart.

**discessus**, -ūs, *m.* [**discēdō**, depart], departure, withdrawal, absence. II, 14.

**disciplina**, -ae, *f.* [**discō**, learn], learning; discipline; instruction; system. I, 40; IV, 1.

**disciūdō**, -ciūdere, -ciūsi, -ciūsum, *tr.* [claudō, shut], shut off, hold or keep apart, separate. IV, 17.

**discō**, **discere**, **didici**, —, *tr. and intr.*, learn, be taught. I, 13.

**discrimen**, -minis, *n.*, danger, critical condition.

**discutiō**, -cutere, -cussi, -cussum, *tr.*, clear away.

**disiciō**, -icere, -iēcī, -iectum, *tr.* [iaciō, throw. App. 7], scatter, rout, disperse. I, 25.

**dispār**, -paris, *adj.* [pār, equal], unequal, ill-matched.

**disparō**, 1, *tr.* [parō, prepare], separate.

**dispergō**, -spargere, -spersi, -spersum, *tr.* [spargō, scatter], scatter, disperse. I, 40; III, 28.

**dispōnō**, -pōnere, -posui, -positum, *tr.* [pōnō, place], place apart or about; distribute, arrange, station. I, 8.

**disputātiō**, -ōnis, *f.* [**disputō**, discuss], argument, discussion.

**disputō**, 1, *intr.* [putō, reckon], discuss, debate about.

**dissēnsiō**, -ōnis, *f.* [**dissentiō**, think differently], disagreement, dissension.

**dissentiō**, -sentire, -sēnsi, -sēnsum, *intr.* [sentiō, feel], differ, disagree.

**disserō**, -serere, -sēvi, -situm, *tr.* [serō, sow], sow or set at intervals.

**dissimulō**, 1, *tr.* [simulō, make like], disguise, conceal. IV, 6.

**dissemiō**, 1, *tr.*, spread on all sides, scatter, disperse. II, 24.

**dissuādēō**, -suādēre, -suāsi, -suāsum, *intr.* [suādēō, advise], advise against.

**distineō**, -tinēre, -tinui, -tentum, *tr.* [teneō, hold], hold or keep apart; divide, isolate. II, 5.

**distō**, -stāre, —, —, *intr.* [stō, stand], stand apart; be apart, removed or separated. IV, 17.

**distrahō**, -trahere, -trāxi, -tractum, *tr.* [trahō, drag], pull asunder, remove.

**distribuō**, -tribuere, -tribui, -tributum, *tr.* [tribuō, assign], assign, divide, distribute. III, 10.

**distuli**, *see* **differō**.

**ditissimus**, *sup. of dives*.

**diū**, *adv.*, for a long time, long; *quam diū*, as long as; *comp.*, **diūtius**, longer, too long, any longer; *sup.*, **diutissimō**, for the longest time. I, 14.

**diurnus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [diēs, day], of the day, by day, daily. I, 38.

**diūtius**, -a, -um, *adj.* [diū, long], of long duration, long.

**diuturnitās**, -tātis, *f.* [diuturnus, long], long duration. I, 40; III, 4.

**diuturnus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [diū, long], long. I, 14.

**diversus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [*pf. part. of* **divertō**], turn in different directions], diverse, different; separate, remote. II, 22.

**dives**, **divitis**, wealthy, rich. *Sup.*, **ditissimus**. I, 2.

**Diviciacus**, -i, *m.*, **Diviciacus** (dīv'ī-shī-ā'kūs), (1), a chief of the *Haedui*, friendly to the Romans. I, 3. (2) a chief of the *Suessones*. II, 4.

**Divicō, -ōnis, m.**, Divico (dīv'ī-kō), an *Helvetian chieftain*. I, 13.

**dividō, dividere, divisi, divisum, tr.**, divide, separate; **divisus, pf. part. as adj.**, divided. I, 1.

**divinus, -a, -um, adj.** [divus, divine], of the gods, divine, sacred. II, 31.

**dō, dare, dedi, datum** (App. 85), *tr.*, give, bestow, present, grant, furnish; offer; yield, give up; in *fugam dare*, put to flight; **dare manūs**, yield; **dare negōtium**, with *dat.*, employ, engage, direct. (Some compounds of **dō** are derived from an obsolete verb, **dō**, put.) I, 3.

**doceō, docēre, docui, doctum, tr.**, show, teach, instruct; inform. I, 43; II, 5.

**documentum, -i, n.** [doceō, teach], example; warning.

**doleō, 2, intr.**, feel pain, be distressed or annoyed, grieve. I, 14.

**dolor, -ōris, m.** [doleō, grieve], grief, distress, pain (*physical or mental*), vexation, annoyance. I, 2.

**dolus, -i, m.**, craft, trick, treachery. I, 13.

**domesticus, -a, -um, adj.** [domus, house], belonging to the home, domestic; in or of one's own land. II, 10.

**domicilium, -ii, n.** [domus, house], residence, dwelling, home, domicile. I, 30; II, 29.

**dominor, 1, intr.** [dominus, master], be master, rule. II, 31.

**dominus, -i, m.**, master.

**Domitius, -ti, m.**, Lucius Domitius Ahenobarbus (lū'shyūs dō-mīsh'yūs ā-hēn'ō-bār'būs), *consul* 54 B.C.

**Domnotaurus, see Valerius.**

**domus, -ūs** (App. 29, d), *f.*, house; home; native country. I, 5.

**dōnō, 1, tr.** [dōnum, gift], give, present; endow with. I, 47.

**dōnum, -i, n.** [dō, give], present, gift.

**dersum, -i, n.**, back; ridge.

**dōs, dōtis, f.** [dō, give], a marriage portion, dowry.

**Druidēs, -um, m.**, the Druids, an ancient priestly caste in Gaul and Britain.

**Dūbis, -is, m.** (Cf. g), the (river) Dubis (dū'bis), now the Doubs. I, 38.

**dubitātiō, -ōnis, f.** [dubitō, doubt], doubt, uncertainty; hesitation. I, 14.

**dubitō, 1, intr.** [dubius, doubtful], be uncertain, doubt; hesitate, delay. I, 17.

**dubius, -a, -um, adj.** uncertain, doubtful. I, 3.

**ducenti, -ae, -a, (OO), card. num. adj.** [duo, two+centum, hundred], two hundred. I, 2.

**dūcō, dūcere, dūxi, ductum, tr.**, lead, conduct, guide, draw; bring, fetch; trace, construct, extend; deem, consider, judge; protract, defer. I, 3.

**ductus, -ūs, m.** [dūcō, lead], leading, command.

**dum, conj.**, while, as long as; till, until. I, 7.

**Dumnorix, -igis, m.**, Dumnorix (dūm'nō-rīks), a *Haeduan chieftain*, brother of *Diviciacus*. I, 3.

**duo, duae, duo, (App. 49), card. num. adj.**, two. I, 6.

**duodecim, card. num. adj.** [duo, two+decem, ten], twelve. I, 5.

**duodecimus, -a, -um, ord. num. adj.** [duodecim, twelve], twelfth. II, 23.

**duodēni, -ae, -a, distrib. num. adj.** [duodecim, twelve], twelve each, twelve at a time.

**duodēviginti, card. num. adj.** [duo, two+dē, from+viginti, twenty], eighteen. I, 23.

**duplex, -plicis, adj.** [duo, two+plicō, fold], twofold, double. II, 29.

**duplicō, 1, tr.** [duplex, double], double, increase. IV, 36.

**dūritia, -ae, f.** [dūrus, hard], hardness, hardship.

**dūrō, 1, tr.** [dūrus, hard], make hardy, harden.

**Durocortorum, -i, n.** (Bf), Durocortorum (dū'rō-cōr'tō-rūm), the capital of the *Remi*, now Rheims.

**dūrus, -a, -um, adj.**, hard, rough, difficult, dangerous; severe, inclement. I, 48.

**Dūrus, -i, m.**, Quintus Laberius Durus (kwīn'tus lā-bē'rī-ūs dū'rūs), a *tribune*.

**dux, ducis, m.** [dūcō, lead], leader, guide, commander. I, 21.

## E

**ē** (only before consonants) **ex** (before vowels and some consonants), *prep. with abl., originally denoting motion out of*; (1) *of place*, out of, from, away from; denoting position, in some phrases, on; **hūā ex parte**, on one side; (2) *of time*, from, after, since; **ex itinere**, immediately after the march; (3) *variously translated in other relations*, from, out of, of, because of, in accordance with; **ē regiōne**, opposite. I, 2.

**eā**, *adv.* [=eā viā], by that way, there.

**Eburōnēs**, -um, *m.* (Afg), the Eburones (ēb'ū-rō'nēs). II, 4.

**Ebuovicēs**, -um, *m.* (Bd), the Auleri Eburovices (aw-lēr'sī ēb'ū-rō-vī'sēz). III, 17.

**ēdiscō**, -discere, -didici, —, *tr.* [discō, learn], learn thoroughly, get by heart.

**ēditus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [*pf. part. of* ēdō, give out, raise up], elevated, lofty. II, 8.

**ēdō**, -dere, -didi, -ditum, *tr.* [dō, give], give out; inflict. I, 31.

**ēdoceō**, -docere, -docui, -doctum, *tr.* [doceō, teach], teach thoroughly, inform in detail, explain. III, 18.

**ēducō**, -ducere, -dūxi, -ductum, *tr.* [ducō, lead], lead out or forth; draw (a sword). I, 10.

**effeminō**, 1, *tr.* [ex+fēmina, woman], make effeminate, enervate, enfeeble. I, 1.

**effercio**, -fercire, —, -fertum, *tr.*, fill completely, stop up.

**effero**, *efferre*, *extuli*, *ēlātum*, *tr.* [ex+ferō, carry. App. 81], bring or carry out, carry or take away; raise; spread or publish abroad, make known; elate, puff up. I, 5.

**efficiō**, -ficere, -fēci, -fectum, *tr.* [ex+faciō, make], make or do completely, complete, accomplish, construct; make, cause, bring about, render. I, 38; II, 5.

**effodiō**, -fodere, -fōdi, -fossum, *tr.* [ex+fodiō, dig], dig out.

**effugio**, -fugere, -fūgi, —, *tr. and intr.* [ex+fugio, flee], flee from or away, escape. IV, 35.

**egēns**, -entis, *adj.* [*pres. part. of* egeō, want], in want, needy, destitute.

**egeō**, egēre, egui, —, *intr.*, need, want, lack, be without or destitute.

**egestās**, -tātis. *f.* [egeō, want], poverty.

**ēgi**, *pf. of* agō.

**ego**, mei (App. 51), *first pers. pron.*, I; *pl.*, nōs, we, us, etc. I, 40; II, 9.

**egomet**, *emphatic for* ego, I myself, I for my part.

**ēgredior**, -gredi, -gressus sum, *intr.* [gradior, step], step or go out, come forth, depart; march out, make a sortie; land (from a ship), disembark. I, 27.

**ēgregiō**, *adv.* [ēgregius, excellent], excellently, admirably, remarkably. II, 29.

**ēgregius**, -a, -um, *adj.* [ē+grex, herd], out of the common herd; excellent, superior, eminent, remarkable. I, 19.

**ēgressus**, *see* ēgredior.

**ēgressus**, -ūs, *m.* [ēgredior, step out], a landing, landing place.

**ēiciō**, -icere, -iēci, -iectum, *tr.* [iaciō, throw. App. 7], cast or drive out, expel; cast up; **sē ēicere**, rush out, sal-ly. IV, 7.

**eius modi**, of such a sort or kind, such. III, 3.

**ēlābor**, -lābi, -lāpsus sum, *intr.* [lābor, slip], slip away, escape.

**ēlātus**, *see* effero.

**Elaver**, -eris, *n.* (Ce), the river Elaver (ēl'ā-vēr), now the Allier.

**ēlēctus**, *see* ēligō.

**elephantus**, -i, *m.*, elephant.

**Eleuteti**, -ōrum, *m.* (Dd), the Eleuteti (ē-lū'tē-ti).

**ēliciō**, -ere, -ui, -itum, *tr.*, draw or entice out, lure forth.

**ēligō**, -ligere, -lēgi, -lēctum, *tr.* [legō, choose], choose or pick out, select; *ēlēctus*, *pf. pari. as adj.*, picked (men, etc.). II, 4.

**Elusātēs**, -um, *m.* (Ed), the Elusates (ēl'ū-sā'tēz). III, 27.

**ēmigrō**, 1, *intr.* [migrō, migrate], depart, migrate. I, 31.

**ēmineō**, -ēre, -ui, —, *intr.*, project.

**ēminus**, *adv.* [manus, hand], aloof, at a distance, at long range.

**ēmittō**, -mittere, -misi, -missum, *tr.* [mittō, send], let go, send out or forth, release; hurl, discharge; drop. I, 25.

**emō**, emere, ēmi, ēmptum, *tr.*, take; buy, purchase. I, 16.

**ēnāscor**, -nāsci, -nātus sum, *intr.* [nāscor, be born], be born from; spring up. II, 17.

**enim**, *conj.*, in fact, really; for; **sed enim**, but in fact, however. I, 14.

**ēnūtiō**, 1, *tr.* [nūtiō, announce], report, declare, disclose. I, 4.

**eo**, ire, ii (ivi), itum (App. 84), *intr.*, go, proceed, march, pass. I, 6.

**eo**, *adv.* [old dative of is], thither, there (in sense of thither), to the place (where, etc.), to them (it, him, etc.). I, 25.

**eo**, *abl.* of is.

**eodem**, *adv.* [old dative of idem], to the same place, to the same point (result, end, etc.). I, 4.

**ephippiātus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [ephippium, saddle], using a saddle. IV, 2.

**ephippium**, -pi, *n.*, horse-cloth, riding-pad, saddle. IV, 2.

**epistula**, -ae, *f.*, letter, epistle.

**Eporōdorix**, -igis, *m.*, Eporodoric (ēp'ō-rēd'ō-rīks), the name of two Haeduan leaders.

**epulae**, -ārum, *f.*, feast, banquet.

**eques**, -itis, *m.* [equus, horse], a horseman, a rider; *pl.*, cavalry. Then (as originally serving on horseback), a knight (one of the moneyed class at Rome, next in rank to the senate). Also, a knight (of Gaul, of a corresponding class). I, 15.

**equester**, -tris, -tre, *adj.* [eques, horseman], of or belonging to a horseman, equestrian, of cavalry, cavalry. I, 18.

**equitātus**, -ūs, *m.* [equitō, ride; equus, horse], cavalry, horsemen. I, 15.

**equus**, -i, *m.*, horse. I, 22.

**Eratosthenēs**, -is, *m.*, Eratosthenes (ēr'ā-tōs'thē-nēz), a Greek geographer, born 276 B.C.

**ēreētus**, *see* ērigō.

**ēreptus**, *see* ēripio.

**ergā**, *prep.* with acc., towards.

**ergō**, *adv.*, therefore, then.

**ērigō**, -rigere, -rēxi, -rēctum, *tr.* [re-gō, direct], lift or raise; **ēreētus**, *pf.* part. as *adj.*, standing upright, high. III, 13.

**ēripio**, -ripere, -ripui, -reptum, *tr.* [rapiō, seize], wrest or take away, extort, deprive; rescue, relieve, save. I, 4.

**errō**, 1, *intr.*, wander; err, be mistaken.

**ērupō**, -rumpere, -rūpi, -ruptum, *intr.* [rumpō, break], break forth, sally. III, 5.

**ēruptio**, -ōnis, *f.* [ērupō, break forth], a breaking out, bursting forth, sortie, sally. II, 33.

**essedarius**, -ri, *m.* [essedum, a war chariot], a soldier fighting from a war chariot, charioteer. IV, 24.

**essedum**, -i, *n.*, a two-wheeled war chariot of the Britons. IV, 32.

**Esuvii**, -ōrum, *m.* (Bcd), the Esuvii (ē-sū'vi-i). II, 34.

**et**, *conj.*, and; also, too, even; **et . . . et**, both . . . and. I, 1.

**etiam**, *conj.* and also, also, even, yet. I, 1.

**etsi**, *conj.* [et+si, if], even if, although. I, 46; III, 24.

**ēvadō**, -vādere, -vāsi, -vāsum, *intr.* [vādō, go], escape. III, 19.

**ēvellō**, -vellere, -velli, -vulsum, *tr.* [vellō, pluck], pluck out, pull out. I, 25.

**ēveniō**, -venire, -vēni, -ventum, *intr.* [veniō, come], turn out, result. IV, 25.

**ēventus**, -ūs, *m.* [ēveniō, turn out], outcome, issue, result, consequence. II, 22.

**ēvocō**, 1, *tr.* [vocō, call], call forth or out, summon; **ēvocātus**, *pf.* part. as *noun*, reenlisted veteran. III, 20.

**ēvolō**, 1, *intr.* [volō, fly], fly or rush forth. III, 28.

**ex**, *see* ē.

**exāctus**, *see* exigō.

**exagitō**, 1, *tr.* [agitō, freq. of agō, drive], drive out or away; disturb, harass. II, 29.

**exāminō**, 1, weigh.

**exanimō**, 1, *tr.* [anima, breath], deprive

of breath, render breathless, exhaust; kill. II, 23.

**exārdescō, -ārdescere, -ārsi, -ārsūm, intr.** [ārdescō, *incept. of ardeō*, blaze], take fire; be inflamed or enraged.

**exaudiō, 4, tr.** [audiō, hear], hear (*from a distance*). II, 11.

**excēdō, -cēdere, -cessi, -cessum, intr.** [cēdō, go], go out or away, withdraw, retire. II, 25.

**excellō, -cellere, —, —, intr.,** excel, surpass.

**excelsus, -a, -um, adj.** [excellō, surpass], high.

**exceptō, 1, tr.** [*freg. of excipio*, catch], take hold of, catch.

**excidō, -cidere, -cidi, -cisum, tr.** [caedō, cut], hew away or down.

**excipio, -cipere, -cēpi, -centum, tr. and intr.** [capiō, take]; *tr.*, take up, catch, receive; take up (*in turn*); meet, withstand; relieve (*of soldiers in battle*); *intr.*, follow. I, 52; III, 5.

**excitō, 1, tr.** [citō, rouse], call forth, excite, animate, arouse; erect, construct (*towers*); kindle (*fires*). III, 10.

**excludō, -cludere, -clūsi, -clūsum, tr.** [claudō, shut], shut out, cut off; hinder, prevent.

**excogitō, 1, tr.** [cogitō, think], think out, contrive, devise, invent.

**excruciō, 1, tr.** [cruciō, torture; crux, cross], torture greatly, torment, rack.

**excubitor, -ōris, m.** [excubō, keep guard], watchman, sentinel.

**excubō, -āre, -uī, -itum, intr.** [cubō, lie], lie outside; keep guard.

**exculcō, 1, tr.,** trample, tread down.

**excursiō, -ōnis, f.** [excurrō, run forth], a running out or forth, sally, sortie. II, 30.

**excūsātiō, -ōnis, f.** [excūsō, excuse], excuse, apology.

**excūsō, 1, tr.** [causa, reason], give reason for; excuse. IV, 22.

**exemplum, -i, n.,** example, precedent. I, 8.

**exeō, -ire, -ii, -itum, intr.** [eō, go. App. 84], go from or out, depart from, leave. I, 2.

**exerceō, 2, tr.,** practice, train, exercise. I, 48.

**exercitātiō, -ōnis, f.** [exercitō, *freg. of exerceō*, exercise], exercise, training; practice, experience. I, 39; III, 19.

**exercitātus, -a, -um, adj.** [*pf. part. of exercitō*, train or practice well], well trained, skilled, versed. I, 36; II, 20.

**exercitus, -ūs, m.** [exerceō, train], a trained or disciplined body of men, an army. I, 3.

**exhauriō, -haurire, -hausi, -haustum, tr.** [hauriō, draw], draw out, empty.

**exigō, -igere, -ēgi, -āctum, tr.** [agō, drive], finish, pass. III, 28.

**exiguō, adv.** [exiguus, scanty], meagerly, scarcely.

**exiguitās, -tātis, f.** [exiguus, scant], scantiness, meagerness, shortness, want. II, 21.

**exiguus, -a, -um, adj.,** scanty, short, small, meager, limited. IV, 20.

**eximius, -a, -um, adj.** [eximō, take out], taken from the mass; hence choice, eminent. II, 8.

**existimātiō, -ōnis, f.** [existimō, estimate], judgment, opinion. I, 20.

**existimō, 1, tr.** [aestimō], estimate, reckon, think, consider. I, 6.

**exitus, -ūs, m.** [exeō, go out], a going out, exit, passage; issue, result, end. III, 8.

**expediō, 4, tr.** [pēs, foot], set free; arrange, prepare.

**expeditiō, -ōnis, f.** [expediō, arrange], campaign, enterprise, expedition.

**expeditus, -a, -um, adj.** [*pf. part. of expediō*, set free], unimpeded, free, unobstructed; without baggage; light armed; as noun, a light armed soldier. I, 6.

**expellō, -pellere, -pulli, -pulsum, tr.** [pellō, drive], drive out or forth, expel. II, 4.

**experior, -periri, -pertus sum, tr.,** prove, try, test, experience. I, 31; II, 16.

**expiō, 1, tr.,** atone for, expiate; avenge.

**expleō, -plēre, -plēvi, -plētum, tr.** [pleō, fill], fill out or up; finish, complete.

**explorātor**, -ōris, *m.* [**explorō**, search out], explorer, scout, spy. I, 12.

**explorātus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [*pf. part of explorō*, search out], ascertained; sure, certain. III, 18.

**explorō**, 1, *tr.*, search or find out, investigate, spy out, reconnoiter. II, 4.

**expōnō**, -pōnere, -posui, -positum, *tr.* [pōnō, place], put or set out; set on shore, disembark; draw up; set forth, explain. IV, 23.

**exportō**, 1, *tr.* [portō, carry], carry out or away. IV, 18.

**exposcō**, -poscere, -poposci, —, *tr.* [poscō, demand], entreat, demand.

**exprimō**, -primere, -pressi, -pressum, *tr.* [premō, press], press out, extort, elicit; raise. I, 32.

**expugnātiō**, -ōnis, *f.* [expugnō, take by storm], a taking by assault, storming.

**expugnō**, 1, *tr.* [pugnō, fight], take or carry by storm, capture by assault; overpower, sack. I, 11.

**exquirō**, -quirere, -quisivi, -quisitum, *tr.* [quaerō, search], seek or search out, inquire, investigate. I, 41; III, 3.

**exsequor**, -sequi, -secutus sum, *tr.* [sequor, follow], follow out, enforce. I, 4.

**exserō**, -ere, -ui, -tum, *tr.*, thrust or put out; uncover.

**existō**, -sistere, -stiti, —, *intr.* [sistō, stand], stand or come forth, appear, arise; ensue. III, 15.

**expectō**, 1, *tr.* [spectō, look at], look out for, await, expect; wait to see; anticipate, apprehend. I, 11.

**exspoliō**, 1, *tr.* [spoliō, strip], rob.

**extinguō**, -stinguere, -stinxi, -stinctum, *tr.*, put out, quench; destroy.

**extō**, -stāre, -stiti, —, *intr.* [stō, stand], stand out, extend above.

**extruō**, -struere, -struxi, -structum, *tr.* [struō, build], build or pile up, rear, construct, build. II, 30.

**exsul**, -sulis, *m. and f.*, an exile.

**exterior**, -ius, *adj.* [*comp. of exterus*, App. 44], outer, exterior.

**exterredō**, 2, *tr.* [terredō, frighten],

frighten outright, strike with terror, scare.

**extimescō**, -timescere, -timui, —, *tr.* [timescō, *incept. of timeō*, fear], dread. III, 13.

**extorqueō**, -torquere, -torsī, -tortum, *tr.* [torqueō, twist], wrest or force from, extort.

**extrā**, *adv. and prep. with acc.*, out of, outside of, beyond, without. I, 10.

**extrahō**, -trahere, -trāxi, -tractum, *tr.* [trahō, draw], draw out; waste.

**extrēmus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [*sup. of exterus*, App. 44], outermost, utmost, farthest, extreme; the farthest part of; **extrēmī** (*as noun*), the rear; **ad extrēmum**, at last, at the end; as a last resort. I, 1.

**extrūdō**, -trudere, -trūsi, -trūsum, *tr.* [trūdō, thrust], thrust or shut out. III, 12.

**extuli**, *see efferō*.

**exuō**, -uere, -ui, -ātum, *tr.*, draw out or off, put or strip off, divest, despoil. III, 6.

**extrō**, -trere, -ussi, -ustum, *tr.* [trō, burn], burn up. I, 5.

## F.

**faber**, -bri, *m.*, workman, mechanic; carpenter.

**Fabius**, -bi, *m.* (1), Gaius Fabius (gā'yūs fā'bi-ūs), one of Caesar's lieutenants. (2) Lucius Fabius (lū'shyūs fā'bi-ūs), a centurion of the 8th legion. (3) Quintus Fabius Maximus (kwīn'tūs fā'bi-ūs māk'si-mūs), victor over the Gauls 121 B.C. I, 45.

**facile**, *adv.* [facilis, easy], easily, readily. *Comp.*, **facilius**; *sup.*, **facillimē** (App. 41). I, 2.

**facilis**, -e, *adj.* [faciō, do], easy. I, 6.

**facinus** -noris, *n.* [faciō, do], deed; misdeed, outrage, crime. I, 40; III, 9.

**faciō**, **facere**, **fēci**, **factum**, *tr. and intr.*; *tr.*, make, construct, form, do, execute (*commands, etc.*); give (*opportunity, etc.*); *with ut*, bring about, cause: *intr.*, do *act.* *Pass.*, **fiō**, **feri**, **factus sum** (App. 83), *with passive of above meanings, and, used impersonally*, result, happen, come to pass. I, 2.

**factiō, -ōnis, f.** [factiō, make], party, faction. I, 31.

**factum, -i, n.** [*pf. part. of factiō, half noun, half participle*], act, exploit, deed. III, 14.

**factus, see factiō.**

**facultās, -tātis, f.** [old *adj.*, *facul*=*facilis*, easy], power; opportunity, chance; resources, supply. I, 7.

**fāgus, -i, f.**, beech tree or timber.

**fallō, fallere, fefelli, falsum, tr.**, deceive, cheat, disappoint. II, 10.

**falsus, -a, -um, adj.** [*pf. part. of fallō, deceive*], false.

**falx, falcis, f.**, sickle, pruning-hook; hook (*for pulling down walls*). III, 14.

**fāma, -ae, f.** [fāri, to speak], common talk, rumor, report; reputation, fame.

**fāmēs, -is, f.**, hunger, starvation. I, 28.

**familia, -ae, f.**, household (*including slaves*); retinue (*including all dependents*); family. I, 4.

**familiāris, -e, adj.** [familia, household], personal, private; *as noun*, intimate friend; **rēs**, personal property, estate. I, 18.

**familiāritās, -tātis, f.** [familia, intimate], intimacy.

**fās, n., indecl.**, right, divine right, will of Heaven. I, 50.

**fastigātō, adv.** [fastigātus, sloping], sloping. IV, 17.

**fastigātus, -a, -um, adj.**, sloping. II, 8.

**fastigium, -gii, n.**, the top of a gable; elevation, height; declivity, descent, slope.

**fātum, -i, n.** [fāri, to speak], fate, lot. I, 39.

**favō, favēre, fāvi, fautum, intr.**, favor. I, 18.

**fax, facis, f.**, firebrand, torch.

**fēlicitās, -tātis, f.** [fēlix, happy], happiness, success, good fortune. I, 40.

**fēliciter, adv.** [fēlix, happy], happily, fortunately. IV, 25.

**fēmina, -ae, f.**, female, woman.

**femur, -inis, n.**, the thigh.

**fera, -ae, f.** [*fem. of ferus*, wild], wild animal.

**ferāx, -ācis, adj.** [ferō, bear], productive, fertile. II, 4.

**ferō, adv.**, almost, nearly, about, for the most part. I, 1.

**ferō, ferre, tuli, lātum** (App. 81), *tr. and intr.*; *tr.*, bear, carry, bring; endure, suffer, support, withstand; receive; tell, report; give, render (*aid*); offer, propose (*terms*); **graviter** or **molestē ferre**, be annoyed or angry at; *pass. (sometimes)* rush; *intr. almost= verb to be*. I, 13.

**ferrāmentum, -i, n.** [ferrum, iron], an iron tool or implement.

**ferrāria, -ae, f.** [ferrum, iron], an iron mine.

**ferreus, -a, -um, adj.** [ferrum, iron], of iron, iron. III, 13.

**ferrum, -i, n.**, iron, steel; *anything made of iron*, sword, spear-point. I, 25.

**fertilis, -e, adj.** [ferō, bear], fruitful, fertile, productive.

**fertilitās, -tātis, f.** [fertilis, productive], productivity. II, 4.

**ferus, -a, -um, adj.**, wild, savage, fierce. I, 31; II, 4.

**fervefaciō, -facere, -fēcī, -factum, tr.** [ferveō, be red hot+faciō, make], heat, melt.

**fervēns, -entis, adj.** [*pres. part. of ferveō, be red hot*], heated, glowing, hot.

**fībula, -ae, f.**, clasp; brace, fastening. IV, 17.

**factus, see fingō.**

**fidēlis, -e, adj.** [fidēs, faith], faithful, trustworthy, reliable. IV, 21.

**fidēs, -ei, f.** [fidō, confide], faith, confidence; faithfulness, loyalty, trustworthiness; allegiance, protection, dependence; pledge, assurance; **fidem facere**, convince or give a pledge; **fidem sequi**, surrender. I, 3.

**fidūcia, -ae, f.** [fidō, confide], confidence, trust, reliance.

**figūra, -ae, f.** [figō, form], form, shape, figure. IV, 25.

**filia, -ae, f.**, daughter. I, 3.

**filius, -ii, m.**, son. I, 3.

**figō, fingere, finxi, actum, tr.**, form, imagine, devise, invent. I, 39; IV, 5.

**finiō, 4, tr.** [finis, limit], limit, bound; determine, measure. IV, 16.

**finis, -is, m.**, boundary, limit, border,

end; *pl.*, boundaries; territory, country. I, 1.

**finitimus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [*finis*, limit, border], bordering on, adjoining, neighboring; *pl. as noun*, neighbors. I, 2.

**fio**, **fieri**, **factus sum**, *see* **faciō**.

**firmiter**, *adv.* [**firmus**, strong], firmly. IV, 26.

**firmitūdō**, -inis, *f.* [**firmus**, strong], strength, firmness, solidity. III, 13.

**firmō**, 1, *tr.* [**firmus**, strong], strengthen, fortify.

**firmus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, strong, stable, vigorous, firm. I, 3.

**fistūca**, -ae, *f.*, pipe-driver. IV, 17.

**Flaccus**, *see* **Valerius**.

**flagitō**, 1, *tr.*, demand. I, 16.

**flamma**, -ae, *f.*, fire, blaze.

**flectō**, **flectere**, **flecti**, **flectum**, *tr.*, bend, turn, direct. IV, 33.

**fleō**, **flēre**, **flēvi**, **flētum**, *intr.*, weep, shed tears, lament. I, 20.

**flētus**, -ūs, *m.* [**fleō**, weep], weeping, lamentation. I, 32.

**flō**, 1, *intr.*, blow.

**flōrens**, -entis, *adj.* [**flōreō**, flower], flourishing, prosperous, influential. I, 30; IV, 3.

**flōs**, **flōris**, *m.*, blossom, flower.

**flūctus**, -ūs, *m.* [**fluō**, flow], flood, billow, wave. III, 13.

**flūmen**, -inis, *n.* [**fluō**, flow], river, stream. I, 1.

**fluō**, **fluere**, **fluxi**, —, *intr.*, flow, run. I, 6.

**fodiō**, **fodere**, **fōdi**, **fossum**, *tr.*, dig.

**foedus**, -eris, *n.*, compact, treaty, alliance.

**forem** = **essem**; *see* **sum**.

**fore** = **futurus esse**; *see* **sum**.

**foris**, *adv.*, out of doors, without.

**forma**, -ae, *f.*, form, shape, appearance. III, 14.

**fors**, **fortis**, *f.*, chance; **forte**, *abl. as adv.*, by chance, perchance. II, 21.

**fortis**, -e, *adj.*, strong, valiant, brave. I, 1.

**fortiter**, *adv.* [**fortis**, brave], bravely, stoutly, courageously. II, 11.

**fortitūdō**, -inis, *f.* [**fortis**, brave], bravery, courage. I, 2.

**fortuitō**, *adv.* [**fors**, chance], by chance. **fortūna**, -ae, *f.* [**fors**, chance], fortune, luck, chance, opportunity; lot, condition; good fortune, success; property, estate. I, 11.

**fortūnātus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [**fortūna**, fortune], prosperous, fortunate.

**forum**, -i, *n.*, public square, market place.

**fossa**, -ae, *f.* [*pf. part. fem. of* **fodiō**, dig], trench, ditch. I, 8.

**fovea**, -ae, *f.*, pitfall.

**frangō**, **frangere**, **frēgi**, **frāctum**, *tr.*, break, wreck; crush, discourage. I, 31; IV, 29.

**frāter**, -tris, *m.*, brother. I, 3.

**frāternus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [**frāter**, brother], brotherly, fraternal, of a brother. I, 20.

**fraus**, -dis, *f.*, cheating, deception.

**fremitus**, -ūs, *m.*, a confused noise, uproar, din. II, 24.

**frēquēns**, -entis, *adj.*, in great numbers, in crowds. IV, 11.

**frētus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, relying upon. III, 21.

**frigidus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, cold. IV, 1.

**frigus**, -oris, *n.*, cold weather, cold; *pl.*, **frigora**, cold seasons. I, 16.

**frōns**, **frontis**, *f.*, forehead; front. II, 8.

**fructuōsus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [**fractus**, fruit], fruitful, productive. I, 30.

**fructus**, -ūs, *m.* [**fruor**, enjoy], fruit; profit, reward.

**frūmentārius**, -a, -um, *adj.* [**frūmentum**, grain], of or pertaining to grain; of places, fruitful, productive of grain; **rēs frūmentāria**, supply of grain provisions. I, 10.

**frūmentātiō**, -ōnis, *f.* [**frūmentor**, get grain], getting grain, foraging expedition.

**frūmentor**, 1, *intr.* [**frūmentum**, grain], get grain, forage. IV, 9.

**frūmentum**, -i, *n.*, grain; *pl.*, crops. I, 3.

**fruor**, **frui**, **fructus sum**, *intr.*, enjoy. III, 22.

**frūstrā**, *adv.*, without effect, in vain, to no purpose. III, 4.

**frūx**, -gis, *f.* [**fruor**, enjoy], fruit; *pl.*, crops, produce. I, 28.

**Fufius**, *see* Cita.

**fuga**, -ae, *f.*, flight; in *fugam conicere* or *dare*, put to flight. I, 11.

**fugio**, *fugere*, *fugi*, *fugitum*, *tr.* and *intr.* [*fuga*, flight], *intr.*, flee, run away, escape; *tr.*, shun, avoid. I, 53; II, 11.

**fugitivus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [*fugio*, flee], fleeing; *as noun*, runaway slave. I, 23.

**fugio**, 1, *tr.* [*fuga*, flight], put to flight, rout.

**fumō**, 1, *intr.* [*fūmus*, smoke], smoke.

**fūmus**, -i, *m.*, smoke. II, 7.

**funda**, -ae, *f.*, sling. IV, 25.

**funditor**, -ōris, *m.* [*funda*, sling], slinger. II, 7.

**fundō**, *fundere*, *fudi*, *fūsum*, *tr.*, pour, throw; rout, put to flight. III, 6.

**funēbris**, -e, *adj.* [*fūnus*, funeral], of a funeral; *n. pl. as noun*, funeral rites.

**fungor**, *fungi*, *functus sum*, *intr.*, perform, execute, discharge.

**fūnis**, -is, *m.*, rope, cable. III, 13.

**fūnus**, -eris, *n.*, funeral.

**furor**, -ōris, *m.*, rage, frenzy, madness. I, 40; IV, 3.

**furtum**, -i, *n.*, theft.

**fusilis**, -e, *adj.* [*fundō*, pour], liquid, molten.

**futurus**, *see* sum.

## G.

**Gabali**, -ōrum, *m.* (De), the Gabali (*gāb'ā-lī*).

**Gabinus**, -ni, *m.*, Aulus Gabinus (*aw' lūs gā-bīn'ī-ūs*), consul with Lucius Piso, 58 B.C. I, 6.

**gaesum**, -i, *n.*, a heavy iron javelin (of the Gauls). III, 4.

**Galba**, -ae, *m.*, (1) Galba (*gāl'ba*), a king of the Sueviones. II, 4. (2) Servius Sulpicius Galba (*sēr'vī-ūs sūlpīsh'yūs gāl'ba*), one of Caesar's legates, and said to have been one of his assassins. III, 1.

**galea**, -ae, *f.*, a leather helmet. II, 21.

**Gallia**, -ae, *f.*, Gallia (*gāl'i-ā*), better, Gaul, including either (1) Belgium, Celtica, and Aquitania, or (2) only Celtica. *See map.* I, 1.

**Gallicus**, -a, -um, *adj.* (Gallia, Gaul), pertaining to Gaul or the Gauls, Gallic. I, 22.

**gallina**, -ae, *f.*, hen.

**Gallus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, of Gaul, Gallic; *pl. as noun*, the Gauls, inhabiting Central Gaul, Northern Italy, etc. I, 1.

**Gallus**, -i, *m.*, Marcus Trebius Gallus (*mār'kūs trē'bī-ūs gāl'ūs*), an officer in Caesar's army. III, 7.

**Garumna**, -ae, *m.* (DEcd), the Garumna (*gā-rūm'nā*), or Garonne, a river forming the boundary between Aquitania and Celtic Gaul. I, 1.

**Garumni**, -ōrum, *m.* (Ed), the Garumni (*gā-rūm'nī*). III, 27.

**Gatēs**, -um, *m.* (DEd), the Gates (*gā'tēz*). III, 27.

**gaudeō**, *gaudēre*, *gāvisus sum* (App. 74), *intr.*, rejoice. IV, 13.

**Geidumni**, -ōrum, *m.* (Af), the Geidumni (*jē'dūm'nī* or *jē-dūm'nī*).

**Genava**, -ae, *f.* (Cg), Genava (*jēn'ā-vā*), a city of the Allobroges, now Geneva. I, 6.

**gener**, -eri, *m.*, son-in-law.

**generatim**, *adv.* [genus, tribe], by tribes. I, 51.

**gēns**, *gentis*, *f.*, race; clan, tribe, people. II, 28.

**genus**, -eris, *n.*, descent, origin, race, class, tribe, family; kind, nature. I, 48; III, 14.

**Gergovia**, -ae, *f.* (De), Gergovia (*jēr-gō'vī-ā*), the chief town of the Arverni.

**Germāni**, -ōrum, *m.*, the Germani (*jēr-mā'nī*), better Germans. I, 1.

**Germānia**, -ae, *f.*, Germania (*jēr-mā'nī-ā*), better, Germany, the country east of the Rhine. IV, 4.

**Germānicus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [Germānus, German], of or pertaining to the Germans, German. IV, 16.

**gerō**, *gerere*, *gessi*, *gestum*, *tr.*, bear, carry, wield; (of war) carry on, perform, wage, conduct; *pass.*, be done, go on, occur. I, 1.

**gladius**, -di, *m.*, sword. I, 25.

**glāns**, *glandis*, *f.*, acorn; ball, slug of lead.

**glēba**, -ae, *f.*, clod of earth; lump.

**glōria**, -ae, *f.*, glory, renown, honor, fame, reputation. I, 2.

**glōrior**, 1, *intr.* [glōria, glory], glory, glory in, boast of. I, 14.

**Gobannitiō**, -ōnis, *m.*, Gobannitio (gōb'a-nish'yō), an *Arvernian* chief.

**Gorgobina**, -ae, *f.* (Ce), Gorgobina (gōr-gōb'i-na), a city of the *Boii* after they had settled in the territory of the *Haedui*.

**Graecus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, of or belonging to the Greeks, Greek, Grecian; *pl. as noun*, the Greeks. I, 29.

**Graiocelli**, -ōrum, *m.* (Dg), the Graiocelli (grā-yōs'ē-li). I, 10.

**grandis**, -e, *adj.*, great, large, bulky. I, 43.

**grātia**, -ae, *f.* [grātus, pleasing], favor, good will, gratitude, esteem, influence, popularity; grātias agere, thank; grātiā habēre, to feel grateful; grātiā referre, to return a favor; hanc grātiā referre, to return a favor in this way; grātiā inire, to gain favor; grātia following a gen., for the purpose of, in order to. I, 9.

**grātulātiō**, -ōnis, *f.* [grātulor, express joy], expression of joy, congratulation, rejoicing. I, 53.

**grātulor**, 1, *intr.* [grātus, pleasing], express joy, congratulate, thank. I, 30.

**grātus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, pleasing, agreeable, acceptable. I, 44.

**grāvis**, -e, *adj.*, heavy, oppressive, hard, severe, serious; advanced (in years). I, 20.

**gravitās**, -tātis, *f.* [gravis, heavy], heaviness, weight; power. IV, 3.

**graviter**, *adv.* [gravis, heavy], heavily, with great weight, with force; severely, seriously; graviter ferre, take to heart, be annoyed or vexed (at); graviter premere, press hard. I, 14.

**gravor**, 1, *intr.* [gravis, heavy], be unwilling. I, 35.

**Grudii**, -ōrum, *m.* (Af), the Grudii (gru'di-i).

**gubernātor**, -ōris, *m.*, steersman, pilot. III, 9.

**gustō**, 1, *tr.*, taste, eat.

## H.

**habēō**, 2, *tr.*, have, hold, possess; think, consider, regard; deliver (with orātiōnem); in animō habēre, intend; ratiōnem habēre, have regard for; take care or see that (followed by an *ut* clause); cōsiliū habēre, form a plan; in numerō hostiū habēre, consider as enemies; aliter sē habēre, be otherwise or different; for habēre with *ṡf. pass. part.*, e.g. vectigalia redēpta habēre, see App. 236, b. I, 2.

**Haeduus**, -a, -um, *adj.* (Cef), of the Haedui (hēd'ū-i), Haeduan; *as noun*, a Haeduan; *pl.* the Haedui, possibly Haeduan, one of the most powerful of the *Gaullic* tribes. I, 3.

**haesitō**, 1, *intr.* [freq. of haereō, stick], stick or cling fast, remain fixed.

**hāmus**, -i, *m.*, hook, barb.

**harpagō**, -ōnis, *m.*, grappling hook.

**Harudēs**, -um, *m.* (Ch), the Harudes (hā-ru'dēz), a *German* tribe. I, 31.

**haud**, *adv.*, not, by no means, not at all.

**Helvēticus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [Helvētiūs], of the Helvetii, Helvetian.

**Helvētiūs**, -a, -um, *adj.* (Cgh), of the Helvetii (hēl-vē'shyi), Helvetian; *as noun*, one of the Helvetii, an Helvetian; *pl.* the Helvetii, possibly Helvetians. I, 1.

**Helvii**, -ōrum, *m.* (Df), the Helvii (hēl-vi-i).

**Hercynia**, -ae, *f.* (Bhi), Hercynia (hēr-sin'i-a), the *Hercynian* forest.

**hērēditās**, -tātis, *f.* [hērēs, heir], inheritance.

**hiberna**, -ōrum, *n.* [sc. castra, camp], winter camp, winter quarters. I, 10.

**Hibernia**, -ae, *f.*, Hibernia (hī-bēr'ni-a), better, Ireland.

**hic**, haec, hoc, *dem. pron.* (App. 54), used for what is near in space, time or thought, with more emphasis than is; this, this man, woman or thing; he, she, it; *abl. sing. hōc*, on this account; in this respect; the (with comparatives); hic . . . ille, the latter . . . the former. See App. 170, a. I, 1.

**hic**, *adv.*, here, in this place; (of a place just mentioned), there, in that place;

(*of an incident just mentioned*), then, at this time. IV, 19.

**hiemō**, *i*, *intr.* [hiems, winter], pass the winter, winter. I, 10.

**hiems**, *-mis*, *f.*, winter time, winter. III, 7.

**hinc**, *adv.*, from that point or place, hence.

**Hispania**, *-ae*, *f.* (Eabcd), Hispania (hispā'ni-a), better, Spain. I, 1.

**Hispanus**, *-a*, *-um*, *adj.*, Spanish.

**homō**, *-inis*, *m.*, human being, man, as distinguished from the lower animals; *in pl.*, mankind, humanity, men. I, 2.

**honestus**, *-a*, *-um*, *adj.* [honōs, honor], honorable, worthy, distinguished, eminent. I, 53.

**honorificus**, *-a*, *-um*, *adj.* [honōs, honor+faciō, make], conferring honor. I, 43.

**honōs**, *-ōris*, *m.*, honor, regard, glory, distinction; honorable position, office. I, 18.

**hōra**, *-ae*, *f.*, hour. *The Roman hour was the twelfth part of the day or night, (reckoning between sunrise and sunset), and hence varied according to the season.* I, 26.

**horreō**, *-ēre*, *-ui*, *—*, *tr.*, shudder at, dread. I, 32.

**horribilis**, *-e*, *adj.* [horreō, dread], dreadful, horrible, frightful, hideous.

**hortor**, *i*, *tr.*, exhort, encourage, incite, urge strongly. I, 19.

**hospes**, *-itis*, *m., f.*, host, entertainer; guest, friend; stranger. I, 53.

**hospitium**, *-ii*, *n.* [hospes, host or guest], the relation of host and guest; friendship, hospitality. I, 31.

**hostis**, *-is*, *m., f.*, (*public*) enemy or foe in distinction from inimicus, a personal enemy; *pl.*, the enemy. I, 11.

**hūc**, *adv.* [old form for hōc from hic], to this place, hither, here; against these, to these. I, 38.

**hūmānitās**, *-tātis*, *f.* [hūmānus, human], humanity, refinement, culture. I, 1.

**hūmānus**, *-a*, *-um*, *adj.* [homō, man], natural to man, human; civilized, cultured, refined, cultivated. IV, 3.

**humilis**, *-e*, *adj.* [humus, the ground],

on the ground; low, humble, abject, weak. IV, 3.

**humilitās**, *-tātis*, *f.* [humilis, low], humility, lowness; weakness.

## I.

**I**, sign for *anus*, one.

**iaceō**, **iacerē**, **iacul**, *—*, *intr.*, lie; lie slain. II, 27.

**iaciō**, **iacere**, **iēci**, **iactum**, *tr.*, throw, cast, hurl; (*of an agger*), throw up, construct. II, 6.

**iactō**, *i*, *tr.* [*freq.* of iaciō, throw], throw or hurl repeatedly, toss about; talk about, discuss. I, 18.

**iactūra**, *-ae*, *f.* [iaciō, throw], loss, sacrifice.

**iaculum**, *-i*, *n.* [iaciō, throw], javelin, dart.

**iam**, *adv.*, now, at this time; already, by this time, at last; really, indeed, even; **neque iam** or **iam nōn**, no longer; **ubi iam**, as soon as. I, 5.

**ibi**, *adv.*, there, in that place. I, 10.

**iccius**, *-ci*, *m.*, Iccius (ik'shyūs), a chief of the Remi. II, 3.

**ictus**, *-ūs*, *m.*, stroke, blow. I, 25.

**id.**, *abbr.* for **idus**.

**idcirco**, *adv.*, therefore.

**idem**, **eadem**, **idem** (App. 58), *dem. pron.* [is, this, that], the same; this very; **idem atque**, the same as. I, 3.

**identidem**, *adv.* [idem, the same], repeatedly. II, 19.

**idōneus**, *-a*, *-um*, *adj.*, fit, suitable, adapted. I, 49; II, 8.

**idūs**, *-uum*, *f., pl.*, the Ides: *the 15th of March, May, July and October, and the 13th of other months.* I, 7.

**ignis**, *-is*, *m.*, fire. I, 4.

**ignōbilis**, *-e*, *adj.* [in-+(g)nōbilis, well known], ignoble, unknown.

**ignōminia**, *-ae*, *f.*, disgrace, dishonor.

**ignōrō**, *i*, *tr.* [ignārus, not knowing], not know, be ignorant of; fail to observe, overlook. I, 27.

**ignōscō**, **-nōscere**, **-nōvi**, **-nōtum**, *intr.* [in-+(g)nōscēns, knowing];

**nōscō**, forgive, pardon. I, 45; IV, 27.

**ignōtus**, *-a*, *-um*, *adj.* [in-+(g)nōtus, known; nōscō, know], unknown, unfamiliar. IV, 24.

**illātus**, *see* **inferō**.

**ille**, *illa*, *illud*, *gen.* **illius**, *dat.* **illi** (App. 56), *dem. pron.* (of what is remote in time, place, thought, etc., cf. **hic**), that, that man, woman, or thing; he, she, it; **hic**. . . **ille**, the latter . . . the former, *see* App. 170, a. I, 3.

**ille**, *adv.* [**ille**, that], in that place, there. I, 18.

**illigō**, 1, *tr.* [**ligō**, bind], attach, hold or bind together. IV, 17.

**illō**, *adv.* [*old dat. of ille*], thither, to that place, there (=thither). IV, 11.

**illūstris**, -e, *adj.*, distinguished, illustrious.

**Illyricum**, -i, *n.*, Illyricum (I-Ir/I-kūm), Illyria, lying northeast of the Adriatic, forming a part of Caesar's province. II, 36.

**imbēcillitās**, -tātis, *f.*, weakness.

**imber**, -bris, *m.*, a rainstorm, rain. III, 29.

**imitor**, 1, *tr.*, imitate, copy after.

**immānis**, -e, *adj.*, huge, immense. IV, 1.

**immineō**, -minēre, —, —, *intr.*, project, hang over; threaten, menace.

**immittō**, -mittere, -misi, -missum, *tr.* [**in**+mittō, send], send or let into, insert; send against, direct towards or against; **trabibus immissis**, beams being placed between. IV, 17.

**immolō**, 1, *tr.*, sacrifice.

**immortālis**, -e, *adj.* [**in**+mortālis, mortal], not mortal, immortal. I, 12.

**immūnis**, -e, *adj.* [**in**+mūnus, burden], unburdened, by taxes, requirements of service, etc.

**imparātus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [**in**+parātus, prepared; parō, prepare], unprepared, not ready.

**impedimentum**, -i, *n.* [**impediō**, hinder], hindrance, obstacle, impediment; *pl.*, baggage, luggage (of an army), baggage-train (including the draught animals). I, 24.

**impediō**, 4, *tr.* [**in**+pēs, foot], entangle the feet, hamper, obstruct, hinder, impede, delay.

**impeditus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [*pf. part. of impediō*, hinder], hindered, burdened, impeded, delayed; hindered or bur-

dened by baggage; occupied or engaged in; at a disadvantage; of places, difficult of passage. I, 12.

**impellō**, -pellere, -pull, -pulsum, *tr.* [**in**+pellō, drive], drive or urge on, incite, instigate, impel. I, 40; II, 14.

**impendeō**, -pendere, —, —, *intr.* [**in**+pendeō, hang], overhang, impend. I, 6.

**impēnsus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, expensive; with pretium, great. IV, 2.

**imperātor**, -ōris, *m.* [**imperō**, command], commander-in-chief, general. I, 40; II, 25.

**imperātum**, -i, *n.* [**imperō**, command], command, order. II, 3.

**imperītus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [**in**+perītus, experienced], inexperienced, unskilled, ignorant. I, 40; IV, 22.

**imperium**, -rī, *n.* [**imperō**, command], command, order; authority, sway, supreme power, dominion, sovereignty; supreme military command, highest official power. I, 2.

**imperō**, 1, *tr. and intr.* [**in**+parō, procure], demand from, enjoin or levy upon; command, order, instruct, rule. I, 7.

**impetrō**, 1, *tr.* [**in**+patrō, accomplish], obtain (by request, entreaty, exertion), accomplish, succeed in obtaining (one's request); **impetrāre ā (ab)**, gain permission from, persuade. I, 9.

**impetus**, -ūs, *m.*, attack, onset, charge; impetuosity, force, vehemence. I, 22.

**impius**, -a, -um, *adj.* [**in**+pius, pious], wicked.

**implicō**, 1, *tr.* [**in**+plicō, fold], interlace, interweave.

**implōrō**, 1, *tr.* [**in**+plōrō, call out], beseech, entreat, implore. I, 31.

**impōnō**, -pōnere, -posui, -positum, *tr.* [**in**+pōnō, place], place upon, set on, put or impose on; mount. I, 42.

**importō**, 1, *tr.* [**in**+portō, carry], carry or bring in, import. I, 1.

**improbus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [**in**+probus, good], unprincipled. I, 17.

**imprōvisō**, *adv.* [**imprōvisus**, unforeseen], unexpectedly, without warning. I, 13.

**imprōvisus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [**in**+prōvi-

- gus**, foreseen; **prōvideō**, unforeseen, unexpected; **dē imprōvisō**, unexpectedly, suddenly. II, 3.
- imprūdēns, -entis, adj.** [**in**-+**prūdēns**, prudent], imprudent, off one's guard, unwary. III, 29.
- imprūdēntia, -ae, f.** [**imprūdēns**, imprudent], imprudence, want of foresight or forethought, ignorance, indiscretion. IV, 27.
- impūbēs, -eris, adj.** [**in**-+**pūbēs**, mature], immature; unmarried, chaste.
- impugnō, 1, tr.** [**in**-+**pugnō**, fight], fight against, attack, assail. I, 44; III, 26.
- impulsus, see impellō.**
- impulsus, -ūs, m.** [**impellō**, impel], impulse, instigation.
- impūne, adv.** [**in**-+**poena**, punishment], without punishment. I, 14.
- impūnitās, -tātis, f.** [**in**-+**poena**, punishment], impunity, freedom from punishment. I, 14.
- imus, sup. of inferus.**
- in-, negative prefix.**
- in, prep. with acc. and abl.** *With acc.* (1) of motion, from one place into or towards another place, into, to; in, among; towards, for, against; at; upon; (2) of time, till, into; for; on, at; (3) other uses, in, in respect to, for, under, over, on; **in diēs**, from day to day; **in fugam conicere**, put to flight; **in Caesarem incidere**, meet with Caesar; **summum in cruciātum venire**, be severely punished. *With abl.* (1) of rest or motion within a place, in, among, over, within, throughout; on, upon; (2) of time, in, during, in the course of; on; (3) other uses, in, in the case of; in consequence of, in view of; on, upon; **in Ararī**, over the Arar; **in eō**, in his case; **in ancoris**, at anchor; **in opere esse**, be engaged in the work. I, 1.
- inānis, -e, adj.**, empty, vain, idle.
- incautō, adv.** [**incautus**, incautious], incautiously, unwarily.
- incautus, -a, -um, adj.** [**in**-+**cautus**, cautious; **caveō**, be cautious], incautious, unwary.
- incendium, -di, n.** [**incendō**, burn], fire, burning, conflagration.
- incendō, -cendere, -cendi, -cēsum, tr.** [*cf.* **candēō**, shine], set fire to, fire, burn; inflame, excite. I, 5.
- incertus, -a, -um, adj.** [**in**-+**certus**, decided], undecided, uncertain, untrustworthy; indefinite, vague; disordered. IV, 5.
- incidō, -cidere, -cidi, —, intr.** [**ca-dō**, fall], fall into or upon; fall in with, meet; happen, arise. I, 53; II, 14.
- incidō, -cidere, -cidi, -cīsum, tr.** [**cae-dō**, cut], cut into. II, 17.
- incipiō, -cipere, -cēpi, -ceptum, tr.** [**capio**, take], undertake; begin, commence. II, 2.
- incitō, 1, tr.** [**citō**, put in motion], set in motion; incite, arouse, urge on, stimulate; exasperate; **curā incitātō**, at full speed. I, 4.
- incognitus, -a, -um, adj.** [**in**-+**cognitus**, known; **cognoscō**, learn], unknown. IV, 20.
- incolō, -colere, -colui, —, tr. and intr.** [**colō**, cultivate], inhabit, dwell in; live. I, 1.
- incolumis, -e, adj.**, unhurt, uninjured, safe and sound, unimpaired. I, 53; III, 6.
- incommodō, adv.** [**incommodus**, inconvenient], inconveniently, unseasonably.
- incommodum, -i, n.** [**incommodus**, inconvenient], inconvenience, disadvantage, trouble; disaster, defeat, loss, injury. I, 13.
- incrēdibilis, -e, adj.** [**in**-+**crēdibilis**, credible], incredible, unlikely; extraordinary. I, 12.
- increpitō, 1, tr.** [*freq.* of **increpō**, chide], chide, blame; make sport of, taunt. II, 15.
- incumbō, -cumbere, -cubui, -cubitum, intr.** [*cf.* **cubō**, lie], recline upon; devote one's self to.
- incursiō, -ōnis, f.** [**incurrō**, rush into or upon], invasion, onset, attack.
- incursum, -ūs, m.** [**incurrō**, rush into or upon], attack. II, 20.
- incūsō, 1, tr.** [**causa**, cause or case], bring a case or charge against; censure, upbraid, blame. I, 40; II, 15.

**inde**, *adv.*, from that place, thence; then, thereupon. I, 10.

**indiciū**, -ci, *n.* [indicō, disclose], disclosure, information; *per indicium*, through informers. 4.

**indicō**, -dicere, -dixi, -dictum, *tr.* [dicō, say], say publicly, proclaim, appoint, call. I, 30.

**indictus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [in-+dictus, *pf. part. of* dicō, say], unsaid; *causā indictā*, without a trial.

**indignē**, *adv.* [indignus, unworthy], unworthily, dishonorably.

**indignitās**, -tātis, *f.* [indignus, unworthy], unworthiness; outrage, disgrace. II, 14.

**indignor**, 1, *intr.* [indignus, unworthy], deem unworthy; be indignant.

**indignus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [in-+dignus, worthy], unworthy, disgraceful.

**indiligēns**, -entis, *adj.* [in-+diligēns, careful], not careful; negligent, lax.

**indiligenter**, *adv.* [indiligēns, careless], carelessly. II, 33.

**indiligentia**, -ae, *f.* [indiligēns, careless], negligence.

**inducō**, -ducere, -duxi, -ductum, *tr.* [ducō, lead], lead or draw on; induce, influence, instigate; cover. I, 2.

**indulgentia**, -ae, *f.* [indulgeō, indulge], forbearance, clemency.

**indulgeō**, -dulgēre, -dulsī, —, *intr.*, be indulgent to, favor. I, 40.

**induō**, -duere, -duli, -dūtum, *tr.*, put on; *sē induere*, be impaled or pierced. II, 21.

**industriē**, *adv.* [industrius, diligent], diligently.

**indutiāe**, -ārum, *f.*, truce. IV, 12.

**Indutiomārus**, -ī, *m.*, Indutiomarus (in-dū'shyō-mā'rūs), a chief of the Treveri.

**ineō**, -ire, -ii, -itum, *tr.* [eō, go. App. 84], go into; enter upon, begin; *inire cōsiliū*, form; *inire ratiōnem*, make an estimate, decide; *inire grātiā*, gain; *inire numerum*, enumerate. II, 2.

**inermis**, -e, *adj.* [in-+arma, arms], without arms or weapons, unarmed. I, 40; II, 27.

**iners**, -ertis, *adj.* [in-+ars, skill], with-

out skill; unmanly, cowardly. IV, 2.

**infāmis**, -ae, *f.* [in-+fāma, renown], dishonor, ill repute.

**infāns**, -antis, *adj.* [in-+fāns, speaking], not speaking; *as noun*, infant.

**infectus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [in-+factus, done; faciō, do], not done, unaccomplished, unfinished.

**Inferior**, -ius, *comp. of* inferus.

**inferō**, **inferre**, **intuli**, **illātum**, *tr.* [ferō, bear], bear into, import, inflict, cause, produce; cast into; **in equum inferre**, mount on a horse; *causā illātā*, making an excuse; **signa inferre**, advance the standards, attack. I, 2.

**inferus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, low, below; *comp.*, inferior, lower; inferior; **ab inferiōre parte**, below, down stream; *sup.*, **inimū** or **imū**, lowest, last, *with collis*, the base of; **ad inimum**, **ab inīmō**, at the bottom. I, 1.

**infestus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, hostile; **infestis signis**, with standards in battle array.

**inficiō**, -ficere, -feci, -fectum, *tr.* [faciō, make], stain.

**infidēlis**, -e, *adj.* [in-+fidēlis, faithful], faithless, untrustworthy.

**infigō**, -figere, -fixi, -fixum [figō, fix], *tr.*, fasten in.

**Inimus**, *sup. of* inferus.

**infinītus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [in-+finitus, ended; finis, limit], endless, boundless, vast, countless.

**infirmiās**, -tātis, *f.* [infirmus, not strong], weakness; fickleness, inconsistency. IV, 5.

**infirmus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [in-+firmus, strong], not strong, weak, feeble. III, 24.

**inflectō**, -flectere, -flexi, -flexum, *tr.* [flectō, bend], bend down; *with reflex.*, become bent. I, 25.

**influxō**, -fluere, -fluxi, —, *intr.* [fluxō, flow], flow into, empty into. I, 8.

**infodiō**, -fodere, -fodi, -fossū, *tr.* [fodiō, dig], dig or drive into.

**infrā**, *adv.* [inferus, below], below; *prep. with acc.*, below, smaller than. IV, 36.

**ingēns, -entis, adj.**, enormous, huge, vast, large. I, 39; IV, 10.

**ingrātus, -a, -um, adj.** [in-+grātus, pleasing], displeasing, disagreeable.

**ingredior, -gredi, -gressus sum, intr.** [gradior, go], go or come into, enter. II, 4.

**iniciō, -icere, -lēci, -lectum, tr.** [iaciō, hurl. App. 7], throw into or upon; put or place on; inspire, infuse. I, 46; IV, 17.

**inimicitia, -ae, f.** [inimicus, unfriendly], enmity.

**inimicus, -a, -um, adj.** [in-+amicus, friendly], unfriendly, hostile; *as noun*, an enemy (*personal*), rival, to be distinguished from *hostis*, a public enemy. I, 7.

**iniquitās, -tātis, f.** [iniquus, unequal], inequality, unfairness; disadvantage. II, 22.

**iniquus, -a, -um, adj.** [in-+aequus, even, just], uneven; unjust, unfair; unfavorable, disadvantageous. I, 44; II, 10.

**initium, -ti, n.** [ineō, go into], beginning, commencement, origin; edge, of a country, borders. I, 1.

**inungō, -iungere, -iūxi, -iūctum, tr.** [iungō, join], join to; impose.

**iniūria, -ae, f.** [in-+iūs, right], wrong, injustice; outrage, injury, harm, violence. I, 7.

**iniussū, abl. of iniussus, -ūs, m.** [iubeō, order], without command or order. I, 19.

**innāscor, -nāsci, -nātus sum, intr.** [nāscor, be born], be born in, be engendered; **innātus, pf. part. as adj.**, inborn, natural.

**innitor, -niti, -nixus sum, intr.** [nitō, rest on], lean upon. II, 27.

**innocēns, -entis, adj.** [in-+nocēns, injurious], not injurious; innocent.

**innocentia, -ae, f.** [innocēns, innocent], integrity. I, 40.

**inopia, -ae, f.** [inops, needy], need, want, poverty, lack; want of provisions, hunger. I, 27.

**inopināns, -antis, adj.** [in-+opināns, expecting], not expecting, not suspecting, unawares, off one's guard. I, 12.

**inquam, -is, -it, def. verb. tr., used only with direct quotations and following one or more words of the quotation, say.** IV, 25.

**insciēns, -entis, adj.** [in-+sciēns, knowing], not knowing, unaware, ignorant. I, 19.

**inscientia, -ae, f.** [insciēns, ignorant], ignorance. III, 9.

**inscius, -a, -um, adj.** [sciō, know], not knowing, ignorant, not aware. IV, 4.

**insequor, -sequi, -secūtus sum, tr. and intr.** [sequor, follow], follow up or after, follow close upon, pursue. I, 15.

**inserō, -serere, -serui, -sertum, tr.**, insert, thrust in. III, 14.

**insidiae, -ārum, f. pl.** [sedeō, sit], a sitting or lying in wait; ambush, ambuscade; treachery; artifice, crafty device. I, 13.

**insidior, i, intr.** [insidiae, ambush], lie in ambush.

**insignis, -e, adj.** [signō, mark], marked, remarkable; *n. as noun*, mark, sign; ornament, trapping. I, 12.

**insiliō, -sillire, -siliui, -sultum, tr.** [saliō, leap], leap upon. I, 52.

**insimulō, i, tr., charge, blame, accuse.**

**insinuō, i, tr.** [sinuō, wind], wind into; make one's way into, penetrate. IV, 33.

**insistō, -sistere, -stiti, —, tr. and intr.** [sistō, stand], stand upon; stand firm, take a stand; press on, pursue; with *rationem*, adopt, use. II, 27.

**insolenter, adv.** [insolēns, unwonted], unusually; arrogantly, insolently. I, 14.

**inspectō, i, tr.** [spectō, look], look at, view.

**instabilis, -e, adj.** [in-+stabilis, firm], not firm, unsteady. IV, 23.

**instar, n., indecl.**, likeness; with *gen.*, like. II, 17.

**instigō, i, tr., urge on, incite.**

**instituō, -stituire, -stitui, -stitūtum, tr. and intr.** [statuō, set up], set up or put in order, draw up; train, educate; procure, prepare; build, construct; begin, determine, decide upon, adopt; **institūtus, pf. part. as adj.**,

usual, customary; finished, *in addition to definitions above.* I, 14.

**Instituĉum**, -i, *n.* [Instituĉo, set up, establish], a fixed course or principle; habit, institution, custom. I, 1.

**Instĉo**, -stĉre, -stĉti, -stĉtum, *intr.* [stĉo, stand], stand upon or near, be at hand, press on; threaten. I, 16.

**Instrĉmentum**, -i, *n.* [Instruĉo, build], tool; apparatus, equipment.

**Instruĉo**, -struere, -struĉi, -struĉtum, *tr.* [struĉo, build], build upon, build, construct; form, draw up *in battle array*; equip, furnish. I, 22.

**Insuĉfactus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [suĉscĉo, become accustomed, faciĉo, make], accustomed, trained. IV, 24.

**Insuĉtus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [in-+suĉtus, accustomed], unaccustomed, not used to.

**insula**, -ae, *f.*, island. III, 9.

**Insuper**, *adv.* [super, above], above, on the top, from above. IV, 17.

**Integer**, -gra, -grum, *adj.*, untouched, intact, whole, unimpaired; fresh; **rĉ integrĉ**, before anything was done. III, 4.

**Integĉo**, -tegere, -tĉxi, -tĉctum, *tr.* [tegĉo, cover], cover over; protect.

**Intellegĉo**, -legere, -lĉxi, -lĉctum, *tr.* [inter+legĉo, choose, select], select or distinguish between; understand; know; see, perceive, realize; find out, learn. I, 10.

**Intendĉo**, -tendere, -tendi, -tentum, *tr.* [tendĉo, stretch], stretch out or to; **intentus**, *pf. part.*, intent on, absorbed in, attentive to. III, 22.

**Inter**, *prep.* with *acc.* (sometimes following its noun), (1) of place, among, between; (2) of time, during, within, for; (3) in other relations, among, between, in; in among or between; to; over; along with; (4) with *reflex. pron.*, of reciprocal action, (App. 166), with, to, or from each other or one another, *as*, **inter sĉ differunt**, differ from one another; each other, one another, *as*, **coheret. inter sĉ**, encouraging one another. I, 1.

**Intercedĉo**, -cĉdere, -cessi, -cessum, *intr.* [cĉdĉo, go], go or come between,

lie between, intervene, be between; pass. I, 7.

**Interceptĉo**, -cipere, -cĉpi, -ceptum, *tr.* [capĉo, take], take or catch between (*one point and another*); interrupt; intercept, cut off. II, 27.

**Intercludĉo**, -cludere, -clasi, -clausum, *tr.* [claudĉo, shut], shut or cut off, separate, hinder; *with itinera*, block. I, 23.

**Interdicĉo**, -dicere, -dixi, -dictum, *intr.* [dicĉo, say], prohibit, exclude, forbid, interdict; **aquĉ atque igni interdiceret**, forbid the use of fire and water, banish. I, 46.

**Interdiĉ**, *adv.* [diĉs, day], during the day, by day. I, 8.

**Interdum**, *adv.* [dum, while], in the meantime; at times, sometimes. I, 14.

**Interea**, *adv.*, in the meantime, meanwhile. I, 8.

**Intereĉo**, -ire, -ii, -itum, *intr.* [eĉo, go. App. 84], perish, die.

**Interesse**, *see intersum.*

**Interficiĉo**, -ficere, -feci, -fectum, *tr.* [faciĉo, make], make away with, kill, destroy. I, 12.

**Intericiĉo**, -icere, -iĉci, -iectum, *tr.* [iaciĉo, hurl. App. 7], throw or hurl between; put or place between; **interiectus**, *pf. part. as adj.*, lying between, intervening, interspersed; **mediocri interiectĉ spatiĉo**, not far away. II, 17.

**Interim**, *adv.*, meanwhile, in the mean time. I, 16.

**Interior**, -ius, *adj.* (App. 43), interior, inner; *as noun*, **interiĉrĉs**, inhabitants of the interior; occupants of a town.

**Interitus**, -us, *m.* [intereĉo, die], destruction, death.

**Intermittĉo**, -mittere, -misi, -missum, *tr. and intr.* [mittĉo, send], send between; intervene, separate; abate, cease, let up, discontinue; delay, neglect, omit; let pass. I, 26.

**Interneciĉo**, -ĉnis, *f.* [necĉo, destroy], extermination, annihilation, utter destruction. I, 13.

**Interpellĉo**, *1. tr.*, interrupt, hinder. I, 44.

**interpōnō, -pōnere, -posui, -positum, tr.** [pōnō, place], place between, interpose; allege; cause; *fidem interpōnere*, pledge. I, 42; IV, 9.

**interpretēs, -etis, m., f., interpreter; mediator.** I, 19.

**interpretor, i, tr.** [interpretēs, interpreter], interpret, explain.

**interrogō, i, tr.** [rogō, ask], ask, question.

**intrumpō, -rumpere, -rūpi, -ruptum, tr.** [rumpō, break], break off or through; destroy.

**interscindō, -scindere, -scidi, -scissum, tr.** [scindō, cut, destroy], cut through, cut in two; destroy. II, 9.

**intersum, -esse, -ful, intr.** [sum, be. App. 66], be or lie between, intervene; be present *at*, take part *in*; *impers., interest*, it concerns, it is important; there is a difference or an interval; *magis interest*, it is of great importance. I, 15.

**intervallum, -i, n.** [vāllus, palisade], the space between two palisades; interval (of space or time); distance. I, 22.

**intervenīō, -venīre, -vēni, -ventum, intr.** [venīō, come], come between, come up; arrive.

**interventus, -ūs, m.** [intervenīō, come between], coming; aid. III, 15.

**intexō, -texere, -texui, -textum, tr.** [texō, weave], weave in or together. II, 33.

**intoleranter, adv.**, intolerably; impatiently, eagerly.

**intrā, prep. with acc.** [inter, between], within, inside; into. I, 32; II, 4.

**intritus, -a, -um, adj.** [in-+tritus, worn], unwearied. III, 26.

**intrō, i, tr., go or walk into, enter, penetrate.** II, 17.

**intrōducō, -ducere, -dūxi, -ductum, tr.** [intrō, within+ducō, lead], lead or bring into. II, 5.

**introeō, -ire, -ii, -itum, intr.** [intrō, within+eō, go. App. 84], go or come in, enter.

**introitus, -ūs, m.** [introeō, go in], entrance, approach.

**intrōmittō, -mittere, -misi, -missum, tr.** [intrō, within+mittō, send], send or let in. II, 33.

**intrōrsus, adv.** [intrō, within+versus, *pf. part. of* vertō, turn], within, on the inside. II, 18.

**intrōrumpō, -rumpere, -rūpi, -ruptum, tr.** [intrō, within+rumpō, break], break in or through.

**intueor, 2, tr.** [tueor, look], look at. I, 32.

**intus, adv.**, within, on the inside.

**inūsitatūs, -a, -um, adj.** [in-+ūsitātus, usual], unusual, uncommon, strange, startling. II, 31.

**inūtilis, -e, adj.** [in-+ūtilis, useful], useless, worthless; disadvantageous. II, 16.

**invenīō, -venīre, -vēni, -ventum, tr.** [venīō, come], come upon, find, meet with; find out, learn. I, 53; II, 16.

**inventor, -ōris, m.** [invenīō, find], inventor, author.

**inveterāscō, -veterāscere, -veterāvī, -veterātum, intr.,** grow old; become established. II, 1.

**invictus, -a, -um, adj.** [in-+victus, conquered], unconquerable, invincible. I, 36.

**invidēō, -vidēre, -vidī, -vīsum, intr.** [videō, see], look askance at; envy. II, 31.

**invidia, -ae, f.** [invidēō, envy], envy, hatred.

**inviolātus, -a, -um, adj.** [in-+violātus, injured], uninjured; inviolate, sacred. III, 9.

**invitō, i, tr.,** invite, summon; allure, persuade. I, 35; IV, 6.

**invitus, -a, -um, adj.,** against one's wish or will, unwilling, reluctant; *sē invitō*, against his will. I, 8.

**Iovis, see Iuppiter.**

**ipse, ipsa, ipsum, gen. ipsius** (App. 59) *intensive pron.*, self (as opposed to some one else; not to be confused with the reflexive *sē*, self. App. 163); himself, herself, itself, themselves; he, she, it, they; *as adj.*, very; *in gen.*, his, her, its, or their own. I, 1.

**irācundia, -ae, f.** [irācundus, irritable], irritability, anger.

**iracundus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [ira, anger], irritable. I, 31.

**irrideō**, -ridere, -risi, -risum, *intr.* [in+rideō, laugh], laugh, jeer. II, 30.

**irridiculē**, *adv.* [in+ridiculus, witty], without wit, unwittingly. I, 42.

**irrupō**, -rumpere, -rūpi, -ruptum, - *tr.* [in+rumpō, break], break into, rush into; force a way into, storm. IV, 14.

**irruptiō**, -ōnis, *f.* [irrupō, break into], a breaking into, attack.

**is**, ea, id, *gen. eius* (App. 57), *weak dem. pron. referring to some person or object named in the context*, this, that, these, those; he, she, it, they; the, a; **is** locus quō, a, or the, place where; **ea** quae, (the) things which; **eō**, *with comp.*, the; **eō** magis, all the more; **eō . . . quō**, *with comparatives*, the . . . the. I, 1.

**iste**, -a, -ud, *gen. istius* (App. 55), *dem. pron. used of something near the person addressed*, that, this.

**ita**, *adv.*, so, thus, in this way; as follows; **ut . . . ita**, in proportion as . . . in such proportion, as . . . so; **nōn ita**, not so very, not very; **ita . . . ut**, just . . . as; so . . . that. I, 11.

**Italia**, -ae, *f.*, Italy, *sometimes (in Caesar) including Cisalpine Gaul, but usually including only the rest of the peninsula*. I, 10.

**itaque**, *conj.* [ita, so], and so, therefore, accordingly. I, 9.

**item**, *adv.*, in like manner, so, also, just so. I, 3.

**iter**, **itineris**, *n.* [eō, go], route, road; journey, march; passage; **facere iter**, march, travel; **magnis itineribus**, by forced marches. I, 3.

**iterum**, *adv.*, again, a second time; **semel atque iterum**, again and again. I, 31.

**Itius**, -ti, *m.* (Ad), Itius (Ish'yūs), a harbor.

**itūrus**, *see eō*.

**iuba**, -ae, *f.*, mane. I, 48.

**iubeō**, **iubere**, **iussi**, **iussum**, - *tr.*, order, bid, command, enjoin. I, 5.

**iudicium**, -ci, *n.* [iūdex, judge], judicial proceedings, trial; opinion. Judgment; **iudicium facere**, express an opinion; **iudiciō**, by design, purposely. I, 4.

**iudicō**, *1, tr.* [iūdex, a judge], pass judgment on, judge, decide, determine; think, consider. I, 12.

**iugum**, -i, *n.* [iungō, join], yoke; ridge, crest. I, 7.

**iumentum**, -i, *n.* [iungō, join, yoke], yoke or draft animal, beast of burden. I, 3.

**iunctūra**, -ae, *f.* [iungō, join], joining. IV, 17.

**iungō**, **iungere**, **iānxi**, **iānctum**, - *tr.*, join or unite together, attach, connect. I, 8.

**iūnior**, *see iuvenis*.

**iūnius**, -ni, *m.*, (1) Decimus Junius Brutus, *see Brūtus*; (2) Quintus Junius (kwīn'tūs jū'nī-ūs), a Spaniard in Caesar's service.

**Iuppiter**, **Iovis** (App. 27), *m.*, Jupiter (jū'pī-tēr), or Jove, god of the heavens, the chief god of the Romans.

**Iūra**, -ae, *m.* (Cg), the Jura (jū'ra) mountains. I, 2.

**iūrō**, *1, tr. and intr.* [iūs, right], take oath; swear. I, 31.

**iūs**, **iūris**, *n.*, right, justice, law; rights; power, authority. I, 4.

**iūs iurandum**, **iūris iurandi**, *n.* [iūs, right+iūrō, swear], an oath. I, 3.

**iussū**, *m.*, *abl. of iussus*, -ūs, [iubeō, order], by command, by order.

**iustitia**, -ae, *f.* [iustus, just], justice, fair dealing, uprightness. I, 19.

**iustus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [iūs, right], in accordance with law or right, lawful, valid, just, fair; proper, regular; *with funera*, appropriate. I, 43; IV, 16.

**iuvenis**, -e, *adj.*, young; *comp.*, **iūnior**, *in plur. as noun*, men of military age.

**iuventūs**, -ātis, *f.* [iuvenis, young], period of youth, *from seventeen to forty-five years*; the youth, the young men. III, 16.

**iuvō**, **iuvāre**, **iāvi**, **iūtum**, - *tr.*, aid, assist, help. I, 26.

**iuxtā**, *adv.* [iungō, join], next, near. II, 26.

## K.

**Kal.**, *abbr. for Kalendae, -ārum, f., the Calends, the first day of the Roman month.* I, 6.

## L.

**L.**, *abbr. for Lācius, Lucius (lā'shyūs), a Roman praenomen.* I, 6.

**L.**, *sign for quinquāgintā, fifty.*

**Laberius, -rī, m.,** Quintus Laberius Durus (kwīn'tūs lā-bē'rī-ūs dū'rūs), a tribune.

**Labiēnus, -ī, m.,** Titus Atius Labienus (tī'tūs ā'shyūs lā'bi-ē'nūs), Caesar's most trusted lieutenant in the Gallic War. In the Civil War he aided Pompey and was slain at Munda, 45 B.C. I, 10.

**lābor, lābi, lāpsus, intr.,** slip; go wrong; hāc spē lāpsus, disappointed in this hope.

**labor, -ōris, m.,** toil, effort, striving; labor, hardship. I, 44; III, 5.

**labōrō, 1, intr. [labor, toil],** toil, work hard; be anxious, troubled, or perplexed; labor, suffer, be hard pressed. I, 31; IV, 26.

**labrum, -ī, n.,** lip; edge.

**lāc, lactis, n.,** milk. IV, 1.

**laccessō, -ere, -īvi, -ītum, tr.,** arouse, harass, provoke, irritate, attack. I, 15.

**lacrima, -ae, f.,** tear. I, 20.

**lacrimō, 1, intr. [lacrima, tear],** weep.

**lacus, -ūs, m.,** lake. I, 2.

**laedō, laedere, laesi, laesum, tr.,** hurt, damage; laedere fidem, to break faith.

**laetitia, -ae, f. [laetus, joyful],** joy, rejoicing.

**laetus, -a, -um, adj.,** joyful. III, 18.

**languidō, adv. [languidus, faint],** faintly, sluggishly.

**languidus, -a, -um, adj.,** weak, faint, sluggish. III, 5.

**languor, -ōris, m.,** weakness, faintness, lassitude.

**lapis, -idis, m.,** stone. I, 46; II, 6.

**laqueus, -ī, m.,** noose, snare.

**largior, 4, tr. [largus, large],** give largely or freely; bribe. I, 18.

**largiter, adv. [largus, large],** largely, freely, much; largiter posse, to have great influence. I, 18.

**largitiō, -ōnis, f. [largior, bribe],** bribery. I, 9

**lassitudō, -inis, f. [lassus, weary],** weariness, faintness, exhaustion, lassitude. II, 23.

**lātē, adv. [lātus, wide],** widely, extensively; longē lātēque, far and wide. I, 2.

**latebra, -ae, f. [lateō, lie hidden],** hiding place.

**lateō, -ēre, -ui, —, intr.,** escape notice, lurk, lie concealed or hidden. II, 19.

**lātitudō, -inis, f. [lātus, wide],** width, extent, breadth. I, 2.

**Latobrigi, -ōrum, m. (Bh),** the Latobrigi (lā'tō-brī'ji), a Gallic tribe east of the Rhine. I, 5.

**latrō, -ōnis, m.,** freebooter, bandit, robber. III, 17.

**latrōcinium, -ni, n. [latrō, robber],** robbery, brigandage.

**lātus, -a, -um, adj. broad, wide, extensive.** I, 2.

**lātus, see ferō.**

**latus, -eris, n.,** side; wing or flank of an army. I, 25.

**laudō, 1, tr. [laus, praise],** praise.

**laus, laudis, f.,** praise, commendation; renown, popularity, glory. I, 40; IV, 3.

**lavō, lavāre, lāvi, lautum, tr.,** wash; in pass., bathe. IV, 1.

**laxō, 1, tr.,** stretch out, extend, open. II, 25.

**lēgatiō, -ōnis, f. [lēgō, delegate],** embassy, legation; commission. I, 3.

**lēgātus, -ī, m. [lēgō, delegate],** one with delegated powers; ambassador, envoy, legate; lieutenant, legatus. I, 7.

**legiō, -ōnis, f. [legō, choose],** a legion. I, 7.

**legiōnārius, -a, -um, adj. [legiō, legion],** relating to a legion, legionary. I, 42; II, 27.

**Lemannus, -ī (with or without lacus), m. (Cg),** Lake Lemannus (lē-mān'ūs), better Lake Lemán, or the Lake of Geneva. I, 2.

**Lemovicēs, -um, m.** (CDd), the Lemo-  
vices (lēm'vō-vī'sēz).

**lēnis, -e, adj.,** gentle, mild, smooth.  
IV, 28.

**lēnitās, -tātis, f.** [lēnis, smooth],  
smoothness, gentleness. I, 12.

**lēniter, adv.** [lēnis, smooth], softly,  
smoothly, gently, gradually. II, 8.

**Lepontii, -ōrum, m.** (Ch), the Lepontii  
(lē-pōn'shyi). IV, 10.

**lepus, -oris, m.,** hare.

**Leuci, -ōrum, m.** (Bfg), the Leuci  
(lū'si). I, 40.

**Levaci, -ōrum, m.** (Af), the Levaci  
(lē-vā'si).

**levis, -e, adj.,** light (*in weight*), slight;  
light-minded, fickle, inconstant. II,  
10.

**levitās, -tātis, f.** [levis, light], light-  
ness; fickleness, restlessness. II, 1.

**levō, 1, tr.** [levis, light], lighten, ease,  
relieve.

**lēx, lēgis, f.,** law, statute, enactment.  
I, 1.

**Lexovii, -ōrum, m.** (Bd), the Lexovii  
(lēk-sō'vī-i). III, 9.

**libenter, adv.** [libēns, willing], willing-  
ly, gladly, with pleasure. I, 44; III,  
18.

**liber, -era, -erum, adj.,** unrestrained,  
free; undisputed. I, 44.

**liberālitās, -tātis, f.** [liber, free],  
*freedom in giving, etc.*; generosity. I,  
18.

**liberāliter, adv.** [liber, free], gracious-  
ly, generously, kindly. II, 5.

**liberē, adv.** [liber, free], freely, without  
restraint, boldly. I, 18.

**liberi, -ōrum, m.** [liber, free], *the free  
members of the household (as opposed to  
slaves)*; children. I, 11.

**liberō, 1, tr.** [liber, free], make or set  
free, release, deliver. IV, 19.

**libertās, -tātis, f.** [liber, free], free-  
dom, liberty, independence. I, 17.

**librilis, -e, adj.** [libra, a pound], of a  
pound weight; **funda librilis**, a sling  
for throwing heavy missiles.

**licēns, see** liceor.

**licentia, -ae, f.** [licet, it is permitted],  
lawlessness, presumption.

**liceor, 2, intr.,** bid (*at an auction*). I, 18.

**licet, licēre, licuit and licitum est,**  
*intr., impers.,* it is lawful, one has per-  
mission, it is permitted, one may, one  
is allowed; **licet mihi**, I may; **petere**  
**ut liceat**, to ask permission. I, 7.

**Liger, -eris, m.** (Cce), the river Liger,  
(lī'jēr), *better* the Loire. III, 9.

**lignātiō, -ōnis, f.** [lignum, wood], the  
procuring of wood.

**lignātor, -ōris, m.** [lignum, wood], one  
sent to get wood, wood-forager.

**lilium, -li, n.,** lily; *a kind of pitfall,*  
*named from its resemblance to a lily.*

**linea, -ae, f.** [linum, flax], linen thread;  
line.

**Lingonēs, -um, m.** (Bf), the Lingones  
(līng'gō-nēz). I, 26.

**lingua, -ae, f.,** tongue; language. I, 1.

**lingula, -ae, f.** [lingua, tongue], a lit-  
tle tongue; a tongue of land. III,  
12.

**linter, -tris, f.,** skiff, rowboat, canoe.  
I, 12.

**linum, -i, n.,** flax; linen, canvas. III,  
13.

**lis, litis, f.,** strife; lawsuit; damages.

**Liscus, -i, m.,** Liscus (lis'kūs), *a chief  
magistrate of the Haedui.* I, 16.

**Litaviccus, -i, m.** Litaviccus (lī'vā-  
vik'ūs), a Haeduan nobleman.

**littera, -ae, f.,** a letter of the alphabet,  
*a written sign, mark, or character*; *in  
pl.*, letters of the alphabet; letter, epis-  
tle. I, 26.

**litus, -oris, n.,** seashore, beach, shore.  
IV, 23.

**locus, -i, m.** (*pl. loca, -ōrum, n.*), place,  
position, locality, situation; topic,  
subject; condition, state; rank, fami-  
ly; opportunity; **obsidum locō**, as  
hostages. I, 2.

**locūtus, see** loquor.

**longē, adv.** [longus, long], far, far away,  
distant; **longē lātēque**, far and wide.  
I, 1.

**longinquus, -a, -um, adj.** [longus,  
long], far off, distant, remote; long,  
long continued. I, 47; IV, 27.

**longitūdō, -inis, f.** [longus, long],  
length, extent; long duration. I, 2.

**longurius, -ri, m.** [longus, long], a  
long pole. III, 14.

**longus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, long, distant; of long duration; tedious. I, 40; II, 21.

**loquor**, loqui, locūtus sum, *intr.*, speak, talk, converse. I, 20.

**lōrica**, -ae, *f.*, coat of mail; parapet, breastwork.

**Lūcānius**, -nī, *m.* Quintus Lucanius (kwin'tūs lū-kā'nī-ūs) a centurion.

**Lucterius**, -ri, *m.*, Lucterius (lūk-tē'rī-ūs), a chief of the Cadurci.

**Lugotorix**, -igis, *m.*, Lugotorix (lū-gōt'ō-rīks), a British chief.

**lūna**, -ae, *f.*, the moon. I, 50; IV, 29.

**Lutetia**, -ae, *f.* (Be), Lutetia (lū-tē-shyā), the capital of the Parisii, now Paris.

**lūx**, lūcis, *f.*, light, daylight; primā lūce, at daybreak. I, 22.

**lūxuria**, -ae, *f.*, luxury, high living. II, 15.

## M.

**M.**, *abbr.* for Mārcus (mār'kūs), a Roman praenomen. I, 2.

**M**, *sign.* for mille, thousand.

**māceria**, -ae, *f.*, wall.

**māchinātio**, -ōnis, *f.* [māchinor, contrive], a mechanical contrivance, machine, engine, derrick. II, 30.

**maestus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [maerō, be sad], dejected, sad.

**Magetobriga**, -ae, *f.* (Cf), Magetobriga (māj'ō-tōb'rī-ga), a Gallic town where Ariovistus defeated the Gauls. I, 31.

**magis**, *adv.*, *comp.* [magnus, great], more, rather, in a higher degree; *sup.*, maximē, especially, in the highest degree; mostly, mainly. I, 3.

**magistrātus**, -ūs, *m.* [magister, master], public office, magistracy; public officer, magistrate. I, 4.

**magnificus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [magnus, great + faciō, make], magnificent, splendid.

**magnitūdō**, -inis, *f.* [magnus, great], greatness, great size, size, extent; stature (corporum); violence (venti); severity (poenae); magnitūdō animi, courage. I, 39; II, 12.

**magnopere**, *adv.* [magnus, great + opus, work], with great labor; especial-

ly, greatly, exceedingly, earnestly. I, 13.

**magnus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, great (in size, quantity, or degree), large, abundant, much; important, extensive; loud (voice); high (tide); magni (gen. sing. neut.), of great importance; magnis itineribus, by forced marches. *Comp.*, maior; *sup.*, maximus. I, 2.

**maiestās**, -tātis, *f.* [maior, greater], greatness, honor, majesty.

**maior**, māius, *adj.* [*comp.* of magnus, great], greater (in degree, size, time, etc.); older, elder; as noun, maiorēs nātū, elders, old men; maiorēs, ancestors. I, 13.

**malacia**, -ae, *f.*, a calm at sea. III, 15.

**male**, *adv.* [malus, bad], badly, ill, adversely. *Comp.*, peius; *sup.*, pessimē. I, 40.

**malefīcium**, -cī, *n.* [malum, evil + faciō, do], evil doing, mischief, harm, injury. I, 7.

**mālō**, mālīe, mālui, — (App. 83), *tr.* and *intr.* [magis, more + volō, wish], wish more or rather, prefer. III, 8.

**mālus**, -ī, *m.*, mast; pole, beam (*up-right*). III, 14.

**malus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, evil, bad, injurious; *comp.*, peior, peius; as noun, a worse thing; *sup.*, pessimus. I, 31.

**mandātum**, -ī, *n.* [mandō, command], charge, injunction, order, command; message. I, 35; II, 5.

**mandō**, ī, *tr.* [manus, hand + dō, give], give into one's hands; entrust, commit; enjoin, order, command. I, 12.

**Mandubīl**, -ōrum, *m.* (Cf), the Mandubīl (mān-dū'bī-ī).

**Mandubrācius**, -cī, *m.*, Mandubrācius (mān'dū-brā'shyūs), a British chief.

**māne**, *adv.*, in the morning, early. IV, 13.

**manēō**, manēre, mānsī, mānsūm, *intr.*, remain, continue, abide, stay. I, 36; IV, 1.

**manipulāris**, -e, *adj.* [manipulus, maniple], of a maniple; as noun, common soldier; suus manipulāris, a soldier of his own company.

**manipulus**, -ī, *m.* [manus, hand + pleō, fill], a handful (*esp.* of hay, about a

*pole, anciently used as a standard*), a company (of two centuries, the third of a cohort), manipule. II, 25.

**Manlius**, -li, *m.*, Lucius Manlius (lū'shyūs mǎn'li-ūs), *proconsul* in 78 B.C. III, 20.

**mānsuēfaciō**, -facere, -fēcī, -factum (*pass.*, mānsuēfiō), *tr.* [mānsuētus, tame+faciō, make], tame.

**mānsuētūdō**, -inis, *f.* [mānsuētus, tame], gentleness, clemency, compassion. II, 14.

**manus**, -ūs, *f.*, the hand; in *manibus*, near at hand; *manū*, by hand, by art; *ferrea manus*, a grappling-hook; *dare manūs*, yield; an armed force, troop, band, company. I, 25.

**Marcomanni**, -ōrum, *m.* (Bj), the Marcomanni (mǎr'kō-mǎn'i). I, 51.

**mare**, -is, *n.*, sea; *mare Oceanum*, the ocean. III, 7.

**maritimus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [mare, sea], of the sea, sea; maritime, naval, on the sea; *ōra*, the sea shore. II, 34.

**Marius**, -ri, *m.*, Gaius Marius (gā'yūs mǎ'ri-ūs), *the conqueror of the Ombri and Teutoni*. I, 40.

**Mārs**, -tis, *m.*, Mars (mǎrz), *god of war*; war; *aequō Mārte*, with equal advantage.

**mās**, maris, *adj.*, male; *as noun*, a male.

**matara**, -ae, *f.*, *Celtic javelin*. I, 26.

**māter**, -tris, *f.*, mother; *mātrēs familiae*, matrons. I, 18.

**māteria**, -ae, *f.*, material; wood, timber. III, 29.

**māterior**, *i. intr.* [māteria, material, wood], procure wood.

**Matiscō**, -ōnis, *m.* (Cf), Matisco (mǎtis'kō), *a city of the Haedui, now Macon*.

**mātrīmōnium**, -nī, *n.* [māter, mother], marriage, wedlock, matrimony; in *mātrīmōnium dare*, to give in marriage; in *mātrīmōnium dūcere*, to marry (*said of the man*). I, 3.

**Matrona**, -ae, *m.* (Bef), *the river Matrona* (mǎt'rō-nā), *now the Marne*. I, 1.

**mātūrē**, *adv.* [mātūrus, ripe], early, speedily, soon. I, 33; IV, 6.

**mātūrēscō**, mātūrēscere, mātūrui, —, *intr.* [mātūrus, ripe], become ripe, ripen.

**mātūrō**, *i. tr. and intr.* [mātūrus, ripe], ripen; quicken, accelerate; make haste, hasten. I, 7.

**mātūrus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, ripe; early. I, 16.

**maximō**, *see magis*.

**maximus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [*sup. of magnus*, great. App. 42], greatest, largest. I, 3.

**Maximus**, -i, *m.*, Quintus Fabius Maximus (quī'n'tūs fā'bī-ūs mǎk'si-mūs), *victor over the Gauls*, 121 B.C. I, 45.

**medeor**, medēri, —, *intr.*, remedy, cure.

**mediocris**, -ere, *adj.* [medius, the middle of], middling, ordinary, moderate. III, 20.

**mediocriter**, *adv.* [mediocris, moderate], moderately; *nōn mediocriter*, in no small degree. I, 39.

**Mediomatrici**, -ōrum, *m.* (Bfg), the Mediomatrici (mē'di-ō-mǎt'ri-si). IV, 10.

**mediterrāneus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [medius, middle+terra, land], midland, inland.

**medius**, -a, -um, *adj.*, in the middle of; in the middle, intervening, intermediate; *locus medius utriusque*, a place midway between the two. I, 24.

**Meldi**, -ōrum, *m.* (Be), the Meldi (mēl'di).

**melior**, *comp. of bonus*.

**membrum**, -i, *n.*, member of the body, limb. IV, 24.

**memini**, -isse (App. 86), *tr.*, remember, bear in mind. III, 6.

**memoria**, -ae, *f.* [memor, mindful], the faculty of memory; recollection, memory, remembrance; tradition; *memoriā tenēre*, remember; *patrum memoriā*, in the time of our fathers. I, 7.

**Menapii**, -ōrum, *m.* (Afg), the Menapii (mē-nā'pī-i). II, 4.

**mendācium**, -cī, *n.*, lie, falsehood.

**mēns**, mentis, *f.*, the thinking faculty, mind, intellect; thought; disposition, feelings; *mentēs animōsque*, minds and hearts; *aliēnātā mente*, bereft of reason. I, 39; III, 19.

**mēnsis**, -is, *m.*, month. I, 5.

**mēnsūra**, -ae, *f.* [mētiōr, measure], measure.

**mentio**, -ōnis, *f.* naming, mention.  
**mercātor**, -ōris, *m.* [mercor, trade], merchant, trader. I, 1.  
**mercātūra**, -ae, *f.* [mercor, trade], a commercial enterprise, trade.  
**mercēs**, -ēdis, *f.*, pay, hire. I, 31.  
**Mercurius**, -rī, *m.*, Mercurius (mēr-kū'-rī-ūs), the god Mercury.  
**mereō**, and **mereor**, 2, *tr.*, deserve, merit, be worthy of; win, earn, incur (odium); serve as a soldier (i.e., earn pay). I, 11.  
**meridiānus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [meridiēs, midday], of midday or noon.  
**meridiēs**, -ēi, *m.* [for medidiēs, from medius, middle+diēs, day], the middle of the day, midday, noon; the south. I, 50.  
**meritō**, *adv.* [meritum, desert], justly, deservedly.  
**meritum**, -i, *n.* [mereor, deserve], desert, merit, service; favor, kindness, benefit. I, 14.  
**Messāla**, -ae, *m.*, Marcus Valerius Messala (mār'kūs vā-lē'ri-ūs mē-sā'la), consul, 61 B.C. I, 2.  
**mētor**, mētiri, mēnsus sum, *tr.*, deal or measure out, distribute. I, 16.  
**Metiosedum**, -i, *n.* (Be), Metiosedum (mē'shyō-sē'dūm), a town of the Senones, now Melun.  
**Mētius**, -tī, *m.*, Marcus Metius (mār'kūs mē'shyūs). I, 47.  
**metō**, metere, messui, messum, *tr.*, mow, reap. IV, 32.  
**metus**, -ūs, *m.* [metuō, fear], fear, dread, anxiety, apprehension; metu territāre, terrify; hōc metu = metu huius rei, from fear of this. IV, 4.  
**meus**, -a, -um, *poss. adj. pron.* [cf. oblique cases of ego], my, mine, my own. IV, 25.  
**miles**, -itis, *m.*, soldier, private soldier; infantry (opposed to equitēs); milites imperāre, levy soldiers upon. I, 7.  
**millia**, see mille.  
**militāris**, -e, *adj.* [miles, soldier], of a soldier, military, martial; rēs militāris, military matters, warfare, the science of warfare. I, 21.

**militia**, -ae, *f.* [miles, soldier], military service, warfare.  
**mille**, indecl. num. *adj.*, a thousand; pl as noun, millia, -ium, *n.*, thousands (usually followed by part. gen.); milli passuum, thousands of paces, miles. I, 2.  
**Minerva**, -ae, *f.*, Minerva (mī-nēr'vā) goddess of wisdom and the arts.  
**minimē**, *adv.* [minimus, least], least, very little; by no means, not at all. I, 1.  
**minimus**, -a, -um, *sup. of parvus*.  
**minor**, *comp. of parvus*.  
**Minucius**, -ci, *m.*, Lucius Minucius Basilus (lū'shyūs mī-nū'shyūs bās'lūs), a commander of cavalry.  
**minuō**, minuere, minui, minūtum, *tr. and intr.* [minus, less], lessen, impair, diminish; settle (contrōversiās) minuente aestū, the tide ebbing. I, 20.  
**minus**, *adv. comp.* [parvus, little], less, not at all, too little; quō minus, see quōminus. I, 2.  
**miror**, 1, *tr. and intr.*, wonder or marvel at; wonder, be astonished. I, 32.  
**mirus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [miror, wonder at], strange, astonishing; mirum in modum, surprisingly. I, 34.  
**miser**, -era, -erum, *adj.*, wretched, miserable, pitiable, unfortunate; poor, worthless. I, 32; II, 28.  
**miser cordia**, -ae, *f.* [misereō, pity+cor, the heart], pity, mercy, compassion. II, 28.  
**miseror**, 1, *tr.* [miser, wretched], bewail, lament over, deplore. I, 39.  
**misī**, see mittō.  
**missus**, -ūs, *m.* [mittō, send], a sending, dispatching; missū Caesaris, sent by Caesar.  
**missus**, see mittō.  
**mitissimē**, *superl. adv.* [mitis, mild], very mildly or gently.  
**mittō**, mittere, misī, missum, *tr.*, send, send off, dismiss, let go, dispatch; hurl, discharge. I, 7.  
**mōbilis**, -e, *adj.* [moveō, move], changeable. IV, 5.  
**mōbilitās**, -tātis, *f.* [mōbilis, movable], movableness, activity, speed;

- changeableness, fickleness, inconstancy. II, 1.
- mōbiliter**, *adv.* [mōbilis, movable], readily, easily. III, 10.
- moderor**, 1, *tr.* [modus, limit], manage, govern, control, guide. IV, 33.
- modestia**, -ae, *f.* [modus, limit], moderation, self-control, sobriety of behavior.
- modo**, *adv.* [modus, measure], *with measure or limit*; only, merely; even, just, at least, but; *of time*, just now, recently; *nōn modo . . . sed etiam*, not only, . . . but also. I, 16.
- modus**, -i, *m.*, measure, quantity, size; manner, method, style; *eius modi*, of such a kind, such; *abl.*, **modō**, *with gen.*, in the character of, like. I, 41; II, 81.
- moenia**, -ium, *n. pl.*, defensive walls, city walls, ramparts, bulwarks, fortifications, defenses. II, 6.
- mōlēs**, -is, *f.*, mass; dike. III, 12.
- molestē**, *adv.*, with annoyance; **molestē ferre**, be annoyed. II, 1.
- mōlimentum**, -i, *n.* [mōlior, exert one's self], effort, difficulty. I, 34.
- mollitus**, -a, -um, *see* **mollō**.
- mollīō**, 4, *tr.* [mollis, soft], soften, make easy.
- mollis**, -e, *adj.*, soft; smooth; weak. III, 19.
- mollitia**, -ae, *f.* [mollis, soft], weakness.
- mollitiēs**, -ēi, *f.* [mollis, soft], weakness.
- mollō**, -ere, -ui, -itum, *tr.*, grind. I, 5.
- mōmentum**, -i, *n.*, weight, influence, importance.
- Mona**, -ae, *f.*, Mona (mō'na), an island off the coast of Britain, probably the Isle of Man.
- monēō**, 2, *tr.*, warn, advise, instruct, order. I, 20.
- mōns**, montis, *m.*, mountain; mountain range; hill, height. I, 1.
- mora**, -ae, *f.*, delay. II, 15.
- morbūs**, -i, *m.*, illness, sickness, disease.
- Morini**, -ōrum, *m.* (Ae), the Morini (mōr'i-ni). II, 4.
- morior**, mori, mortuus sum, *intr.* [mors, death], die. I, 4.
- Moritasgus**, -i, *m.*, Moritasgus (mōr'ī-tās'gūs), a chief of the Senones.
- moror**, 1, *tr. and intr.* [mora, a delay], delay, hinder; tarry, linger. I, 26.
- mors**, -tis, *f.*, death; *sibi mortem cōnsciscere*, commit suicide. I, 4.
- mortuus**, *see* **morior**.
- mōs**, mōris, *m.*, manner, custom, practice; *pl.*, customs, habits; character. I, 4.
- Mosa**, -ae, *m.* (ABT), the river Mosa (mō'sa), now the Meuse or Maas. IV, 9.
- mōtus**, -ūs, *m.* [moveō, move], movement, motion; political movement, uprising, disturbance. IV, 23.
- moveō**, movēre, mōvi, mōtum, *tr.*, set in motion, move; affect, influence; *with castra*, move camp from one place to another, or break camp. I, 15.
- mulier**, -eris, *f.*, woman; wife. I, 29.
- mūliō**, -ōnis, *m.* [mūlus, mule], mule driver, muleteer.
- multitūdō**, -inis, *f.* [multus, much], a great number, multitude; the multitude, the common people, the populace. I, 2.
- multō**, 1, *tr.*, fine, deprive one of something as a fine.
- multō**, *adv.* [*abl.* of **multus**, much], by far, much.
- multum**, *adv.* [*acc.* of **multus**, much], much, very, greatly, especially; *comp.* **plūs**, more; **plūs posse**, be more able or powerful, have more influence; *sup.* **plūrimus**, most, very; **plūrimum posse**, be most powerful; be very powerful or influential. I, 3.
- multus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, much, great; *pl.* many; *with abl.* denoting time when, late; *as noun*, many persons or things; *comp.* **plūs**, **plūris**, more; *as noun*, more; *pl.* more, several, many; *sup.* **plūrimus**, -a, -um, most; *pl.* very many. I, 3.
- mūlus**, -i, *m.*, a mule.
- Munātiūs**, -ti, *m.*, Lucius Munatius Plancus (lū'shyūs mū-nā'shyūs plāng'kūs), a lieutenant of Caesar.
- mundus**, -i, *m.*, universe, world.

**mūnimentum**, -i, *n.* [mūniō, fortify], defense, fortification. II, 17.

**mūniō**, 4, *tr.*, defend with a wall, fortify, defend, protect; **mūnitus**, *pf. part. as adj.*, fortified, defended, protected. I, 24.

**mūnitīō**, -ōnis, *f.* [mūniō, fortify], fortifying; fortification, rampart, works, intrenchments. I, 8.

**mūnus**, -eris, *n.*, duty, service, task; present. I, 43.

**mūrālis**, -e, *adj.* [mūrus, wall], pertaining to a wall, mural; **mūrāle pīlum**, mural javelin, a heavy javelin to be thrown from the top of a wall. III, 14.

**mūrus**, -i, *m.*, a wall. I, 8.

**musculus**, -i, *m.* [*dim. of mus*, mouse], shed, mantlet.

**mutilus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, mutilated, broken.

## N.

**nactus**, -a, -um, *see nanciscor*.

**nam**, *conj.*, for. I, 12.

**Nammēius**, -i, *m.*, Nammelius (nā-mē-yūs). I, 7.

**Namnetēs**, -um, *m.* (Ce), the Namnetes (nām/nē-tēz). III, 9.

**namque**, *conj.* [nam, for], for. I, 38; III, 13.

**nanciscor**, **nancisci**, **nactus sum**, *tr.*, get, obtain possession of; meet with, find. I, 53; IV, 23.

**Nantuātes**, -ium, *m.* (CDg), the Nantuates (nān/tū-ā/tēz). III, 1.

**Narbō**, -ōnis, *m.* (Ee), Narbo (nār'bō), now Narbonne. III, 20.

**nāscor**, **nāsci**, **nātus sum**, *intr.*, be born or produced; rise, spring up, be reared; be found. II, 18.

**Nasua**, -ae, *m.* Nasua (nāsh'ū-ā), a leader of the Suebi. I, 37.

**nātālis**, -e, *adj.* [nāscor, be born], pertaining to birth; **diēs**, birthday.

**nātiō**, -ōnis, *f.* [nāscor, be born], race, tribe, people, nation. I, 53; II, 35.

**nātivus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [nāscor, be born], native; natural.

**nātūra**, -ae, *f.* [nāscor be born], nature; natural disposition, character; constitution. I, 2.

**nātus**, -ūs, *m.* [nāscor, be born], birth; **maiorēs nātū**, greater by birth, elders. II, 13.

**nātus**, -a, -um, *see nāscor*.

**nauta**, -ae, *m.* [*for nāvita*; **nāvis**, ship], sailor. III, 9.

**nauticus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [nauta, sailor], pertaining to sailors; nautical, naval. III, 8.

**nāvālis**, -e, *adj.* [nāvis, ship], pertaining to ships, naval. III, 19.

**nāvicula**, -ae, *f.* [*dim. of nāvis*, ship], small boat, skiff. I, 53.

**nāvigātiō**, -ōnis, *f.* [nāvigō, sail], sailing, navigation; voyage. III, 9.

**nāvigium**, -gi, *n.* [nāvigō, sail], a sailing vessel, ship, craft. III, 14.

**nāvigō**, 1, *intr.* [nāvis, ship], set sail, sail. III, 8.

**nāvis**, -is, *f.*, ship, boat; **nāvis longa**, galley, ship of war; **nāvis onerāria**, transport. I, 8.

**nāvō**, 1, *tr.*, do zealously or well. II, 25.

**nē** (App. 188, b), (1), *conj. with subj.*, that ... not, so that ... not, in order that ... not, lest; after verbs of fearing, that, lest. (2), *adv.*, not; **nē** ... quidem (*enclosing the emphatic word*), not even. I, 4.

**ne**, **nec**, **neg**, inseparable negative prefixes.

**ne**, *interrog. enclitic*: in direct questions, simply sign of a question (App. 213, a); in indirect questions, whether;

**-ne** ... **-ne**, **-ne** ... **an**, **utrum** ... **-ne**, whether ... or. I, 50; IV, 14.

**nec**, *see neque*.

**necessāriō**, *adv.* [*abl. of necessārius*, necessary], necessarily, of necessity, unavoidably. I, 17.

**necessārius**, -a, -um, *adj.* [necesse, necessary], necessary, requisite, pressing; with tempus, critical; as nouns, kinsman, friend. I, 11.

**necesse**, *indecl. adj.*, necessary, unavoidable, indispensable. IV, 5.

**necessitās**, -tātis, *f.* [necesse, necessary], necessity, constraint, need. II, 11.

**necessitudō**, -inis, *f.* [necesse; cf. **necessārius**, friend], friendship, alliance. I, 43.

**necne**, *conj.* [nec, nor+-ne], or not. I, 50.

**necō**, 1, *tr.* [nex, death], put to death, kill, murder. I, 53; III, 16.

**nēcubi**, *conj.+adv.* [nē, not+(e)ubi, where], that nowhere, lest anywhere.

**nefārius**, -a, -um, *adj.* [nefās, sin], wicked, impious.

**nefās**, *n.*, *indecl.* [ne-+fās, divine right], contrary to divine right; sin, crime.

**neg-**, *see* ne-.

**neglegō**, -legere, -lēxi, -lēctum, *tr.* [neg-+legō, choose, regard], not heed, disregard, neglect. I, 35; III, 10.

**negō**, 1, *tr. and intr.*, say no, refuse, say...not. I, 8.

**negōtior**, 1, *intr.* [negōtium, business], carry on business, traffic, trade.

**negōtium**, -ti, *n.* [neg-+ōtium, leisure], concern, business, undertaking; trouble, difficulty, labor; **negōtium dare**, employ, direct; **quid negōti**, what business; **nihil negōti**, no difficulty. I, 34; II, 2.

**Nemetēs**, -um, *m.* (Bh), the Nemetes (nēm'ē-tēz). I, 51.

**nēmō**, *acc. nēminem, m. and f.* [ne-+homō, man], no man, no one, nobody. I, 18.

**nēquāquam**, *adv.* [nē+quāquam, in any way], in no way, by no means, not at all. IV, 23.

**neque** (nec) (App. 188, a), *conj.* [ne-+que], and not, not, nor; but not; **neque . . . neque**, neither . . . nor. I, 4.

**nēquāquam**, *adv.* [nē+qui(d)quam, anything], in vain, to no purpose. II, 27.

**Nervicus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [Nervius], of the Nervii. III, 5.

**Nervius**, -a, -um, *adj.* (Aef), of the Nervii; *m. sing. as noun*, one of the Nervii; *m. pl. as noun*, the Nervii (nēr'vi-i). II, 4.

**nervus**, -i, *m.*, sinew; *in pl.*, vigor, strength, power. I, 20.

**neu**, *see* nēve.

**neuter**, -tra, -trum (*gen. -trius, dat. -tri*), *adj. used as noun*, [ne-+uter,

which of two], neither; *in pl.*, neither side, neither party. II, 9.

**nēve** (neu) (App. 188, b), *conj.* [nē+ve, or], and not, nor. I, 26.

**nex**, *necis, f.*, violent death, death, execution. I, 16.

**nihil**, *indecl. noun, n.*, nothing; *with gen.*, no, none of; *acc. as adv.*, not, not at all, by no means; **nōn nihil**, somewhat. I, 11.

**nihilō**, *adv.*, by no means; **nihilō minus**, nevertheless; **nihilō sētius**, none the less, nevertheless. I, 5.

**nimis**, -a, -um, *adj.* [nimis, too much], beyond measure, too great, excessive.

**nisi**, *conj.* [ne-+si, if], if not, except, unless. I, 22.

**Nitlobrogēs**, -um, *m.* (Dd), the Nitlobroges (nīsh'ī-ōb'rō-jēz).

**nitor**, *niti*, **nixus sum**, *intr.*, rest or rely upon; exert one's self, strive, endeavor. I, 13.

**nix**, *nivis, f.*, snow.

**nōbilis**, -e, *adj.* [nōscō, know], well known, distinguished, noted; of noble birth, noble; *as noun*, a noble. I, 2.

**nōbilitās**, -tātis, *f.* [nōbilis, well known], celebrity; noble birth, nobility, rank; the nobility, the nobles. I, 2.

**noceō**, **noceōre**, **nocui**, **nocitum**, *intr.*, injure, hurt; **nocēns**, *pres. part. as noun*, guilty person. III, 13.

**noctū**, *adv.* [nox, night], by night. I, 8.

**nocturnus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [nox, night], at night, nocturnal, nightly. I, 38.

**nōdus**, -i, *m.*, knot; joint.

**nōlō**, **nōlle**, **nōlui**, —, (App. 82), *tr. and intr.* [ne-+volō, wish], not wish, be unwilling; refuse; *imp.* **nōli** or **nōlite**, *with inf.* (App. 219), do not. I, 16.

**nōmen**, -inis, *n.*, name, title; reputation, prestige; **nōmine** *with gen.*, in the name of, as; **suō nōmine**, on his or their own account, personally. I, 13.

**nōminātīm**, *adv.* [nōminō, name], by name; expressly; in detail. I, 29.

**nōminō**, 1, *tr.* [nōmen, name], call by name, name, mention. II, 18.

**nōn** (App. 188, a), *adv.*, not; *no*. I, 3.  
**nōnāgintā**, *indecl. card. num. adj.*, ninety. I, 29.  
**nōndum**, *adv.* [nōn, not+*dum*], not yet. I, 6.  
**nōnus**, -a, -um, *ord. num. adj.*, ninth. II, 23.  
**Nōrēla**, -ae, *f.* (Ck) Norela (nō-rē'ya), a town in Noricum, now Neumarkt. I, 5.  
**Nōricus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, pertaining to Noricum (a country between the Danube and the Alps), Norican. I, 5.  
**nōs**, *see ego*.  
**nōscō**, nōscere, nōvi, nōtum, *tr.*, learn, become acquainted or familiar with; nōvi, *pf.*, have learned, hence, know; nōtus, *pf. part. as adj.*, known, well known, familiar. III, 9.  
**nōsmet**, *see egomet*.  
**nostr**, -tra, -trum, *poss. adj.* [nōs, we], our, ours, our own; *in pl. as noun*, our men, our troops. I, 1.  
**nōtitia**, -ae, *f.* [nōscō, know], knowledge, acquaintance.  
**nōtus**, -a, -um, *see nōscō*.  
**novem**, *indecl. card. num. adj.*, nine.  
**Noviodunum**, -i, *n.*, Noviodunum (nō-vi-ō-dū'nūm) (1), the capital of the Suessones, the modern Soissons (Be); (2), a city of the Bituriges (Ce); (3), a city of the Haedui (Ce). II, 12.  
**novitās**, -tātis, *f.* [novus, new], newness; strangeness, novelty. IV, 34.  
**novus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, new, novel, unusual; fresh; rēs novae, a change of government, revolution; *sup.*, novissimus, -a, -um, latest, last; *as noun or with agmen*, those in the rear, the rear. I, 9.  
**nox**, noctis, *f.*, night; media nox, middle of the night, midnight; multā nocte, late at night. I, 26.  
**noxia**, -ae, *f.*, crime, offense.  
**nūbō**, nūbere, nūpsi, nūptum, *intr.*, veil one's self for the marriage ceremony, marry. I, 18.  
**nūdō**, *i. tr.* [nūdus, bare], strip, uncover, make bare, expose. II, 6.  
**nūdus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, naked, unclothed, bare; exposed, unprotected. I, 25.  
**nūllus**, -a, -um, *gen.*, nūllius, *adj.* [ne+*ullus*, any], not any, no; *as*

*noun*, no one, none; nōn nūllus, *some; as noun*, some, some persons. I, 7.  
**num**, *interrog. particle implying the expectation of a negative reply*. I, 14.  
**nūmen**, -inis, *n.*, divinity; divine will.  
**numerus**, -i, *m.*, number, quantity, amount; account; *in numerō*, with *gen.*, among, *as*. I, 3.  
**Numidae**, -ārum, *m.*, the Numidae (nū'mi-dō), better the Numidians, a people of North Africa, in modern Algiers. II, 7.  
**nummus**, -i, *m.*, coin.  
**numquam**, *adv.* [ne+*umquam*, ever], not ever, never; nōn numquam, sometimes. I, 8.  
**nuno**, *adv.*, now, at present, at this time. I, 31; II, 4.  
**nūntiō**, *i. tr.* [nūntius, messenger], announce, send news, report, make known; order, direct. I, 7.  
**nūntius**, -ti, *m.*, messenger; message, news, report. I, 26.  
**nūper**, *adv.*, recently, not long ago. I, 6.  
**nūtus**, -ūs, *m.* [nūō, nod], nod; sign, command; *ad nūtum*, at one's nod or command. I, 31; IV, 28.

## O.

**ob**, *prep. with acc.*, on account of, for; *in compounds*, opposed to, to, toward, against; *quam ob rem*, wherefore, why. I, 4.  
**obaerātus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [aes, money], in debt; *as noun*, debtor. I, 4.  
**obducō**, -ducere, -dūxi, -ductum, *tr.* [ducō, lead], lead towards; extend, dig. II, 8.  
**obeō**, -ire, -ii, -itum, *tr.* [eō, go. App. 84], go to or towards; perform, attend to.  
**obicō**, -icere, -icēi, -iectum, *tr.* [iacō, throw. App. 7], throw against or in the way; place in front or opposite, present; expose; *obiectur. part. as adj.*, lying in the way or opposite, in the way. I, 26.  
**obitus**, -ūs, *m.* [obeō, go to death], destruction. II, 29.  
**oblātus**, *see offerō*.

**obliquē**, *adv.* [obliquus, slanting], obliquely, slantwise. IV, 17.

**obliquus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, running obliquely, slanting.

**obliviscor**, **oblivisci**, **oblitus sum**, *intr.* [oblivio, forgetfulness], forget. I, 14.

**obsecrō**, 1, *tr.* [sacer, sacred], implore, entreat, beseech. I, 20.

**obsequentia**, -ae, *f.* [obsequor, comply], complaisance, compliance.

**observō**, 1, *tr.* [servō, give heed], observe, mark, watch; regard, obey; celebrate. I, 45.

**obses**, -idis, *m. and f.*: [obsideō, blockade], one that is guarded, hostage; pledge, security. I, 9.

**obsessiō**, -ōnis, *f.* [obsideō, blockade], blocking up, blockade, siege.

**obsideō**, -sidere, -sēdi, -sessum, *tr.* [sedēō, sit], sit in the way of, obstruct, besiege, blockade. III, 23.

**obsidiō**, -ōnis, *f.* [obsideō, blockade], siege, investment, blockade; peril, oppression. IV, 19.

**obsignō**, 1, *tr.* [signō, mark], seal, sign and seal. I, 39.

**obstistō**, -sistere, -stiti, -stitum, *intr.* [stistō, stand], oppose, resist, withstand.

**obstinātē**, *adv.*, firmly, resolutely.

**obstringō**, -stringere, -strinxi, -strictum, *tr.* [stringō, tie], bind, hold under obligations, pledge. I, 9.

**obstruō**, -struere, -struxi, -structum, *tr.* [struō, pile up], block up, barricade, obstruct.

**obtemperō**, 1, *intr.* [temperō, rule], be subject to rule, comply with, obey. IV, 21.

**obtestor**, 1, *tr.* [testor, witness], call to witness; beseech, entreat. IV, 25.

**obtineō**, -tinere, -tinui, -tentum, *tr.* [teneō, hold], hold, retain, possess, maintain; acquire, obtain. I, 1.

**obtuli**, *see offerō*.

**obveniō**, -venire, -vēni, -ventum, *intr.* [veniō, come], come to, happen upon, meet; fall to by lot. II, 23.

**obviā**, *adv.* [via, way], in the way; to meet, towards, against.

**occāsiō**, -ōnis, *f.* [occidō, fall, happen], occasion, opportunity. III, 13.

**occāsus**, -ūs, *m.* [occidō, fall, set], falling down, setting; with solis, sunset; the west. I, 1.

**occidō**, -cidere, -cidi, -cāsum, *intr.* [ob+cadō, fall], fall down, set; happen; be slain, perish; occidēns sol, the-west.

**occidō**, -cidere, -cidi, -cīsum, *tr.* [ob+caedō, cut, slay], cut down, kill, slay. I, 7.

**occultātiō**, -ōnis, *f.* [occultō, hide], concealment.

**occultē**, *adv.* [occultus, secret], secretly.

**occultō**, 1, *tr.* [occultus, secret], hide, keep secret, conceal. I, 27.

**occultus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, covered, hidden, concealed, secret; *n. as noun*, a hidden place, an ambush. I, 32; II, 18.

**occupātiō**, -ōnis, *f.* [occupō, seize], seizing; occupation, business, engagement. IV, 16.

**occupō**, 1, *tr.* [ob+capio, take], take possession of, seize, occupy; engage, employ. I, 3.

**occurrō**, -currere, -curri, -cursum, *intr.* [ob+currō, run], run in the way of, meet; happen upon; go to, come to; oppose, counteract; occur. I, 33; II, 21.

**Oceanus**, -i, *m.*, the ocean; *as adj.*, with mare, the ocean. I, 1.

**Ocelum**, -i, *n.* (Dg), Ocelum: (ōs'ē-lūm). I, 10.

**octāvus**, -a, -um, *ord. num. adj.* [octō, eight], eighth. II, 23.

**octingenti**, -ae, -a, *card. num. adj.* [octō, eight], eight hundred. IV, 12.

**octō** (VIII), *card. num. adj. indecl.*, eight. I, 21.

**Octodūrus**, -i, *m.* (Cg), Octodurus (ōk'tō-dū'rūs). III, 1.

**octōgēni**, -ae, -a, *distr. num. adj.* [octō, eight], eighty each, eighty.

**octōgintā** (LXXX), *card. num. adj. indecl.* [octō, eight], eighty. I, 2.

**octōni**, -ae, -a, *distr. num. adj.* [octō, eight], eight at a time, eight.

**oculus**, -i, *m.*, eye. I, 12.

**ōdi**, **ōdisse**, (App. 86), *tr.*, *pf.* with meaning of *pres.*, hate, detest. I, 18.

**odium**, -di, *n.*, hatred.

**offendō**, -fendere, -fendi, -fēsum, *tr.* [ob+fendō, strike], strike against, hurt, harm; **animum offendere**, hurt the feelings, offend. I, 19.

**offensio**, -ōnis, *f.* [offendō, hurt], offence. I, 19.

**offerō**, -offerre, -obtuli, -oblātum, *tr.* [ob+ferō, bear], bring before, present; offer, confer upon, give; with **sē**, expose one's self to, charge upon, encounter. II, 21.

**officium**, -ci, *n.*, service, allegiance, duty; official duty, business; **esse, manēre, or permanēre in officio**, to remain faithful. I, 40; III, 11.

**Olovicō**, -ōnis, *m.*, Olovico (ō-lōv'ī-kō), a king of the *Nittobroges*.

**omittō**, -mittere, -misi, -missum, *tr.* [ob+mittō, send], let go or fall, drop; give up, neglect, disregard. II, 17.

**omniō**, *adv.* [omnis, all], at all; whatever; altogether, entirely, wholly; in all, only. I, 6.

**omnis**, -e, *adj.*, all, every, all the, every kind of; the whole, as a whole; *m. pl. as noun*, all, every one; all the rest; *n. pl. as noun*, all possessions or goods. I, 1.

**onerārius**, -a, -um, *adj.* [onus, burden], fitted for burdens; with **nāvis**, transport, freight ship. IV, 22.

**onerō**, 1, *tr.* [onus, load], load.

**onus**, -eris, *n.*, load, burden; weight, size. II, 30.

**opera**, -ae, *f.* [opus, work], work, exertion; service; pains, attention; dare **operam**, give attention, take pains. II, 25.

**opiniō**, -ōnis, *f.* [opinor, think], way of thinking, opinion; impression; expectation; reputation; **opiniō timōris**, impression of cowardice. II, 8.

**oportet**, -ēre, -uit, —, *intr. impers.*, it is necessary, needful, becoming, proper; when translated as personal verb, must, ought. I, 4.

**oppidānus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [oppidum, town], of or pertaining to a town; in

*pl. as noun*, townspeople, inhabitants of a town. II, 7.

**oppidum**, -i, *n.*, fortified town, town, stronghold. I, 5.

**oppōnō**, -pōnere, -posui, -positum, *tr.* [ob+pōnō, place], place against or opposite, oppose; **oppositus**, *pf. part. as adj.*, in front, opposite.

**opportūnō**, *adv.* [opportūnus, fit], opportunely, seasonably. IV, 22.

**opportunitās**, -tātis, *f.* [opportūnus, fit], fitness; fit time, opportunity; advantage; with **loci**, favorable situation or position; with **temporis**, favorable opportunity. III, 12.

**opportūnus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, fit, opportune, lucky, suitable; favorable, advantageous. I, 30; II, 8.

**oppositus**, *see* **oppōnō**.

**opprimō**, -primere, -pressi, -pressum, *tr.* [ob+premō, press], press down, oppress; overwhelm, overpower, destroy; fall upon, surprise. I, 44; III, 2.

**oppugnātiō**, -ōnis, *f.* [oppugnō, storm], a storming, besieging, siege, assault, attack; plan or method of storming. II, 6.

**oppugnō**, 1, *tr.* [ob+pugnō, fight], fight against, attack, assault, storm, besiege. I, 5.

**ops**, **opis**, *f.*, help, aid; *pl.*, wealth, resources; authority, influence, strength. I, 20.

**optātus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [optō, wish], wished for, desired, welcome.

**optimē**, *sup. of bene*.

**optimus**, *sup. of bonus*.

**opus**, **operis**, *n.*, work, labor; military work or works, fortifications, defenses; a work of *en. neering or architecture*; **nātūrā et oi zre**, by nature and art; **opera**, crafts. I, 8.

**opus**, *indecl. noun, n.* [cf. **opus**, work, deed], need, necessity; **opus est**, it is necessary, there is need, the thing needed being expressed either by the *nom.* or *abl.* (App. 146). I, 34; II, 8.

**ōra**, -ae, *f.*, border, margin; coast, shore. III, 8.

**ōrātiō**, -ōnis, *f.* [ōrō, speak], a speak-

ing, speech, language, words, address, argument. I, 3.  
**ōrātor**, -ōris, *m.* [ōrō, speak], speaker; ambassador, envoy. IV, 27.  
**orbis**, -is, *m.*, orb, ring, circle; **orbis terrārum**, the world. IV, 37.  
**Orcynia**, -ae, *f.* Orcynia (ōr-sīn'ī-a), same as Hercynia.  
**ōrdō**, -inis, *m.*, row, tier, layer; rank, line of soldiers; arrangement, order; degree, rank; **primi ordinēs**, centurions of the first rank. I, 40; II, 11.  
**Orgetorix**, -igis, *m.*, Orgetorix (ōr-jēt'-ō-riks), a chief of the Helvetii. I, 2.  
**orior**, **oriri**, **ortus sum**, *intr.*, arise, begin, spring up, rise, start; be born, descend; **oriēns sōl**, the rising sun, sunrise; the east. I, 1.  
**ōrnāmentum**, -i, *n.* [ōrnō, adorn], ornament; mark of honor. I, 44.  
**ōrnō**, 1, *tr.*, adorn; furnish, supply; **ōrnātus**, *pf. part. as adj.*, equipped, furnished, fitted out. III, 14.  
**ōrō**, 1, *tr.* [ōs, mouth], speak; beseech, entreat. I, 20.  
**ortus**, -ūs, *m.* [orior, rise], rising.  
**ōs**, -ōris, *n.*, mouth; face, countenance.  
**Osismi**, -ōrum, *m.* (Bb), the Osismi (ō-sīs'mi), a Gallic people in modern Brittany. II, 34.  
**ostendō**, -tendere, -tendi, -tentum, *tr.* [obs+tendō, stretch], stretch before; present, show, bring into view, reveal; tell, declare; point out, mention. I, 8.  
**ostentātiō**, -ōnis, *f.* [ostentō, show], show, display; pretence; pride.  
**ostentō**, 1, *tr.* [freq. of ostendō, show], show frequently; show, exhibit.  
**ōtium**, -tī, *n.*, leisure, inactivity, quiet.  
**ōvum**, -i, *n.*, egg. IV, 10.

## P.

**P.**, *abbr. for Pūblius, a Roman praenomen.* I, 21.  
**pābulātiō**, -ōnis, *f.* [pābulor, forage], getting fodder, foraging. I, 15.  
**pābulātor**, -ōris, *m.* [pābulor, forage], forager.  
**pābulor**, 1, *intr.* [pābulum, fodder], forage.

**pābulum**, -i, *n.* [*cf.* pāscō, feed], fodder, provender. I, 16.  
**pācō**, 1, *tr.* [pāx, peace], make peaceful, subdue, pacify; **pācātus**, *pf. part. as adj.*, peaceful, quiet, subdued. I, 6.  
**pactum**, -i, *n.* [paciscor, agree to], agreement; manner.  
**Padus**, -i, *m.* (Dh), the Padus (pā/dūs), better, the Po, the largest river of northern Italy.  
**paene**, *adv.*, nearly, almost. I, 11.  
**paenitet**, **paenitēre**, **paenituit**, —, *tr.*, *impers.*, it causes regret; makes one repent; when translated as *pers. verb*, repent (App. 109). IV, 5.  
**pāgus**, -i, *m.*, village; district, province, canton. I, 12.  
**palam**, *adv.*, openly, publicly.  
**palma**, -ae, *f.*, palm of the hand.  
**palūs**, -ūdis, *f.*, marsh, morass, swamp. I, 40; II, 9.  
**palūster**, -tris, -tre, *adj.* [palūs, swamp], swampy, marshy.  
**pandō**, **pandere**, **pandi**, **passum**, *tr.*, spread or stretch out, extend; **passis capillis**, with disheveled hair; **passis manibus**, with outstretched hands. I, 51; II, 13.  
**pār**, **paris**, *adj.*, equal, like, similar; equal to, a match for; with words of number and quantity, the same; **pār atque**, the same as. I, 28.  
**parcē**, *adv.* [parcus, frugal], frugally, sparingly.  
**parō**, **parcere**, **peperi**, **parsum**, *intr.* [parcus, frugal], be frugal or economical; spare, not injure.  
**parēns**, -entis, *m.*, *f.* [pariō, bring forth], parent.  
**parentō**, 1, *intr.* [parēns, parent], make funeral offerings especially for parents; avenge.  
**pāreō**, 2, *intr.* [*cf.* pariō, bring forth], appear; obey, yield to, be subject to. I, 27.  
**pariō**, **parere**, **peperi**, **partum**, *tr.*, bring forth; gain, acquire, win.  
**Parisi**, -ōrum, *m.* (Be), the Parisii (pā-riz'h'yī), a Gallic tribe about modern Paris.  
**parō**, 1, *tr.*, prepare, get ready; procure, acquire; prepare for get ready for;

**parātus**, *pf. part. as adj.*, ready, prepared; equipped. I, 5.  
**pars**, **partis**, *f.*, part, portion; party, faction; direction, side, place; district. I, 1.  
**partim**, *adv. [acc. of pars, part]*, partly, in part; **partim . . . partim**, some . . . others. II, 1.  
**partior**, *4, tr. [pars, part]*, part, share, divide. III, 10.  
**partus**, *see pario*.  
**parum**, *adv. [parvus, little]*, little, too little, not sufficiently. III, 18.  
**parvulus**, *-a, -um, adj. [dim. of parvus]*, little, small, insignificant, slight; **parvula proelia**, skirmishes; **parvuli**, children. II, 30.  
**parvus**, *-a, -um, adj.*, little, small, insignificant; *comp.*, **minor**, **minus**, lesser, smaller; shorter; **minus**, *as noun*, less; *sup.*, **minimus**, *-a, -um*, least, very small. I, 8.  
**passim**, *adv.*, in all directions. IV, 14.  
**passus**, *-ūs, m. [pandō, extend]*, a pace, the distance from where the foot leaves the ground to where the same foot strikes it again, a measure of 4 feet, 10 1/4 inches (five Roman feet); **mille passus** or **passuum**, a Roman mile, 4852 feet. I, 2.  
**passus**, *see pandō and patior*.  
**patefaciō**, *-facere, -feci, -factum, tr. [pateō, be open+faciō, make]*, make or throw open, open. II, 32.  
**patefiō**, *-feri, -factus sum, pass. of patefaciō*.  
**patēns**, *-entis, adj. [pateō, be open]*, open, unobstructed, accessible. I, 10.  
**pateō**, *-ēre, -ui, —, intr.*, lie or be open, be passable; stretch out, extend. I, 2.  
**pater**, *-tris, m.*, father; *in pl.*, forefathers, ancestors; **pater familiae**, father or head of a family. I, 3.  
**patienter**, *adv. [patiēns; patior, endure]*, patiently.  
**patientia**, *-ae, f. [patiēns; patior, endure]*, endurance, patience.  
**patior**, **pati**, **passus sum**, *tr. and intr.*, endure, withstand, suffer; permit, allow. I, 6.

**patrius**, *-a, -um, adj. [pater, father]*, fatherly; ancestral. II, 15.  
**patrōnus**, *-i, m. [pater, father]*, protector, patron.  
**patruus**, *-i, m. [pater, father]*, a father's brother, uncle.  
**pauci**, *-ae, -a, adj. (used rarely in sing.)*, few; *as noun*, few persons or things. I, 15.  
**paucitās**, *-tātis, f. [paucus, few]*, fewness, small number. III, 2.  
**paulatim**, *adv. [paulus, little]*, little by little, by degrees, gradually. I, 33; II, 8.  
**paulisper**, *adv. [paulus, little]*, for a short time, for a little while. II, 7.  
**paulō**, *adv. [paulus, little]*, a little, somewhat, slightly. I, 54; II, 20.  
**paululum**, *adv. [paulus, little]*, a very little. II, 8.  
**paulum**, *adv. [paulus, little]*, a little, somewhat, slightly. I, 50; II, 25.  
**paulus**, *-a, -um, adj.*, little; **paulum**, *as noun*, a little; **post paulum**, soon after.  
**pāx**, **pācis**, *f.*, peace; favor. I, 3.  
**peccō**, *1, intr.*, sin, transgress, do wrong. I, 47.  
**pectus**, *-oris, n.*, the breast.  
**pecūnia**, *-ae, f.*, property, wealth; money.  
**pecus**, *-oris, n.*, cattle, a herd; *usually* small cattle, sheep; meat, flesh. III, 29.  
**pedālis**, *-e, adj. [pēs, foot]*, of a foot in thickness or diameter. III, 13.  
**pedes**, **peditis**, *m. [pēs, foot]*, foot soldier; *pl.*, infantry, foot. I, 42; II, 24.  
**pedester**, *-tris, -tre, adj. [pēs, foot]*, on foot, pedestrian; **pedestrēs cōpi-ae**, infantry. II, 17.  
**peditātus**, *-ūs, m. [pedes, foot soldier]*, foot soldiers, infantry. IV, 34.  
**Pedius**, *-dī, m.*, Quintus Pedius (kwīn' tūs pē'dī-ūs), one of Caesar's lieutenants. II, 2.  
**peius**, *comp. of malus*.  
**pellis**, *-is, f.*, a hide, a skin (*either on or off the body of an animal*); tent made of hides. II, 33.  
**pellō**, **pellere**, **pepull**, **pulsum**, *tr.*

beat, defeat, rout; drive out, expel. I, 7.

**pendō, pendere, pependi, pēnsum, tr.**, weigh, weigh out; weigh out *money*, pay, pay out; *with poenās*, suffer. I, 36.

**penitus, adv.**, deeply; far within.

**per, prep. with acc.**, through, through-out; by means of, through the agency of, on account of, through the efforts or influence of; **per sē**, of their own accord, on their own responsibility; *sometimes with intensive force*, in itself, themselves; *in composition*, through, very, thoroughly, completely. I, 3.

**peragō, -agere, -ēgi, -āctum, tr.** [agō, lead], lead through; complete, finish.

**perangustus, -a, -um, adj.** [angustus, narrow], very narrow.

**percipio, -cipere, -cēpi, -ceptum, tr.** [capio, take], take completely, obtain; learn of, hear.

**percontatio, -ōnis, f.**, inquiring, inquiry. I, 39.

**percurrō, -currere, -curri, -cursum, intr.** [currō, run], run along or over. IV, 33.

**percutio, -cutere, -cussi, -cussum, tr.**, strike or thrust through, slay.

**perdiscō, -discere, -didici, —, tr.** [discō, learn], learn thoroughly, learn by heart.

**perdō, -dere, -didi, -ditum, tr.** [dō, give], give over, ruin; **perditus, pf. part. as adj.**, desperate, ruined. III, 17.

**perducō, -ducere, -dūxi, -ductum, tr.** [ducō, lead], lead through or along, conduct, bring over, bring; construct, extend; influence, win over; draw out, prolong. I, 8.

**perendinus, -a, -um, adj.**, after to-morrow.

**pereo, -ire, -ii, -itum, intr.** [eo, go. App. 84], be destroyed or killed, perish. I, 53; IV, 15.

**perequitō, 1, intr.** [equitō, ride], ride about, ride through or around. IV, 33.

**perexiguus, -a, -um, adj.** [exiguus, little], very little.

**perfacilis, -e, adj.** [facilis, easy], very easy. I, 2.

**perfectus, see perficiō.**

**perferō, -ferre, -tuli, -lātum, tr.** [ferō, bear], bear or carry through, convey, deliver; announce, report; submit to, endure, suffer. I, 17.

**perficiō, -ficere, -fēci, -fectum, tr.** [faciō, make, do], make or do thoroughly or completely, complete, finish; construct, build; achieve, accomplish, cause. I, 3.

**perfidia, -ae, f.** [perfidus, faithless], treachery, perfidy; falsehood, dishonesty. IV, 13.

**perfringō, -fringere, -frēgi, -fractum, tr.** [frangō, break], break or burst through. I, 25.

**perfuga, -ae, m.** [perfugio, flee for refuge], refugee, deserter. I, 28.

**perfugio, -fugere, -fūgi, -fugitum, intr.** [fugio, flee], flee for refuge, take refuge; desert. I, 27.

**perfugium, -gi, n.** [perfugio, flee for refuge], place of refuge, refuge. IV, 38.

**pergō, pergere, perrēxi, perrēctum, intr.** [per+regō, keep straight], go on, proceed. III, 18.

**periclitor, 1, tr. and intr.** [periculum, trial, danger], try, test; be in danger or peril. II, 8.

**periculōsus, -a, -um, adj.** [periculum, danger], full of danger, dangerous, perilous. I, 33.

**periculum, -i, n.**, trial, test, attempt; risk, danger, peril. I, 5.

**peritus, -a, -um, adj.** [cf. experior, try], tried, experienced, skilled; familiar with, acquainted with. I, 21.

**perlātus, see perferō.**

**perlegō, -legere, -lēgi, -lēctum, tr.** [legō, read], read through, read.

**perluō, -luere, -lui, -lūtum, tr.** [luō, wash], wash completely, bathe; *pass. as middle voice*, bathe one's self.

**permagnus, -a, -um, adj.** [magnus, large], very large, very great.

**permaneō, -manēre, -mānsi, -mānsum, intr.** [maneō, remain], stay through or to the end, stay, remain; continue, persist. I, 32; III, 8.

**permisceō, -miscere, -miscui, -mixtum, tr.** [miscēō, mix], mix thoroughly, mingle.

**permittō, -mittere, -misi, -missum, tr.** [mittō, send], give up or over, surrender; entrust, commit; permit. allow. I, 20; II, 3.

**permixtus, see permiscēō.**

**permovēō, -movēre, -mōvi, -mōtum, tr.** [movēō, move], move thoroughly, arouse, incite, excite; affect, influence. I, 3.

**permulcēō, -mulcēre, -mulsi, -mulsum, tr.** [mulcēō, soothe], soothe completely, appease. IV, 6.

**perniciēs, -ōi, f.** [cf. *nox*, death], ruin, destruction. I, 20.

**perpauci, -ae, -a, adj.** [pauci, few], very few, but very few; *m. pl. as noun*, very few. I, 6.

**perpendiculum, -i, n.**, plummet, plumb-line. IV, 17.

**perpetior, -peti, -pessus sum, tr.** [patior, suffer], suffer, bear patiently.

**perpetuō, adv.** [perpetuus, continuous], continuously, constantly; forever. I, 31.

**perpetuus, -a, -um, adj.**, continuous, uninterrupted; permanent, lasting, continual; whole, entire; *n. as noun in phrase in perpetuum*, forever. I, 35; III, 2.

**perquirō, -quirere, -quisivi, -quisitum, tr.** [quaerō, ask], ask about, make careful inquiry.

**perrumpō, -rumpere, -rūpi, -ruptum, tr. and intr.** [rumpō, break], break through, force one's way through, force a passage. I, 8.

**perscribō, -scribere, -scripsi, -scriptum, tr.** [scribō, write], write out, report, describe.

**persequor, -sequi, -secutus sum, tr.** [sequor, follow], follow through, continue in; pursue, follow up; avenge. I, 13.

**perseverō, 1, intr.**, persist, persevere. I, 13.

**persolvō, -solvere, -solvi, -solutum, tr.** [solvō, pay], pay in full; suffer (punishment). I, 12.

**perspicio, -spicere, -spexi, -spectrum, tr.** [speciō, look], look or see through, view, examine, inspect; perceive, real-

ize, learn, find out, ascertain. I, 40; II, 11.

**perstō, -stāre, -stiti, -stātum, intr.** [stō, stand], stand firm, persist.

**persuādēō, -suādēre, -suāsi, -suāsum, tr. and intr.** [suādēō, advise], advise prevailingly; convince, persuade, prevail upon; inculcate; *sibi persuādēri*, be convinced. I, 2.

**perterreō, 2, tr.** [terreō, frighten], frighten thoroughly, terrify greatly. I, 13.

**pertinācia, -ae, f.** [pertineō, hold through or fast], obstinacy, stubbornness, pertinacity. I, 42.

**pertineō, -tinēre, -tinui, —, intr.** [teneō, hold], hold or reach to, extend; pertain, have reference to, concern; tend, aim at; *eōdem pertinēre*, tend to the same purpose or result, amount to the same thing. I, 1.

**pertull, see perferō.**

**perturbātiō, -ōnis, f.** [perturbō, disturb], disturbance, disorder, confusion. IV, 29.

**perturbō, 1, tr.** [turbō, disturb], disturb greatly, throw into confusion, embarrass, disturb; alarm, terrify. I, 39; II, 11.

**pervagor, 1, intr.** [vagor, wander], wander about, scatter.

**pervenio, -venire, -vēni, -ventum, intr.** [veniō, come], come through; come to, arrive at, reach; *of property*, fall, revert. I, 7.

**pēs, pedis, m.**, the foot; a foot, 11.65 inches in length; *pedibus*, on foot; *pedem referre*, retreat. I, 8.

**petō, -ere, -ivi or -ii, -itum, tr. and intr.**, seek, hunt for, aim at, make for, attack, go to, direct one's course to or toward; seek to obtain, strive after; ask, request, beseech. I, 19.

**Petrocorii, -ōrum, m.** (Dod), the Petrocorii (pēv'rō-kō'rī-i).

**Petrōnius, -ni, m.**, Marcus Petronius (mār'kūs pē-trō'nī-ūs), a centurion of the 8th legion.

**Petrosidius, -di, m.**, Lucius Petrosidius (lū'shydys pēv'rō-sīd'i-ūs), a standards bearer.

**phalanx**, -ngis, *f.*, a compact body of troops, phalanx. I, 24.

**Pictonēs**, -um, *m.* (Cod), the Pictones [pik'tō-nēz]. III, 11.

**pietās**, -tātis, *f.* [pius, dutiful], devotion, loyalty.

**pilum**, -i, *n.*, heavy javelin, pike. I, 25.

**pilus**, -i, *m.*, century of soldiers; **primus pilus**, first century of a legion; **primi pili centuriō**, or **primipilus**, the centurion of the first century, chief centurion. III, 5.

**pinna**, -ae, *f.*, feather; battlement, parapet.

**Piristae**, -ārum, *m.*, the Pirustae (pirūs'tō), a tribe of Illyricum.

**piscis**, -is, *m.*, fish. IV, 10.

**Pisō**, -ōnis, *m.* (1), Marcus Pupius Piso Calpurnianus (mār'kūs pū'pi-us pī'sō kāl-pēr'nī-ā'nūs), consul with Messala, 61 B.C. I, 2. (3), Lucius Calpurnius Piso (lū'shyūs kāl-pēr'nī-ūs pī'sō), killed in the defeat of Cassius' army by the Tigurini, 107 B.C. I, 12. (8), Lucius Calpurnius Piso, Caesar's father-in-law; consul 58 B.C. I, 6. (4), Piso, an Aquitanian. IV, 12.

**pix**, **piceis**, *f.*, pitch.

**placeō**, 3, *intr.* [cf. plācō, appease], please, satisfy; often *impers.*, seem good to one, hence, decide, resolve, determine. I, 34; III, 3.

**placidē**, *adv.* [placidus, calm], calmly.

**plācō**, 1, *tr.*, appease.

**Plancus**, see **Munātius**.

**plānē**, *adv.* [plānus, even, plain], plainly, clearly, distinctly. III, 26.

**plānitīēs**, -ēi, *f.* [plānus, level], level ground, plain. I, 43; II, 8.

**plānus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, even, level, flat, plain. III, 13.

**plēbs**, **plēbis**, or **plēbēs**, -ēi, *f.*, populace, common people. I, 3.

**plēnē**, *adv.* [plēnus, full], fully. III, 3.

**plēnus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [plēō, fill], full, whole, complete. III, 2.

**plērique**, -aeque, -aque, *adj. pl.*, very many, the most of; as *noun*, a great many, very many. II, 4.

**plērumque**, *adv.* [plērusque, the greater part], for the most part, mostly,

generally; again and again, very often. I, 40; II, 30.

**Pleumoxil**, -ōrum, *m.* (Af), the Pleumoxii (plū-mōk'sī-i).

**plumbum**, -i, *n.*, lead; **plumbum album**, tin.

**plūrimus**, *see multum*.

**plārimus**, *see multus*.

**plūs**, *see multus and multum*.

**pluteus**, -i, *m.*, parapet; a mantelet or screen of movable shields.

**pōculum**, -i, *n.*, cup.

**poena**, -ae, *f.*, punishment, penalty. I, 4.

**pollex**, -icis, *m.*, the thumb, with or without digitus. III, 13.

**polliceor**, 2, *tr. and intr.* [prō+liceor, bid, offer], hold forth, offer, promise, pledge. I, 14.

**pollicitātīō**, -ōnis, *f.* [polliceor, promise], promise, offer. III, 18.

**pollicitus**, *see polliceor*.

**Pompēius**, -i, *m.* (1), Gnaeus Pompeius (nē'ūs pōm-pē'yūs), better, Pompey, triumvir with Caesar and Crassus in 60 B.C., defeated by Caesar at Pharsalia, and murdered in Egypt by Ptolemy, 48 B.C. IV, 1. (2), Gnaeus Pompeius, an interpreter of Quintus Titurius.

**pondus**, -eris, *n.* [cf. pendō, weigh], weight. II, 29.

**pōnō**, **pōnere**, **posui**, **positum**, *tr.*, place, put, place over; lay down, set aside; station, post; regard, consider; make, build; with *castra*, pitch; *pass.*, be situated; with *in* and *abl.*, depend on, in addition to above meanings. I, 16.

**pōns**, **pontis**, *m.*, bridge. I, 6.

**poposci**, *see poscō*.

**populātīō**, -ōnis, *f.* [populus, ravage], ravaging, pillaging. I, 15.

**populus**, 1, *tr.*, devastate, ravage, lay waste. I, 11.

**populus**, -i, *m.*, the people, the mass, the crowd, as opposed to individuals; a people or nation. I, 3.

**porrigō**, -rigere, -rēxi, -rēctum, *tr.* [prō+regō, keep straight], extend; **porrēctus**, *pf. part. as adj.*, extended, in extent. II, 19.

**porrō**, *adv.*, farther on; furthermore, then.

**porta**, -ae, *f.*, gate. II, 24.  
**portō**, 1, *tr.*, carry, transport, bring, take. I, 5.  
**portōrium**, -ri, *n.*, toll, tariff on imports or exports. I, 18.  
**portus**, -ūs, *m.* [*cf.* porta, gate], harbor, haven, port. III, 8.  
**poscō**, **poscere**, **poposci**, —, *tr.*, ask, demand, request, require. I, 27.  
**positus**, *see* **pōnō**.  
**possessio**, -ōnis, *f.* [**possideō**, possess], possession, occupation; a possession, property. I, 11.  
**possideō**, -sidere, -sēdi, -sessum, *tr.* [**sedeō**, sit], occupy, hold, possess. I, 34; II, 4.  
**possidō**, -sidere, -sēdi, -sessum, *tr.*, take possession of, seize. IV, 7.  
**possum**, **posse**, **potui**, —, (App. 80), *intr.* [**potis**, able+**sum**, be], be able, can; to have power or influence, have strength, be strong; with **quam** and *sup.*, as possible, *e.g.*, **quam plurimās** **possunt**, as many as possible; **multum posse**, **plūs posse** and **plurimum posse**, *see* **multum**. I, 2.  
**post**, *adv.*, and *prep. with acc.* (1) *As adv.*, later, afterwards. (2) *As prep.*, behind, after; **post tergum** or **post sē**, in the rear. I, 5.  
**postea**, *adv.* [**post**, after], after this, afterwards. I, 21.  
**posteaquam**, *adv.* [**postea**, afterwards + **quam**, than], after. I, 31; IV, 19.  
**posterus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [**post**, after], after, following, next; in *m. pl.* as *noun*, posterity; *sup.*, **postrēmus** or **postumus**, last. I, 15.  
**postpōnē**, -pōnere, -posui, -positum, *tr.* [**post**, after+**pōnō**, place], place after, postpone; disregard.  
**postquam**, *conj.* [**post**, afterwards + **quam**, than], after, as soon as. I, 24.  
**postrēmō**, *adv.* [**postrēmus**, last], finally, at last.  
**postridiē**, *adv.* [**posterus**, following+**diēs**, day], on the day following, the next day; **postridiē eius diēi**, on the next or following day. I, 23.  
**postulātum**, -i, *n.* [**postulō**, demand], demand, claim, request. I, 40; IV, 11.

**postulō**, 1, *tr.*, request, ask, demand; require, necessitate. I, 31; II, 4.  
**potēns**, -entis, *adj.* [*pres. part. of* **possum**, be able], powerful, influential. I, 3.  
**potentātus**, -ūs, *m.* [**potēns**, powerful], chief power, supremacy. I, 31.  
**potentia**, -ae, *f.* [**potēns**, powerful], power, authority, influence. I, 18.  
**potestās**, -tātis, *f.* [**potēns**, powerful], ability, power, authority; control, sway, rule; chance, opportunity, possibility; **potestātem facere**, grant permission, give a chance. I, 16.  
**potior**, 4, *intr.* [**potis**, powerful], become master of, get control or possession of, obtain, capture. I, 2.  
**potius**, *adv.* [*comp. of* **potis**, able], rather. I, 45; II, 10.  
**potitus**, *see* **potior**.  
**prae**, *prep. with abl.*, before, in front of; on account of; in comparison with; in composition, before, at the head of, in front, very. II, 30.  
**praeacūtus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [*pf. part. of* **praeacuo**, sharpen at the end], sharp in front or at the end, sharpened, pointed. II, 29.  
**praebeō**, 2, *tr.* [**prae**+**habeō**, hold], hold out, offer, furnish, present. II, 17.  
**praecaveō**, -cavēre, -cāvī, -cautum, *intr.* [**caveō**, guard against], guard against before hand, take precautions. I, 38.  
**praecedō**, -cēdere, -cessi, -cessum, *tr.* [**cēdō**, go], go before; surpass, excel. I, 1.  
**praeceps**, -cipitis, *adj.* [**caput**, head], headforemost, headlong; steep, precipitous. II, 24.  
**praeceptum**, -i, *n.* [**prae**+**cipiō**, instruct], instruction, injunction, command.  
**praeceptiō**, -cipere, -cēpi, -ceptum, *tr.* [**capīō**, take], take or obtain beforehand, anticipate; instruct, bid, order. I, 22.  
**praecipitō**, 1, *tr.* [**praeceps**, headlong], throw or hurl headlong, precipitate. IV, 15.  
**praecipuē**, *adv.* [**prae**+**cipuus**, especial], especially, particularly. I, 40.

**praecipuus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, especial.  
**praeciūdō**, -clūdere, -clūsi, -clūsum, *tr.* [prae+claudō, shut], close or shut in front, block up, close.  
**praecō**, -ōnis, *m.*, herald.  
**praecōninus**, *see* Valerius.  
**praecurrō**, -currere, -curri, -cursum, *intr.* [currō, run], run before, hasten on before, precede; outstrip, surpass.  
**praeda**, -ae, *f.*, booty, plunder, spoil. IV, 34.  
**praedicō**, 1, *tr.* [dicō, proclaim], proclaim publicly or before others; declare, report, tell of. I, 39; IV, 34.  
**praedor**, 1, *tr.* [praeda, booty], make booty, plunder, rob, despoil. II, 17.  
**praedūcō**, -dūcere, -dūxi, -ductum, *tr.* [dūcō, lead], lead before, construct before or in front.  
**praefectus**, -i, *m.* [praeficiō, place over], overseer, prefect, commander, officer, captain (*usually of cavalry*). I, 39; III, 7.  
**praefērō**, -ferre, -tuli, -lātum, *tr.* [ferō, bear, bring. App. 81], place before, esteem above, prefer to *with* quam; praeferre sē alicui, surpass. II, 27.  
**praeficiō**, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum, *tr.* [faciō, make], make before; place over, put in command of, put at the head of, place in charge of. I, 10.  
**praefigō**, -figere, -fixi, -fixum, *tr.* [figō, fix], fix or set in front.  
**praeful**, *see* praesum.  
**praemetuō**, -metuere, -metui, —, *intr.* [metuō, fear], fear beforehand, be apprehensive.  
**praemittō**, -mittere, -misi, -missum, *tr.* [mittō, send], send before or in advance. I, 15.  
**praemium**, -mī, *n.*, distinction, prize, reward. I, 43; III, 18.  
**praecupō**, 1, *tr.* [occupō, seize], seize upon beforehand, preoccupy, take possession of.  
**praeroptō**, 1, *tr.* [optō, wish], wish before; prefer. I, 25.  
**praeparō**, 1, *tr.* [parō, prepare], prepare beforehand, provide. III, 14.  
**praepōnō**, -pōnere, -posui, -positum,

*tr.* [pōnō, place], place before or over, put in command of, put in charge of. I, 54.  
**praerumpō**, -rumpere, -rūpi, -ruptum, *tr.* [rumpō, break], break off, tear away; praeruptus, *pf. part. as adj.*, steep, precipitous. III, 14.  
**praesaepiō**, -saepire, -saepi, -saepitum, *tr.* [saepiō, hedge], hedge or block up.  
**praescribō**, -scribere, -scripsi, -scriptum, *tr.* [scribō, write], write beforehand; order, direct, prescribe, dictate to. I, 36; II, 20.  
**praescriptum**, -i, *n.* [praescribō, order], order, dictation, command. I, 36.  
**praesēns**, -entis, *pres. part. of praesum*.  
**praesentia**, -ae, *f.* [praesēns; praesum, be present], presence; the present moment; in praesentiā, for the present; then. I, 15.  
**praesentiō**, -sentire, -sēnsi, -sēnsus, *tr.* [sentiō, feel], feel beforehand, foresee.  
**praesertim**, *adv.*, particularly, especially. I, 16.  
**praesidium**, -di, *n.* [praesideō, guard], guard, garrison; safeguard, protection; fortification, stronghold; help, aid; safety. I, 8.  
**praestō**, *adv.*, at hand, ready; *with* sum, meet.  
**praestō**, -stāre, -stiti, -stātum, *tr. and intr.* [stō, stand], stand or place before; show, exhibit, supply, furnish; be superior, excel, surpass; *impers.*, praestat, it is better or more advisable. I, 2.  
**praesum**, -esse, -ful, *intr.* [sum, be. App. 77], be before or over, be in command of, rule over, be at the head of; praesēns, *pres. part. as adj.*, present, in person; for the present. I, 16.  
**praeter**, *prep. with acc.* [prae, before], before; beyond, past; contrary to; in addition to, except, besides. I, 11.  
**praetereā**, *adv.* [praeter, beyond], beyond this, besides, furthermore. I, 34; III, 17.  
**praetereō**, -ire, -ii, -itum, *tr. and intr.* [eō, go. App. 84], go beyond, pass by,

omit; *praeteritus*, *pf. part. as adj.*, past; *n. plu. as noun*, the past. I, 20.

*praetermittō*, -mittere, -misi, -missum, *tr.* [mittō, send], send by; let pass, overlook. IV, 13.

*praeterquam*, *adv.*, besides, except. I, 5.

*praetor*, -ōris, *m.*, praetor; commander. I, 21.

*praetōrius*, -a, -um, *adj.* [praetor, commander], praetorian, belonging to the general. I, 40.

*praefrō*, -frere, -ussī, -ustum, *tr.* [frō, burn], burn in front or at the end.

*praevertō*, -vertere, -verti, -versum, *tr.* [vertō, turn], forestall, anticipate.

*prāvus*, -a, -um, *adj.*, perverse, wrong.

*premō*, -premere, -pressi, -pressum, *tr.*, press, press upon, press hard; oppress, burden, annoy, harass. I, 52; II, 24.

*prēndō*, *prēndere*, *prēndī*, *prēnsum*, *tr.*, seize, grasp. I, 20.

*pretium*, -ti, *n.*, price. I, 18.

*prex*, *precis*, *f.* (in *sing. only in dat., acc. and abl.*) [precor, pray], prayer, entreaty; imprecation. I, 16.

*pridiē*, *adv.* [diēs, day], on the day before. I, 23.

*primipilus*, -i, *m.* [primus, first+pilus, a century], the centurion of the first century, chief centurion. II, 25.

*primō*, *adv.* [primus, first], at first, in the first place. I, 31; II, 8.

*primum*, *adv.* [primus, first], first, at first, in the first place, for the first time; cum *primum*, or *ubi primum*, as soon as; *quam primum*, as soon as possible, very soon. I, 25.

*primus*, -a, -um, *adj., sup.* (App. 43), first, foremost; first part of; *pl. as noun*, the first, the front rank or ranks; leaders, chiefs; in *primis*, especially. I, 10.

*principes*, -ipis, *adj.* [primus, first+capio, take], taking the first place; chief, most prominent, first; *as noun*, chief or principal person, leader, chief. I, 7.

*principatus*, -ūs *m.* [princeps, chief],

chief place or position; chief authority, leadership. I, 3.

*prior*, *prius*, *adj., comp.* (App. 43), former, previous, prior, first; *pl. as noun*, those in front. II, 11.

*pristinus*, -a, -um, *adj.* [for priustinus from prior, former], former, original; previous, preceding. I, 13.

*prius*, *adv.* [prior, former], before, sooner, previously; *prius quam*, see *priusquam*.

*priusquam* or *prius . . . quam*, *conj.*, sooner than, before; until. I, 19.

*privatim*, *adv.* [privatus, private], privately, individually, as private citizens. I, 17.

*privatus*, -a, -um, *adj.*, private, personal, individual; *as noun*, person, individual. I, 5.

*prō*, *prep. with abl.* [cf. prae, before], before, in front of; for, in behalf of; on account of, in consideration of, in return for; as, in the disguise of; in place of, instead of; in proportion to, according to; in compounds (written *prō*, *pro*, and *prōd*), for, before, forward, forth. I, 2.

*probō*, 1. *tr.* [probus, good], consider good, approve; prove, show, demonstrate. I, 3.

*prōcēdō*, -cēdere, -cessi, -cessum, *intr.* [cēdō, go], go forth or forward, proceed, advance. I, 38; II, 20.

*Procillus*, see *Valerius*.

*prōclīnō*, 1. *tr.* [clīnō, incline], bend forward, incline; *prōclīnātus*, *pf. part. as adj.*, tottering, critical.

*prōcōnsul*, -is, *m.*, a proconsul, one who at the close of his consulship in Rome became governor of a province. III, 20.

*procul*, *adv.*, afar off, from afar, in the distance, at a distance. II, 30.

*prōcumbō*, -cumbere, -cubui, -cubitum, *intr.* [cubō, lie down], lean forwards, fall down, lie down; be beaten down; incline. II, 27.

*prōcūrō*, 1. *tr.* [cūrō, care], care for, attend to.

*prōcurrō*, -currere, -curri, -cursum, *intr.* [currō, run], run or rush forward, rush out, charge. I, 52.

*prōdeō*, -ire, -ii, -itum, *intr.* [prō+eō,

go. App. 84], go *or* come forth, go forward, advance. I, 48.

**prōdesse**, *see* **prōsum**.

**prōditio**, -ōnis, *f.* [prōdō, betray], betrayal, treason.

**prōditor**, -ōris, *m.* [prōdō, betray], betrayer, traitor.

**prōdō**, -dere, -didī, -ditum, *tr.* [dō, give], give forth, reveal; betray, give up; transmit, hand down: **memoriā prōditum**, told in tradition, handed down. I, 13.

**prōducō**, -ducere, -dūxī, -ductum, *tr.* [ducō, lead], lead out *or* forth, bring forth; prolong, protract; produce; *with* cōpiās, arrange, draw up. I, 48; III, 17.

**proelior**, 1, *intr.* [proelium, battle], join *or* engage in battle, fight. II, 23.

**proelium**, -ii, *n.*, battle, contest, engagement; **proelium committere**, join *or* begin battle, risk a fight, engage in battle, fight. I, 1.

**profectiō**, -ōnis, *f.* [proficiscor, set out], a setting out, start, departure. I, 3.

**profectus**, *see* **prōficiō**.

**profectus**, *see* **proficiscor**.

**prōferō**, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum, *tr.* [ferō, bring. App. 81], bring forth *or* out, produce.

**prōficiō**, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum, *tr. and intr.* [faciō, make], make progress, advance; effect, accomplish, gain. III, 21.

**proficiscor**, **proficisci**, **profectus sum**, *intr.* [cf. **prōficiō**, advance], set out, start, depart; set out for, start for; go, proceed. I, 3.

**profiteor**, -fiterī, -fessus sum, *tr.* [fateor, confess], admit, acknowledge, declare, offer.

**prōfugō**, 1, *tr.* [fugō, strike], strike down; overcome; put to flight. II, 23.

**prōfluō**, -fluere, -flūxī, —, *intr.* [fluō, flow], flow forth, rise. IV, 10.

**profugio**, -fugere, -fūgī, -fugitum, *intr.* [fugio, flee], flee, flee from, run away, escape. I, 31; II, 14.

**prōful**, *see* **prōsum**.

**prōgnātus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [nāscor, be born], born; descended, sprung. II, 29.

**prōgredior**, -gredi, -gressus sum, *intr.* [gradior, step], step *or* go forward, advance, proceed, go. I, 50; II, 10.

**prohibeo**, 2, *tr.* [habeō, have, hold], keep from, keep, restrain, prevent, prohibit; keep out *or* away from; protect, guard. I, 1.

**prōiciō**, -icere, -fēcī, -iectum, *tr.* [iaciō, throw. App. 7], throw forward *or* away; throw, cast; reject, give up, sē **prōicere**, cast one's self; jump. I, 27.

**proinde**, *adv.*, hence, accordingly, therefore.

**prōlātus**, *see* **prōferō**.

**prōmineō**, -minēre, -minui, —, *intr.*, project, lean out.

**prōmiscuō**, *adv.*, promiscuously, in common.

**prōmittō**, -mittere, -misi, -missum, *tr.* [mittō, send], send forward; let grow.

**prōmoveō**, -movēre, -mōvi, -mōtum, *tr.* [moveō, move], move forward, advance, push forward. I, 48; II, 31.

**prōptus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, ready, active. III, 19.

**prōmunturium**, -ri, *n.* [prōmineō, project], promontory, headland. III, 12.

**prōnō**, *adv.* [prōnus, inclined], sloping downwards. IV, 17.

**prōnūtiō**, 1, *tr.* [nūtiō, announce], announce, give out publicly, tell, relate, report, say; give orders; *with* **sententia**, pronounce. IV, 5.

**prope**, *adv. and prep. with acc.* (1) *As prep.*, near, close to. (2) *As adv.*, almost, nearly; recently. I, 22.

**prōpellō**, -pellere, -puli, -pulsum, *tr.* [pellō, drive], drive forward, put to flight, rout; dislodge, drive back. I, 15.

**properō**, 1, *intr.* [properus, quick], hasten, hurry. II, 11.

**propinquitās**, -tātis, *f.* [propinquus, neighboring, near], nearness, vicinity; relationship. II, 4.

**propinquus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [prope, near], near, neighboring, close at hand; *pl. as noun*, relatives. I, 16.

**propius**, *adv. and prep. with acc.* (App. 122, b) [*comp. of* **prope**, near], nearer. I, 42; IV, 9.

**prōpōnō, -pōnere, -posui, -positum, tr.** [pōnō, place], place or put forward, present, offer; relate, tell of, explain; propose, purpose; expose. I, 17.  
**proprius, -a, -um, adj.,** one's own, characteristic, indicative.  
**propter, prep. with acc.** [prope, near], on account of, because of, in consequence of. I, 9.  
**propterea, adv.** [propter, because of], on this account; **propterea quod**, because. I, 1.  
**prōpugnātor, -ōris, m.** [prōpugnō, fight for], defender.  
**prōpugnō, 1, intr.,** fight for, defend; rush out to fight, attack. II, 7.  
**prōpull, see prōpellō.**  
**prōpulsō, 1, tr.** [freq. of prōpellō, drive forward], drive back, repel; ward off. I, 49.  
**prōra, -ae, f.,** prow. III, 13.  
**prōruō, -ruere, -rui, -rutum, tr.** [ruō, fall], overthrow. III, 26.  
**prōsequor, -sequi, -secutus sum, tr.** [sequor, follow], follow, accompany; pursue; with **ōrātiōne**, address. II, 5.  
**prōspectus, -ūs, m.** [prōspiciō, look forth], view, prospect; sight. II, 22.  
**prōspiciō, -spicere, -spexi, -spectum, intr.** [speciō, look], look forward; look to beforehand, see to, provide for, take care. I, 23.  
**prōsternō, -sternere, -strāvī, -strātum, tr.** [sternō, stretch out], prostrate, destroy.  
**prōsum, prōdesse, prōfui, intr.** [sum, be. App. 79], be useful, benefit.  
**prōtegō, -tegere, -tēxi, -tēctum, tr.** [tegō, cover], cover, protect.  
**prōterreo, 2, tr.** [terreo, frighten], terrify, frighten off.  
**prōtinus, adv.** [tenuis, as far as], continuously; forthwith, immediately. II, 9.  
**prōturbō, 1, tr.** [turbō, disturb], drive in confusion; dislodge. II, 19.  
**prōvehō, -vehere, -vexi, -vectum, tr.** [vehō, carry], carry forward; *pass.*, be carried forward, sail. IV, 28.  
**prōveniō, -venire, -vēni, -ventum, intr.** [veniō, come], come forth, grow; be produced, yield (*of grain*).

**prōventus, -ūs, m.** [prōveniō, come forth], a coming forth, result.  
**prōvideō, -vidēre, -vidī, -visum, tr.** [videō, see], see beforehand, foresee; care for, provide. II, 22.  
**prōvincia, -ae, f.,** office of governor of a province; province, a territory subject to Rome and governed by a Roman governor; especially the Province, the southern part of France. I, 1.  
**prōvinciālis, -e, adj.** [prōvincia, province], of a province; of the Province.  
**prōvisus, see prōvideō.**  
**prōvolvō, 1, intr.** [volvō, fly], fly or rush forth. II, 19.  
**proximē, adv.** [proximus, last], last; lately. I, 24.  
**proximus, -a, -um, adj., sup.** (App. 43), nearest, next; last, previous; with *acc.* (App. 123, b), next to. I, 1.  
**prudentia, -ae, f.** [prūdēns, foreseeing], prudence, foresight. II, 4.  
**Ptianiī, -ōrum, m. (Ec),** the Ptianii (tī-ā'nī-i). III, 27.  
**pūbēs, -eris, adj.,** grown up, adult; *pl. as noun*, grown men, adults.  
**pūblicē, adv.** [pūblicus, public], publicly, in the name of the state, on behalf of the state. I, 16.  
**pūblicō, 1, tr.** [pūblicus, public], adjudge to public use; confiscate.  
**pūblicus, -a, -um, adj.** [populus, people], of the state or people, common, public; *n. as noun*, public, public view; **rēs pūblica**, common weal, state. I, 12.  
**pudet, -ēre, -uit, -itum, tr., imper.,** it shames; translated as *personal*, be ashamed, feel shame.  
**pudor, -ōris, m.** [pudet, it shames], shame, sense of shame; sense of honor. I, 39.  
**puer, -erī, m.,** boy, child, son; *in pl.*, children (*of both sexes*); & *pueris*, from childhood. I, 29.  
**puerilis, -e, adj.** [puer, child], childish.  
**pugna, -ae, f.** [pugnō, fight], fight, battle, contest; **genus pugnae**, method of fighting. I, 25.  
**pugnō, 1, intr.,** fight, give battle, contend; strive; *often impers.*, as **pugnātur**, it is fought, *i.e.*, they fight. I, 25.

**pulcher**, -chra, -chrum, *adj.*, beautiful; noble, glorious.

**Pullō**, -ōnis, *m.*, Titus Pullo (tī'tūs pul'ō), a centurion of Cicero's legion.

**pulsus**, *see* pellō.

**pulsus**, -ūs, *m.* [pellō, strike], stroke. III, 13.

**pulvis**, -eris, *m.*, dust. IV, 32.

**puppis**, -is, *f.*, stern of a ship. III, 13.

**pūrgō**, 1, *tr.* [pūrus, clean+agō, do, make], clean, clear, excuse, exonerate; **pūrgātus**, *pf. part. as adj.*, freed from blame, exonerated. I, 28.

**putō**, 1, *tr.*, think, consider, believe. I, 7.

**Pyrēnaeus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, Pyrenean; **Pyrēnaei montēs** (Ecde), the Pyreneae (pī'rē-nē'i), better, Pyrenees Mountains. I, 1.

## Q.

**Q.**, *abbr. for* Quintus, Quintus (kwīn'tūs), a Roman praenomen. I, 45; II, 2.

**quā**, *adv.* [*abl. fem. of* quī], by which way or road; in which place, where. I, 6.

**quadrāgēni**, -ao, -a, *distr. num. adj.*, [quadrāgintā, forty], forty each. IV, 17.

**quadrāgintā** (XL), *card. num. adj.*, indecl., forty. I, 2.

**quadrīngentī**, -ae, -a, *card. num. adj.*, four hundred. I, 5.

**quaerō**, **quaerere**, **quaesivī**, **quaesitum**, *tr. and intr.*, seek or look for; inquire, ask, ask or inquire about. I, 18.

**quaestīō**, -ōnis, *f.* [quaerō, inquire], inquiry; examination, investigation.

**quaestor**, -ōris, *m.* [quaerō, seek], a quaestor (kwēs'tōr), one of a class of officers in charge of the public revenues or the finances of the army. I, 52; IV, 13.

**quaestus**, -ūs, *m.* [quaerō, seek], gain, acquisition.

**quālis**, -e, *interrog. adj.*, of what sort, kind or nature? I, 21.

**quam**, (1) *adv.*, (a) *interrog.*, how? (b) *rel.*, as; with *sup.* and with or without *posse*, as . . . as possible, very; **quam diū**, as long as; (2) *conj. with comp.*,

than; prius . . . quam, before; post . . . quam, postea . . . quam, after. I, 3.

**quamvis**, *adv.* [quam, as+vis, you wish], as you wish, however, very. IV, 2.

**quandō**, *indef. adv.*, ever, at any time. III, 12.

**quantopere**, *adv.* [quantus, how much+opus, work], (1) *interrog.*, how greatly? how much? (2) *rel.*, as much as. II, 5.

**quantus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [*cf.* quam, how? as], (1) *interrog.*, how much? how great? how large? what? **quantum**, *as adv.*, how much? (2) *rel.*, as much as, as; **quantum**, *as adv.*, as much as, as; **quantō** . . . **tantō** (*with comparatives*), the . . . the. I, 17.

**quantusvis**, -avis, -umvis, *adj.* [quantus, as great as+vis, you wish], as great as you wish, however great.

**quārē**, *adv.* [quī, which+rēs, thing], (1) *interrog.*, why? wherefore? (2) *rel.*, wherefore; on this account, therefore. I, 13.

**quārtus**, -a, -um, *ord. num. adj.* [quattuor, four], fourth. I, 12.

**quasi**, *conj.* [qua(m), as+si, if], as if, just as if.

**quattuor** (IV), *card. num. adj.*, indecl., four. I, 12.

**quattuordecim** (XIV), *card. num. adj.*, indecl., fourteen. I, 29.

**-que**, *conj.* (always affixed to the word or some part of the expression it connects), and; **que** . . . **que**, or **que** . . . **et**, both . . . and. I, 1.

**queror**, **querī**, **questus sum**, *tr. and intr.*, complain, bewail, lament. I, 16.

**quī**, **quae**, **quod**, *rel. pron.* (*and see quis*), who, which, what; often implying an antecedent, he who, those who; with force of *dem.*, this, that; **quod ob rem**, wherefore; **quem ad modum**, in what manner, how, as; **quō**, with *comparatives*, the; **quō** . . . **quō**, the . . . the. I, 1.

**quicquam**, *see quisquam*.

**quicumque**, **quaecumque**, **quodcumque**, *indef. (or generalizing) rel. pron.*, whoever, whatever; whosoever, what-

soever, any . . . whatever; everyone who, everything that. I, 31; III, 4.

**quid**, *interrog. adv.*, why? with *posse*, how? e. g., *quid Germāni possent*, how strong were the Germans. I, 36; II, 4.

**quidam**, *quaedam*, *quiddam* and *quidam*, *quaedam*, *quoddam*, *indef. pron.* (App. 62 and b), a certain one, some one; a certain, some, a; a kind of. I, 30; II, 17.

**quidem**, *adv.*, indeed, at any rate, at least, truly; on the other hand; *nē* . . . **quidem**, not even. I, 16.

**quies**, -ētis, *f.*, quiet, rest, repose.

**quiescens**, -a, -um, *adj.*, in repose, undisturbed, peaceful, calm, quiet.

**quin**, *conj.* [qui, who or how + *ne*, negative], that not, but that; after negative words of doubt or hindrance, but that, that, from, to; **quin etiam**, nay even, moreover. I, 3.

**quinam**, see *quisnam*.

**quincunx**, -uncis, *m.*, *quincunx*, an arrangement like the five spots on a die.

**quindecim** (XV), *card. num. adj.*, *indecl.* [quinque, five + decem, ten], fifteen. I, 15.

**quingenti**, -ae, -a (D), *card. num. adj.* [quinque, five + centum, hundred], five hundred. I, 15.

**quini**, -ae, -a, *distr. num. adj.* [quinque, five], five each, five at a time, five. I, 15.

**quinquaginta** (L), *card. num. adj.*, *indecl.*, fifty. I, 41; II, 4.

**quinque** (V), *card. num. adj.*, *indecl.*, five. I, 10.

**quintus**, -a, -um, *ord. num. adj.* [quinque, five], fifth. I, 6.

**quis**, *quid*, and *qui*, *quae*, *quod* (App. 61 and 62), (1) *interrog. pron.*, who? which? what? **quam ob rem**, why? **quem ad modum**, how? (2) *indef. pron.*, especially after *si*, *nisi*, *nē*, *num*, anyone, anything, any; somebody, something, some. I, 7.

**quisnam**, *quidnam*, and *quinam*, *quaenam*, *quodnam*, *interrog. pron.* (App. 61 and a), who? which? what? who then? what pray? II, 30.

**quispiam**, *quidpiam*, and *quispiam*,

*quaequam*, *quodpiam*, *indef. pron.* (App. 62), any one, any.

**quisquam**, *quicquam*, *indef. pron.* (App. 62), any; any person or thing. I, 19.

**quisque**, *quidque*, and *quisque*, *quaeque*, *quodque*, *universal indef. pron.* (App. 62), each one, each; every one, all. I, 5.

**quisquis**, *quicquid*, *indef. (or generalizing) rel. pron.* (App. 60, a), whoever, whatever. II, 17.

**quivis**, *quaevis*, *quidvis*, and *quivis*, *quaevis*, *quodvis*, *indef. pron.* (App. 62), [qui, who + vis, you wish], whom or what you wish; any one, anything, any whatever, any. II, 31.

**quō**, *adv.* [old *dat. case form of qui*, who, which], (1) *interrog.*, whither? to what place? (2) *rel.*, to which, to whom; to where, whither; toward which; where, wherein; (3) *indef.*, to any place, anywhere. I, 48; II, 8.

**quō**, *conj.* [abl. case form of qui, who, which], in order that, so that, that. I, 8.

**quoad**, *adv.* [quō, whither + ad, to], to where; as long as, as far as; till, until. IV, 11.

**quod**, *conj.* [adv. acc. of the neuter of qui, who, which], as to which, in that, that; as to the fact that, in so much as; because; **quod si**, but if; **propter eā quod**, because. I, 1.

**quōminus**, *conj.* [quō, so that + minus, not], so that not, that not; from. I, 31; IV, 22.

**quoniam**, *conj.* [quom = cum, since + iam, now], since now, since, inasmuch as, because, whereas. I, 35.

**quoque**, *conj.*, following the word emphasized, also, too, likewise. I, 1.

**quōqueversus**, *adv.*, in every direction, all around. III, 23.

**quot**, *adj.*, *indecl.*, (1) *interrog.*, how many? (2) *rel.*, as many as, the number that. I, 29.

**quotannis**, *adv.* [quot, as many as + annus, year], every year, yearly. I, 36; IV, 1.

**quotiens**, *adv.* [quot, how many], (1) *interrog.*, how many times? how often? (2) *rel.*, as often as. I, 43.

## R

**rādx**, -icis, *f.*, root; *in pl. with montis or collis*, foot, base. I, 38.

**rādō**, **rādere**, **rāsī**, **rāsum**, *tr.*, scrape, shave.

**raeda**, -ae, *f.*, wagon with four wheels. I, 26.

**rāmus**, -ī, *m.*, branch, bough. II, 17.

**rapiditās**, -tātis, *f.* [rapidus, swift], swiftness. IV, 17.

**rapina**, -ae, *f.* [rapiō, seize], plunder; *pl.*, plundering. I, 15.

**rārus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, scattered, far apart; *in small detachments*, a few at a time; few. III, 12.

**rāsus**, *see* **rādō**.

**ratiō**, -ōnis, *f.* [reor, reckon], reckoning, account, estimate; design, plan, strategy, science; method, arrangement; cause, reason; regard, consideration; condition, state of affairs; manner, way; condition, terms; *in pl.*, transactions. I, 28.

**ratis**, -is, *f.*, raft. I, 8.

**Rauraci**, -ōrum, *m.* (Cg), the Rauraci (raw/ra-sī). I, 5.

**re-** and **red-**, inseparable prefixes, again, back, un-, re-

**rebelliō**, -ōnis, *f.* [rebellō, renew war], renewal of war, rebellion, revolt. III, 10.

**Rebīlus**, -ī, *m.*, *see* **Caninius**.

**recēdō**, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessum, *intr.* [re-+cēdō, go], go back, retire.

**recēns**, -entis, *adj.*, recent, late; fresh, new, vigorous. I, 14.

**recēnsēō**, -cēnsēre, -cēnsui, -cēnsūm, *tr.*, inspect, review.

**receptāculum**, -ī, *n.* [recipiō, receive], retreat, refuge.

**receptus**, *see* **recipiō**.

**receptus**, -ūs, *m.* [recipiō, receive], retreat; refuge, shelter. IV, 33.

**recessus**, -ūs, *m.* [recēdō, go back], going back, retreat; chance to retreat.

**recidō**, -cidere, -cidi, -cāsum, *intr.* [cadō, fall], fall back; fall upon; be reduced.

**recipiō**, -cipere, -cēpi, -ceptum, *tr.* [re-+cipiō, take], take or get back, recover; admit, receive, receive in surrender or submission; admit of, allow;

with **sē**, withdraw one's self, retreat, escape, flee, run back; recover one's self. I, 5.

**recitō**, 1, *tr.*, read aloud.

**reclinō**, 1, *tr.* [re-+clinō, incline], lean back, recline, lean.

**rēctō**, *adv.* [rēctus, straight], properly, rightly.

**rēctus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [rēgō, keep straight], straight.

**recuperō**, 1, *tr.*, recover, regain. III, 8.

**rechūsō**, 1, *tr. and intr.*, refuse, reject; object to, make objections, complain; with **periculum**, shrink from. I, 31; III, 22.

**redāctus**, *see* **redigō**.

**reddō**, -dere, -didi, -ditum, *tr.* [red-+dō, give], give back, return, restore; give something due; make or cause to be, render. I, 35; II, 5.

**redēptus**, *see* **redimō**.

**redeō**, -ire, -ii, -itum, *intr.* [red-+eō, go, App. 84], go or turn back, return; come; fall to, descend; be referred. I, 29.

**redigō**, -igere, -ēgi, -āctum, *tr.* [red-+agō, put in motion], bring back, bring under; render, make; reduce. I, 45; II, 14.

**redimō**, -imere, -ēmi, -ēptum, *tr.* [red-+emō, buy], buy back; buy up, purchase. I, 18.

**redintegrō**, 1, *tr.* [red-+integrō, make whole], make whole again, renew, restore, revive. I, 25.

**reditiō**, -ōnis, *f.* [redeō, return], return. I, 5.

**reditus**, -ūs, *m.* [redeō, return], returning, return. IV, 30.

**Redonēs**, -um, *m.* (BCc), the Redones (rēd'ō-nēz). II, 34.

**reducō**, -ducere, -dūxi, -ductum, *tr.* [re-+ducō, lead], lead or bring back; draw back, pull back; extend back. I, 28.

**refectus**, *see* **reficiō**.

**referō**, **referre**, **rettuli**, **relātum**, *tr.* [re-+ferō, bear, App. 81], bear, carry or bring back, report; **pedem referre**, go back, retreat; **grātiā referre**, show one's gratitude, make a requital. I, 25.

**reficiō, -ficere, -fēci, -fectum, tr.** [re-+faciō, make], remake, repair; allow to rest; *with sē*, refresh one's self, rest. III, 5.

**refringō, -fringere, -frēgi, -frāctum, tr.** [re-+frangō, break], break in or open; break, diminish. II, 33.

**refugiō, -fugere, -fūgi, -fugitum, intr.** [re-+fugiō], flee back, retreat; escape.

**Rēginus, -i, m., see** Antistius.

**regiō, -ōnis, f.** [regō, keep straight], line, direction; quarter, region, country, territory, place; *ē regione, with gen.*, opposite. I, 44; II, 4.

**rēgius, -a, -um, adj.** [rēx, king], of a king, royal.

**rēgnō, 1, intr.** [rēgnum, royal power], reign, rule.

**rēgnum, -i, n.** [rēx, king], kingly or royal authority, royal power, sovereignty; kingdom. I, 2.

**regō, regere, rēxi, rēctum, tr.,** keep straight; guide, direct, control. III, 13.

**rēciō, -icere, -iēci, -iectum, tr.** [re-+iaciō, hurl. App. 7], hurl or drive back, repel; cast down or off; drive off or out. I, 24.

**relanguēscō, -languēscere, -langui, —, intr.** [re-+languēscō, become weak], become weak or enfeebled. II, 15.

**relātus, see** referō.

**relēgō, 1, tr.** [re-+lēgō, depute], send away; remove.

**relictus, -a, -um, see** relinquo.

**religiō, -ōnis, f.,** religion; *in pl.*, religious observances, rites; superstitions.

**relinquō, -linquere, -liqui, -lictum, tr.** [re-+linquō, leave], leave behind, leave, abandon; *pass.*, be left, remain. I, 9.

**reliquus, -a, -um, adj.** [relinquō, leave], left, remaining, the rest, the rest of; future, subsequent; *n. as noun*, remainder, rest. I, 1.

**remaneō, -manēre, -mānsi, -mānsum, intr.** [re-+maneō, remain], stay or remain behind, remain. I, 39; IV, 1.

**rēmex, -igis, m. [cf. rēmus, oar],** oarsman, rower. III, 9.

**rēmigō, 1, intr.** [rēmex, rower], row.

**remigrō, 1, intr.** [re-+migrō, move], move back, return. IV, 4.

**reminiscor, -i, intr.** [mēns, mind], call to mind, remember. I, 13.

**remittō, -mittere, -misi, -missum, tr.** [re-+mittō, send], send or despatch back, return, restore, remit; release, relax, give up; *remissus, pf. part. as adj.*, mild. I, 43; II, 15.

**remollēscō, -mollēscere, —, —, intr.,** become weak, become enervated. IV, 2.

**removeō, -movēre, -mōvi, -mōtum, tr.** [re-+moveō, move], move back or away, remove, withdraw; *remōtus, pf. part. as adj.*, remote, far away. I, 19.

**remāneror, 1, tr.** [re-+māneror, present], repay, reward. I, 44.

**rēmus, -i, m.,** oar. III, 13.

**Rēmus, -a, -um, adj.,** belonging to or one of the Remi; *pl. as noun*, Rēmi, *m.* (Bef), the Remi (rē'mi). II, 3.

**rēnō, -ōnis, m.,** deerskin.

**renovō, 1, tr.** [re-+novus, new], renew. III, 2.

**renūtiō, 1, tr.** [re-+nūtius, message], bring back word, bring news, report; declare elected. I, 10.

**repellō, repellere, reppuli, repulsum, tr.** [re-+pellō, beat, drive], beat or drive back, repel, repulse. I, 8.

**repente, adv.** [repēns, sudden], suddenly, unexpectedly. I, 52; II, 33.

**repentinus, -a, -um, adj.** [repēns, sudden], sudden, unexpected, hasty. I, 13.

**reperiō, reperire, repperi, reperitum, tr.** [re-+pariō, procure], procure; find; find out, discover, ascertain; devise. I, 18.

**repetō, -petere, -petivi, -petitum, tr.** [re-+petō, seek], seek or ask again, demand back; *with poenās*, exact, inflict. I, 30.

**repleō, -plēre, -plēvi, -plētum, tr.** [re-+pleō, fill], fill again, replenish, supply.

**reportō, 1, tr.** [re-+portō, carry], carry or bring back, convey. IV, 29.

**repscō, -poscere, —, —, tr.** [re-+t

**poscō**, demand], demand back, exact, ask for.

**reppuli**, *see* **repellō**.

**repraesentō**, 1, *tr.* [re- + praesēns, present], make present; do at once. I, 40.

**reprehendō**, -prehendere, -prehendi, -prehensum, *tr.* [re- +prehendō (=prēndō), seize], hold back; criticize, blame, censure. I, 20.

**reprimō**, -primere, -pressi, -pressum, *tr.* [re- +primō, press], press or keep back, check, restrain. III, 14.

**repudiō**, 1, *tr.*, reject. I, 40.

**repugnō**, 1, *intr.* [re- +pugnō, fight], fight back; resist, oppose. I, 19.

**repulsus**, *see* **repellō**.

**requirō**, -quirere, -quisivi, -quisitum, *tr.* [re- +quaerō, seek], seek again; require, demand; miss, desire, long for.

**rēs**, *rei*, *f.*, of indefinite meaning; variously translated according to the context; thing, object, matter, event, affair, occurrence; circumstance, case; act, action, deed; reason, ground; **rēs familiāris**, property; **rēs frumentāria**, supplies; **rēs militāris**, warfare; **novae rēs**, revolution; **rēs publica**, state; **rēs actae**, deeds, achievements; **quam ob rem**, *see* **qui** and **quis**. I, 2.

**rescindō**, -scindere, -scidi, -scissum, *tr.* [re- +scindō, cleave], cut away or down, break down, destroy. I, 7.

**resciscō**, -sciscere, -scivi, -scitum, *tr.* [re- +sciscō, inquire], find out, learn. I, 28.

**rescribō**, -scribere, -scripsi, -scriptum, *tr.* [re- +scribō, write], write again; transfer. I, 42.

**reservō**, 1, *tr.* [re- +servō, save, keep], keep back, save up, reserve. I, 53; III, 3.

**resideō**, -sidēre, -sēdi, —, *intr.* [re- +sedeō, sit], sit back; remain.

**residō**, -sidere, -sēdi, —, *intr.* [re- +sidō sit down], settle, become calm.

**resistō**, -sistere, -stiti, —, *intr.* [re- +sistō, stand], stand back, remain behind, halt, stand still; withstand, resist, oppose. I, 25.

**respicō**, -spicere, -spexi, -spectrum, *tr.* [re- +speciō, look], look back; look at, take notice of; consider, regard. II, 24.

**respondeō**, -spondēre, -spondi, -spōnsum, *tr.* and *intr.* [spondeō, promise], reply, answer. I, 7.

**respōnsum**, -i, *n.* [respondeō, answer], reply, answer. I, 14.

**respuō**, -spuere, -spui, —, *tr.*, reject, spurn. I, 42.

**restinguō**, -stinguere, -stinxi, -stinctum, *tr.*, extinguish.

**restiti**, *see* **resistō**.

**restituō**, -stituere, -stitui, -stitutum, *tr.* [re- +statuō, set up], set up again, rebuild, renew, restore. I, 18.

**retineō**, 2, *tr.* [re- +teneō, hold], hold back, detain, keep; restrain, hinder; detain forcibly, seize; retain, preserve, maintain. I, 18.

**retrahō**, -trahere, -trāxi, -tractum, *tr.* [re- +trahō, drag], drag back; bring back.

**rettuli**, *see* **referō**.

**revellō**, -vellere, -velli, -vulsum, *tr.* [re- +vellō, pluck], pluck or tear away, pull out. I, 52.

**revertō**, -vertere, -verti, -versum, *intr.*, used almost exclusively in the perfect tenses, and **revertor**, -verti, -versus sum, *intr.*, used in the tenses formed on the present stem [re- +vertō, turn], turn back, come back, return. I, 7.

**revinciō**, -vincire, -vinxi, -vinctum, *tr.* [re- +vinciō, bind], bind back; fasten, bind. III, 13.

**revocō**, 1, *tr.* [re- +vocō, call], call back, recall; withdraw. II, 20.

**rēx**, **rēgis**, *m.*, king. I, 31; II, 4.

**Rhēnus**, -i, *m.* (ABCfgh), the river Rhenus (rē'nūs), better the Rhine. I, 1.

**Rhodanus**, -i, *m.* (CDfg), the river Rhodanus (rōd'a-nūs), better the Rhone. I, 1.

**ripa**, -ae, *f.*, bank (of a stream). I, 6.

**rivus**, -i, *m.*, small stream, brook.

**rōbur**, -oris, *n.*, oak. III, 13.

**rogō**, 1, *tr.*, ask; request, ask for. I, 7.

**Rōma**, -ae, *f.*, Rome. I, 31.

**Rōmānus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [Rōma, Rome], Roman; *as noun*, a Roman. I, 3.

**Rōscius**, -ci, *m.*, Lucius Roscius (lū'shyūs rōsh'yūs), *one of Caesar's lieutenants*.

**rōstrum**, -i, *n.* [rōdō, gnaw, consume], *beak of a bird; beak or prow of a ship*. III, 13.

**rota**, -ae, *f.*, wheel. IV, 33.

**rubus**, -i, *m.*, bramble. II, 17.

**Rūfus**, -i, *m.* *See Sulpicius*.

**rūmor**, -ōris, *m.*, hearsay, report, rumor. II, 1.

**rūpēs**, -is, *f.*, rock, cliff. II, 29.

**rūrsus**, *adv.* [for reversus, from revertō, turn back], again, back, anew; in turn. I, 25.

**Rutēnī**, -ōrum, *m.* (DEde), the Ruteni (rū-tē'nī). I, 45.

**Rutilus**, -i, *m.*, Marcus Sempronius Rutilus (mār'kūs sēm-prō'nī-ūs rū'tī-lūs), *one of Caesar's lieutenants*.

S.

**Sabinus**, -i, *m.*, Quintus Titurius Sabinus (kwīn'tūs tī-tūr'i-ūs sā-bī'nūs), *one of Caesar's lieutenants*. II, 5.

**Sabis**, -is, *m.* (Af), the river Sabis (sā-bīs). II, 16.

**sacerdōs**, -ōtis, *m.* [sacer, sacred], priest.

**sacrāmentum**, -i, *n.* [sacrō, sacer, sacred], oath.

**sacrificium**, -ci, *n.* [sacer, sacred + faciō, make], sacrifice.

**saepe**, often, frequently; many times, again and again; **saepe numerō**, often, time and again, frequently; *comp.* **saepius**, oftener, more frequently; time and again; too often. I, 1.

**saepēs**, -is, *f.*, hedge. II, 17.

**saevio**, -ire, -ii, -itum, *intr.* [saevus, raging], rage; be fierce. III, 13.

**sagitta**, -ae, *f.*, arrow. IV, 25.

**sagittārius**, -rī, *m.* [sagitta, an arrow], Bowman, archer. II, 7.

**sagulum**, -ī, *n.*, a military cloak.

**saltus**, -ūs, *m.*, pass, wooded ravine, glade.

**salūs**, **salūtis**, *f.* [salvus, safe], welfare, security, safety; preservation,

deliverance; place of safety; life (*when in danger*). I, 27.

**Samarobriua**, -ae, *f.* (Be), Samarobriua (sām'ā-rō-brī'vā).

**sancio**, **sancire**, **sānxi**, **sānctum**, *tr.* [cf. sacer, sacred], make sacred, sanction; bind; **sānctus**, *pf. part. as adj.*, sacred, inviolable; established. I, 30; III, 9.

**sanguis**, -inis, *m.*, blood.

**sānitās**, -tātis, *f.* [sānus, sound], soundness of mind, good sense, discretion, sanity. I, 42.

**sānō**, *1, tr.* [sānus, sound], make sound; make good, repair.

**Santonī**, -ōrum, or **Santonēs**, -um, *m.* (Ded), the Santoni (sān'tō-nī), or **Santones** (sān'tō-nēs). I, 10.

**sānus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, sound; sensible, sane.

**sānxi**, *see sancio*.

**sapio**, -ere, -ivi, —, *intr.*, taste; be wise, understand.

**sarcina**, -ae, *f.*, pack, luggage; *pl.*, baggage, packs (*of individual soldiers, which they carried*). I, 24.

**sarcio**, **sarcire**, **sarsi**, **sartum**, *tr.*, make good, repair, compensate for.

**sarmentum**, -i, *n.*, brushwood, fagots. III, 18.

**satis**, *adv.*, and *indecl. adj. and noun*, (1) *as adv.*, enough, sufficiently; rather; very; well; (2) *as adj.*, sufficient; (3) *as noun*, enough. I, 3.

**satisfacio**, -facere, -feci, -factum, *intr.* [satis, enough + faciō, make], make or do enough for; give satisfaction, satisfy; make amends, apologize, ask pardon. I, 14.

**satisfactio**, -ōnis, *f.* [satisfacio, give satisfaction], satisfaction; excuse, apology. I, 41.

**saucius**, -a, -um, *adj.*, wounded. III, 4.

**saxum**, -i, *n.*, rock, large stone. II, 29.

**scālae**, -ārum, *f.* [scandō, climb], stairs; scaling ladder.

**Scaldis**, -is, *m.* (Aef), the river Scaldis (skāl'dīs) or Scheldt.

**scapha**, -ae, *f.*, skiff, boat. IV, 26.

**scelerātus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [scelerō, pollute], accursed, infamous; *as noun*, criminal.

**scelus, -eris, n.**, crime, wickedness. I, 14.

**scienter, adv.** [sciō, know], knowingly, skillfully.

**scientia, -ae, f.** [sciō, know], knowledge, science, skill. I, 47; II, 20.

**scindō, scindere, scidi, scissum, tr.**, split; tear down, destroy. III, 5.

**sciō, 4, tr.**, distinguish; know, understand. I, 20.

**scorpiō, -ōnis, m.**, scorpion, a military engine for hurling missiles.

**scribō, scribere, scripsi, scriptum, tr.**, write, record or make mention in writing. II, 29.

**scrobs, -is, m. and f.**, pit.

**scūtum, -i, n.**, shield, buckler; oblong, convex (2½×4 ft.), made of wood covered with leather or iron plates, with a metal rim. I, 25.

**sē- and sēd-, inseparable prefix**, apart, away.

**sē, see sui.**

**sēbum, -i, n.**, tallow.

**secō, secāre, secui, sectum, tr.**, cut, reap.

**sēcrētō, adv.** [sēcernō, separate], separately, privately, secretly. I, 18.

**sectiō, -ōnis, f.** [secō, cut], cutting; dividing of captured goods; booty. II, 33.

**sector, 1, tr.** [freq. of sequor, follow], follow eagerly, chase after.

**sectūra, -ae, f.** [secō, cut], cutting; shaft, mine. III, 21.

**secundum, prep. with acc.** [sequor, follow], along; in the direction of; besides, in addition to. I, 33; II, 18.

**secundus, -a, -um, adj.** [sequor, follow], following, next, second; favorable, successful, prosperous; **secundō flumine**, down the river. I, 14.

**secūris, -is, f.**, axe; Roman authority, because the axe and fasces of the lictor were symbols of authority.

**secūtus, see sequor.**

**sēd-, see sē-**

**sed, conj.**, but, but yet (a stronger adverbative than autem or at). I, 12.

**sēdecim (XVI), card. num. adj., indecl.**, sixteen. I, 8.

**sēdēs, -is, f.** [sedeō, sit], seat, chair; residence, abode, settlement. I, 31; IV, 4.

**sēditio, -ōnis, f.** [sēd-+eō, go], insurrection, sedition.

**sēditiosus, -a, -um, adj.** [sēditio, sedition], seditious, mutinous. I, 17.

**Sedulius, -ii, m.**, Sedulius (sē-dū'li-ūs), a chief of the Lemovices.

**Sedūni, -ōrum, m.** (Cgh), the Seduni (sē-dū'ni). III, 1.

**Sedusii, -ōrum, m.** (Bh), the Sedusii (sē-dū'shi). I, 51.

**seges, -etis, f.**, growing grain, field of grain.

**Segni, -ōrum, m.** (Afg), the Segni (sēg'ni).

**Segontiaci, -ōrum, m.** (Acđ), the Segontiaci (sē-gōn'shi-ā'si or sēg'ōn-shi-ā'si).

**Segovax, -actis, m.**, Segovax (sēg'ō-vāks), a king of Kent.

**Seguslavi, -ōrum, m.** (Def), the Seguslavi (sēg'ū-shi-ā'vi). I, 10.

**semel, adv.**, once, a single time; **semel atque iterum**, repeatedly; **ut semel**, as soon as. I, 31.

**sēmentis, -is, f.** [sēmen, seed], sowing. I, 3.

**sēmīta, -ae, f.**, narrow path, by-way, foot-path.

**semper, adv.**, always, ever, continually. I, 18.

**Semprōnius, -ni, m.**, see Rutilus.

**senātor, -ōris, m.** [senex, old], elder; senator. II, 28.

**senātus, -ūs, m.** [senex, old], a body of old men; senate; esp., the administrative council of Rome. I, 3.

**senex, senis, adj.**, old; as noun, old man. I, 29.

**sēni, -ae, -a, distr. num. adj.**, six each, six. I, 15.

**Senonēs, -um, m.** (Bef), the Senones (sēn'ō-nēz). II, 2.

**sententia, -ae, f.** [sentiō, think], way of thinking, opinion, sentiment; purpose, design, scheme, plan; decision, resolve; verdict; sentence. I, 45; II, 10.

**sentiō, sentire, sēnsi, sēnsus, tr.**, perceive, be aware of, notice; expe-

rience, undergo; realize, know; decide, judge; sanction, adhere to. I, 18.

**sentis**, -is, *m.*, briar. II, 17.

**sēparātīm**, *adv.* [sēparō, separate], separately, privately. I, 19.

**sēparō**, 1, *tr.* [sē+parō, prepare], prepare apart; separate; **sēparātus**, *pf. part. as adj.*, separate. IV, 1.

**septem** (VII), *card. num. adj., indecl.*, seven. II, 4.

**septentrionēs**, -um, *m.* [septem, seven + triōnēs, plough oxen], the seven plough oxen, the stars of the Great Bear, hence the North. I, 1.

**septimus**, -a, -um, *ord. num. adj.* [septem, seven], seventh. I, 10.

**septingentī**, -ae, -a (DCC), *card. num. adj.* [septem, seven], seven hundred.

**septuagintā** (LXX), *card. num. adj., indecl.* [septem, seven], seventy. IV, 12.

**sepultūra**, -ae, *f.*, burial. I, 26.

**Sēquana**, -ae, *m.* (BCdef), the river Sequana (sēk'wā-nā), better, Seine. I, 1.

**Sēquanus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, of or belonging to the Sequani; *pl. as noun*, Sēquani (Cfg), the Sequani (sēk'wā-nī). I, 1.

**sequor**, **sequi**, **secūtus**, *sum*, *tr. and intr.*, follow, follow after, pursue; accompany, attend; follow in point of time; with *pōena*, be inflicted; *fidem sequi*, seek the protection. I, 4.

**sermō**, -ōnis, *m.*, conversation, interview, speech.

**sērō**, *adv.*, late, too late.

**serō**, **serere**, **sēvi**, **satum**, *tr.*, sow, plant.

**Sertōrius**, -rī, *m.*, Quintus Sertorius (kwīn'tūs sēr-tō'rī-ūs), a partisan of Marius; after the death of the latter, he continued the war in Spain against the senatorial party, until murdered in 72 B.C. III, 23.

**servilis**, -e, *adj.* [servus, a slave], of or like a slave, servile. I, 40.

**serviō**, 4, *intr.* [servus, slave], be a slave to, be subservient to; pay attention to, devote one's self to, follow. IV, 5.

**servitūs**, -ūtis, *f.* [servus, a slave], slavery, servitude. I, 11.

**Servius**, -vi, *m.*, Servius (sēr'vī-ūs), a Roman praenomen. III, 1.

**servō**, 1, *tr.*, save, preserve; maintain, keep; guard, watch; reserve. II, 33.

**servus**, -i, *m.*, slave, servant. I, 27.

**sescentī**, -ae, -a (DC), *card. num. adj.*, [sex, six], six hundred. I, 38; II, 15.

**sēsē**, *see sul.*

**sēsquipedālis**, -e, *adj.* [sēsqui, one and a half+pēs, foot], a foot and a half thick. IV, 17.

**sētius**, *adv.*, less, otherwise; **nihilō sētius**, none the less, nevertheless, likewise. I, 49; IV, 17.

**seu**, *see sive.*

**sevēritās**, -tātis, *f.*, sternness, severity.

**sēvocō**, 1, *tr.* [sē+vocō, call], call aside or apart.

**sex** (VI), *card. num. adj., indecl.*, six. I, 27.

**sexagintā** (LX), *card. num. adj., indecl.* [sex, six], sixty. II, 4.

**Sextius**, -tī, *m.* (1) Publius Sextius Baculus (pūb'li-ūs sēks'tī-ūs bāk'ū-lūs), a centurion in Caesar's army. II, 25. (2) Titus Sextius (tī'tūs sēks'tī-ūs), one of Caesar's lieutenants.

**sī**, *conj.*, if, if perchance; to see whether or if; whether; **quod sī**, but if, now if. I, 7.

**sibi**, *see sul.*

**Sibusātēs**, -um, *m.* (Ec), the Sibusates (sīb'ū-sā'tēz). III, 27.

**sic**, *adv.*, so, thus, in this manner; **sic ... ut**, so ... that; so ... as. I, 38; II, 4.

**siccitās**, -tātis, *f.* [siccus, dry], drought, dryness. IV, 38.

**sicut** or **sicutī**, *adv.* [sic, so+ut(1), as], so as; just as, as; just as if. I, 44.

**sīdus**, -eris, *n.*, star; constellation.

**signifer**, -erī, *m.* [signum, standard+ferō, bear], standard-bearer. II, 25.

**significātiō**, -ōnis, *f.* [significō, make signs], making of signs, signal; indication, intimation. II, 33.

**significō**, 1, *tr.* [signum, sign+faciō, make], make signs; show, indicate, signify. II, 7.

**signum**, -i, *n.*, mark, sign, signal, watchword; signal for battle, standard, ensign; **ab signis discēdere**,

withdraw from the ranks; **signa inferre**, advance to the attack; **signa conversa inferre**, face about and advance to the attack; **signa ferre**, advance on the march; direct the attack; **signa convertere**, face or wheel about; **ad signa convenire**, join the army. I, 25.

**Silānus**, -i, *m.*, Marcus Silanus (mār'kūs si-lā'nūs), one of Caesar's lieutenants.

**silentium**, -ti, *n.*, silence, stillness.

**Silius**, -ii, *m.*, Titus Silius (tī'tūs sīl'i-ūs), a military tribune in Caesar's army. III, 7.

**silva**, -ae, *f.*, a wood, forest, woods. I, 12.

**silvestris**, -e, *adj.* [silva, forest], of a wood, wooded; in a wood or forest. II, 18.

**similis**, -e, *adj.*, like, similar. III, 13.

**similitūdō**, -inis, *f.* [similis, like], likeness, resemblance.

**simul**, *adv.*, at once, at the same time, thereupon; **simul . . . simul**, both . . . and, partly . . . partly; **simul atque**, as soon as. I, 19.

**simulācrum**, -i, *n.* [simulō, make like], image, statue.

**simulātiō**, -ōnis, *f.* [simulō, make like], simulation, pretence, deceit, disguise. I, 40; IV, 13.

**simulō**, i, *tr.* [similis, like], make like; pretend. I, 44; IV, 4.

**simultās**, -tātis, *f.*, jealousy, rivalry.

**sin**, *conj.*, if however, but if. I, 13.

**sincērē**, *adv.* [sincērus, sincere], sincerely, truthfully.

**sine**, *prep.* with abl., without. I, 7.

**singillātim**, *adv.* [singuli, one each], singly, one by one; individually. III, 2.

**singulāris**, -e, *adj.* [singuli, one each], one at a time, one by one; single, alone; singular, remarkable, extraordinary, matchless. II, 24.

**singuli**, -ae, -a, *istrib. num. adj.*, one each, one; one at a time, single, separate; each, every; the several; **in annōs singulōs**, annually. I, 6.

**sinister**, -tra, -trum, *adj.*, left; *fem. sing. as noun (sc. manus)*, the left hand; **sub sinistrā**, on the left. I, 25.

**sinistrōrsus**, *adv.* [sinister, left+versus, from vertō, turn], to the left.

**situs**, -ūs, *m.* [sinō, put down], situation, site, position. III, 12.

**sive and seu**, *conj.* [si, if+ve, or], or if, if; or; whether; **sive . . . sive**, either . . . or, whether . . . or, to see if . . . or, I, 12.

**socer**, -eri, *m.*, father-in-law. I, 12.

**societās**, -tātis, *f.* [socius, ally], alliance.

**socius**, -ci, *m.* [cf. sequor, follow], companion; confederate, ally. I, 5.

**sōl**, sōlis, *m.*, the sun; **ad occidentem sōlem**, toward the setting sun or west; **ad orientem sōlem**, toward the rising sun or east. I, 1.

**sōlācium**, -ci, *n.* [sōlor, console], comfort, solace.

**soldurius**, -ri, *m.*, vassal. III, 22.

**soleō**, solēre, solitus sum (App. 74), *intr.*, be wont, be accustomed.

**sōlitudō**, -inis, *f.* [sōlus, alone], loneliness, solitude; a lonely place, wilderness. IV, 18.

**sollertia**, -ae, *f.* [sollers, skillful], skill, expertness; ingenuity.

**sollicitō**, i, *tr.*, move violently, stir up, agitate; incite, tempt, instigate. II, 1.

**sollicitūdō**, -inis, *f.* [sollicitus, anxious], anxiety, worry, apprehension.

**solum**, -i, *n.*, bottom; ground, soil, earth. I, 11.

**sōlum**, *adv.* [sōlus, alone], only, merely. I, 12.

**sōlus**, -a, -um, *gen.* sōllus (App. 32), *adj.*, alone, only; the only. I, 18.

**solvō**, solvere, solvi, solūtum, *tr.*, loosen, untie; *with or without nāvēs*, weigh anchor, set sail, put to sea. IV, 23.

**sonitus**, -ūs, *m.* [cf. sonō, sound], sound, din.

**sonus**, -i, *m.* [cf. sonō, sound], sound.

**soror**, -ōris, *f.*, sister. I, 18.

**sors**, sortis, *f.*, lot, chance, fate; casting or drawing of lots. I, 50.

**Sotiatēs**, -ium, *m.* (DEcd), the Sotiates (sō'shī-ā'tēz). III, 20.

**spatium**, -ti, *n.*, space, distance, extent, length of space; period or length of time, hence time, opportunity. I, 7.

**speciēs**, -ēi, *f.* [speciō, see], seeing, sight; look, appearance, show, pretence. I, 51; II, 31.

**spectō**, 1, *tr.* [freq. of speciō, see], look at, regard; look, face, lie. I, 1.

**speculātor**, -ōris, *m.* [speculor, spy], spy, scout. II, 11.

**speculātōrius**, -a, -um, *adj.* [speculātor, spy], of a spy, spying, scouting. IV, 26.

**speculator**, 1, *intr.* [cf. speciō, look], spy. I, 47.

**spērō**, 1, *tr.* [spēs, hope], hope, hope for, anticipate. I, 3.

**spēs**, -ei, *f.*, hope, anticipation, expectation. I, 5.

**spiritus**, -ūs, *m.* [spirō, breathe], breath, air; *in pl.*, haughtiness, pride. I, 33; II, 4.

**spoliō**, 1, *tr.*, strip, despoil.

**spontis**, *gen.* and **sponte**, *abl.* (*obsolete nom.*, spōns), *f.*, of one's own accord, willingly, voluntarily; by one's self. I, 9.

**stabilio**, 4, *tr.* [stabilis, firm], make firm, fix.

**stabilitās**, -tātis, *f.* [stabilis, firm], firmness, steadiness. IV, 33.

**statim**, *adv.* [stō, stand], as one stands, hence, forthwith, immediately, at once. I, 53; II, 11.

**statiō**, -ōnis, *f.* [stō, stand], standing or stationing; a military post or station; sentries, pickets, outposts; *in statione esse*, be on guard. II, 18.

**statuō**, **statuere**, **statui**, **statutum**, *tr.* [status, position], put in position, set up, place; determine, resolve; judge, pass sentence; think, consider. I, 11.

**statūra**, -ae, *f.* [status; stō, stand], a standing upright; size or height of the body, stature. II, 30.

**status**, -ūs, *m.* [stō, stand], standing, condition, status; position.

**stimulus**, -i, *m.*, goad; *stake with barbed iron point set in the ground as a defence*.

**stipendiārius**, -a, -um, *adj.* [stipendium, tribute], paying tribute, tributary; *pl. as noun*, tributaries. I, 30.

**stipendium**, -di, *n.*, tax, tribute. I, 36.

**stipes**, -itis, *m.*, log, trunk; stake.

**stirps**, -pis, *m.*, stem, stock; race.

**stō**, **stāre**, **stetī**, **stātum**, *intr.*, stand; abide by.

**strāmentum**, -i, *n.*, covering; straw, thatch; pack-saddle.

**strepitus**, -ūs, *m.* [strepō, make a noise], noise, rattle, uproar. II, 11.

**studeō**, -ēre, -ui, —, *intr.*, be eager or zealous; desire, strive after, devote one's self to; pay attention to; accuse one's self to. I, 9.

**studiōsē**, *adv.* [studiōsus, eager], eagerly, zealously.

**studium**, -di, *n.* [studeō, be zealous], zeal, eagerness, enthusiasm, desire; good will, devotion; pursuit, occupation. I, 19.

**stultitia**, -ae, *f.* [stultus, foolish], foolishness, folly.

**sub**, *prep. with acc. and abl.* (1) *With acc.*, (a) *with verbs of motion*, under, beneath; up to; (b) *of time*, just at, about, toward. (2) *With abl.*, (a) *of position*, under, beneath; toward, near to; at the foot or base of; (b) *of time*, during, within: *in compounds*, **sub** or **subs**, under; up, away; from beneath; secretly; in succession; slightly. I, 7.

**subāctus**, *see* subigō.

**subdolos**, -a, -um, *adj.* [dolos, deceit], subtle, crafty.

**subducō**, -ducere, -duxi, -ductum, *tr.* [ducō, lead], draw or lead up; lead or draw off, withdraw; *with nāvēs*, haul up, beach. I, 22.

**subductio**, -ōnis, *f.* [subducō, beach], beaching.

**subeō**, -ire, -ii, -itum, *tr.* [eō, go. App. 84], come or go under, come up to, come up; undergo, endure. I, 5.

**subesse**, *see* subsum.

**subiciō**, -icere, -iēcī, -iectum, *tr.* [iaciō, hurl. App. 7], hurl or put under; throw from beneath; place below; subject to, expose to. I, 26.

**subigō**, -igere, -ēgi, -āctum, *tr.* [agō, lead, drive], subdue, reduce.

**subitō**, *adv.* [subitus, sudden], suddenly, unexpectedly, of a sudden. I, 39; II, 19.

**subitus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [subeō, come up, come by stealth], unexpected, sudden. III, 7.

**sublātus**, *see tollō*.

**sublēvō**, *i. tr.* [lēvō, lift], lift from beneath, lift or raise up, support; assist, aid; lighten, lessen. I, 16.

**sublica**, -ae, *f.*, pile, stake. IV, 17.

**subluō**, -luere, —, -lātum, wash, flow around the base.

**subministrō**, *i. tr.* [ministrō, wait upon], furnish, supply, give. I, 40; III, 25.

**submittō**, -mittere, -misi, -missum, *tr.* [mittō, send], send up, send, send to the assistance of. II, 6.

**submoveō**, -movēre, -mōvi, -mōtum, *tr.* [moveō, move], move away, drive away, dislodge. I, 25.

**subruō**, -ruere, -rui, -rutum, *tr.* [ruō, fall], cause to fall from beneath, overthrow; dig under, undermine. II, 6.

**subsequor**, -sequi, -secūtus sum, *tr. and intr.* [sequor, follow], follow closely, follow up or on, follow. II, 11.

**subsidiū**, -di, *n.* [subsideo, sit near or in reserve], sitting in reserve; reserve force, reserves; help, aid, assistance. I, 52; II, 6.

**subsido**, -siedere, -sēdi, -sessum, *intr.* [sedeō, sit], sit down, remain.

**subsistō**, -sistere, -stiti, —, *intr.* [sistō, stand], halt, make a stand; be strong enough, hold out. I, 15.

**subsum**, -esse, -fui, *intr.* [sum, be. App. 77], be under or below; be near or close at hand. I, 25.

**subtrahō**, -trahere, -trāxi, -tractum, *tr.* [trahō, draw], draw or carry off from beneath; take away, withdraw. I, 44.

**subvectiō**, -ōnis, *f.* [subvehō, convey], conveying; transportation.

**subvehō**, -vehere, -vexi, -vectum, *tr.* [vehō, carry], bring or carry up; convey. I, 16.

**subveniō**, -venire, -vēni, -ventum, *intr.* [veniō, come], come or go to help, aid, succor.

**succēdō**, -cēdere, -cessi, -cessum, *intr.* [sub+cēdō, go], go or come under; come up to, come up, advance,

be next to; succeed, take the place of; succeed, prosper. I, 24.

**succendō**, -cendere, -cendi, -cēsum, *tr.* [cf. candeō, shine], set on fire below, kindle, burn.

**succidō**, -cidere, -cidi, -cisum, *tr.* [sub+caedō, cut], cut from beneath, cut down, fell. IV, 19.

**succumbō**, -cumbere, -cubui, -cubitum, *intr.* [cf. cubō, lie], sink under; yield.

**succurrō**, -currere, -curri, -cursum, *m.* [sub+currō, run], run to help, aid, assist.

**sudis**, -is, *f.*, pile, stake.

**Suēbus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, of or pertaining to the Suebi, Sueban; *pl. as noun*, Suēbi (Bhi), the Suebi (swē'bi), a powerful people of central Germany consisting of several independent tribes, the modern Swabians. I, 37; IV, 1.

**Suessiōnēs**, -um, *m.* (Be), the Suessiones (swēs'f-ō'nēz). II, 3.

**sufficiō**, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum, *intr.* [sub+faciō, make], be sufficient.

**suffodiō**, -fodere, -fōdi, -fossū, *tr.* [sub+fodiō, dig], dig under; stab underneath. IV, 12.

**suffrāgium**, -gi, *n.*, vote, ballot.

**Sugambri**, -ōrum, *m.* (Ag), the Sugambri (sū-gām'brī). IV, 16.

**suggestus**, -ūs, *m.*, platform, stage, tribunal.

**sui**, *sibi*, *sē*, or *sēsē*, *reflex. pron. of 3d person* (App. 163, 164, 165), himself, herself, itself, themselves; he, she, they, etc.; *inter sē*, *see inter and App. 166*. I, 1.

**Sulla**, -ae, *m.*, Lucius Sulla (lū'shyūs sūl'a), the dictator; leader of the nobility; engaged in civil war with Marius, leader of the popular party; lived from 138 B.C. to 78 B.C. I, 21.

**Sulpicius**, -ci, *m.*, Publius Sulpicius Rufus (pūb'li-ūs sūl-pish'yūs ruf'ūs), one of Caesar's lieutenants. IV, 22.

**sum**, *esse*, *fui*, (App. 66), *intr.*, be, exist, live; stay, remain; serve for; *with gen. in predicate*, be the mark or sign of; belong to; be the duty of; *with dat. of possessor*, have. I, 1.

**summa**, -ae, *f.* [summus, highest], the

- main thing or point, sum total, aggregate, the whole; general management, control, direction; **summa imperi**, the chief command. I, 29.
- summus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [*sup. of superus*, high. App. 44], highest, very high; the highest part of, the top of; pre-eminent, greatest, chief, supreme; all. I, 16.
- sūmō, sūmere, sūmpsi, sūmptum**, *tr.*, [sub+emō, take], take away, take; assume; with **supplicium**, inflict; with **labor**, spend. I, 7.
- sūmptuosus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [sūmptus, expense], expensive.
- sūmptus**, -ūs, *m.* [sūmō, spend], expense. I, 18.
- sūmptus**, *see sūmō*.
- super**, *adv. and prep. with acc.*, above, over, on.
- superbē**, *adv.*, proudly, haughtily. I, 31.
- superior**, -ius, *adj.* [*comp. of superus*, high. App. 44], (1) of place, upper, higher, superior; (2) of time, previous, earlier, former. I, 10.
- superō**, 1, *tr. and intr.* [super, over], go over; overmatch, be superior to, surpass, conquer, master, overcome, prevail; be left over, remain; **vītā superāre**, survive. I, 17.
- superseō**, -ēre, -sēdi, -sessum, *intr.* [seō, sit], sit above, be above, be superior to; refrain from. II, 8.
- supersum**, -esse, -fui, *intr.* [sum, be. App. 77], be over or above; be left, remain, survive. I, 23.
- superus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [super, 'above'], over, above; *comp.*, *see superior*; *sup.*, *see summus*.
- suppetō**, -petere, -petivi, -petitum, *intr.* [sub+petō, seek, obtain], be near or at hand; be in store, be supplied, hold out. I, 3.
- supplēmentum**, -i, *n.* [suppleō, fill up], a filling up; supplies, reinforcements.
- supplex**, -icis, *m. and f.*, suppliant. II, 28.
- supplicatio**, -ōnis, *f.* [supplex, suppliant], public prayer to the gods in thanksgiving for successes, hence thanksgiving. II, 35.
- suppliciter**, *adv.* [supplex, suppliant], as suppliants, humbly. I, 27.
- supplicium**, -ci, *n.* [sub+plicō, bend], a bending over to receive punishment; punishment, death. I, 19.
- supportō**, 1, *tr.* [sub+portō, carry], carry or bring up from beneath; bring, convey; supply, furnish. I, 39, III, 3.
- suprā**, *adv. and prep. with acc.* (1) as *adv.*, before, previously; (2) as *prep. with acc.*, above; before. II, 1.
- suscipiō**, -cipere, -cēpi, -ceptum, *tr.* [su(b)+capiō, take], take or lift up; undertake, assume, take on one's self; begin, engage in. I, 3.
- suspectus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [suspicio, suspect], suspected, distrusted.
- suspiciō**, -ōnis, *f.* [suspicor, suspect], suspicion, distrust; cause for suspicion; indication, appearance. I, 4.
- suspikor**, 1, *tr.* [suspicio, suspect], suspect, distrust; surmise. I, 44; IV, 6.
- sustentō**, 1, *tr. and intr.* [*freq. of sustineō*, hold up], hold up, sustain, maintain; hold out; endure, withstand. II, 6.
- sustineō**, 2, *tr. and intr.* [su(b)+teneō, hold], hold up from below; hold up, sustain; hold back, check, restrain; hold out against, withstand, endure, bear; hold out. I, 24.
- sustuli**, *see tollō*.
- suus**, -a, -um, *reflex. pronominal adj.* referring to subject (App. 163, 164, 165, 167, a), [sui, himself, herself, etc.], of or belonging to himself, herself, etc., his own, their own; his, hers, its, theirs; **sua**, *n. pl. as noun*, one's property; **sui**, *m. pl. as noun*, their men (*friends or countrymen*). I, 1.

## T.

- T.** *abbr. for Titus* (tīt'ūs), a Roman praenomen. I, 10.
- tabernaculum**, -i, *n.*, tent. I, 39.
- tabula**, -ae, *f.*, board; tablet; list. I, 29.
- tabulātum**, -i, *n.* [*cf. tabula*, board], flooring of boards; story.
- taceō**, 2, *tr. and intr.*, be silent; keep

**silent**, pass over in silence; **tacitus**, *pf. part. as adj.*, silent. I, 17.  
**tālea**, -ae, *f.*, rod, bar; piece of wood, stake.  
**tālis**, -e, *adj.*, such, such<sup>1</sup>a; such a great; so great a.  
**tam**, *adv.*, so, so very. I, 14.  
**tamen**, *adv.* (*opposed to some expressed or implied concession*), yet, nevertheless, notwithstanding, still, however; at least. I, 7.  
**Tamesis**, -is, *m.* (Acd), the river Tamesis (tām'ē-sis), better, the Thames.  
**tametsi**, *conj.* [tamen, however+etsi, even if], although, though, notwithstanding. I, 30.  
**tandem**, *adv.*, at last, at length, finally; *in interrog. clauses to add emphasis, as* **quid tandem**, what, pray? what then? I, 25.  
**tangō**, **tangere**, **tetigi**, **tāctum**, *tr.*, touch, border on.  
**tantopere**, *adv.* [tantus, so great+opus, work], so greatly, so earnestly. I, 31.  
**tantulus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [*dim. of tantus*, so great], so small or little, so diminutive; trifling. II, 30.  
**tantum**, *adv.* [tantus, so great], so much, so, so far; only, merely.  
**tantummodo**, *adv.*, only. III, 5.  
**tantundem**, *adv.* [tantus, so great], so much or so far.  
**tantus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [*cf. tam*, so], so much, so great, so powerful, such; **quantō** . . . **tantō**, *with comparatives*, see **quantō**. I, 15.  
**Tarbelli**, -ōrum, *m.* (Ec), the Tarbelli (tār-bēl'i). III, 27.  
**tardē**, *adv.* [tardus, slow], slowly; *comp. tardius*, too slowly. IV, 23.  
**tardō**, 1, *tr.* [tardus, slow], make slow, delay; hinder, check. II, 25.  
**tardus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, slow, sluggish. II, 25.  
**Tarusātēs**, -ium, *m.* (DEc), the Tarusates (tār'ū-sā'tēz). III, 23.  
**Tasgetius**, -tī, *m.*, Tasgetius (tās-jē'shyūs), a chief of the Carnutes.  
**taurus**, -i, *m.*, bull.  
**Taximagulus**, -i, *m.*, Taximagulus (tāk'al-māg'ū-lūs), a king of Kent.

**taxus**, -i, *f.*, yew-tree, yew.  
**Tectosagēs**, -um, *m.* (Edē), the Tectosages (tēk-tōs'a-jēz).  
**tēctum**, -i, *n.* [tegō, cover], covering, roof; house. I, 36.  
**tēctus**, see **tegō**.  
**tegimentum**, -i, *n.* [tegō, cover], a covering. II, 21.  
**tegō**, **tegere**, **tēxi**, **tēctum**, *tr.*, cover, hide; protect, defend.  
**tēlum**, -i, *n.*, a weapon for fighting at a distance, missile, dart, javelin. I, 8.  
**temerārius**, -a, -um, *adj.* [temerē, rashly], rash, imprudent, reckless. I, 31.  
**temerē**, *adv.*, rashly, blindly, without good reason. I, 40; IV, 20.  
**temeritās**, -tātis, *f.* [temerē, rashly], rashness, indiscretion.  
**tēmō**, -ōnis, *m.*, pole (of a wagon). IV, 33.  
**temperantia**, -ae, *f.* [temperō, control one's self], prudence, self-control. I, 19.  
**temperō**, 1, *intr.*, restrain or control one's self, refrain; **temperātus**, *pf. part. as adj.*, temperate, mild. I, 7.  
**tempestās**, -tātis, *f.* [tempus, time], time, season; weather, usually bad weather, storm, tempest. III, 12.  
**temptō**, 1, *tr.*, make an attempt upon, try to gain possession of, attack; try, test; try to win over. I, 14.  
**tempus**, -oris, *n.*, a division or section of time, a time, time (in general); occasion, crisis; **omni tempore**, always; **in reliquum tempus**, for the future; **unō tempore**, at the same time, at once. I, 3.  
**Tēncteri**, -ōrum, *m.*, the Tencteri (tēngk'tē-ri). IV, 1.  
**tendō**, **tendere**, **tetendī**, **tentum** or **tēnsium**, *tr.*, stretch, stretch out, extend; stretch a tent, pitch; encamp. II, 13.  
**tenebrae**, -ārum, *f. pl.*, darkness.  
**tenēō**, **tenēre**, **tenui**, **tentum**, *tr.*, hold, keep, occupy, possess, hold possession of; hold in, restrain, bind; **sē tenēre**, remain; **memoriā tenēre**, remember. I, 7.  
**tener**, -era, -erum, *adj.*, tender. II, 17.

**tenuis**, -e, *adj.*, slim, thin; slight, insignificant; delicate.

**tenuitās**, -tātis, *f.* [tenuis, thin], thinness, poverty.

**tenuiter**, *adv.* [tenuis, thin], thinly. III, 13.

**ter**, *num. adv.* [*cf.* trēs, three], three times. I, 53.

**teres**, -etis, rounded; tapering.

**tergum**, -i, *n.*, the back; *terga vertere*, to flee; *post tergum* or *ab tergō*, in the rear. I, 53; III, 19.

**terni**, -ae, -a, *distr. num. adj.* [ter, thrice], three each, three apiece. III, 15.

**terra**, -ae, *f.*, earth, land, soil, ground; region, district; *terrae* (*pl.*) and *orbis terrarum*, the world. I, 32; III, 15.

**Terrasidius**, -di, *m.*, Titus Terrasidius (tū'tūs tēr'ā-sīd'i-ūs), a military tribune in Caesar's army. III, 7.

**terrēnus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [terra, earth], of earth. I, 43.

**terreō**, 2, *tr.*, frighten, terrify.

**terrītō**, 1, *tr.* [*freq.* of terreō, frighten], frighten, terrify, alarm.

**terror**, -ōris, *m.* [terreō, frighten], fright, alarm, panic, terror. II, 12.

**tertius**, -a, -um, *num. adj.* [ter, thrice], third. I, 1.

**testāmentum**, -i, *n.* [testor, be a witness], will. I, 39.

**testimōnium**, -ni, *n.* [testor, be a witness], testimony, evidence, proof. I, 44.

**testis**, -is, *m. and f.*, witness. I, 14.

**testūdō**, -inis, *f.*, tortoise; shed; a *testudo*, a column of men, holding their shields overlapped over their heads. II, 6.

**Teutomatus**, -i, *m.*, Teutomatus (tū'tōm'ā-tūs), son of Ollovico, king of the Nitlobroges; later king himself.

**Teutoni**, -ōrum or Teutonēs, -um, *m.*, the Teutoni (tū'tō-ni) or Teutones (tū'tō-nēz). I, 33; II, 4.

**tēxi**, *see* tegō.

**tignum**, -i, *n.*, log, timber, beam, pile. IV, 17.

**Tigurinus**, -a, -um, of or belonging to the Tigurini; *pl. as noun*, Tigurini

(Cg), the Tigurini (tīg'u-rī'nī). I, 12.

**timeō**, -ēre, -ui, —, *tr. and intr.*, fear, be afraid of, dread; *with dat.*, be anxious about, be anxious for, dread; *nihil timēre*, have no fear. I, 14.

**timidō**, *adv.* [timidus, fearful], fearfully, cowardly, timidly. III, 25.

**timidus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [timeō, fear], fearful, frightened, timid, cowardly, afraid. I, 39.

**timor**, -ōris, *m.* [timeō, fear], fear, alarm, dread. I, 22.

**Titūrius**, -ri, *m.*, *see* Sabinus.

**tolerō**, 1, *tr.* [*cf.* tollō, lift up], bear, endure; hold out; nourish, support; *with famem*, appease, alleviate. I, 26.

**tollō**, tollere, sustuli, sublātum, *tr.*, lift, elevate; take on board; take away, remove; do away with, destroy; cancel; sublātus, *pf. part. as adj.*, elated. I, 5.

**Tolōsa**, -ae, *f.* (Ed), Tolosa (tō-lō'sa), now Toulouse. III, 20.

**Tolōsātēs**, -ium, *m.*, the Tolosates (tōl'ō-sā'tēz), the people of Tolosa. I, 10.

**tortementum**, -i, *n.* [torqueō, twist], means of twisting; an engine for hurking missiles, *e.g.* catapulta and ballista; windlass, hoist; device for torturing, hence, torment, torture. II, 8.

**torreō**, torrēre, torruī, tostum, *tr.*, scorch, burn.

**tot**, *indecl. adj.*, so many. III, 10.

**totidem**, *indecl. adj.* [tot, so many], just as many, the same number. I, 48; II, 4.

**tōtus**, -a, -um, *gen. tōtius* (App. 32), *adj.*, the whole, the whole of; entire, all; *with force of adv.*, wholly, entirely. I, 2.

**trabs**, trabis, *f.*, beam, timber, pile. II, 29.

**tractus**, *see* trahō.

**trādō**, -dere, -didī, -ditum, *tr.* [trāns + dō, give], give over, give up, surrender, deliver; intrust, commit; hand down, transmit; teach, communicate; recommend. I, 27.

**trādūcō**, -ducere, -dūxī, -ductum, *tr.* [trāns + dūcō, lead], lead across, lead

over; take across, transport; transfer, convey, pass on; win over. I, 11.

**trāgula**, -ae, *f.*, a javelin or dart used by the Gauls. I, 26.

**trahō**, trahere, trāxi, tractum, *tr.*, drag, drag along. I, 53.

**trāciō**, -icere, -lēci, -lectum, *tr.* [trāns + iaciō, hurl. App. 7], hurl across; pierce, transfix.

**trāiectus**, -ūs, *m.* [trāciō, hurl across], a hurling across; crossing, passage. IV, 21.

**trānō**, 1, *intr.* [trāns + nō, swim], swim across. I, 53.

**tranquillitas**, -tātis, *f.*, calmness, stillness; a calm. III, 15.

**trāns**, *prep. with acc.*, across, beyond, over; in compounds, trāns or trā, across, over, through. I, 1.

**Trānsalpinus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [Alpēs, the Alps], across the Alps, Transalpine.

**trānsceḡ**, -scendere, -scendi, -scēsum, *tr. and intr.* [scandō, climb], climb over; board. III, 15.

**trānsceḡ**, -ire, -ii, -itum, *tr. and intr.* [ceḡ, go. App. 84], go across or over, cross; march through, pass through; move, migrate; of time, pass by. I, 5.

**trānsferō**, -ferre, -tuli, -lātum, *tr.* [ferō, carry. App. 81], carry or bring over, transfer.

**trānsfigō**, -figere, -fixi, -fixum, *tr.* [figō, fix], thrust or pierce through, transfix. I, 26.

**trānsfodiō**, -fodere, -fōdi, -fossum, *tr.* [fodiō, dig], dig through; pierce through, impale.

**trānsgradior**, -gredi, -gressus sum, *tr.* [gradior, step], step over, cross. II, 19.

**trānsitus**, -ūs, *m.* [trānsceḡ, go across], crossing, passage.

**trānslātus**, see trānsferō.

**trānsmarinus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [mare, sea], across the sea, foreign.

**trānsmissus**, -ūs, *m.* [trānsmittō, send across], sending across; passage.

**trānsmittō**, -mittere, -misi, -missum, *tr.* [mittō, send], send across.

**trānsportō**, 1, *tr.* [portō, carry], carry

across or over, bring over, convey, transport. I, 37; IV, 16.

**Trānsrhēnānus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, beyond or across the Rhine; *pl. as noun*, Trānsrhēnāni, the people across the Rhine. IV, 16.

**trānstrum**, -i, *n.*, cross-beam, thwart. III, 13.

**trānsversus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [trāns-vertō, turn across], turned across, cross. II, 8.

**Trebius**, -bi, *m.*, Marcus Trebius Gallus (mār'kūs trē'bi-ūs gāl'ūs), a military tribune in Caesar's army. III, 7.

**Trebōnius**, -ni, *m.* (1) Gaius Trebonius (gā'yūs trē-bō'nī-ūs), one of Caesar's lieutenants. (2) Gaius Trebonius, a Roman knight.

**trecenti**, -ae, -a (CCC), *card. num. adj.* [trēs, three+centum, hundred], three hundred. IV, 37.

**trepidō**, 1, *intr.*, hurry about in alarm; *pass.*, be disturbed or in confusion.

**trēs**, tria, *gen. trium* (III), *card. num. adj.*, three. I, 1.

**Trēvir**, -eri, *m.*, one of the Treveri; *pl.* Trēveri (Bigh), the Treveri (trēv'ē-rī). I, 37; II, 24.

**Triboci**, -ōrum, *m.* (Bgh), the Triboci (trib'ō-si). I, 51; IV, 10.

**tribūnus**, -i, *m.* [tribus, tribe], tribune, a magistrate elected by the people, voting in tribes, to defend the interests of the plebs; tribūnus militum or militāris, a military tribune. I, 39; II, 26.

**tribuō**, tribuere, tribui, tribūtum, *tr.* [tribus, a tribe or division], divide, distribute; attribute, assign, allot, ascribe; grant, do for the sake of, render. I, 13.

**tribūtum**, -i, *n.* [tribuō, render, pay], tribute, tax.

**triduum**, -i, *n.* [trēs, three+diēs, day], three days. I, 26.

**triennium**, -ni, *n.* [trēs, three+annus, year], three years. IV, 4.

**trigintā** (XXX), *card. num. adj., indecl.* [trēs, three], thirty. I, 26.

**trīni**, -ae, -a, *distr. num. adj.*, three each; three, triple. I, 53.

**Trinovantēs**, -um, *m.* (Ad), the Trinovantes (trīn'ō-vān'tēz).

**tripertitō**, *adv.* [trēs, three+partior, divide], in three parts or divisions.  
**triplex**, -icis, *adj.* [trēs, three+plicō, fold], three-fold, triple. I, 24.  
**triquetrus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, triangular.  
**tristis**, -e, *adj.*, sad, dejected. I, 32.  
**tristitia**, -ae, *f.*, sadness. I, 32.  
**Troucillus**, -i, *m.*, see **Valerius**.  
**truncus**, -i, *m.*, trunk of trees. IV, 17.  
**tū**, **tui** (App. 51), *pers. pron.*, you.  
**tuba**, -ae, *f.*, trumpet. II, 20.  
**tueor**, **tuēri**, **tātus sum**, *tr.*, watch, guard, protect. IV, 8.  
**tuli**, see **ferō**.  
**Tulingi**, -ōrum, *m.* (Cgh), the Tulingi (tū-lin'ji), a Gallic tribe east of the Rhine. I, 5.  
**Tullius**, -ii, *m.*, see **Cicero**.  
**Tullus**, -i, *m.*, see **Volcācius**.  
**tum**, *adv.*, then, at this or that time; then, secondly; then, also; **cum** . . . **tum**, both . . . and, not only . . . but also. I, 17.  
**tumultuor**, *i. intr.* [tumultus, disorder], make a disturbance; *impers.*, there is a disturbance.  
**tumultuōsē**, *adv.* [tumultus, disorder], with confusion or noise.  
**tumultus**, -ūs, *m.* [tumeō, swell], uproar, confusion, disorder, tumult; uprising, insurrection. I, 40; II, 11.  
**tumulus**, -i, *m.* [tumeō, swell], swelling; mound, hill. I, 43; II, 27.  
**turma**, -ae, *f.*, troop or squadron of about thirty cavalrymen. IV, 33.  
**Turonī**, -ōrum, *m.* (Cd), the Turoni (tū-rō-ni). II, 35.  
**turpis**, -e, *adj.*, ugly, unseemly; shameful, disgraceful, dishonorable. I, 33; IV, 2.  
**turpiter**, *adv.* [turpis, disgraceful], disgracefully, cowardly, basely.  
**turpitudō**, -inis, *f.* [turpis, disgraceful], disgrace. II, 27.  
**tūrris**, -is, *f.*, tower. II, 12.  
**tūtō**, *adv.* [tātus, safe], safely, securely. III, 13.  
**tātus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [tueor, protect], protected, safe, secure. II, 5.  
**tuus**, -a, -um, *poss. pron.* [tū, you], your, yours.

## U.

**ubi**, *adv.* (1) of place, in which place where; (2) of time, when, whenever; as soon as; **ubi primum**, as soon as. I, 5.  
**Ubii**, -ōrum, *m.* (ABgh), the Ubii (ū'bi-i). I, 54; IV, 3.  
**ubique**, *adv.* [ubi, where], anywhere, everywhere. III, 16.  
**ulciscor**, **ulcisci**, **ultus sum**, *tr.*, avenge; punish, take vengeance on. I, 12.  
**ūllus**, -a, -um, *gen.*, **ūllus** (App. 32), *adj.*, a single, any; as noun, any one, anybody. I, 7.  
**ulterior**, -ius, *adj.*, *comp.* [ultrā, beyond. App. 43], farther, more remote, ulterior. I, 7.  
**ultimus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, *sup.* [ultrā, beyond. App. 43], farthest, most distant or remote; as noun, those in the rear. III, 27.  
**ultrā**, *prep. with acc.*, beyond, on the farther side of. I, 48.  
**ultrō**, *adv.*, to or on the farther side, beyond; of one's own accord, voluntarily, spontaneously, without provocation; besides, moreover; **ultrō citrōque**, back and forth. I, 42; III, 27.  
**ultus**, see **ulciscor**.  
**ululātus**, -ūs, *m.*, yell, shriek.  
**umerus**, -i, *m.*, the shoulder.  
**umquam**, *adv.*, at any time, ever; **neque** . . . **umquam**, and never, never. I, 41; III, 28.  
**ūnā**, *adv.* [ūnus, one], (1) of place, together, along with, in one place. (2) of time, together, along with, at the same time, also. I, 5.  
**unde**, *adv.*, from which place, whence. I, 28.  
**undecim** (XI), *card. num. adj.*, *indecl.* [ūnus, one+decem, ten], eleven.  
**undecimus**, -a, -um, *ord. num. adj.* [undecim, eleven], eleventh. II, 23.  
**ūndēviginti**, *card. num. adj.*, *indecl.* [ūnus, one+dē, from+viginti, twenty], nineteen. I, 8.  
**undique**, *adv.* [unde, whence], from all parts; on all sides, everywhere. I, 2.  
**universus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [ūnus, one+

**vertō**, turn], turned into one; all together, whole, universal, all *as a mass*. II, 33.

**ūnus, ūna, ūnum, gen. ūnius** (App. 32), *card. num. adj.*, one, the same one; single, alone; the sole, the only; the sole or only one. I, 1.

**urbānus, -a, -um, adj.** [urbs, city], of or in the city.

**urbs, urbis, f.**, city; *especially*, the city. *Rome*. I, 7.

**urgēō, urgēre, ursī, —, tr.**, press, press hard. II, 25.

**ūrus, -i, m.**, wild ox.

**Usipetēs, -um, m.**, the Usipetes (ū-sīp'-ē-tēz). IV, 1.

**ūsītātus, -a, -um, adj.** [ūsitor, use often], ordinary, familiar.

**usque, adv.** (1) *of place*, all the way to, even to, as far as; (2) *of time*, up to, till; *with ad.* until. I, 50; III, 15.

**ūsus, see ūtor.**

**ūsus, -ūs, m.** [ūtor, use], use, experience, practice, skill; service, advantage; need, necessity; **ūsus est**, there is need; **ūsui esse** or **ex ūsū esse**, be of advantage or service; **ūsū venire**, come by necessity; happen. I, 30; II, 9.

**ut and uti, adv. and conj.**, (1) *as interrog. adv.*, how? (2) *as rel. adv. and conj.*, as, in proportion as, just as; inasmuch as; as if: (3) *as conj.* (a) *with ind.*, when, after; (b) *with subj.*, that, in order that, to; that, so that, so as to; though, although; *after words of fearing*, that not. I, 2.

**uter, utra, utrum, gen. utrius** (App. 32), *adj.* (1) *as interrog.*, which one or which of two; (2) *as rel.*, the one who, of two, whichever. I, 12.

**utroque, utraque, utrumque, adj.** [uter, which of two], each of two. either of two; both. I, 34; II, 8.

**uti, see ut.**

**ūtī, see ūtor.**

**ūtīlis, -e, adj.** [ūtor, use], useful, serviceable. IV, 7.

**ūtīlitās, -tātis, f.** [ūtīlis, useful], usefulness, advantage, service. IV, 19.

**ūtor, ūti, ūsus sum, intr.**, make use of.

employ, use, avail one's self of, exercise; have, enjoy, experience, possess, show; adopt, accept; **ūsus, pf. part.** *often translated with*. I, 5.

**utrimque, adv.** [uterque, each of two], on each side, on both sides. I, 50; IV, 17.

**utrum, conj.** [uter, which of two], whether; **utrum . . . an**; whether . . . or; **utrum . . . necne**, whether . . . or not. I, 40.

**uxor, -ōris, f.**, wife. I, 18.

## V.

**V, sign for quinquē, five.**

**Vacalus, -i, m.** (Af), the Vacalus (vāk'-a-lūs) river, now the Waal. IV, 10.

**vacō, i, intr.**, be empty or unoccupied; lie waste. I, 28.

**vacuus, -a, -um, adj.** [vacō, be empty], empty, unoccupied; free from, destitute of. II, 12.

**vadum, -i, n.**, ford, shallow. I, 6.

**vāgīna, -ae, f.**, sheath, scabbard.

**vagor, i, intr.** [vagus, roaming], roam about, rove, wander. I, 2.

**valēō, 2, intr.**, be strong or vigorous, have weight, influence or strength; **plūrimum valēre**, be very powerful. I, 17.

**Valerius, -rī, m.** (1) Gaius Valerius Troucillus (gā'yūs vā-lē'rī-ūs trū-sīl'ūs), a Gallic interpreter and confidential friend of Caesar. I, 19. (2) Gaius Valerius Flaccus (see (1) flāk'ūs), Governor of Gaul 83 B.C. I, 47. (3) Gaius Valerius Caburus (see (1) kabūrūs), a Gaul who had received Roman citizenship. I, 47. (4) Gaius Valerius Proculus (see (1) prō-sīl'ūs), son of No. 3. I, 47. (5) Lucius Valerius Praeconius (lū'shyūs vā-lē'rī-ūs prēk'ō-nī-nūs), a Roman lieutenant in Gaul, before Caesar's time. III, 20. (6) Gaius Valerius Domnotaurus (see (1) dōm'nō-taw'rūs), son of No. 3.

**Valetiācus, -i, m.**, Valetiacus (vāl'ē-shī-ā'kūs), a nobleman of the Haedui.

**valētūdō, -inis, f.** [valēō, be strong], health, poor health.

**vallēs, -is, f.**, vale, valley. III, 1.

**vallum, -i, n.** [vāllus, palisade], wall

or rampart of earth set with palisades; entrenchments, earthworks. I, 26.

**vállus**, -i, *m.*, stake; palisade.

**Vanglionēs**, -um, *m.* (Bgh), the Vangiones (vān-jī'ō-nēz). I, 51.

**varietās**, -tātis, *f.* [varius, diverse], diversity, variety.

**varius**, -a, -um, *adj.*, diverse, changing, various. II, 22.

**vāstō**, 1, *tr.* [vāstus, waste], lay waste, ravage, devastate. I, 11.

**vāstus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, waste; boundless, vast. III, 8.

**vāticinātiō**, -ōnis, *f.*, divination. I, 50.

**-ve**, *conj.*, *enclitic*=vel, or.

**vectigal**, -ālis, *n.* [vectigālis, tributary], tax, tribute; *pl.*, revenues. I, 18.

**vectigālis**, -e, *adj.* [vehō, carry], paying revenue or tribute; tributary. III, 8.

**vectōrius**, -a, -um, *adj.* [vehō, carry], for carrying; **vectōria nāvis**, a transport.

**vehementer**, *adv.* [vehemēsus, violent], violently, severely, strongly, very much, greatly. I, 37; III, 22.

**vehō**, **vehere**, **veli**, **vectum**, *tr.*, carry; bring along. I, 43.

**vel**, *conj. and adv.* (1) as *conj.*, or; vel . . . vel, either . . . or; (2) as *adv.*, even. I, 6.

**Velānius**, -nī, *m.*, Quintus Velantius (kwīn'tūs vē-lā'-nī-ūs), a military tribune in Caesar's army. III, 7.

**Veliocassēs**, -um, *m.* (Bd), the Veliocasses (vē'li-ō-kās'ez). II, 4.

**Vellaunodūnum**, -i, *n.* (Be), Vellaunodunum (vē-law'nō-dū'nūm or vē'l'aw-nō-dū'nūm), a town of the Senones.

**Vellāvil**, -ōrum, *m.* (De), the Vellavil (vē-lā'vī-i).

**vēlōcitās**, -tātis, *f.* [vēlōx, swift], swiftness, speed.

**vēlōciter**, *adv.* [vēlōx, swift], swiftly, speedily.

**vēlōx**, -ōcis, *adj.*, swift, rapid, speedy. I, 48.

**vēlum**, -i, *n.*, covering, veil; sail. III, 13.

**velut**, *adv.*, as, just as. I, 32.

**vēnātiō**, -ōnis, *f.* [vēnor, hunt], hunting, the chase. IV, 1.

**vēnātor**, -ōris, *m.* [vēnor, hunt], hunter.

**vēndō**, -dere, -didī, -ditum, *tr.* [vēnum, sale+dō, give], put to sale, sell, sell at auction. II, 33.

**Venelli**, -ōrum, *m.* (Bc), the Venelli (vē-nē'l'i). II, 34.

**Venetī**, -ōrum, *m.* (Cb), the Veneti (vēn'ē-tī). II, 34.

**Venetia**, -ae, *f.*, Venetia (vē-nē'shyā), the country of the Veneti. III, 9.

**Veneticus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, of the Veneti, Venetian. III, 18.

**venia**, -ae, *f.*, indulgence, favor; pardon.

**venīō**, **venīre**, **venī**, **ventum**, *intr.*, come, arrive, go, advance; **in spem venīre**, have hopes; *pass. often imper.*, as **ventum est**, they came, it came, etc. I, 8.

**ventitō**, 1, *intr.* [freq. of venīō, come], keep coming, resort; go back and forth, visit. IV, 8.

**ventus**, -i, *m.*, wind. III, 18.

**vēr**, **vēris**, *n.*, the spring.

**Veragri**, -ōrum, *m.* (CDg), the Veragri (vē'r'a-gri). III, 1.

**Verbigenus**, -i, *m.* (Cgh), Verbigenus (vēr-bij-ē-nūs), a canton of the Helvetii. I, 27.

**verbum**, -i, *n.*, word; *pl.*, speech; **entreaty**; **verba facere**, plead. I, 20.

**Vercassivellaunus**, -i, *m.*, Vercassivellaunus (vēr-kās'i-vē-law'nūs).

**Vercingetorix**, -igis, *m.*, Vercingetorix (vēr'sin-jēt'ō-riks), an Arvernian, the greatest leader produced by the Gauls.

**vereor**, **verērī**, **veritus sum**, *tr.*, revere; fear, dread, be afraid of. I, 19.

**vergō**, -ere, —, —, *intr.*, look or lie towards, be situated; slope. I, 1.

**vergobretus**, -i, *m.*, vergobret (vēr-gō-brēt), the title of the chief magistrate of the Haedui. I, 16.

**veritus**, *see* vereor.

**vērō**, *adv.* [vērus, true], in truth, truly, really, indeed; but, however, on the other hand. I, 32; II, 2.

**versō**, 1, *tr.*, turn; deal with; *pass. as*

*deponent*, turn one's self; be, remain; engage in; fight. I, 48; II, 1.

**versus**, *adv.* [vertō, turn], turned to; toward.

**versus**, -ūs, *m.* [vertō, turn], turning; verse.

**Verticō**, -ōnis, *m.*, Vertico (vēr'ti-kō), one of the Nervii.

**vertō**, *vertere*, **verti**, **versum**, *tr.*, turn, turn around; *terga vertere*, flee. I, 53; III, 19.

**Verucloetius**, -ti, *m.*, Verucloetius (vēr'-ū-klē'shyūs), an Helvetian envoy, sent to Caesar. I, 7.

**vērūs**, -a, -um, *adj.*, true; *n. as noun*, the truth; *vērī similis*, likely, probable. I, 18.

**verūtum**, -i, *n.*, dart, javelin.

**Vesontio**, -ōnis, *m.* (Cf.), Vesontio (vē-sōn'shyō), the chief town of the Sequani, situated on the Doubs, modern Besançon. I, 38.

**vesper**, -eri, *m.*, evening; *sub vesperum*, towards evening. I, 26.

**vester**, -tra, -trum, *poss. pron.* [vōs, you], your, yours.

**vēstīgium**, -gi, *n.* [vēstīgō, trace out], trace, track, footprint; spot, place; moment, instant. IV, 2.

**vestiō**, 4, *tr.*, clothe, cover.

**vestis**, -is, *f.* [cf. *vestiō*, clothe], clothing.

**vestitus**, -ūs, *m.* [vestiō, clothe], clothing. IV, 1.

**veterānus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [vetus, old], old, veteran; *pl. as noun*, veterans. I, 24.

**vetō**, -āre, -ui, -itum, *tr.*, forbid. II, 20.

**vetus**, -aris, *adj.*, old, ancient, former; *with militēs*, veteran. I, 13.

**vexillum**, -i, *n.*, banner, flag, standard. II, 20.

**vexō**, 1, *tr.* [intensive of vehō, carry], carry or drag hither and thither; harass, plunder, waste, overrun. I, 14.

**via**, -ae, *f.*, way, road, route; journey, march. I, 9.

**viātor**, -ōris, *m.* [via, road], traveler. IV, 5.

**vicēni**, -ae, -a, *distr. num. adj.*, [cf.

*viginti*, twenty], twenty each, twenty.

**vicēsimus**, -a, -um, *ord. num. adj.* [cf. *viginti*, twenty], twentieth.

**vicēs**, *num. adv.* [cf. *viginti*, twenty], twenty times.

**vicinitās**, -tātis, *f.* [vicinus, near], neighborhood; *pl.*, neighbors.

**vicis**, *gen. (no nom.)*, change; *only in the adv. phrase in vicem*, alternately, in turn. IV, 1.

**victima**, -ae, *f.*, victim; a sacrificial animal.

**victor**, -ōris, *m.* [vincō, conquer], conqueror, victor; *as adj.*, victorious. I, 31; II, 24.

**victōria**, -ae, *f.* [victor, victor], victory. I, 14.

**victus**, *see* *vincō*.

**victus**, -ūs, *m.* [vivō, live], living, mode of life; provisions, food. I, 31.

**vicius**, -i, *m.*, hamlet, village. I, 5.

**videō**, *vidēre*, **vidi**, **visum**, *tr.*, see, perceive, observe, examine, understand; *see to*, take care; *in pass.*, be seen; seem, appear; seem proper, seem best. I, 6.

**Vienna**, -ae, *f.* (Df), Vienna (vī-ēn'ā), modern Vienna.

**vigilia**, -ae, *f.* [vigil, awake], wakefulness, watching; a watch, one of the four equal divisions of the night, used by the Romans in reckoning time. I, 12.

**viginti** (XX), *card. num. adj.*, indecl., twenty. I, 13.

**vimen**, -inis, *n.*, a pliant twig, switch, osier. II, 33.

**vinciō**, *vincire*, **vinxi**, **vinctum**, *tr.* bind. I, 53.

**vincō**, *vincere*, **vici**, **victum**, *tr.*, conquer, overcome, vanquish; prevail; have one's way or desire. I, 25.

**vinctus**, *see* *vinciō*.

**vinculum**, -i, *n.* [vinciō, bind], bond, fetter, chain. I, 4.

**vindiciō**, 1, *tr.*, assert authority, assert claim; set free, deliver; inflict punishment. III, 16.

**vineā**, -ae, *f.* [vinum, wine], vine arbor, hence, a shed for the defense of a besieging party. II, 12.

**vinum**, -i, *n.*, wine. II, 15.

**violō** 1, *tr.*, harm, injure; devastate.

**vir**, **virī**, *m.*, man; husband; a man of distinction or honor; *cf.* **homō**, a human being as distinguished from the lower animals. II, 25.

**virēs**, *see vis*.

**virgō**, **-inis**, *f.*, maiden, virgin.

**virgultum**, **-i**, *n.*, thicket, brush, brushwood. III, 18.

**Viridomārus**, **-i**, *m.*, Viridomarus (**vir**/**i**-dō-mā'rūs), a chief of the *Haedui*.

**Viridovix**, **-icis**, *m.*, Viridovix (**vi**-rīd'-ō-vīks, a chief of the *Venelli*. III, 17.

**virītim**, *adv.* [**vir**, man], man by man, to each one, individually.

**Viromandui**, **-ōrum**, *m.* (Be), the *Viromandui* (**vir**/**ō**-mān'dū-i). II, 4.

**virtūs**, **-ūtis**, *f.* [**vir**, man], manliness, valor, merit, worth, virtue, courage; strength, energy; *pl.*, good qualities, virtues, merits. I, 1.

**vis**, **vis** (App. 37), *f.*, force, might, energy, strength; violence, severity; authority, power; a force, a great number; *pl.*, **virēs**, strength, force; **vim facere**, use violence. I, 6.

**visus**, *see video*.

**vita**, **-ae**, *f.* [*cf.* **vivō**, live], life; manner of living, living. I, 16.

**vitō**, *1, tr.*, avoid, shun, evade, escape. I, 20.

**vitrum**, **-i**, *n.*, woad, a plant used by the *Britons* for dyeing blue.

**vivō**, **vivere**, **vixi**, **victum**, *intr.*, live; subsist on. IV, 1.

**vivus**, **-a**, **-um**, *adj.* [*cf.* **vivō**, live], alive, living.

**vix**, *adv.*, with difficulty, barely, hardly, scarcely. I, 6.

**Vocātēs**, **-ium**, *m.* (Ded), the *Vocates* (**vō**-kā'tēz). III, 23.

**Vocēlō**, **-ōnis**, *m.*, Voccio (**vō**k'shyō), a king of *Noricum*. I, 53.

**vocō**, *1, tr.* [**vō**x, voice], call, summon; invite. I, 19.

**Vocontii**, **-ōrum**, *m.* (Df), the *Vocontii* (**vō**-kōn'shyi). I, 10.

**Volcācius**, **-ci**, *m.*, Gaius Volcaciuss Tullus (**gā**'yūs **vō**l-kā'shyūs tūl'ūs), a young man in *Caesar's* army.

**Volcae**, **-ārum**, *m.* (1) **Volcae Are-**

**comici** (Eef), the *Volcae Arecomici* (**vō**l'sē ār'ē-kōm'i-si). (2) **Volcae Tectosagēs** (Ede) (**vō**l'sē tēk-tōs'a-jēz).

**volō**, **velle**, **volui**, — (App. 82), *tr. and intr.*, wish, be willing, want, desire; prefer, choose; intend; mean; **quid sibi vellet**, what did he intend or mean? I, 7.

**voluntārius**, **-a**, **-um**, *adj.* [**voluntās**, will], willing; *pl. as noun*, volunteers.

**voluntās**, **-tātis**, *f.* [**volō**, wish], wish, will, desire, inclination; good will, favor; consent, approval. I, 7.

**voluptās**, **-tātis**, *f.* [**volō**, wish], *what one wishes*; pleasure, delight, enjoyment. I, 53.

**Volusēnus**, **-i**, *m.*, Gaius Volusenus Quadratus (**gā**'yūs **vō**l'ū-sē'nūs kwā-drā'tūs), a tribune of *Caesar's* army, afterward commander of cavalry. III, 5.

**Vorēnus**, **-i**, *m.*, Lucius Vorenus (**lū**'shyūs **vō**-rē'nūs), a centurion in *Caesar's* army.

**vōs**, *see tū*.

**Vosegus**, **-i**, *m.* (BCg), the *Vosegus* (**vō**s'-ē-gūs), better, the *Vosges Mountains*. IV, 10.

**vovēō**, **vovēre**, **vōvi**, **vōtum**, *tr.*, vow.

**vōx**, **vōcis**, *f.*, voice, tone; outcry, cry; word; *pl.*, words, language, variously translated according to context, as entreaties, complaints, tales, etc. I, 32; II, 13.

**Vulcānus**, **-i**, *m.*, Vulcanus (**vū**-kā'nūs), better *Vulcan*, the god of fire.

**vulgō**, *adv.* [**vulgus**, the crowd], commonly; everywhere. I, 39; II, 1.

**vulgus**, **-i**, *n.*, the common people, the multitude, the public, the masses; a crowd. I, 20.

**vulnerō**, *1, tr.* [**vulnus**, a wound], wound. I, 26.

**vulnus**, **-eris**, *n.*, a wound. I, 25.

**vultus**, **-ūs**, *m.*, countenance, looks. I, 39.

## X.

**X**, sign for decem, ten.

# INDEX

## TO THE INTRODUCTION, NOTES, AND APPENDIX

References in plain-faced type are to pages; in bold-faced type, to sections of the Appendix,

### A

#### Ablative:

- absolute, **150**: I, 2, 2; 3, 21; 8, 6: II, 1, 6; 2, 2; 7, 7.
- of accompaniment, **140**: I, 1, 10; 3, 5; 10, 11: II, 3, 5; 5, 6; 11, 11: III, 11, 14.
- of accordance, **142**, *a*: I, 4, 1; 8, 8; 14, 3: II, 4, 21; **13**, 11; 19, 4.
- of agent, **137**: I, 3, 11; 7, 13; 14, 17: II, 1, 7; 5, 3; 10, 1.
- of attendant circumstance, **142**, *b*: I, 18, 22; **22**, 15: II, 1, 14; **23**, 13.
- of cause, **138**: I, 2, 6; 9, 5; 14, 11: II, 1, 10; 4, 7; 9, 10.
- of comparison, **139**: I, 15, 14; **22**, 2; **41**, 11: II, 3, 1; 7, 10.
- of degree of difference, **148**: I, 5, 1; 6, 6; 14, 3: II, 7, 8; **20**, 4; **30**, 7.
- with deponent verbs, **145**: I, 2, 5; 5, 9; 16, 5: II, 3, 12; 7, 1; 14, 10.
- descriptive, **141**: I, 6, 11; 7, 15; **18**, 6: II, 6, 10; **15**, 3; **18**, 4.
- with **dignus** and **indignus**, **149**, *a*.
- duration of time, **152**, *a*: I, **26**, 13.
- of manner, **142**: I, 7, 2; 10, 8; **25**, 10: II, 6, 2; 7, 8; 11, 1.
- of material, **136**: III, **13**, 6.
- of means, **143**: I, 1, 2; 2, 7; 8, 1: II, 1, 2; 3, 7; 8, 3.
- with **opus est**, **146**: I, **42**, 19: II, **22**, 6.
- for partitive genitive, **101**, *b*: II, 6, 11.
- of penalty, **108**.
- of place from which, **134**, *a*: I, 5, 8; 6, 1; 10, 10.
- of place in which, **151**: I, 6, 8; 7, 5; **15**, 5; **39**, 17.
- with prepositions, **153**.

- of separation, **134**: I, 1, 13; 2, 3; 8, 11: II, 6, 6; 9, 13; 11, 15.
- of source, **135**: II, 4, 3; **29**, 10: IV, **12**, 13.
- with special verbs and adjectives, **143**, *a*: I, 13, 16; **53**, 4: II, **27**, 2: III, 9, 12; **21**, 1.
- of specification, **149**: I, 1, 3; 2, 5; 5, 4: II, 4, 13; 8, 6; **13**, 6.
- of time, **152**: I, 3, 14; 4, 3; **12**, 13: II, 2, 10; 4, 18; 6, 3.
- of the way, **144**: I, 6, 1; 9, 1; 16, 5: II, 19, 21: III, 1, 5: IV, **35**, 7.

#### absum, 78.

Accent, **10-12**: in gen. of nouns in **-ius** and **-ium**, **16**, c.

#### Accusative:

- with adjectives and adverbs, **122**, *b*: I, **46**, 2; **54**, 3: III, 7, 7: IV, 9, 3.
- adverbial, **128**, *b*: I, **42**, 19: II, 4, 2; **17**, 13: IV, 1, 14.
- cognate, **128**: I, **38**, 1.
- with compound verbs, **127**: I, **12**, 5: II, 5, 12; 10, 2.
- direct object, **124**: I, 1, 1; 2, 15; 5, 11: II, 1, 4; 2, 1; 7, 2.
- duration of time, **130**: I, 3, 11: II, **29**, 14.
- in exclamations, **129**.
- extent of space, **130**: I, 2, 16; 8, 4: II, 6, 2; 11, 12; 16, 1.
- inner, **125**, *b*; **128**, *a*.
- with passive verbs, **125**, *c*; **127**, *a*: II, 4, 3.
- place to which, **131**: I, 5, 6; 7, 4; **23**, 5: II, 10, 12; 11, 3; **18**, 2.
- as subject of infinitive, **123**: I, 1, 14; 2, 15; 7, 1: II, 1, 3; 2, 7; 6, 13.

- two accusatives, 125-127: I, 16, 1; 16, 12; 34, 6; 38, 13: II, 2, 7; 3, 3.
- Accusing*, verbs of, constr., 108.
- Acquitting*, verbs of, constr., 108.
- ac si*, with subjunctive, 261.
- Active voice, 181.
- Adjectives:
- for adverb, 159.
  - agreement of, 157: I, 2, 1; 3, 6; 7, 7: II, 1, 3; 3, 2; 10, 1.
  - attributive, defined, 156; agreement of, 157, *a*, 1.
  - comparison, 39-45.
  - declension, 1st and 2nd, 31, 32; 3rd, 33-38.
  - meaning of comp. and sup., 161.
  - numeral, 47.
  - with partitive meaning, 160: I, 22, 1; 24, 3; 27, 12: II, 7, 1; 15, 13; 18, 5.
  - predicate, 156: I, 2, 1; 7, 7: II, 1, 3; 3, 2; 10, 1.
  - as predicate acc., 126: II, 2, 7.
  - used substantively, 158.
- Adverbs, formation and comparison, 46.
- Adversative clause, 239; 246, 247: I, 2, 5; 9, 2; 14, 16: II, 3, 2; 11, 3; 22, 4: III, 9, 16: V, 4, 13.
- Agent, see Dative and Ablative of.
- agger*, 33, 34.
- aliquis*, 62; 175.
- amplius*, 139, *b*: I, 38, 10; 41, 11.
- annōn*, 214.
- Answers, 215.
- antequam*, with ind., 236, *a*; with subj., 236, *b*; as two words, 236, *c*.
- Appositives, 95, *b*: I, 1, 4; 3, 10; 6, 2: II, 2, 3; 3, 11; 9, 11.
- aquila*, 26; Plate I, 6.
- Arar*, declension of, 25, *a*.
- Armor and Arms of legionary soldiers, 24.
- Army, 23-38.
- Artillery, 35, 36.
- Asking*, verbs of, with double acc., 125, *a*: I, 16, 1; 18, 4; with substantive purpose clause with *ut* omitted, 228, *a*: I, 20, 13.
- assuēfactus* and *assuētus*, with abl., 143, *a*.
- Attempted action, 191, *a*.
- Attraction, 274: I, 19, 2; 48, 5: II, 11, 15; 27, 2: III, 4, 1; 22, 5.
- Attributive, adjectives, 156; agreement of, 157, *a*, 1; genitive, 98-102.
- B**
- balteus*, 25.
- Base, 14, *a*.
- ballista*, 35: Plate II, 5.
- Batavi, island of, IV, 10, 2.
- Battle, 31, 32; line of, 32.
- bonus*, comparison of, 42.
- bōs*, declension of, 27.
- C**
- Caesar: early years, and choice of party, 11; overthrow of his party, 11; weakness of opposite party, 12; revival of his party, 12; development of his powers, 12; his first military command, 13; his consulship, 13; his command in Gaul, 14; outbreak of civil war, 14; weakness of the constitutional government, 14; master of Rome, 15; as statesman, 15; assassination, 16; chronological table of his life, 17.
- Calendar, Roman, 297-300.
- Calends, 298.
- Camp: fortifications of, 29; gates, 30; location and form, 28; plan, 29; *val-lum* and *fossa*, 30.
- Capture of towns: blockade, 33; sudden assault, 33; formal siege, 33.
- Cardinals, 32; 47-49.
- Cases, function of, 92, 93. See also Abl., Acc., Dat., Gen., and Loc.
- cassis*, 24.
- Catapult, 36.
- causā*, position, 99, *a*; with gen. to express cause, 138, *a*; with gerund and gerundive, to express purpose, 291.
- Causal clauses, 239; 243-245; *cum*, 239: I, 2, 5; 9, 2: II, 3, 3; 11, 2; 22, 4; *quod*, 244: I, 1, 7; 2, 6; 7, 12: II, 1, 13; 8, 8; 15, 2; relative, 245: II, 15, 13; 31, 4: IV, 23, 14.
- Cavalry, 28; German, IV, 2, 12.
- cavē*, 219.
- centuriō*, 26; Plate, II, 3.
- Cimbri and Teutoni, invasion of Gaul, 21.
- Civil War, 14, 15.
- Characteristic, clause or, 230: I, 6, 1; 6, 4; 14, 6; 19, 6; 28, 7; 29, 4; 31, 26; 39, 12: II, 4, 7; 16, 9; 21, 6: IV, 34, 9; 38, 3.

**Clauses:** coördinate, **222**; coördinate relative in ind. disc., **269**, *a*: II, **17**, **11**; subordinate, in ind. disc., **269**: I, **3**, **17**; **6**, **11**; **10**, **14**: II, **1**, **6**; **3**, **9**; **10**, **13**; see also, Adversative, Causal, Characterizing, Comparison, Conditions, Determining, Generalizing, Indirect questions, Infinitive, Proviso, Purpose, Parenthetical, Result, Substantive, and Temporal.

**coepi**, **86**.

**cognōvi**, use of tenses, **193**, I, *a*; **194**, *a*; **195**, *a*.

**Commands:** in 1st person pl., **217**; in 2nd person, **213**; in 3rd person, **220**; in indirect discourse, **267**: I, **7**, **20**; **13**, **10**. For negative commands see Prohibitions.

**Comparatives**, declension, **34**; occasional meaning, **161**.

**Comparison**, of adj., **39-45**; of adverbs, **46**; clauses of, **261**: I, **32**, **11**.

**Complementary infinitive**, **275**.

**Condemning**, verbs of, **108**.

**Conditions**, **249-259**:

connectives, **250**.

undetermined present or past, **253**:

I, **31**, **44**; **34**, **6**; **40**, **24**: III, **22**, **5**.

present or past contrary to fact, **254**: I, **34**, **5**.

more vivid future, **256**: I, **31**, **7**; **35**, **12**; **40**, **9**.

less vivid future, **257**: I, **44**, **25**.

mixed, **258**.

omitted or implied, **259**.

in indirect discourse, **272**: I, **34**, **5**.

**confidō**, with abl., **143**, *a*: I, **53**, **4**: III, **9**, **12**.

**Conjugation of verbs:** four regular, **67-70**; four regular, how distinguished, **63**; **capio**, **71**; **sum**, **66**; irregular, **77-85**; deponents, **73**; semi-deponents, **74**; defective, **86**; periphrastic, **75**, **76**; impersonal, **87**.

**cōnsuēvi**, use of tenses, **193**, I, *a*; **194**, *a*; **195**, *a*.

**Consonants**, sounds of, **6**; doubled, **6**, *a*; division of, into syllables, **8**.

**cōnsulō**, constr., **114**, *b*.

**Contracted verb forms**, **72**: I, **12**, **10**; **18**, **12**: II, **3**, **6**; **14**, **13**; **17**, **6**.

**Convicting**, verbs of, constr., **108**.

Coördinate relative clause, **173**, *a*: I, **1**, **11**; **2**, **13**; **11**, **13**: II, **4**, **7**; **5**, **3**; **13**, **4**; in indirect discourse, **269**. *a*: II, **7**, **11**.

Council of war, **26**: III, **3**, **5**.

**cum**, uses as conj., **238-242**; causal or adversative, **239**: I, **2**, **5**; **9**, **2**; **14**, **16**: II, **3**, **2**; **11**, **3**; **22**, **4**; temporal, rules, **240**; indic. temporal, **241**: III, **14**, **15**: IV, **17**, **10**: V, **19**, **7**: VI, **12**, **1**; subjunctive temporal, **242**: I, **4**, **8**; **7**, **1**; **12**, **13**; **25**, **7**: II, **1**, **1**; **2**, **4**; **6**, **8**.

**cum primum**, **237**.

## D

**Dates**, method of reckoning, **299**; method of expressing, **300**: I, **2**, **2**.

**Dative:**

with adjectives, **106**, *b*; **122**: I, **1**, **9**; **3**, **14**; **9**, **6**: II, **2**, **5**; **3**, **2**; **9**, **6**.

of agent, **118**: I, **11**, **13**; **31**, **47**; **35**.

*6*: II, **17**, **21**; **20**, **1**.

double, see Purpose.

with **fidem habere**, **115**, *a*: I, **19**, **15**; **41**, **11**.

indirect object with compound verbs, **116**: I, **2**, **5**; **5**, **13**; **10**, **7**; **42**, **16**: II, **6**, **5**; **9**, **10**; **14**, **6**.

indirect object with intr. verbs, **115**: I, **2**, **3**; **3**, **9**; **9**, **8**: II, **1**, **11**; **10**, **18**; **16**, **5**.

indirect object with tr. verbs, **114**: I, **3**, **15**; **4**, **1**; **10**, **1**: II, **2**, **5**; **4**, **8**; **10**, **19**.

with passive verbs, **114**, *c*; **115**, *d*; **116**, II, *c*: I, **4**, **1**; **22**, **8**.

of possessor, **117**: I, **7**, **9**; **10**, **1**; **11**, **12**; **34**, **5**: II, **6**, **9**; **15**, **9**; **16**, **9**.

of purpose, **119**: I, **18**, **27**; **25**, **5**; **33**, **2**: II, **7**, **3**; **9**, **13**; **19**, **6**.

of reference, **120**: I, **3**, **6**; **5**, **8**; **20**, **20**; **31**, **4**: II, **11**, **17**; **26**, **14**; **31**, **9**.

**Declensions**, of nouns, how distinguished, **14**; nouns, **15-30**; adjectives, **31-38**; pronouns, **51-62**; cardinals, **43-49**.

**Defective verbs**, **86**.

**Deliberative questions**, **77**.

**Demonstratives**, decler **58**; uses, **168-171**.

**Deponent verbs**, **73**; with *acc.*, see abl.

**Desire**, subjunctive of, **184**, *a*; in commands and prohibitions, **217**; **220**; in wishes, **221**; in purpose clauses, **225**; in substantive clauses, **228**.

Determining clause, 231: III, 4, 1; 22, 5: IV, 29, 11.

*deus*, declension of, 16.

*dexter*, comparison, 42.

*dies*, gender, 30, a: I, 4, 3.

*dignus* with abl., 149, a.

Diphthongs, sounds of, 5.

Direct discourse, 265.

*dissimilis*, comparison of, 41; with gen., 106, b; with dat., 122.

Distributives, 47.

*dō*, 85.

*domus*, declension and gender, 29, a; 29, d.

*dōnec*, with ind., 234, b; 235, a; with subj., 235, b.

*dōnō*, constr., 114, a.

*doubting*, expressions of, with subj., 229, d.

Druids, VI, 13, 7.

*dubitō*, with subj., 229, d: II, 2, 8.

*dum*: ind. temporal clauses, 234; 235, a: I, 27, 7; 39, 1; 46, 1: III, 17, 1; subj. temporal clauses, 235, b: IV, 13, 4; 23, 10; proviso clauses, 260.

*dummodo*, with subj., 260.

*duo*, 49.

## E

Emotion, verbs of, with gen., 109: IV, 5, 9.

Enclitics, effect on accent, 12; *cum*, with pers. pron., 51, c; *cum*, with reflex. pron., 52, a: I, 5, 5; *cum*, with rel. pron., 60, b: I, 1, 10; *cum*, with interrog. pron., 61, b; *nam*, with interrog. pron., 61, a.

*enim*, 243.

*eō*, conj. of, 84.

*eō* . . . *quō*, 148, a: I, 14, 3.

*etenim*, 243.

*etsi*, with ind., 246.

Exhortation 217: VII, 77, 19.

## F

*Fearing*, expressions of, 228, b: I, 19, 11; 27, 9; 39, 24: II, 1, 7; 26, 5.

*ferō*, 81.

*fidō*, with abl., 143, a.

*Filling*, verbs and adj. of, with abl., 143, a.

*fiō*, 83.

Fleet, 36, 37.

*fore ut*, for future inf., 205, b: I, 42, 8.

*Forgetting*, verbs of, with gen., 107: I, 14, 7.

*frētus*, with abl., 143, a: III, 21, 1.

*fruor*, with abl., 145; use of gerundive, 289, I, a.

*fungor*, with abl., 145; use of gerundive, 289, I, a.

Future tense, 192; use, 199.

Future perfect tense, 195; equivalent to future, 195, a; use, 199.

## G

*galea*, 24.

Gallic campaigns, importance, 9; effect, 9, 10.

Gauls, first appearance in history, 20; decline of their power, 20; invasion of Cimbri and Teutoni, 21; their civilization, 22.

Gaul factions, 22; geographical divisions in Caesar's time, 21.

Gender, general rules, 13; exceptions, 15, a; 16, a; 29, a; 30, a; of 1st declension, 15, a; of 2nd declension, 16, a; of 3rd declension, 28; of 4th declension, 29, a; of 5th declension, 30, a.

Generalizing, relative, 60, a; *cum* clauses, 241, b; 242, b: I, 25, 7: III, 14, 15: IV, 17, 10: V, 19, 7; relative clauses, 250.

Genitive:

with adj. 106: I, 14, 4; 18, 8; 21, 9: III, 21, 9.

appositional, 97, a.

with *causā* and *grātiā*, 99, a.

descriptive, 100; 104: I, 5, 7; 8, 4; 25, 11: II, 5, 20; 10, 2; 15, 12.

of material, 102: I, 24, 4.

objective, 98: I, 2, 2; 4, 3; 14, 8; 30, 3: II, 4, 7; 7, 4; 21, 4.

partitive, 101: I, 1, 5; 3, 3; 7, 5: II, 2, 4; 4, 19; 10, 5.

possessive, 99; 103: I, 1, 13; 2, 7; 10, 15: II, 1, 9; 2, 11; 7, 8: IV, 5, 4.

subjective, 98: I, 30, 3: II, 1, 3; 4, 5; 11, 15.

of value, 105: I, 20, 14.

with verbs, 107-111: I, 3, 22; 13, 11; 14, 7: II, 5, 5: IV, 5, 9.

Gerund, 287; 289-294: I, 2, 3; 3, 2; 7, 18: II, 7, 4; 9, 3; 10, 10.

Gerundive, 285, II; 288-294: I, 3, 6; 5, 7; 7, 16; 44, 9: II, 7, 5; 9, 13; 10, 8: III, 4, 12; 6, 4: IV, 13, 14.

**gladius**, 24.

**grātiā**, position, 99, *a*.

## H

**hic**, declension, 54; uses, 168; 170, *a*.

*hindering*, verbs of, 228, *c*.

Historical, tenses, 203; present, 190, *a*:

I, 3, 7; 5, 2; 10, 1: II, 5, 5; 6, 12; 12,

14; infinitive, 281: I, 16, 2: II, 30, 6: III, 4, 3.

Hollow square (**orbis**), 32.

*hoping*, verbs of, 280, *c*.

Hostages, (**obsidēs**), I, 9, 10.

## I

**i**, consonant and vowel, 5-7.

**iaciō**, in composition, 7.

**iam diū**, etc., with pres., 190, *b*; with impf., 191, *b*: I, 31, 10: III, 5, 1.

**idem**, 58.

Ides, 298.

**idōneus**, constr., 122, *a*.

**ille**, declension, 56; use, 170, *a*.

Imperative mood, 185; in commands, 218; in indirect discourse, 267: I, 7, 20; 13, 10; 26, 17.

Imperfect tense, of repeated action, 191, *a*: I, 48, 14: III, 3, 10; with **iam diū** etc., 191, *b*: I, 31, 10: III, 5, 1.

**imperō**, constr., 115, *b*.

Impersonal verbs, 87; with substantive clauses of result, 229, *b*: I, 2, 12: II, 11, 5; 17, 11; with infinitives, 278; gen. with, 109: IV, 5, 9.

Implied indirect discourse, 273: I, 16, 1; 16, 14; 22, 9; 23, 8: II, 2, 6.

Indefinite pronouns, declension, 62; uses of, 174-178: I, 7, 19; 18, 21; 20, 2: II, 14, 13; 32, 5.

Indicative mode, 183; in statements, 206; in questions, 209; in relative clauses, 231; 232; in causal clauses, 244; in adversative clauses, 246; in temporal clauses, 234; 235, *a*; 236, *a*; 237; 241; in conditions, 253; 254, *a*; 256.

**indignus**, constr. with, 149, *a*.

Indirect discourse:

discussion of, 265: I, 13, 7.

conditional sentences in, 272: I, 34, 5.

coördinate relative clauses in, 269, *a*: II, 17, 11.

declarative sentences in, 266: I, 1, 14; 2, 5; 7, 1: II, 1, 4; 2, 8; 6, 13.

imperative sentences in, 267: I, 7, 20; 13, 11; 26, 17.

interrogative sentences in, 268: I, 8, 13; 14, 8; 44, 24.

subordinate clauses in, 269: I, 3, 17; 6, 11; 10, 4: II, 1, 6; 3, 9; 10, 13.

Indirect questions, 262-264: I, 8, 13; 12, 3; 15, 4.

Infantry, 27.

Infinitive, 186; 275-281; tenses of, 205: I, 31, 11; 31, 36; 35, 18; complementary, 275; historical, 281: I, 16, 2: II, 30, 6: III, 4, 3; as subject, 276; clause, 186; 277-280; in indirect discourse, 266: I, 1, 14; 2, 5; 7, 1: II, 1, 4; 2, 8; 6, 13.

Intensive pronoun, (**ipse**), declension, 59; use, 172.

**interest**, with genitive, 110: II, 5, 5.

Interrogative pronoun, declension, 61; uses 212; 264, *a*.

Interrogative particles, 213; 264, *b*.

**ipse**, declension, 59; use, 172.

Irregular verbs, conjugation, 66; 77-85.

**is**, declension, 57; use, 171.

**iste**, declension, 55; use, 169.

**Iuppiter**, declension, 27

## J

Judicial action, verbs of, 108.

## L

**laccessō**, constr., 143, *a*.

**lēgātus**, 25; Plate II, 2.

Legion, number of men in, 23; baggage of, 27; officers of, 25, 26; organization of, 23; standards and signals of, 26.

Legionary soldiers, clothing and arms, 24; baggage, 25. See also Plate I, 3.

Locative, of 1st declension, 15, *b*; of second declension, 16, *b*, used to express place, 151, *a*: I, 18, 13; 20, 4; 28, 6.

**lōrica**, 24.

## M

**magis**, comparison with, 45.

**magnus**, comparison, 42.

**mālō**, 82.

**malus**, comparison, 42.

**March** line of, 31; length of, 31.  
**mare**, declension, 25, a.  
**maximē**, comparison with, 45.  
**memini**, conjugation, 86; with gen., 107.  
**metuō**, constr., 114, b.  
**mille**, **milia**, 48.  
**minus**, constr., 139, b: II, 7, 8.  
**misereor**, constr., 109.  
**miseret**, constr., 109.  
**modo**, with subj., 260.  
**Modes**, 182-185. See also Indicative, Subjunctive, and Imperative.  
**multus**, comparison, 42.  
**mūsculus**, 34, 35.  
**Musical instruments**, 27.

## N

**nam**, 243; see also Enclitics.  
**-ne**, 213, a; 264, b.  
**nē**, 188, b; conj.: with purpose clause, 225, b: I, 4, 7; II 5, 7; with substantive purpose clause, 228: I, 19, 11; 27, 9: II, 1, 7; 26, 5; in commands and prohibitions, 216-220.  
**nē . . . quidem**, 188, b.  
**neque**, 264, c.  
**Negatives**, 188.  
**neque**, 188, a.  
**nesciō quis**, 178.  
**nēve**, with subjunctive of desire, 188, b.  
**nisi**, 250.  
**nitor**, constr., 143, a: I, 13, 16.  
**nōll**, or **nōllite**, to express prohibition, 219: I, 35, 7; 43, 24: VII, 77, 23.  
**nōlō**, 82.  
**Nominative**, as subject, 96; in predicate, 95, a: I, 1, 3; 2, 1.  
**nōn**, 188, a.  
**Nones**, 298.  
**nōnne**, 213, b.  
**Nouns**, 1st declension, 15; 2nd declension, 16; 3rd declension, 17-27; 4th declension, 29; 5th declension, 30; gender of, 13; 15, a; 16, a; 29, a; 30, a; predicate, 95, a: I, 1, 3; appositive, 95, b: I, 1, 4; 9, 10; 6, 2: II, 2, 3; 3, 11; 9, 11.  
**nōvl**, translation of tenses 193, I, a; 194, a; 195, a.  
**num**, 213, c; 264, b.  
**Numerals**, 47-50.

## O

**Object**, direct, see accusative; indirect, see dative.  
**obliviscor**, with gen., 107: I, 14, 7.  
**ōdi**, 86.  
**onager**, 36; Plate III, 4.  
**Optative subjunctive**, 184, d. See also wishes.  
**opus est**, with abl., 146: I, 42, 19: II, 22, 6.  
**Ordinal numerals**, 47.  
**ōs**, declension, 27.

## P

**paenitet**, with gen., 109: IV, 5, 9.  
**Parenthetical relative clauses**, 232.  
**Participles**, used attributively, 157; used predicatively, 157; used substantively, 158; tenses of, 205; used for clause 283: I, 4, 3; future active, 235, I; future passive, 235, II: I, 13, 2; 19, 3: III, 11, 10: IV, 22, 18: V, 1, 4; 23, 9; see also Periphrastic; perfect passive 286: I, 15, 3; 18, 9; 44, 38: II, 4, 9; present, 284; see also Ablative absolute.  
**parvus**, comparison, 42.  
**Passive voice**, 181; intransitive verbs in, 115, d; dative retained with, 114, c: 115, d; 116, II, c: I, 4, 1; 22, 8; constr. of passive verbs of saying, 279, a.  
**Perfect tense**, with force of pres., 193, I, a; historical, 193, II.  
**Periphrastic conj.**, 75, 76; active, 285, I; passive, 285, II, a: I, 11, 13; 14, 7; 23, 4: II, 17, 21; 20, 1; 31, 8; with dat. of agent, 118; with abl. of agent, 118, a.  
**Personal pronouns**, declension, 51; uses, 162; as partitive or objective genitives, 51, b; with **similis** and **dis-similis**, 106, b.  
**persuādēō**, constr., 115: I, 2, 3; 3, 9 II, 10, 18; 16, 5.  
**Phalanx**, I, 24, 11.  
**pīlum**, 24.  
**pīget**, with gen., 109.  
**Place**, from which, 134, a: I, 5, 8; 6, 1; 10, 10; in which, 151: I, 6, 8; 7, 5; 15, 5; 39, 17; to which, 131: I, 5, 6; 7, 4; 23, 5: II, 10, 12; 11, 3; 18, 2.  
**plēnus**, with gen., 106, a.

Pluperfect tense, 194; with force of imperfect, 194, *a*: III, 1, 6; in narration, 197, 198.

*plus*, declension, 34, *a*; constr., 139, *b*.  
Pompey, 14.

Possessive pronouns, declension, 53; used for possessive gen., 99; position with *causā* or *grātiā*, 99, *a*; with *interest*, 110; omission of, 167.

*possum*, 80.

*postquam*, with ind., 237: I, 24, 1; 27, 5: II, 5, 12; as two words, 236, *c*.

Potential subjunctive, 184, *b*; 208; 209.

*potior*, with abl., 145: I, 2, 5; with gen., 111: I, 3, 22; use of gerundive, 289, I *a*: III 6, 4.

*praefectus fabrum*, 25.

*praesertim*, 245.

Predicate, accusative, 126: I, 16, 12; 38, 13: II, 2, 7; 3, 3; adjectives, 156; 157, *a*, 2; 275, *a*; 276, *a*: I, 2, 1; 7, 7: II, 1, 3; 3, 2; 10, 1; noun, 95, *a*; 126; 275, *a*; 276, *a*: I, 1, 3.

Prepositions, with abl., 153, *a*; with acc., 155; with acc. or abl., 154; verbs compounded with, 116, I; 124, *c*; 127.

Present tense 190; historical present, 190, *a*: I, 3, 7; 5, 2; 10, 1: II, 5, 5; 6, 12; 12, 14; with *iam diū* and *iam pridem*, 190, *b*; with *dum*, 234, *a*: I, 27, 7; 39, 1; 46, 1: III, 17, 1.

Principal parts of verbs, 65.

Principal tenses, 203.

*priusquam*, with ind., 236, *a*; with subj., 236, *b*: II, 12, 1: III, 10, 9; 18, 15: IV, 14, 2: VII, 71, 1; as two words, 236, *c*: III, 26, 8.

Prohibitions negative in, 216; expressed by subj., 217; 220; expressed by *nōlī* or *nōlīte* with inf., 219: I, 35, 7; 43, 24: VII, 77, 23; in indirect discourse, 267: I 26, 17.

Pronouns, 51-62; 162-178; in indirect discourse, 271; see also Demonstrative, Generalizing Indefinite, Intensive, Interrogative, Personal, Possessive, Reflexive, and Relative.

Pronunciation, 1-12; of proper names, I, 1, 1.

*propior*, comparison of, 43, with acc., 122, *b*.

*propius*, with acc., 122, *b*: I, 46, 2: IV, 9, 3.

*prōsum*, 79.

Proviso clause 260.

*prōvincia*, 9.

*proximus*, with acc., 122, *b*: I, 1, 9; 54, 3: III, 7, 7.

*proximē*, with acc., 122, *b*.

*pudet*, with gen., 109.

Purpose clauses, 225: I, 3, 4; 4, 7; 6, 14: II, 2, 3; 5, 7; 9, 4; 17, 15: V, 3, 18; substantive, 228: I, 2, 4; 3, 12; 7, 11; 19, 11; 28, 9; 31, 24; 39, 24: II, 2, 6; 10, 19.

## Q

Quaestor, 25.

*quam*, with comparatives, 139, *a*; with superlatives 161, *a*.

*quam diū*, with ind., 234, *b*.

*quam sī*, with subj., 261.

*quamquam*, with ind., 246.

*quamvis*, with subj., 247.

*quandō*, in causal clause, 244.

Quantity, of syllables, 9; of vowels, 1-3.

*quasi*, with subj., 261.

Questions, introductory words, 212, 213; modes in, 209; deliberative, 210: I, 40, 6: III, 14, 9; double, 214; indirect, 262-264: I, 12, 3; 15, 4; 20, 17; 53, 20: II, 4, 2; 8, 3; 11, 6; double indirect, 264, *c*: I, 40, 43; 50, 12: IV, 14, 5; rhetorical, 211.

*qui*, relative, 60; indefinite, 62; interrogative, 61. See also Relative.

*quia*, in causal clause, 244.

*quicumque*, 60, *a*.

*quidam*, 62, *b*.

*quilibet*, 62.

*quīn*, in substantive clauses of purpose, 223, *c*: I 33, 15; 47, 6: II, 3, 14: IV, 7, 5; in substantive clauses of result, 229, *d*: I, 31, 15.

*quis*, indefinite, 62; interrogative, 61; with *sī*, *nisi*, *nē*, and *num*, 174: I, 7, 19; 18, 21; 20, 2: II, 14, 13; 32, 5.

*quispiam*, 62; 176.

*quisquam*, 62; with negatives, 177: III, 22, 7: IV, 1, 20.

*quisque*, 62.

*quisquis*, 60, *a*.

**quīvis, 62.**

**quōd**, in purpose clauses, 225, *a*, 2: I, 8, 6; II, 17, 15: V, 3, 18.

**quoad**, with ind., 234, *b*; 235, *a*; with subj., 235, *b*.

**quod**, in causal clauses, 244: I, 1, 7; 2, 6; 7, 12; 16, 14: II, 1, 13; 8, 8; 15, 2; 30, 7; in substantive clauses, 248; 248, *a*: I, 14, 8; 19, 2; 25, 6; 36, 14; 40, 36: II, 10, 18; 17, 12; 20, 10.

**quōminus**, with substantive clause of desire, 228, *c*: I 31, 24: IV, 22, 16.

**quoniam**, in causal clause, 244.

**R**

Reciprocal expression, 166.

**rēfert**, constr., 110.

Reflexive pronouns, declension, 52; use, 163; to express reciprocal idea, 166; direct reflexive, 164: I, 30, 6; 33, 14; 40, 11; indirect reflexive, 165: I, 30, 3; 33, 11; 40, 5.

Relative clauses, adversative, 247: V, 4, 13; causal 245: II, 15, 13; 31, 4: IV, 23, 14; characteristic, 230: I, 6, 4; 14, 6; 19, 6; 28, 7; 29, 4; 31, 26; 39, 12: II, 4, 7; 16, 9; 21, 6: IV, 34, 9; 38, 3; conditions, 250; coördinate, 173, *a*: I, 1, 11; 2, 13; 11, 13: II, 4, 7; 5, 3; 13, 4; coördinate in indirect discourse, 269, *a*: II, 7, 11; determining, 231: III, 4, 1; 22, 5: IV, 29, 11; parenthetical, 232; of purpose 225, *a*, 1: I 6, 14: II, 2, 3; result, see Characterizing.

Relative pronouns, declension, 60; agreement of, 173; see also Relative clauses.

**reminiscor**, constr. 107: I, 13, 11.

Repeated action, 191, *a*.

**repræsentātiō**, 270, *a*: I, 14, 14; 31, 26; 40, 20: II, 14, 11.

Result clauses 226: I 6, 4; 11, 6; 12, 2: II, 3, 13; 18, 6; 21, 12; sequence of tenses in, 204, *a*: II, 21, 12; V, 15, 3; substantive, 229: I, 2, 12; 10, 5; 13, 4; 31, 51; 33, 15: II, 3, 14; 4, 8; 17, 11.

Rhetorical question, 211.

**S**

**scorpiō**, 36.

**scūtum**, 24.

Semi-deponent verbs, 74.

**senex**, declension, 27.

Sentences, defined, 88; simple, 89; complex 91; compound, 90.

Separation, see Dative and Ablative.

Sequence of tenses, 202, 203: I, 12, 2; 13, 7; 19, 1: II, 12, 14; 17, 2; exceptions to, 204: II, 21, 12: V, 15, 3.

**si**, in conditions, 250, see also Conditions; meaning to see whether, 264, *b*.

**signum**, 27.

**similis**, with gen. 106, *b*; with dat., 122; comparison of, 41.

**simul ac**, with ind., 237.

**sin**, with conditions, 250.

Spain, Caesar's idea of location, V, 13, 5.

Subjunctive:

by attraction, 274: I, 19, 2; 48, 5: II, 11, 15; 27, 2: III, 4, 1; 22, 5.

of desire, 184, *a*; in commands and prohibitions, 217; 220; in wishes, 221; in purpose clauses, 225; in substantive clauses, 228.

of contingent futurity, 184, *b*; in conclusion of conditional sentences, 207; 254; 257; 259; in questions, 209; in characterizing clauses, 230, *a*, *b*.

of fact, 184, *c*; in result clauses, 226; in substantive clauses, 229; in characterizing clauses, 230, *a*, *b*.

See also **ac**, **si**, **antequam**, **cum**, **dōnec**, **dum**, **dummodo**, **modo**, **nē**, **nēve**, **priusquam**, **quam si**, **quāmvīs**, **quāsi**, **quīn**, **quōd**, **quoad**, **quōminus**, **tamquam**, **ut**, and **ut si**.

Subordinate clauses, see Clauses.

Substantive clauses, see Indirect questions, Infinitive clauses, Purpose, **quod**, and Result.

Substantives, agreement of, 95.

Sulla, 11, 12.

**sum**, conjugation, 66; compounds of, 77-80.

Supine, acc., 295: I, 11, 4; 18, 17; 30, 2; abl., 296: IV, 30, 6.

**suus** and **suī**, declension, 52; reflexives, 163-168.

Syllables, 8; quantity of, 9.

## T

**taedet**, with gen., 109.

**tametsi**, with ind., 246.

**tamquam**, with subj., 261.

Temporal clauses, 233-242; see **cum**, **dum**, **postquam**, **priusquam**, **quoad**, **ubi**, **ut**.

Tenses, stems of, 64; of ind., 190-199; of subj., 200, 201; of infinitive and participle, 205; sequence of, 202-204; see also Sequence of tenses, Present, Imperfect, Future, Perfect, Pluperfect, and Future perfect.

**testūdō**, 33; Plate III, 3.

**testūdō arietāria**, 35; Plate III, 2.

Cimbri and Teutoni, Invasion of, 21.

Time, at which, 152: I, 3, 14; 4, 3; 12, 13; II, 2, 10; 4, 18; 6, 3; duration of, 130; 152, a: I, 3, 11; 26, 13; II, 29, 14; see also Temporal clauses.

**trēs**, declension, 49.

Tower, 33; Plate III, 1.

**tribūnus**, 26.

Triumvirate, 13; IV, 1, 1.

**tū**, 51.

## U

**ubi**, with ind., 237: I, 16, 9; II, 6, 6; 10, 9.

**ullus**, 177.

**ūnus**, declension, 32.

**ut**, in purpose clause, 225, a: I, 3, 4; II, 9, 4; in result clause, 226: I, 6, 4; 11, 6; 12, 2; II, 3, 13; 18, 6; 21, 12; in substantive clauses of purpose, 228, a: I, 2, 4; 3, 12; 7, 11; 39, 24; in substantive clauses of result, 229, b: I, 2, 12; 10, 5; 13, 4; II, 4, 8; 17, 11; in adversative clause, 247: III, 9, 16; omitted, 228, a: I, 20, 13; III, 11, 2.

**ut nōn**, in result clauses, 226; in substantive result clauses, 229.

**ut si**, with subjunctive, 261.

**utinam**, with subjunctive of desire, 221.

**ūtor**, with abl., 145: I, 5, 9; 16, 5; II, 3, 12; 7, 1; 14, 10; gerundive of, 269, I, a.

**utrum** . . . **an**, 214.

## V

**vāgīna**, 24.

**velut**, with subj., 261.

**velut si**, with subj., 261: I, 32, 11.

Verbs, 1st conj., 67; 2nd conj., 68; 3rd conj., 69; 3rd conj., in -10, 71; 4th conj., 70; irregular, 66; 77-85; deponent, 73; semi-deponent, 74; defective, 86; impersonal, 87; act. periphrastic, 75; pass. periphrastic, 76; principal parts, 65; three stems of, 64; agreement of, 179, 180; voices of, 181; modes, 182-185; tenses, 189-205; contracted forms, 72: I, 12, 10; 18, 12; II, 3, 6; 14, 13; 17, 6; singular with plural subject, 180, b: I, 1, 5; intransitive in passive voice, 115, d: I, 33, 18; 40, 7; III, 14, 2.

Verbal adjective, 187.

Verbal nouns, 187.

**vēscor** with abl., 145; gerundive of, 269, I, a.

**vīnea**, 35.

**vīs**, declension, 27.

Vocative, 132.

Voices, 181; see Active and Passive.

Volitive subjunctive, 184, a.

**volō**, 82.

Vowels, sounds of, 4; quantity of, 1-3.

## W

Wishes, subjunctive in, 221; introduced by **utinam**, 221.

Wall, Gallic, 32, 33.







This textbook may be borrowed for two weeks, with the privilege of renewing it once. A fine of five cents a day is incurred by failure to return a book on the date when it is due.

The Education Library is open from 9 to 5 daily except Saturday when it closes at 12.30.

DUE

DUE

AUG 25 1919

July 2, 1920

~~APR 11 AON~~

~~DUE AUG 23 '39~~

~~Sept 16 '39~~  
~~146~~

~~JUL OCT 11 '37~~

DUE DEC 16 '40

~~DUE NOV 12 '37~~

~~DUE DEC 17 '37~~

~~OCT - 4 1938~~

